Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2025

https://archive.org/details/bwb_Y0-AVZ-647

A TEXT-BOOK OF HISTOLOGY

LEWIS AND BREMER

A TEXT-BOOK
OF
HISTOLOGY

ARRANGED UPON AN EMBRYOLOGICAL BASIS

BY
DR. FREDERIC T. LEWIS
ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF EMBRYOLOGY AT THE HARVARD MEDICAL SCHOOL

AND

DR. J. L. BREMER
ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF HISTOLOGY AT THE HARVARD MEDICAL SCHOOL

THIS IS A REVISION OF THE SECOND EDITION OF LEWIS AND STOHR'S TEXTBOOK OF HISTOLOGY, BASED ON THE FIFTEENTH GERMAN EDITION OF STOHR'S HISTOLOGY

FOUR HUNDRED AND EIGHTY-FIVE ILLUSTRATIONS
OF WHICH THIRTY-TWO ARE IN COLOR

PHILADELPHIA
P. BLAKISTON'S SON & CO.
1012 WALNUT STREET

Copyright, 1927, by P. Blakiston's Son & Co.

PRINTED IN U. S. A.
BY THE MAPLE PRESS COMPANY, YORK, PA.

PREFACE

The embryological approach to the study of Histology has been employed at the Harvard Medical School for over twenty years, and its introduction into Professor Lewis's American edition of Stöhr's Histology supplied a need that had been growing increasingly evident. It seems reasonable to believe that the tissues and organs of the body can be best understood by the student if they are followed from their early beginnings through their development to adult form; and years of teaching have served to confirm this belief. To Professor Stöhr, however, this addition was unwelcome, and the numerous German editions of his text-book, continued after his death, follow the more usual lines in dealing simply with the adult tissues and organs. For this reason it has seemed best that the names of those most responsible for this book in its present form should alone appear in its title, though the debt owed to Professor Stöhr is gratefully acknowledged.

When Professor Lewis decided not to bring out a new edition of his book himself, it was perhaps natural that the task should fall to me, since we have been colleagues throughout our years of teaching. In this present edition I have been given perfect liberty. For the new material and its arrangement I am solely responsible, and the omission of certain parts of the former work is also due to me. Most of those paragraphs dealing with embryological and historical subjects have been left as Professor Lewis wrote them. The section on technique, written by Dr. Lowrey, has been altered only slightly by the addition of a method for fixing and staining mitochondria. On the other hand, the sections on the brain and the development of the cranial nerves have been omitted. The growth of our knowledge of neurological anatomy has called forth special text-books on this subject, to which the student will naturally turn. To incorporate even an adequate summary of this material in this volume would increase its bulk unduly, and would give at best only a meager description of what is now a separate branch of anatomy.

In the arrangement of its subjects the present book follows the more usual method of grouping the ductless glands in one section. Endocrinology is now so well recognized as a definite entity that it seems best for the student to regard these organs as a group, and thus be more readily able to compare their similarities and differences. The former arrangement, in which the section on the suprarenal glands followed that on the kidney, and the thyroid gland and thymus were considered with the pharynx, was insecurely based on anatomical propinquity or embryological derivation. In the belief that the student desires to know not only how an organ develops to its adult form, but also what it is destined to do in life and how its structure is fitted for the purpose, I have added here and there the briefest accounts of function, and have emphasized the functional activities of the cells.

Several new figures have been added, chiefly from high-power pencil drawings made from slides in use by the students in our classes. These were originally displayed to induce a closer study of the specimens and better drawings, since they were made from the same material and with the same drawing utensils supplied to the students. For these drawings I am indebted to Miss Mabel Herford, who also furnished a few figures for the former edition of this book. Other drawings have been made by Miss E. Piotti, and diagrams by H. F. Aitken.

Following the usage of the former editions, I have given with nearly every subject one or more references to special articles for further reading. I have not always selected the best known or most significant papers, preferring instead those which are recent and readily accessible. Recent papers serve both to give the present views and to show that histological and embryological investigation is vital and fruitful. On account of their accessibility, American journals and books have been cited almost exclusively. This of course should not be misunderstood as disparaging foreign contributions to our knowledge. The important articles, in whatever journals they are found, will obviously be noted in any recent paper. My intention has been to encourage outside reading by giving a reference to a paper almost sure to be near at hand, in the hope that it will incite the student to follow the subject further in spite of such possible obstacles as language or the difficulty of obtaining foreign or obscure journals. The habit of reference seems to me the important point; the value of the articles which may foster this habit is an unessential detail.

J. L. Bremer.

Harvard Medical School.

CONTENTS

PART I

MICROSCOPIC ANATOMY

I. CYTOLOGY

Page

- Use of the Microscope, 1
- The Cell, 5
  - Protoplasm.
  - Nucleus.
  - Centrosome.
  - Cell Wall.
  - Form and Size of Cells.
- Cytomorphosis, 14

Page

- Vital Phenomena, 16
  - Amœboid Motion.
- Formation and Reproduction of Cells, 17
  - Amitosis.
  - Mitosis.
  - Spermatogenesis.
  - Oögenesis.
  - Fertilization.

II. GENERAL HISTOLOGY

- Histogenesis, 39
  - Segmentation and the Formation of the Germ Layers.
  - The Fundamental Tissues.
- Epithelium, 50
  - Shapes of Epithelial Cells and the Number of Layers.
  - Peripheral Differentiation.
  - The Nature and Classification of Glands.
  - Processes of Secretion.
- Mesenchymal Tissues, 67
  - Mucous Tissue.
  - Connective Tissue.
  - Tendon.
  - Reticular Tissue.
  - Adipose Tissue.
  - Cartilage.
  - Bone.
  - Joints.
- Muscular Tissue, 110
  - Smooth Muscle.
  - Skeletal Muscle.
  - Cardiac Muscle.
- Nervous Tissue, 129
  - General Features.
  - Development of—
    - The spinal nerves
    - The sympathetic system
  - Structure of—
    - Nervous tissue
    - Nerve cells
    - Ganglia
    - Nerves.
  - Nerve Endings.
  - Neuroglia.
- Vascular Tissue,. 164
  - Blood Vessels.
    - General features.
    - Development.
    - Capillaries.
    - Arteries.
    - Veins.
  - The Heart.
  - Lymphatic Vessels.
  - Blood.
    - Red corpuscles.
    - White corpuscles.
    - Blood plates.
    - Plasma.
  - Lymph.

III. SPECIAL HISTOLOGY

PAGE
Blood Forming and Blood Destroying Organs, ... 205
Bone Marrow.
Lymph Nodules and Lymph Glands.
Hæmolymph Glands.
Spleen.

The Entodermal Tract, ... 220
Mouth and Pharynx, ... 220
Development.
Tonsils.
Tongue.
Oral and Pharyngeal Cavities.
Glands of the Oral Cavity.
Digestive Tube, ... 241
Development.
Œsophagus.
Stomach.
Duodenum.
Jejunum and Ileum.
Mesentery and Peritoneum.
Vermiform Process.
Cæcum and Colon.
Rectum.
Liver, ... 274
Pancreas, ... 290
Respiratory Apparatus, ... 296
Development.
Larynx.
Trachea and Bronchi.
Lungs.
Pleura.

Urinary Organs, ... 309
Wolffian Bodies and Wolffian Ducts.
Kidney.
Renal Pelvis and Ureter.
Bladder.
Urethra (in the female).

Male Genital Organs, ... 332
Development and General Features.
Testis.
Epididymis.
Ductus deferens.
Seminal Vesicles and Ejaculatory Ducts.
Appendices and Paradidymis.
Prostate.
Urethra and Penis.

Female Genital Organs, ... 355
Development and General Features.

PAGE
Female Genital Organs.—(*Continued.*)
Ovary.
Uterine Tubes.
Uterus.
Menstruation.
Decidual Membranes of the Uterus and Embryo.
Development and General Features.
Decidua vera, Amnion and Chorion læve.
Placenta.
Umbilical Cord.
Vagina and External Genital Organs.

Ductless Glands, ... 393
Thymus.
Thyroid Gland.
Parathyroid Glands.
Suprarenal Glands.
Glomus Caroticum.
Paraganglia.
Hypophysis.
Pineal Body.

Skin, ... 413
Sweat Glands.
Sebaceous Glands.
Mammary Glands.
Nails.
Hair.

Teeth, ... 434

Meninges, ... 448

Cerebrum, ... 450

Cerebellum, ... 453

Organs of Special Sense, ... 457

Eye, ... 458
Development and General Anatomy.
Retina.
Optic Nerve.
Lens.
Vitreous Body.
Tunica Vasculosa.
Tunica Fibrosa.
Tunica Fibrosa.
Vessels, Chambers, and Nerves.
Eyelids.
Lachrymal Glands.

PAGE

EAR, ... 483

Development and General Anatomy.

Sacculus, Utriculus, and Semicircular Ducts.

Cochlea.

Nerves of the Labyrinth.

EAR.—(*Continued.*)

Vessels of the Labyrinth.

Middle Ear.

External Ear.

NOSE, ... 499

PART II

MICROSCOPICAL TECHNIQUE

PAGE

FRESH TISSUES, ... 505

ISOLATION, ... 506

PERMANENT PREPARATIONS, ... 507

Fixation.

Decalcification.

Imbedding.

Cutting and Handling Sections.

Staining.

General Stains.

PERMANENT PREPARATIONS.—(*Continued.*)

Selective Stains.

Clearing and Mounting.

SLIDES AND COVER GLASSES, ... 526

INJECTIONS, ... 527

SPECIAL METHODS, ... 528

RECONSTRUCTIONS, ... 531

DRAWINGS, ... 532

INDEX 537

PART I

MICROSCOPIC ANATOMY

USE OF THE MICROSCOPE

The term "microscopic anatomy" indicates that the study is to be undertaken with the aid of a microscope. Within the last few years most of the makers of these instruments have evolved a type suitable for students' use, provided with oculars of two degrees of magnification and with three objectives, "low power" (16 mm. or $\frac{2}{3}$), "high dry" (4 mm. or $\frac{1}{6}$ or $\frac{1}{8}$), and "oil immersion" (2 mm. or $\frac{1}{12}$). The figures indicate the distance in millimeters or inches of the objective from the section when the specimen is in focus. Such microscopes also have coarse and fine adjustment, for regulating the position of the optical apparatus, and beneath the stage a mirror, one side plane, one concave, for directing the light, and an iris diaphragm and Abbé condenser for regulating the amount of light and focussing it on the specimen through the hole in the stage. Since the condenser is designed to transmit parallel light rays, the plane side of the mirror should be used unless disconcerting images of window bar or electric light filaments appear, when the concave side may be substituted. The iris diaphragm acts as in a photographic camera, the smaller the aperture the sharper the picture until a limit is reached on account of lack of light. This limit changes with different specimens, and the best result must be sought for each. For distinguishing color in the section, a wider aperture is often useful.

Always examine a specimen first with a low power objective and then with a high power. In focussing the microscope, have the objective drawn away from the slide and focus down. This should be done *cautiously*, with a portion of the specimen actually beneath the lens; if there is only cover glass and damar there, the objective will probably be driven down upon the slide. Unless one is sure that stained tissue is in the field, the slide should be moved back and forth as the objective is being lowered.

In the use of the ordinary microscope and of the usual histological or embryological slide one is in the condition of a one-eyed individual looking at a transparent stained-glass window. The perspective shown by a two-eyed vision and by the shadows on a moulded surface is lacking, and must be replaced, especially when one is using the higher objectives, by the careful manipulation of the fine adjustment. The focal plane, *i.e.* the level at which the clearest image is given, is very narrow with the highest powers, so that even in the thinnest sections all parts, from top to bottom, are not in focus at the same time. The constant use of the fine adjustment, changing the focal plane from one level to another in the specimen, and thus allowing a perfect view of all parts of it in the field, distinguishes an experienced microscopist from a beginner. This is very important, because the eye, which always attempts to bring objects in focus, will strive in vain to do what the hand can do readily. Eye strain can be avoided by the continual use of the fine adjustment.

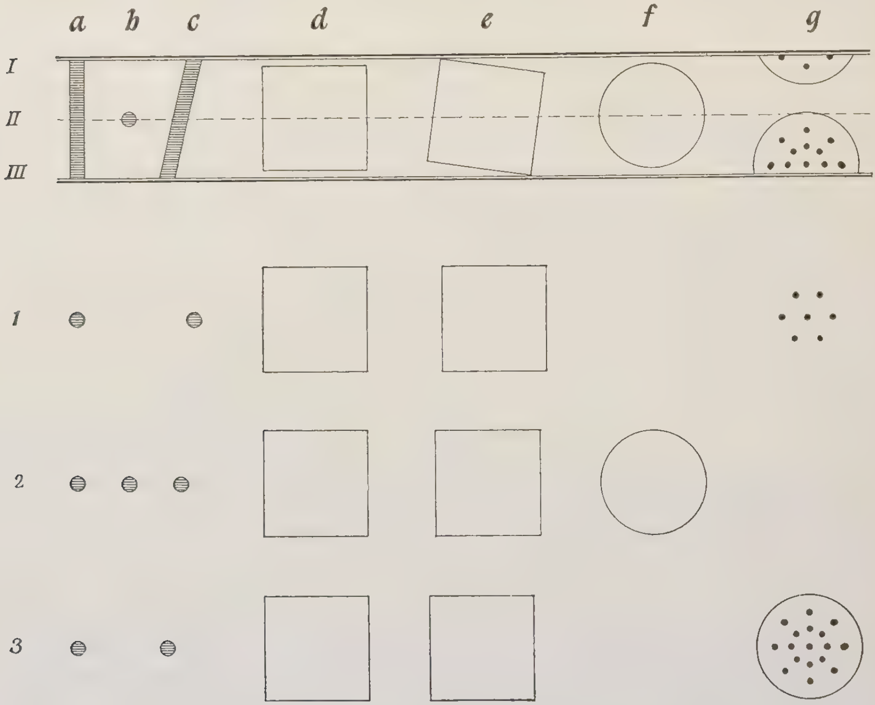


Fig. 1.—Diagram to Demonstrate the Different Appearances of Various Structures in a Section When Seen at Different Focal Planes.

The upper row represents a side view of the section, between the coverglass at *I* and the glass slide at *III*. Below are three views such as would be seen through the microscope: 1, (across the page) when the focal plane is at or just below the coverglass (*I*); 2, at the focal plane *II*; 3, just above the slide (*III*).

Monocular vision is fortunately greatly aided by a narrow focal plane. If one of two objects in a section is in clear focus and the other near it looks hazy, but becomes clear as the focus is lowered, the relative position of the two is readily understood. A rod-shaped structure running vertically through a specimen, from top to bottom, will be in focus at all levels of the focal plane, though appearing always in cross section as a round dot (Fig. 1, a). A spherical granule, on the other hand, though resembling the rod at a certain level, will disappear at higher or lower levels (b). A slanting rod will be seen at different positions in relation to other objects in the slide and will seem to move as the focal plane is changed (c). A horizontally placed rod will of course appear as such, but only at one position of the fine adjustment. Thus to the high powers of the microscope the thinnest sections have the third dimension, depth, which can be investigated.

The use of transmitted light as in a transparency also entails certain limitations which must be understood to make full use of the usual microscopic specimens. Only those structures which partially block the light rays are distinctly visible, and to block the rays objects must have a certain density or thickness or both. To the naked eye a glass slide held to the light may be invisible, in that one can see through it; but the same slide turned edgewise is readily seen, because the depth of material is now greater. On the other hand an ink spot on the glass slide is visible because of its density of color.

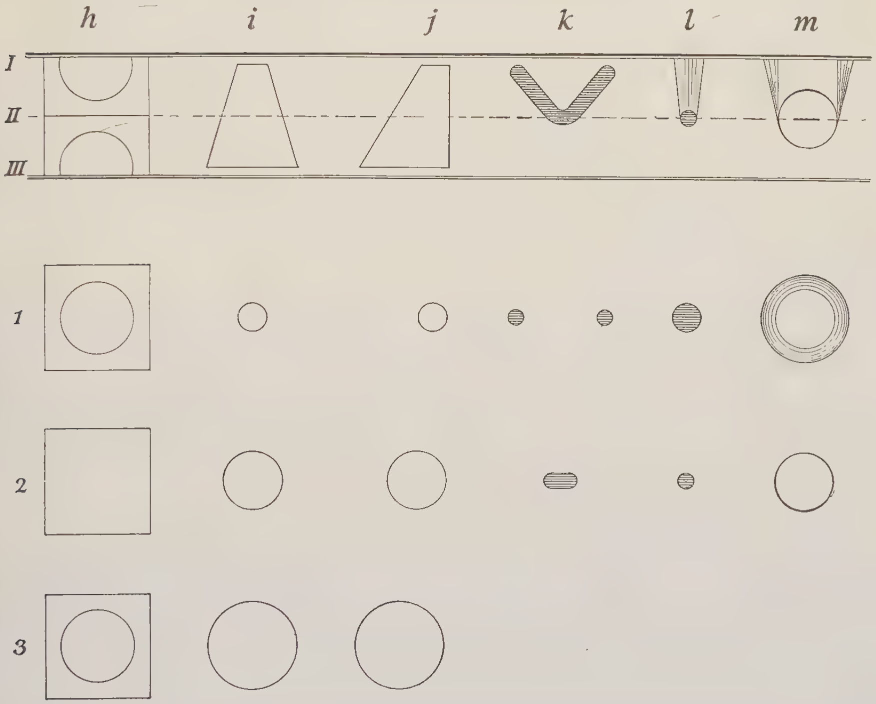


FIG. I (*Continued*).

a, vertical rod; **b,** granule; **c,** slanting rod; **d,** hollow cube, **e,** tilted hollow cube; **f,** hollow sphere; **g,** two spheres containing granules, only partly contained in the section; **h,** two spheres within hollow cubes; **i,** truncated hollow cone; **j,** tilted cone; **k,** bent rod; **l,** refractive granule; **m,** refractive sphere (*e.g.* an air bubble).

Transferring these ideas to microscopic sections, we can understand that many structures actually present in a specimen may be invisible because we can see through them. Thus the thin top and bottom walls of a hollow cube might be invisible, while the perpendicular sides would be plainly seen (d). At a certain point in the tilting of a thin plane from the horizontal to the vertical position one passes from invisibility to visibility. Tilted planes which are vertical enough to be visible will appear to move, as the plane of focus is altered, just as a tilted rod seems to move (e). If a plane, seen as a line, does not change its position on focussing, it must be perpendicular to the surface of the specimen.

The same principle holds for a hollow sphere. The more horizontal top and bottom are transparent, while the more perpendicular parts of the sides are opaque. The sphere thus appears as a circle (f). If only the top or bottom of a sphere is present in a section (the remainder having been sliced away) its presence may be revealed only by its contents (g).

Microscopic slides are made as transparent as possible by being infiltrated with oil or damar, which has nearly the same index of refraction as the glass of the slide or cover-glass. Air has a different index, so that any light ray not absolutely in the line of vision will be bent in coming from the specimen to the objective of the microscope, and deliver a distorted image to the eye. Since the rays from the Abbé condenser are nearly parallel, this distortion is slight and negligible for the low power and even for the high-dry objective; but with the highest power even this distortion is rectified by a drop of oil between cover-glass and objective, immersing the lens in oil of the proper index of refraction. This oil should always be removed from the lens, after use, by gentle wiping with lens paper (a fresh piece each time, as the oil is apt to collect dust which might scratch the lens surface).

Opaque objects in transparent specimens will stop the light and therefore appear dark. Refractile objects, which have the property of bending the light rays, will show a dark contour, increasing in size at higher focus (l). If also opaque, such a refractive object will simply appear to grow larger, but if itself transparent, though refractive, (like a bubble of air in oil) it may change from dark to light at varying focal planes (m). Partly refractive structures, when stained, may throw their color above them, though themselves out of focus and invisible at a given level. Too deep a stain often spoils a specimen for the observation of delicate details.

In Figs. 1 and 1 (cont.) the preceding paragraphs have been summarized in a diagram. The student should continually remember the third dimension, depth, in studying any microscopic section.

In "dark-field illumination" a powerful light is thrown on the specimen obliquely, while light from below is shut off. A bright slanting beam of sunlight reveals dust particles in the air, which are otherwise invisible. By the same principle the dark-field microscope shows granules and other structures of ultra-microscopic size. The points of reflected light are seen rather than the actual granules. The method reveals their presence and any motion they may have, without indicating much as to their actual size or character. It is of use chiefly for the study of living tissues.

I. CYTOLOGY

THE CELL

Since 1838 it has been known that all plants and animals are composed of small structural elements called cells (Latin, *cellula;* Greek, κύτος). The lowest forms of animals and of plants are alike in being single cells throughout life. The more complex organisms are groups of cells, which have been derived by process of repeated division from a single cell, the fertilized ovum. Thus the human body, which begins as one cell, becomes in the adult an aggregation of cells variously modified and adapted to perform special functions. Since the liver is a mass of essentially similar cells, the problems of its functional activity are the problems of the functions of a single one of its cells. The diseases of the liver are the result of changes occurring in these cells, which must be restored to a normal condition to effect a cure. As this is equally true of other organs, it is evident that cytology, the science of cells, is a basis for both physiology and pathology.

A cell may be defined as a structural element of limited dimensions, which under certain conditions can react to external stimuli and perform the functions of assimilation, growth, and reproduction. Because of these possibilities a cell may be considered an elementary organism. It is described as a mass of protoplasm containing a nucleus. A third element, the centrosome, is found in the cells of animals, but it is doubtful whether it exists in the cells of the higher plants. It becomes prominent when a cell is about to divide. Some authorities regard the centrosome as a temporary structure, which forms shortly before division begins and disappears after it is completed. Others consider it as a permanent and essential part of a cell, which accordingly consists of protoplasm, nucleus, and centrosome.

PROTOPLASM

Protoplasm is the living substance of which cells are composed. More specifically the term is applied to this living substance exclusive of the nucleus, or to the corresponding dead substance, though death and fixation cause profound changes in its physical properties. The name *cytoplasm*, or *cytosome*, is often used instead of protoplasm in this restricted sense, and the term *karyoplasm* denotes the nuclear substance, both cytoplasm and karyoplasm being considered as varieties of protoplasm. Although these names are often employed, the cell substance apart from the nucleus is ordinarily called protoplasm.

In attempting to describe protoplasm, one must distinguish between the living material and the dead and fixed structure. Tissue culture, the growth of living cells outside the body under conditions in which they may be readily studied with the microscope, has now added a valuable means of comparing the living and the dead, and though for the student the method is still too unwieldy for ordinary use, the appearances seen in fixed and stained tissues may often be rendered more intelligible by descriptions of the living cells.

In living cells, "the cytoplasm is a colorless, translucent substance in which there may or may not be imbedded granules and vacuoles in varying numbers." (Chambers, in General Cytology, Cowdry, 1924, p. 243.) The matrix, or hyaloplasm, is a soft, viscid, colloid mass, very slightly alkaline and extremely sensitive to chemical changes. It is ordinarily more than three-fourths water, and the remainder consists of salts and organic substances, some in solution and some in a colloidal state. The organic materials are classed as proteins, glycogen or some allied carbohydrates, and lipoid (fat-like) bodies.

In life the granules and other structures imbedded in the matrix may be seen to move about slowly or to vibrate rapidly, according to their kind. The matrix is therefore more or less fluid. The fluidity may be increased by weak alkalis or ether, when the activity of the imbedded particles is also increased; or decreased by acids, which cause a cessation of all motion and a coagulation of the hyaloplasm. In certain cells of the blood and of other tissues the cytoplasm is without visible granules, and even in fixed tissues appears clear and homogeneous.

In most cells "the presence of visible granules, fibrils, and vacuoles in the hyaline matrix is such a universal feature that most of our conceptions as to the visible structure of protoplasm have been based on the assumption that these inclusions form an integral part of the protoplasmic structure. However, . . . we must regard them rather as specialized differentiations." (Chambers, l. c.) Apparently the most constant of these structures are the *mitochondria*. They are visible in living cells, vary in number, and are in the form of threads, rods, and granules. "Slight alterations in the condition of the cell or culture seem to produce marked variation in the form, from rich branching and anastomosing plexuses of long threads, to rods, short rods, and granules" (Lewis, in General Cytology, p. 411). They are "continually twisting and turning, bending into curves and loops." They are supposed to form the basis of almost every activity of the cell. They change during cell growth and cell degeneration, and are carried into new generations by the sex cells. One of the earliest attributes assigned to them was that of segmenting to form granules. According to Bowen (Anat. Record, 1923, vol. 26, pp. 153–160) they "are considered to be cell organs, possibly of a self-perpetuating nature, which are integral parts of the living cell system." The conception that they are "symbiotic" bacteria awaits confirmation. They can be stained in the living cell, and in dead material, provided it has been treated with certain precautions. Ordinary fixatives destroy the mitochondria, or at least render them unstainable.

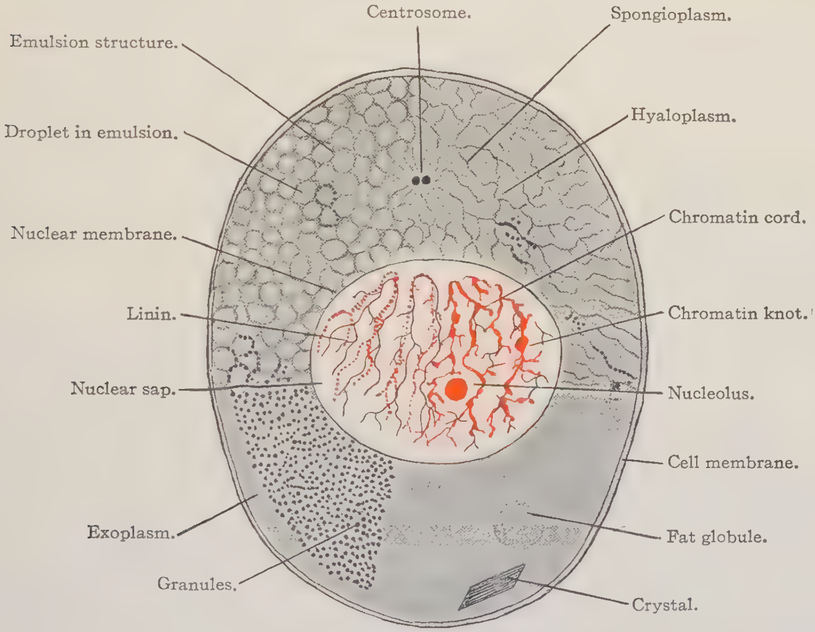


Fig. 2.—Diagram of a Cell.

In the four quadrants different types of protoplasmic structure are represented—namely, homogeneous, granular, foam-like, and fibrillar.

Even the ground substance of protoplasm, in which the fibrils or granules are imbedded, is not necessarily homogeneous. According to Bütschli's interpretation it has the structure of foam or of an emulsion—that is, it consists of minute droplets of one substance completely surrounded by walls of another substance. In these walls, granules and filaments may be lodged, as seen at the margins of the upper left quadrant of Fig. 2. The complex chemical activities of a cell are said to be manifestly impossible in any homogeneous mass; but in such a heterogeneous medium as an emulsion, they are conceivable (Alsberg). In other words, the vital qualities of protoplasm may not depend so much on hypothetical complex and unstable living molecules, as upon the interaction of various substances, made possible by their arrangement in droplets and investing films.

The various structures commonly observed in protoplasm may be grouped as follows:

1. *Granules.* The granules present in protoplasm vary in size. Ultramicroscopic granules exist, and can be detected by the dark-field apparatus. Minute granules, if abundant, give the protoplasm a dark color. Often they are absent from the peripheral layer of the protoplasm, or *exoplasm,* which is then clear, somewhat firmer, and chemically different from the inner *endoplasm.* Certain granules remain apparently unchanged throughout the life of the cell, as in some cells of the blood; others vary in size or position with different phases of cell activity. Many forms of secretory activity are accompanied by the appearance, growth, and disappearance of specific granules. It is evident, therefore, that the careful observation of protoplasmic granules is of great importance.

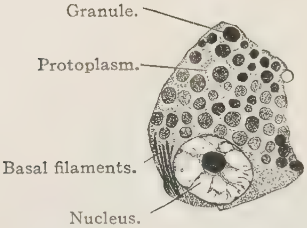


FIG. 3.—GRANULES IN A GLAND CELL.

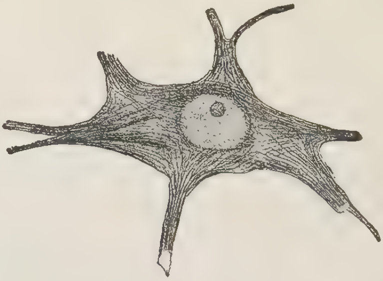


FIG. 4.—FIBRILS IN A NERVE CELL.

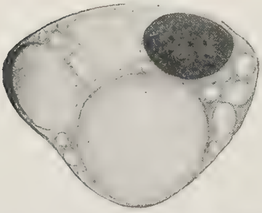


FIG. 5.—VACUOLES IN A YOUNG FAT CELL.

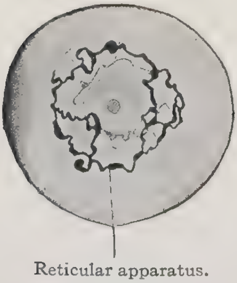


FIG. 6.—RETICULAR NETWORK IN A NERVE CELL. (After Golgi.)

2. *Fibrils.* In addition to the sometimes threadlike mitochondria, protoplasm may be permeated with a delicate meshwork of fibrils, which collectively constitute the *spongioplasm,* or filar mass. This is imbedded in the clear *hyaloplasm,* or interfilar mass (Fig. 2). The spongioplasm may form an irregular network, or its constituent fibrils may be parallel, passing from one end of the cell to the other. In oblique and transverse sections of such cells, the filaments are cut across, so that they appear as short rods, or even as granules. Fibrils may be extremely slender, as in the case of those which radiate through the protoplasm at the time when the cell divides; or they may be quite coarse, like the permanent fibrils characteristic of certain muscle and nerve cells (Fig. 4).

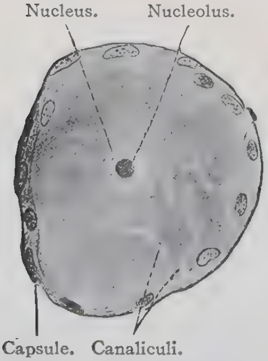


FIG. 7.—CANALS (TROPHOSPONGIUM) IN A NERVE CELL.

3. *Vacuoles.* Protoplasm often contains large or small drops of clear fluid, fat, or some other substance less highly organized than the surround-

ing material (Fig. 5). In preserved cells the spaces which were occupied by these droplets appear clear and empty, and are known as vacuoles. They vary greatly in size, and one or several of them may be found in a single cell.

4. *Reticular Apparatus.* When treated with special reagents and stains, all cells apparently present a net-like arrangement of material within the protoplasm and in relation to the nucleus (Fig. 6). It seems to be intimately related to the activity of the cell, changing in appearance and often in position. It has been carefully studied in different types of cells by da Fano, Bowen, and others, but is not yet well understood. From its staining reactions it is intimately related to lipoids or fats. It is also known as the Golgi Apparatus, from the famous Italian who first described it. Bowen (Quar. Jour. Micr. Sc., 1926, vol. 70, pp. 419–449) gives an excellent review of the subject.

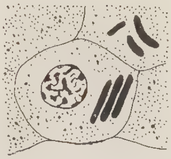


Fig. 8. — Crystalloid Inclusions. Interstitial Cells of the Testis.

5. *Canals.* The protoplasm of certain cells is said to contain fine tubes or clefts which communicate with lymphatic spaces outside of the cell (Fig. 7). Prolongations from the surrounding capsule-cells have been described as entering these canals and as performing, together with the lymph, a nutritive function. Hence the network of canals has been called *trophospongium.* But it has not been shown conclusively that these canals open to the exterior of the cell. They have been called Holmgren's canals, and may be the negative or unstained shadow of the reticular apparatus already described. This is discussed by Cowdry (Science, 1923, vol. 58, pp. 1–7). In certain gland cells there are definite minute canals within the protoplasm, which convey the secretion to the free surface of the cell. These may be simple, branched, or arranged in a network, and are perhaps only the temporary extension of a vacuole to the surface. Like the other forms of intracellular canals, they can best be studied in special preparations.

6. *Inclusions.* Various foreign bodies, such as other cells or bacteria, which may have been ingested by the protoplasm, are grouped as inclusions. This term is applied also to crystalloid substances formed within the protoplasm (Fig. 8), and to coarse masses of pigment granules which appear extraneous.

With so many constituents and with a very unstable colloid matrix, protoplasm may show a great variety of forms in fixed tissues. It has been described as hyaline, granular, fibrillar, or foam-like, *i.e.* having the structure of an emulsion. These various appearances are indicated in Fig. 2. The different fixatives may coagulate the hyaloplasm in different patterns, perhaps guided by unstained inclusions; but the various forms of coagulation occur with such constancy that their study is of the utmost importance, and differences noted in fixed cells may be taken to represent actual differences in the living.

To attempt to describe our present conception of the complex activities of cells would lead into the fields of physics and chemistry. Frequently the results of such activities can be recognized histologically by changes in form or content of the cell, and these changes should be carefully studied. These instances constitute another link between the dead material studied and its function in the living.

NUCLEUS

The nucleus (Latin, *nucleus*, "the kernel of a nut;" Greek, κάρυον, "a nut") is typically a well-defined round body, situated near the center of the cell, appearing denser or more coarsely granular than the surrounding protoplasm (Fig. 2). There are characteristic variations in the shapes of nuclei, in their position within the cells and in their structure.

Ordinarily the karyoplasm, or nuclear substance, is sharply marked off from the cytoplasm by the *nuclear membrane.* Sometimes, in preserved tissues, the cytoplasm has shrunken away from the nuclear membrane, so as to leave a narrow space partially encircling it; and in certain living cells the nucleus migrates through cytoplasm, as if it were an independent body. But there are phases of cell-development in which the nuclear membrane disappears and no line can be drawn between karyoplasm and cytoplasm. At all times they have a common structural basis. The ground substance of the nucleus, corresponding with the hyaloplasm, is the *nuclear sap;* and it contains, for spongioplasm, a meshwork of delicate *linin* fibrils. These help to form the nuclear membrane, in which they terminate. The nuclear membrane, nuclear sap, and linin reticulum do not stain deeply, and are therefore grouped together as the achromatic constituents of the nucleus.

The principal chromatic constituent of the nucleus is known as *chromatin.* It stains deeply, since it contains a large amount of nucleic acid, which has a marked affinity for basic stains. Chromatin occurs in the form of granules, which are bound together in strands or masses by the linin fibers (Fig. 2). The masses, known as chromatin knots, occur especially at the points of intersection in the linin meshwork. Sometimes they are attached to the nuclear membrane, or so distributed over its surface that it appears to consist of chromatin. It forms morphologically the most important part of the nucleus.

Certain nuclei contain one or more round bodies, which belong with the chromatic elements because of their deep staining, but which are chemically different from chromatin. These bodies, known as *nucleoli*, are stained with acid or neutral dyes. For this reason they are said to be composed of oxychromatin, as opposed to the basichromatin of the chromatin knots. They are also said to be composed of paranuclein, whereas chromatin is composed of nuclein. In distilled water the structures formed of nuclein disappear, but those consisting of paranuclein remain. The nuclei of nerve cells contain typical nucleoli (Figs. 4 and 7). Sometimes a nucleolus, lodged in the nuclear reticulum, is more or less covered with chromatin (Fig. 10, A), but the term should not be applied to irregular knots of chromatin, even when most of the chromatic material within a nucleus is gathered into one or two such bodies. These are the so-called false nucleoli (pseudonucleoli).

Every nucleus, therefore, consists of ground substance or nuclear sap, a network of linin, and granules and masses of chromatin. Usually it is surrounded by a membrane, and sometimes it contains a nucleolus. Most cells contain a single nucleus; but occasionally a single cell contains two nuclei, as is frequent in the liver, or even several nuclei, as in certain cells associated with bone. Non-nucleated bodies, like the mammalian red blood corpuscles, and the dead outer cells of the skin, have lost their nuclei in the course of development.

McClung (Gen. Cytology, p. 612) would draw no distinction between linin and chromatin, nor between oxychromatin and basichromatin. "It is much more reasonable to conclude that observable differences of appearance in the chromatin are due to its varying states rather than to admixtures of substances." It is "a semi-fluid colloid, capable of a wide range of intrinsically controlled movements." It varies with different fixatives and different technical procedures. "In preparations of a higher order of technical excellence it is possible to see that chromatin is directly continuous with the nuclear matrix. In turn it may be noted that there exists no break between nucleus and cytosome, but that there is direct continuity between the substances of these two cellular regions marked only by a line of greater concentration at the delicate karyotheca" (nuclear membrane). In living cells in tissue cultures the nucleus is glassy, without differentiation, its border marked by a thin white line under the dark-field illumination. "No linin thread or chromatin granules are to be seen. These are fixation, coagulation, or precipitation products, and do not represent living structures. The nucleoli, one or two in each nucleus, are irregular in outline and change form and position." (Lewis, loc. cit. p. 410.) Nuclear characteristics are said, however, to be brought out by ultra-violet photography, even in living cells (Wolbach).

Functionally the nucleus is regarded as a center for chemical activities necessary for the life of the cell. It is believed to produce substances which pass out into the cytoplasm, where they may be further elaborated. Evidences of nuclear extrusions into the cytoplasm have been frequently recorded. But the interactions between nucleus and cytoplasm, of such nature that they cannot be observed under the microscope, are presumably of far greater biological importance.

CENTROSOME

The centrosome is typically a minute granule in the center of a small sphere of differentiated protoplasm. Often the term is applied to this entire structure, but it refers particularly to the central granule; the enveloping sphere is known as the *attraction sphere*, and it is composed of *archoplasm*. When a cell is about to divide, delicate fibrils, either rearranged from the protoplasmic reticulum or formed anew, radiate from the archoplasm toward the periphery of the cell. The central granule becomes subdivided into two, which then move apart. In *resting cells*, or those which are not undergoing division, the centrosome may already have divided into a double body or *diplosome* preparatory to the next division of the cell (Fig. 2).

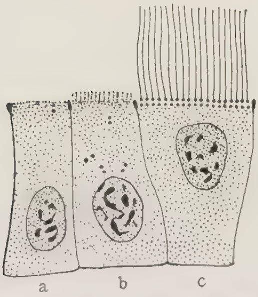


FIG. 9.—CELLS OF THE EFFERENT DUCTS OF THE TESTIS OF A MOUSE. (After Fuchs.) To show diplosomes, and (in c) cilia with basal bodies.

Centrosomes have been detected in many forms of resting cells, and it is assumed by some authorities that the centrosome is an invariable constituent of the cells of the higher vertebrates. According to this opinion the centrosome may become inconspicuous but it never loses its identity. Often they are found very close to the nuclear membrane, which may be indented to accommodate them; and rarely, as in certain cancer cells and in one form of the worm *Ascaris*, they have been reported as within the nucleus. They may occur near the free surface of certain cells, usually in the form of diplosomes, as shown in cell *a*, Fig. 9. Just above the diplosome, such cells may send out contractile projections of protoplasm (pseudopodia), with the activity of which the diplosome may be in some way associated. Pseudopodia, with an underlying diplosome, have been observed in the columnar cells of the human large intestine. In cell *b* of Fig. 9 there are four diplosomes, one of which lies beneath the protoplasmic projections. It is believed that the diplosomes may multiply by fission, and that thus they may give rise to the numerous motile hairs, or *cilia*, which project from certain cells. Of these they form the *basal bodies* (Fig. 9, *c*). In many gland cells the centrosome lies in the midst of the protoplasm where the secretion accumulates. The discharge of the secretion is accomplished by the contraction of the protoplasmic strands in which the centrosome is lodged. In all these relations the centrosome appears to be a center for motor activities, and it is described as the kinetic or dynamic center of the cell.

CELL WALL

The protoplasm at the surface of certain cells floating in the blood or lymph forms a thin pellicle, apparently as a result of protoplasmic concentration, or other reaction to the surrounding medium. Cells which line the greater part of the digestive tube, and have only one surface directed toward the intestinal contents, are provided with a thick wall on the exposed surface. Such a wall is called a cuticular border, or *cuticula.* On the other sides of these cells, the membrane is much thinner, and on the basal surface it is sometimes lacking. In such cases the protoplasm appears to be continuous with that of the underlying cells. In other cases the entire cell is devoid of any membrane. The cell membrane, therefore, is not an essential part of a cell; if present it ranges from a thin pellicle, on the border line of visibility, to a well-defined wall, which may be formed as a secretion of the underlying protoplasm. If the several surfaces of the cell are in relation to different environments, there is often a corresponding difference in the structure of their walls.

In examining a group of cells, it will be important to determine whether they are merely in contact, or actally continuous. Sometimes cells are so completely fused that their nuclei are irregularly distributed through a single mass of protoplasm. Such a formation is a *syncytium* in which the position of the nuclei is the only means of estimating the territory of a single cell. A syncytium may arise from the fusion of cells, or, as in striated muscle fibers, it may be due to the multiplication of nuclei in an undivided mass of protoplasm. Instead of being completely fused, cells are often joined to one another by protoplasmic processes of varying length and width, thus forming cellular networks. Fibrils within such a syncytium may pass continuously from the protoplasm of one cell into that of another.

Although cell membranes are often inconspicuous in animal cells, they cannot be overlooked in plants. Thus cork is a mass of dead cells from which nuclei and protoplasm have disappeared, leaving only the cell walls. In describing cork, Robert Hooke introduced the name "cell," in 1664. He wrote: "I took a good clear piece of Cork and with a Pen-knife sharpen'd as keen as a Razor, I cut a piece of it off, and thereby left the surface of it exceeding smooth, then examining it very diligently with a Microscope, me thought I could perceive it to appear a little porous . . . These pores, or cells, were not very deep, but consisted of a great many little Boxes——." In this way one of the briefest and most important of scientific terms was introduced.

Form and Size of Cells

Cells are regarded as primarily spherical in form. Spherical cells are comparatively numerous in the embryo, and in the adult the resting white blood corpuscles, which float freely in the body fluids, assume this shape. Such cells are circular in cross section. When spherical cells are subjected to the pressure of similar neighboring cells, they become polyhedral and usually appear six-sided in cross section. Such cells, as a whole, may be cuboidal, columnar, or flat. Certain cells become fusiform (spindle-shaped) or are further elongated so as to form fibers; others send out radiating processes and are called stellate. Thus the form of cells is extremely varied. The shape of the nucleus tends to correspond with that of its cell. It is usually an elliptical body in elongated cells, and spherical in round or cuboidal cells. In stellate cells it is either spherical or somewhat elongated. Crescentic nuclei, and others more deeply and irregularly lobed, are found in some of the white blood corpuscles and in giant cells.

The size of cells ranges from that of yolks of birds' eggs—which are single cells, at least shortly before being laid—down to microscopic structures four thousandths of a millimeter in diameter. The thousandth of a millimeter is the unit employed in microscopic measurements. It is called a *micron*, and its symbol is the Greek letter μ. The small cells referred to are therefore four microns ($4\ \mu$) in diameter. The size of any structure in a section of human tissue may be roughly estimated by comparing its dimensions with the diameter of a red blood corpuscle found in the same section. These red corpuscles are quite uniformly $7.5\ \mu$ in diameter.

CYTOMORPHOSIS

Cytomorphosis is a comprehensive term for the structural modifications which cells, or successive generations of cells, undergo from their origin to their final dissolution.[1] In the course of their transformation, cells divide repeatedly, but the new cells begin development where the parent cells left off. Cell division, therefore, is an unimportant incident in cytomorphosis.

Cytomorphosis is a continuous advance in which four successive stages are recognized—first, the stage in which the cells are undifferentiated; second, the stage of specialization or differentiation; third, the stage of degeneration; and fourth, the stage in which the cells die and are removed. These may be considered in turn.

Undifferentiated cells, as can be seen in sections of young embryos, are characterized by large nuclei and little protoplasm. They multiply rapidly, but the rate of division declines with the gradual increase of the protoplasm and the consequent functional differentiation of the cell. In the adult, relatively undifferentiated cells are found in many situations, as, for example, in the deepest layer of the epidermis. As the cells at the surface die and are cast off, new ones come up from below to take their places. But since the basal cells can produce only epidermal cells, they are themselves partly differentiated. From this point of view the fertilized ovum, which can produce all kinds of cells, must be regarded, in spite of its size and great mass of yolk-laden protoplasm, as the least differentiated cell.

---

[1] The term *cytomorphosis* was introduced by C. S. Minot in 1901 in a lecture entitled "The Embryological Basis of Pathology" (Science, 1901, vol. 13, p. 494). Cytomorphosis is further discussed by Professor Minot in "The Problem of Age, Growth, and Death," published by G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1908.

Differentiated cells may preserve a round or cuboidal form, but usually they are elongated, flattened, or stellate. The cytoplasm usually contains coarse granules, fibrils, masses of secretion or other special formations. As a result of their own protoplasmic activity, the cells of many tissues become surrounded by *intercellular substances*, which may far exceed in bulk the cells which produced them. Intercellular substances may be solid or fluid. When present in small amount they form thin layers of *cement substance* between closely adjacent cells; in large amount these substances constitute a ground work in which the cells are imbedded as, for example, in cartilage and bone.

Although the differentiation of cells is chiefly cytoplasmic, corresponding changes in the nucleus also occur. Thus while the muscle cells of the salamander are elaborating complex fibrils, the nuclei become modified as shown in Fig. 10. Undifferentiated nuclei have little chromatin and one or more nucleoli. Sometimes the fully differentiated nucleus is characteristic of the type of adult cell, as in the nerve cell or the plasma cell, but since the nucleus often changes with the functional activity of the cell and may also appear differently after different fixatives, it is not usually a safe diagnostic guide.

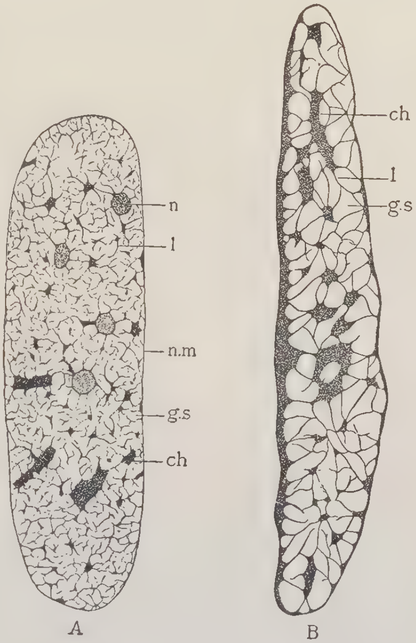


Fig. 10.—Nuclei of Striated Muscle Fibers from Young Salamanders (Necturus). (Eycleshymer.)
A, from a 7 mm. embryo; **B,** from one of 26 mm.; **ch,** chromatin knot; **g. s,** ground substance; **l,** linin fibril; **n,** nucleolus; **n.m,** nuclear membrane.

Degeneration is the manifestation of the approaching death of the cell. In nerve cells this process normally takes place very slowly. These cells remain active throughout life, and if destroyed, they can never be replaced. In many glands, in the blood and in the skin, however, the cells are constantly dying and new ones are being differentiated. In a few organs the cells perish, but no new ones form, so that the organ to which they belong atrophies. Thus a large part of the mesonephros (Wolffian body) disappears during embryonic life; and the ovary in later years loses its chief function through the degeneration of its cells.

The optical effects of degeneration cannot at present be properly classified. In a characteristic form, known as "cloudy swelling," the cell enlarges, becoming pale and opaque. In another form the cell shrinks and stains deeply, becoming either irregularly granular or homogeneous and hyaline. The nucleus may disappear as if in solution (karyolysis, chromatolysis); or it may become densely shrunken or *pycnotic*, and finally break into fragments and be scattered through the protoplasm (karyorhexis). If the process of degeneration is slow, the cell may divide by amitosis. It may be able to receive nutriment which it cannot assimilate, and thus its protoplasm may be infiltrated with fat and appear vacuolated. It may form abnormal intercellular substances, for example, amyloid; or the existing intercellular substances may become changed to mucoid masses, or have lime salts deposited in them. Thus an impairment or perversion of function is often associated with optical changes in the cell substance. In tissue cultures Lewis (Anat. Record, 1923, vol. 26, pp. 15–29) recognizes a granulation of the cell ("death granules") as the first evidence of approaching death.

The removal of dead cells is accomplished in several ways. Those near the external or internal surfaces of the body are usually shed or desquamated, and such cells may be found in the saliva and urine. Those which are within the body may be dissolved by chemical action or devoured by phagocytes.

Every specimen of human tissue exhibits some phase of cytomorphosis. In some sections a series of cells may be observed from those but slightly differentiated, to those which are dead and in process of removal. Because of the similarity and possible identity of this normal "physiological" regression, with that found in diseased tissues, such specimens should be studied with particular care.

Interest has arisen as to whether the first differentiation of a cell is permanent, or whether a cell at some stage of its differentiation may change its type. Cells already differentiated as connective tissue cells are, under certain circumstances, apparently converted into bone or cartilage cells; in certain tissue cultures the new cells are of a more embryonic type than their parents (dedifferentiation). It is probable that the type of cytomorphosis depends largely on the surroundings of a cell, and that change of type is possible, but limited to the less highly differentiated tissues.

VITAL PHENOMENA

The vital properties of cells are fully treated in text-books of physiology. They include the phenomena of irritability, metabolism, contractility, conductivity, and reproduction. Under irritability may be grouped the response of cells to stimuli of various sorts, such as heat, light, electricity, chemical reagents, the nervous impulse, or mechanical interference. Metabolism, in a wide sense, includes the ingestion and assimilation of food, the elaboration and secretion of desirable products, together with the elimination of waste products. Contractility may be manifest in the locomotion of the entire cell, in the vibratile action of slender hair-like processes, the *cilia*, or in contraction of the cell body. Conductivity is the power of conveying impulses from one part of the cell to another. Reproduction is seen in the process of cell division. Many phases of these activities are observed in microscopic sections and as such they will be referred to in later chapters. A few which are of general occurrence will be described presently.

Amœboid Motion

The unicellular animal, Amœba, exhibits a type of motility known as *amœboid*, which has been observed in many sorts of cells in the vertebrate body. In marked cases, as in certain white blood corpuscles (the leucocytes), the cell protoplasm sends out fine or coarse processses which divide or fuse with one another, causing the cell to assume a great variety of forms. The processes may be retracted, or they may become attached somewhere and draw the remainder of the cell body after them, the result of which is locomotion or the so-called *wandering* of the cell. Such wandering cells play an important part in the economy of the animal body. Their processes can flow around granules or cells and thus enclose them in protoplasm. Some of these ingested bodies may be assimilated by the cell as a result of complex chemical and osmotic reactions. Cells which feed on foreign particles and can alter or digest them are known as *phagocytes*. Amœboid movements take place very slowly. In preparations from warm-blooded animals they may be accelerated by gently heating the object.

Another form of motion is that which occurs within the protoplasm of fresh cells, whether living or dead, and consists in a rapid oscillation of minute granules, due to diffusion currents. Although these movements were first observed within protoplasm, it was soon shown that they occurred when various inert particles were suspended in a liquid. Robert Brown described the motion in 1828, in an essay entitled "On the General Existence of Active Molecules in Organic and Inorganic Bodies," and the phenomenon is called the molecular or Brownian movement. It may often be seen in salivary corpuscles.

FORMATION AND REPRODUCTION OF CELLS

In the past, two sorts of cell formation have been recognized, namely the spontaneous generation of cells, and the origin of cells through the division of pre-existing cells. According to the theory of spontaneous generation it was once thought that animals as highly organized as intestinal worms came into existence from the fermentation of the intestinal contents. After this had been disproved, it was still thought that unicellular animals arose spontaneously and that cells might be formed directly from a suitable fluid, the cytoblastema. Something of the sort may have occurred when life began, and it is the expectation of certain investigators that conditions may yet be produced which shall lead to the formation of organic bodies capable of growth and reproduction. At present, however, only one source of cells is recognized—the division of existing cells. "Omnis cellula e cellula." A nucleus likewise can arise only by the division of an existing nucleus; it cannot be formed from non-nucleated protoplasm.

Amitosis

Amitosis, also called direct cell division, rarely occurs. The name implies that the process takes place without the "threads" which accompany the more common form of cell division to be described presently. The nucleus merely becomes increasingly constricted until it is divided in two. Preceding the division of the nucleus the nucleolus, if present, may divide also and supply each half of the nucleus. The centrosome, when seen at all, remains passive, usually between the nuclear halves. It has been suggested that amitotic division is resorted to when the centrosome, as such, is not present in the cell (certain ciliated cells). A new cell wall completing the division has rarely been reported.

Conklin (Biol. Bull., 1919, vol. 33, pp. 396–436) does not consider this form of nuclear division a true cell division. He explains the apparent amitosis as an attempt to increase the nuclear surface within a cell, for metabolic purposes, as in the lobulated nuclei of some blood cells. After injurious treatment of cells during the usual form of division he found occasionally a scattering of nuclear material. He therefore considers the various forms seen in amitosis as the result of modified mitosis.

Binucleate cells or those with bipartite nucleus are not sufficient proof of cell division. The inactivity of the chromatin and the almost inevitably unequal distribution of the nuclear contents which would result from a simple division of the nucleus, when compared with the careful regulation in these respects to be presently described, make it extremely doubtful if amitosis is really cell division.

Mitosis

Mitosis, also called indirect division and karyokinesis, is the ordinary mode of cell division. It is an elaborate process apparently designed to insure the equal division of the essential portions of the nucleus between the daughter cells. This is accompanied by the production of certain filaments, and the name *mitosis* (Greek, μίτος, a thread) indicates this feature. In direct division or *amitosis* these filaments are not developed. Although mitosis is a continuous process, it has been conveniently divided into four successive phases—the *prophase*, *metaphase*, *anaphase*, and *telophase*. During the prophase the chromatic material of the nucleus prepares for division and collects in the center of the cell. It is divided in halves in the metaphase, and the two halves move apart during the anaphase. The chromatic material becomes reconstructed into resting nuclei during the telophase. The various patterns which the chromatic material and protoplasmic fibrils present during these phases are known as *mitotic figures*.

Mitotic figures are found in all rapidly growing tissues, but especially favorable for preliminary study are the large cells in the root tips of plants. In longitudinal sections of root tips, the cells are cut at right angles to the plane of cell division, which is desirable; and often in a single section 5 mm. long, all the fundamental stages may be quickly located. The following general description of mitosis is based upon such easily obtained preparations, and the plant selected is the spiderwort (*Tradescantia virginiana*) following the article by Farmer and Shove (Quart. Journ. Micr. Sc., 1905, vol. 48, pp. 559–569).[1] They may be satisfactorily stained with saffranin, or with iron hæmatoxylin and a counter stain such as orange G.

The cells to be described are found in the interior of the root tip, just back of the protecting cap of cells which covers its extremity. They are oblong in shape and their long axis corresponds with that of the root. The walls are very distinct, and the cells consist of granular vacuolated protoplasm, which in preserved specimens is generally irregularly shrunken.

The resting cells (Fig. 11, A) contain large round nuclei in which the chromatin is in the form of fine granules evenly distributed throughout the nucleus. A nucleus usually contains from two to five round nucleoli, each of which, when in focus, is seen to be surrounded by a clear zone. The nuclear membrane is distinct.

Prophase. The first indication of approaching division is a change in the chromatin, which becomes gathered into fewer and coarser granules and takes a deeper stain. Portions of the linin network break down, so that the chromatin granules come to be arranged in long convoluted threads. Such threads are developing in the cell, Fig. 11, B, but are more perfectly formed in C. It is possible that at a certain stage the nucleus contains only a single continuous thread, but this condition cannot be demonstrated in Tradescantia. The stage of nuclear division in which the chromatic material appears to be arranged in a coiled thread or skein is called a *spireme*. The "close spireme" (B) is succeeded by the "loose spireme" (C). Successive stages in the development of the spireme in animal cells are seen in Fig. 17, D, E, and F.

---

[1] Good specimens may be obtained from any rapidly growing root tip. Those starting from hyacinth bulbs placed in water are very favorable. Onion root tips have been extensively used, and also those of bean and corn seedlings. The pointed ends are snipped off and dropped into Flemming's stronger solution.

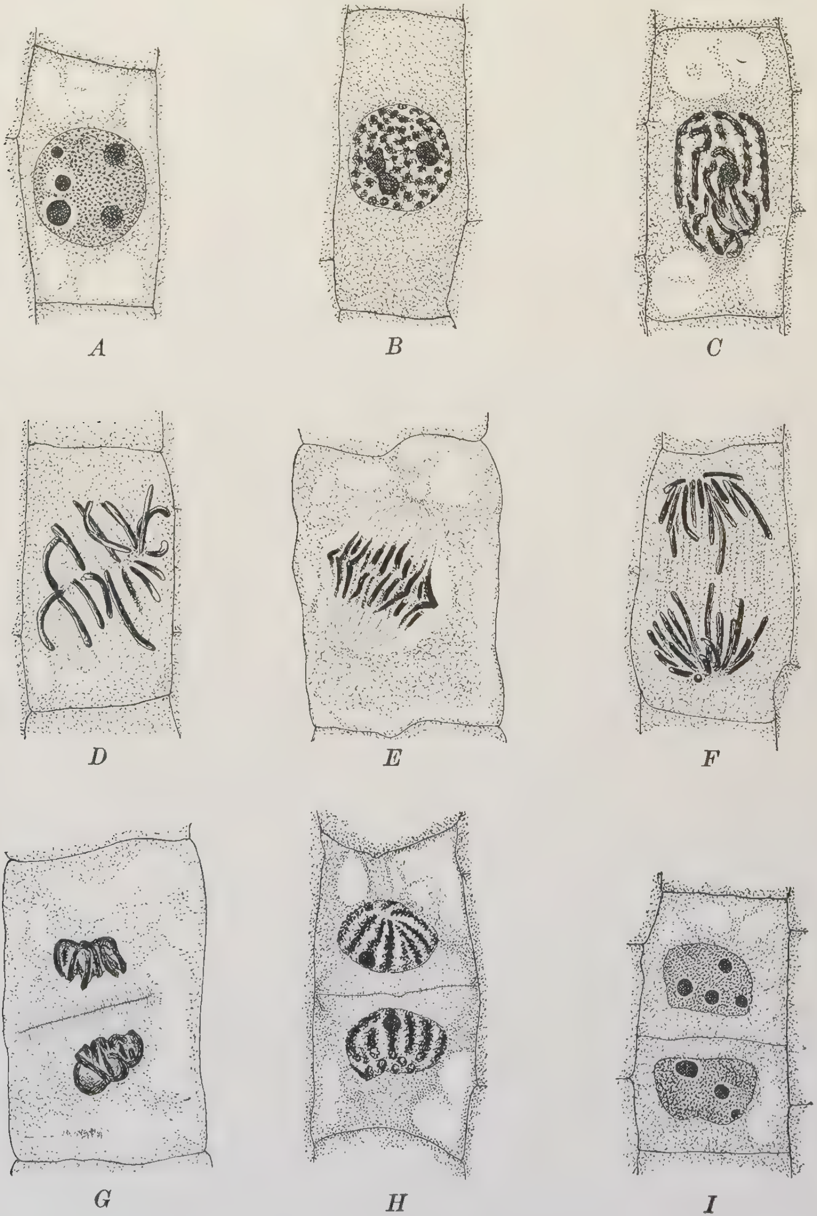


Fig. 11.—Mitotic Cell Division in the Root Tip of *Tradescantia virginiana*. × 125 diam. **A**, resting cell; **B, C, D**, prophase; **E**, metaphase; **F**, anaphase; **G, H, I**, telophase.

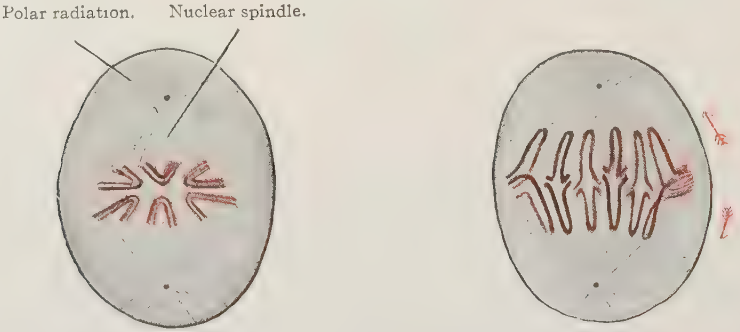
As the spireme develops, the nuclear membrane becomes less distinct, and the clear zones disappear from around the nucleoli. The nucleoli become apparently less regular in outline, and forms which suggest that two of them have fused (Fig. 11, B) are perhaps more frequently seen than in resting cells. Usually it is stated that the nucleoli break up into smaller bodies toward the time of their dissolution, and that some of these escape into the cytoplasm after the disappearance of the nuclear membrane. If one considers, with McClung, that nucleoli, linin, and nuclear membrane are all chromatin in different states, their disappearance merely denotes an altered condition and the accumulation of all the nuclear material in the coiled thread. The thread appears beaded, as certain masses of its chromatin are larger than others, and those beads soon divide longitudinally to form pairs, so that the thread appears double. Certain of the larger masses fuse and become smoother, separating from other parts of the thread, which is thus segmented into a number of individual bodies, the *chromosomes*.

In the stage shown in Fig. 11, D, which may be regarded as the end of the prophase, the chromosomes are present. They are straight or curved rods of different lengths. Sometimes they appear as bent V-shaped bodies, but these often represent two chromosomes with their ends together. J-shaped forms, with one long and one short arm, have been described in various plants. These shapes are apparently not the result of chance, but are constant in their individual variations. Every cell of any one type of plant or animal shows, during mitosis, a certain number of chromosomes, every one recognizable by its individual shape and character, and alike in all cells. Every chromosome, since it is formed by the coalescence of longitudinally divided "beads" is itself formed of two closely apposed halves. Usually this is hard to demonstrate, but occasionally the ends of the chromosomes are seen to be slightly cleft.

The chromosomes become so arranged that one end of the rods, or the apex of the V is situated in the equatorial plane, which extends transversely across the middle of the cell. Often it is temporarily tilted (as in D and E) as if the mitotic apparatus had shifted to a position in which it obtained more space. It may do this mechanically if the contents of the cell are under pressure. When the chromosomes are gathered at or in the equatorial plane, they constitute collectively the *equatorial plate*. Because of their stellate arrangement at this stage, which is best seen in transverse sections of the cell, this mitotic figure is known as the *aster*.

Metaphase. In the metaphase (Fig. 11, E), the two longitudinal halves of each chromosome are being drawn apart toward the opposite poles of the cell. If the chromosome is V-shaped, the separation of the two halves begins at the apex of the V.

At this stage an achromatic figure, known as the *spindle*, is evident in plant cells, but it is more sharply defined in those of animals. As seen in the diagram (Fig. 12), it consists of fibrils which pass from the equatorial plate toward either pole, where, in animal cells, there is a well-defined granule, the centrosome. Around each centrosome there are radiating protoplasmic fibrils, forming the *polar radiation* (Fig. 12). The polar radiation is also called an aster, and the two asters connected by the spindle are known as the *amphiaster*. Some of the spindle fibers are attached to the chromosomes and appear to pull their halves apart; others pass from pole to pole without connecting with the chromosomes. In animal cells the spindle arises as the two centrosomes, lying beside the nucleus, move apart (Fig. 17, A). As they pass to the opposite poles of the nucleus, the spindle forms between them.



EARLY METAPHASE. LATE METAPHASE.

FIG. 12.

In the cells of root tips, a condensation of protoplasm forms a cap at the poles of the nucleus at the time when the nuclear membrane and nucleoli are disappearing. From the "polar cap," spindle fibers develop which invade the nucleus, and also radiations which have been traced even to the cell walls. A definite centrosome, however, probably does not exist in the higher plants.

According to Chambers (Gen. Cytol., 1924) the spindle, though giving in fixed material the appearance of colorless fibrils, is in the living cell a hyaline body with no visible structure, but varying in viscosity from the surrounding cytoplasm. In the plant cell it is of a jelly-like consistency, while in the insect cell it is more fluid; but in both it can be separated from the cytoplasm and still retain its shape. The chromosomes are held in the viscid mass. The fibrils seen in fixed cells merely represent the coagulation of the colloid material, but are nevertheless important indications of lines of stress or local variations in viscosity. Somewhat similar figures can be seen in fields between two magnetic poles, but it is not necessary to conclude that mitosis is the result of magnetic energy.

Anaphase. In the anaphase the halves of each chromosome move to the opposite poles (Fig. 11, F). The figure thus produced is known as a double star or *diaster*. Since each chromosome has divided into two, the original number of chromosomes is preserved, and an equal number will be found in either star. They cannot all be brought into focus together, and because of overlapping, they are hard to count. Sometimes one chromosome, longer than the others, remains for a time as a continuous bar from one aster to the other. Between the asters there are always straight spindle fibers, but they vary in distinctness. (The anaphase in an animal cell is well shown in Fig. 18, D.)

Telophase. After the chromosomes have reached the opposite poles, they form two dense masses. They are generally said to unite end to end, thus forming a spireme thread. Immediately after the anaphase the chromosomes form a very compact mass, easily overstained so that it appears solid. Subsequently the mass enlarges (Fig. 11, H), and the chromosomes become coarsely granular, taking the form of wide bands. Every chromosome is thought by some authors to swell to a vesicle (see lower nucleus in H), and the closer approximation or fusion of these vesicles so disguises their individuality that they cannot later be recognized. The resting nucleus would thus contain all the individual chromosomes, but in disguised form. Rabl long ago suggested that the chromosomes persist in the resting nucleus, although disguised by lateral branches or in diffuse granular form. Others consider that they are formed anew at each cell division, and lose their individuality again in the telophase, not being present as chromosomes in any form in the resting nucleus. Whatever the correct interpretation, the spireme dissolves into the scattered chromatin granules. The nucleoli reappear, usually at first at the edge of the nucleus. Finally the nuclear membrane reappears.

In animal cells a constriction of the wall occurs at the equator between the two daughter nuclei. This leads ultimately to the separation into two cells. But in plants, probably because of the stiffness of the cell walls, the new wall arises as a series of thickenings of the interzonal spindle fibers, which at this stage form a barrel-shaped bundle (Fig. 11, G). The thickenings coalesce to form a membrane which does not at first reach the sides of the cell. While this wall is developing the nuclei are in a condition resembling the spireme stage of the prophase. The entire mitotic figure is therefore called the double spireme or *dispireme.* The cell wall is soon completed and the nuclei return to the resting condition (Fig. 11, I).

The time required for mitotic cell division varies from half an hour (in man) to five hours (in amphibia). After death, if the tissues are not hardened by cold or reagents, it is thought that mitoses go on to completion. Forty-eight hours may elapse before they entirely disappear from the human body.

Pluri-polar mitosis. Under abnormal conditions, as in the cancer cells shown in Fig. 13, spindles may develop simultaneously in connection with three or four centrosomes. Similar pluri-polar spindles have been produced experimentally, by treating cells with various poisonous solutions. An unequal distribution of chromatin may occur under such conditions, and this may happen also with bipolar spindles, as shown in Fig. 13, a.

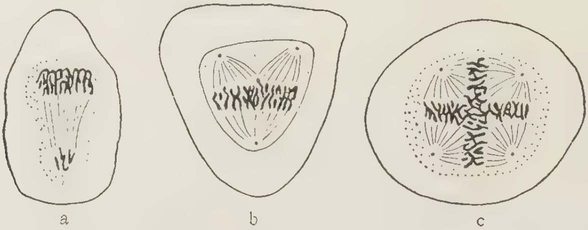


Fig. 13.—Mitoses in Human Cancer Cells. (From Wilson, after Galeotti.)
a, Asymmetrical mitosis with unequal distribution of chromatin; **b**, tripolar mitosis; **c**, quadripolar mitosis

Number and individuality of the chromosomes. It is now generally believed that every species of plant or animal has a fixed and characterisitic number of chromosomes, which regularly recurs in the division of all its cells, with the exception of the germ cells, in which the number is reduced. In certain species, however, the two sexes regularly differ from one another in the number of their chromosomes, and one sex may contain an odd number. Usually the number of chromosomes is believed to be even.

There is considerable difficulty in counting the chromosomes. Generally it is possible that some have been cut away in the process of sectioning, so that, if the number is believed to be invariable, the highest number found in any cell is assumed to occur regularly. Another source of error lies in the fact that a bent chromosome may be counted as two, or rods with their ends overlapping may appear as one. In the frog the number of chromosomes is reported as twenty-six in the female, twenty-five in the male. In the grasshopper the numbers are given as twenty-four and twenty-three. In man Painter (Journ. Exp. Zool., 1923, vol. 37, pp. 291–334) places the number at forty-eight. In the worm ascaris two chromosomes have been recognized. There is some indication that the number increases with the complexity of the animal.

Among the lizards Painter (loc. cit., vol. 34, pp. 281–318) recognizes macrochromosomes and microchromosomes (large and small) and finds that all of the Iguanidae have twelve macrochromosomes, of which at least three pairs are strikingly alike in all species of the genus, whereas the number of microchromosomes varies in the different species. In some closely allied varieties of plants the number of chromosomes seems to run in numerical sequence, seven in one variety, fourteen and twenty-one in two other varieties. In two species of minnow the chromosomes vary in size, and can be recognized in hybrids by this characteristic.

Not only is the number of chromosomes in each cell of a given species believed to be constant, but they appear to form a definite series, the members of which differ somewhat in shape and size. Moreover, they occur in pairs of similar size and shape, but the two members of a pair need not lie side by side. The examination of the minnow hybrids referred to above shows that one chromosome of each pair is derived from each parent. More detailed analysis of the individual chromosomes (Morgan, in many papers) reveals a further subdivision into "chromomeres," swellings of the chromatic material linearly arranged along the chromosome in certain stages of its development (Compare Fig. 16). These have been identified in thirteen generations of one species of grasshopper (Wenreich). The chromomeres are supposed to carry individual characteristics, which may be transmitted to the offspring. This "chromosomal theory of heredity" has long been discussed, and is ably given by McClung (Gen. Cytology, 1924, p. 611).

In addition to a definite number of pairs of chromosomes an extra body is often noticed. The difference in the number of chromosomes recorded for the male and female of some species is due to the presence of this "accessory chromosome," which, according to McClung's hypothesis, now well established, is the bearer of those qualities which determine sex. It is now known that an unpaired chromosome is not present in all species, a dissimilar pair serving the same purpose; the "sex chromosome" may be considered as attached to one of the pair, but the chromosome number would be alike in both sexes.

This difference is indicated by the formula X-O, where the accessory chromosome (X) has no mate, and X-Y, where both the accessory and a dissimilar mate (Y) are present. In man the sex chromosomes are of the X-Y type, and the number forty-eight for both sexes. Although in the opossum Painter could establish the fact that the smaller chromosome of the pair denotes the female, he is not sure whether this is also true in man.

Recently Riddle (Anat. Record, 1925, vol. 30, pp. 365–384) has discussed sex reversal in the bird. Testicular tissue, according to this author, develops in birds from which the left ovary has been removed. Among lower animals the presence of male and female gonads in one individual is recognized. It is interesting to speculate on the relation of the sex chromosome in these instances. The student may be referred to a discussion of the subject in Jordan and Kindred's Embryology, 1926, pp. 321–327.

The great importance of accurate knowledge of the chromosomes is shown by the following considerations. As a result of mitotic cell division, it is evident that every new cell regularly receives one-half of each chromosome found in the parent cell, and thus the number of chromosomes remains constant. But in the germ cells the number is invariably reduced, and in some animals it becomes exactly one-half of the number found elsewhere in the body. In such a case, when the male sexual cell, or *spermatozoon*, unites with the female sexual cell, or *mature ovum*, in the process of fertilization, the original number is restored. Each parent thus contributes one-half of the chromosomes found in the cell which gives rise to a new individual; and since each of these divides with every subsequent cell division, it is evident that one-half of the chromatin in every cell of the adult body is of maternal origin and one-half of paternal origin. The process by which the sexual cells acquire the reduced number of chromosomes and become ready for fertilization is known as *maturation.* The production of the sexual cells in the male is called *spermatogenesis* and in the female *oögenesis.*

SPERMATOGENESIS

In its essential features, the process of spermatogenesis in insects corresponds with that in mammals, and very favorable material can be obtained in abundance from grasshoppers of various genera.

As seen in sections, each lobe of the testis of the grasshopper contains a considerable number of closed sacs or cysts, which are filled with sexual cells; and all the cells within a cyst are in approximately the same stage of development. The cysts are shown in Fig. 14, which represents a longitudinal section of a single lobe. Usually the testis is sectioned as a whole, and the specimen consists of a group of lobes cut transversely or obliquely. Cross sections from the apical portion, furthest from the outlet, will contain younger stages than the sections lower down in the lobe, since the cysts form at the apex and gradually move downward. At the apex, according to Davis, there is an *apical cell* which is surrounded by young sexual cells known as *spermatogonia* (Fig. 14, a). The spermatogonia move away from the apical cell, and each becomes enclosed in a cyst-wall derived from the surrounding tissue. Within the cysts thus formed, the spermatogonia multiply, and the cysts in the upper part of the lobe are filled with spermatogonia (Fig. 14, b). After repeated divisions the spermatogonia pass through a period of growth, accompanied by a rearrangement of their nuclear contents. The large cells with characteristic nuclei which are thus produced, are known as *primary spermatocytes.* They fill the cysts further down in the lobe (Fig. 14, c). Each primary spermatocyte divides into two *secondary spermatocytes*, and each of these divides into two *spermatids*, after which no further cell division is possible until fertilization takes place. But each spermatid becomes transformed from a round cell into a linear body with a whip-like tail, and is then capable of independent motion. Since in this form these cells were once thought to

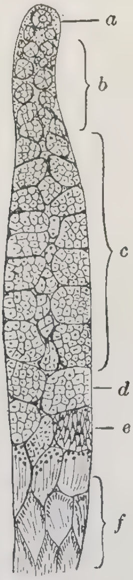


FIG. 14.—LOBE OF THE TESTIS OF A GRASSHOPPER. ×50. (After Davis.)
a, apical cell.
b, spermatogonia.
c, spermatocytes.
d, spermatocytes dividing.
e, spermatids.
f, spermatozoa.

be parasitic animals living in the spermatic fluid, they received the name *spermatozoa*, which they still retain.[1] Cysts containing spermatozoa occur near the outlet of the lobe, or if the grasshoppers are collected late in the season, they may be found throughout most of the testis. Specimens from young grasshoppers, in which the spermatocyte divisions are abundant, are more desirable, even though no spermatozoa have become fully developed.

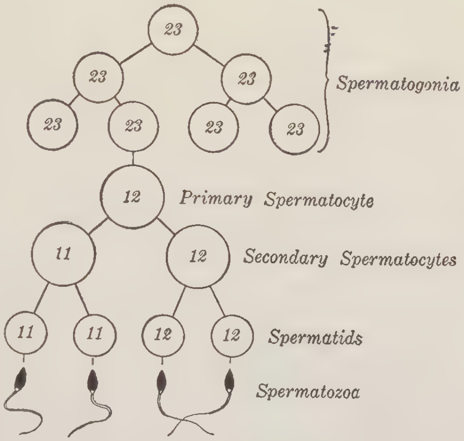


Fig. 15.—Diagram of the Cell Divisions in Spermatogenesis.
The figures indicate the number of chromosomes found in the cells of certain grasshoppers.

The succession of cell divisions described in the preceding paragraph is shown in tabular form in Fig. 15. Except for the number of chromosomes within the various cells, this diagram is quite as applicable to man as to the grasshopper. In this figure, however, only two spermatogonial divisions have been included. The number of times which the spermatogonia may divide before becoming spermatocytes is considerable and presumably indefinite. As seen in sections, the spermatogonia, spermatocytes, and spermatids may be described as follows, using for illustrations Davis's figures of a common grasshopper—*Dissosteira carolina.*

Spermatogonia. The nucleus of each spermatogonium contains the full number of chromosomes, which in most of the grasshoppers (Acrididæ) is 23. With every spermatogonial division, each chromosome is split lengthwise. In this and other respects the mitotic figures are quite like those occurring elsewhere in the body. They are shown in Fig. 17, A, B, and C. When the twenty-three chromosomes have formed the equatorial plate, it is sometimes possible to see all of them in a single transverse section of the cell (Fig. 16, A), and it is at this time that the chromosomal pairs and sex chromosomes are most readily recognized.

Primary spermatocytes. After the last spermatogonial division, the cells begin their "growth period." At this time the chromatin tends to collect on one side of the nucleus, in a condition known as *synapsis* (or more recently as synizesis). This distribution of the chromatin has been frequently observed, but it has not been shown to be of special significance. In the primary spermatocytes drawn in Fig. 17, D, E, and F, the chromatin is evenly distributed. All of the chromosomes, except the accessory chromosome, have become filamentous, but the accessory chromosome remains as a compact, darkly staining body close to the nuclear membrane. It resembles a nucleolus, for which in fact it has been mistaken. True nucleoli may occur in these cells, together with the accessory chromosome, but they stain differently.

---

[1] It has been proposed to substitute the term *spermium* for *spermatozoon;* and consequently *spermiocyte, spermid*, etc., for spermatocyte and spermatid. The secondary spermatocytes are sometimes called præspermatids or præspermids; but these changes in names are of questionable value.

As the primary spermatocytes prepare for the next division, the spireme becomes resolved into *eleven* loops, each of which represents the two members of a pair of chromosomes joined end to end. The granules imbedded in the linin thread divide as usual, so that each loop contains a double row of granules (Fig. 17, F). These loops contract to form eleven chromosomes, which, because of their four parts, are known as *tetrads.* The structure of the tetrads is shown in Fig. 16, B–G. The filaments seen in the upper row of drawings contract into corresponding solid forms of chromosomes seen in the lower row, in which the place of attachment to the spindle fibers has been indicated.

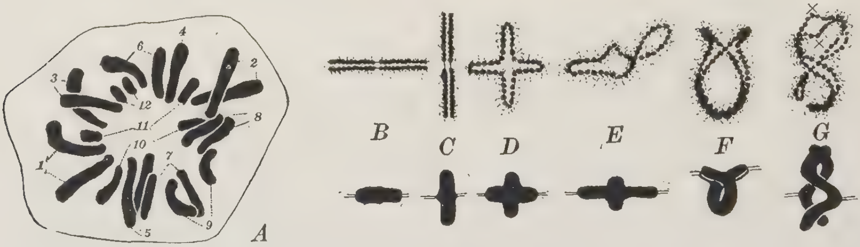


Fig. 16.—**A,** Polar View of the Metaphase of a Spermatogonial Division in *Dissosteira carolina* × 1450. (After Davis.) The pairs of chromosomes have been numbered. **B–G,** various forms of tetrads, from primary spermatocytes. (After Davis and Robertson.)

Each tetrad represents two chromosomes joined end to end and split lengthwise. The simplest forms are shown in Fig. 16, B and C, which illustrate respectively two ways in which the tetrad may later divide. The two component chromosomes may simply be pulled apart, as indicated in Fig 16, B, in which the spindle fibers are attached to the ends of the rod. If this takes place, each secondary spermatocyte will receive one member of every pair of chromosomes which occurred in the spermatogonium, but no part of the other member. Such a division, which eliminates one-half of the chromosomes from the daughter cell, is known as a *reductional division.* The other form of chromosome division is known as *equational.* When it takes place, every chromosome divides lengthwise, and the daughter cells receive one-half of every chromosome in the parent cell. This occurs in ordinary cell division, and also in the division of the tetrads provided that the spindle fibers are attached to the place where the two component chromosomes come together (Fig. 16, C). As a stage in the separation of the two halves of a rod-shaped tetrad, cross-shaped forms are produced (Fig. 16, D). If the separation is almost complete, such shapes are seen as in Fig. 16, E. The arms of the tetrad which are not attached to the spindle fibers may bend toward one another and unite, so as to form rings (F), or they may twist about like a figure 8, as shown in G. If the spindle fibers are attached to the points xx in the

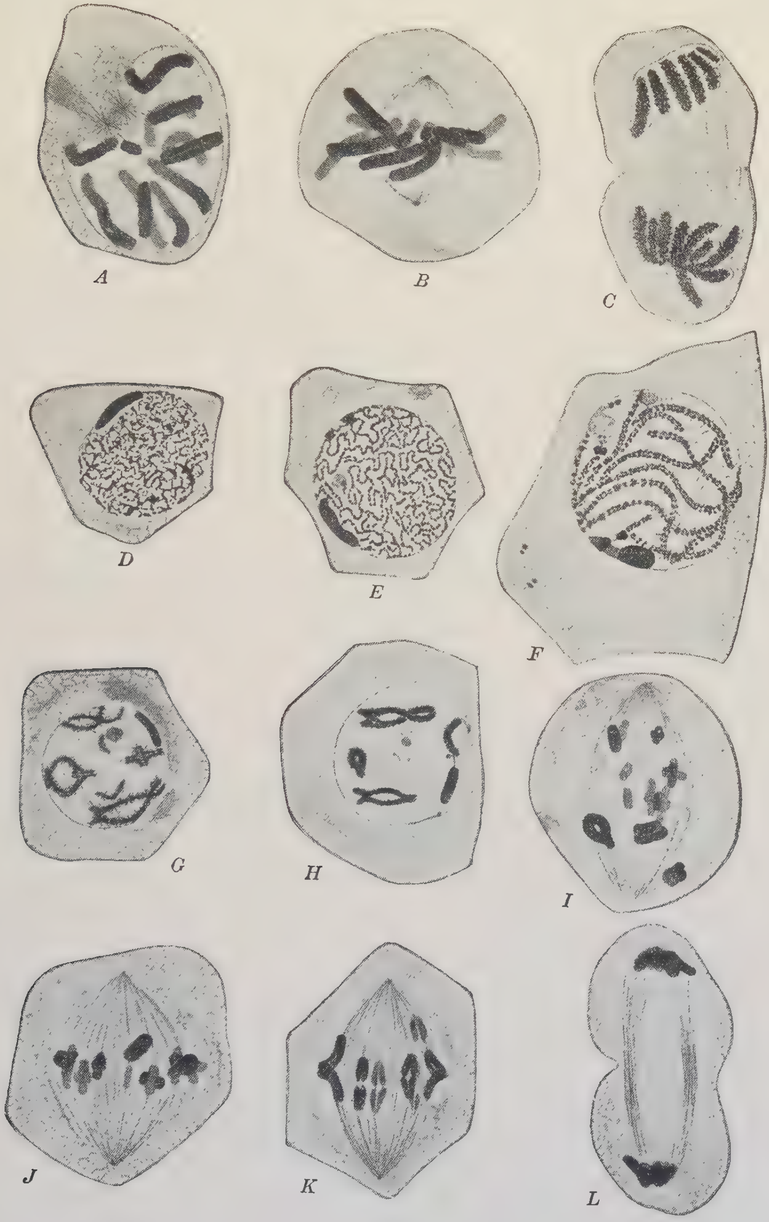


FIG. 17.—SPERMATOGENESIS IN *Dissosteira carolina*. A–F × 1450; G–L × 966. (Davis.) A, B, C, prophase, metaphase, and telophase of a spermatogonial division. D–L, successive stages in the division of a primary spermatocyte into secondary spermatocytes.

upper figure in G, the division will be equational; if as shown in the lower figure it will be reductional.

Usually it is considered that the division of the tetrads into double bodies or *dyads*, is equational, and that the division of the dyads, which takes place when the secondary spermatocytes divide, is reductional. According to Davis, however, the first division of the tetrads is reductional and the second division is equational. In either case the end-result is the same. Each spermatid will contain one of the four parts of each tetrad, and thus one member of every pair of chromosomes will be eliminated from any given spermatid.

Since in the testis tetrads occur only in the primary spermatocytes, the cells shown in Fig. 17, G–J, are easily identified. These are successive stages in the division of the primary spermatocyte. In G the accessory chromosome is seen as a rod-shaped body above and to the right; in H it is below and to the right. In J it is obliquely placed just above the equatorial plate and in K it is passing to the upper pole of the spindle. In the spermatogonial divisions the accessory chromosome always divides with the others; but in the division of the primary spermatocyte it passes undivided into one of the daughter cells. Thus one secondary spermatocyte will receive eleven chromosomes (dyads) and the other will receive twelve (eleven dyads and the accessory chromosome). In the late anaphase shown in Fig. 17, L, the accessory chromosome cannot be recognized. In animals with the X-Y type of accessory chromosomes, one of the unmatched pair passes to each daughter cell, and the number is equal in both.

Secondary spermatocytes. The secondary spermatocytes pass rapidly from the condition shown in Fig. 17, L, to that of Fig. 18, A. A nuclear membrane has developed, and the dyads have become somewhat filamentous. Without passing through a complete resting stage they proceed to divide as shown in Fig. 18, B–F. The dyads separate into their component halves. In those secondary spermatocytes which received the accessory chromosome, that body will be seen dividing with the dyads, and each spermatid will receive one-half of it. It has been questioned whether the division of the accessory chromosome is longitudinal and therefore equational, or transverse and reductional. Many cytologists consider that if a chromosome splits lengthwise, all of its parts will be represented in the resulting halves, but if it divides transversely, essential elements will be lost. This conception lends importance to the question of transverse or longitudinal division of the accessory chromosome. By the division of this chromosome it comes about that one-half of the spermatids contain twelve chromosomes, and one-half contain eleven, as indicated in the diagram, Fig. 15. The spermatids shown in Fig. 18, F, contain the accessory chromosome.

Spermatids and Spermatozoa. In forming spermatozoa, the spermatids become elongated, passing from the condition shown in Fig. 18, F, to that of Fig. 18, G. The chromatin within the nucleus is distributed in fine granules throughout the linin reticulum. Close to the nuclear membrane a small dark body has appeared, from which a slender filament has grown out. This body is usually described as the centrosome. A condensation

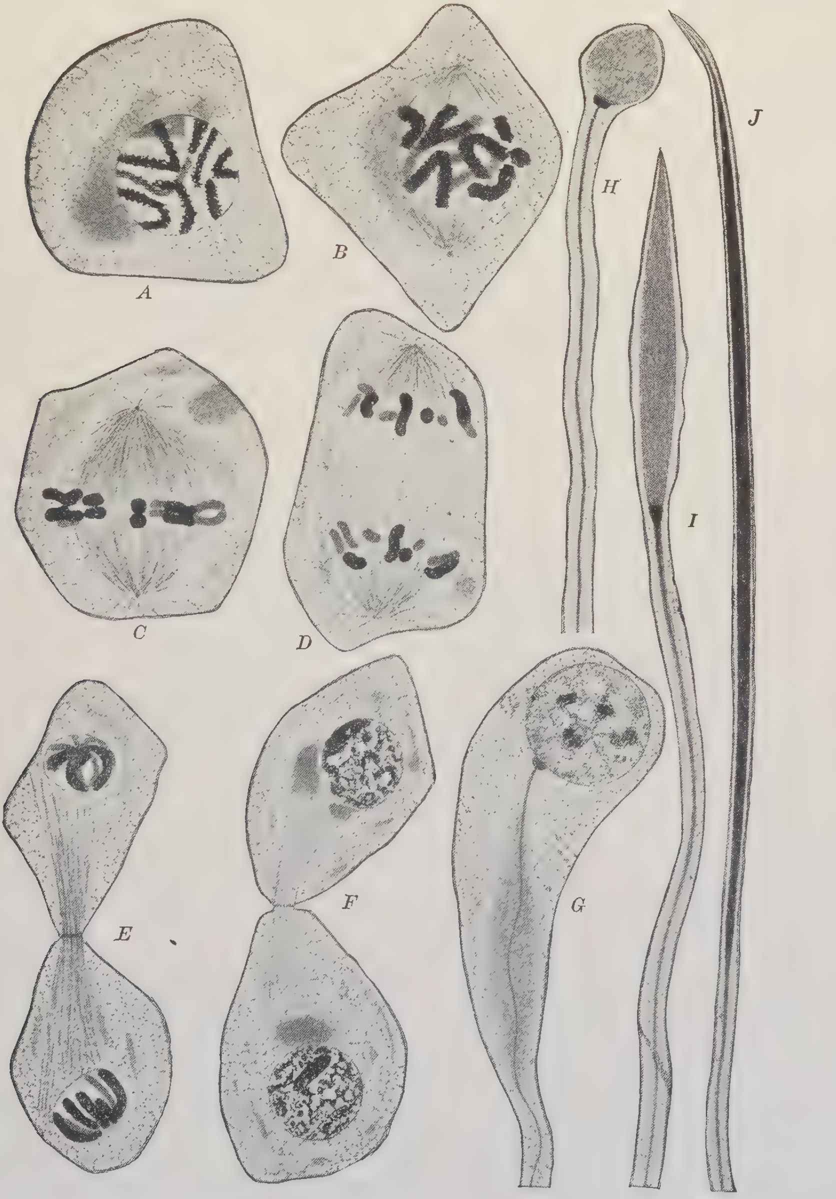


FIG. 18.—SPERMATOGENESIS IN *Dissosteira carolina.* ×1450. (Davis.) **A–F,** successive stages in the division of a secondary spermatocyte into spermatids. G–J, successive stages in the transformation of spermatids into spermatozoa.

within the cytoplasm, seen also in F, is known as the *paranucleus*. It is of uncertain origin, but may proceed from the cytoplasmic structure called mitochondrium. The paranucleus forms a sheath about the axial filament.

Successively later stages are shown in Fig. 18, H, I, and J. The chromatin within the nucleus becomes homogeneous and very dense; at the same time the nucleus elongates and forms the *head* of the spermatozoon. This is enveloped by the cell membrane, but there is no appreciable layer of protoplasm around it. The centrosome elongates and forms the *middle piece* of the spermatozoon; and the axial filament, with a covering derived from the paranucleus and cytoplasm, constitutes the *tail*. Only a portion of the tail is included in the figure. The human spermatozoon likewise consists of a head, which is essentially the nucleus, a middle piece containing the centrosome, and a tail; but the form of the head is very different from that in the grasshopper. It will be described in a later chapter.

Although the spermatozoa of the grasshopper appear alike, it has been shown that one-half of them contain eleven chromosomes, and one-half contain twelve. The mature ova all contain twelve chromosomes. If a spermatozoon with eleven chromosomes unites with an ovum with twelve, a male animal will be produced, in every cell of which there will be twenty-three chromosomes. But if the spermatozoon contains twelve chromosomes, a female animal is formed, containing twenty-four chromosomes in every cell. Thus sex appears to be determined by the presence or absence of a chromosome within the spermatozoon, or by the difference in one chromosome of the X-Y type.

Oögenesis

Mature ova result from a succession of cell divisions closely comparable with those which produce spermatozoa. The primitive female sexual cells correspond with the spermatogonia, and are called *oögonia*. They are provided with the full number of chromosomes, and divide an indefinite number of times. After a period of growth they become *primary oöcytes*, in which the number of chromosomes is reduced one-half. The primary oöcytes divide to form *secondary oöcytes;* and these again divide to produce the *mature ova*, which are incapable of further division unless fertilization takes place. (The term *ovum* is ordinarily loosely applied, so that it includes not only the mature cells, but also oöcytes, and the clusters of cells resulting from the division of the fertilized ovum.)

Although the mature ovum and the spermatozoon are closely similar in their nuclear constitution, they differ radically as to form, size, and cytoplasmic structure. The ova are very large cells, stored with nutriment for the embryo which each one may later produce. In the higher vertebrates they are formed in relatively small numbers. According to Hensen's estimate, about two hundred, ready for fertilization, are produced by the human female in a life-time. But the male, according to Lode, produces 340 billion spermatozoa, or, as stated by Waldeyer, nearly 850 million per ovum. A large number must be produced, since many will fail to traverse the uterus and tube so as to find the ovum at the time of its discharge from the ovary. The ova of lower vertebrates, which are fertilized and develop outside of the body, are discharged in great numbers; in certain fishes from three to four million are produced annually.

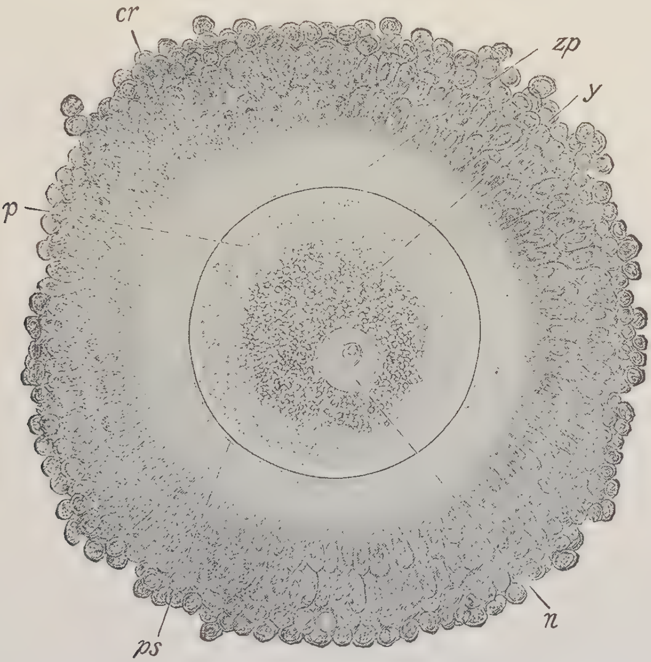


Fig. 19.—The Ovum as Discharged from a Vesicular Follicle of an Excised Ovary of a Woman Thirty Years of Age. Examined fresh in the liquor folliculi. (Nagel.)

c. r., Corona radiata composed of cells of the follicle; **n.**, nucleus; **p.**, granular protoplasm; **p. s.**, perivitelline space; **y.**, yolk; **z. p.**, zona pellucida. (From McMurrich's "Embryology.")

The multiplication of oögonia in the human ovary takes place before birth, and about fifty thousand are produced. At birth, or shortly thereafter, all the oögonia have become primary oöcytes (Keibel). At first the oöcytes are small, but they enlarge at varying rates, and the largest are indistinguishable from mature ova except by their nuclear contents. Since some grow more rapidly than others, the ovary in childhood contains primary oöcytes of many sizes. Each oöcyte becomes enclosed in a cyst or follicle. The way in which these follicles develop, and the manner in which the oöcyte escapes into the uterine tube by the rupture of these follicles, will be described in connection with the ovary. Between the cells of the follicle and the oöcyte, there is a broad, radially striated membrane, known as the *zona pellucida* or zona radiata (Fig. 19). This zona has sometimes been regarded as a cell membrane, but the oöcyte divides within it as if enclosed in a capsule. It does not invest the daughter cells like a membrane. The radial striations have been interpreted as slender canals containing processes of the follicular cells, and the zona has been considered as a product of these cells. In certain cases a perivitelline space has been described as encircling the oöcyte and thus separating it from the zona, but this space has been considered as artificial, or as a refractive line wrongly interpreted as a space.

The cytoplasm of the oöcyte becomes charged with yolk granules or spherules. They constitute the *deuteroplasm* (or deutoplasm), but this term is equally applicable to fat droplets and other secondary products of the protoplasm. In the human oöcyte the granules are centrally placed (Fig. 19), and they are so transparent, when fresh, as to cause only a slight opacity. In the eggs of many animals the yolk is more highly developed, and it may be evenly distributed or gathered at one pole. Within the cytoplasm of the developing oöcyte, a large dark body of radiate structure is sometimes conspicuous. It is inappropriately known as the *yolk nucleus*, and is probably a derivative of the centrosome and surrounding archoplasm. Other "vitelline bodies," of uncertain origin and significance, have been described. Some have been considered as nuclear extrusions.

The nucleus of the oöcyte is very large and vesicular. The chromatin occurs chiefly along the nuclear membrane and about the nucleolus. The nucleolus is also very large, and Nagel stated that in the fresh condition it exhibits amœboid movements, but this observation has not been verified. The nuclei of the oöcytes ordinarily show no signs of mitosis, and they may remain in the resting condition for thirty years or more and then divide. Many of them, however, will degenerate without division.

The cell divisions which give rise to the secondary oöcyte and the mature ovum respectively, have never been observed in man. Some of the cells within the ovary may be secondary oöcytes and the cell shown in Fig. 19 may be of this sort, or possibly a mature ovum, but this cannot be determined. From what is known of other mammals, however, it may confidently be assumed that the cell divisions take place as shown in the diagram, Fig. 20.

When the primary oöcyte divides, the chromosomes, reduced in number, also divide and are equally distributed to the daughter cells; but the great mass of cytoplasm remains with one of these cells, namely, the secondary oöcyte. The other cell, which is relatively very small, is known as the *first polar body*, or polar cell. It has the same nuclear contents as the secondary oöcyte, and may divide into two other polar bodies, equivalent to mature ova. More often it degenerates without division. When the secondary oöcyte divides, it likewise produces one large cell, the *mature ovum*, and one small cell, the *second polar body*. The latter is said to be capable of fertilization, but to what extent it may develop is unknown. Functionally the production of polar bodies serves to prevent the subdivision and distribution of the nutritive material elaborated within the primary oöcyte. One mature ovum with abundant yolk is provided at the expense of three ova (polar bodies) which degenerate.

Although the maturation of the ovum has not been observed in man, nor even the presence of definite polar bodies, the entire process has been carefully studied in other mammals, notably in the mouse.[1] It has been shown that the maturation of the ovum of the mouse takes place rapidly, both of the oöcyte divisions being accomplished within from four to fifteen hours. The first polar body usually forms before the oöcyte is discharged from the ovarian follicle—in other words, before *ovulation* takes place. The second polar body is usually formed in the uterine tube, after the spermatozoon has entered the oöcyte. Long and Mark have found that the chromosomes of the primary oöcyte are tetrads, or bodies showing transverse and longitudinal divisions; and that those of the secondary oöcyte are dyads. They believe that the first division is transverse or reductional, and that the second is equational.

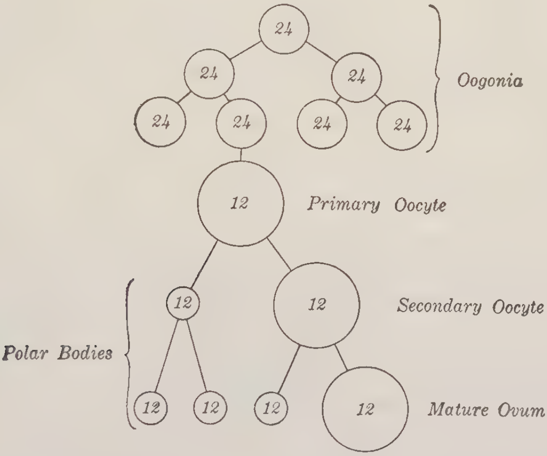


Fig. 20.—Diagram of the Cell Divisions in Oogenesis. (Compare with Fig. 15.)

The difficulty of counting chromosomes is apparent from the varying numbers which have been reported in the mouse. After reduction the number has been placed at 8, 12, 16, 18 and 20 by different observers.

The polar bodies in the mouse are relatively large. In the upper part of Fig. 21, A, a polar body is about to be formed, and it is completely cut off from the oöcyte in Fig. 21, C. In D and G, two polar bodies are shown.

---

[1] Among the most important papers are: Sobotta, J., Die Befruchtung und Furchung des Eies der Maus. Arch. mikr. Anat., 1895, vol. 45, pp. 15–91.

Long, J. A., and Mark, E. L. The maturation of the egg of the mouse. Carnegie Inst. Publ. No. 142, 1911, pp. 1–72.

FERTILIZATION

In the mouse, from six to ten hours after coitus, spermatozoa have made their way to the distal end of the uterine tube, where fertilization takes place. According to Long and Mark, the maturation of ova usually occurs at some time during the period from "13¾ to 28½ hours" after the mouse has given birth to a litter; and during the process of their maturation, the oöcytes are discharged from the ovary and enter the distal end of the tube. Here, if fertilization takes place, a single spermatozoon penetrates the zona pellucida. In a section obtained by Sobotta, the entrance of the spermatozoon has been partially accomplished (Fig. 21, B). Its tail lies outside of the zona, and appears to have become thickened. In

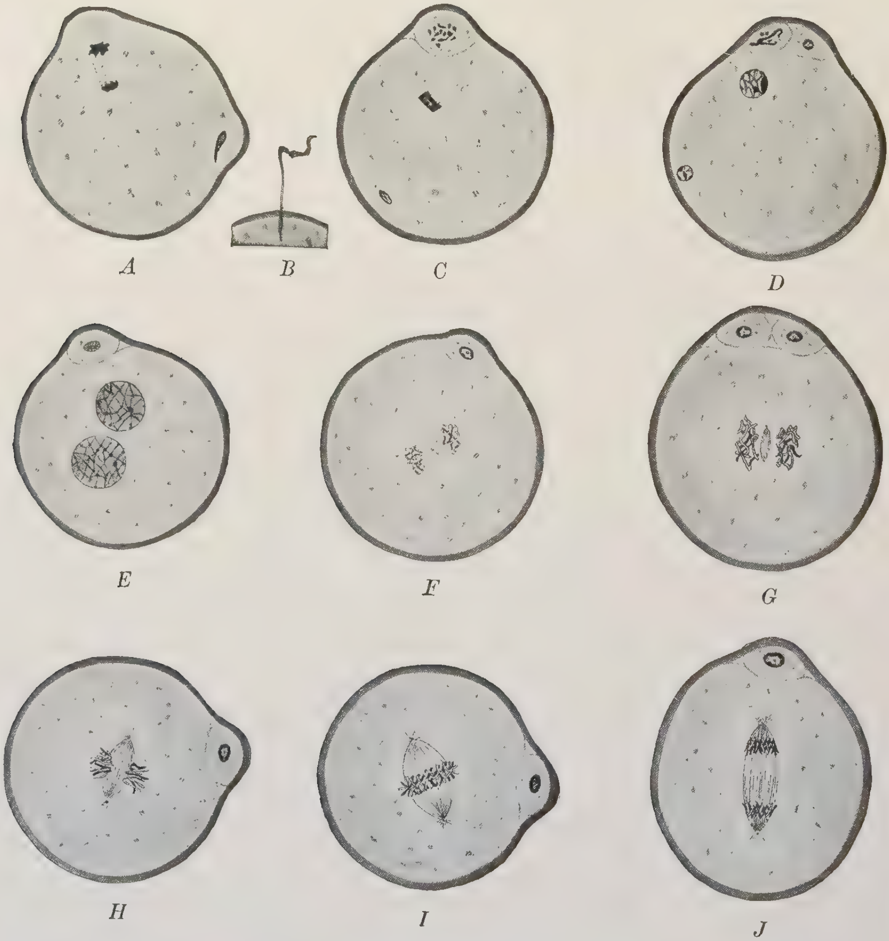


FIG. 21.—MATURATION AND FERTILIZATION OF THE OVUM OF THE MOUSE. **A,C–J,** ×500; **B,** ×750. (After Sobotta.)
A–C, entrance of the spermatozoon and formation of the second polar body. **D–E,** development of the pronuclei. **F–J,** successive stages in the first division of the fertilized ovum.

another specimen Sobotta found the head, middle piece and a part of the tail within the cytoplasm of the oöcyte. The tail had broken as it crossed the zona, and the portion remaining outside had drawn together and was disintegrating. In some animals it is said that the entire spermatozoon enters the ovum, but in others only the head and middle piece. In any case the tail appears to be a propelling apparatus which becomes functionless after the head and middle piece have passed through the zona. It has entirely disappeared in the stage shown in Fig. 21, A, in which the head of the spermatozoon is seen within the oöcyte on the right side of the figure. Meanwhile the oöcyte is becoming a mature ovum by undergoing divisions and producing the second polar body; and the anaphase of this division is shown in Fig. 21, A. Sobotta stated that no centrosomes occur in connection with the spindles of the maturation divisions, and Long and Mark have likewise failed to find any "typical centrosomes."

In Fig. 21, C, the second polar body has become a separate cell. The chromosomes of the ovum, which is now mature, have formed a compact mass. They next become resolved into a chromatic reticulum, and a resting nucleus is produced, provided with a nuclear wall and distinct nucleoli (Fig. 21, D and E). This nucleus, which becomes large and moves toward the center of the cell, is known as the *female pronucleus*. Meanwhile the head of the spermatozoon has enlarged and formed the *male pronucleus*, as shown in Fig. 21, C, D, and E.

The two pronuclei, which are very similar, develop rapidly, "probably within a few minutes after the entrance of the spermatozoon." Simultaneously they prepare for division, and the chromatic reticulum of each becomes resolved into the reduced number of chromosomes which it received during maturation (Fig. 21, F). A centrosome with astral radiations is now seen between the two groups. In Fig. 21, G, it has divided in two, and the spindle has developed. There has been much discussion as to the origin of these centrosomes. Since in this case they arise by the division of a single body, the possibility that one comes from the spermatozoon and one from the ovum has been eliminated. Moreover in the mouse they cannot be derived from the surviving centrosome of the last maturation division of the ovum, for that division takes place without centrosomes. Therefore the centrosome must either be brought in by the spermatozoon as a constituent of its middle piece, or it must be a new formation. Sobotta accepted the former alternative, and he observed a centrosome in connection with the head of the spermatozoon in certain stages (Fig. 21, C) but not in all. It is probable, according to Conklin, that "the source of the cleavage centrosomes may differ in different animals, or even in the same animal under different conditions."

Later stages in the division or "cleavage" of the fertilized ovum into two cells are shown in Fig. 21, H–J. The groups of chromosomes come together upon the spindle so that the full number, characteristic of the species, is restored. Each chromosome then divides lengthwise, and thus each daughter cell receives one-half of its chromosomes from the male parent and one-half from the female parent. This is strikingly evident when the eggs of the fish *Fundulus*, which have long rod-shaped chromosomes, are fertilized with the sperm of *Menidia*, which has shorter rods. Moenkhaus, who performed this experiment (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1904, vol. 3, pp. 29–64), states that the two kinds of chromosomes remain grouped and bilaterally distributed on the spindles during the first and second divisions of the fertilized ovum, but that later they become gradually mingled.

Important information in regard to the nature of fertilization has been obtained by experiments upon unfertilized eggs. Changes in the concentration or composition of the sea water in which the eggs of marine animals have been placed, mechanical agitation, or, in the case of frogs' eggs, puncturing the outer layer with a needle, have led to repeated cell divisions. In this way embryos or larvæ have been produced from unfertilized eggs, and, in a few instances, adult animals. Loeb, who has been a foremost investigator in this field, concludes that the spermatozoon causes the development of the egg by carrying a substance into it which liquefies the cortical layer of the egg, and thereby causes the formation of a membrane. "This membrane formation, or rather the modification of the surface of the egg which underlies the membrane formation, starts the development." At the same time there is an acceleration of the oxidations in the egg. "What remains unknown at present is the way in which the destruction of the cortical layer of the egg accelerates the oxidations."

For the physicist and chemist, the production of mitotic figures and the process of fertilization, have been subjects of great interest, and discussions of their significance will be found in various text-books of physiology and biological chemistry. The most recent comprehensive articles on these subjects can be found in Wilson's General Cytology, 1924.

II. GENERAL HISTOLOGY

HISTOGENESIS

Segmentation and the Formation of the Germ Layers

The body is composed of groups of similarly differentiated cells, similar therefore in form and function. Such groups are known as *tissues.* Histology (Greek, ἱστός, "a textile fabric") is the science of tissues, and histogenesis deals with their origin. There are as many tissues in the body as there are "sorts of substance;" thus the liver consists essentially of hepatic tissue, and the bones of osseous tissue. All of these, however, are modifications of a small number of fundamental tissues, the development of which may now be considered.

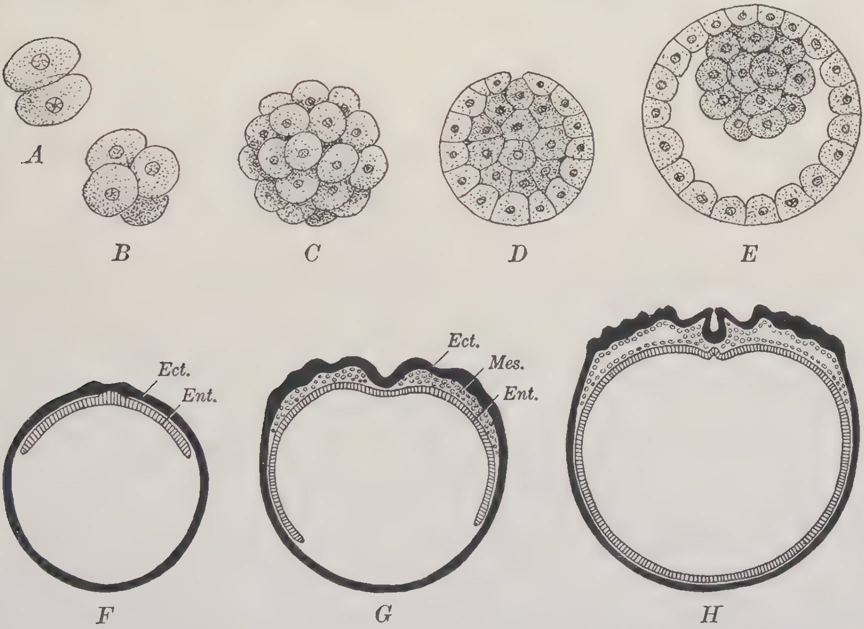


Fig. 22.—Segmentation of the Ovum and Formation of the Germ Layers in the Rabbit. (A–E after van Beneden; F–H, after Duval.)

A–C represent surface views of the two-cell stage, four-cell stage and morula respectively. **D–H** are vertical sections. In **D** and **E** the inner cell mass is heavily shaded. **Ect.,** ectoderm. **Ent.,** entoderm. **Mes.,** mesoderm.

It has already been stated that a new individual begins existence as a single cell, the fertilized ovum. This cell then divides by mitosis into a pair of cells, Fig. 22, A; and these again divide, making a group of four, Fig. 22, B. By repeated mitosis a mass of cells is produced, which because of its resemblance to a mulberry, is called a *morula* (Fig. 22, C). Development to this point is known as the *segmentation* of the ovum.

A section through the morula of the rabbit is shown in Fig. 22, D. An outer layer of cells surrounds the *inner cell mass*. Soon a cup-shaped cleft, crescentic in vertical section, forms between the outer and inner cells as shown in E, and this cleft enlarges until the entire structure becomes a thin-walled vesicle, within and attached to one pole of which is the inner cell mass (Fig. 22, F). Cells from this mass gradually spread beneath the outer layer until they form a complete lining for the vesicle. The inner layer is called *entoderm*, and the outer layer *ectoderm*.

Before the entoderm has encircled the vesicle, a third layer has appeared between the other two. This middle layer is the *mesoderm* (Fig. 22, G). It arises from the place where the ectoderm and entoderm blend with one another. The layers may be separated and floated apart except at this spot where they are "tied together." This place is therefore called the *primitive knot*. The mesoderm also spreads laterally from a longitudinal thickening of the ectoderm, which extends backward from the primitive knot and marks out the future longitudinal axis of the embryo. This thickening is the *primitive streak*. Arising from the primitive knot and primitive streak, the mesoderm spreads out rapidly between the ectoderm and entoderm, and very soon it splits into two layers (Fig. 22, H). One of them (the *somatic* layer) is closely applied to the ectoderm, and the other (the *splanchnic* layer) to the entoderm. Between them is a cavity, known as the *body cavity* or *cœlom*, which in the adult becomes subdivided into the peritoneal, pleural, and pericardial cavities. The ectoderm and the somatic mesoderm together form the body wall or *somatopleure;* the entoderm and the splanchnic mesoderm together form the intestinal wall or *splanchnopleure*.

Reviewing the preceding paragraphs it is seen that the fertilized ovum, through segmentation, forms a morula, which later becomes a vesicle composed of three *germ layers*, the outer or ectoderm, inner or entoderm, and middle or mesoderm. By the folding of these layers the body as a whole acquires its form; and by their growth and differentiation all the organs and tissues are produced, together with the *fetal membranes* which surround the embryo. Omitting for the present all reference to the membranes, the fundamental changes which the germ layers undergo may be briefly considered, as follows:

Ectoderm. A portion of the ectoderm forms a layer of cells covering the body of the embryo. In the adult this becomes the outer layer of the skin, or the *epidermis*, and from it, hairs, nails and the mammary, sebaceous and sweat glands develop. It is reflected under the eyelids and over the front of the eye, and forms the lachrymal glands. It extends into the external auditory opening and there forms the ceruminous glands;

and into the nasal, oral, anal and urogenital apertures. Within the mouth it forms the salivary glands, the enamel of the teeth, and the cells associated with the sense of taste. Thus it extends far back toward the pharynx, and dorsally, in its deepest part, it produces the anterior lobe of the hypophysis, which will be described in a later chapter. In the nose it also extends far inward, so that it lines the accessory cavities which push out from the nasal cavity into certain bones of the head, and it forms the olfactory cells. An inpocketing of the ectoderm produces the lining of the deep portion of the ear, including the auditory cells, and, as will be seen, the ectoderm gives rise to the lens and retina of the eye. Thus the ectoderm not only forms the outer covering of the body, with extensions into the several apertures, but it produces various sensory cells which are stimulated from external sources.

The second great derivative of the ectoderm is the nervous system. It arises in young embryos as the *medullary groove*. This is a longitudinal groove or furrow, situated in front of the primitive knot and appearing in cross section as a median dorsal depression (Fig. 22, G and H). Later the groove becomes a tube by the coalescence of its dorsal edges, which are about to unite in Fig. 22, H. The tube then becomes completely separated from the epidermal layer of ectoderm, as in Fig. 25.

The closure of the medullary groove to form a tube begins near the anterior end of the embryo and proceeds backward. Thus for a time the tube opens to the exterior both anteriorly, at the *anterior neuropore*, and posteriorly, at the *posterior neuropore*. Eventually the neuropores become closed over, and the tube is then wholly detached from the epidermal layer. The form of the tube is shown in Fig. 23, which represents a dissected reconstruction of a chick embryo. In this dissection the epidermal layer, which covers the upper or dorsal surface of the embryo, has been almost all removed. A portion of it which forms a fold under the head and around the anterior neuropore has been left in place, and also a portion around the *rhomboidal sinus*, which may be regarded as an expanded posterior neuropore. By removing the epidermal layer, the medullary tube has been exposed. Anteriorly it shows a succession of expansions which are to form the brain, and also a pair of lateral outpocketings, or *optic vesicles*, each of which will become the retina of an eye. Posteriorly the tube is slender, and this part becomes the spinal cord. The brain and spinal cord, which are derived directly from the medullary tube, constitute the *central* nervous system. The *peripheral* nervous system consists of bundles of nerve fibers which ramify throughout the body, together with masses of nerve cells associated with these fibers. The nerve cells are detached ectodermal cells, arising chiefly from the dorsal part of the medullary groove, and the fibers are protoplasmic outgrowths of these detached cells and of others which remain in the wall of the medullary tube. Thus the entire nervous system, central and peripheral, is ectodermal in origin.

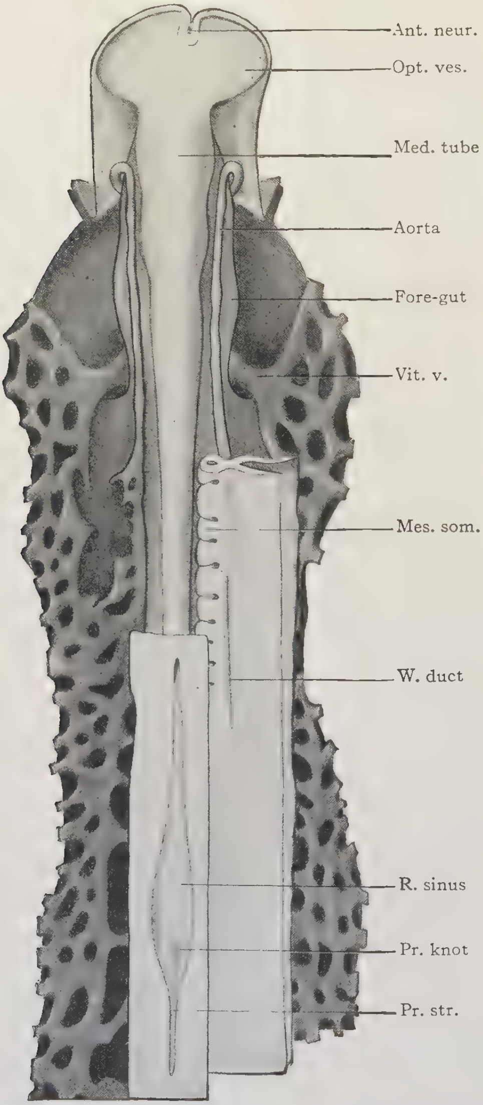


Fig. 23.

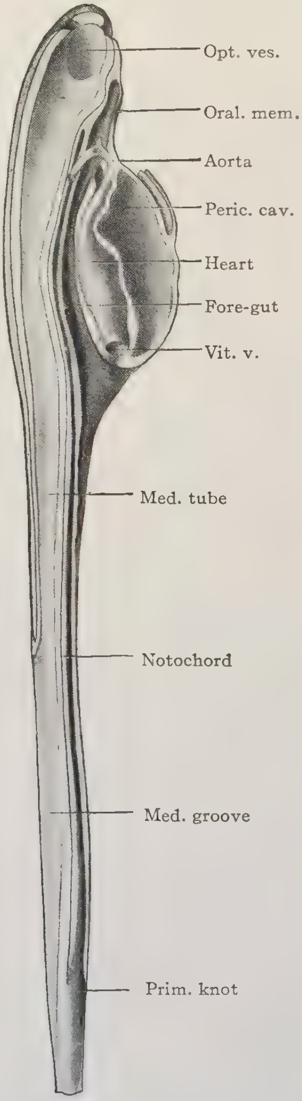


Fig. 24.

Figs. 23 and 24.—Reconstructions of a Chick Embryo, Incubated Approximately 30 Hours. ×30. Fig. 23 represents a dorsal view. The ectoderm has been removed except around the rhomboidal sinus and under the head. On the left side, all the mesoderm except the blood vessels has also been removed; a portion including nine somites remains on the right side. The lowest layer beneath the vessels, is the entoderm. Fig. 24 is a median sagittal section, except that the entire heart has been included. **Ant. neur.**, anterior neuropore; **Med. groove,** medullary groove; **Med. tube,** medullary tube; **Mes. som.,** mesodermic somite; **Opt. ves.,** optic vesicle; **Oral mem.,** oral membrane; **Peric. cav.,** pericardial cavity; **Pr. knot,** primitive knot; **Pr. str.,** primitive streak; **R. sinus,** rhomboidal sinus; **Vit. v.,** vitelline vein; **W. duct,** Wolffian duct.

In young mammalian embryos the entire entoderm, forms the lining of a spherical sac, known as the *yolk-sac* (Fig. 22, H). In birds the mass of yolk, which may be regarded as lodged in the thickened ventral wall of the yolk-sac, is so extensive that the cavity of the sac is merely a flattened dorsal cleft. The yolk-sac gives rise to the entire intestinal tube, together with all its outgrowths. They are therefore lined with entoderm, and they develop as follows.

At first, in the chick embryo (Figs. 23 and 24) a flattened finger-like extension of the yolk-sac projects forward into the head, under the notochord. This outpocketing is the *fore-gut*, which gives rise to the pharynx, œsophagus, stomach, and anterior part of the small intestine. Near its anterior extremity it comes in contact with the ectoderm and fuses with it, thus forming the oral membrane. By the rupture of this membrane, an opening from the exterior into the pharynx is produced.

Similarly the *hind-gut* develops as a pocket from the posterior part of the yolk-sac. It gives rise to the lower portion of the small intestine and the entire large intestine, and fuses with the ectoderm, forming the cloacal membrane. In later stages the ventral part of the posterior end of the hind-gut becomes cut off from the dorsal part; the ventral subdivision forms the bladder, and the dorsal subdivision becomes the lowest part of the rectum. At the same time the cloacal membrane is correspondingly subdivided into the urogenital membrane which closes the outlet of the bladder, and the anal membrane which closes the rectum. Later these membranes rupture, and the line of separation between ectoderm and entoderm is then difficult to determine. The entoderm apparently lines the entire urethra in the female, but only the upper or prostatic portion in the male; the remainder is lined with ectoderm.

In addition to forming the lining of the pharynx and entire digestive tube, together with the bladder and its outlet, the entoderm lines the following important organs, which arise as outgrowths of the pharynx and digestive tube: the auditory tube, extending from the pharynx to the ear; the thyroid gland and certain constituents of the thymus; the entire respiratory tract, including the larynx, trachea and lungs; the liver; and the pancreas.

Mesoderm. The mesoderm has already been described as forming splanchnic and somatic layers. These are indicated in the diagram Fig. 22, H, but are more accurately shown in Fig. 25, which corresponds to the upper part of Fig. 22, H, under higher magnification. Where the somatic and splanchnic layers come together they are greatly thickened, and the thickened part becomes cut into block-like masses by a series of transverse clefts. The masses are called *mesodermic somites*, and a pair of them occurs in each transverse segment of the body. They increase in number as new ones become cut off from the unsegmented mesoderm in the posterior part of the embryo. At first each somite may contain a cavity, which is an extension of the cœlom, but the cavity is soon obliterated by a plug of cells. In dorsal view some of the somites are shown on the right side of Fig. 23; the rest have been cut away.

In later stages each somite gives rise to a stream of cells which spread around the medullary tube, notochord and aorta. After these cells have been given off, the somite appears as a plate-like structure (Fig. 26), known as the *dermo-myotome.* The principal derivative of the dermo-myotome is the voluntary musculature of the body. In producing the various voluntary or skeletal muscles, certain cells of the dermo-myotome become transformed into muscle fibers. These are at first arranged in segmental masses, but the masses become subdivided into groups representing the individual muscles. The groups become separated from one another and shift to their final positions. Subsequently they acquire their connections with the bones, which develop later than the muscles. The remainder of the dermo-myotome breaks up into cells which are contributed to the deep portion of the skin.

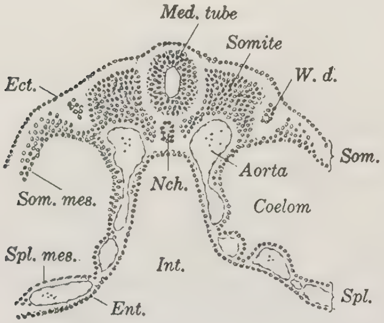


Fig. 25.

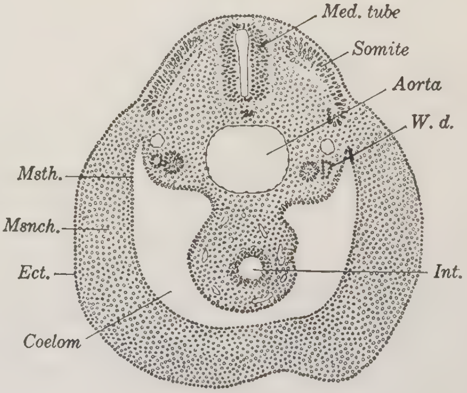


Fig. 26.

Fig. 25.—Transverse Section of a Rabbit Embryo Measuring 4.4 mm. (9½ days.) ×60.
Fig. 26.—Transverse Section of a Rabbit Embryo Measuring 5 mm. (11 days.) ×40.
Ect., ectoderm; **Ent.,** entoderm; **Int.,** intestine; **Med. tube,** medullary tube; **Msnch.,** mesenchyma; **Msth.,** mesodermal epithelium; **Nch.,** notochord; **Som.,** somatopleure; **Som. mes.,** somatic mesoderm; **Spl.,** splanchnopleure; **Spl. mes.,** splanchnic mesoderm; **W. d.,** Wolffian duct.

Connecting the somites with the lateral somatic and splanchnic layers of the mesoderm, there is a narrow neck of cells (as seen in cross section, Fig. 25) which is known as the intermediate cell mass, or *nephrotome.* The nephrotomes at first are not segmentally divided, but form the floor of a longitudinal groove in the mesoderm, lateral to the somites (Fig. 23). The nephrotomes give rise dorsally to a longitudinal cord of cells, which later becomes a tube, and is known as the *Wolffian duct* (Figs. 23, 25, and 26). It lies in the groove above the nephrotomes. The duct grows posteriorly and acquires an opening into the entodermal bladder. The nephrotomes then become separated from the somites and from the lateral layers of the mesoderm, and their cells become arranged so as to form coiled tubes, which empty into the Wolffian duct. In this way the mesoderm gives rise to the renal system, which consists essentially of coiled mesodermal tubes, receiving urinary products from the blood and conveying them through the Wolffian duct to the bladder. Later, parts of the urinary system lose their primary function and become the ducts of the genital system.

The lateral somatic and splanchnic layers of the mesoderm produce the lining of the pleural, pericardial, and peritoneal subdivisions of the cœlom, as already stated. They give rise also to an important tissue known as *mesenchyma*. With the production of mesenchyma the tissues of the embryo may be divided into two sorts, namely, *epithelium* which covers an external or an internal surface of the body, and *mesenchyma* which fills the space between two layers of epithelium. These relations are clearly shown in the cross section of the abdomen (Fig. 26). The body wall consists of a layer of ectodermal epithelium externally, and of mesodermal epithelium internally, with a thick layer of mesenchyma between the two. Similarly the intestinal wall consists of mesodermal epithelium toward the cœlom, and entodermal epithelium toward the intestine, with mesenchyma between them. Epithelium is thus produced by all the germ layers, but mesenchyma is almost exclusively the product of the mesoderm. It is formed not only from the lateral splanchnic and somatic layers of the mesoderm, but also from the somites. The

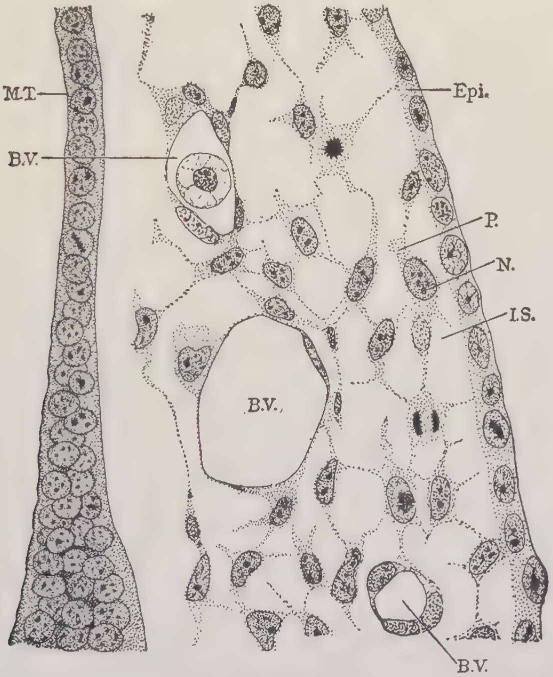


FIG. 27.—SECTION FROM THE HEAD OF A RABBIT EMBRYO OF 10½ DAYS, 4.4 MM., TO SHOW MESENCHYMA. **Epi.** and **M. T.,** Ectodermal epithelium of the epidermis and medullary tube, respectively. **N.,** nucleus, **P.,** protoplasm, and **I. S.,** intercellular substance of a mesenchymal cell. Two of these cells show mitotic figures. **B. V.,** Blood vessel, lined with endothelium. One of the blood vessels contains an embryonic red blood corpuscle.

tissue which has been described as spreading from the somites around the medullary tube, notochord and blood vessels, and into the deep portion of the skin, is mesenchyma. It also surrounds the tubules derived from the nephrotome.

Under higher magnification, as in Fig. 27, it is seen that epithelium is a layer of closely compacted cells, but that mesenchyma is a protoplasmic network, the meshes of which are filled with a fluid intercellular substance. If this substance is abundant, the nuclei of the mesenchyma are widely separated, as in the figure; but if it is scanty they are quite close together. Mesenchyma gives rise to a great variety of tissues, including involuntary muscle, adipose tissue, cartilage, and bone. Both the cells and the intercellular substance may become variously modified. The most widespread derivative of mesenchyma is *connective tissue*, which invests the nerves, vessels, muscles and epithelial structures, binding them together in organs, and filling the interstices of the body.

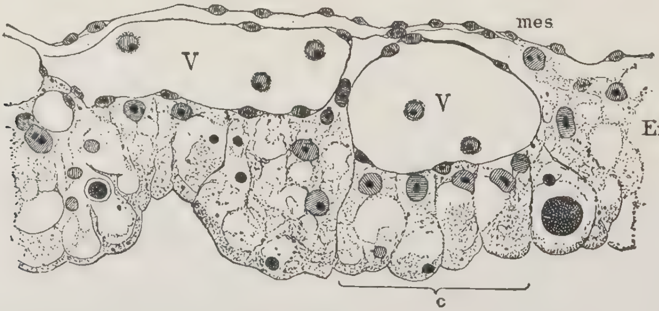


FIG. 28.—WALL OF THE YOLK-SAC FROM A CHICK OF THE SECOND DAY OF INCUBATION. (Minot.) **Mes.**, Splanchnic mesoderm; **Ent.**, entoderm., four distinct cells of which are shown at **c**; **V**, **V**, blood vessels containing a few young blood cells.

The origin of the blood and blood vessels remains to be considered. In very early stages the vessels appear as cellular strands, some of which contain a lumen, situated between the mesoderm and entoderm. Associated with these strands, but further out on the yolk-sac, there are clusters or "islands" of blood cells, surrounded by a thin layer of flattened cells known as *endothelium*. The entire system soon forms a network of distinct vessels situated in the splanchnopleure (Figs. 25 and 28). Generally the vessels and the corpuscles within them are considered to be mesodermal, but some authorities have regarded them as entodermal, and others have proposed to describe them as forming a separate germ layer or "angioblast" (more appropriately *angioderm*).

In the chick embryo shown in Figs. 23 and 24, the network of vessels in the splanchnopleure has formed a complete circulatory system. By a process of folding, portions of the net have been brought together under the fore-gut, where the vessels from the two sides have fused and formed a single median tube, the heart. The two large trunks, derived from the network, which convey the blood from the yolk-sac to the heart are known as *vitelline veins*. The heart divides anteriorly into two vessels (the *aortæ*) which pass from the under side of the fore-gut to the upper side, and then extend posteriorly. They finally connect by branches with the network over the yolk, from which they have been derived. Through this system, nutriment taken from the yolk is brought to the heart by the vitelline veins, and distributed throughout the body by the aortæ.

In mammals also, a complete system of vessels is established early in development. Whether all later vessels arise as branches of this primary endothelial network, or whether they are formed by the coalescence of mesenchymal spaces, or by transformation of mesenchymal cells into endothelial cells is discussed later. There is a very close connection between the endothelium and the surrounding mesenchyma, as shown in Fig. 27.

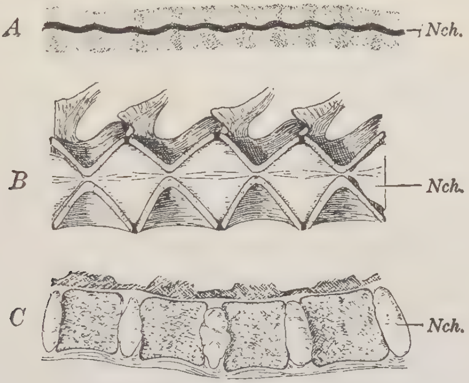


FIG. 29.—THE NOTOCHORD.
A, in a sheep embryo of 14.6 mm. (after Minot); **B**, in a cod fish; **C**, in man (after Dwight).

The histogenesis of the blood is likewise very difficult to follow. The simplest interpretation is one which has not been disproven, namely, that all forms of blood corpuscles are descendants of the cells found in the blood islands of the yolk-sac. According to this hypothesis these cells multiply in certain places to which they have been carried by the circulating blood, for example in the liver in later embryonic life and in the bone marrow of the adult; and they differentiate into the red and white corpuscles of various kinds. The difficulties which this hypothesis encounters will be discussed in later chapters.

The notochord is a longitudinal rod extending forward from the primitive knot to the under side of the brain. It has been described as coming from every one of the germ layers. It arises from the primitive knot, a region where all layers are blended, and as it grows forward may fuse with one or other in different classes of embryos. In the diagram, Fig. 22, H, it is shown as an elevation of the entoderm; in Fig. 25, it appears as a group of cells completely detached. Later the rod becomes surrounded by mesodermal cells, which develop into the bodies (or centra) of the vertebrae together with the intervertebral ligaments between them. These are shown in Fig. 29, A, as alternating light and dark areas respectively. The notochord in passing through them shows "segmental flexures" (Minot). In the vertebral column of a fish (Fig. 29, B) the central notochordal rod has expanded between the bodies of the vertebræ so as to form large lenticular masses of gelatinous pulp. These retain a very slender connection with one another. In the human adult, the notochord is represented by the series of detached expansions, or *nuclei pulposi*, one of which occurs in each intervertebral ligament (Fig. 29, C). These nuclei are composed of a peculiar tissue, the development of which has been described by L. W. Williams (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1908, vol. 8, pp. 251–284). The notochord is very rarely the source of tumors. Occasionally, owing to its connection with the entoderm, which is retained longest anteriorly, it gives rise to a pharyngeal recess (Huber, Anat. Record, 1912, vol. 6, pp. 373–404).

The Fundamental Tissues

From the foregoing outline of embryological development, it is clear that all the organs of the body are derived from a relatively small number of fundamental tissues. After the fertilized egg has segmented, it gives rise to layers of cells, of which the ectoderm and entoderm are epithelial from the beginning. The mesoderm very early divides into two tissues—epithelium, which lines the body cavity, and mesenchyma, which forms the internal substance of the body wall and intestinal wall. Thus *epithelium* and *mesenchyma* may be regarded as the primary tissues of the body. The groups of blood corpuscles, which are probably derived from the mesenchyma, and the endothelium which surrounds them, also arise very early, and these may be set apart as *vascular tissue.*

The nervous system develops from epithelium, but its cells, singly or in groups, become imbedded in strands and masses of nerve fibers which these same cells send out as processes. Thus little remains in the adult to suggest that the brain or peripheral nerves come from a layer of cells covering a surface, and the nervous system is therefore described as consisting of *nervous tissue.*

The voluntary muscles are formed from cells derived from the epithelium of the mesodermic somites, but they develop as the somite breaks up and its epithelial character is lost. The involuntary muscles are produced by a transformation of mesenchymal cells into elongated muscle cells. For physiological reasons these two kinds of muscle, which are of diverse origin and structure, are classed together as *muscular tissue.*

The relation of the germ layers to the five fundamental tissues which have now been recognized, is shown in the following summary.

ORIGIN OF THE TISSUES FROM THE GERM LAYERS

The **ectoderm** produces:

1 Epithelium of the following organs:—the skin (epidermis) including the cutaneous glands, hair and nails; the cornea and the lens; the external and internal ear; the nasal and oral cavities, including the salivary glands, the enamel of the teeth and anterior lobe of the hypophysis; the anus; the cavernous and membranous parts of the male urethra; together with that epithelium of the chorion which is toward the uterus and of the amnion which is toward the embryo.

2. Nervous tissue forming the entire nervous system, central, peripheral and sympathetic.

3. Muscular tissue, rarely, as of the sweat glands, and iris.

The **mesoderm** produces:

1. Epithelium of the following four sorts: (1) epithelium of the urogenital organs (except most of the bladder and the urethra) and the epithelioid cords of cells in the suprarenal gland; (2) epithelium of the pericardium, pleuræ, and peritoneum and the continuation of this layer over the contiguous surfaces of amnion and chorion; (3) epithelium lining the blood vessels and lymphatic vessels; and (4) epithelium lining the joint cavities and bursæ.

2. Muscular tissue, striated (voluntary), cardiac, and smooth (involuntary).

3. Mesenchyma, an embryonic tissue, which forms, in the adult, connective and adipose tissue, bone (including the teeth except their enamel), cartilage, tendon, and various special cells.

4. Vascular tissue, the cells of the blood and lymph, consequently the essential elements of the lymph glands, red bone marrow and spleen.

The **entoderm** produces:

1. Epithelium of the following organs:—the pharynx, including the auditory tube and middle ear, thyroid and thymus glands; the respiratory tract, including larynx, trachea, and lungs; the digestive tract, including the œsophagus, stomach, small and large intestine, rectum, liver, pancreas, and the yolk-sac; and part of the urinary organs, namely most of the bladder, the female urethra, and prostatic part of the male urethra (including the prostate).

In the following pages the fundamental tissues will be considered in turn. In connection with them, certain *organs* will be examined. An organ is a more or less independent portion of the body, having a connective tissue framework, and a special blood, lymph, and nerve supply, in addition to its characteristic essential cells. The essential cellular substance of an organ, in distinction from the accessory tissues, is often called its *parenchyma;* the accessory supporting tissues constitute the *stroma* (Gr. στρῶμα, bed), in which the parenchyma is imbedded.

Such structures as the pancreas and liver are obviously organs. An individual muscle or a particular bone, which has a connective tissue covering or framework, and a supply of vessels and nerves, besides its essential substance, may also be regarded as an organ. The organs which are of widespread occurrence, such as the bones, muscles, tendons and large vessels, will be described with the tissues. The more complex organs are reserved for a later section, entitled "Special Histology."

EPITHELIUM

The Dutch anatomist, Frederik Ruysch, recognized that the covering of the margin of the lips is not identical with the epidermis. "Therefore," he wrote, "I shall call that covering the *epithelis*, or papillary integument of the lips" (Thesaurus anat. III, 1703, No. 23, p. 26). It is an unfortunate name (ϵπὶ, upon, θηλή, Latin *papilla*, the nipple) since it does not refer to the layer upon the nipple, but to that which covers a great number of nipple-like elevations of the underlying tissue. Such elevations or *papillæ* are indeed abundant in the lips, but they occur also under the epidermis. Ruysch substituted *epithelia* for *epithelis* in other sections of his work, and Haller, writing some years later, used the neuter *epithelium*, so that epithelia thus became a plural.

As the term epithelium is now used, it includes the epidermis, and the lining of the various internal tubes and cavities. It has been defined as a layer of closely compacted cells, covering an external or internal surface of the body, having one of its surfaces therefore free, and the other resting on underlying tissue. But the term is also correctly applied to solid outgrowths from such layers, either in the form of cords or masses of cells. Usually these outgrowths subsequently acquire a cavity, or lumen, around which the cells become arranged in a layer.

The epithelia which cover the skin and line the digestive tube and urogenital organs are thick, as compared with those which line the body-cavity, the vessels, and the synovial cavities. For these thin layers His (1865) introduced the term *endothelium*. He wrote as follows:

> We are accustomed to designate the layers of cells which cover the serous and vascular cavities as epithelia. But all the layers of cells which line the cavities within the middle germ layer have so much in common, and from the time of their first appearance differ so materially from those derived from the two peripheral germ layers, that it would be well to distinguish them by a special term—either to contrast them, as false epithelia, with the true, or to name them *endothelia*, thus expressing their relation to the inner surfaces of the body.

The name endothelium, etymologically absurd, has become generally accepted for the lining of the blood vessels and lymphatic vessels. For the other forms of epithelium which it was intended to include, special names have been proposed.

Minot (1890) introduced *mesothelium* to designate the layer of mesodermal cells which bounds the body cavity. Thus mesothelium does not include the endothelium of the vessels, or the lining of the synovial cavities;

but it does include the cells of the nephrotome, through which the body cavity may extend, and also the epithelium which bounds the somites in early stages. Professor Minot applies the term also to the thick epithelium of the renal organs, which is derived from the cells of the nephrotome.

As seen in Fig. 30, the epithelium lining the vessels closely resembles that which lines the body cavities, and to a certain extent this justifies the use of the term endothelium for both layers as proposed by His. But it has been shown embryologically that the vessels and body cavity are of different origin, and are distinct even in the earliest stages. Moreover the linings of the synovial cavities, tendon sheaths, and the chambers of the eye form a third separate group. They arise relatively late in development by the confluence of intercellular spaces in the mesenchyma, and they are therefore bounded by flattened mesenchymal cells.

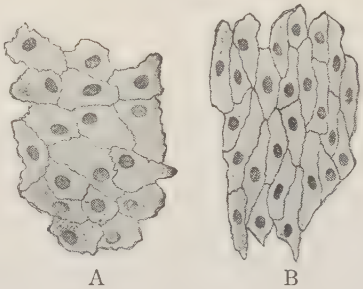


Fig. 30.
A, Surface view of mesothelium from the mesentery; B, surface view of endothelium from an artery.

In accordance with these embryological facts, the following use of terms is here proposed:

Endothelium should be restricted to the lining of the blood vessels and lymphatic vessels.

Mesothelium, except in young embryos, should be restricted to the lining of the body cavity and its subdivisions.

Mesenchymal epithelium (or false epithelium) should be applied to the lining of joint cavities and bursæ.

All of these forms of epithelium are primarily thin and are derived from the mesoderm. The lining of the body cavity is, however, thickened in places. Thick epithelium may be ectodermal, entodermal or mesodermal in origin.

Epithelia differ from one another, not only in origin, but also in the shape of their cells, the number of layers of which they are composed, and the differentiation of their cells. These features should be examined in every specimen studied, and something under each heading should be recorded in any complete description of an epithelium.

Syncytium.— In embryonic and other rapidly developing tissues mitotic division may proceed so rapidly that the last step in the process, the formation of new cell walls, may be incomplete when the next nuclear division is initiated. The nuclei continue to divide, but the protoplasm remains undivided. The result is called a syncytium, "cells run together." Occasionally a syncytium may result from the coalescense of older cells also. It may be an irregular mass, or in the form of sheets of tissue or epithelia The epithelia of young embryos are frequently syncytial.

The spacing and shape of the nuclei indicate the forms which the cells would have taken, if completed by cell walls (see Fig. 27). In older embryos and in the adult epithelial cells are usually distinct entities and of definite shape and arrangement.

SHAPES OF EPITHELIAL CELLS AND THE NUMBER OF LAYERS

An epithelium which consists of but one layer of cells is called a *simple epithelium*, and its cells may be *flat*, *cuboidal* or *columnar*. These terms refer to the appearance of the cells when cut in a plane perpendicular to the free surface. If in such a section the outlines of the cells are approximately square, as along the upper surface in Fig. 31, the epithelium is cuboidal; if they are stretched out in a thin layer so that they appear linear, as along the lower surface in Fig. 31, the epithelium is flat. Endothelium is an extremely flat epithelium, in which the cells are so thin that the nuclei cause local bulgings of the cell membrane. If the epithelial cells are laterally compressed, so that tall forms result as in Fig. 32, B, the epithelium is columnar. Such epithelium is less accurately called cylindrical, and both cuboidal and flat epithelia are sometimes referred to as pavement epithelium. Intermediate forms, which are described as low columnar or low cuboidal, frequently occur. The cells of certain epithelia change their shape temporarily, as in the bladder during distention, in the œsophagus during deglutition, and, to some extent, in the arteries with every pulsation. During post-mortem contraction the arterial endothelium is considerably thickened. Moreover during embryonic development, epithelial cells may change from one form to another.

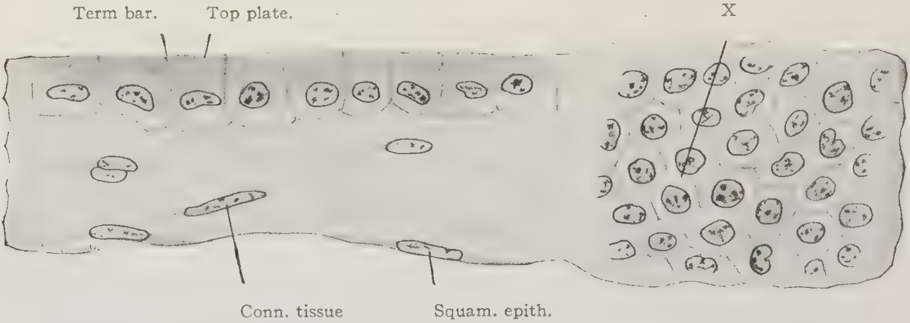


FIG. 31.—PORTION OF MEMBRANES SURROUNDING A PIG EMBRYO MEASURING 60 MM. (Allantois above, and amnion below.) At right, surface view of allantois. At "x," slanting wall invisible

On surface view the epithelial cells of all types are polygonal and usually six-sided (Figs. 30 and 31). Geometrically a circle would come in contact with six surrounding circles of equal diameter, and a cell is usually in contact with six surrounding cells. The cells, however, vary in diameter, and are often surrounded by five or seven cells and occasionally by four or eight.

The shape which an epithelial cell is to assume depends on opposing forces—(1) the tendency to be spherical, as is shown when a young cell, or one without definite exoplasmic differentiation, is allowed to float freely (amoebæ or white blood cells); (2) surface tension, which would flatten a drop of fluid along a surface; and (3) the pressure of neighboring cells, frequently due to their rapid growth and multiplication. In the surface epithelium of a chick embryo of 96 hours incubation (Figs. 35 and 36) all of these forces can be studied. In certain regions of the surface the epithelium of the skin is composed of a single layer of flat, or squamous cells, few in number and each covering a large area, over which it is spread by surface tension. In other parts the epithelial cells are cuboidal. They are often only partially separated by cell walls; *i.e.*, form a syncytium. This fact, and the frequent mitotic figures seen, show that the tissue is growing rapidly. More cells cover a given area, and each cell can assume a shape more nearly spherical. Further rapid increase of cells must lead by compression to columnar forms, or if the cuboidal cells resist compression, some of their number must be forced upward out of line, making a second layer. Here the cells at first spread out flat on the new surface, but as more and more of them are crowded out of line the new surface cells become cuboidal or columnar, and a third layer may be formed of cells forced out as before. In older embryos and in the adult many layers may be present, as shown in Figs. 34 and 223. Such an epithelium is called stratified. The basal layer alone rests on the underlying tissue. The cells show the cytomorphosis which they undergo in their journey from

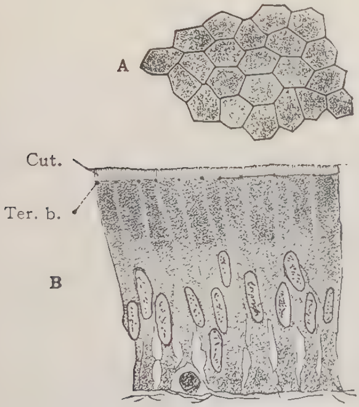


FIG. 32.—SIMPLE COLUMNAR EPITHELIUM FROM A HUMAN INTESTINAL VILLUS.

A, surface view; **B,** vertical section. The prominent cell outlines in **A** are due to *terminal bars*, shown in section in **B.** **Cut.,** cuticular border.

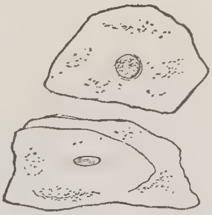


FIG. 33.—DETACHED SQUAMOUS CELLS FROM THE MOUTH.

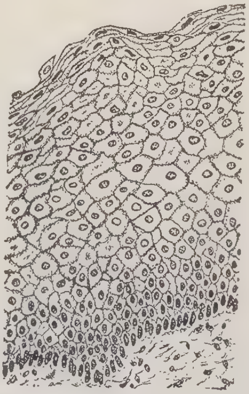


FIG. 34.—STRATIFIED EPITHELIUM FROM THE ŒSOPHAGUS OF A CHILD.

the basal layer to the surface. In the intermediate region they enlarge and become polygonal. Their actual shape has been studied by Lewis (Proc. Amer. Acad. Arts and Sciences, 1925, vol. 61, pp. 1–34) who finds them fourteen-sided, a shape which could be predicted mathematically as giving the smallest surface area in closely crowded bodies. Toward the surface the cells become squamous, and may be more or less cornified, in which condition they are cast off (Fig. 33). In positions in the body where there is much friction, as on the skin and in the œsophagus, and where, therefore, there is a great loss of surface cells, the basal layer rests on projections or papillae of the underlying tissue, which greatly increase the under surface of the epithelium, and so provide for more basal cells to divide and renew the upper layers. Mitotic figures are not confined to the basal layers, however, and new cells are being added at all levels. Stratified epithelium is found in the vagina, œsophagus, pharynx and oral cavity; and in its most complex form, with many layers, some of which are peculiarly modified, it constitutes the epidermis.

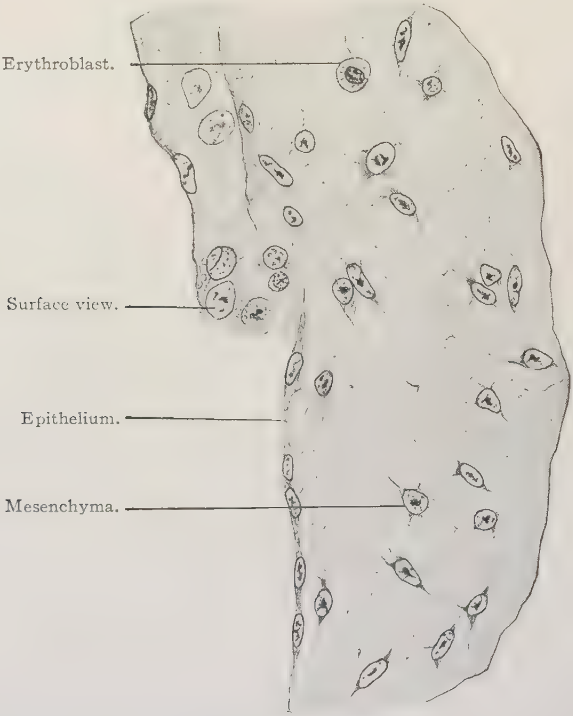


Fig. 35.—Skin and Underlying Mesenchyma of a Chick Embryo of 96 Hours Incubation. The epithelium is simple squamous, and a wrinkle brings part of it into the plane of section, so that it is seen in surface view.

In certain organs and especially in embryos, simpler forms of stratified epithelium occur, which are described as four-layered, or two-layered as the case may be. The superficial cells may be flat, cuboidal, or columnar. A characteristic epithelium with dome-shaped outer cells and tall basal cells, found in the bladder and ureter, is known as "transitional epithelium" as if it were intermediate between the simple and stratified forms.

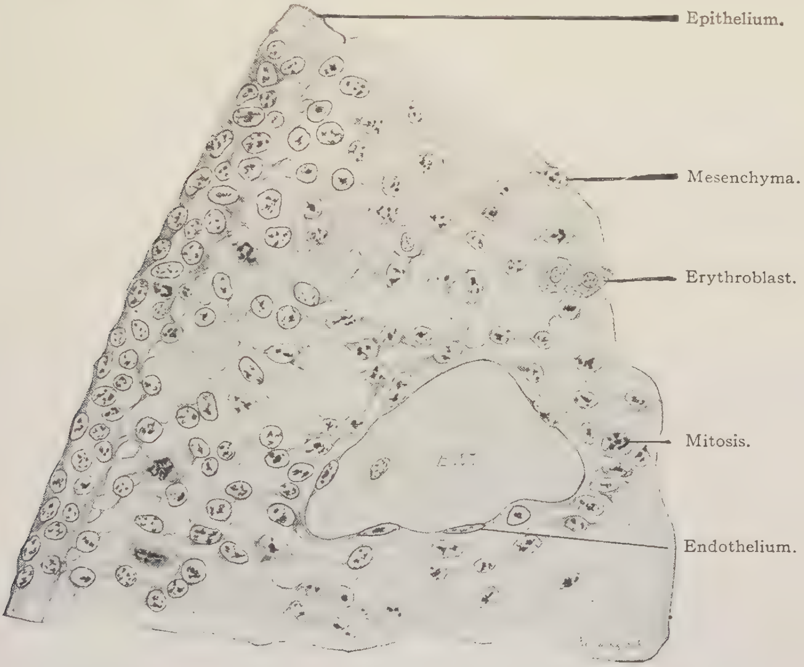


Fig. 36.—Another Part of the Chick Embryo Shown in Fig. 35.
The epithelium has become two or three layered, but still syncytial. The top cells tend to flatten out on the surface.

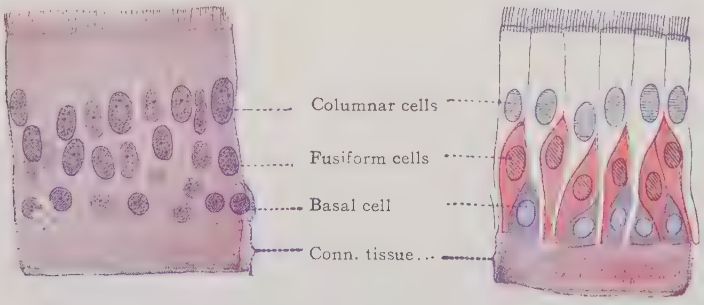


Fig. 37. Fig. 38.

Figs. 37 and 38.—Pseudo-stratified Ciliated Epithelium from the Human Respiratory Tract.
Fig. 38 is a diagram of the condition shown in Fig. 37. × 720.

When the bladder contracts the cells are heaped up in several layers, but when distended the number may be reduced even to two.

If the cell walls are indistinct and the sections are thick or oblique, the number of layers in an epithelium may be very difficult to determine. Thus in a simple epithelium the nuclei may be at different levels (Fig.

32, B), and if the section is not vertical it will show several layers, approaching the condition of the tangential section, (Fig. 32, A). Fig. 37 represents a vertical section of an epithelium with nuclei at three levels, and in two forms (the basal nuclei being round and the others elongated); but yet, as interpreted in Fig. 38, it is not stratified. It is of the form known as *pseudo-stratified*, in which all the cells reach the underlying connective tissue, but only a limited number extend to the free surface. Its origin as the result of lateral pressure on simple cuboidal epithelium can be readily imagined. Pseudo-stratified epithelium occurs in the upper part of the respiratory tract, including the trachea and larger bronchi, and in the epididymis.

Peripheral Differentiation of Epithelial Cells

Free surface. The free surface of epithelial cells is often provided with a thickened top-plate or *cuticula*. Under high magnification the cuticular border of the columnar cells in the intestine is seen to be vertically striated (Fig. 32, B), and these striations have been interpreted as minute canals through which protoplasmic processes may be sent out beyond the free surface. In some cases, however, the striated cuticula appears to consist merely of short, parallel protoplasmic rods. In certain cells of the kidney, the rods may become somewhat divergent, giving rise to what is known as the "brush border." Longer processes, which are vibratile but not retractile, are called *cilia* (the Latin term for eyelashes). They project from the free surface of certain epithelial cells in the trachea and bronchi (Figs. 39 and 40), in the uterus and uterine tube, in the efferent ducts of the testis, and in the nasal part of the pharynx together with the auditory tube and naso-lachrymal duct which open into it. In

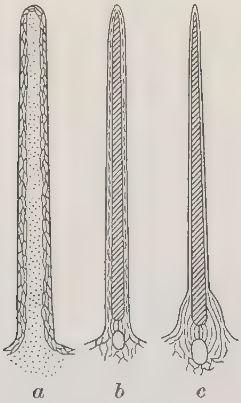


Fig. 39.
a, b, c, Diagrams to illustrate the structure of cilia. (After Williams.)

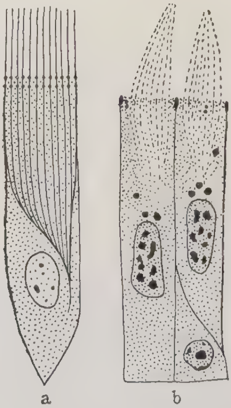


Fig. 40.
a, Diagram of a ciliated cell (after Prenant), showing vibratile cilia; **b,** cells of the human epididymis (after Fuchs), showing non-motile cilia.

the living condition the motion of cilia may be observed in various unicellular animals. It may be studied advantageously in fragments from the margin of the gills of a clam, or in epithelium from the roof of the mouth of a frog. The cilia are numerous, and in the snail Heidenhain counted 110 arising from a single cell. They do not act together, but rapidly succeeding waves, due to the bending of the cilia, pass over the entire surface. By bending sharply downward, each cilium creates a forward current in the overlying fluid, and passes the particles above it to the cilium in front. No sooner does a cilium begin to bend than the next in front takes up the movement and thus the ciliary waves are propagated. In some animals, however, the wave proceeds in a direction opposite to that of the effective stroke. The cilia in man produce currents toward the outlets of the body. In the uterine tube the stroke is toward the uterus, presumably favoring the passage of the ova, but the spermatozoa ascend this tube against the current.

The structure of cilia, because of their small size, is difficult to determine, but in many cases a differentiation between the exoplasm and endoplasm has been observed. The simplest cilia, as shown in the diagram (Fig. 39, a), are essentially permanent pseudopodia, with contractile sheaths and fluid contents. They may develop very rapidly in the protozoa. Thus Prowazek has seen processes grow out in eight minutes, which were then vibrating 19 times in 20 seconds. Schäfer considers that cilia are primarily pseudopodia, and that their motion is caused by the alternating ingress and egress of fluid to and from the central part, due to variations in the surface tension.

Many cilia, however, appear to contain more or less solid axial rods, which generally proceed from round basal bodies resembling centrosomes. That these bodies arise from the centrosome has recently been denied. Sometimes the bodies are double, and extensions from them downward into the cytoplasm may occasionally be observed (Fig. 40, a). These roots approach one another beside the nucleus, and it has been discussed whether or not they unite. The roots, and portions of the cytoplasmic reticulum at right angles to the shafts of the cilia, have been thought to act as levers. Others conjecture that the central shaft is a supporting structure, perhaps elastic, which is surrounded by a contractile sheath. The contractile elements may extend the whole length of the cilium or be confined to its base, as indicated in the diagram (Fig. 39, b and c). If the sheath were equally developed about the entire circumference of the axis, the cilia should be able to strike in any direction. Usually the effective stroke is in one direction only, but in some cases it may be reversed. In reversible cilia, such as occur on the labia of the sea anemone, the effective stroke is either toward the mouth or away from it, according to the chemical composition of the substances in contact with the cilia (Parker, Amer. Journ. of Physiol., 1905, vol. 3, pp. 1–16). In such a case the contractile material is supposed to be gathered in two bands, on opposite sides of each cilium. In the irreversible cilia, such as are found elsewhere in the sea anemone and in man, the contractile material, according to Parker, must be gathered especially on one side of the supporting axis.

The whip-like processes, or *flagella*, which form the tails of spermatozoa, may be compared with single cilia. Each springs from a body resembling a centrosome, and consists of an axial filament with a surrounding sheath, but whether the filament or the sheath contains the contractile substance is still uncertain.

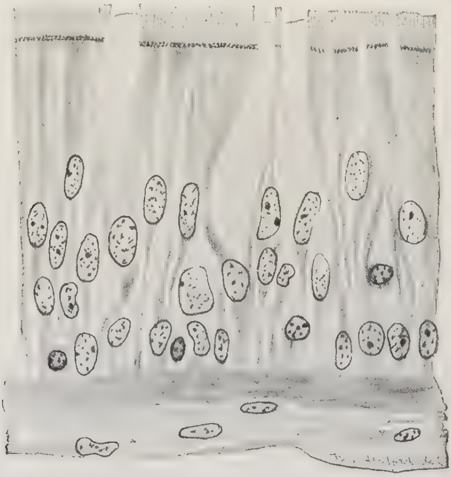


Fig. 41.—Pseudostratified Columnar Ciliated Epithelium; Human Trachea.
Three or more goblet cells are present. The cell walls are indistinct, but at the left one cell is cut full length, from the dense basement membrane to the ciliated surface. Basal cells which do not extend to the surface may be recognized.

Non-motile projections, somewhat resembling cilia, are found in the cells of the epididymis (Fig. 40, b). They have no basal bodies, and lack the distinctness of true cilia. Generally they appear in conical clumps, which have been compared to the hairs of a wet paint brush. They may be concerned with the discharge of secretion. Other non-motile processes of epithelial cells are the tapering projections of the sensory cells, apparently designed to receive stimuli. The lining of the central cavity of the spinal cord and ventricles of the brain is also provided with short projections, which may be degenerating cilia. It is questionable whether these are motile.

Lateral surface. The lateral surfaces of epithelial cells may be in close contact with one another, sometimes without intervening cell walls; or they may be separated by a thin layer of intercellular substance, which is generally fluid. Immediately beneath the cuticular border of the cells lining the intestine, the intercellular substance takes the form of a more solid bar encircling each cell and binding it to those which surround it. The arrangement of these *terminal bars* is shown in the diagram, Fig. 42, and in the section Fig. 32, b. If the section passes down through the middle of the cell, as on the left of Fig. 32, b, the bars are cut across and appear as points; but if either the proximal or distal side of the cell is included in the section, they appear as lines as on the right of the figure. Terminal bars have been found in many epithelia, especially in mucous membranes and glands. They occur in the epididymis (Fig. 40, b) where they appear as thickenings of the cell wall. According to Stöhr they are found in the stratified epithelium of the tongue and bladder.

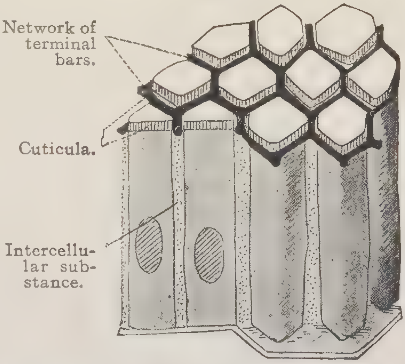


FIG. 42.—DIAGRAM OF THE NETWORK OF TERMINAL BARS.

The two cells on the left are divided lengthwise into halves; the two on the right are drawn as complete cylinders or prisms.

The intercellular substance in endothelium and mesothelium is ordinarily inconspicuous, but it may be demonstrated by treating the tissue with a solution of silver nitrate. The resulting precipitate occurs chiefly in the intercellular "cement substance," which then appears as a wavy black line bounding each cell (Fig. 30). It is of importance since various forms of blood corpuscles make their way through it from the vessels into the surrounding tissue.

In the lower layers of the epidermis and the thick oral epithelium, the intercellular substance is clearly seen, and here it is bridged by spiny processes from the adjacent cells. These *intercellular bridges* occur in endothelium and many forms of epithelium, but they are most readily observed in the deep layers of the thick stratified epithelia. Within the bridges, fibrils pass from cell to cell. Chambers (in General Cytology, 1924, p. 242) doubts the existence of such bridges in living tissues, regarding them as "either artefacts or indications of a fibrous structure of the intercellular cement or a combination of both." In the intercellular spaces, nutrient fluid makes its way to the outer layers. Whatever nutriment they receive must be derived from the intercellular fluid or through the bodies of the underlying cells, since neither blood vessels nor lymphatic vessels penetrate the epithelium. This is probably true of all epithelia in man, but in the bladder and renal pelvis the blood vessels approach very close and may appear to enter, and in the amphibia, according to Maurer, capillaries may be observed well within the oral epithelium. Nerve fibers extend among the basal cells of the epidermis and other epithelia, and ramify in contact with these cells, but special methods are required to demonstrate them.

Basal surface. The basal cells of an epithelium sometimes seem to send out processes which blend with the underlying connective tissue. Usually, however, the lower surface is well defined, and the epithelium is bound down by intercellular cement substance. Often, especially in glands, the epithelium rests upon a thin, well-defined *basement membrane* or *membrana propria.* This membrane is usually homogeneous and contains very few nuclei. Sometimes it is composed of elastic tissue. Certain basement membranes have been considered as derivatives of the epithelium, but generally they are clearly of mesenchymal origin.

The Nature and Classification of Glands

Many epithelial cells elaborate and discharge substances which do not become parts of the tissue. Such cells are called *gland cells,* and their products are either utilized by the body (secretions) or eliminated as waste products (excretions). A number of such cells grouped in definite formation and for a specific purpose is called a gland, which may consist of a few cells only or of many thousands, as in the liver.

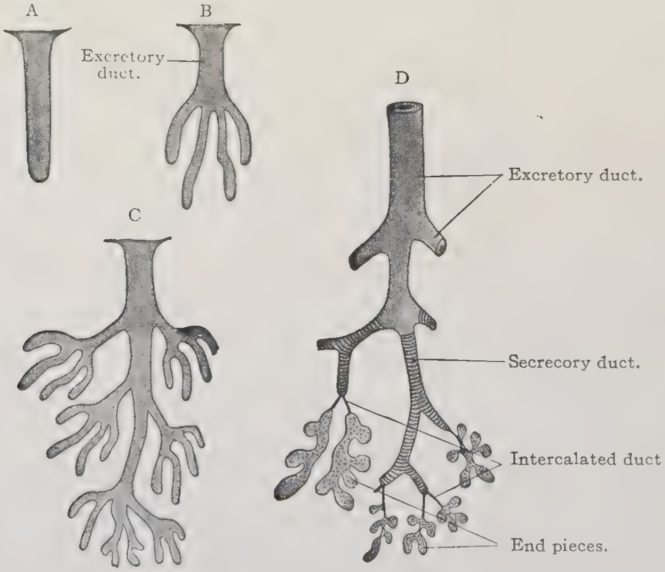


Fig. 43.—Diagram of Various Forms of Glands.
The arrangement of ducts in D is that of the human submaxillary gland.

The simplest form of gland is merely a single secreting cell situated apart by itself in an epithelium. Such *unicellular glands* are abundant in invertebrates and are represented in man by scattered goblet cells. In the higher animals the secreting cells usually occur in groups, and they are generally found in tubular or saccular outpocketings of the epithelium. This method of outpocketing increases the number of cells in the surface layer of a given area, as may be understood by imagining the number required to cover a flat surface between the right and left limits of the epithelium at the top of Fig. 47, and comparing this with the actual number to be counted by following the contour of the gland. This is an unbranched tubular gland in vertical section, and in diagram a similar one is shown in Fig. 43, A. Since the tubule ends blindly, all the secretion made by the component cells must pass through the cavity, or *lumen*, to the general surface. The secreting cells may be distributed throughout the tube, or they may be limited to the lower part. In such cases the upper part forms the *duct* of the gland. Sweat glands are unbranched tubes, with a coiled secreting portion in the deeper part of the skin, and a relatively long duct which conveys the secretion to the surface. Many glands are branched, as in Fig. 43, B. This further increases the number of cells bordering on the lumen, without changing the area of the original surface. The main stem becomes the duct, and the characteristic secretion is formed in saccular or tubular "end pieces."

Such glands as have been described, either branched or unbranched, occur in great numbers as constituent parts of some organ, and they are classed as *simple glands*. The sebaceous and sweat glands of the skin, intestinal glands, and uterine glands are examples of this class. Many glands are much larger than these, owing to the fact that the epithelial outgrowth has branched repeatedly. It becomes invested with a connective tissue capsule, which sends partitions, or *septa*, among the ramifications of the epithelial tube, thus dividing the gland into lobes and lobules. A lobule usually contains a terminal branch of the duct together with the cluster of end pieces which empty into it. The large glands not only have a connective tissue framework, but also a special supply of nerves, blood vessels and lymphatic vessels. Thus they form independent organs, and they are classed as *compound glands*. They include the liver, which discharges its secretion through a single duct; the pancreas, which is formed by the fusion of two glands and therefore has primarily two ducts; and many smaller organs, like the prostate, which is a compact group of glands each of which has a separate duct.

All the glands thus far considered are alike in being outpocketings of epithelium. Most of them develop as masses or cords of epithelial cells which later acquire a central cavity or *lumen*. The secreting cells may discharge their products from their free surfaces directly into the lumen; or the secretion may enter minute canals, either within the cells (intracellular), or between the cells (intercellular). *Intercellular* secretory canals (also called capillaries) are found in the serous glands of the tongue and in the serous portions of the salivary glands; they occur also in the liver, the gastric and pyloric glands, sweat glands, lachrymal gland and bulbo-urethral gland. Various forms are shown in the right half of the diagram Fig. 44. They occur where two or more cells come together and consequently they are in relation with two or more terminal bars. In longitudinal sections the bars may be seen to extend downward along the canals. Through such intercellular canals the basal cells in a glandular epithelium may discharge their secretion into the central cavity, as shown in Fig. 44. *Intracellular* secretory canals, shown in the left half of Fig. 44, are less definite in outline, and are never in relation with terminal bars. They may be transient vacuoles opening at the surface. Sometimes they anastomose and form a network of canals within the cell. They have been observed, together with intercellular canals, in the sweat glands, the liver, and the gastric glands. There are apparently no secretory canals in any mucous gland, and they have not been found in the duodenal, intestinal, uterine and thyroid glands, the kidney or the hypophysis.

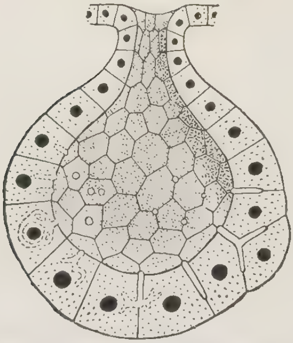


FIG. 44.—DIAGRAM OF A SIMPLE ALVEOLAR GLAND, SHOWING INTERCELLULAR SECRETORY CAPILLARIES OR CANALS ON THE RIGHT, AND INTRACELLULAR CANALS ON THE LEFT.

The ducts have a clear-cut lumen and are typically lined with a very regular epithelium, showing distinct cell boundaries. The cells usually do not contain the rods, granules or vacuoles characteristic of secreting protoplasm, and the nuclei are not crowded to the base of the cells. In some cases, however, the ducts contain mucous cells, and in the salivary glands a specialized portion of the ducts is believed to discharge salts into the secretion as it passes through them. In such a gland (Fig. 43, D) the duct, as it leaves the end pieces, consists of simple flat epithelium. This *intercalated duct* gives place to the *secretory duct* which is lined with columnar epithelium, having basal rows of granules. The outer excretory portion consists of simple or stratified non-glandular epithelium.

The end pieces of the glands, as already noted, vary in shape from saccular to tubular. Usually a minute dissection or a reconstruction is necessary to determine what the shape may be. A round termination is called an *acinus* (Latin, a grape or berry) or an *alveolus* (Latin, a trough or tray). These terms are often used interchangeably. The elongated forms are called tubular or tubulo-alveolar.

During the development of the thyroid gland the duct becomes obliterated, so that the secretion within the end pieces cannot escape. The end pieces become closed epithelial sacs, known as *follicles* (Latin, *folliculus*, a leather bag, shell, or husk). In addition to the material enclosed within the follicles, the thyroid gland secretes substances which are taken up by the surrounding blood vessels and lymphatic vessels. Secretions of this sort are called *internal secretions*.

The *epithelioid glands* are masses or cords of cells which produce internal secretions only. They are never provided with a duct or lumen, although in some cases their cells arise from the wall of an epithelial tube. They are closely related to the glands with obliterated ducts.

Finally there are glands which produce cells and are therefore called *cytogenic glands*. These include the ovary and testis, which are epithelial structures consisting of follicles and tubules respectively. They produce the ova and spermatozoa. The other cytogenic glands are non-epithelial bodies which produce various forms of blood corpuscles. They will be considered in a later chapter.

The classification of glands, as presented in the preceding paragraphs, is summarized in the following table:

I. *Epithelial glands, with persistent ducts, producing external secretions.*
  1. Unicellular glands.
  2. Simple glands.
    a. Ectodermal, *e.g.*, sweat and sebaceous glands.
    b. Mesodermal, *e.g.*, uterine glands.
    c. Entodermal, *e.g.*, gastric and intestinal glands.
  3. Compound glands.
    a. Ectodermal, *e.g.*, mammary and lachrymal glands.
    b. Mesodermal, *e.g.*, epididymis and kidney.
    c. Entodermal, *e.g.*, pancreas and liver.

II. *Epithelial glands, with obliterated ducts, producing internal secretions.*
  a. Ectodermal, anterior lobe of the hypophysis (the duct of the posterior lobe is partially obliterated).
  b. Entodermal, thyroid gland.

III. *Epithelioid glands, never having duct or lumen, producing internal secretions.*
  a. Ectodermal (through their relation to the sympathetic nerves), chromaffin bodies; and medulla of the suprarenal gland.
  b. Mesodermal, cortex of suprarenal gland; interstitial cells of the testis; corpus luteum.
  c. Entodermal, islands of the pancreas; epithelioid bodies in relation with the thyroid gland; thymus (?)

IV. *Cytogenic glands, producing cells.*
  a. Mesodermal, *epithelial*—the ovary and testis.
  b. Mesodermal, *mesenchymal*—the lymph glands, hæmolymph glands, spleen, red bone marrow, and many smaller lymphoid structures.

Processes of Secretion in Epithelial Cells

The process of elaboration and discharge of the secretion or excretion may often be recognized by changes in the form and contents of the cell. A gland cell which is full of secretion, or discharging it, is called "active," and one in which the secretion is not apparent, though it may be in process of formation, is called "resting." The process involves a certain "polarity" of the cell, the basal pole resting on the basement membrane and receiving the supply of nutritive material, which is elaborated within the cell and passed out as secretion from the opposite pole. For this reason gland cells are best studied when they are cut from base to free surface, not obliquely. The process of secretion is usually first recognizable by the presence of granules within the protoplasm. These have been considered as derived from mitochondria or from particles passing from the nucleus to the cytoplasm. The suggestion that mitochondrial filaments segment to form granules (Fig. 211) is attractive and held by many authors. Changes in the mitochondria and nucleus certainly accompany secretion, perhaps merely indicating increased activity of the cell; but whether portions of either are actually transformed into secretory granules may be doubted (Cowdry, 1918, Contrib. Embry., Carnegie Inst., vol. 4, pp. 27–43).

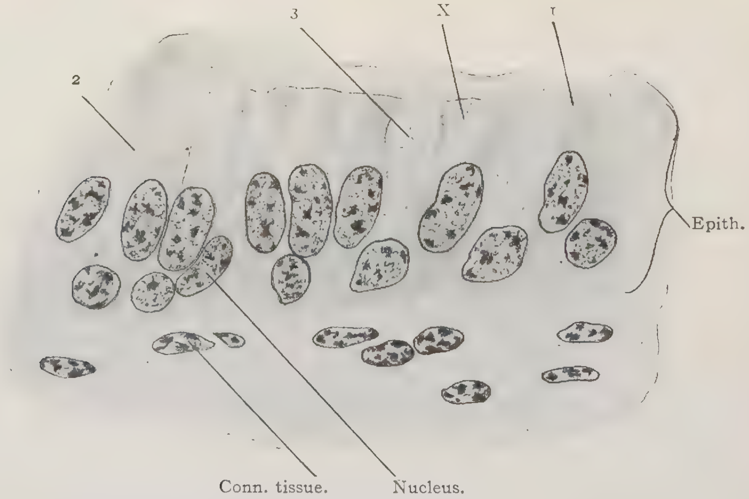


Fig. 45.—Wall of Intestine of Necturus; Formation of Mucin.
1, 2, 3, cells in progressive stages from mucigen granules to mucin; "x," upper part of cell cut in this section.

In the empty cell the nucleus is vesicular, with distinct chromatin granules, a fine reticulum, and often a clearly marked nucleolus. In cells full of secretion the nucleus shrinks, becomes darker by an increase or rearrangement of its chromatin, and the nucleolus may appear larger or disappear. In extreme cases the nucleus may become pycnotic. The appearances during secretion differ in the two main types of gland cells,—the *mucous*, which form thick, glairy secretions, like those of the nose and throat; and the *serous*, which produce watery secretions. These will be considered in turn.

Mucous cells, when resting, are cuboidal or columnar, usually occurring in a simple epithelium and having top-plate and an oval centrally placed nucleus. The first evidence of activity is the appearance of minute granules in the cytoplasm beneath the top-plate (Fig. 45). The granules stain differentially with iron hæmatoxylin and certain other stains. They increase in number in the upper part of the endoplasm, and then are changed into or replaced by clear droplets of mucus; hence they are called mucigen or mucinogen granules. The droplets form a discoid mass, which increases in bulk as the cytoplasm becomes increasingly transformed into secretion, and the remaining cytoplasm and nucleus are forced to the base of the cell. Sometimes the secretion causes the sides and top-plate to bulge; from their shape, like cups filled with mucus, such cells are called "goblet cells." Finally the top-plate either ruptures or becomes pervious to the enclosed mucus, which thus escapes to the surface, forced by the pressure of the surrounding epithelial cells. In preserved specimens the top-plate is frequently seen broken, but this may be an artefact. In the mucous cells of the intestine, secretion is formed below and discharged from the free surface at the same time. The cells, as seen in Fig. 47, arise near the bottom of tubular depressions lined with simple columnar epithelium. By the formation of new cells below them they are pushed toward the outlet of the tube. Thus the youngest cells are at the bottom of the pit and the oldest are at the top. For a time the secretion develops faster than it is discharged, and the cells enlarge as seen in the middle part of the gland; later, as elimination exceeds production, they become narrow, and their final stages, as compressed cells with a remnant of secretion, are found near the orifice of the gland. In other mucous glands

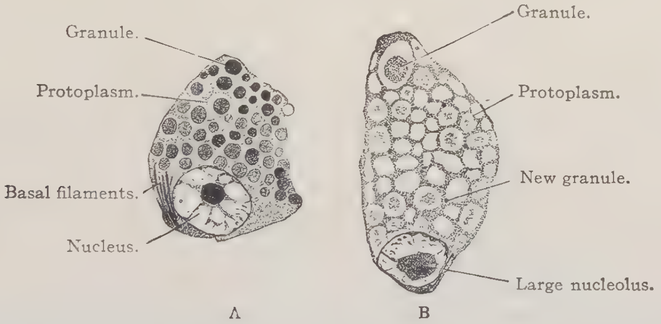


FIG. 46.—TWO SEROUS GLAND-CELLS FROM THE SUBMAXILLARY GLAND OF A GUINEA-PIG. × 1260 In cell **B** the granules have passed into the unstainable state; new stainable granules are beginning to develop in the protoplasm.

the secreting cells apparently remain filled with mucin continually. The cells are arranged in a single layer around a small central cavity, the lumen, into which they pour their secretion. The cells are therefore wedge-shaped in one plane (Fig. 219), the nuclei frequently crowded to one basal corner. Mucus is presumably formed as rapidly as discharged; the gland looks pale and clear in stained sections.

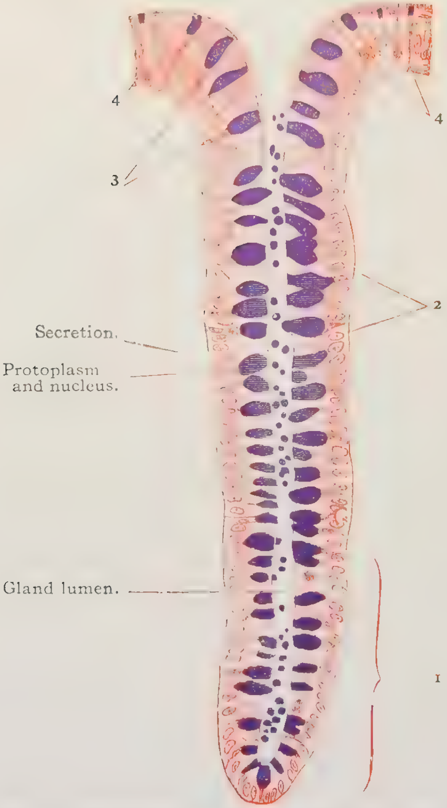


Fig. 47.—Intestinal Gland from a Section of the Human Large Intestine. × 165.

The secretion formed in the goblet-cells is here colored blue; usually it is pale as in Fig. 45. In zone 1 the goblet-cells show the beginning of secretion; that expulsion has begun is evident from the presence of drops of secretion in the lumen of the gland. 2, Goblet-cells with much secretion. 3, Goblet-cells containing less secretion. 4, Dying goblet-cells, some of which still contain remnants of secretion.

In certain stratified or pseudostratified epithelia, the formation of mucus has been seen to take place in some of the deeper cells, but the discharge of the secretion can occur only when these cells have reached the free surface.

Serous cells, when empty, are small and darkly staining. As the formation of secretion begins, the cells, if prepared by special methods, exhibit granules which stain intensely. They are not confined to an area under the top-plate, but occur usually above the nucleus. They enlarge and increase in number, even forcing the nucleus to the base of the cell. The cytoplasm becomes reduced to a network between them. They then lose their staining capacity and become transformed into droplets of fluid, giving the cytoplasm a light reticular appearance, which however is readily distinguished from that of mucous cells. The secretion is discharged from the free surface of the cell. New granules may be detected in the strands of cytoplasm between the droplets, a source of new secretion.

Glands may consist entirely of serous or of mucous cells, but frequently they include cells of both sorts and are called *mixed glands*. The mixed glands contain some purely serous tubules or alveoli; the rest consist of both mucous and serous cells, so arranged that the latter appear more or less crowded away from the lumen. Often they form a layer outside of the mucous cells, partly encircling the tubule or alveolus and constituting a *crescent* (demilune), as shown in Fig. 219. The serous cells of the crescent are connected with the lumen by means of secretory capillaries which pass out to them between the mucous cells and branch around the serous cells, ending blindly (Fig. 48). Sometimes the cells of the crescent are directly in contact with the lumen. Since the serous crescents are always associated intimately and somewhat irregularly with mucous cells, they were naturally interpreted as a functional phase of the latter. It is probably true that some crescents represent empty mucous cells which have been crowded from the lumen by those full of secretion. No secretory capillaries lead to such mucous crescents, which moreover are not abundant. Another sort of crescentic figure is made by the basal protoplasm in mucous cells otherwise full of secretion. Finally, in oblique sections, stellate cells associated with the basement membrane may resemble true crescents.

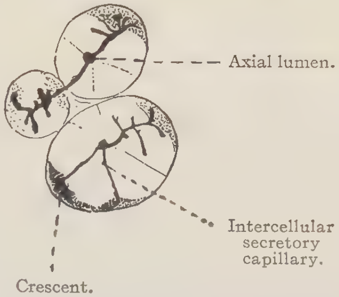


Fig. 48.—From a Section of the Submaxillary Gland of a Dog. × 320.

It is interesting to note the difference in size of the lumens of the two types of glands. Mucus is a slimy fluid and apparently needs a larger channel than the watery serous secretion; hence the lumen of mucous glands is much the wider. In fact the serous lumen is so small that the part of each cell forming its immediate wall is apparently too restricted for proper function. To overcome this difficulty secretory capillaries, either intercellular or intracellular (Fig. 44) are frequently provided. These may be temporary, present only during gland activity. They serve to increase the area of free surface for the cells between which or within which they occur. Filled with a precipitate by Golgi's method they are seen in Fig. 48. The activity of cells in elaborating and giving off some specific substance is by no means limited to epithelial cells. All cells "excrete" the waste products of their metabolism, and many "secrete" some material useful to the body. The cells of the ductless glands may be epithelial, but in many cases are not so arranged. The evidences of secretory activity in connective tissue cells, for instance, are not readily recognizable, but the possibility of such activity should always be borne in mind.

THE MESENCHYMAL TISSUES

Mesenchyma (μεσος middle, ἔγχυμα, an infusion) is a term introduced by O. Hertwig, in 1883, for the tissue produced by cells which have wandered out from the epithelial germ layers into the spaces between them. It is found only in young embryos. In the adult it is represented by a large group of derivatives, including connective tissue, adipose tissue, cartilage, bone, smooth muscle fibers, tendons, fasciæ, and various special forms of cells. Mesenchyma arises chiefly from different parts of the mesoderm, as already described (p. 45), but in the head of the chick embryo a portion of it comes from the ectoderm, and in the wall of the intestinal tube, according to Hertwig, the entoderm contributes to its formation. Together with the blood islands it constitutes the entire non-epithelial tissue of the embryo in early stages.

Mesenchyma

Mesenchyma (see Fig. 35 and 36) consists of a network of branching cells, in the meshes of which there is a homogeneous, fluid, intercellular substance. It is usually considered as a syncytium, in that no visible cell walls divide the protoplasm surrounding one nucleus from that about the others. Recently, however, Lewis (Anat. Record, 1922, vol. 23, pp. 177–184) has raised the question whether it is not composed of discrete cells, with many branching and tapering processes, which merely adhere to those of their neighbors. The cells are embryonic in type and merit special study because of the variety of cytomorphic changes they may undergo in forming various adult tissues. The nucleus is large, oval or round in section, with very little chromatin, mostly in one or two masses. The protoplasm is finely granular and with no definite cell wall. The processes, extending from the body of the cell in all directions, and therefore frequently leaving the plane of any section, are longer or shorter depending on the density of the tissue. They are apparently continuous with other processes, with the base of an epithelial layer, or with blood vessels. The intercellular substance is homogeneous and fluid; in it may be found occasional blood cells, outside of the vessels.

Although typical epithelium and mesenchyma are radically different, there are conditions in which they are comparable. Thus dense mesenchyma, in which the cells are closely packed and have very little intercellular substance, resembles epithelium, and it may give rise to groups or cords of epithelioid cells. Moreover epithelium may resemble mesenchyma by forming a vacuolate syncytium, or a branching protoplasmic network. In epithelium the intercellular spaces arise as vacuoles in the exoplasm, and the intercellular substance of mesenchyma may also be considered as occupying coalescent vacuoles.

In the transformation from embryonic mesenchyma to the adult tissues changes must be looked for in the nucleus, in the protoplasm, and in the intercellular substance. Thus development may take place either intracellularly or intercellularly, or both.

The Connective Tissues

The most common derivative of mesenchyma is connective tissue. In its development the cells become flattened or spindle-shaped, and may lose some or all of their protoplasmic processes; the nuclei are altered in shape and the chromatin becomes more finely divided. The chief developmental change, however, is the appearance within the matrix of fibers of two sorts, white and elastic, in varying amounts. The fibers do not fill the intercellular spaces, but are bathed by the intercellular fluid. With connective tissue may be classed mucous tissue and reticular tissue.

Mucous Tissue

The substance of the umbilical cord is composed of *mucous tissue*, which, while not strictly true connective tissue, has long been regarded as a particularly favorable material for the study of the white fibers. It differs from connective tissue by the deposit of a large amount of mucus in the intercellular spaces. At birth it is a peculiar gelatinous mass of pearly luster, known anatomically as Wharton's jelly. The mucus, like that produced in the globet cells and that found in the cornea and vitreous body of the eye, is a translucent substance which contains *mucin*. Chemically there are many varieties of mucins. They are compound protein bodies containing a carbohydrate complex in their molecules, and are therefore known as glycoproteins. True mucins are formed in abundance in goblet cells and in mucous tissue; to a less extent they occur in all embryonic connective tissue. Related substances, called mucoids, have been obtained from tendon, cartilage and bone.

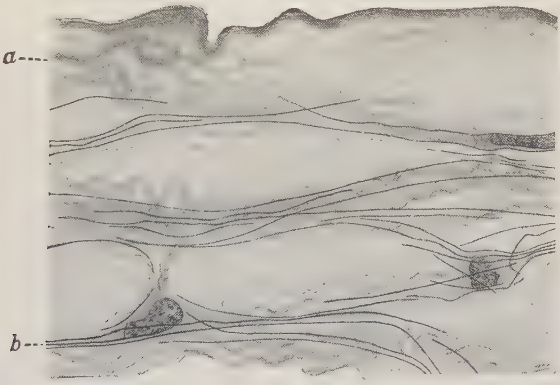


FIG. 49.—MUCOUS TISSUE OF THE HUMAN UMBILICAL CORD, STAINED WITH PHOSPHO-TUNGSTIC ACID HAEMATOXYLIN. (Mallory.)
a, White fiber. **b**, fibroglia.

In the umbilical cord the mucus may be regarded as a secretion which is produced without the formation of special granules or vacuoles, and is discharged equally from all surfaces of the cells. It is a homogeneous ground-substance, in which extremely delicate fibrils are imbedded. These are gathered in wavy bundles (Fig. 49, a). Fibrils of the same sort, generally arranged in denser bundles, are found in ordinary connective tissue, and constitute the *white fibers*. Chemically they are said to consist of *collagen*, an albuminoid body which on boiling yields *gelatin*, the source of glue. The origin of the collagenous fibers has been the subject of repeated investigation. Henle (1841) considered that they arose in the intercellular substance, apart from the cells, and Merkel defends this idea in the following passage, here somewhat abbreviated (Anat. Hefte, Abt. 1, 1909, vol. 38, pp. 323–392):

> The mesenchymal syncytium secretes an amorphous gelatinous substance, which may be scanty (as in reticular tissue) or abundant (as in the umbilical cord) The fibers arise exclusively in this gelatinous substance; the cells take no direct part in the formation of the fibers but serve only for the production of the jelly. At their first appearance the fibers are not collagen, and generally they are not yet smooth and glistening like true connective tissue fibers. Instead they are granular, and not infrequently varicose. Later, though often very soon, they acquire the characteristic appearance of fully formed connective tissue fibers. They may arise as a very delicate network, which, through the breaking down of the least utilized threads, becomes transformed into smooth and unbranched fibers. But in places where from the first there is a decided stretching, as in tendon, parallel unbranched fibers are formed directly. Professor Heiderich has shown me preparations of a mucin, in which, by the addition of acid, structures were formed which were strikingly similar to developing connective tissue—without any stretching, nets with round meshes; but with the slightest traction, long fibers isolated from one another. Thus connective tissue fibers are merely the effects of mechanical conditions upon the gelatinous intercellular substance.

A very different idea of the origin of the white fibers is that of Flemming, further elaborated by Meves (Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1910, vol. 75, pp. 149–208), according to whom the fibers arise within the cytoplasm from the mitochondria or chondrioconta. Meves describes the development of white fibers as follows:

> Connective tissue fibrils are produced from the chondrioconta which come to lie at the surface of the cell. They can change their chemical constitution and are no longer stained by iron hæmatoxylin or fuchsin. At this stage those which are in a row unite end to end. Thus in the formation of a fibril numerous cells take part, each producing a section. The fibrils again change their chemical constitution and become intensely stained by the collagen stains. Finally they become free from the cells and lie in the intercellular spaces. From the time of their first formation they have a wavy course, which may become more marked later. This clearly means that the connective tissue fibers have grown in length more than the surrounding elements. They increase also in diameter through independent growth, and for a time new fibers are produced by the cells.

More recent work seems to favor the view of Merkel. The intercellular fluid, or other comparable colloidal gels (such as solutions of egg albumen, gelatin, etc.) may precipitate a fiber network under the proper chemical conditions, much as fibrin is formed in blood plasma (Isaacs, Anat. Record, 1919, vol. 17, pp. 243–270). The mesenchymal cells may be the agents, by secretion, for supplying the proper conditions.

In addition to these white fibers, the umbilical cord contains stiff fibers of a different nature, found at the periphery of the cells. They are similar to the fibers of a tissue which forms the framework for the branching nerve cells, thus binding them together, and accordingly named *neuroglia* (νεῦρον, nerve, γλία, glue). Fibers similar to those of the neuroglia, found at the periphery of muscle cells, are called *border fibrils* or *myoglia*. In 1903 Mallory described similar border fibrils in connective tissue and named them *fibroglia*. They are seen at the periphery of the cells in the umbilical cord (Fig. 49, b). Mallory describes them as follows (Journ. Med. Res., 1905, vol. 13, pp. 113–136):

> Neuroglia, myoglia and fibroglia fibrils morphologically and in certain staining reactions more or less closely resemble one another. They touch or form part of the periphery of the cell protoplasm, but continue away from the cell in two directions, *i.e.*, they do not begin or end in the cell which produces them. How far the fibroglia are accompanied by protoplasmic processes cannot be determined. The number of these fibrils to a cell is not constant, but it is usually in the neighborhood of a dozen.

Professor Mallory has found no transitions between the fibroglia and the white fibers. Meves likewise considers them as entirely distinct, and states that the production of white fibers by the cells of the umbilical cord terminates by the fifth month. The fibroglia are present at birth, and probably no tissue is more favorable for their study than the umbilical cord at term. Though present also in young connective tissue, they are apparently absent in the adult. Special stains are necessary to make them at all conspicuous, and except for their presence in new tissue (tumors) they seem to be relatively unimportant. The same may be said of the myoglia fibers; the neuroglia fibers, however, are an essential part of the adult tissue.

In addition to the mucous matrix, the white fibers, and the fibroglia, mucous tissue contains cells and intercellular spaces. The cells, at first stellate with many anastomoses, become elongated and more or less disconnected from one another. Three of their nuclei are shown in Fig. 49, but their cytoplasm forms a thin layer, the limits of which can scarcely be determined. The intercellular spaces contain a fluid through which cells may migrate. There are no capillaries, lymphatic vessels, or nerves within the mucous tissue of the umbilical cord, and no elastic fibers. The three large blood vessels which pass through the cord, and the tissue in their walls, will be considered later.

CONNECTIVE TISSUE

Connective tissue occurs in various forms. Dense connective tissue is a tough fibrous substance, such as that part of the skin from which leather is made; and loose connective tissue, or *areolar tissue*, is a spongy cobweb of delicate filaments, such as occurs between the muscles. Both forms when fresh are very white, and they are composed of similar fibers. A small mass of fresh connective tissue, subcutaneous or inter-muscular, may be spread out with needles upon a slide, thus forming a thin film. After adding a drop of water and applying a cover glass, it will present such an appearance as shown in Fig. 50. The bulk of the tissue is seen to consist of white or collagenous fibers felted together (Fig. 50, c). They are the same in origin and structure as those already described in the mucous tissue of the umbilical cord, but in ordinary connective tissue their fibrils are gathered into denser bundles. Each bundle or *fiber* is composed of exceedingly minute *fibrils*, bound together by a small amount of cement substance. The addition of picric acid causes the fibers to separate into their constituent elements. Often a bundle of fibrils turns aside from the main trunk, so that the fiber branches, but the fibrils themselves are unbranched.

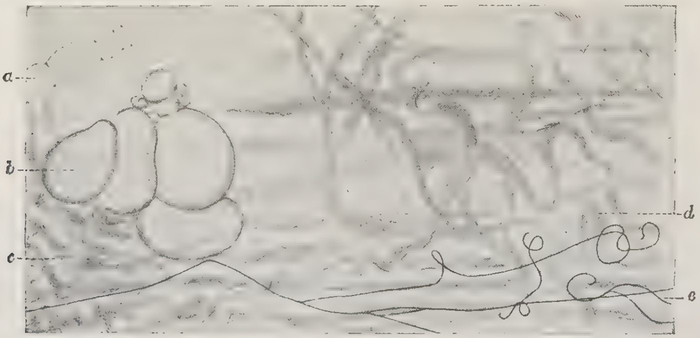


FIG. 50.—SUBCUTANEOUS TISSUE FROM A CAT.
The fiber **a** has been treated with dilute acetic acid; the other fibers have been teased apart and examined, unstained, in water. **a, c,** White fibers; **b,** fat cell; **d,** connective tissue cell; **e,** elastic fibers.

Upon the addition of dilute acetic acid the white fibers swell and disintegrate, some of them passing through the condition shown in Fig. 50, a. Such fibers show a succession of constrictions at places where they are encircled by rings or spiral bands of a refractive substance not affected by the acid. These rings have been observed by Ranvier in living connective tissue fibers, and it is therefore improbable that they are remnants of a sheath which surrounded the entire fiber, as some have thought. They are probably formed of elastic substance.

In addition to the white or collagenous fibers, connective tissue contains fibers of a second sort, known as *elastic fibers*. They are absent from corneal tissue, the mucous tissue of the umbilical cord and generally, though not always, from reticular tissue. Since they develop later than the white fibers, they are not found in young connective tissue; but otherwise they are present, though varying greatly in abundance, in all forms of connective tissue. They are not destroyed by dilute acids or alkalies, and are described as composed of *elastin*, an albuminoid body which does not yield gelatin on boiling. Unlike the white fibers they are not composed of smaller elements or fibrils, but each fiber is a structureless homogeneous thread. In favorable cases, however, an enveloping sheath may be seen. In tissue which has not been torn apart the elastic fibers form a net (Fig. 51, A). The fibers meet and fuse with one another; and across the angles thus formed, one or two delicate strands are commonly to be found. When the tissue is pulled apart so that the net is broken, the fibers kink and recoil like tense wires (Fig. 50, e).

The origin of the elastic fibers has not been determined. They have been said to arise within the cells by the fusion of granules of elastin. Mall's idea of their exoplasmic origin is illustrated by their relation to the cells in Fig. 51, B. Others consider that they are formed from the intercellular substance.

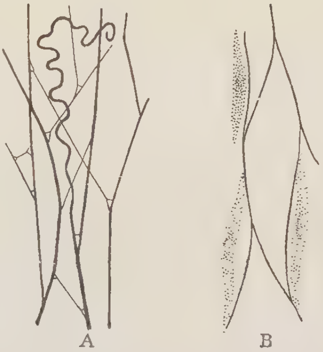


Fig. 51.

A, Elastic fibers of the subcutaenous areolar tissue of a rabbit. (After Schäfer.) **B,** Cells in relation with elastic fibers, after treatment with acetic acid. Subcutaneous tissue of a pig embryo. (After Mall.)

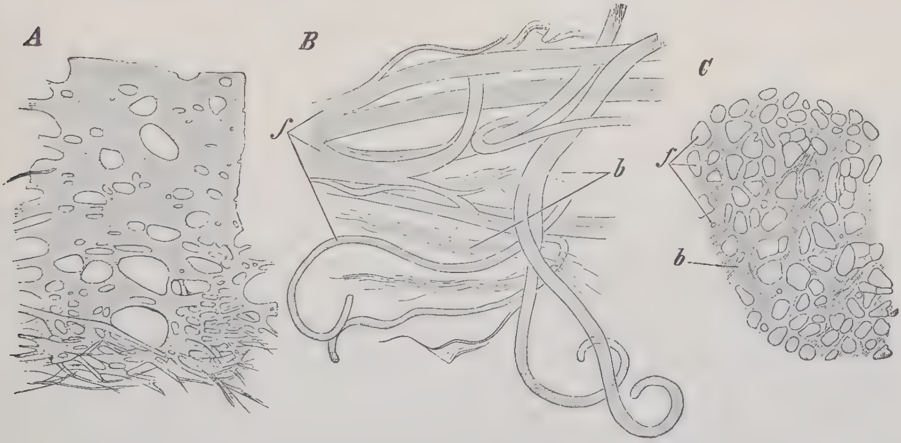


Fig. 52.—Elastic Fibers.

A, Network of thick elastic fibers below, passing into a fenestrated membrane above. From the human endocardium. **B,** Thick elastic fibers (**f**) from the ligamentum nuchae of the ox; **b,** white fibers. **C,** Cross section of the ligamentum nuchae, lettered as in **B.**

Although elastic fibers are clearly seen in fresh connective tissue, they are often invisible in specimens stained with hæmatoxylin and eosin. In order to determine their presence, sections may be stained with resorcin-fuchsin, which leaves the white fibers nearly colorless, but makes the elastic fibers dark purple; or other special stains may be used. In some situations, however, the elastic tissue is highly developed and may be seen with any stain. This is true of the fenestrated membranes found in many blood vessels. A fenestrated membrane is a network of elastic fibers in which the fibers are so broad that they appear to form a perforated plate (Fig. 52, A). The greatest development of elastic tissue probably occurs in the ligament of the neck in grazing animals, which consists of very coarse elastic fibers with very little white fiber. It is therefore commonly used for the histological and chemical study of elastic tissue (Fig. 52, B and C). In man the stylohyoid ligament and the *ligamenta flava* are of this class, and they exhibit the yellowish color which is characteristic of elastic tissue. Elastic fibers are found also in the ground substance of certain cartilages, which will be described later.

Connective Tissue Cells. In addition to white collagenous fibers and yellow elastic fibers, connective tissue contains cells and intercellular spaces. The cells are known as fibroblasts. (βλαστὸς, a bud, is used in many terms to indicate a formative cell, with a prefix which usually designates the structure produced. Since it is doubtful whether the fibers of connective tissue are directly derived from the cells, the propriety of the term in this case may be doubted.) Actively growing fibroblasts, both in the embryo and in the adult, exhibit fibroglia fibrils at their borders, but in mature connective tissue these fibrils are seldom found. The cells of fully formed connective tissue are generally flattened or lamellar, consisting of a thin pale layer of almost homogeneous protoplasm, which is sometimes vacuolated. Such cells when seen on edge are spindle-shaped. They may be spread out in flat layers, retaining the protoplasmic connections characteristic of mesenchyma, as seen in the mesentery (Fig. 53, c). In dense connective tissue the cells also exhibit broad thin protoplasmic processes (Fig. 54, c), but they have become more or less detached from one another. The cells are bent to conform with the adjacent fibers, to which they are closely applied, and along which, in living tissue, they

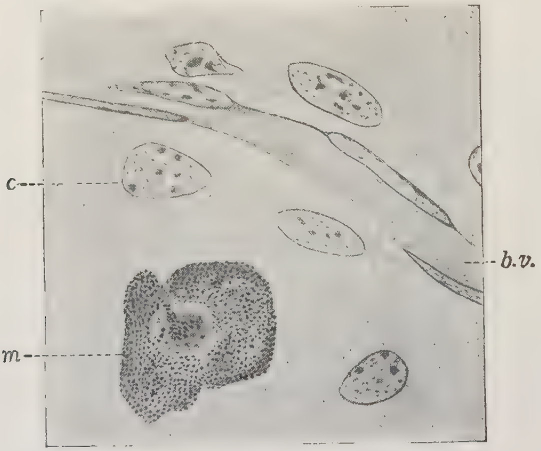


FIG. 53.—CONNECTIVE TISSUE CELLS (c) AND A MAST CELL (m) FROM THE MESENTERY OF A RAT. ×1000; b.v. a small blood vessel lined with endothelial cells. The specimen was fixed in alcohol and stained with Unna's methylene blue.

have been observed to migrate. The nuclei of these cells are elliptical on surface view, and rod-shaped when seen on edge. They contain fine chromatin granules, and sometimes a small but distinct nucleolus. Occasionally the nuclei are indented on one side. The centrosome, in a clear area of protoplasm, has been found close beside the nucleus. In ordinary specimens, stained with hæmatoxylin and eosin, the centrosome is not seen, and the entire cytoplasm is quite inconspicuous; but the nuclei stand out prominently along the edges of the fibers (Fig. 54, x).

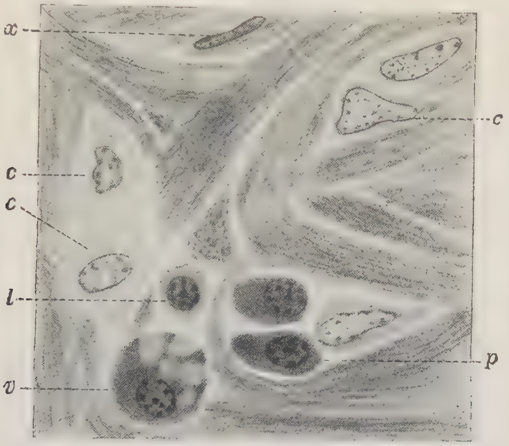


Fig. 54.—Connective Tissue Cells (c) a Lymphocyte (l) and Plasma Cells (p) from a Lactating Human Breast. × 1000.
A vacuolated plasma cell is shown at v, and a connective tissue cell on edge is seen at x.

Within the tissue spaces, floating freely in the intercellular fluid which bathes the fibers and the fibroblasts, other cells are present in varying numbers. Many of the cells of the blood may occasionally be found, sometimes in disease in great numbers, for they may leave the blood stream and wander through the tissue spaces; but other cells remain so permanently in the connective tissue that they may be considered a normal part of it. These are the plasma cells, lymphocytes, clasmatocytes, mast cells, tissue eosinophiles, and occasional pigment cells.

Typical plasma cells are shown in Fig. 54, p. They usually have very round nuclei with characteristic coarse masses of deeply staining chromatin. These masses may appear as wedge-shaped bodies with their broad ends against the nuclear membrane so that they resemble the spokes of a wheel ("Radkern"); or the chromatin blocks may suggest the squares of a checker-board. The nucleus occupies an eccentric position in the mass of dense and deeply staining protoplasm. Specific granulation, such as occurs in mast cells and eosinophiles, is absent. In certain plasma cells, vacuoles are seen (Fig. 54, v) which contain a "homogeneous, semifluid, colloid-like substance which has a strong affinity for acid dyes."

If the affinity for such dyes has become well marked, these vacuoles form conspicuous structures, known as Russel's bodies. Usually they are regarded as degenerative products, but some investigators consider them as secretions.

Associated with plasma cells, *lymphocytes* are often found (Fig. 54, l). They differ from plasma cells in having only a small rim of pale protoplasm about the nucleus, but the nuclei of these two sorts of cells are very similar. They also form a large percentage of the cells of the blood, and form the main part of "lymphoid tissue," where they are gathered in great numbers.

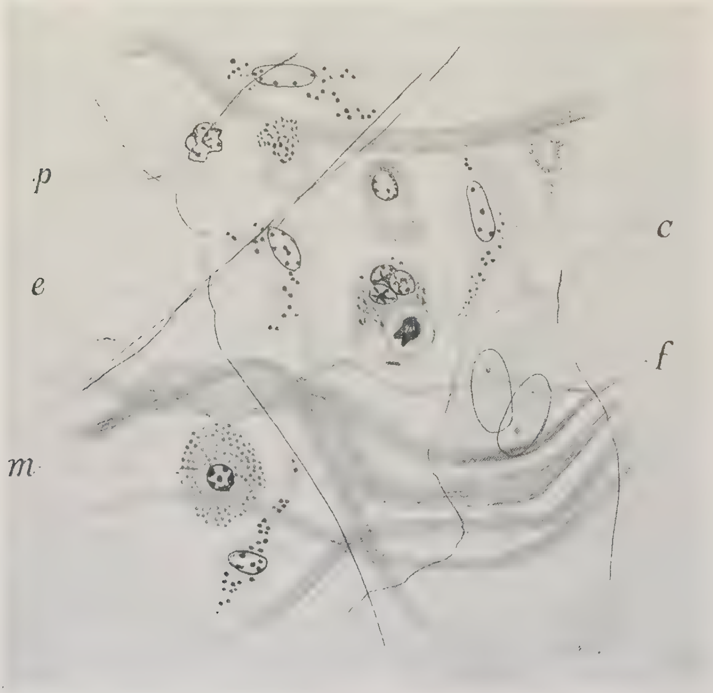


Fig. 55.—Connective Tissue Cells after Vital Staining. (After Maximow.)
c, clasmatocyte; **f,** fibroblast; **p,** plasma cell; **m,** mast-cell; **e,** endothelial phagocyte.

They are called large or small lymphocytes, according to the amount of their protoplasm, and vary considerably in size.

Clasmatocytes are cells with finely granular protoplasm frequently prolonged into long pseudopodia, indicative of active motion. They are phagocytic, often containing particles of various sorts, cell fragments or debris or even whole cells, and after the injection of vital dyes are noticeably filled with the dye granules. The nucleus is spherical or oval, with no special arrangement of the chromatin granules. They are said to be the same as the monocytes of the blood, and have also been named resting wandering cells, histiocytes, macrophages, endothelial phagocytes, and so forth.

Mast cells were so called by Ehrlich because he believed that they arose from over-nourished connective tissue cells (Mast is the German term for the acorns on which animals are fattened) located near the blood vessels. Their most striking characteristic is the presence in the protoplasm of large granules, sometimes filling the cell so that the nucleus is obscured, which stain intensely with basic dyes. The granules, however, are imperfectly preserved by certain common fixing reagents. The nucleus is oval or round, with a slight amount of chromatin. Cells with similar granules are found normally in the blood, but are said not be of exactly the same type, and are therefore called 'basophilic leucocytes" as distinguished from the "mast cells."

Eosinophiles, or tissue eosinophiles, are cells with granules within the protoplasm which stain intensely with the acid dye eosin. Otherwise they resemble the mast cells in size and nucleus. The ordinary fixing fluids do not affect these granules. They are especially prominent in the lactating breast. It has been suggested that the eosinophilic granules were derived from ingested particles of red blood corpuscles, but there is little to uphold this idea except the similar staining reaction of corpuscle and granules. Recently it has been claimed that eosinophilic granules "ripen" into basophilic. Eosinophiles are also present in the blood stream.

In ordinary sections of connective tissue, stained with haematoxylin and eosin, eosinophiles are seldom overlooked, because of the brilliant color of their granules. Mast cells, however, should be sought for in tissue preserved either in formalin or alcohol, and stained with Unna's polychrome methylene blue or some other basic dye. The preparation shown in Fig. 53 is a portion of the mesentery preserved by being tied across the end of a short glass tube and immersed in alcohol. The tissue was then stained with methylene blue, and mounted without being sectioned. Most of it is colored pale blue, but the granules of the mast cells are deep purple. Such granules, which assume a color different from that of the stain employed, are called by Ehrlich *metachromatic*.

The origin of the various free cells of the connective tissue spaces has been the subject of considerable controversy. The lymphocyte is considered by some as the parent stem of most or all of the cells of the blood, and also as the forerunner of the plasma cell. Others derive the plasma cell directly from the fibroblast. A short discussion of this point is given by Kingsley (Anat. Record, 1924, vol. 29, pp. 1–19). The clasmatocyte has been especially studied by Evans and Scott (Contrib. to Embry., vol. 10, 1921, pp. 1–55). The original papers by Ehrlich in which he differentiated the types of cells by their granules are in the Arch. f. Physiol., 1879, pp. 166–171 and 571–579.

Connective tissue contains two additional types of cells, which are so distinct that they may be regarded as separate tissues. These are the pigment cells and the fat cells; the latter will be described as adipose tissue.

Pigment cells. The color of the various tissues is due to pigments, which may be in solution, like the hæmoglobin in red blood corpuscles and the lipochromes in fat; or they may occur as granules imbedded in the protoplasm. The granules, which are yellow, brown, or black, often retain their natural color in stained specimens. They are said to consist of "melanin," which represents an ill-defined group of substances, some of which are hæmoglobin derivatives. In the lung, inhaled soot is taken into the protoplasm of certain cells which thus become pigmented with extraneous material. Pigment granules are widely distributed, and may be found in the liver, spleen, heart, brain, and other organs.

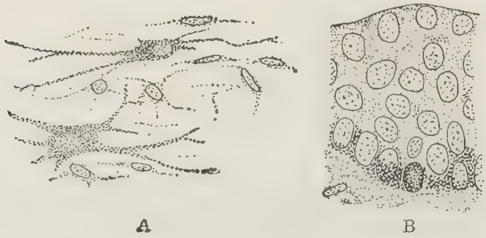


FIG. 56.
A, Two pigment cells from the deep, peripheral part of the cornea of the rabbit. **B,** Pigmented epithelium from the conjunctiva of the guinea-pig. The pigment is chiefly in the basal layer.

In certain situations, pigment is extensively developed in branched connective tissue cells such as are shown in Fig. 56, A. In man these are of limited occurrence, being found near the eye, and in the pia mater, especially under the medulla oblongata and upper portion of the spinal cord. Weidenreich considers that this represents the remains of a general pigmented sheath for the entire nervous system. In lower vertebrates branching pigment cells are often abundant in the subcutaneous tissue, and changes in color, such as occur in frogs, are due to the extension of retraction of these processes. Such pigmented connective tissue cells are called chromatophores or *chromatocytes*. But in the human skin the pigment granules are in the epidermis, chiefly in the basal layers. In the stratified epithelium of the conjunctiva of the eye, toward the cornea, numerous pigment granules are found in the basal layers, and scattered groups occur also in the outer layers, as shown in Fig. 56, B. Pigment in this situation occurs frequently in the Caucasian race, and regularly in the other human races. Simple epithelium may be densely pigmented, as in the external epithelium of the retina. Thus it is seen that pigment cells are by no means limited to connective tissue.

TENDON

Tendons consist essentially of very dense connective tissue. They are composed almost wholly of parallel white or collagenous fibrils, compactly bound together in bundles. The cementing matrix contains *tendomucoid.* Closely applied to the bundles are the tendon cells which produced them.

In ordinary longitudinal sections of tendon the nuclei appear in rows, but the protoplasm of the cells is often indistinct. This is because the narrow slits in which the cells lie between the massive fiber bundles are seldom found parallel to the line of vision, and the dense color given by the fibres obscures the more delicate color of the cell protoplasm. When a clear view is obtained the cells are seen connected end to end, as in Fig. 57. In special preparations, particularly in those of the delicate tendons found in the tail of a rat or mouse (Fig. 58), it is seen that the cytoplasm of tendon cells forms a plate-like layer which is folded about the fiber bundles, tending to encircle them. Moreover the cells are provided with lamellar or wing-like projections, which extend out between adjacent fiber bundles, and may anastomose with those of adjacent cells. Thus, as in connective tissue, the original syncytial arrangement of the mesenchyma is partially preserved.

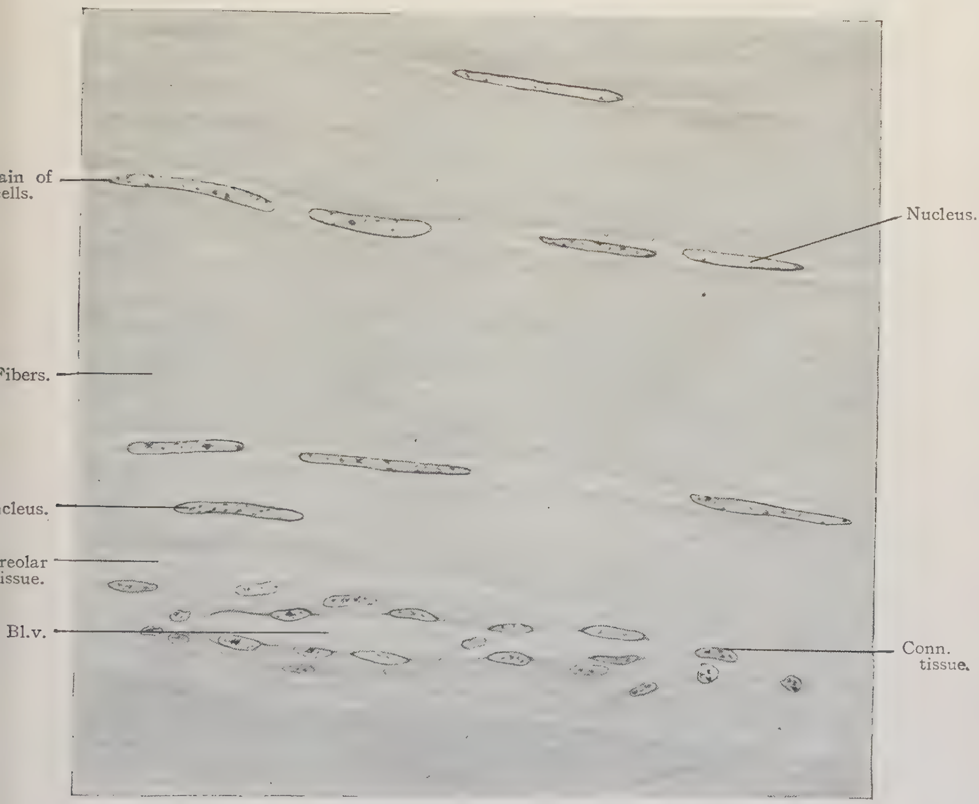


Fig. 57.—Tendon, Cut Longitudinally.
Chains of tendon cells between tendon fibers. A blood vessel running in loose areolar tissue septum.

The primary tendon bundles, which consist chiefly of white fibers and tendon cells, contain also a small amount of elastic tissue in the form of fine, wide-meshed networks. The elastic fibers are said to occur especially near the cells and their processes. The primary bundles are generally grouped in secondary bundles or fasciculi, which are bounded by partitions or septa of looser connective tissue (Fig. 59). Within the septa there are nerves and blood vessels, in relatively small number. Lymphatic vessels are said to be confined to the sheath of connective tissue which surrounds the entire tendon, with which the septa are continuous (Fig. 59).

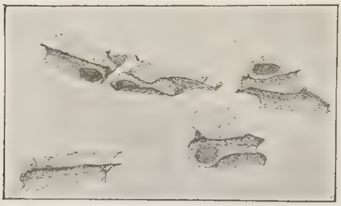


Fig. 58.—Tendon Cells from the Tail of a Rat. Stained with Methylene Blue, Intra Vitam. (Huber.)

The fibrous sheath or *vagina fibrosa*, which surrounds the tendon, may contain a cavity filled with fluid. It is then called a mucous sheath or *vagina mucosa.* The cavity arises as a cleft in the embryonic connective tissue and its walls are formed of mesenchymal epithelium. The cells have become flattened and the fibers felted together to bound the space. It contains a fluid like that of the joint cavities, being chiefly water and a mucoid substance which renders it viscid, together with protein material and salts. The function of the mucous sheath is to facilitate the movements of the tendon. By its formation the tendon is freed from the local connection with surrounding tissue, and the sheath generally occurs where such connection would especially interfere with motion. The *mucous bursæ* are similar structures in relation with muscles or bones. The joint cavities, to be described later, belong in the same class, having a similar origin and function.

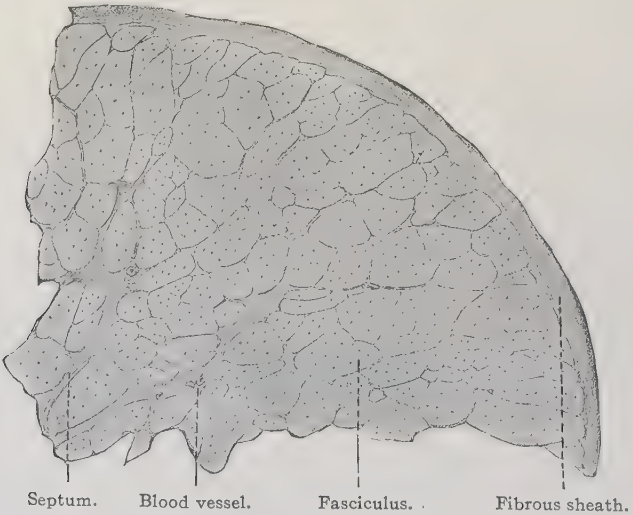


Fig. 59.—From a Cross Section of a Tendon from an Adult Man. ×40.

Aponeuroses, fasciæ and ligaments are connective tissue formations, resembling tendon in possessing a more or less regular arrangement of cells and fibers. Elastic elements may be abundant.

Reticular Tissue

The tissue of the adult which most closely resembles mesenchyma is known as *reticular tissue*. It cannot, however, be regarded as an immature connective tissue, or a persistence of the primitive mesenchyma, since it arises rather late in embryonic development (*e.g.*, in the lymph glands which first appear in human embryos measuring about 45 mm., and in the œsophagus of embryos of 30 mm.). It is therefore considered to be a special form of connective tissue.

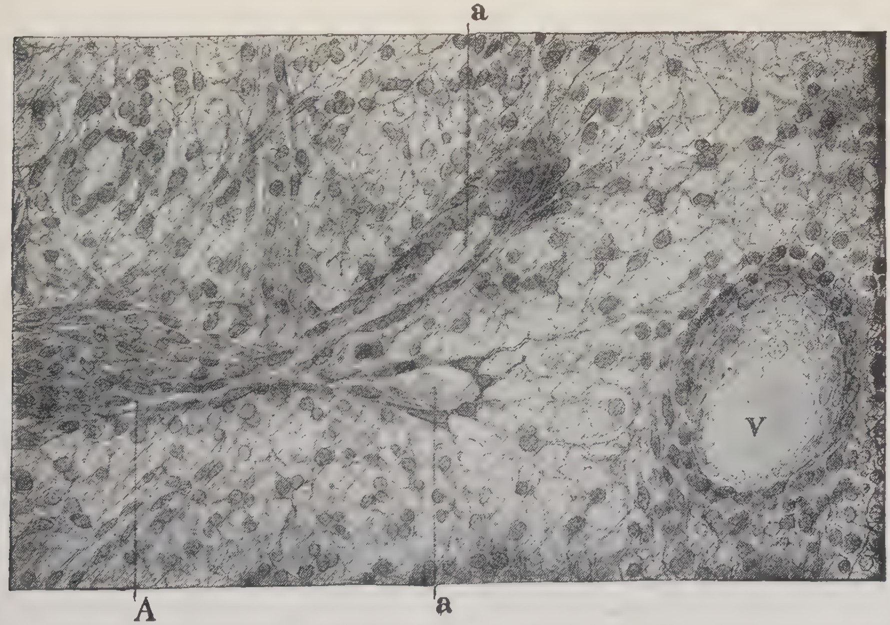


Fig. 60.—Reticular Tissue Seen in a Frozen Section of a Dog's Spleen Which Had Been Injected with Silver Nitrate. ×250. (Mall.)
A, artery with its ampullæ (a): **V**, vein.

Reticular tissue forms the framework of lymph glands, red bone marrow and the spleen; it occurs as a layer immediately beneath the epithelium of the digestive tract, and has been reported in many other organs. It consists of a network of cells in relation with an abundant fluid intercellular substance (Fig. 60). At the border of the bodies and protoplasmic processes of the primitive stellate cells there are stiff, slender fibers or narrow plates, not especially noticeable with the usual stains with which the protoplasmic processes appear clear and homogeneous. With Bielchowsky's or other special treatment, however, the fibers stand out prominently, the cells seemingly applied closely to them. The cells contain pale, flattened, oval nuclei, with few chromatin granules; the protoplasm is clear and non granular. The intricate relation of these cells to the blood vessels, and their probable function in producing wandering cells is given elsewhere. In ordinary sections reticular tissue will be most readily recognized by the cells lodged in the fluid intercellular substance. These cells, which are chiefly lymphocytes, having round nuclei and a narrow rim of protoplasm, are often so abundant that the tissue appears as a dense cellular mass in which the framework of reticular tissue is almost completely hidden. Upon careful examination, however, some of its nuclei and fibers can always be detected.

In order to study reticular tissue advantageously, the lymphocytes and other forms of free cells should be disengaged from its meshes. This may be accomplished by shaking or brushing the sections; or by artificially digesting the specimen (which if properly done will destroy the cells, including those of the reticular tissue, but will leave the network of fibers); or by the following ingenious method devised by Mall. A piece of fresh spleen is distended by injecting gelatin into its substance; it is then frozen and sectioned. The sections are put in warm water, which dissolves out the gelatin, carrying the loose cells with it, and leaves areas of clear reticular tissue. Professor Mall has also shown how to wash out the pulpy contents of the entire spleen, so as to leave the framework of connective and reticular tissue, which may be inflated and dried (Zeitschr. f. Morph., 1900, vol. 2, pp. 1–42). Such preparations give an idea of the intricacy of the reticular meshwork that can be obtained in no other way, and yet the finer ramifications have been destroyed by this process.

There has been considerable discussion as to whether the fibers of reticular tissue are chemically different from those of ordinary connective tissue. They differ from the elastic elements of connective tissue, since reticular fibers are dissolved by both acids and alkalis which leave the elastic fibers intact; and they are not destroyed by pancreatic digestion which causes the elastic fibers to disintegrate. But the differentiation of the reticular fibers from the "white fibers" of connective tissue has not been successfully accomplished. Mall has shown, however, that tendon, consisting largely of white fibers, is dissolved more readily by boiling in ½ p.c. solutions of potassium hydrate or hydrochloric acid, respectively, than sections of lymph glands; and the name *reticulin* has been introduced for a constituent of the reticular fibers which does not yield gelatin on boiling. Reticulin is not generally recognized as an independent substance, and reticular tissue often appears to blend with white fibrous connective tissue.

The recognition of reticular tissue depends, therefore, on its form rather than on its chemical constitution.

Fibers with similar staining reactions are found also in the liver and in the heart, where they are derived from the endothelial cells of the blood vessels. These are not associated with cells, and are called "endothelial reticulum," not reticular tissue.

ADIPOSE TISSUE

If in a freshly killed animal a loop of intestine is drawn out of the abdominal cavity, the blood vessels ramifying in its mesentery will be seen to be imbedded in a band of fat, which branches when the vessels branch, and diminishes in width toward the intestine as the vessels become small. The close relation between the distribution of fat and the course of the vessels is notable also in sections. Fat cells occur in groups or lobules around the vessels, and are found, with few exceptions, wherever there is loose connective tissue. They may also occur singly, as in some parts of the denser connective tissue of the breast.

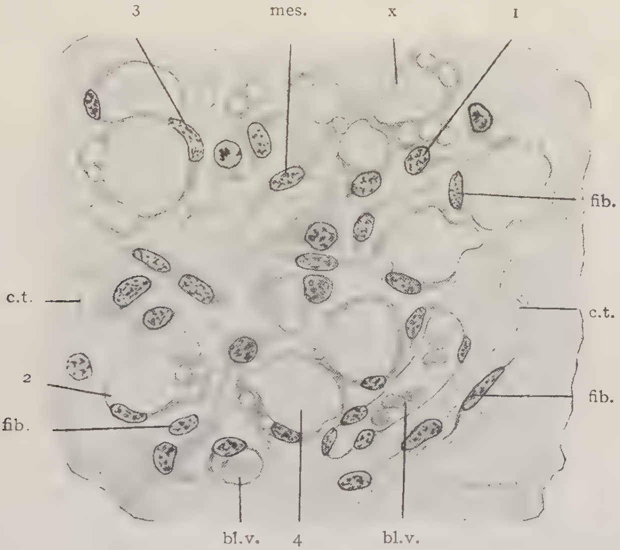


FIG. 61.—FAT ISLAND: SUBCUTANEOUS TISSUE OF A HUMAN EMBRYO OF FOUR MONTHS. **mes.**, mesenchymal cell; **fib.**, young fibroblast; **1, 2, 3, 4**, stages in the development of fat cells; **x**, young fat cell cut without showing nucleus; **c.t.**, white fibers.

When examined fresh, each fat cell appears as a large round oil-drop, which is more or less compressed into a polyhedral shape by the surrounding cells. It is highly refractive, having a border which becomes alternately bright and dark on changing the focus. The liquid fat or oil which fills the cell, leaving only an imperceptible film of protoplasm around it, may escape by the rupture of the membrane, thus forming smaller drops. In the specimen shown in Fig. 50 the fat was seen coming out from the upper surface of one of the cells, and the droplets thus emerging ran together forming larger ones. As fat cells develop, a coalescence of small drops occur in the protoplasm.

The earliest formation of adipose tissue is said to occur in human embryos of the fourth month. It may be studied advantageously in the subcutaneous tissue of embryos of the fifth month (Fig. 61). In such specimens there are areas of loose and very vascular mesenchyma, found at the level of the roots of the hairs, in which certain cells exhibit vacuoles. These cells are at first quite like the surrounding fibroblasts, being fusiform or stellate. Their protoplasm contains several small vacuoles, some of which unite to form one large drop, and the nucleus together with the greater part of the protoplasm, is pushed to one side (Fig. 61). Sections of such cells have the form of "signet rings." Frequently small vacuoles are seen in the accumulation of protoplasm beside the nucleus. With further development the fat droplet becomes so large that the protoplasmic rim appears as a mere line or membrane, just within which is the greatly flattened nucleus. During the formation of the fat cells, the branching processes become very short, but it is doubtful whether they are altogether lost.

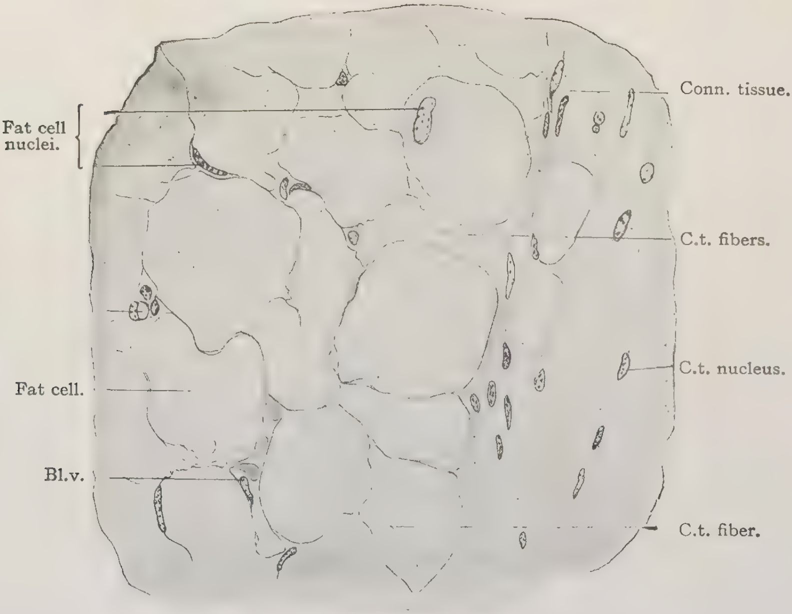


Fig. 62.—Adult Fat, from around a Nerve (Human); the Connective Tissue Fibers Bind the Fat Cells Together.

For some years after birth fat cells containing several vacuoles are found in certain situations, as around the kidney and in the outer layer of the œsophagus. Usually these are regarded as immature forms.

Adipose tissue of the adult, when well preserved, present cells of rounded form as shown in Fig. 62; often, however, their thin walls are bent or collapsed. If the sections are thick, a network of a different pattern, representing another layer of cells, will come into view on changing the focus. The nuclei of the fat cells are pale oval bodies, with finely granular chromatin, often containing one or two small vacuoles. The protoplasm around the nucleus forms such a thin layer that it is scarcely appreciable on surface view. Both nucleus and protoplasm are much darker when seen on edge, since a thicker layer of substance is thus presented. When sectioned in this position the nuclei within the cells must be carefully distinguished from those of the connective tissue just outside. Many of the fat cells will show no nuclei, since the entire cell is usually not included within the limits of one section.

Adipose tissue is never composed entirely of fat cells. Some of the original mesenchymal cells of the area of development become fibroblasts instead of fat cells, and the two tissues are always intimately mingled. Sometimes single fat cells may occur in connective tissue. A careful study of adipose tissue stained with Mallory's connective tissue stain reveals the collagen fibrils in larger or smaller bundles forming a network between the fat cells, binding them together and affording passage for numerous blood vessels. (See Fig. 62.)

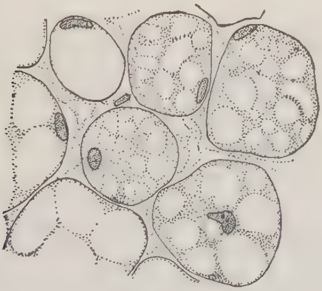


FIG. 63.—FAT CELLS FROM NEAR THE KIDNEY OF A NEW-BORN CHILD. ×520.

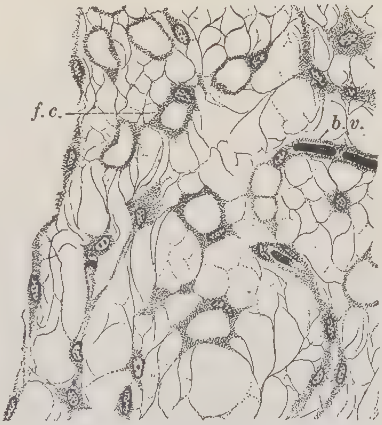


FIG. 64.—FAT CELLS FROM THE OMENTUM IN A CASE OF EXTREME EMACIATION. ×520. **b. v.**, blood vessel; **f. c.**, fat cell.

In extreme emaciation, the fat cells become small and the protoplasmic rim thickens, so that the cells again assume the signet-ring form. A delicate reticulum appears between the shrunken cells as shown in Fig. 64. Some of the fibers proceed directly from the fat cells, indicating that the processes have never wholly disappeared. Others come from the fibroblasts which from the first are scattered among the fat cells.

The great difference between the appearance of fresh fat cells and those seen in sections is due to the fact that fat is dissolved by the reagents ordinarily used in preserving the tissue. Thus the sections usually show empty vacuoles and no fat whatever. Occasionally, as a result of cooling, the fat has formed insoluble crystals in the shape of radiating needles, and these, or an amorphous precipitate which takes a bluish stain with hæmatoxylin, may be seen within the cells. Although fat is the commonest substance to be found within the vacuoles in human tissues, it is not the only material which may have filled them, and therefore to demonstrate the presence of fat, special methods must be employed. Fresh tissue may be preserved in osmic acid, which blackens not only fat but some related substances; or frozen sections of tissue may be stained with Sudan III or Scharlach R, which color fat droplets red and demonstrate them even when minute. These stains may also be used after preservation of the tissue in formalin. It may be noted that Sudan III has been fed to animals, thus imparting a pink color to the living adipose tissue. If the animal is lactating, the fat globules in the milk also become pink.

Fat vacuoles occur in many sorts of cells which do not belong to adipose tissue, such as the cells of the liver, cartilage, and striated muscle. These cells are not called fat cells, even if their protoplasm contains many vacuoles, and they do not resemble the cells of adipose tissue.

Since fat cells occur in lobular masses in definite places, as under the skin, around the kidney, in the bone marrow, etc., and since they supply the body with nutriment, it has been proposed to regard them as constituting glandular organs. They receive fat from the adjacent vessels and store it, or quite possibly they absorb carbohydrates and convert them into fats. The formation of fat has been said to begin in or near the nucleus with the production of granules, but the part which the nucleus plays is uncertain. The small vacuoles often seen within it apparently arise after the cell is full of fat. Mast cells have often been found associated with fat cells and it has been supposed that they contained secretory granules which were concerned with fat production. Like an internal secretion, fat is taken from the cells into the vessels and distributed over the body.

Cartilage

Cartilage is a mesenchymal derivative, the development of which ~~it~~ is difficult to follow, since at certain stages its nuclei are so crowded that they obscure the transformation of the intercellular substance. Two interpretations of its development are illustrated in Fig. 65, A and B. As represented in A, the mesenchymal cells multiply and come together so that the intercellular spaces are obliterated. Thus *precartilage* is formed, consisting of large closely adjacent cells, separated from one another by thin walls which stain red with eosin. This type of precartilage has been frequently described in the lower vertebrates. It becomes cartilage by the thickening and chemical transformation of its exoplasmic walls. They form an intercellular ground substance or matrix, which stains blue with hæmatoxylin. According to Professor Mall the same result is produced in another way, as shown in Fig. 65, B. The mesenchymal cells in becoming precartilage produce a fibrillated exoplasm. The nuclei with the surrounding endoplasm then become "extruded from the syncytium" and lie in the intercellular spaces. At the same time the fibrillated exoplasm becomes transformed into the homogeneous matrix of the cartilage, which stains blue with hæmatoxylin. Whether or not the cells are extruded may be questioned, but the relation of the fibrous to the homogeneous matrix, which is shown in the figure, may readily be observed around the vertebræ in pig embryos.

Once the precartilage has formed, it becomes surrounded by connective tissue in which the fibers are in general parallel to the surface. This layer is called the *perichondrium*, and begins adding cartilage to that already present. The cartilage thus enlarges by "appositional" growth. The fluid intercellular substance becomes changed to cartilage matrix, a mixture of collagen, chondromucoid, chondroitic sulphuric acid in combination, and albuminoid substances. The cause of this change is not understood, but from the fact that the matrix can increase between cells already buried in it, it seems probable that some form of cell secretion is involved. The collagen fibers of the perichondrium also become incorporated in the matrix. They are usually unnoticeable, either because they are changed chemically, or because they are of nearly the same index of refraction as the matrix. They may be brought to view by artificial digestion, or by polarized light. The matrix at first stains with eosine, but as it becomes older this changes to a characteristic blue color with hæmatoxylin.

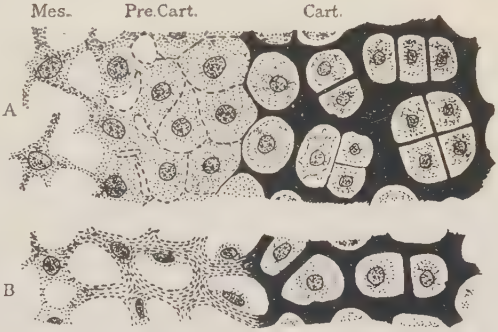


Fig. 65.—Diagrams of the Development of Cartilage from Mesenchyma.

A, Based upon Studnicka's studies of fish; **B,** upon Mall's study of mammals. **Mes.,** Mesenchyma; **Pre. Cart.** precartilage; **Cart.,** cartilage.

The matrix forms around the perichondrial cells nearest the cartilage, and they thus come to lie in enclosed spaces, the *lacunæ*. In life the cells probably fill the lacunæ, but in fixed material they may shrink, leaving a certain amount of space. Within the lacunæ the cells are cut off from the nutritive tissue fluids, receiving only that which can seep through the matrix. It has been asserted that this diffusion takes place through a system of canals penetrating the matrix, and passing from one lacuna to another as in bone. This may be true in the cartilage of some lower forms, but in mammalian cartilage the only canals which have been reported are presumably the result of shrinkage, such as are produced by treating the specimen with absolute alcohol or ether.

In becoming cartilage cells the connective tissue cells of the perichondrium (chondroblasts) undergo an interesting cytomorphosis. In Fig.

66, a section of cartilage is shown extending from the perichondrium below to the middle of the cartilage above. From below upward the cells are seen to enlarge, and to become rounder, losing the processes which may have connected them. As they are buried deeper in the matrix they form small fat droplets within their protoplasm. This is probably a sign of degeneration, and is often found pathologically in other tissues (*e.g.*, fatty degeneration of the liver) as a result of poor nutrition. The fat droplets increase in number, and may coalesce, but not usually to a single drop. In ordinary specimens, since fat is dissolved in alcohol or ether, the cells appear riddled with holes, the protoplasm reduced to strands and a thin surface layer. The nucleus, which at first enlarged, may also contain fat, and finally becomes shrunken and pycnotic. Besides the fat, cartilage cells also contain glycogen.

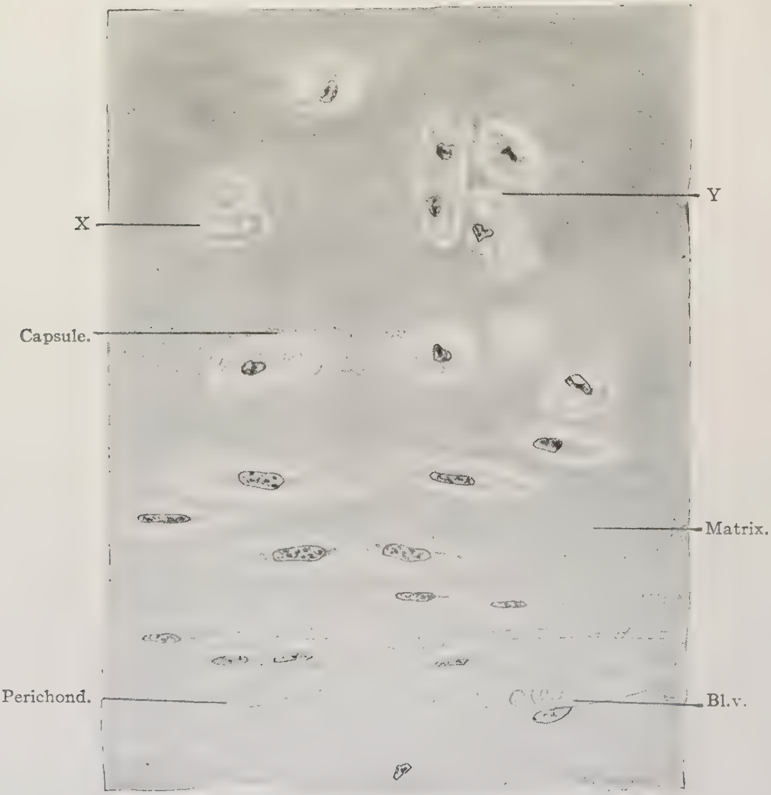


FIG. 66.—HYALINE CARTILAGE, HUMAN TRACHEA; INCLUDING THE PERICHONDRIUM. "x," periphery of cells cut showing no nucleus; "y," new matrix between daughter cells.

Glycogen is a carbohydrate which resembles starch and is therefore sometimes called "animal starch." It is soluble in water, and soon after death it becomes converted into glucose. For both of these reasons it disappears from ordinary sections. Fresh tissues, preserved in strong alcohol and stained with tincture of iodine, exhibit glycogen as brownish-red granules which may be aggregated in masses of considerable size. Glycogen is found not only in cartilage cells but also in striated muscle and in the cells of the liver. In the embryo it has a wider distribution. At certain stages of development, according to Gage, it occurs in the cells of the nervous system and is abundant in the epidermis, the digestive tube, and the cœlomic epithelium. Its production, like that of fat, varies with nutritive conditions, and it accumulates in well-nourished individuals.

The cartilage cells are said to be enclosed in *capsules*, which are often transparent and inconspicuous linings of the lacunæ. Sometimes they appear as rather broad bands which are concentrically striated, indicating that they were deposited in successive layers. The layers of newly formed matrix, which bound the lacunæ, usually stain very dark blue with hæmatoxylin. The deep color is probably due to *chondromucoid*. Peripherally the color blends with that of the older matrix, which takes a pale blue stain. Like the intercellular substance of connective tissue the matrix of cartilage may contain white and elastic fibers, but in its commonest form it appears homogeneous and hyaline. Within it, however, the cells produce new ground substance and push themselves apart from one another by *interstitial growth*. The cells divide by mitosis, and after division two of them are found in a single capsule. They then move apart, and a partition, at first very slender, is formed between them. They may remain grouped as a pair, forming a bisected elliptical figure, or they may divide again, producing either a row of cells or a cluster of three or four (Fig. 66). Since the cells change their positions with difficulty in the dense matrix, they are regularly found in very characteristic groups. The division of cells may be considered as further indication of inanition, as is pointed out by J. Loeb (The Organism as a Whole, 1916) and occurs only in the cartilage cells well within the matrix. Finally, it has been asserted certain cartilage cells undergo mucoid degeneration and become lost in the matrix. In old cartilage dark spots, staining intensely with hæmatoxylin, are suggestive of such a process. Such cells must be carefully distinguished from tangential sections of the deeply staining pericapsular matrix.

The perichondrium is thus the formative layer of cartilage, and a more or less perfect regeneration of cartilage may occur after surgical operations if the perichondrium is left in place, but not otherwise.

The perichondrium contains vessels and nerves, none of which penetrate the matrix of the cartilage. In some cases, however, vascular connective tissue occupies an excavation in its peripheral portion. Most mammalian cartilages are in the form of thin strips, even the bulkier costal cartilages being composed of trabeculae with spaces between, like the bone of the ribs. In old age, perhaps because the diffusion through the matrix is lessened, or because the cartilage sheet has become too thick, a deposit of calcareous granules occurs in the matrix. The degenerated cartilage matrix may thus become calcified, but does not become true bone, lacking the characteristic pattern of the bone matrix. In degenerating portions of the laryngeal and costal cartilages, fibers having a luster like asbestos (or the mineral *amianthus*) are sometimes seen; according to Prenant these "amianthoid" fibers are neither white nor elastic.

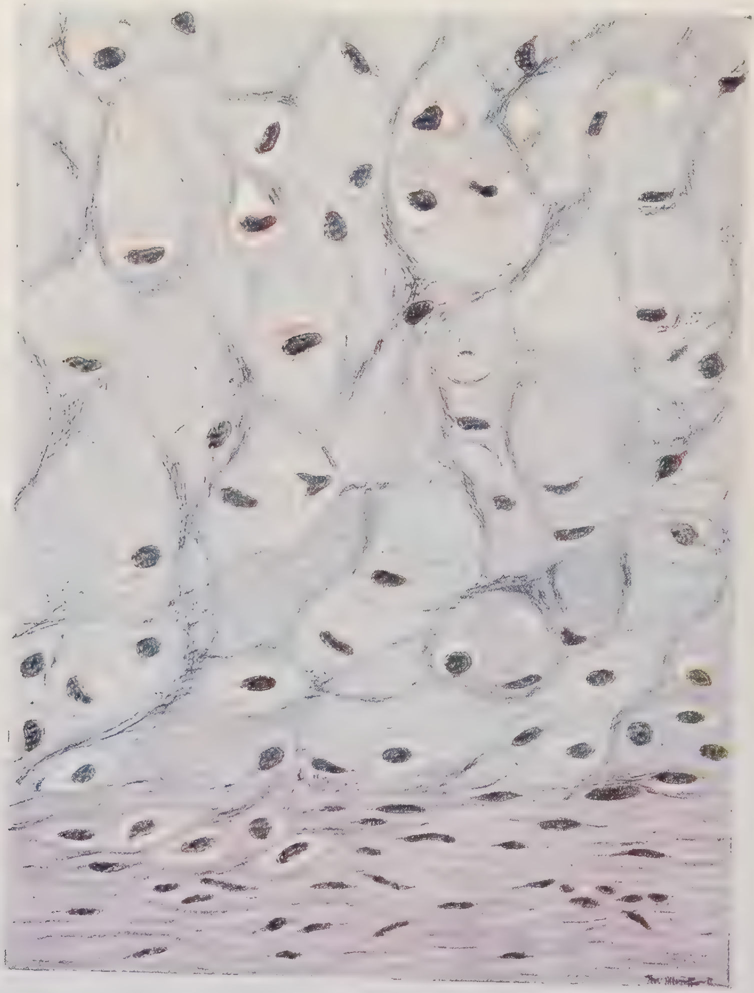


FIG. 67.—ELASTIC CARTILAGE, HUMAN LARYNX; RESORCIN-FUCHSIN AND HAEMATOXYLIN AND EOSIN.

The three principal forms of cartilage—hyaline, elastic, and fibrocartilage—and the exceptional "vesicular supporting tissue" may be further described as follows:

Hyaline cartilage, the commonest type, is characterized by its clear, pale bluish or pearly translucent matrix, which is ordinarily free from fibrils. The nasal cartilages, most of the laryngeal cartilages, and the tracheal and bronchial rings are of this variety, together with the xiphoid and costal cartilages, and the articular cartilages which cover the joint surfaces of the bones. In embryos the greater portion of the skeleton is at first formed of hyaline cartilage. It is in this apparently homogeneous type of matrix that fibers can be discovered by suitable methods, as explained above.

Elastic cartilage contains, in its matrix, granules, fibers or networks of elastic substance (Fig. 67); consequently its color is yellowish. It is found in the external ear, the auditory (Eustachian) tube, the epiglottis, and in certain small cartilages of the larynx, namely the corniculate and cuneiform cartilages and the vocal processes of the arytænoid cartilages. It develops from hyaline cartilage, which it closely resembles. Within its matrix, granules of elastic material are deposited, which later coalesce to form fibers. Some authorities have stated that they arise from the cells, but according to Schäfer "their formation apart from the cells can be easily verified in the arytænoid cartilage of the calf." On the other hand they may have been present in the connective tissue which successively formed the perichondrium of the growing cartilage. In Fig. 67 elastic fibers can be traced from the perichondrium into the matrix.

The elastic nature of fibers within the cartilage matrix can be demonstrated by special stains, such as resorcin-fuchsin; they stain like the elastic fibers of connective tissue.

Fibro-cartilage cannot be regarded, like elastic cartilage, as a late modification of hyaline cartilage. In its early development, as seen in the intervertebral disc of an embryo, its matrix is primarily fibrous. It is composed of anastomosing bundles of fibers which blend with the hyaline matrix of the adjacent vertebral cartilage as shown in Fig. 68. Instead of becoming transformed into hyaline cartilage, however, it develops into a cartilaginous modification of dense connective tissue. It is found typically developed in the intervertebral and interpubic fibro-cartilages. According to Stöhr it forms the articular cartilage lining the sterno-clavicular, acromio-clavicular, and mandibular joints, together with the joints of the costal cartilages, and it covers the head of the ulna. Usually it is said to form the rims deepening the sockets of the shoulder and hip joints, together with the interarticular discs of the mandibular, sterno-clavicular and knee joints but these, according to Stöhr, consist of dense connective tissue without the characteristic cartilaginous matrix.

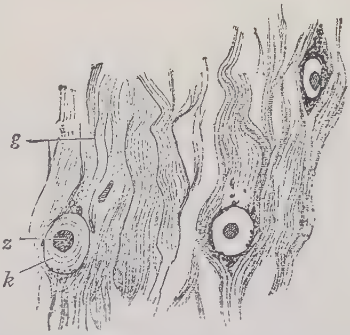


FIG. 68.—FROM A HORIZONTAL SECTION OF THE INTERVERTEBRAL DISC OF MAN. **g**, Fibrillar connective tissue; **z**, cartilage-cell (nucleus invisible); **k**, capsule surrounded by calcareous granules. ×240.

A portion of their cells are round, however. Even when typically developed, fibro-cartilage consists chiefly of interwoven bundles of white fibers. With hæmatoxylin and eosin this ground substance is diffusely stained, since the fibers, colored by the eosin, are imbedded in a chondro-mucoid matrix which stains with hæmatoxylin. The cells are not flattened as in connective tissue. They are lodged in well-rounded lacunæ bounded by capsules and zones of blue-staining matrix; and they are frequently arranged in pairs or small groups such as occur in other forms of cartilage. Their protoplasm is extensively vacuolated and is sometimes shrunken.

"*Vesicular supporting tissue*" is a form of precartilage which consists of large vesicular cells in close contact, bound together by firm walls; it is a "cartilage without a matrix." In many invertebrates it is an important tissue, but in adult mammals it is of limited occurrence. In man such a tissue is said to be present on the inner surface of the tendon of insertion of the M. quadriceps femoris, and in the sesamoid cartilage in the tendon of the M. peronæus longus. This form of cartilage resembles the notochordal tissue at a certain stage of development, and it is called "chordoid tissue" by Schaffer.

NOTOCHORDAL TISSUE

The notochord gives rise to a tissue which has often been called cartilage. Notochordal tissue differs, however, from any of the types thus far considered. The principal stages in its development in the pig have been described by Williams (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1908, vol. 8, pp. 251–284), whose account may be summarized as follows:

> In an embryo measuring 5.5 mm. the notochord is a rod of cells surrounded by a thin notochordal sheath. A cross section contains about eight wedge-shaped cells. In an embryo measuring 9 mm. it is larger, and a cross section shows about fifteen cells at the periphery, and three or four at the center. In an embryo of 11 mm. the cells have lost all definite arrangement and are more or less vacuolated. The vacuoles increase in size and number, and are found to contain mucin or a gelatinous mucin-like substance. In an embryo measuring 17 mm. the cell walls, which up to this time have remained intact, are breaking down (or being absorbed) and the mucin escapes from the vacuoles. The cells are united by strands of cytoplasm and the notochordal tissue now resembles mesenchyma. The syncytial network continues to enlarge, both by growth, and by the formation of a greater number of vacuoles. In a much older embryo (250 mm.) the formerly continuous peripheral sheet of syncytial tissue is broken in many places by large masses of mucin. In the center of this accumulation, the slender syncytial network seems suspended (cf. Fig. 69). In the adult the syncytium has become divided into groups of vacuolated cells imbedded in a gelatinous matrix. Thus it acquires a resemblance to cartilage in several particulars, but it should be regarded as a distinct tissue.

The human notochord undergoes a development similar to that of the pig. After it has ceased to be an epithelioid rod of cells, its most characteristic condition is that shown in Fig. 69, which includes a portion of the nucleus pulposus from an embryo of the fifth month. The notochordal tissue forms a vacuolated syncytium suspended in the gelatinous matrix, which, at the periphery of the nucleus pulposus, is bounded by a structureless membrane. Very rarely the notochord is the source of tumors which are composed of tissue similar to that normally found within the nucleus pulposus.

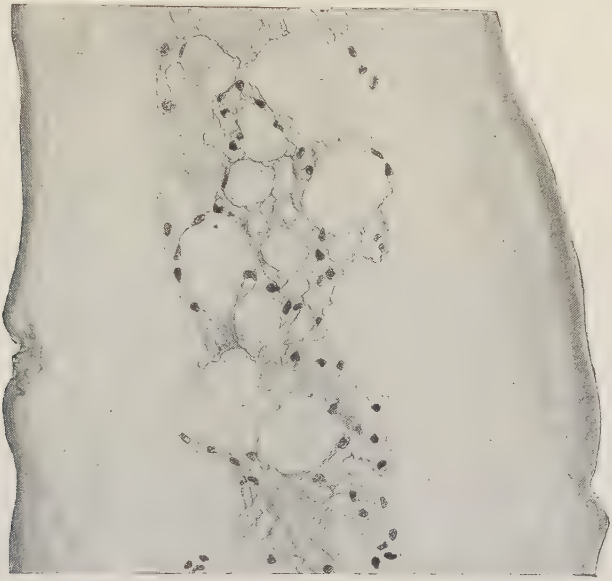


Fig. 69.—A Portion of a Nucleus Pulposus from a Human Embryo of the Sixth Month. ×225. The notochordal syncytium is seen in the center of a mucoid matrix. The vertebræ are toward the right and left, beyond the limits of the figure.

Bone

Bone develops relatively late in embryonic life, after the muscles, nerves, vessels, and many of the organs have been formed. The skeleton at that time consists of hyaline cartilages, which are later replaced by the corresponding bones of the adult. According to Kölliker, Robert Nesbitt was the first to point out that the bones are not indurated or transmuted cartilages, but are new formations, produced around the cartilages which are later destroyed. Moreover, in his "Human Osteogeny Explained in Two Lectures" (London, 1736), Nesbitt showed that certain bones develop directly from connective tissue without having been preformed in cartilage. These are now called *membrane bones* in distinction from *cartilage bones*. The membrane bones are the bones of the face and the flat bones of the skull. They include the interparietal or upper part of the occipital, the squamous and tympanic parts of the temporal, the medial pterygoid plate of the sphenoid, the parietal, frontal, nasal, lachrymal, zygomatic (malar) and palate bones, together with the vomer, maxilla and almost the entire mandible. Nesbitt correctly concluded that there is but one method of bone formation, whether or not it takes place in relation with cartilage, but he was unaware of the existence of cells, and believed that bones were produced from an ossifying juice derived from the blood.

Development of bone. Bone formation begins with the production of a layer or spicule of matrix which stains red with eosin. As to the origin of this matrix there is the same difference of opinion which obtains in regard to other intercellular products. It has been asserted that it proceeds from *osteogenic fibers*, which are modified white fibers of the connective tissue. Frequently a spicule of matrix is seen to fray out into the connective tissue, as shown in the lower part of Fig. 70. Between the osteogenic fibers, calcareous granules may then be deposited until the fibers are lost in a homogeneous calcified matrix. According to this opinion the matrix is essentially an intercellular formation. Others consider that the matrix is produced by a transformation of the exoplasm of bone-forming cells, or *osteoblasts*.

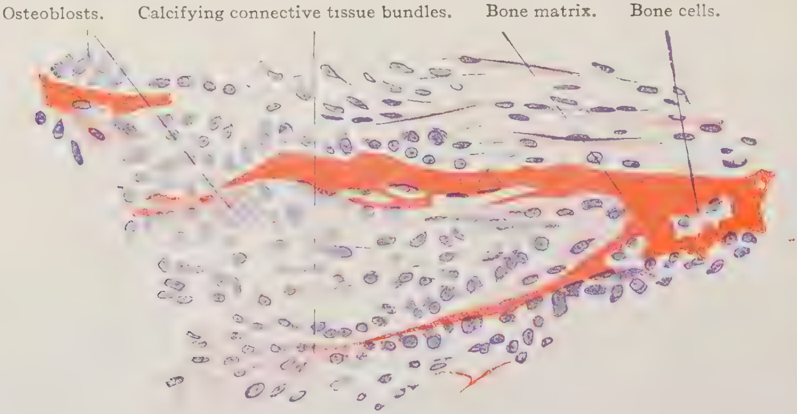


Fig. 70.—From a Section of the Mandible of a Human Embryo of Four Months. ×240.

Osteoblasts are derived from mesenchymal or young connective tissue cells. Two characteristic differences in the behavior of the original mesenchymal cells lead to the formation of cartilage on the one hand and of bone on the other. In cartilage the cells lose their original protoplasmatic processes, and the matrix is formed on all sides of them. In bone the mesenchymal network is retained, and the cells deposit the matrix only from one surface, that which rests on an already formed spicule. The mesenchymal or young connective tissue cells seem to be attracted by the osteogenic fibers or the bone spicules, around which they become arranged in an epithelioid layer.

With Mallory's connective tissue stain a specimen of bone formation, like that in Fig. 71, shows both young white fibrils stained blue, and the protoplasmic processes of the osteoblasts, stained red. With ordinary stains they are indistinguishable. The fibrils become incorporated in the matrix.

There is great variation in the shape of osteoblasts. Often they are pyramidal, but they may rest upon the bone either by a broad base or a pointed extremity. Their round nuclei may be in the part of the protoplasm next to the bone, or away from it as far as possible. Active osteoblasts tend to be cuboidal or columnar, but as bone production ceases they may become quite flat. Their nuclei show changes similar to those seen in gland cells, changing from clear and vesicular when the cells are most active to dark and cloudy when activity has passed its peak, and pycnotic when the cells become inactive and flat. The cells form bone only along that surface which is applied to the matrix, and only in the intercellular spaces. New matrix is thus formed around any cell or protoplasmatic process which lies at the edge of the matrix, and osteoblasts which have ceased to produce matrix are buried by their neighbors. Since the inactive, flat osteoblasts are those most often thus buried, the lacunæ formed are flattened and parallel to the surface; and since the protoplasmic processes still connect the buried cells with the active ones, the lacunæ are also connected to the surface or to each other by *canaliculi*, the little canals formed by the deposition of matrix around the processes. Buried osteoblasts are called *bone cells*. They differ from cartilage cells in having access through the canaliculi to the tissue fluids. Therefore they do not develop fat droplets and rarely divide or die, like cartilage cells. If they continue to produce matrix, thus becoming more widely separated, it is only to a slight extent and in young bones; they are therefore quite inactive. The matrix around the lacunæ resists strong hydrochloric acid which destroys the ordinary matrix, and so may be isolated in the form

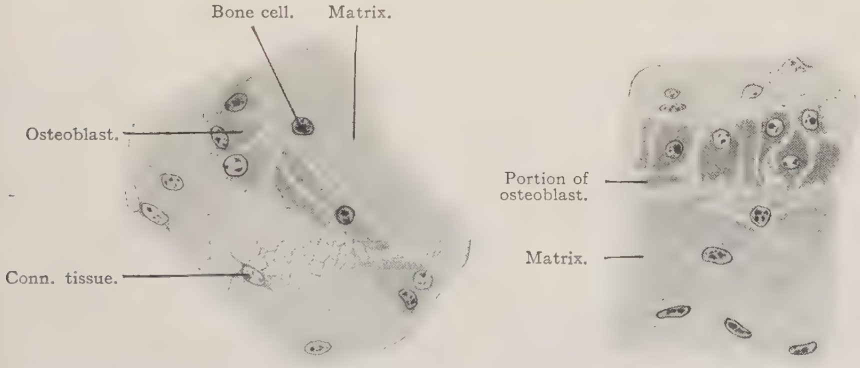


FIG. 71.—BONE FORMATION FROM JAW OF 60 MM. PIG FETUS. Osteoblasts arranged on surface of bone spicules.

of "bone corpuscles." The "corpuscles" correspond with the capsules of cartilage, which may be isolated in the same way. The bone cells nearly fill the lacunæ and send out very slender processes into the canaliculi. These may anastomose with the processes of neighboring cells, as can be seen in the embryo, but it is doubtful if this condition is retained in the adult. The processes, moreover, are so fine that ordinarily they are invisible. In ordinary specimens the canaliculi also are invisible, except where they enter the lacunæ, which are thus made to appear stellate. They can be clearly shown, however, in thin layers of dried bone, ground upon an emery wheel until thin enough to be translucent. The lacunæ with the canaliculi projecting from them, are then empty, except for air and particles of bone dust. The specimens are mounted in thick balsam, which spreads over the bone without filling the lacunæ and canaliculi. When seen under the microscope these structures appear black (Fig. 83), the air within them being highly refractive. In such preparations the way in which the canaliculi pass from one lacuna to another, and their manner of branching may be readily observed.

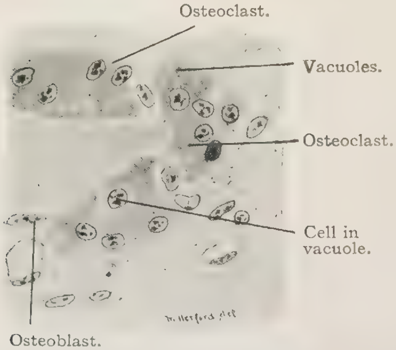


Fig. 72.—From Jaw of 60 Mm. Pig Fetus; Osteoclasts at Surface of Bone Spicule; Vacuoles within Protoplasm.

The spicules of bone, containing bone cells and beset with osteoblasts, increase in size and unite with one another, so as to form a spongy network enclosing areas of vascular connective tissue. These areas are not entirely surrounded by bone, but retain connections with the exterior, through which the vessels may enter and leave. It is evident that if the spicules continued to thicken, while new ones were added at the periphery, the bone would soon become quite solid and heavy. This is prevented by the destruction or resorption of certain spicules, which begins at a very early stage. It may be studied advantageously in the developing mandible of a pig embryo, 10 cm. in length. At this stage the teeth are growing rapidly, and around each tooth the spicules of bone are being destroyed so as to produce a larger socket; at the same time the jaw is increasing in thickness by the formation of new bone over its outer surface. Toward the area of resorption the osteoblasts become flatter and less numerous, finally disappearing.

In sections of bone, the places where resorption is going on may be recognized by the presence of large multinucleate cells, which Kölliker in 1873 named "bone destroyers" or *ostoclasts* (preferably spelled *osteoclasts*). They are shapeless masses of protoplasm without any limiting membrane, containing usually from one to twenty nuclei (Fig. 72). In the largest of them, Kölliker counted from fifty to sixty nuclei. He believed that they arose from osteoblasts through repeated nuclear division. Apparently they are not due to a fusion of cells; and they have nothing in common, except their large size, with the giant cells of the bone marrow, which will be described in connection with the blood. Osteoclasts are found along the surface of the bone, sometimes forming rounded elevations or caps at the extremities of spicules, and sometimes imbedded in shallow excavations known as *Howship's lacunæ.* There seems to be no satisfactory evidence that the osteoclasts are the active cause of bone destruction. On the contrary they appear to be degenerating cells, produced by those conditions which lead to the dissolution of bone. For a discussion of this question see Arey (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1920, vol. 26, pp. 315–345).

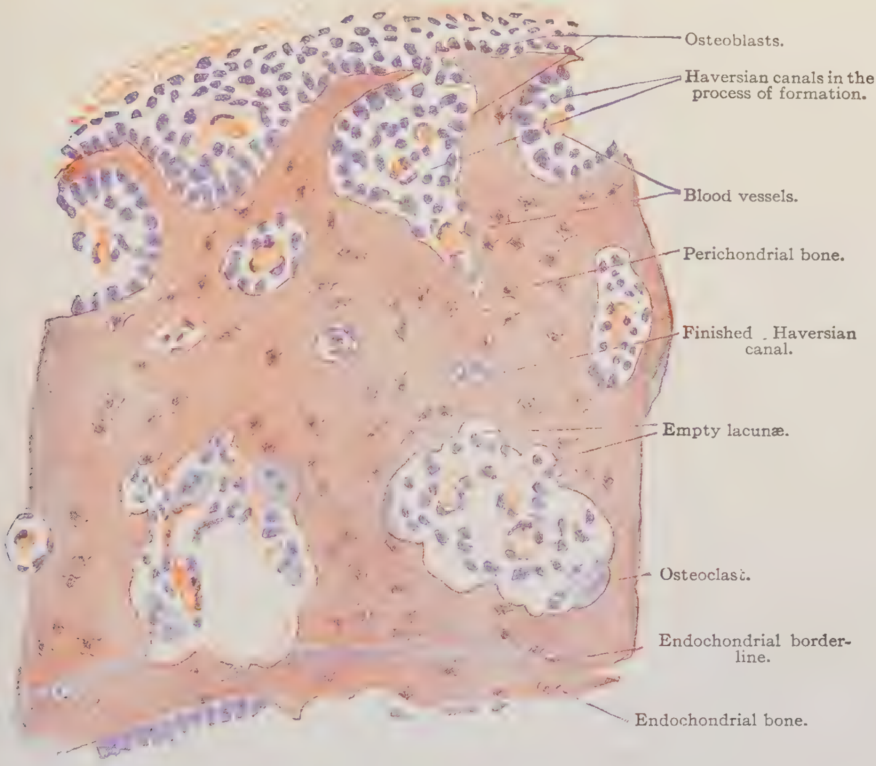

Osteoblasts.
Haversian canals in the process of formation.
Blood vessels.
Perichondrial bone.
Finished Haversian canal.
Empty lacunæ.
Osteoclast.
Endochondrial border-line.
Endochondrial bone.

FIG. 73.—PORTION OF A CROSS SECTION OF A TUBULAR BONE OF A NEWBORN KITTEN.

The processes of bone formation and resorption just described take place both in membrane and in cartilage bones. As the membrane bones enlarge, the central portion, through resorption, becomes loose spongy bone (*substantia spongiosa*), which is enclosed on all sides by an outer layer of compact bone (*substantia compacta*). In the flat bones of the skull the compact substance forms the outer and inner "tables," which have the spongy "diploë" between them. The cartilage bones likewise consist of spongy and compact portions.

Replacement of the skeletal cartilages. The changes within the skeletal cartilages during the formation of bone may be studied advantageously in longitudinal sections of any developing "long bone," or in transverse sections of the vertebræ from pig embryos measuring about 10 cm. The vertebræ exhibit several processes which will be cut lengthwise in transverse sections. Fig. 74 represents a longitudinal section of a phalanx around which ossification has begun. On either side of the shaft of hyaline cartilage, the matrix of which stains blue with hæmatoxylin, there is a strip of bone, the matrix of which is stained red with eosin. These strips are sections of a band of bone which completely encircles the middle part of the cartilage. It has been formed by osteoblasts which developed in

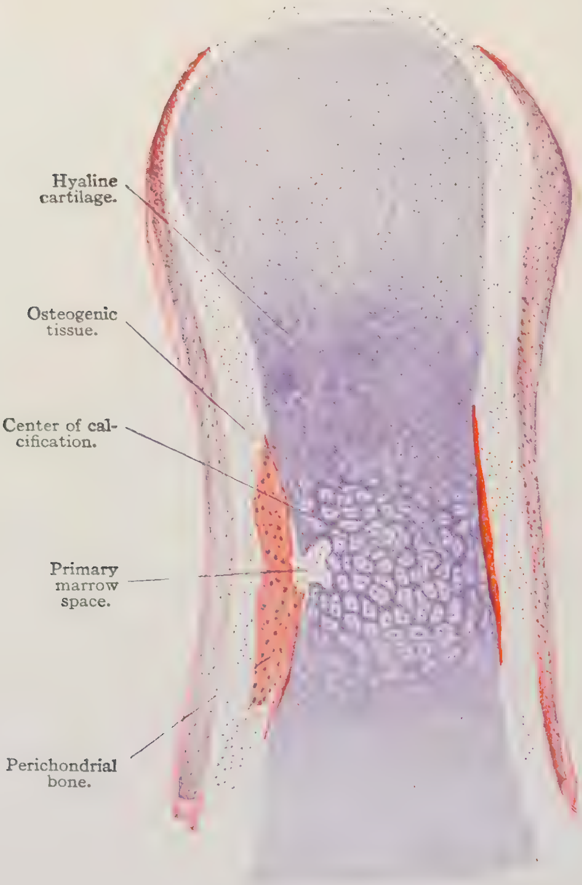


FIG. 74.—A DORSO-PALMAR LONGITUDINAL SECTION OF A PHALANX OF THE LITTLE FINGER, FROM A HUMAN EMBRYO OF THE SIXTH MONTH. × 60.

the perichondrium. The portion of the cartilage which is surrounded by bone has begun to degenerate. Its capsules have been resorbed, and the enlarged lacunæ are beginning to coalesce. The matrix of the cartilage in this region takes a deeper stain, and calcareous granules are being deposited within it.

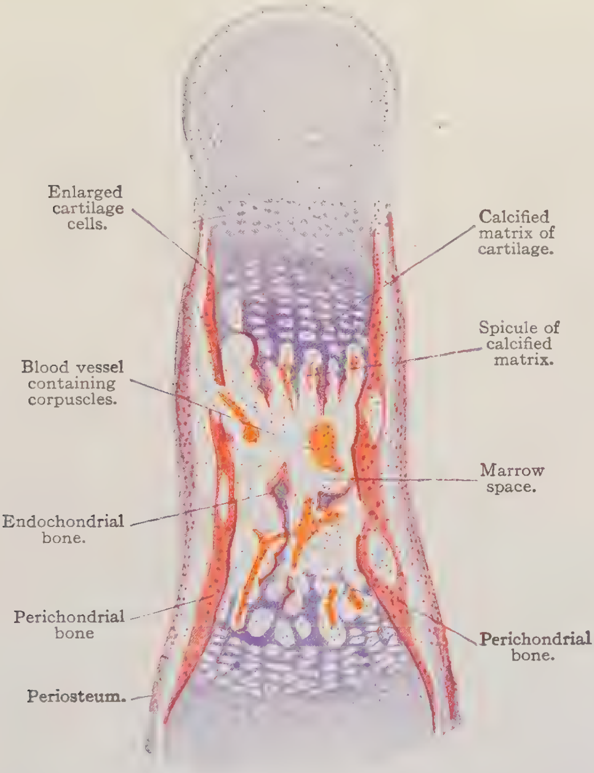

Enlarged cartilage cells.
Calcified matrix of cartilage.
Spicule of calcified matrix.
Blood vessel containing corpuscles.
Marrow space.
Endochondrial bone.
Perichondrial bone
Perichondrial bone.
Periosteum.

Fig. 75.—A Dorso-palmar Longitudinal Section of a Middle-finger Phalanx, from a Human Embryo of the Fourth Month. × 60.

What initiates the degeneration of the cartilage matrix in a definite area is not known. It is not the thickness of the cartilage, for the center of ossification is seldom in the thickest part of the future bone. The formation of the band of perichondrial bone, which might conceivably deprive the cartilage cells of their meager nutriment, accompanies the change rather than preceding it.

On the left of Fig. 74, a bud of perichondrial tissue is seen entering the shaft of the cartilage, and similar buds may invade it from other sides. One of these openings through the perichondrial bone is the future nutrient foramen. Within the cartilage the ingrowing perichondrial tissue forms the *primary marrow*, which is a very vascular connective tissue. As it advances, the walls of the lacunæ are resorbed, setting free the cartilage cells. Formerly it was thought that these cartilages cells became osteoblasts, but they are now considered to be dying cells, without further function.

Meanwhile the cartilage continues to grow, especially in length. This is brought about by successive transverse divisions of the cells of the shaft, so that they become arranged in more or less definite longitudinal rows (Fig. 75). The thin transverse walls of the lacunæ in these rows are dissolved more readily than the thicker longitudinal walls, and the deep-blue ragged spicules of calcified matrix which are thus produced, are there-

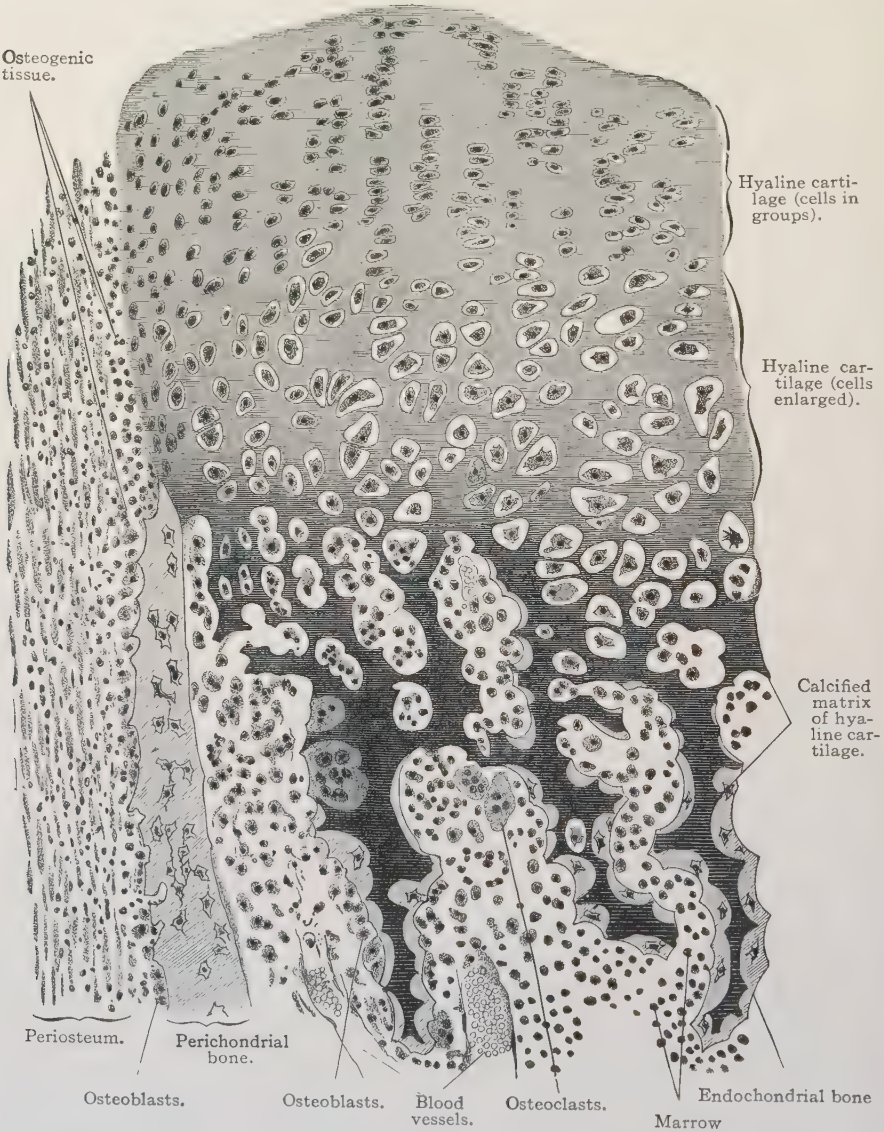


Fig. 76.—From a Longitudinal Section of the Phalanx of the First Finger of a Human Embryo of the Fourth Month. × 220.

fore generally elongated. Osteoblasts, derived from the primary marrow, arrange themselves on these spicules, and form bone in the same manner as elsewhere. Thus the spicules of calcified matrix, staining blue, become encased in the matrix of bone which stains red (Figs. 75 and 76).

From what has been said, it is clear that bone is formed both around the cartilage (perichondrial bone) and within the cartilage (endochondrial bone). In long bones and flat bones, ossification is at first perichondrial and later endochondrial; in short bones it is endochondrial until the cartilage has been entirely replaced. Thus the part taken by endochondrial and perichondrial ossification varies greatly in different bones. As the bone grows, the older parts which have formed in relation with the cartilage are resorbed. In the shaft of the humerus from a human embryo of the fourth month (Fig. 77), only a thin and interrupted layer of calcified cartilage remains to mark the boundary between perichondrial and endochondrial bone, and in the adult all traces of this layer have disappeared.

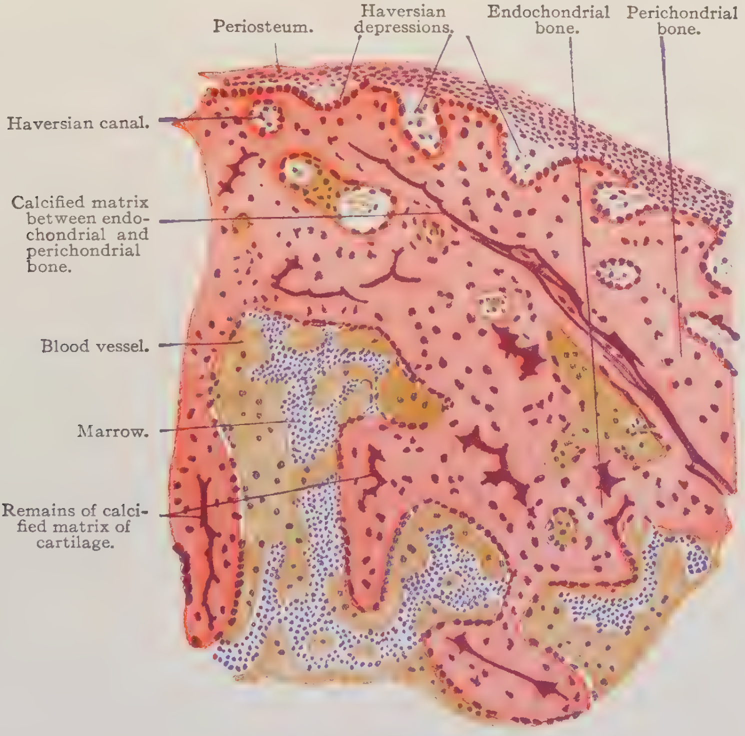


FIG. 77.—FROM A CROSS SECTION OF THE SHAFT OF THE HUMERUS, FROM A HUMAN EMBRYO OF THE FOURTH MONTH. × 80.

The final stages in the replacement of the cartilages by bone take place long after birth, when the bones have increased greatly in diameter and length. The growth in diameter is accomplished by the deposition of new layers externally, and the enlargement of the marrow cavity, through resorption, internally. This explains why a band of metal placed around the bone of a young animal is later found within the marrow, and why none of the original cartilage matrix remains in most of the adult bones. In the auditory ossicles and the otic capsule, *i.e.*, bones without marrow cavity and of very slight growth, the calcified matrix remains throughout life. The internal resorption takes place in such a way that a meshwork of spicules and plates, denser toward the periphery, remains within the shaft, and the marrow occupies its interstices. To a limited extent new bone is formed in the interior of the shaft by osteoblasts in its lining membrane, called the *endosteum.* The deposition of new layers externally is produced by osteoblasts in the *periosteum,* which is a specialized connective tissue layer surrounding the bone. It replaces, and apparently is derived from, the perichondrium of the original cartilage. The extent to which new bone is formed, and its distribution, may be determined by feeding madder to growing animals. This dye, as has long been known, imparts a red color to the matrix of bone deposited while it forms a part of the diet. By this means Kölliker determined that the deposition of periosteal bone is not uniform. In a given bone, there will be unstained areas, where no new bone is being formed, or where an external resorption is taking place. In this way the bones acquire their characteristic modelling.

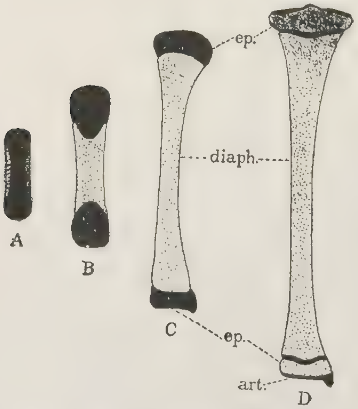


Fig. 78.—Plan of Ossification in a Long Bone, Based upon the Tibia.
Cartilage is drawn in black, and bone is stippled. **art.**, Articular cartilage; **ep.**, epiphysis; **diaph.**, diaphysis.

Growth in length occurs chiefly through the activity of the uncalcified cartilage. In a long bone, ossification first produces a band of bone encircling the cartilage, and then a hollow shaft of bone with a rounded mass of cartilage at either end (Fig. 78, A, B). The cells in these masses continue to divide, prolonging the longitudinal rows of cells such as are seen in Fig. 75. As ossification takes place at one end of these rows, new cells are formed at the other, and thus the length of the shaft or *diaphysis* increases. Certain bones have been found to grow more at one end than at the other. After a time osteogenic tissue invades the cartilages at the extremities of the bone, extending into them from the marrow cavity of the shaft. It forms a small bone within each, and these are known as *epiphyses* (Fig. 78, D). Between the epiphysis and the diaphysis there remains a layer of cartilage, called the *epiphyseal synchondrosis*, which allows further growth in length. The cells which it produces are added chiefly to the shaft. The relation of the epiphyses to the growth of bone was demonstrated by early experiments, in which metal pegs were placed in the bones of young animals. Pegs in the shaft scarcely separate from one another during growth, but a peg in the epiphysis moves away from one in the diaphysis. The epiphyses are formed at various times after birth, or, in the tibia, shortly before birth; they unite with the diaphyses usually between the eighteenth and twenty-second years, when the bones have acquired their full length. At that time nothing is left of the original cartilage except the layer of *articular cartilage* which covers the joint surfaces. Details in regard to the time when ossification begins in the various bones, the number of centers involved (for many bones have more than the three which have here been described), and the time when these join the main bone, will be found in textbooks of anatomy, and, together with many references to important studies of bone development, in Bidder's "Osteobiologie" (Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1906, vol. 68, pp. 137–213).

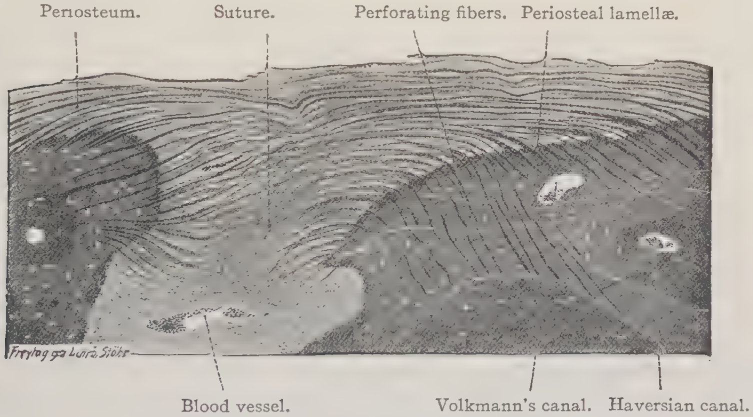


FIG. 79.—SECTION ACROSS A SUTURE IN THE SKULL OF AN ADULT.
Prepared by Bielschowsky's method. × 80.

Structure of Bone in the Adult. The properties of adult bone are essentially those of its matrix, which consists of organic and inorganic constituents intimately blended, and perhaps chemically combined. Of the inorganic matter, over 80% is calcium phosphate, $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$; the remainder includes chlorides, carbonates, fluorides and sulphates of calcium, sodium, potassium and magnesium. In order to cut sections of bone, this inorganic matter must be removed, and decalcification is usually accomplished by placing the specimen, after it has been preserved, in dilute nitric acid (3–5%) for several days or weeks. The matrix then has the consistency of cartilage. Its organic portion, which remains, is composed chiefly of collagen, together with osseo-mucoid. The collagen occurs in very fine white fibrils which are gathered in bundles, arranged in thin layers or *lamellæ*. Within these layers the fibers occur in parallel sets which tend to cross one another at right angles, thus producing a lattice work. These "decussating fibers" are seen only in special preparations in which a lamella has been peeled off, so that it can be examined in surface view. The calcareous matter is said to be deposited in the cement substance between the fibers, and not within them. Coarser uncalcified fibers are found in embryonic bone and in certain situations in adult bone —for example, at the sutures and the places where tendons are inserted. They also extend into the bone from the periosteum (Fig. 79), constituting the "perforating fibers" (Sharpey's fibers). The perforating fibers of the bones of the skull are entirely collagenous. These bones in the adult, together with the entire skeleton at birth, contain no elastic fibers; but in other bones of the adult elastic fibers accompany the perforating fibers (Schulz, Anat. Hefte, Abt. 1, 1896, vol. 6, pp. 117–153).

The *periosteum* consists of two layers. It has an outer layer of dense connective tissue, rich in blood vessels and containing also lymphatic vessels and nerves. It blends with the surrounding looser connective tissue and in places with fasciæ and tendons. The inner layer has few vessels but contains an abundance of elastic fibers. They are chiefly parallel with the long axis of the bone, but in the periosteum of the bones of the roof of the skull they form an interlacing network (Schulz). Perforating fibers, such as were described in the preceding paragraph, may arise from this layer; and others, both white and elastic, derived from tendons, may pass through it into the bone. In this way the tendons acquire a very firm insertion. The cells of the inner layer of the periosteum are spindle-shaped or flattened connective tissue cells, together with the more cuboidal osteoblasts which rest against the bone. In young bones these are so numerous as to form a third layer of the periosteum. In the adult they are few in number, but are capable of proliferation, and together with those in the endosteum, they are the source of new bone after injury. The periosteum, in bodies which have been kept a week at 15° C., is said to be capable of producing bone when transplanted to another body; and after operations in which a shaft of bone has been shelled out from its periosteum, a new shaft may be formed.

Beneath the periosteum, as seen in the cross section of the shaft of a long bone (Fig. 80), there are layers or lamellæ of bone which are parallel with the surface. These are the "outer ground lamellæ" or *periosteal lamellæ*. They are traversed by Sharpey's perforating fibers and by small blood vessels lodged in the so-called Volkmann's canals. The bone cells occupy lacunæ, situated between the lamellæ, and in Fig. 80 they are seen as small spots. In the lowest part of the figure, a portion of the marrow has been included. The marrow is surrounded by the endosteum, external to which are the "inner ground lamellæ" or *endosteal lamellæ*. These are parallel with the inner surface of the bone.

Between the periosteal and the endosteal lamellæ there is a dense mass of matrix unlike anything found in embryonic bone. Scattered through it, numerous blood vessels are seen in cross section. Each vessel is surrounded by *concentric lamellæ* which present a very characteristic figure. Such vessels are said to occupy *Haversian canals* (named for the English anatomist, Clopton Havers). Volkmann's canals contain vessels, but they are not surrounded by concentric lamellæ. An Haversian canal often contains two vessels, an artery and a vein, together with a small amount of connective tissue and occasional fat cells; flattened osteoblasts may rest against the surrounding bone, and send processes into it. The concentric lamellæ enclosing an Haversian canal constitute an Haversian system. *Interstitial lamellæ* fill the intervals between the Haversian systems.

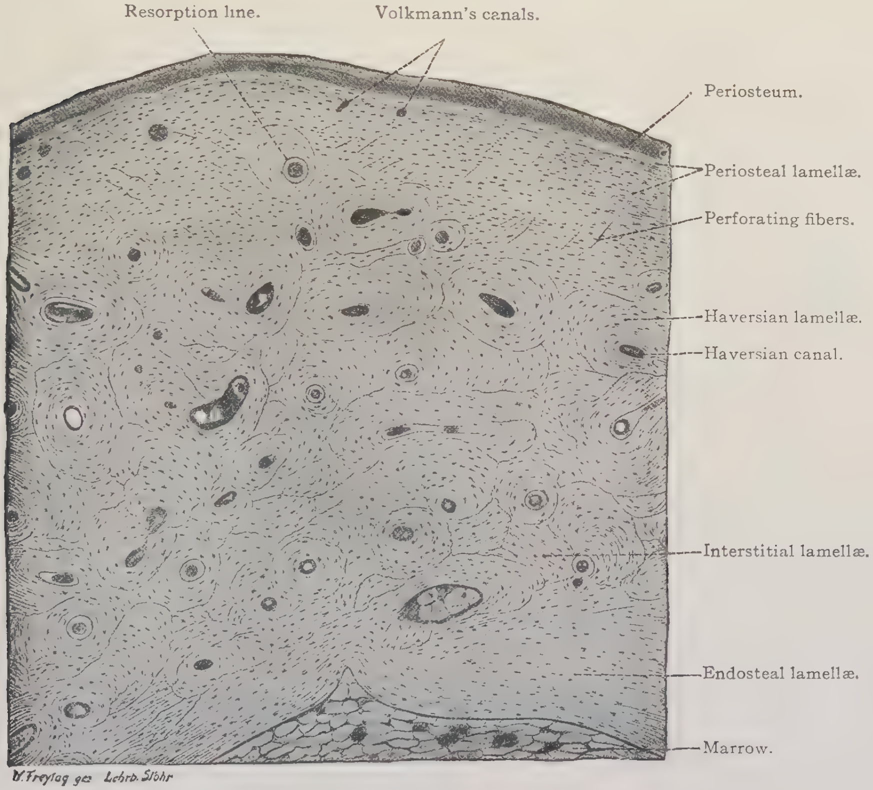


Fig. 80.—Part of a Cross Section of a Decalcified Phalanx from an Adult.

The way in which the compact bone of the adult is formed from the bone spicules of the embryo is indicated in the diagram, Fig. 81. Osteoblasts add matrix to existing bone, so that the many spicules by growing larger soon meet to form an irregular trabecular network, enclosing marrow spaces. Additional layers of bone are added, including bone cells lying parallel to the surface of the matrix in every case. This results in the narrowing of the marrow spaces and the formation of Haversian systems. The deposition of bone ceases when the blood vessels within the canals are crowded. All the bone cells of an Haversian system receive nutriment through the canaliculi opening into the canal. The vessels are a part of the vascular network of the original marrow. Meanwhile the bone is growing by addition of new layers from the periosteum, in which again the lacunæ are parallel to the surface. Vessels, usually small, may join those in the marrow, and will be surrounded by the new layers (Volkmann's canals), and tendon fibers will also be buried (perforating fibers). If this appositional growth continued unaltered the whole bone would be made of lamellæ parallel to the surface, and the more centrally placed bone cells would derive their nutriment through many layers of lacunæ. Local resorption takes place, perhaps because of the disadvantageous position of the middle layers, and is accompanied by the invasion of new vessel sprouts and osteogenic cells mostly from the marrow. The fresh cells become osteoblasts and build new Haversian systems against the walls of the resorbed area. The direction taken by the lamellæ in a section of bone will reveal its history. The newest Haversian systems are completely circular, the outer edge perhaps cuts into the side of an older system, which itself may

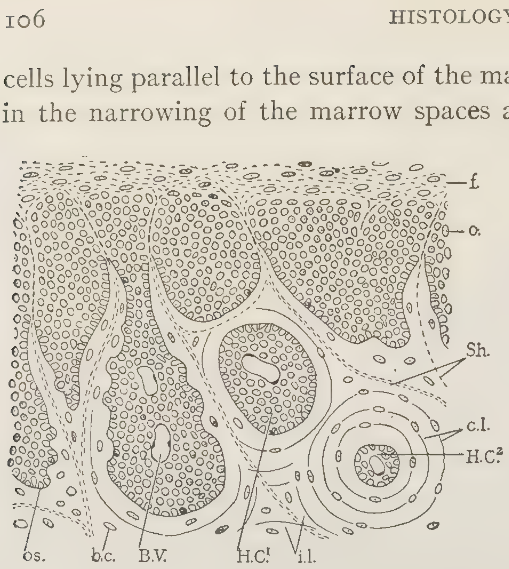


FIG. 81.—DIAGRAM OF THE DEVELOPMENT OF BONE. (In part, after Duval.)

f., Fibrous layer of periosteum; **o.**, osteogenic layer of periosteum; **os.**, osteoblast; **b.c.**, bone cell; **B. V.**, blood vessel; **H. C¹.**, beginning Haversian canal; **H. C².**, complete Haversian canal; **i. l.**, interstitial lamellæ, **c. l.**, concentric lamellæ; **Sh.**, Sharpey's perforating fibers.

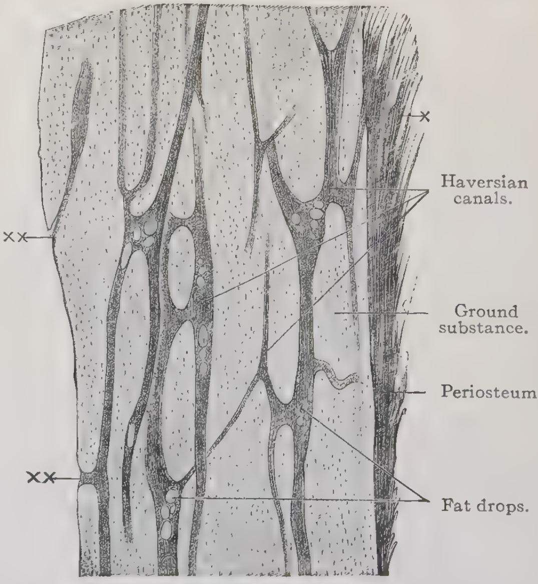


FIG. 82.—FROM A LONGITUDINAL SECTION OF A HUMAN METACARPAL. × 30.

Fat drops are seen in the Haversian canals. At **x** Haversian canals open on the outer, and at **xx** on the inner surface of the bone.

have invaded an area of layers parallel to the surface, originally laid down by the periosteum. In the finished bone no cell is separated by more than a few layers from some source of nutriment.

Longitudinal sections of decalcified bone show the way in which the Haversian canals connect with one another (Fig. 82). The lamellæ are not so strikingly subdivided into the groups seen in cross sections, since both the concentric lamellæ and the ground lamellæ are longitudinal layers.

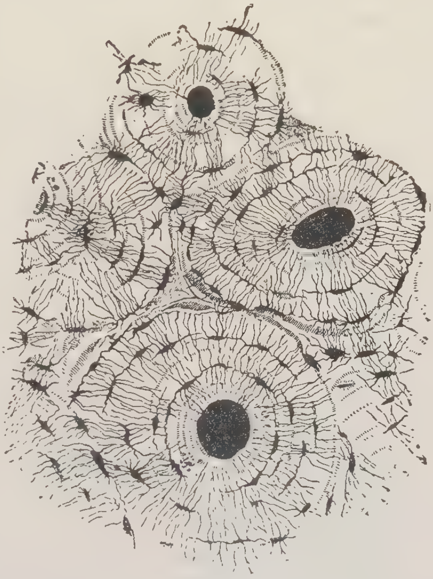


Fig. 83.—Cross Section of Compact Bone, from the Shaft of the Humerus, showing Three Haversian Systems and Part of a Fourth. (Sharpey.)

Vessels and Nerves in Bone. The blood vessels of the marrow, bone and periosteum freely connect with one another. Small branches from the arteries and veins of the periosteum enter the bone everywhere, through the Volkmann's and Haversian canals, and anastomose with the vessels in the marrow. The marrow receives its blood from the *nutrient artery*, which gives off branches on its way through the compact bone and forms a rich vascular network in the marrow. Of the larger veins which drain this network, one passes out beside the nutrient artery and others connect freely with the vessels in the compact bone. Lymphatic vessels are found only in the outer layer of the periosteum. Numerous medullated and non-medullated nerves are present in the periosteum, where some of them end in lamellar corpuscles. Others enter the Haversian canals and marrow, chiefly to innervate the vessels.

The Joints

Bones may be joined in two ways, either by a *synarthrosis* which allows little or no motion between them, or by a *diarthrosis* which permits them to move freely upon one another.

In a synarthrosis the mesenchymal tissue between the adjacent bones may form dense connective tissue, such as passes from one bone to another across the sutures of the skull (Fig. 79); or it may form cartilage, in which case the joint is known as a *synchondrosis*. The cartilage may be hyaline, as in the epiphyseal synchondroses, but often it is fibrous, as in the intervertebral synchondroses.

In a diarthrosis the connective tissue between the bones remains comparatively loose in texture, and a cleft forms within it, containing tissue fluid. This is the *joint cavity* (Fig. 84). It is bounded in part by flattened connective tissue cells, which spread out and form an imperfect epithelium (Fig. 85). This is not a continuous layer of cells, since in many places the fibrous tissue comes to the surface. The connective tissue layer blends with the perichondrium, which in turn passes into cartilage, and a portion of the cartilage, uncovered by perichondrium, helps to bound the joint cavity.

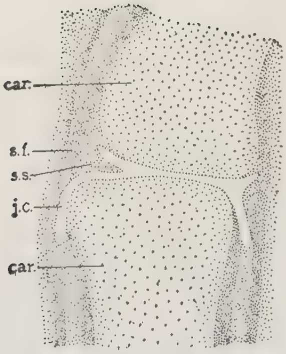


FIG. 84.—PHALANGEAL JOINT FROM A HUMAN EMBRYO OF THE FOURTH MONTH.

car., Cartilage; **j. c.**, joint cavity; **s. f.**, stratum fibrosum; **s. s.**, stratum synoviale.

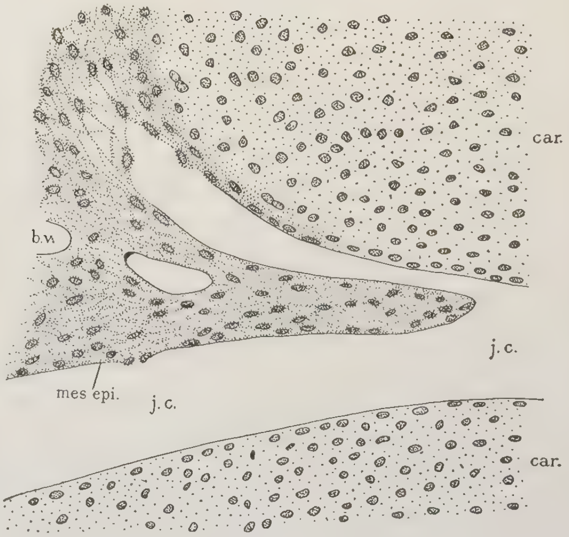


FIG. 85.—AN ENLARGED DRAWING OF THE LEFT PART OF THE JOINT SHOWN IN FIG. 84.

b. v., Blood vessel; **car.**, cartilage; **j. c.**, joint cavity; **mes. epi.**, mesenchymal epithelium.

The articular cartilages are sometimes fibrous (as noted on p. 91) but usually they are hyaline. They vary in thickness from 0.2 mm. to 5 mm., being thinner at the periphery. The cells near the free surface are flattened. In the middle strata they are rounded and are often arranged in groups; in the deepest layers they tend to be in rows perpendicular to the surface. The matrix becomes calcified as the cartilage connects with the bone, and a line of demarcation separates the calcified from the uncalcified portion (Fig. 86). In the uncalcified cartilage, cells with processes extending into the adjacent matrix have been described, and the deeper layers of flattened cells may exhibit lobed nuclei.

The *joint capsule* consists of an outer layer of dense connective tissue, the *stratum fibrosum;* and an inner loose layer of which the mesenchymal epithelium is a part, the *stratum synoviale* (Fig. 84). The fibrous layer is specially thickened in various places to form the *ligaments* of the joint.

It may cover the end of the bone, coming between it and the joint cavity; thus the distal articular surface of the radius is covered with dense fibrous tissue. In other joints, as in the shoulder and hip, such tissue forms a rim, deepening the socket of the joint. These rims are called *labra glenoidalia*. Large folds or plates of dense fibrous tissue may project into the joint, covered by the synovial layer, thus forming the *menisci* of the knee joint, and the *articular discs* such as are interposed in the sternoclavicular and mandibular joints. Nerves and vessels are absent from the articular cartilages of the adult, and also from the labra and articular discs.

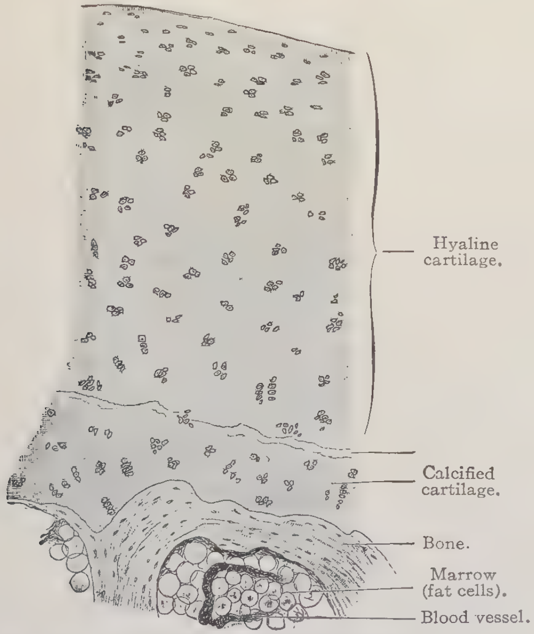


Fig. 86.—Vertical Section through the Head of a Metacarpal of an Adult Man. × 50.

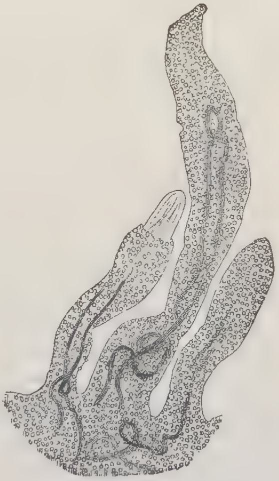


Fig. 87.—Synovial Villi with Blood Vessels from a Human Knee Joint. × 50.
The epithelium has fallen from the apex of the left villus, exposing the connective tissue.

The synovial layer consists of loose connective tissue, generally with abundant elastic elements. In many places it contains considerable quantities of fat. It has nerves which may terminate in lamellar corpuscles, numerous blood vessels, and lymphatic vessels which may extend close to the epithelium. The "epithelium" is a smooth glossy layer of connective tissue with parallel fibers and small round or stellate cells containing large nuclei. The cells are sometimes infrequent, as in places where there is unusual pressure. Elsewhere they may be spread in a single thin layer, or heaped together, making an epithelium of three or four strata. The synovial membrane may be thrown into coarse folds (*plicæ*) or into slender almost microscopic projections (*villi*). The latter impart a velvety appearance to the membrane on which they occur.

On microscopic examination the synovial villi are seen to vary greatly in shape. They are covered by a simple or double layer of synovial epithelium, and usually, but not invariably, they contain vessels. The *synovia* (synovial fluid) consists chiefly of water (94%), the remainder including salts, albumin, mucoid substances, fat droplets and fragments of cells shed from the membrane.

MUSCULAR TISSUE

Contractility is a fundamental property of protoplasm. In muscle cells it attains its highest development. Muscle cells are elongated structures, known as *muscle fibers*, which contain numerous longitudinal fibrils within their protoplasm. By the shortening of these fibrillated cells, muscular action results. The muscle fibrils, or *myofibrils*, may be free from transverse markings, as in *smooth muscle;* or they may exhibit a succession of dark and light transverse bands, as in *striated muscle.* Smooth muscle fibers enter into the formation of the viscera, and their action, almost without exception, is *involuntary.* Striated muscle, in so far as it constitutes the entire system of skeletal muscles, is *voluntary*, or under the control of the will, but the striated fibers of the diaphragm and upper part of the œsophagus are apparently involuntary. The special form of striated muscle, known as *cardiac muscle*, which makes the bulk of the heart and extends some distance in the wall of the pulmonary veins, is involuntary. The three principal forms of muscle, smooth, skeletal, and cardiac, are mesodermal in origin. Within the basement membrane of the sweat glands there are elongated ectodermal cells which have been described as smooth muscle fibers, but their contractile nature is still questioned. It is well established, however, that the muscles of the iris, which control the size of the pupil, are derived from ectodermal cells which bud off from those forming the optic cup. Ectodermal muscles in man are limited to these examples.

Smooth Muscle

Smooth muscle fibers are derived from mesenchymal or young connective tissue cells. Usually they are produced in layers which surround some tubular organ, such as a blood vessel, duct, or a part of the digestive tube. The fibers in these layers are generally parallel, and are usually either circular or longitudinal in relation to the organ which they envelop. Occasionally they are oblique, or irregularly interwoven. Fibers which encircle an organ are called *circular* or *transverse fibers;* they may be cut across or split lengthwise according to the plane in which the organ is sectioned. The same is true of the *longitudinal fibers*, which run lengthwise of the organ.

The formation of smooth muscle may be studied advantageously in the œsophagus of pig embryos, and its development in this position has been carefully described by Miss McGill (Internat. Monatschr. f. Anat. u. Physiol., 1907, vol. 24, pp. 209–245). A part of a longitudinal section of the œsophagus of a 27-mm. pig is shown in Fig. 88. In such a section the developing longitudinal smooth muscle fibers or *myoblasts* are cut lengthwise (*s.l.*); and the circular fibers, which form a layer internal to the longitudinal fibers, are cut across (*s.c.*). The loose mesenchymal network, from which these fibers arise, is continuous with them above and below. A third thin layer of muscle fibers is forming at *m.m.*, below the entodermal epithelium which lines the œsophagus.

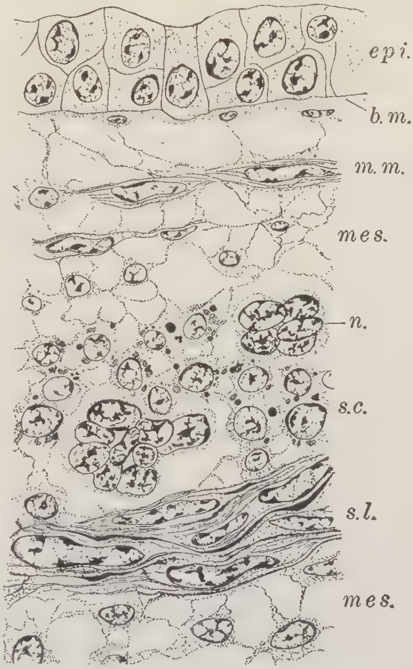


Fig. 88.—From a Longitudinal Section of the Œsophagus of a 27-mm. Pig Embryo. × 700. (After McGill.)

b. m., Basement membrane; **epi.**, epithelium; **mes.**, mesenchyma; **m. m.**, muscularis mucosæ; **n.**, nerve cells; **s. c.**, circular smooth muscle cut across; **s. l.**, longitudinal smooth muscle cut lengthwise.

In becoming smooth muscle cells, the mesenchymal cells change from a stellate to a spindle-shaped form and come closer together. Before the true myofibrils make their appearance, coarse *border fibrils* or *myoglia fibrils* are produced, which are similar to the fibroglia fibrils of connective tissue. Meves considers the two identical. The myoglia fibrils are at the periphery of the muscle cells and pass from one cell to another for long distances. Ordinarily they are unstained, but they may be brought out strikingly in young tissue by the use of phosphotungstic acid haematoxylin.

The coarse fibrils are shown in the embryonic oesophagus in both the longitudinal and circular muscle layers, in the latter appearing as black dots, Fig. 88. McGill states that they are produced by a coalescence of granules within the protoplasm, forming at first spindle-shaped bodies which later join end to end, making varicose fibrils. Subsequently they become smooth. They may split into finer fibrils, but are not thought to produce the true myofibrils. "In places they may be entirely absent in adult tissue; rarely they are abundant." Their significance is unknown.

In addition to the peripheral myoglia fibrils the protoplasm of smooth muscle cells contains fine longitudinal fibrils, which have been described as the active agents in muscular contraction. Thus Miss McGill finds that in the contracted portions of the muscle fibers the myofibrillæ show "a distinct increase in caliber." She states that the fine myofibrils do not arise until the pig embryo reaches a length of about 30 mm. They are apparently homogeneous from the beginning, and are distributed uniformly throughout the protoplasm. Some of them are shown in the muscle layer *m.m.* in Fig. 88. Ordinarily these fibrils are indistinguishable in the close-grained, deeply staining protoplasm which characterizes the muscle cells.

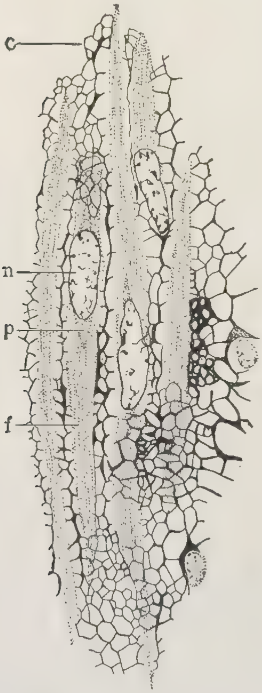


Fig. 89.—Fibrous Tissue in Relation with Smooth Muscle Fibers, from the Bladder of a Pike. (After Prenant.)

Connective tissue network; **n.**, **p.**, **f.**, nucleus, granular protoplasm, and fibrillar protoplasm of a muscle cell.

Along the sides of the muscle fibers there are at first protoplasmic processes which bind them together. Later these seem to be replaced by white fibers, like those of ordinary connective tissue. They form a network investing the muscle cells, as shown in Fig. 89. This inter-muscular reticulum, produced directly from the muscle fibers, is unusually well shown in the walls of the blood vessels in the umbilical cord. To some extent, according to Miss McGill, it is produced from special mesenchymal cells within the muscle layer, which develop into connective tissue cells. In many layers of smooth muscle, however, connective tissue cells are difficult to demonstrate. Finally it should be noted that elastic fibers are found between the muscle cells. They vary greatly in number, being especially abundant in the walls of arteries.

Smooth muscle fibers in the adult are fusiform, cylindrical or slightly flattened cells, varying in length from about 0.02 mm. in some blood vessels to approximately 0.5 mm. in the pregnant uterus. In the intestine they are said to measure about 0.2 mm. Their diameter, through the widest

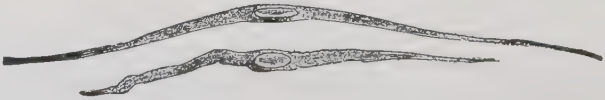


Fig. 90.—Smooth Muscle Fibers from the Small Intestine of a Frog. × 240.

part, is from 4–7 μ. Owing to the length of these fibers and the fact that they are not perfectly straight, they are seldom wholly included in a single section. Moreover they are usually so closely packed that their outlines are hard to follow. They may be isolated, however, by treating fresh tissue with a 35% aqueous solution of potassium hydrate, or 20%

nitric acid. The fibers when shaken apart appear as in Fig. 90. Branching fibers have been isolated from the aorta, and are said to occur also in the ductus deferens and bladder.

The fibers when sectioned longitudinally somewhat resemble connective tissue, from which they may be distinguished by the staining and texture of their protoplasm and the position of their nuclei, which are within the fibers. With hæmatoxylin and eosin the muscles ubstance takes a deeper and more purple stain than the connective tissue fibers, and it is not so refractive. In doubtful cases Mallory's connective tissue stain may be used, which colors the muscle substance red and the white fibrous tissue blue.

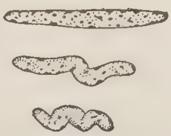


Fig. 91.—Nuclei of Smooth Muscle Fibers from the Artery of a Dog.

The nuclei of smooth muscle fibers are elliptical or rod-like bodies, containing a characteristic chromatic reticulum, with small granules frequently peripherally placed, and sometimes several nucleoli (Fig. 10, A, p. 15). When the muscle fiber contracts, the nuceus shortens and broadens, but according to measurements made by Miss McGill (Anat. Rec., 1909, vol. 3, pp. 633–635) there is no change in its volume. She finds, however, that the chromatin tends to collect at the poles of the contracted nucleus, and states that "the nucleus appears to take an active part in the process of contraction." Frequently spirally twisted or bent nuclei are found in layers of contracted muscle (Fig. 91) and they have been regarded as occupying contracted fibers. It is probable, however, that the spiral nuclei occur in relaxed fibers, which have been crumpled together by the contraction of adjacent fibers. Along one side of the nucleus the centrosome may be found, occupying a shallow indentation of the nuclear membrane.

At the poles of the nuclei there is often an accumulation of granular protoplasm (Fig. 89,) which is sometimes pigmented. The fibrils diverge to pass by the nucleus, and the granular protoplasm occupies the conical non-fibrillated space which is thus produced.

The surface of the smooth muscle fibers is covered by a delicate membrane, which is sometimes thrown into transverse wrinkles by the contraction of the fiber. Possibly the fibrils terminate in it. They do not appear to become more compact as they extend into the tapering ends of the fibers and presumably they do not all extend the whole length of the cell.

In transverse sections the fibers present rounded or polygonal outlines (Fig. 92). They vary in size, since some are sectioned through the tapering extremity and others through the thick central part which contains the nucleus. When cut just above or below the nucleus a cell appears as a ring, the shiny edge representing the fibrils massed to surround the nucleus, the inner part being the conical area of granular protoplasm.

The rod-shaped nucleus is round in cross section, and looks darker than in longitudinal view, from the accumulation of color of the many small chromatin granules.

It is doubtful whether smooth muscle always retains its original syncytial nature, and it is not usually possible in adult tissues to demonstrate either myoglia fibrils or a connective tissue network binding the cells together. This is true of the muscle layers of the adult intestine. Moreover, as is shown in Fig. 236, extreme stretching of the intestine reduces the thickness of the circular layer in a manner that can only be explained by a rearrangement of the cells, so that there are fewer rows of them than before. Yet, when allowed to retract, the cells assume their original arrangement of many rows. It would appear that here, then, the cells are separate, disconnected entities. W. H. Lewis (Anat. Record, 1922, vol. 23, pp. 387–392) explains the action of these disconnected cells by attributing to them the property of "stickiness," so that the power of the muscle sheet depends on the adhesion of the individual muscles, which, after stretching, return to their resting relations with other cells by "capillary attraction." Presumably the elastic and white fibres, when present as in the walls of arteries, aid in restoring the normal caliber. With extreme contraction, however, the white and elastic fibers no longer aid the muscles, but become crumpled into coarse folds, as seen frequently

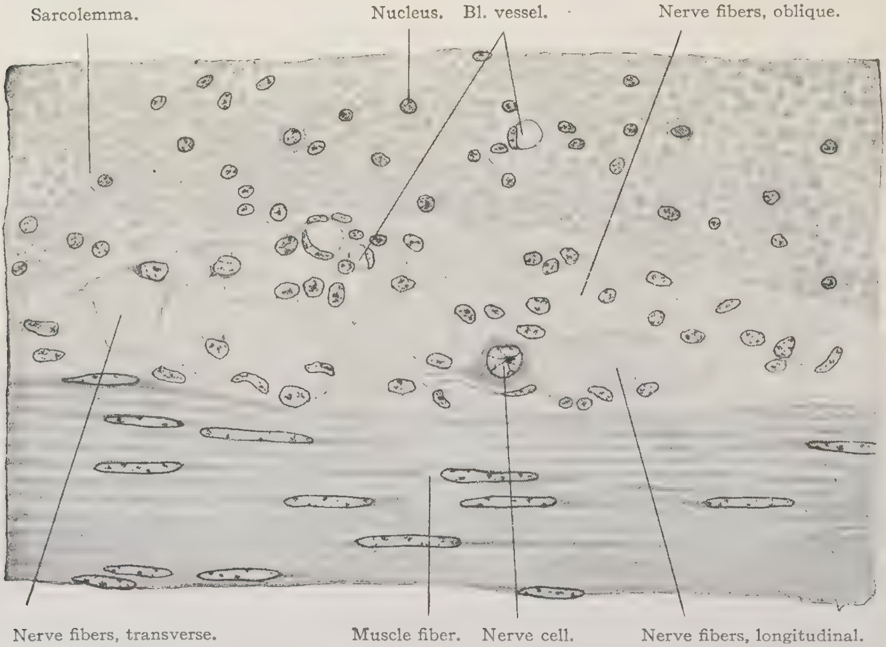


Fig. 92.—Smooth Muscle from Small Intestine of Cat; Muscles Are Cut Transversely above, Longitudinally below, Some May Be Followed Long Distances.
Between the two layers a section of the nerve plexus.

in contracted arteries. As to the muscle fibers themselves, Meigs concludes that during contraction fluid passes from them into the intercellular spaces, so that the fibers shrink in size and become darker; he states that they decrease greatly in length but remain of about the same diameter, while the spaces between the fibers become larger (Amer. Journ. Physiol., 1908, vol. 22, pp. 477–499). According to Miss McGill, the deeply staining nodular thickenings of muscle fibers indicate a normal form of contraction in which the fiber does not contract as a whole, but a wave of contraction passes over it. In these contraction nodes the diameter of the fiber becomes increased (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1909, vol. 9, pp. 493–545). The enlargement of such muscular tubes as the vessels and intestine appears to be passive and due respectively to the pressure of the blood or food within. After extreme contraction the elastic tissue probably serves to dilate the tube to a certain size.

Smooth muscle is nourished by capillary blood vessels which tend to follow the course of the fibers, and it is innervated by slender branches of the sympathetic nervous system.

Skeletal Muscle

The skeletal muscles develop primarily from the mesodermic somites, which have been briefly described in a previous section (p. 43). The transformation of a portion of each of these blocks of tissue into layers and masses of skeletal muscle fibers has recently been reviewed by Williams, from whose work Fig. 93 has been taken (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1910, vol. 11, pp. 55–100). In Fig. 93, A, the core of the somite has fused with the ventral and medial walls of the mass, and the tissue thus formed is streaming over the aorta and toward the notochord. This tissue, the *sclerotome*, becomes mesenchyma and gives rise to smooth muscle and various other mesenchymal derivatives. In the part of the somite left in place, near the groove "x," the striated muscle fibers begin to develop. The cells here elongate at right angles with the plane of the figure, and thus lengthwise of the embryo. In an older stage (Fig. 93, B) these myoblasts have multiplied and have begun to form a plate of muscle tissue, the *myotome*, which extends ventrally as shown in C and D. The dorso-lateral wall of the somite has meanwhile become a plate of tissue, the *dermatome*, which, with the myotome associated with it, is often called the *dermo-myotome*. The dermatome according to Bardeen produces only striated muscle fibers; Williams finds that it forms only dermal connective tissue, and others consider that it gives rise both to muscle and connective tissue. The myotome is "entirely transformed into muscle fibers." The way in which the myotomes extend ventrally and break up into the ventro-lateral trunk and neck musculature, and the longitudinal fusion and splitting of the dorsal part of the myotomes to produce the deep back muscles of the trunk and neck, have been described by Warren Lewis (Keibel and Mall, Human Embryology, 1910). The skeletal muscles of the limbs have usually been described as arising from cells which have migrated into the limbs from the ventral part of the myotomes. If this takes place the cells which migrate become indistinguishable from mesenchymal cells, but Bardeen and Warren Lewis consider that "the myotomes

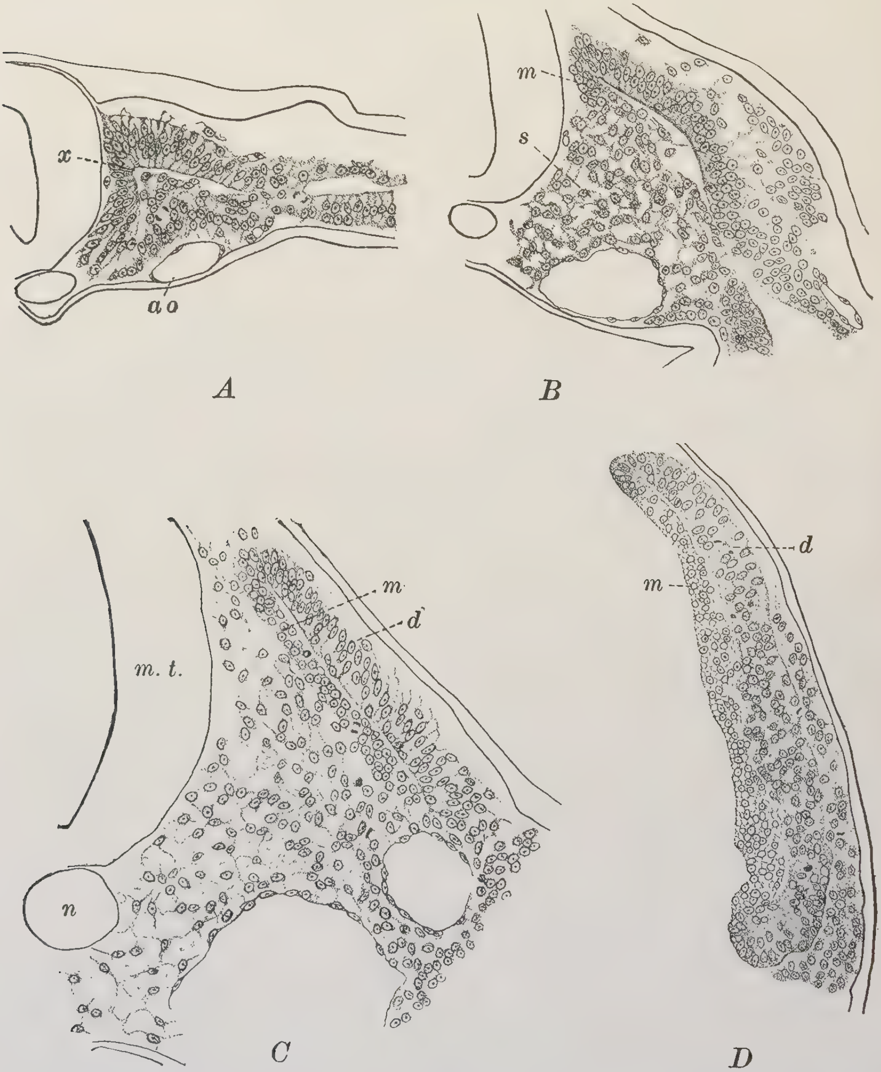


Fig. 93.—Transverse Sections through the Middle of Certain Somites in Successively Older Chick Embryos. **A**, **B**, and **C**, through one of the Second Pair of Somites in Embryos of Nine, Fifteen, and Twenty-five Segments Respectively; **D**, through one of the Forty-fourth Pair in an Embryo of Fifty-two Segments. × 230. (Williams.)

ao., Aorta; **d**, dermatome; **m**, myotome; **m. t.**, medullary tube; **n**, notochord; **s**, sclerotome; **x**, angle at which the myotome develops.

play no part whatever in the origin of the musculature of the limbs." Moreover, Lewis states that "the idea that myotomes play a rôle in the origin of the muscles of the head must be abandoned." A radical difference in the source of smooth and striated muscle has therefore not been demonstrated, but the two forms of muscle develop very differently.

The myoblasts which produce striated muscle are found in the midst of a mesenchymal or connective tissue network, which surrounds them and binds them together. In producing muscle fibres the myoblasts become greatly elongated cylindrical structures, with rounded or blunt ends. During their growth, mitotic nuclear division takes place repeatedly, and coarse fibrils appear in the protoplasm.

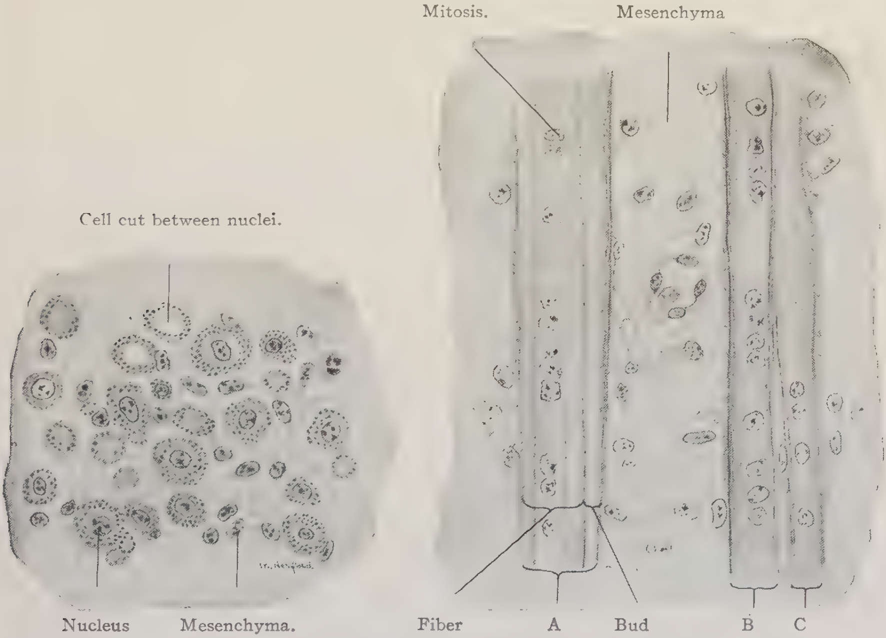


Fig. 94.—Cross and Longitudinal Section of Myoblasts from 60 Cm. Pig Embryo. **A, B,** and **C,** three young muscle fibers; **A** is producing a bud from the main fiber, as yet without nuclei. Note the wrinkled sarcolemma on **B** and **C.**

The central position of the nuclei in myoblasts in pig embryos was clearly described by Schwann, in the second part of his treatise which established the cellular structure of animals (1839). He believed, however, that the myoblasts were formed by the coalescence of primary round cells arranged in a row. The gradual and nearly complete transformation of the protoplasm into longitudinal fibrils was correctly observed. Schwann found that the secondary cells, or mature fibers, were completely enclosed in structureless membranes, which were clearly seen in shrunken fibers (*Cf.* Fig. 96).

Fig. 94, shows transverse and longitudinal sections of myoblasts, developing in mesenchyma. The young muscle fibres are so long that only a portion of them is included in the longitudinal view; the nuclei are centrally placed. The fibrils are the contractile elements, and appear as lines when seen longitudinally, or as irregular dots when cut directly across. These fibrils are within the cell, though near the periphery, and therefore are imbedded in the cell protoplasm and enclosed by the cell wall, or sarcolemma. This delicate membrane can be seen only when it is parallel to the line of vision. In the contracted state of the muscles the protoplasm and sarcolemma are bulged out as shown in cell "C," so that the sarcolemma in transverse sections would often be invisible, and the cell outline indistinct. The irregular bulging also explains why the fibrils in cross sections do not always appear at the periphery of the cell.

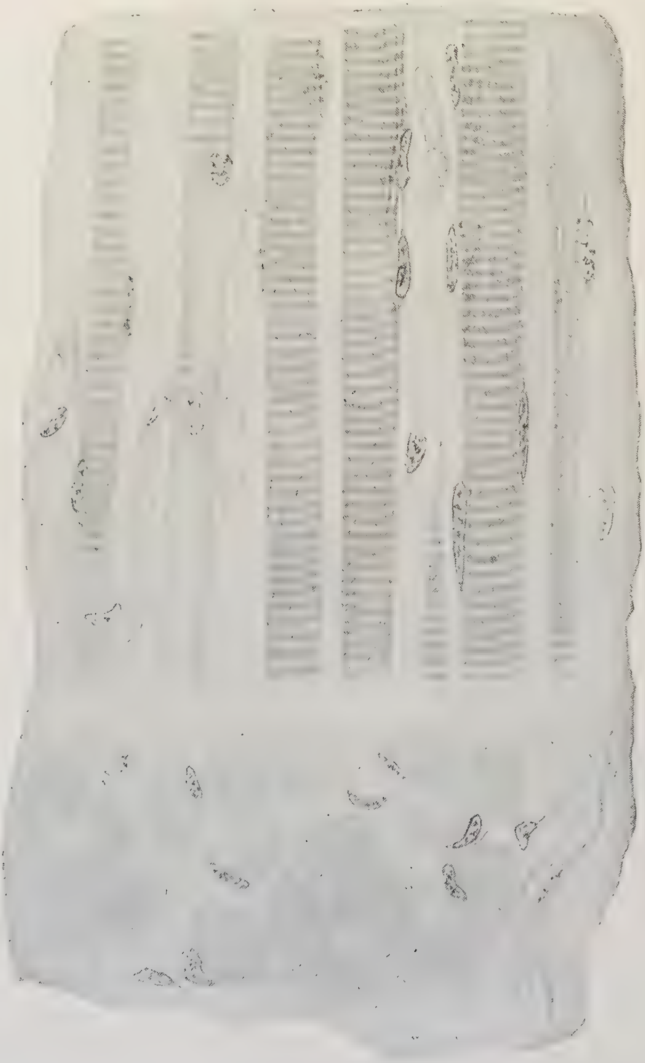


Fig. 95.—Striated Muscle, Child; Longitudinal and Cross Section.

The nuclei of the immature cells lie within the ring of fibrils, also imbedded in the protoplasm, and are arranged often in groups along the cell; pairs of daughter nuclei which have just separated are common. The nuclei may be pale and vesicular, or much darker in mitosis. In cross sections many cells are cut between nuclei.

In certain skeletal muscles the myoblasts may increase in number by lateral budding. Buds extend along the side of the main fibre, and are provided with peripheral fibrils. Nuclei migrate into the buds, and they become separate cells.

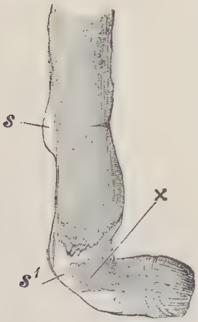


Fig. 96.—Striated Muscle Fiber of Frog, Teased Apart in Water, Being Torn at x, and showing the Sarcolemma at s and s¹.

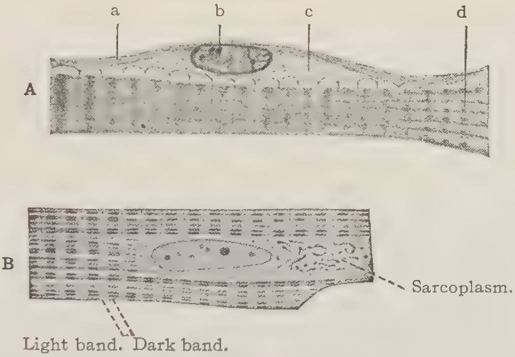


Fig. 97.—Longitudinal Sections of Striated Muscle.
A., Sketch to show the relation between the cells and fibers according to Baldwin. **a.,** Fibrous membrane; **b.,** nucleus of a muscle cell in vertical section; **c.,** sarcolemma; **d.,** myofibrils artificially separated.
B., Part of a fiber from a straight muscle of the eye of a calf. × 1000. The nucleus is seen in surface view; the sarcoplasm contains chondrioconta.

The group of cells shown in Fig. 94, corresponds with a portion of the myotome in Fig. 93, D. It is sectioned in the same plane, but represents an older stage. In the adult, such an area is shown in Fig. 95, and a longitudinal view above. The long cylindrical cells have become filled with fibrils, and the nuclei have migrated to the periphery.

The nuclei are so spaced that they are seen infrequently in cross sections, and are placed in the corners of the cell. They are more numerous near the end of the muscle fiber, and may there retain their central position. The growth in length of the fiber is supposed to occur at the extremities.

The fibrils run the entire length of the cell, and with the sarcoplasm in which they are imbedded are confined by a very delicate membrane, or cell wall, the sarcolemma, which rests often on delicate connective tissue fibres. This is best seen near nuclei which happen to lie at the edge of the fibers, in profile view, yet even here it is often difficult to distinguish. The term sarcolemma (σὰρξ, flesh; λέμμα, husk or shell) was introduced by Bowman (Phil. Trans., 1840) who described the membrane as "a tubular sheath of the most exquisite delicacy, investing every fasciculus (or fiber) from end to end, and isolating its fibrillæ from all the surrounding structures." He confirms Schwann's statement that it is not a fibrous structure derived from the surrounding connective tissue, and he states that the nuclei of the muscle come to lie "at or near the surface but within the sarcolemma." He adds, however, that he has seen similar cells in the sarcolemma itself. Since Bowman's time there has been prolonged discussion as to the nature of this membrane. The outer portion, which may occasionally contain nuclei, appears to be of connective tissue origin, and is comparable with a basement membrane. The inner part, or true sarcolemma, is a structureless membrane closely applied to the surrounding connective tissue. It appears to be much more definite than any membrane which invests smooth muscle fibers, to which the term sarcolemma has been extended by Heidenhain and others. The sarcolemma of striated muscle, however, is not yet thoroughly understood. Although the muscle cells are generally said to be within it, Baldwin finds that they are outside of the sarcolemma, between it and the fibrous basement membrane (Fig. 97, A). This would make the muscle fiber a scattered group of nucleated cells, arranged along an extracellular bundle of fibrils. This conception agrees with that of Apáthy in regarding the myofibrils as comparable with connective tissue fibers. It is not easily reconcilable with the development of the fibers, with the occasional central position of nuclei, nor with the finding of the Golgi apparatus, always a protoplasmic constituent, dispersed among the fibrils of the muscle cell (Bowen, Biol. Bull., 1926, vol. 50, pp. 108–116) instead of near each nucleus. Baldwin (Anat. Anz., 1912, vol. 42, pp. 177–181) extends his ideas to cardiac muscle also. In tissue cultures the myofibrils are said to be invisible until the cells are fixed by reagents, though a much finer fibrillation is recognizable. This is further discussed under cardiac muscle.

The most conspicuous characteristic of skeletal muscle, which has caused it to be called striated, is the marking with alternating light and dark bands, seen only in longitudinal section. The myofibrils are composed of alternating light and dark portions, and are so arranged that the dark parts of one fibril are beside the dark parts of adjacent fibrils. As a result of the close crowding of the fibrils, alternating light and dark transverse bands appear to pass from one side of the fiber to the other, and these are the striations. When seen obliquely, the dark and light areas become superposed and confused, and the longitudinal myofibrils become conspicuous, as seen at the left of Fig. 95.

Bowman (1840) stated that "a decisive characteristic of voluntary muscle consists in the existence of alternate light and dark lines, taking a direction across the fasciculi." He added that Leeuwenhoek had described the striæ repeatedly, believing in the earlier years of his inquiry that they were circular bands around the fibrils, but later regarding them as of spiral arrangement, comparable with an elastic coil of wire, and in some way capable of retraction. Bowman recognized that they were caused by the "coaptation of the markings of neighboring fibrillæ." He found that the muscle fibers can readily be split into longitudinal fibrillæ with transverse markings, but that "in other cases their natural cleavage is into discs, and in all instances these discs exist quite as unequivocally as the fibrillæ themselves." The discs are produced when the ends of a muscle fiber are pulled apart (Fig. 98). Bowman regarded each disc as a plate of agglutinated segments, receiving a single segment from every fibrilla which crossed it. These segments he named *sarcous elements;* they are united endwise to form the myofibrils and crosswise to form the discs. Usually the longitudinal cohesion is much greater than the lateral, and in the wing muscles of insects, according to Schäfer, the fiber "never, under any circumstances, cleaves across into discs."

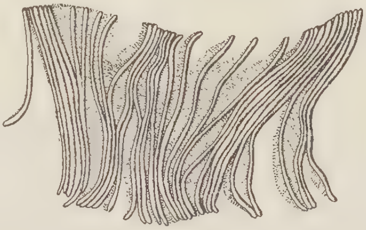


Fig. 98.—A Human Striated Muscle Fiber Separating into Discs. (After Bowman.)

In cross section the muscle cells appear rounded or polygonal. The fibrils appear as minute but clearly distinguishable dots. Their appearance as short lines, which move on focusing, is very characteristic of oblique sections. They are often arranged in groups, called *Cohnheim's areas*, separated by irregular lanes, in which, as everywhere between the individual fibrils, is the sarcoplasm. These groups are known as muscle columns, which Schäfer later named *sarcostyles*. The term sarcostyle is, however, often loosely applied to the separate myofibrils. It has been supposed that the fibrils in a column arise by the longitudinal splitting of a primitive myofibril, but the appearance often suggests shrinkage. The lighter lanes of sarcoplasm between columns are often noticeable in longitudinal sections.

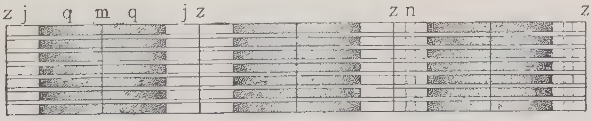


Fig. 99.—Diagram of Muscle Striations. (After Heidenhain.)

The fibrils consist of alternating dark bands, **Q,** and light bands, **J.** **J,** is traversed by the ground membrane **Z,** and **Q** by the median membrane **M.** In the right of the three muscle segments shown in the figure, the bands, **N,** have been drawn.

The finer structure of the fibrils is illustrated in the diagram, Fig. 99, which represents a part of seven myofibrils, including three dark bands and portions of four light bands. Under polarized light the dark bands are doubly refractive or *anisotropic*, and the light ones are singly refractive or *isotropic*. Following Rollett's suggestion, the striations are often designated by letters. The dark band is called *Q* (an abbreviation for *Querscheibe*, or transverse band) and the light band is called *J* (applied by Rollett to a subdivision of the isotropic layer). The light band is bisected by the ground membrane, or *Krause's membrane*, which appears as a very slender dark line, *Z* (*Zwischenscheibe*, or intermediate disc). The lines *Z* are believed to represent continuous membranes which divide the muscle fiber into compartments called muscle segments, or *sarcomeres*. At the sides of the fiber, Krause's membranes join the sarcolemma, which bulges between them when the fibers are contracted (Fig. 97, A). Between *Z* and *Q*, in the highly developed striated muscles of insects, a band *N* has been described (*Nebenscheibe*, or accessory band). The dark band *Q* becomes gradually lighter toward its central part (thus forming *h* or *Qh*), and in its central part it is sometimes seen to be crossed by Hensen's median membrane, *M* (*Mittelscheibe*). The latter is believed to be similar to Krause's membrane, but more delicate. Like the other bands it may appear dark or light according to the focus. In the muscle fibrils shown in Fig. 100, the bands *Q*, *J*, and *Z* may be readily identified; *M* appears as a rather broad white line which may include *Qh*.

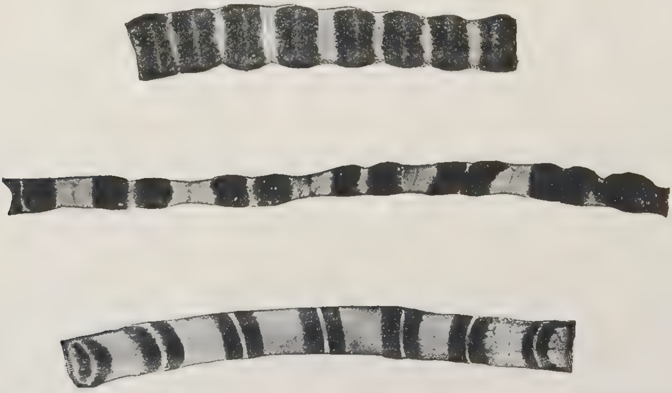


FIG. 100.—FIBRILS OF THE WING-MUSCLES OF A WASP; THE UPPER ONE CONTRACTED; THE MIDDLE ONE STRETCHED; AND THE LOWEST ONE UNCONTRACTED. × 2000. (Schäfer.)

Between the myofibrils and completely surrounding them is the *sarcoplasm*, which is a fluid substance containing *interstitial granules*, fat droplets, and glycogen. It differs from the protoplasm of the muscle cells which is found about the nuclei, and which is cut off from the sarcoplasm, according to Baldwin, by the sarcolemma. The granules have been carefully studied by Bullard (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1912, vol. 14, pp. 1–46) who discusses their staining reactions and probable composition. The significance of the interstitial granules could not be determined. The fat droplets are regarded as reserved food material, and they vary in abundance according to the quantity of fat in the food. Schäfer has found no evidence that the isolated sarcoplasm of insect muscles is contractile, but he readily observed the contractility of isolated myofibrils. Moreover the activity of certain muscles in living embryos begins soon after the fibrils are differentiated.

In the process of contraction, according to Schäfer, the hyaline substance of the myofibril passes from the light segment *J* into the dark segment *Q*, so that each sarcomere becomes short and broad. He refers to the photograph of the lowest fibril in Fig. 100 as showing that the dark substance is porous (note the end of the fiber toward the right). The sarcolemma bulges between the successive Krause's membranes, which are brought closer together (Fig. 97, A), the length of each sarcomere is greatly reduced. The dark band *Q* may become light through the accumulation of hyaline substance within it, and the shortened and condensed *J* may become quite dark, causing a reversal of the original color relations. The sarcoplasm is said to be forced from between the dilated myofibrils in *Q*, into *J*. Others consider that contraction is due to a passage of fluid from the sarcoplasm into the myofibrils, and that the beaded form which the myofibrils often present results from an intake of fluid through the ultra-microscopic membranes which are supposed to surround them. The latter interpretation is defended by Meigs (Zeitschr, f, allg. Physiol., 1908, vol. 8, pp. 81–120), and vigorously attacked by Schäfer (Quart. Journ. Exp. Physiol., 1910, vol. 3, pp. 63–74). Lewis, considering the myofibrils as artefacts, suggests another interpretation of contraction; see cardiac muscle. The older theories of contraction and the numerous papers on the finer structure of striated muscle are admirably reviewed by Heidenhain (Anat. Hefte, Abth. 2, 1899, vol. 8, pp. 1–111).

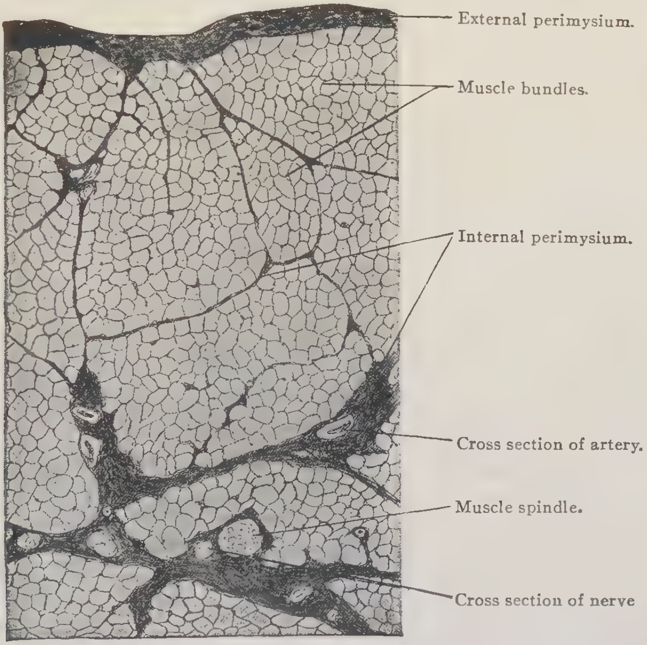


FIG. 101.—FROM A CROSS SECTION OF THE OMOHYOID MUSCLE OF MAN. × 60.

Adult muscle is composed of such fibers as have been described in the preceding paragraphs. They are arranged in compact bundles, shown in cross section in Fig. 101. Around all the larger muscles there is a connective tissue sheath, or *external perimysium*, which extends into the muscle in the form of septa, thus subdividing it into bundles or *fasciculi*. These septa constitute the *internal perimysium*, and the connective tissue extends from them around the individual muscle fibers, blending with the sarcolemma. In the connective tissue of the diaphragm, elastic fibers are abundant; but the muscles of the extremities are poor in elastic tissue, containing only fine, chiefly longitudinal fibers, found especially in the perimysium externum.

Cross sections of striated muscle fibers are readily recognized. They have rounded-polygonal outlines formed by the sarcolemma and fibrous membrane, within which are the myofibrils, often shrunken from the membrane. The fibrils stain intensely with eosin. They appear as coarse granules, but their rod-like form becomes evident as they are followed up and down by changing the focus. The shifting picture thus presented is quite characteristic. Some fibers stain more darkly than others, owing to the varying abundance of sarcoplasmic granules.

In many animals, as in the rabbit, two sorts of striated muscles may be recognized —red muscle (*e.g.*, the M. semitendinosus and M. soleus); and pale or white muscle (*e.g.*, the M. adductor magnus). Correspondingly there are two sorts of fibers. First, there are dark fibers with abundant sarcoplasm, well defined longitudinal striation, and poorly developed transverse markings, having in general a small diameter; these occur in red muscles. Secondly, there are pale fibers, with less sarcoplasm and better defined transverse striations, having a greater diameter. These are the more highly differentiated fibers. Although in some animals these two sorts of fibers are found in separate muscles, in others, as in man, they are mingled in single muscles. In general the most constantly active muscles (cardiac, ocular, masticatory and respiratory) contain the most fibers with abundant sarcoplasm. The muscles having many fibers with scanty sarcoplasm contract more quickly but are exhausted sooner.

The size of the muscle fibers is subject to considerable variation. They are said to enlarge at a uniform rate throughout the body until birth, when their diameter is about twice as great as in embryos of four months. After birth the fibers of certain muscles become much coarser than those in others. Thus the gluteal muscles have large fibers (av. diam. 87.5μ) and the ocular muscles have small ones (av. diam. 17.5μ), as determined by Halban (Anat. Hefte, Abth. 1, 1894, vol. 3, pp. 267–308). He finds that the diameter of the adult fibers in general is about five times greater than at birth. As a result of exercise the diameter of muscle fibers in rats may show an average increase of 25% according to Morpurgo (Arch. f. path. Anat., 1897, vol. 150, pp. 522–554). He states that the enlargement of the muscle takes place without an increase in the number of its fibers, but merely through the thickening of existing elements. The fibers which grow most are those which originally were thinnest, and which act as a reserve material with great capacity for growth. The enlargement of fully formed fibers apparently takes place through an increase in the sarcoplasm, without multiplication or thickening of the fibrils. After injury striated muscle gives slight evidence of regeneration, but it has been thought that latent myoblasts may become active. A proliferation of nuclei toward the injured ends of the muscle fibers has been recorded, but repair is chiefly through the production of connective tissue.

Longitudinal sections of skeletal muscles may be easily recognized by the presence of unbranched striated fibers, bounded by well-defined membranes, associated with which are the flattened peripheral nuclei. The striations *Q* and *J* are visible under low magnification. In a few situations, striated muscle fibers branch (Fig. 102). Branching has been reported toward the place where the muscle fibers of the tongue are inserted into the mucous membrane, and where the facial muscles end in the subcutaneous tissue. The way in which the fibers connect with tendon has been studied with conflicting results. Schultze finds that at the end of the muscle fiber the myofibrils are no longer differentiated into light and dark bands, but pass directly into the tendon fibrils, with which they are continuous (Fig. 103). "Muscle fibrils and tendon fibrils are parts of a single structure." (Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1912, vol. 79, pp. 307–331). But Baldwin finds that the ends of the muscle fibers are primarily conical and are covered with sarcolemma; and the tendon fibrils connect with the sarcolemma at the apices of the cones. The processes of sarcolemma are thus primarily "dovetailed" into the tendon. Secondarily the cones may blend to form a thickened flat layer to which perichondrial or periosteal fibers are attached. In no case is the sarcolemma penetrated by muscle fibrils or tendon fibrils, and therefore there is no continuity between them (Morph. Jahr., 1912, vol. 45, pp. 249–266). Thus Baldwin defends the generally accepted opinion.

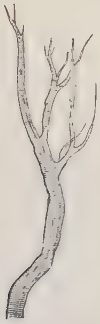


FIG. 102.—BRANCHED STRIATED MUSCLE FIBER FROM THE TONGUE OF A FROG.

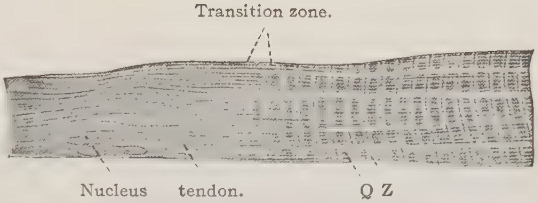


FIG. 103.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION OF A PART OF A MUSCLE FIBER FROM A HUMAN INTERNAL INTERCOSTAL MUSCLE, SHOWING ITS TRANSITION TO TENDON. × 750.

Muscles are abundantly supplied with vessels and nerves, which are imbedded in the perimysium. The lymphatic vessels end in the septa without extending among the individual muscle fibers; but the blood vessels, through capillary branches, continue further and run between adjacent fibers, thus forming a plexus with elongated rectangular meshes. The nerves are chiefly motor, and a branch ends in contact with every muscle fiber, to which it transmits the impulse for contraction. Muscles also contain *sensory* nerves, having "free endings" and probably terminating also around the *muscle spindles.* The development of these has been studied by Sutton, (Am. J. Anat., 1915, vol. 18, pp. 117–144). The spindles are slender bundles of poorly developed fibers, generally situated near the septa formed by the internal perimysium, as seen in Figs. 101 and 104. All the muscle spindles are formed during embryonic life, and their abundance and distribution in the various muscles in embryos have been studied by Gregor (Arch. f. Anat. u. Entw., 1904, pp. 112–194). They have not been found in all muscles, and in certain muscles they are regularly more numerous than in others. Thus they have been reported as absent from the muscles of the eye, face, pharynx, small muscles of the larynx, the *Mm. ischiocavernosus* and *bulbocavernosus,* and certain others, including a large part of the diaphragm. They are numerous in the distal muscles of the limbs, and in certain muscles of the neck. The finer structure of the nerve terminations, both motor and sensory, will be considered with the nervous system.

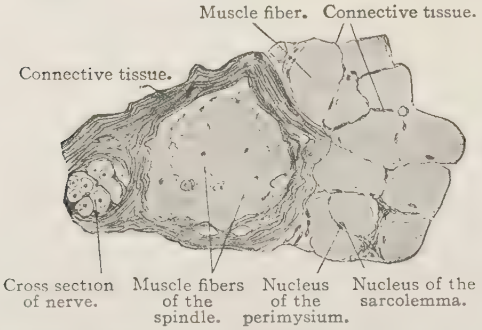

Muscle fiber.
Connective tissue.
Connective tissue.
Cross section of nerve.
Muscle fibers of the spindle.
Nucleus of the perimysium.
Nucleus of the sarcolemma.

Fig. 104.—The Muscle Spindle shown in Fig. 101. × 240.

Boeke, in 1913, called attention to two sets of nerve fibers running to striated muscles, which he interpreted as indicating a "motor" and a "sympathetic" innervation, or voluntary and involuntary. This has been further investigated by Dart (Journ. Comp. Neurol., 1924, vol. 36, pp. 441–494) who finds a complete double innervation, motor and sensory of each type. Experiments carried on by others show that the involuntary nerves are probably responsible for muscle "tonus," the slightly contracted state of muscle when at rest, which is maintained even when the motor nerves are rendered incapable of acting. Dart draws the deduction that the striated muscles have been derived phylogenetically from smooth muscles, retaining the original slow movement and sympathetic innervation, but adding striated fibrils for rapid movement and a second set of nerves for voluntary control.

CARDIAC MUSCLE

A portion of the mesenchymal syncytium from which cardiac muscle develops is shown in Fig. 105. Its nuclei are found in the axial part of the protoplasmic strands, at varying intervals from one another. Peripherally a few myofibrils have developed from the chondrioconta, or protoplasmic granules, and these fibrils extend for considerable distances through the syncytium regardless of cell areas. They multiply rapidly, and form a peripheral layer of fibrils surrounding the central nuclei and axial protoplasm. Thus as seen in cross section, the strands of cardiac syncytium and the myoblasts of skeletal muscle resemble one another. The fibrils exhibit alternating dark and light bands which are arranged as in skeletal muscle, and ground membranes (*Z*) develop across the fibers, bisecting the light bands (*J*). The striations, however, are not as regular and as highly developed as in skeletal muscle. At the periphery of the fibers there is a sarcolemma, which is thinner than that of skeletal muscle, and was formerly overlooked. In early stages the muscle fibers in many places rest close against the endothelium of blood vessels; later they are surrounded by more or less connective tissue.

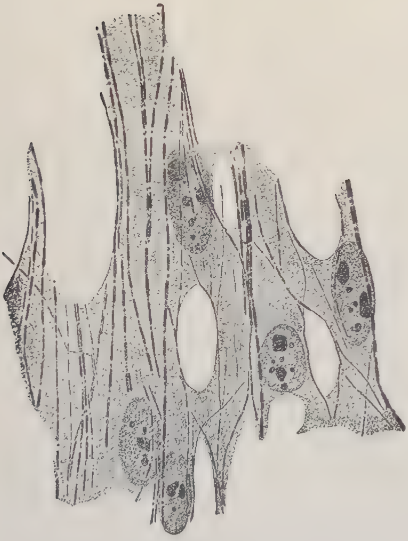


FIG. 105.—CARDIAC MUSCLE FROM A DUCK EMBRYO OF THREE DAYS. (M. Heidenhain, from McMurrich's "Embryology.")

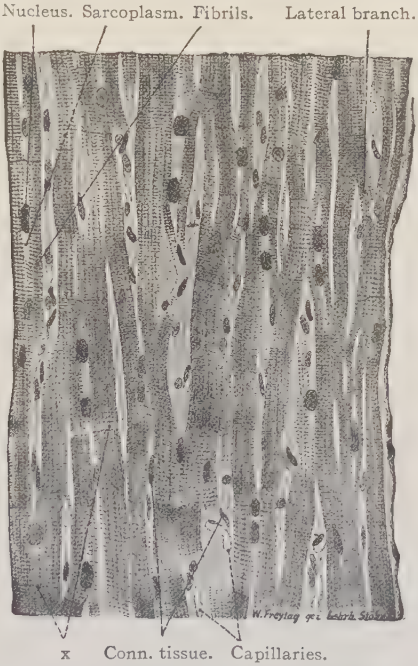


FIG. 106.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION OF A PAPILLARY MUSCLE FROM THE HUMAN HEART. × 240. The transverse lines (x) are partly light (where the fiber has broken) and partly dark (*intercalated discs*).

In the adult the cardiac muscle fibers anastomose freely, thus retaining their original syncytial arrangement (Fig. 106). They do not, however, form an irregular network, but are arranged in layers, in which the fibers tend to be parallel. Thus they are cut longitudinally in Fig. 106 and transversely in Fig. 163 (p. 180). The nuclei retain their central position. They are elliptical bodies with a conical mass of protoplasm at either pole. This protoplasm, as in smooth muscle, occupies the interval left between the fibrils as they diverge to pass by the nucleus. It is granular, and frequently contains brown pigment.

The presence of myofibrils, even before they are provided with light and dark portions, is not necessary for the contraction of heart muscle. The heart of chick embryos beats rhythmically without this cellular differentiation. The rhythm is presumably preserved by the syncytial nature of the heart muscle as a whole, one portion affecting another without the necessity of nerves. In the adult heart specially differentiated bands of cardiac muscle serve to transmit the impulse from one part of the heart to another.

On the other hand, Lewis, in the study of tissue cultures of heart muscle, finds that isolated portions or cells may beat independently, often with a different rhythm from that of the main mass, and questions whether heart muscle is actually syncytial and not rather an "adherent reticulum." He finds also no trace of the myofibrillæ in living cells, but can watch them develop during fixation of the tissue; he therefore thinks them due to the peculiar manner in which the contractile substance coagulates. "Since myofibrils are artefacts or transitory structures, and since muscle-cells in which no fibrils or cross-striations can be detected, either before or after fixation, beat rhythmically, theories of muscle contraction can not be based upon visible fibrils or cross-striations with any assurance of possible validity. The conditions which are found in cultures practically force us to base our theories on the physical and chemical conditions of the contractile molecule itself. The configuration of such gigantic colloidal molecules may well be that of elongated flexible crystals or threads arranged with their long axes parallel to the direction in which contraction takes place. Contraction then might result from the shortening and broadening of these unstable molecules by either physical or chemical alterations in their structure." (Contrib. to Embry., 1926, vol. 18, pp. 1–21.)

A feature of cardiac muscle which is unlike anything observed in smooth or skeletal fibers is the presence of *intercalated discs.* These are transverse lines across the fibers, which were formerly interpreted as cell boundaries, and some authorities still regard them as such. In the guinea-pig Jordan and Steele find that they first appear during the week before birth. Thus they are late in development, and they are relatively less abundant and simpler in the young than in adults (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1912, vol. 13, pp. 151–173). If the cardiac syncytium ultimately became resolved into cells, it would resemble certain other syncytia in this respect; and cardiac muscle can be broken up into cell-like blocks, apparently along these discs. However, the discs occur at variable distances from one another, and very frequently they mark off non-nucleated portions of the syncytium. As many as four of them may extend partly across a single nucleus, as shown by Jordan and Steele, indicating that they are peripheral modifications of the myofibrils, and cannot be regarded as

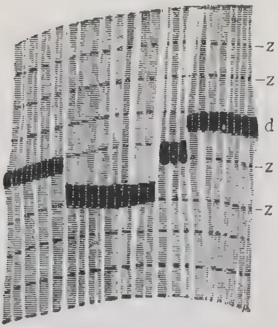


FIG. 107.—INTERCALATED DISC (d) FROM HUMAN CARDIAC MUSCLE, STAINED WITH THIAZIN RED AND TOLUIDIN BLUE. (Heidenhain.) Z, Krause's membrane.

cell walls. Heidenhain (Anat. Anz., 1901, vol. 20, pp. 33–78) pictures them as always connected on one side with a ground membrane *Z* (Fig. 107), and states that they are somewhat narrower than a sarcomere (*i.e.*, the distance between two successive ground membranes). He regards them as the places where new sarcomeres form, thus providing for the growth of the heart. Jordan and Steele, among others, consider that they are places where individual fibrils are contracted, and the fact that they are shorter than adjacent sarcomeres favors this interpretation. The discs may extend straight across the fiber, but frequently they are broken into "steps" as shown in the figure.

There are, therefore, three peculiarities of cardiac muscle through which it differs conspicuously from skeletal muscle, namely, its anastomosing fibers, central nuclei, and intercalated discs.

NERVOUS TISSUE

General features. In nervous tissue the protoplasmic functions of irritability and conductivity attain their highest development. Irritability is that property which enables the cell to react to various stimuli, such as pressure or light; and through conductivity the effects of stimulation are transmitted to distant parts of the cell, or to adjacent cells. In all animals the cells of the outer or ectodermal layer are those most exposed to stimulation, and the ectoderm accordingly gives rise to the entire nervous system. In some animals all the ectodermal cells have been described as equally responsive to stimulation, and the name "sensory layer" has been applied to the ectoderm as a whole. Usually, however, the sensory cells become specialized in definite and limited areas of the ectoderm. M. Schultze (1862) showed that the sensory cells of the nose and eye are epithelial elements, the bases of which are prolonged into filaments which serve as nerves to convey sensation. He taught that the specific functions of the sense organs depend on their respective epithelial cells, which accordingly may be designated as olfactory, gustatory, auditory or visual cells.

Not only does the ectoderm produce sensory *neuro-epithelial cells*, the nucleated bodies of which remain in the epithelium, but it gives rise to more deeply placed *nerve cells*, which connect with the epithelial cells and place them in communication with the muscles. In simple forms of animals this connection is very direct, and the response of the muscle to epithelial stimulation is quite automatic. In the higher animals there are both direct and indirect paths from the sensory endings to the muscles, and muscular action may be inhibited or initiated by certain of the centrally placed nerve cells.

The centrally placed cells in vertebrates constitute the spinal cord and brain, which together form the *central nervous system.* The bundles of fibers which convey impulses to and from the central nervous system, together with the cells associated with them, constitute the *peripheral nervous system.*

In the olfactory epithelium of vertebrates there are neuro-epithelial cells which send fibers directly into the central nervous system, but in other cases the nucleated bodies of the sensory cells are not found in the epithelium. They occur in circumscribed masses or *ganglia,* from which fibers extend both into the central nervous system, and outward to various sensory structures, where they terminate in contact with cells which stimulate them. Thus the stimulus which gives rise to a tactile sensation is received by the terminal ramifications of a nerve fiber in the skin. The stimulus is conveyed along this fiber (Fig. 108, *a*), through the spinal ganglion (*b*), into the spinal cord, where it produces several branches (at *c*). One of these branches passes to a motor cell, *d*, to which it transmits its stimulus. The motor cell sends a fiber outward (*e*) to terminate in contact with a striated muscle, which is thereby stimulated so that it contracts. This direct path from the sensory ending to the muscle, provides for reflex or unconscious action, such as is taken when the hand is suddenly withdrawn from a painful contact. In such a case a considerable group of muscles may contract together, since the sensory fiber sends branches up and down the cord (*f*), and these in turn give off *collateral branches* which pass to motor cells at different levels.

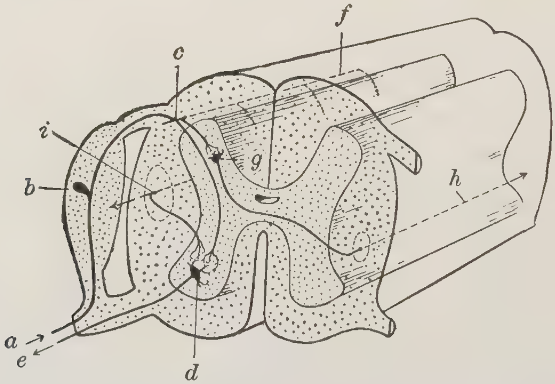


FIG. 108.—DIAGRAM OF THE SPINAL CORD SHOWING A SENSORY FIBER, **a**; A MOTOR FIBER, **e**; AND THE FIBERS WHICH CONNECT THEM WITH EACH OTHER AND WITH THE BRAIN.

The cell which conveys the tactile sensation from the skin to the spinal cord gives rise to branches which terminate in contact with other cells in the spinal cord, as shown in Fig. 108, *g*. From these cells processes cross to the opposite side of the cord and pass up to the brain (*h*), where they connect with nerve cells through which the sensations become conscious. These brain cells presumably become permanently modified by the sensations which they receive, so that they store experiences. As a result of the sensation transmitted from the skin, certain cells in the brain may send stimuli downward to the motor cells of the cord, which then cause the muscles to act voluntarily. The descending fiber crosses to the opposite side during its descent, and occupies the position in the cord shown in Fig. 108, *i*. A branch is shown passing to the motor cell, *d*.

From this sketch of the constitution of the nervous system, it is seen that it consists essentially of cells, made up of *cell bodies* and of *fibers;* the fibers are prolongations of the cell bodies. The cells are *sensory*, or *afferent*, conveying impulses toward the central nervous system, or if in the spinal cord, toward the brain; and *motor*, or *efferent*, conveying impulses away from the brain or spinal cord. The sensory cell bodies lie either in the ganglia or in the dorsal part of the cord or brain; the motor cells lie in the ventral part of the cord. The groups of these cells in the cord constitute the *dorsal* and *ventral horns*, or *columns*. Within the cord these cells connect with others, forming *ascending* and *descending tracts*, or bundles of fibers passing toward the brain and away from it, respectively. Fibers which serve to connect different levels of the cord with one another are known as *association fibers;* those which connect the opposite sides are *commissural fibers*.

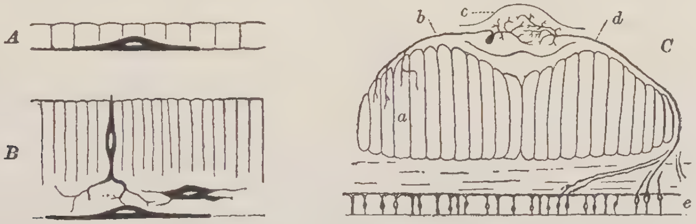


Fig. 109.—**A**, Diagram of the Muscular Mechanism in a Sponge. (Parker.) **B**, Diagram of the Neuro-muscular Mechanism in a Medusa. (Parker, after Hertwig.) **C**, Diagram of the Ventral Nervous Chain (**c**) and Adjacent Structures in an Earthworm. (Parker, after Retzius.)

a, longitudinal muscle; **b**, motor fiber; **d**, sensory fiber; **e**, epithelium on the under surface of the body, containing neuro-epithelial cells.

Certain features in the development of the nervous system in lower animals, of interest in connection with the mammalian nervous system, are shown diagrammatically in Fig. 109. In sponges, according to Parker, there is no nervous tissue of any sort, but beneath the thin epithelium he finds enlongated contractile cells which "resemble primitive smooth muscle fibers" (Fig. 109, A). They have been regarded as modified epithelial cells. Parker finds that they are stimulated directly, as a result of changes in the sea-water, so that they slowly contract and close the orifices around which they are situated. Since the sponges are lower than any animals which are known to have nerve cells, Parker concludes that muscular tissue arose independently of nervous tissue, and is the more primitive (Journ. Exp. Zool., 1910, vol. 8, pp. 1–41).

In the medusæ, neuro-epithelial cells, nerve cells, and both smooth and striated muscle fibers are present. According to Oskar and Richard Hertwig, the muscle cells are derived from the deep part of the ectodermal epithelium, and from the first they are connected with nerve cells or neuro-epithelial cells (Fig. 109, B). In other words, in the medusæ muscle and nerve develop in primary communication with one another (Das Nervensystem der Medusen, Leipzig, 1878).

In the earthworm (Fig. 109, C) neuro-epithelial cells in the ventral body wall send fibers to a cord of nervous tissue which constitutes a central nervous system. From cells in this cord, processes extend to the muscles, as shown in the diagram. Thus the neuro-epithelial cell does not stimulate the muscle directly; it conveys an impulse to the motor cell which in turn acts upon the muscle. In addition to the cells shown in the diagram the cord contains ramifying association and commissural cells. Thus stimulation at one point on the surface of the animal may cause coordinated muscular contractions in different parts of the body. As Retzius has pointed out, if the neuro-epithelial cells should withdraw into the interior of the animal, leaving their branching process in the epidermis, the conditions in vertebrates would be closely paralleled.

The development and adult anatomy of the central nervous system, and the intricate courses of the fibers within it are the subject of special text books and will not be dealt with here. It is considered sufficient to give a brief description of the spinal cord as the place of origin of the the spinal nerves, and as containing types of nerve cells and nerve fibers. The following account deals first with the development of the spinal nerves and the sympathetic system; and secondly with the adult structure of these parts, including the nerve cells of the cord and ganglia, the nerve fibers, and the nerve endings.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE SPINAL NERVES

The formation of the medullary groove (or neural groove) as a longitudinal trough in the ectoderm, and its conversion into the medullary tube by the coalescence of its dorsal edges, have been described in a previous section (p. 41). The anterior part of the tube expands to form the brain; the posterior part becomes the relatively slender spinal cord.

Very early in development, the cells of the medullary tube form a syncytium. Those nuclei of the syncytium which border upon the lumen of the tube, or *central canal*, divide repeatedly by mitosis, and many of them are forced outward laterally, so that the sides of the tube become greatly thickened. In the floor and roof of the tube a corresponding thickening fails to take place, as shown in Fig. 111.

The lateral walls of the tube very early become divisible into three layers (Fig. 110). The inner layer consists of germinal or proliferating cells and is wide only in the embryo. In the adult it becomes reduced to a single layer of inactive cells, which surround the central canal like a simple epithelium and constitute the *ependyma* (Gr., ἐπένδυμα, a cloak). The middle layer is composed of cells derived from the germinal layer, and in the adult it constitutes the *gray substance* of the cord. Its cells early differentiate into two types—the supporting cells, or *neuroglia*, and the *nerve cells*. The processes of the nerve cells, in so far as they are within the limits of the gray substance, are non-medullated. The outer layer is at first entirely free from nuclei, and later it contains only a few cell bodies, belonging with the neuroglia and with the endothelium of vessels which penetrate the cord; it contains no nerve cells. This layer consists of a network of neuroglia fibers through which nerve fibers extend in various directions, but chiefly up and down the cord. As these fibers become medullated, the layer becomes white macroscopically, and it forms the

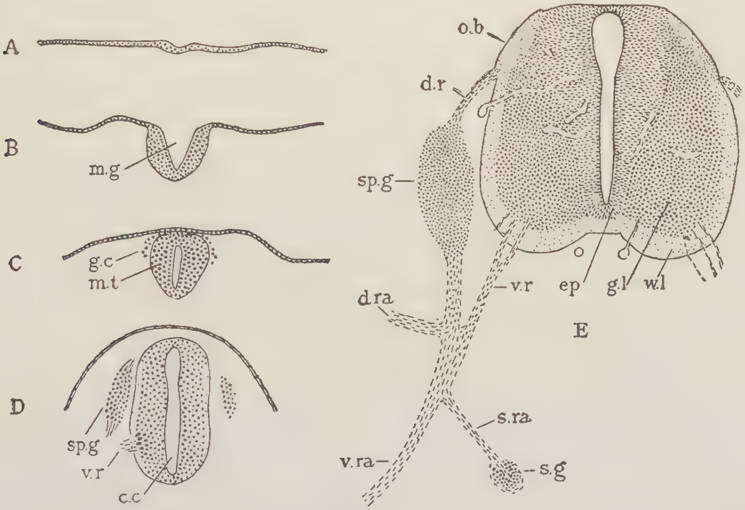


FIG. 110.—THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM AS SEEN IN CROSS SECTIONS OF RABBIT EMBRYOS: A, 7½ DAYS; B, 8½ DAYS; C, 9 DAYS; D, 10½ DAYS; E, 14 DAYS.

c. c., Central cavity; **d. r.**, dorsal root; **d. ra.**, dorsal ramus; **ep.**, ependymal layer; **g. c.**, ganglion cells; **g. l.**, gray layer; **m. g.**, medullary groove; **m. t.**, medullary tube; **o. b.**, oval bundle; **s. g.**, sympathetic ganglion; **sp. g.**, spinal ganglion; **s. ra.**, sympathetic ramus; **v. r.**, ventral root; **v. ra.**, ventral ramus; **w. l.**, white layer.

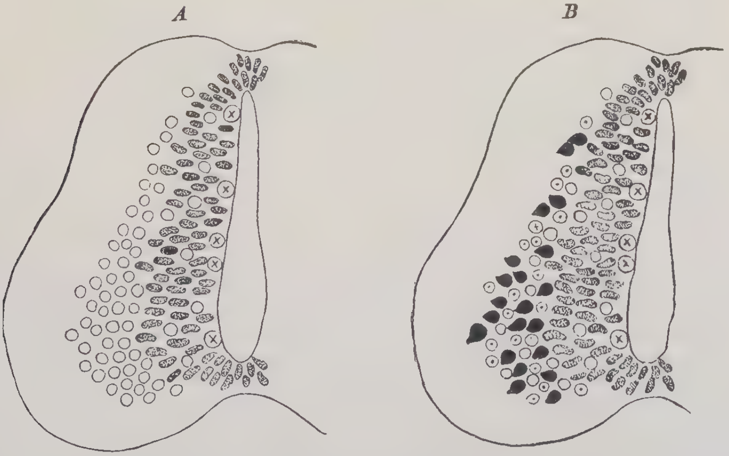


FIG. 111.—DIAGRAMS SHOWING THE DIFFERENTIATION OF THE CELLS IN THE WALL OF THE MEDULLARY TUBE. (Schaper.)

The germinal cells are stippled, and the indifferent cells are empty circles. Circles with dots represent neuroglia cells, and the black cells are neuroblasts. Circles containing an x are germinal cells in mitosis.

white substance of the adult cord. In preparations in which myelin is deeply stained, the white substance appears darker than the gray substance (Fig. 112). From what has been said, it appears that the medullary tube early becomes divisible into inner, middle, and outer layers, which give rise to ependyma, gray substance and white substance respectively.

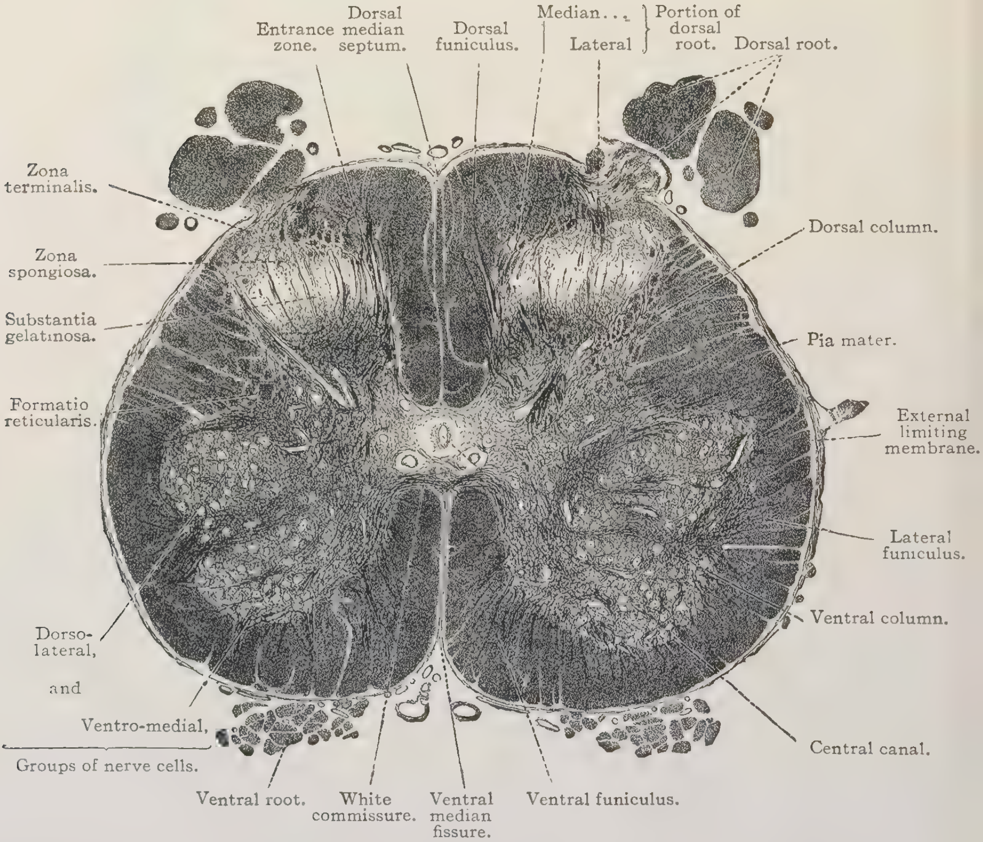


Fig. 112.—Cross Section of the Lumbar Enlargement of the Human Spinal Cord. × 8.

In the gray substance certain cells become pear-shaped by the growth of a process (Fig. 111) usually directed toward the periphery of the cord. This marks the cell as destined to be a nerve cell, and such cells are called neuroblasts. The process elongates and is known as the axone, or neuraxon, or nerve fiber. Later other processes may grow out from the neuroblast, but these are of different character from the axone and are called dendrites. The latter receive nervous impulses, the axone transmits them from the cell body. From the ventral horn of the gray substance the axones of some of the neuroblasts penetrate the limiting membrane of the cord and grow through the surrounding mesenchyma. Bundles of these form the ventral roots of spinal nerves, one pair for each body segment. The fibers are efferent or motor, since they convey impulses from the cord. The axones of other neuroblasts remain within the cord, running in the outer layer. The nerve cells are gathered in groups in the gray substance according to their function.

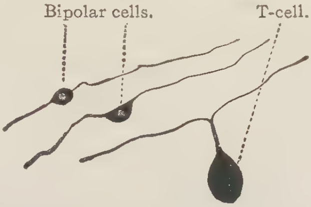


FIG. 113.—SPINAL GANGLION CELLS. The bipolar forms are from a chick embryo incubated six days.

At about the time when the medullary tube separates from the epidermal ectoderm, some cells become detached from the medial dorsal portion of the tube and pass down on either side of it, as shown in Fig. 110, C and D. These cells constitute the *neural crest.* They multiply by mitosis and accumulate in paired masses, corresponding in number with the segments of the body. Thus they form the *spinal ganglia.* A typical cell of a spinal ganglion is at first round, but later becomes bipolar by sending out two processes, one toward the periphery and the other toward the medullary tube. These processes grow out from opposite ends of the cell (Fig. 113). With further growth the nucleated cell body passes to one side of the prolongations, with which it remains connected by a slender stalk. Such T-shaped cells are characteristic of the spinal ganglia. The fibers which grow toward the medullary tube constitute the dorsal roots of the spinal nerves. They enter its outer part and then bifurcate, sending one branch toward the brain and the other down the cord. These longitudinal fibers form distinct *oval bundles* just within the cord, one on either side (Fig. 110, E). Since these bundles receive accessions of fibers from every spinal ganglion, they enlarge as they approach the brain. The fibers of the oval bundle branch freely at their terminations, and along their course they give off *collateral branches*, which enter the deep substance of the cord. The peripheral fibers from the spinal ganglia grow outward through the mesenchyma, and terminate in sense organs or sensory endings, which will be described presently. The fibers of the spinal ganglia are essentially sensory or *afferent*, conveying impulses from the periphery toward the cord, and up the cord toward the higher nervous centers.

Peripherally the ventral root joins the bundle of fibers growing outward from the spinal ganglion, and the two together form a spinal nerve. Every spinal nerve consequently has a dorsal (sensory) root, and a ventral (motor) root. The fibers from the two roots travel in the same connective tissue sheath, but otherwise they remain entirely distinct. The peripheral fibers from the cells in the ganglia are really dendrites, since they convey impulses toward the cell body. Histologically, however, they are in no way different from the axones.

The fundamental facts which have just been reviewed eluded anatomists for centuries. The nerves, extending from the brain and cord to all the important organs, were regarded as tubes, conveying a vital fluid necessary for organic activity; when this supply was cut off, the organs ceased to perform their functions. Thus if nerves to the skin were destroyed, the skin became insensible; or if those to muscles were cut, the muscles could not contract. The possible existence of sensory and motor nerves with different functions was debated and generally rejected, until Charles Bell proved conclusively that "nerves entirely different in function extend through the frame; those of sensation; those of voluntary motion; . . . these nerves are sometimes separate, sometimes bound together; but they do not, in any case, interfere with or partake of each other's influence." This brilliant discovery was verified by physiological experiments to determine "whether the phenomena exhibited on injuring the separate roots of the spinal nerves corresponded with what was suggested by their anatomy." Bell found that such was the fact. (An Exposition of the Natural System of the Nerves of the Human Body, with a republication of papers delivered to the Royal Society, London, 1824.)

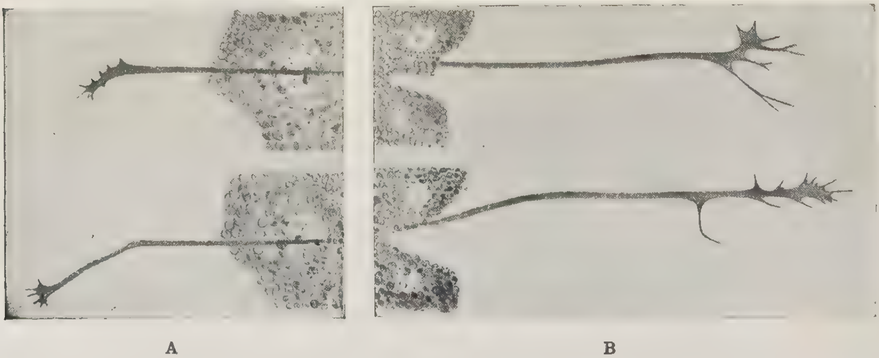


Fig. 114.—The Growth of Nerves in Tissue Cultures. (Harrison.)
A, Two views of the same nerve fiber taken twenty-five minutes apart, during which time the fiber has grown 20μ; **B**, Two views of another fiber, at lower magnification, taken fifty minutes apart.

It was at first supposed that the nerves grew out from the cord and brain and acquired connections with their end-organs; but the apparent difficulty which the fibers would have in reaching them, and the fact that the connections must be established before the nervous system can be functional, have led to the idea that the nervous and muscular systems are connected at all stages of their development. In tadpoles, however, Harrison has shown that such connection is not an indispensable requisite for the normal development of the muscles, since they are formed in a normal manner after the medullary tube and neural crest have been removed from the entire posterior portion of the body. He finds further that nerves grow out into the adjacent tissues from transplanted portions of the medullary tube. Therefore he concludes that the nerves normally grow out to their end-organs and unite with them, but that this takes place very early in development, when the paths are quite direct. Subsequent growth of the body causes the muscles to shift about and become widely separated from the central nervous system, so that the nerves become greatly elongated and follow irregular courses (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1904, vol. 3, pp. 197–220; 1906, vol. 5, pp. 121–131).

The participation of the mesoderm in the formation of nerve fibers has repeatedly been asserted, and some authorities now consider that the long fibers passing from the spinal cord to distant muscles are formed from chains of cells, either mesodermal or ectodermal. Certain of Harrison's experiments were designed to show whether the nerve fibers are formed by peripheral cells or grow out from the central nervous system. In tissue cultures, made by placing fragments of the medullary tube of tadpoles in lymph, at a stage when the tube consists entirely of round cells, he observed the actual growth of the fibers. Examined after a day or two of cultivation, in a considerable number of cases, they were seen extending out into the lymph clot (Fig. 114). Harrison concludes that the nerve fibers begin as an outflow of hyaline protoplasm from the nerve cells. The protoplasm is actively amœboid, and, as a result of this activity, it extends farther and farther from its cells of origin, retaining its pseudopodia at its distal end. Similarly enlarged "cones of growth," provided with spiny processes, have been observed in preserved tissue by Cajal; and His, from embryological studies, had long maintained that the nerve fibers grow out from neuroblasts in the central nervous system and spinal ganglia. Harrison concludes that his experiments "place the outgrowth theory of His upon the firmest possible basis" (Anat. Rec., 1908, vol. 2, pp. 385–410).

Dorsal and Ventral Rami. Every spinal nerve, near the junction of its ganglionic and motor roots, divides into a dorsal and a ventral branch or *ramus* (Fig. 110, E). Each ramus receives both sensory and motor fibers, and is therefore a mixed nerve. The dorsal rami are distributed to the muscles and skin of the back; their terminal cutaneous branches enter the skin along a line extending from the neck down the trunk of the body, as may readily be shown in dissections of the adult. In embryos of 10–12 mm. these rami are present as short branches, which can be followed to the muscular condensations derived from the myotomes, but apparently at that stage they do not enter the skin. The ventral rami are longer. Most of them anastomose with the ventral rami of adjacent nerves, thus giving rise to the cervical, brachial and lumbo-sacral plexuses. They are distributed to the muscles and skin of the ventral body wall.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE SPINAL SYMPATHETIC SYSTEM

In mammalian embryos measuring 10–12 mm., each of the thoracic spinal nerves exhibits a branch directed toward the aorta, and ending in a rounded mass of ganglion cells. This is the *sympathetic* or *visceral ramus*, terminating in a sympathetic ganglion (Fig. 110, E). Formerly it was generally believed that all the nerve cells in the sympathetic ganglia migrated outward from those in the spinal ganglia, but in the light of recent experiments on embryos Kuntz (Journ. Comp. Neurol., 1926, vol, 40, pp. 389–408) derives some of them from the spinal cord direct, by way of the ventral roots. Thus both motor and sensory elements are included. Although the cells of the sympathetic ganglia were formerly considered to be mesodermal (even after it had been shown that those of the spinal ganglia were ectodermal), it is now generally admitted that the entire sympathetic system is ectodermal. However, in the cervical region the spinal nerves at first do not have sympathetic rami, and the sympathetic ganglia consequently appear isolated in the mesenchyma. Their cells may have migrated in detached groups, or have come by way of the vagus nerve, which lies near at hand. Instead of eight ganglia on either side of the neck, corresponding in number with the spinal nerves, there are but three, known as the superior, middle and inferior cervical ganglia, respectively, and of these the middle ganglion may be merged with the superior. They are elongated structures, especially the superior ganglion, and presumably represent a fusion of segmental ganglia.

From each sympathetic ganglion fibres grow to join neighboring ganglia, above and below, thus connecting all ganglia of one side into the ganglionated trunk of the sympathetic nerve, or sympathetic chain. A second set of fibres grows from the ganglia back to the spinal nerves, along which they pass to be distributed peripherally to trunk and limbs, for the innervation of blood vessels, skin glands and perhaps for the sympathetic innervation of skeletal muscles (see p. 126). Thus each sympathetic ganglion is connected with its spinal nerve by two *rami communicantes*, known as the white and gray rami respectively, the white ramus consisting chiefly of those fibres passing outward from the cord. A third group of

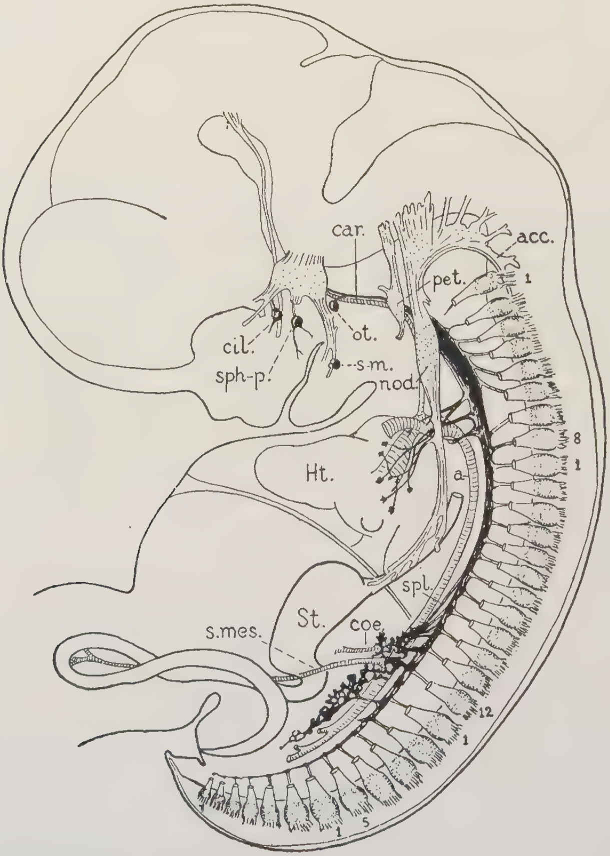


FIG. 115.—THE SYMPATHETIC SYSTEM IN A 16-MM. HUMAN EMBRYO. (After Streeter.)
The ganglionated trunk is heavily shaded. The first and last cervical, thoracic, lumbar, sacral and coccygeal spinal ganglia are numbered. **a,** Aorta; **acc,** accessory nerve; **car,** carotid artery; **cil,** ciliary ganglion; **coe,** cœliac artery; **Ht,** heart; **nod,** nodose ganglion; **ot,** otic ganglion; **pet,** petrosal ganglion- **s-m,** submaxillary ganglion; **s. mes.,** superior mesenteric artery; **sph-p.,** sphenopalatine ganglion; **spl;** splanchnic nerve; **st.,** stomach.

fibres grows out from each ganglion ventrally to supply blood vessels and viscera.

It is characteristic of these branches that they unite with one another freely, forming net-like sympathetic plexuses, within which there are many scattered nerve cells. When the nerve cells in these ganglionated plexuses are particularly abundant, the structure is called a ganglion, though generally retaining a plexiform character.

The principal branches of the cervical sympathetic trunk are the superior, middle, and inferior cardiac nerves, which grow out from the corresponding cervical ganglia. They extend to the heart (Fig. 115) and form the cardiac plexus, associated with which is the cardiac ganglion, situated under the arch of the aorta. These nerves, which are joined by branches from the vagus, innervate the heart. The cervical sympathetic trunks also send out nerves which form plexuses around the aorta and the pulmonary, subclavian and carotid arteries together with their branches. These innervate the smooth muscles in the walls of the vessels. Some of the fibers accompany the thyroid arteries into the thyroid gland and others are distributed to the pharynx and larynx.

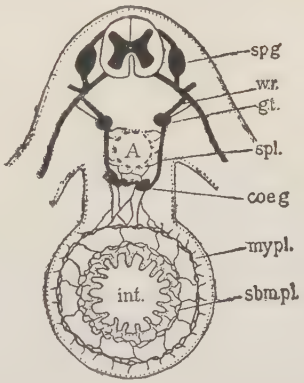


FIG. 116.

Diagram of the sympathetic system in its relation to the intestine, **int.**; **A.**, aorta; **sp. g.**, spinal ganglion; **w. r.**, white ramus; **g. t.**, ganglion of the sympathetic trunk; **spl.**, splanchnic nerve; **coe. g.**, cœliac ganglion; **my. pl.** myenteric plexus; **sbm. pl.**, submucous plexus.

The upper thoracic ganglia supply nerves to the aortic plexus and pulmonary plexus, and the latter enters the lungs. Large bundles of fibers proceeding from the "fifth sixth to the ninth or tenth" thoracic ganglia of the sympathetic trunk, unite to form the *greater splanchnic nerves*, one on either side of the body, and branches from the remaining thoracic ganglia form the *lesser splanchnic nerves*. These splanchnic nerves pass into the abdominal cavity and join one another, forming a large ganglionated plexus on the sides and front of the aorta (Fig. 115). The sympathetic trunks in the abdomen also send branches to join this plexus. The great plexiform ganglion found around the cœliac artery, as it leaves the aorta, is called the cœliac ganglion (or plexus). A similar plexus surrounds the superior mesenteric artery. From these plexuses, as shown in the diagram (Fig. 116), sympathetic nerves extend through the mesentery, and they form a microscopic ganglionated plexus surrounding the intestinal tube, lodged between the longitudinal and circular layers of smooth muscle. This is the myenteric plexus (*plexus myentericus*). It innervates the muscle and sends branches into the tissue beneath the mucous membrane, where they form another plexus (the *plexus submucosus*). In this way the sympathetic system supplies the intestine.

It sends its fibers into other organs, following the arteries, thus forming the hepatic, splenic, suprarenal and renal plexuses. In the pelvis the sympathetic rami form the hypogastric plexus, with branches distributed to the rectum, bladder and urogenital organs, and finally it accompanies the arteries down the legs, innervating the muscles in the walls of the vessels. It is also characteristic of this system that fibres may pass through one or several ganglia without apparent communication with the nerve cells there. Fibres arising in cervical ganglia may be distributed through splanchnic nerves, or those from the coeliac ganglion to the head region. Physiologists have learned that every organ has probably a double sympathetic innervation, one from the abdominal or thoracic region and one from the cranial or sacral region, and that the action of these two sets of nerves is always antagonistic.

In 1664, Willis published a remarkably clear account of the nerve "commonly called intercostal because it rests against the roots of the ribs." This nerve, which is the ganglionated trunk of the sympathetic system, had generally been supposed to descend from the cerebral nerves. Willis described its connections with these nerves and, through each intercostal space, with the spinal cord. He noted the cardiac branches, and stated that the great mesenteric plexus, placed in the midst of the others, like a sun, sent its nerve fibers like rays in all directions (hence it came to be called the "solar plexus"). Willis found that this nerve sent branches to all the abdominal organs below the stomach. He considered that its function was to place the heart and viscera in connection with the brain so that they should act in harmony (Anatome cerebri, Amstelodami, 1664). Because of their frequent communications with other nerves, Winslow (1732) called the ganglionated trunks the *Nervi sympathetici maximi.*

Bichat (Anatomie Générale, 1802, translated by Hayward 1822) subdivided the nervous system into two parts "essentially distinct from each other, the one having the brain and its dependencies for its principal center, and the other having the ganglions." The latter is "almost everywhere distributed to the organs of digestion, circulation, respiration, and secretion." "Each ganglion is a distinct center, independent of the others in its action, furnishing or receiving particular nerves as the brain furnishes or receives its own . . . The continuous thread that is observed from the neck to the pelvis is nothing but a series of communications . . . these communications are often interrupted, without any inconvenience in the organs to which the great sympathetic goes." That the sympathetic system acts independently of the central nervous system, at least to a great extent, is its most prominent physiological characteristic.

Thus the sympathetic system merits to some extent the terms organic, visceral, or vegetative system, which have been applied to it. Burdach (1819) stated that it might be called the "automatic system," and the term "autonomic system" has more recently been used, but Burdach preferred *sympathetic system,* which has been internationally adopted by anatomists.

STRUCTURE OF NERVOUS TISSUE

From what has been said it follows that nerve cells may be found not only in the central nervous system but also in the ganglia, spinal and sympathetic, and in many of the organs, while their processes or nerve fibers extend throughout the whole body. Owing to the extent of the ramifying processes characteristic of nerve cells, it is rare that an entire cell, even a small one, is included within a single section. A motor cell, such as sends its fibers from the cord to distant muscles, has never been seen as a complete, isolated structure. From what is known of its several parts, however, a diagram of such a cell may be put together, as shown in Fig. 117. At the top of the figure is the nucleated cell body, which in different nerve cells varies in diameter from 4–150μ. Frequently this nucleated portion is referred to as the nerve cell in distinction from the processes which grow out from it. The processes include the relatively short and irregularly ramifying *dendrites*, which convey impulses toward the cell body, and a single fiber, the *neuraxon*, chemically and physically different from the others, which conveys impulses away from the cell body. If the various processes radiate from the cell body in several directions, as in Fig. 117, the cell is described as *multipolar;* if the neuraxon is at one end of the cell and a single dendrite at the other, the cell is *bipolar* (Fig. 113); sometimes the nerve cell has only one process and is *unipolar*, as in the mature cells of the spinal ganglion which have a T-shaped process, and in other cells in which dendrites have not developed. The dendrites have the granular structure of the protoplasm from which they grow out, and were therefore originally named "protoplasmic processes." The neuraxon, although receiving delicate fibrils from the protoplasm, as shown by special methods, seems quite distinct from the cell body. At its origin it often appears as a clear slender cone, free from granules, implanted directly upon the cell body, or upon the root of one of the larger dendrites. It tapers as it passes outward, and its fibrils come close together so that they appear to unite. Beyond the apex of the cone, which is a place where the neuraxon is easily broken, the fiber enlarges and its constituent neurofibrils spread apart so that they are more readily distinguishable. They are imbedded in a fluid interfibrillar substance. The neuraxon

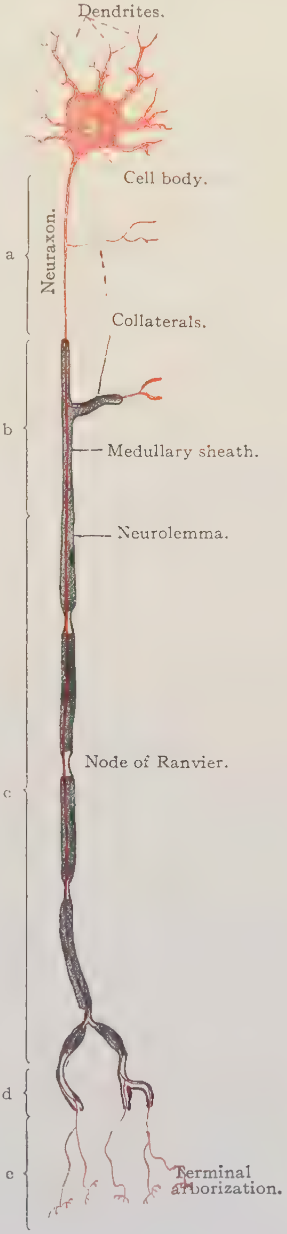


Fig. 117.—Diagram of a Nerve Cell.

may send out *collateral branches*, which are usually at right angles with the main fiber.

As the neuraxon passes out from a motor cell it is at first free from any surrounding sheath (Fig. 117, a). In the outer layer of the spinal cord it becomes coated with a layer of the refractive fatty substance known as *myelin*. This is formed in the cord or *medulla spinalis*, and fibers which have this sheath are said to be *medullated fibers* (Fig. 117, b). On leaving the cord, the neuraxon is still surrounded by the myelin sheath, but the latter is invested by a membrane called the *neurolemma* or sheath of Schwann (Fig. 117, c). At quite regular intervals along the course of the fiber, the myelin sheath is constricted or interrupted, forming the *nodes of Ranvier*. These are 0.08–1.00 mm. apart, being closer together in growing fibers, and in the distal part of adult fibers. Midway between two nodes there is a nucleus, which may be found at any point in the circumference of the fiber, just within the neurolemma; it occupies a depression in the myelin. Toward its distal end the fiber usually branches, and the branches are given off at the nodes. The myelin then becomes thin, so that the fiber is surrounded merely by neurolemma (Fig. 117, d), and finally this ends. The naked axis cylinder then breaks up in its terminal arborization, forming the motor organs attached to striated muscle fibers. In comparison with the size of its cell body, the neuraxon shown in the diagram is too short; in extreme cases, as in the neuraxons extending from the spinal cord to muscles in the foot, it may be actually more than a meter long, or several thousand times the diameter of the cell body from which it comes.

The medullated nerve fibers were the first parts of the nerve to be studied microscopically, and were referred to as "cylinders;" the central fiber was called the *axis cylinder*. Remak (Obs. anat. et micr. de syst. nerv. structura, Berlin, 1838) was the first to describe non-medullated nerves, which are still known as "Remak's fibers," but their nervous nature was not readily admitted. Moreover, Remak recognized that nerve fibers proceed from cells. Deiters (Untersuchungen über Gehirn und Rückenmark, Braunschweig, 1865) supplemented these observations by showing that all "ganglion cells" (referring to nerve cells within the spinal cord and brain) are centers for *two systems of true nerve fibers*, (1) the generally broader and always single and undivided *axis cylinder process;* and (2) the *protoplasmic processes* with their extensive system of minute branches. He discussed whether the nerve cells anastomose with one another, and concluded that all such anastomoses which had been reported were due to deceptive appearances. Thus the nerve cells were believed to communicate by contact and not by continuity.

The confused mass of interwoven fibers which sections of nervous tissue ordinarily present, is, therefore, not a general syncytium from which sensory and motor fibers run out, but an orderly arrangement of branching cells. Striking proof of this was afforded in Golgi's description of the olfactory bulb (1875). In the plate which accompanied his publication, the cells in the different layers, and their various processes, were drawn in black with absolute assurance; similar figures of "Golgi preparations" are now seen in all treatises on the anatomy of the nervous system (Fig. 118). Golgi found that if fresh tissue is placed in a solution of potassium bichromate and osmic acid, and is later transferred to a solution of silver nitrate, a heavy black deposit occurs in certain nerve cells, extending throughout their minutest ramifications, whereas adjacent cells are wholly unaffected. The process must be carried out with great care, and even then it is capricious; but this method has afforded fundamental information in regard to the forms of individual nerve cells.

In order to emphasize that the nervous system is built up of separate cells, the term *neuron* has been widely used to designate a complete nerve cell, with all its branches. Fig. 117, therefore, represents a neuron, together with certain sheath cells. Owing to the great extent of neurons, it is usual to study their different component parts separately; the cell-body, the main cell process or nerve fiber, and the nerve endings will therefore be described in turn.

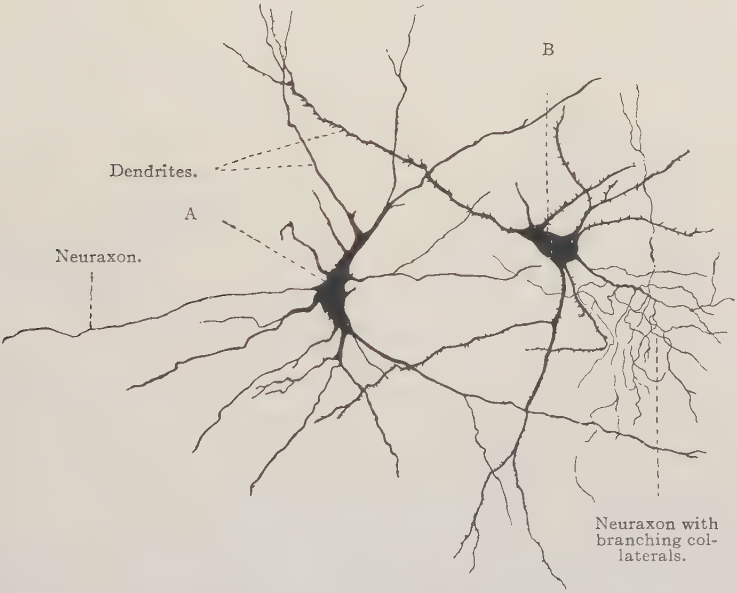


Fig. 118.—Two Nerve Cells from the Central Nervous System. Golgi Preparations. × 200. **A,** Cell of Deiter's type, having a neuraxon ending at a considerable distance from the cell body; **B,** cell of Golgi's type having a neuraxon with many branches ending near the cell body.

Nerve Cells

Nerve cells may be found in the central nervous system (brain and spinal cord), in ganglia, or in some organs irregularly scattered along the sympathetic nerves. The motor cells of the spinal cord are classical objects of study, and should perhaps be described first. They occur in the ventral columns (horns) of the cord (see Fig. 112) and are large enough to be readily visible with low power. Characteristically multipolar, nerve cells are distinguished also by their large round or oval nuclei and prominent nucleoli (Figs. 119 and 120). Their protoplasm appears densely granular in ordinary preparations, but when specially treated it is seen to contain an abundance of neurofibrils; if preserved in alcohol and stained with methylene blue, the groups of granules known as Nissl's bodies may be demonstrated. These are abundant in vigorous cells but become reduced or disappear in various conditions of exhaustion. Granules of brownish pigment are sometimes conspicuous, especially near the nucleus. The trophospongium and reticular apparatus, already described (p. 9), can be demonstrated in nerve cells by special methods. All of these features may be observed in the smaller nerve cells, but they are most evident in the large motor cells. The dendrites are broad, branching, and tapering processes, in the bases of which the Nissl's bodies may be present. They extend for long distances, but usually soon pass out of the plane of any section. The neuraxon begins as a slender fiber at the tip of a clear "implantation cone," of rather distinctive shape, and without pigment granules or Nissl's bodies.

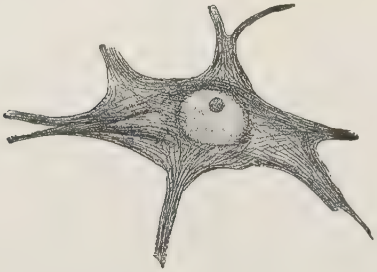


Fig. 119.—Nerve Cell of the Spinal Cord of a Dog; Neuro-fibrillae. × 600.

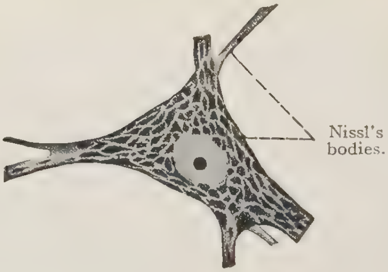


Fig. 120.—Nerve Cell of the Spinal Cord of a Child. × 430.

The cells appear large in cross sections of the spinal cord, but their actual size is much greater. L'hermitte and Kraus (Anat. Record, 1925, vol. 31, pp. 123–129) point out that they are elongated lengthwise of the cord, so that they are usually cut in their smallest diameter. The vertical extent of these cells explains also why, in sections, the axone is so seldom seen leaving the cell, as it may arise from any part of its surface, even from the base of a large dendrite.

Another type of nerve cell is found in the ganglia, spinal or sympathetic. Although a ganglion is characterized by the accumulation of the bodies of nerve cells, it is traversed by many fibers, as seen in the section of a spinal ganglion (Fig. 121). Under higher magnification the cell bodies appear as in Fig. 122. The nuclei are large vesicular structures, round or oval in outline, containing a characteristic prominent nucleolus. They are surrounded by abundant, darkly staining, finely granular protoplasm, which exhibits its fibrillar structure only with special methods. Frequently the protoplasm contains pigment granules. The "reticular apparatus" is said to be present always, and slender intracellular canals (trophospongium) have been described. Fine meshed reticular networks have been found covering the exterior of the nerve cells, and they have

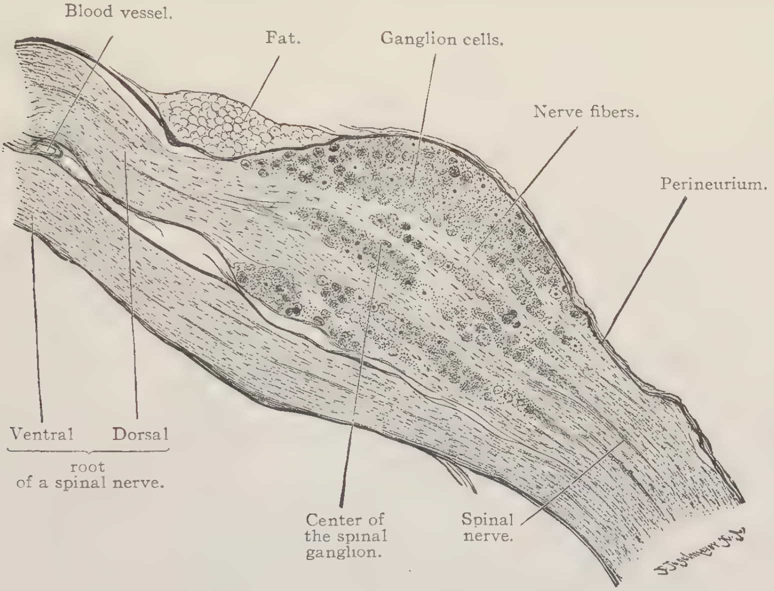


Fig. 121.—Longitudinal Section through a Spinal Ganglion of a Cat. × 18.

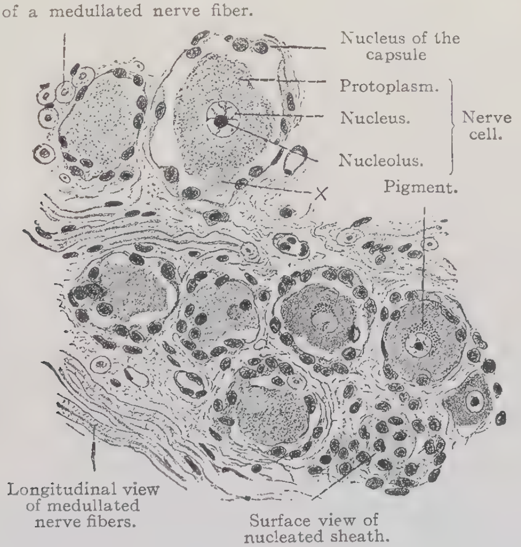

Cross section of a medullated nerve fiber.
Nucleus of the capsule
Protoplasm.
Nucleus.
Nucleolus.
Nerve cell.
X
Pigment.
Longitudinal view of medullated nerve fibers.
Surface view of nucleated sheath.

Fig. 122.—From a Cross Section of a Human Semilunar Ganglion. × 240. At x the beginning of a protoplasmic process has been included in the section; elsewhere the processes cannot be seen.

been ascribed both to the terminal ramification of nerve fibers and to branches of the supporting tissue. A ganglion cell is often surrounded by flat or stellate cells arranged in concentric layers so as to form a sheath.

Within the sheath there is a homogeneous membrane or *capsule*, on the inner side of which are cells arranged in a single layer, corresponding to the cells within the neurolemma of peripheral nerves. Connective tissue, containing small blood vessels, passes between the ensheathed cells of the ganglion.

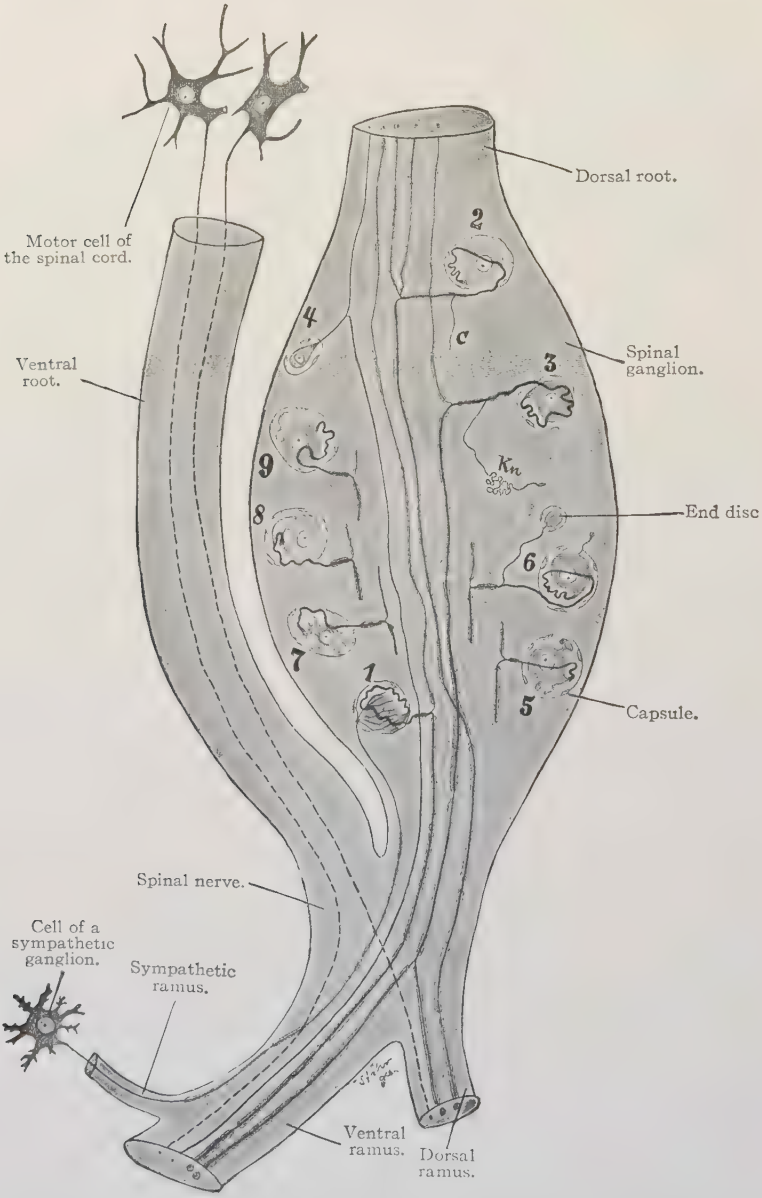


FIG. 123.—DIAGRAM OF THE NERVOUS ELEMENTS IN A HUMAN SPINAL GANGLION.

In the embryo the cells of the spinal ganglia are bipolar, but generally they become unipolar, with T-shaped processes, as already described.

In the ganglia of the acoustic nerve, however, the bipolar form is said to be retained, and these cells are not surrounded by capsule or "mantle" cells. In other ganglia of the cerebral nerves, and in spinal ganglia, the cells are arranged as shown in the diagram, Fig. 123. Their branches can be studied only in special preparations, made usually by Ehrlich's methylene blue method, or Cajal's silver nitrate method. The most characteristic cells (Fig. 123, 3) have large round bodies and a single spirally coiled process, which arises from a conical projection of the protoplasm. The process often winds about the cell body. Soon after passing through the capsule it acquires a sheath of myelin, and is covered with neurolemma. It may give off collaterals before it divides into its two main branches, which correspond with dendrite and neuraxon respectively. Sometimes the process divides into three branches (Fig. 123, 2); the branching takes place at a node of Ranvier. Certain of the large cells, as found constantly in the human jugular ganglion, lack the coiled windings, so that the process passes directly through the capsule and divides at once into its two branches.

Frequently the ganglion cells are provided with short processes which end in rounded enlargements, either within the capsule (Fig. 123, 5) or outside of it (Fig. 123, 6). Collateral branches may end in this way. These "end discs" were first observed by Huber in frogs (Anat. Anz. 1896, vol. 12, pp. 417–425). They are found not only in spinal ganglia but also in the central nervous system and in sympathetic ganglia; and after the distal part of a nerve has been cut away, the axis cylinders of the proximal part send out many such buds, which grow into the myelin toward the place of injury. In all cases they are regarded as abortive branches. They are said to occur normally only in adults, and especially in old age, being very numerous in the nodose ganglion of the vagus nerve.

Another feature which, in man, has been found almost exclusively in the nodose ganglion of adults, is the occurrence of "fenestrated cells." These are ganglion cells with peripheral vacuoles, which may break down so that the cell appears multipolar (Fig. 123, 7). Sometimes they are so arranged that the cell process seems to grow out by several roots (Fig. 123, 8). Although the fenestrated cells increase in number with advancing age, they are not considered pathological, since they occur in young dogs and other animals.

Less conspicuous than the large cells with medullated fibers, but more numerous, are small pyriform cells with non-medullated fibers (Fig. 123, 4). Ranson, from his own and previous observations, concludes that in the cat and rat, in which the cells have been carefully counted, about two-thirds of the spinal ganglion cells may be classified as small, and are associated with non-medullated fibers (Amer. Journ. of Anat., 1911, vol. 12, pp. 67–87).

The spinal ganglion cells are sometimes surrounded by fine networks of non-medullated fibers, which are probably the terminal branches of medullated fibers derived from cells in the sympathetic ganglia (Fig. 123, 1). Branches of the sympathetic fibers are also distributed to the blood vessels in the ganglion. Whether any fibers pass through the spinal ganglion without connecting with its nerve cells is still uncertain; they have not been demonstrated in mammals.

Sympathetic Ganglia. The sympathetic ganglia consist of multipolar cells which are smaller than those of spinal ganglia (Fig. 124). Their round or oval nuclei, often eccentric, have prominent nucleoli and a loose chromatin network, as in other nerve cells; some of them contain two nuclei. The protoplasm is often pigmented. Around the cell bodies, nuclei of the sheath cells may be abundant. Three types of sympathetic ganglion cells are shown in Fig. 125. The motor cells, terminating in contact with smooth muscle fibers, are by far the most abundant (Fig. 125, 1). Their neuraxons are non-medullated fibers, which are provided with very slender collaterals. The cell body is stellate and its branching dendrites appear spiny. The second type (Fig. 125, 2) is possibly sensory, but the terminations of its fibers are not known. Its dendrites are long and slender and may extend from one ganglion to another. Some of them are accompanied by the neuraxon, which may acquire a medullary sheath, often at a considerable distance from the cell body. Cells of the third type (Fig. 125, 3) resemble those of the second type. They have long branching dendrites which pass between the adjacent cells to the periphery of the ganglion, where they form a plexus. Their non-medullated neuraxons pass out of the ganglion, but their terminations are unknown. Small stellate cells, one of which is shown in the figure, presumably belong with the supporting tissue.

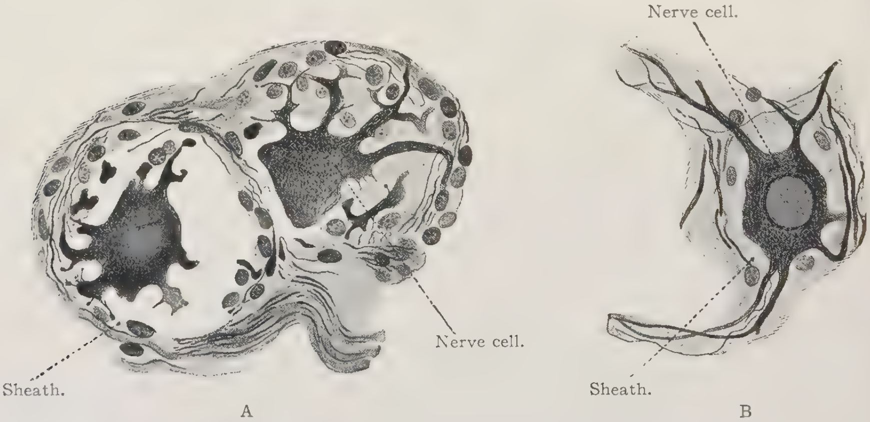


FIG. 124.—CELLS OF THE HUMAN SYMPATHETIC GANGLIA. (Prepared by L. R. Müller.) × 465 **A,** From the ciliary ganglion; **B,** from the superior cervical ganglion.

Fibers from the spinal nerves may pass through the sympathetic ganglia, or terminate within them. Thus spinal motor fibers, after losing their myelin sheaths, form pericellular plexuses about the sympathetic motor cells, and their collaterals end in the same way. They are apparently indistinguishable from the sympathetic fibers which pass from one ganglion to another and terminate in pericellular networks. Medullated sensory fibers, some of which arise from lamellar corpuscles, extend through the sympathetic nerves to enter the spinal ganglia.

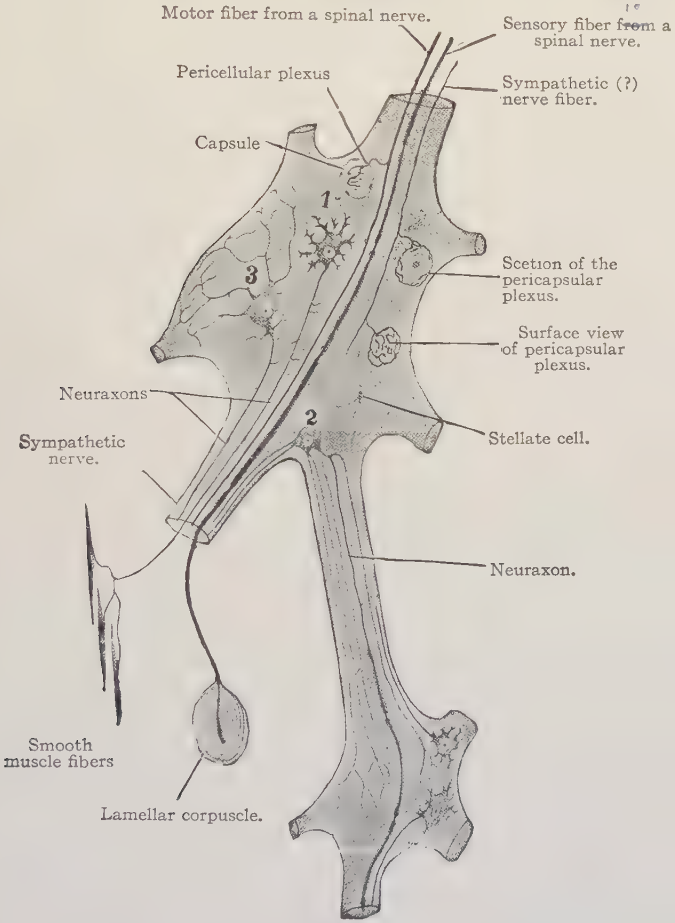

Motor fiber from a spinal nerve.
Sensory fiber from a spinal nerve.
Pericellular plexus
Sympathetic (?) nerve fiber.
Capsule
1
3
Scetion of the pericapsular plexus.
Surface view of pericapsular plexus.
Neuraxons
2
Stellate cell.
Sympathetic nerve.
Neuraxon.
Smooth muscle fibers
Lamellar corpuscle.

Fig. 125.—Diagram of the Elements of Two Sympathetic Ganglia.

Nerve Fibers

Nerve fibers include the axones of motor cells, and the axones and the peripheral processes of sensory cells, which latter, though conveying impulses toward the cell body, are similar to axones histologically. In the diagram of a neuron (p. 141) the axone is shown encased in its myelin sheath for the greater part of its course. This is not essential, however, and many nerve fibers remain "non-medullated." Isolated fibers, running alone through the connective tissue near their destination, would be very difficult to detect histologically without special stains. In ordinary preparations they are recognized only as they occur in nerves.

Nerves are bundles of nerve fibers passing between the central nervous system and the various parts of the body; they are so widely distributed that they may be found in sections of most of the organs and tissues. When examined fresh, in reflected light, nerves are seen to be of two sorts, formerly known as white and gray nerves, respectively. Similarly, sections of the brain and spinal cord are formed of white substance and gray substance. The obvious distinction in color is due to the presence or absence of microscopic sheaths of myelin around the individual fibers. Nerves which contain a large proportion of myelinated or medullated fibers are white; and those which have few are gray. All nerve fibers when first formed are non-medullated, and most of the sympathetic nerves remain in this condition.

Non-medullated nerves can readily be found between the circular and longitudinal layers of smooth muscle in any part of the digestive tube. They are circumscribed bundles of fine fibers running through the coarser connective tissue (Fig. 92). Many of them contain nerve cells, unmistakably characterized by large, round or oval, vesicular nuclei, having a prominent nucleolus. Around the nucleus is dense protoplasm, starting out in branching processes, all but the roots of which are cut away in sectioning. Other cells are found, having relatively small nuclei and very indefinite or wholly imperceptible protoplasmic bodies. These are supporting cells; they produce a syncytial framework in which the nerve cells and their very delicate ramifications are imbedded. The framework tends to form septa, subdividing the nerve into smaller bundles. When cut directly across a bundle of non-medullated nerve fibers can be recognized as small discrete dots, with rather deep protoplasmic stain, which remain distinct with changing focus, and if slightly slanting will shift somewhat in position. Seen in horizontal position they are fine parallel lines. Obliquely cut, they are hard to recognize, but the arrangement of the connective tissue forming compartments within a bundle is sufficient for identification.

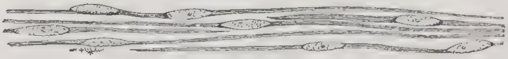


Fig. 126.—Non-medullated Nerve Fibers. × 400. (After Schäfer.)

Some non-medullated fibers, but by no means all, are closely invested by sheath cells. According to Schäfer, the nuclei of these cells appear to be interpolated in the substance of the fiber, and it is impossible to demonstrate a distinct sheath (Fig. 126). Similarly Bardeen has stated that it is "mainly a matter of judgment to decide whether the fibrils are surrounded by or imbedded within the sheath cells." They correspond with the neurolemma cells of medullated nerves.

Medullated Nerves. The larger sympathetic nerves contain a considerable number of medullated fibers, and the splanchnic nerves are described as white. In trunks of the spinal nerves, however, the medullated fibers attain their maximum development. Examined with low magnification, such a nerve is seen to consist of round cords imbedded in loose connective tissue (Fig. 127). This loose tissue, which surrounds the entire nerve and its several cords, is the *epineurium;* its connective tissue bundles are chiefly longitudinal, and are associated with abundant elastic tissue and frequent fat cells; it contains the blood vessels which supply the nerve. Each cord is surrounded by a dense lamellar layer of connective tissue, which contains flattened cells in contact with one another so that they form more or less continuous membranes. This layer is the *perineurium.* It is continuous with the outer membranes covering the cord, and contains cleft-like spaces which are said to communicate with the subdural and subarachnoid spaces, but which do not connect with lymphatic vessels in the epineurium. Prolongations of the perineurium extend as septa into the larger nerve bundles and constitute the *endoneurium*, which may penetrate between the individual nerve fibers, forming the so-called "sheaths of Henle." Their nuclei are always outside the neurolemma.

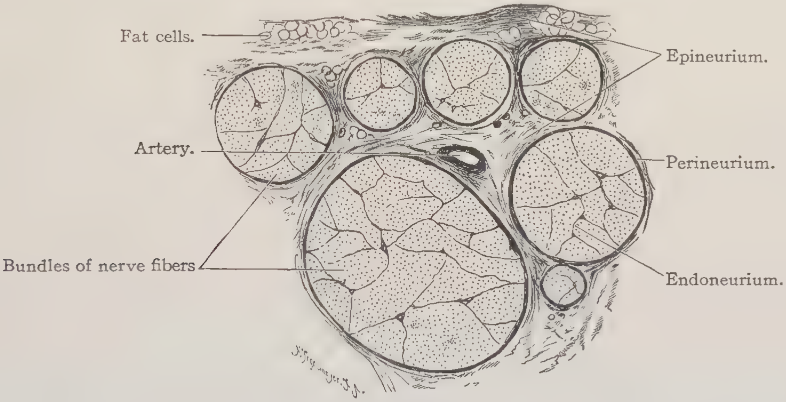


Fig. 127.—Medullated Nerve. Part of a Cross Section of the Human Median Nerve. × 20.

Unlike the nerve fibers of the white matter of the spinal cord, all of which are straight and parallel, the fibers of most nerves take an irregular, wavy course, so that occasionally even in transverse sections some of the nerve fibers are cut lengthwise, as in Fig. 128. The individual fibers are thus longer than the nerve as a whole, and may escape injury by stretching.

The individual nerve fibers vary in diameter, and the larger ones are probably those which have a longer course. The sheath of myelin which surrounds the fiber varies greatly in thickness. In ordinary preparations it forms light zones around the dark fibers, suggesting the relation between protoplasm and nucleus; but the rod-like nature of the central fibers is evident on changing the focus. The myelin is surrounded by the mem-

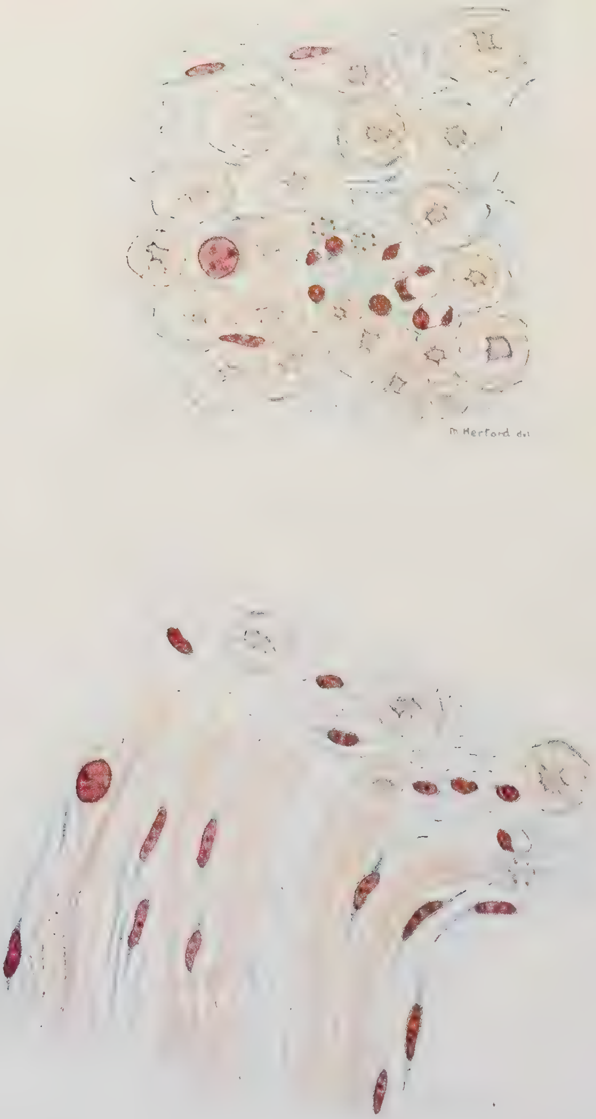


Fig. 128.—From a Cross Section of the Human Median Nerve; Mallory's Connective Tissue Stain. The endoneurium is blue, neurokeratin red, nerve fibers purple. Groups of non-medullated nerve fibers may be seen.

branous neurolemma, within which the single internodal nucleus is occasionally included in a given section. Portions of isolated fibers, viewed longitudinally, are shown in Fig. 129.

Myelin is a mixture of complex fats and lipoid substances, some of which are combined with sugar. Like fat, it is dissolved by ether and blackens with osmic acid. In preserved specimens the emulsion breaks down, giving rise to various forms of shrinkage. A network which appears after fibers have been treated with alcohol and ether is said to be composed of *neurokeratin*, a substance insoluble in these reagents, which does not blacken with osmic acid. The pattern of the neurokeratin varies widely. It may be radially or concentrically disposed, the size of its mesh large or small (Fig. 130); sometimes it seems to be absent, though this may be the result of poor preservation. In preparations blackened with osmic acid, the myelin is often traversed by oblique clefts, the *incisures* of Lantermann (Fig. 130, D). The arrangement of these characteristic clefts may be pictured by imagining a succession of stemless funnels strung along the axis cylinder, not all of which are pointed the same way. The incisures are doubtless artificial, and their number is increased by pulling the nerve fibers apart; they appear to be empty or crossed by strands of myelin, but in the preparation shown in Fig. 130, C, the neurokeratin framework is so arranged as to correspond with these intervals. In transverse sections, incisures are included in Fig. 130, E and I; the concentric, vacuolated and radial appearances of the myelin are represented in F–H.

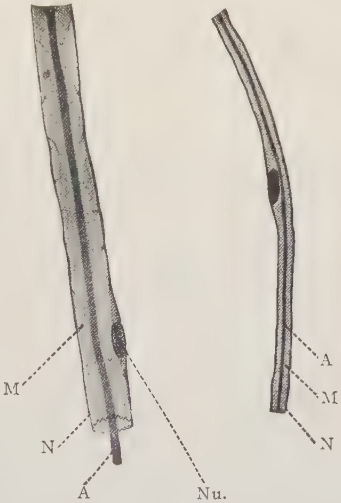


FIG. 129.—TWO NERVE FIBERS WITH SHRUNKEN AXIS CYLINDERS FROM THE SCIATIC NERVE OF A RABBIT. × 350.
A, Axis cylinder; **M**, medullary sheath (myelin); **N**, neurolemma; **Nu**, nucleus of the neurolemma.

The relation of the myelin to the neurolemma or sheath of Schwann has long been of interest. Harrison proved that the sheath cells come from the spinal cord by way of the dorsal roots, and that without their presence the peripheral myelin sheath does not develop. A simple interpretation would therefore be that sheath cells wrapped themselves around a fiber and became loaded with fat in small droplets. The neurokeratin would be the altered cell protoplasm, the nucleus would be accounted for, the outer cell wall (neurolemma) and inner cell wall ("axolemma") would come together at the end of the cell, the node. But the axolemma is hard to demonstrate, and in the spinal cord, where myelin sheaths are present, there are no, or very few, cells comparable to the neurolemma. Hardesty (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1905, vol. 4, pp. 329–354) finds such cells present in numbers in the fetal cord while the myelin is being formed, but very scarce even at birth. Bardeen (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1903, vol 2, pp. 251–257) considers that the myelin is derived from the intercellular substance between the fiber and the sheath-cell and is "due to influences exerted by the axis cylinder fibrils." That the axis cylinder plays the chief part in its production is indicated by the fact that the myelin breaks down when the fiber degenerates.

In this interpretation the neurokeratin would be an intercellular substance comparable to connective tissue fibers, and the outer layer would form the boundary of the sheath. At the nucleus the two ideas may be studied; sometimes the protoplasm around the nucleus seems continuous with the neurokeratin, sometimes the appearance is that of a separate cell clasping the inner sheath. The large vesicular nuclei of the sheath cells are very infrequently encountered because of the great distance between nodes. Most of the nuclei seen are small, dark, and rod-shaped, disposed parallel to the fibers, and belong to the connective tissue cells of the endoneurium. Mallory's connective tissue stain differentiates readily between the sheath cell and the endoneurium.

The two interpretations may also be studied at the nodes of Ranvier, shown in the diagram, Fig. 131. Various interpretations of their structure are represented. According to the first (Fig. 131, A) the myelin occurs like fat, within distinct cells wrapped around the nerve fibers; the node is the interval between successive cells. Corresponding with the neurolemma on the outside, there is an "axolemma" next the axis cylinder; neurolemma and axolemma come together at the node. If the nerve fibers are treated with silver nitrate, a black precipitate is produced at the nodes, as if an intercellular substance were present; the blackening may extend up the axis cylinder producing cross-shaped figures (Fig. 131, B).

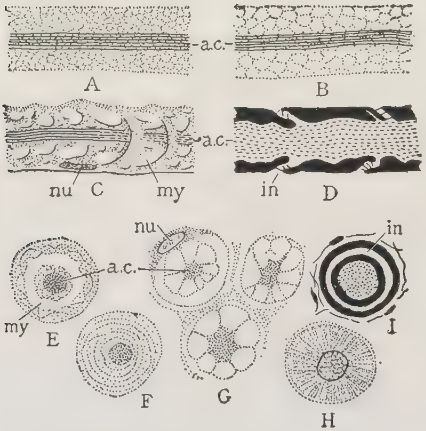


Fig. 130.—Medullated Nerve Fibers.

A-D, Longitudinal sections; **E-I**, cross sections. (**A-B**, after Gedoelst; **C**, **E**, **F**, after Hardesty; **D** and **I**, osmic acid preparations, after Prenant and Scymonowicz; **G**, alcoholic preservation, after Koelliker; **H**, picric acid preservation, after Schäfer.) **a, c.**, Axis cylinder; **in.**, incisure; **my.**, myelin; **nu.**, nucleus of the neurolemma.

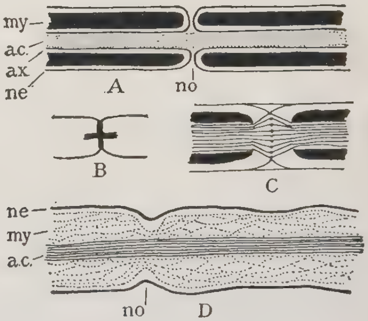


Fig. 131.—Nodes.

A, Diagram of the intracellular explanation of myelin; **B**, the cross obtained with silver nitrate; **C**, the biconical enlargement (after Gedoelst); **D**, intercellular myelin (after Hardesty); **a. c.**, axis cylinder; **ax.**, axolemma; **my.**, myelin; **ne.**, neurolemma; **no.**, node.

As the axis cylinder traverses the node, its fibrils may spread apart, forming a "biconical enlargement." The fibrils in the midst of the enlargement have been described as thickened (Fig. 131, C). The same figure shows no axolemma and suggests that the neurolemma passes across the node without interruption. This is clearly shown in D, where the myelin layer also, though constricted, is not completely divided. This favors the intercellular conception of myelin.

The production of myelin is said to begin at about the fourth month, at the central ends of the nerves. It begins at different times in different tracts and systems, and the medullary sheaths of the spinal nerves are not all formed until two or three years after birth. They continue to increase in thickness into adult life.

The axone itself is a slightly refractive protoplasmic mass, frequently showing fine longitudinal marking. With special stains neurofibrils can be brought out, continued from the cell body. Its course is usually somewhat wavy within the myelin sheath, so that it may appear excentrically placed in cross sections. Probably all peripheral nerves carry a certain number of non-medullated fibers, derived in part from the gray rami, in part from the spinal ganglia. These have been studied particularly by Ranson (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1911, vol. 12, pp. 67–88) and are shown in Fig. 128.

Nerve Endings

Sensory Endings. The outward growth of nerve fibers from cells in the ganglia of the spinal and cerebral nerves has already been described. Near their terminations these fibers branch repeatedly at the nodes, lose their myelin sheaths, and form terminal arborizations in contact with epithelial, connective tissue, or muscle cells. These are the *sensory endings*, and apart from those connected with the eye, ear, and other organs of special sense, they may be described as follows.

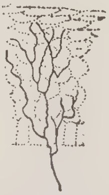


Fig. 132.—Free Nerve Ending, in Epithelium. Golgi Preparation. (After Retzius.)

Free Endings. Sensory fibers to the epidermis and to the corneal and oral epithelia penetrate the basal layer, passing between the cells as unsheathed fibers, and ramify among the cells in the outer layers (Fig. 132). The extremities of the fibers, which may be pointed or club-shaped are in contact with the epithelial cells, but do not enter them. In the process of branching the neurofibrils become distributed in smaller and smaller bundles, which often anastomose, forming plexuses; but whether the interlacing constituent fibrils unite with one another so as to form a net has been questioned. At the ends of the branches, each fibril has become separate from the others; frequently it shows varicose enlargements.

Free sensory endings occur not only in stratified epithelia, but also in muscle, tendon and connective tissue. In simple epithelia the free endings may be sensory, but in glandular epithelia they are often efferent fibers, inciting the cells to glandular activity. The ultimate branches of the nerves are so delicate that they cannot be seen in ordinary preparations; they have been demonstrated chiefly by the methylene blue method, applied to very fresh or living tissue.

In the epidermis, as a modification of the free endings, fibers are found terminating in disc-shaped networks (*tactile menisci*) at the base of modified cells (Fig. 134). These tactile cells may occasionally be seen in ordinary preparations.

The stellate "Langerhans cells" shown in Figs. 133 and 134 are usually regarded as wandering cells lodged in intercellular spaces, but Stöhr states that intergrading forms connect them with the epithelial cells; and they may act as sensory cells.

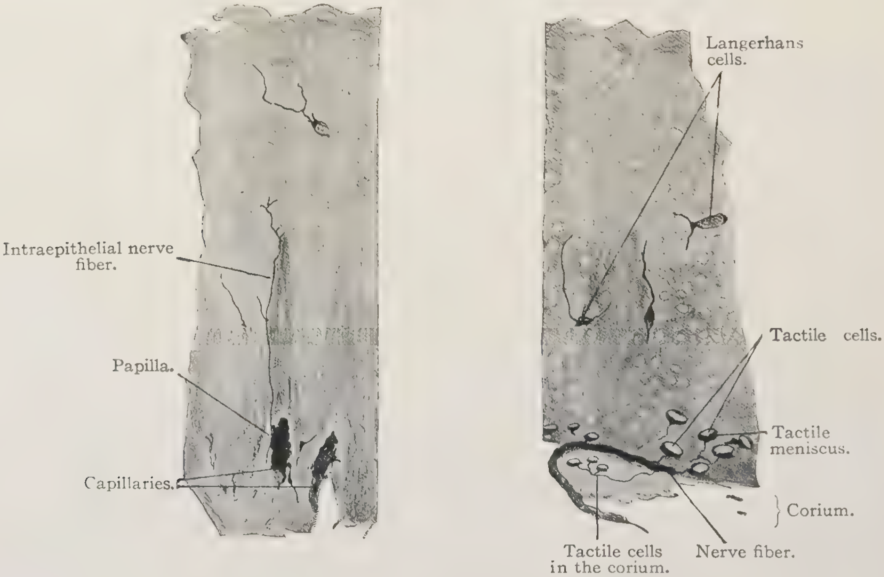


Fig. 133. Fig. 134.

Figs. 133 and 134.—From Vertical Sections through the Skin of the Great Toe from a Man of Twenty-five Years. × 360.

Muscle Spindles. As seen in ordinary preparations muscle spindles are shown in Fig. 104 (p. 126). They are slender groups of 3–20 muscle fibers, 1–4 mm. long and 0.08–0.2 mm. wide, around which nerve fibers terminate as shown in Fig. 135. The spindles are surrounded by a thick connective tissue sheath or capsule, continuous with the perimysium, and said to be divided into an inner and an outer layer by a space filled with fluid. The muscle fibers of the spindle are poorly developed. They are distinctly striated toward their tapering and very slender ends, but in their middle portions, sarcoplasm and nuclei are abundant and the striations ill defined. Three or four nerves terminate in each spindle. Their connective tissue sheaths blend with the perimysial capsule, and they branch and lose their myelin as they pass through it to the muscle cells. They may encircle the muscle fibers of the spindle, forming spirals or rings (as in the upper part of Fig. 135), or they may form a panicle of branches with enlarged club-shaped ends. Since they do not degenerate after the motor roots have been cut, they are supposed to be sensory fibers, but their function has not been established. Other sensory fibers to muscle have free endings, as shown in Fig. 144.

Tendon Spindles. Tendons possess free sensory endings, together with the tendon spindles. These are small portions of the tendon, 1–3 mm. long and 0.17–0.25 mm. wide, enclosed in sheaths of connective tissue. They stain more deeply than the surrounding tendon.

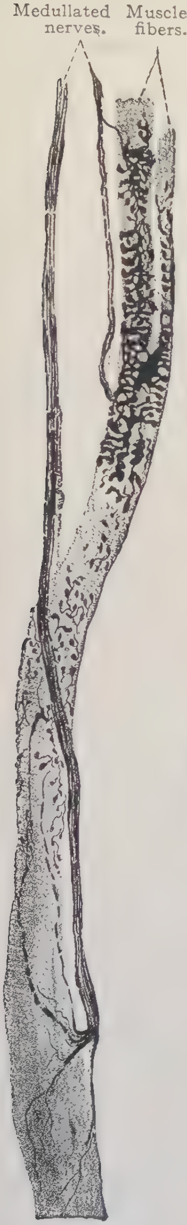


FIG. 135.—MUSCLE SPINDLE OF AN ADULT CAT. ×135.

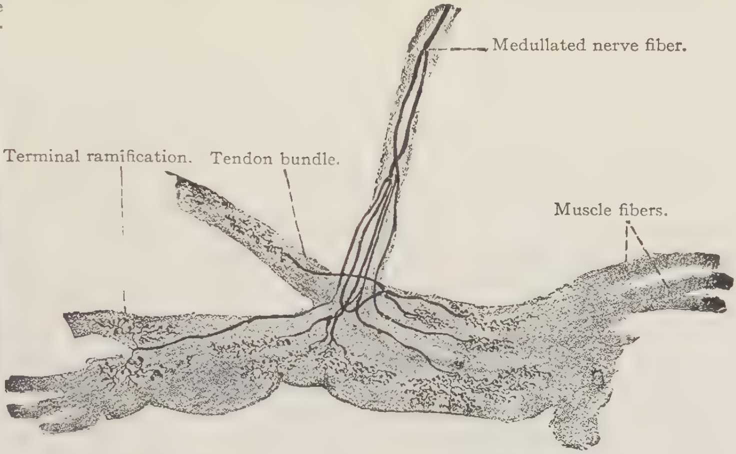


FIG. 136.—TENDON SPINDLE OF AN ADULT CAT. × 80.

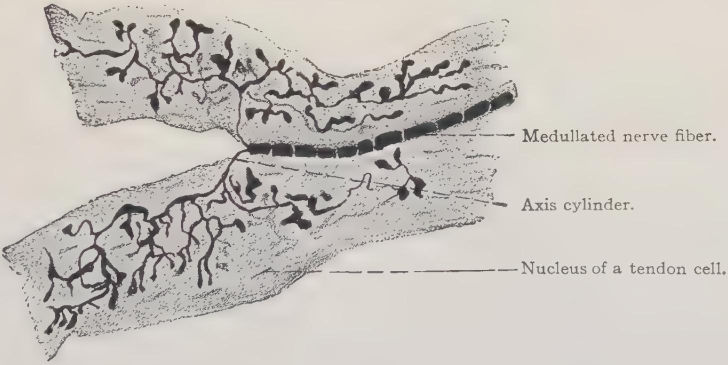


FIG. 137.—THE LEFT PORTION OF FIG. 136. × 345.

The few nerve fibers which terminate in a tendon spindle lose their sheaths and branch freely, ending in club-shaped enlargements (Figs. 136 and 137). They are found in all tendons and serve to transmit the sensation of tension, being active in connection with coördinated movements.

In connective tissue the sensory nerves may have free endings. In addition to these the subcutaneous tissue near the coils of the sweat glands, and in the corium of the fingers and toes, sometimes contains *terminal cylinders* (of Ruffini) which resemble tendon spindles in the way that their nerves ramify (Fig.

138). These cylinders lack the distinct capsules which characterize the nerve *corpuscles.*

Terminal corpuscles are nerve endings consisting of a coarse nerve fiber, or knot of small branches, surrounded by a semifluid intercellular substance (which is granular in preserved tissue), and enclosed in a connective tissue capsule. The terminal ramifications of the nerve show irregular swellings or *varicosities*, and apparently they unite so as to make a network. Often more than one fiber enters a corpuscle, and it has been suggested that they include afferent and efferent fibers. Generally the connective tissue sheaths of the entering fibers blend with the capsule, and the myelin sheaths are lost just within it. Terminal corpuscles have been grouped as *tactile*, *genital*, *bulbous*, *articular*, *cylindrical*, and *lamellar*.

Tactile corpuscles (or Meissner's corpuscles) are elliptical structures, 40–100 μ long and 30–60 μ broad (Fig. 139). They are characterized by transverse markings, due to the corresponding elongation of the capsule cells and the tactile cells within. From one to five medullated fibers enter the lower end of a tactile corpuscle, losing their sheaths soon after entering. They pursue a spiral course through the corpuscle, giving off branches which end in enlarged terminal networks between and upon the tactile cells. These corpuscles are found in some of the papillæ, or connective tissue elevations just beneath the epidermis, being especially numerous in those of the soles and palms (23 in 1 sq. mm.) and in the finger tips; they occur also "in the nipple, border of the eyelids, lips, glans penis and clitoris."

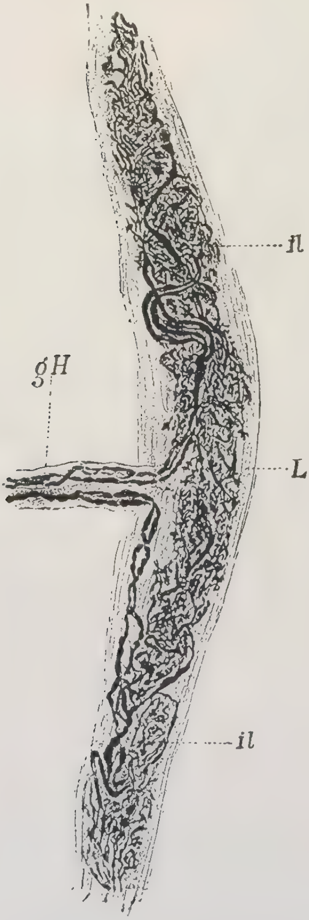


Fig. 138.—Terminal Cylinder. (After Ruffini, from Ferguson's Histology.)
gH, Medullary sheath; **il**, terminal ramifications of the axis cylinder; **L**, connective tissue.

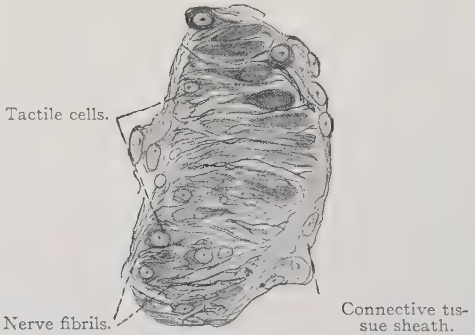


Fig. 139.—Tactile Corpuscle from a Section of the Skin of a Human Finger. × 560.
(Prepared by van der Velde, after the Bielschowsky method.)

Genital corpuscles are large, round or oval bodies 60–400 μ long (Fig. 140) which may receive as many as ten nerve fibers. These ramify and send branches to neighboring corpuscles, and also to the epidermis. The genital corpuscles are deeply placed beneath the epithelium of the glans penis, clitoris, and adjoining structures.

Bulbous corpuscles (of Krause) are smaller than the genital corpuscles, having a diameter of 20–100 μ (Fig. 141). They are most numerous (1–4 in a sq. mm.) in the superficial connective tissue of the glans penis and clitoris. Similar structures, either round or oval, are found in the conjunctiva and "edge of the cornea, in the lips and lining of the oral cavity, and probably in other parts of the corium." They have thinner capsules and receive fewer nerves than the genital corpuscles, which they resemble. The articular corpuscles, found near the joints, belong in the same category.

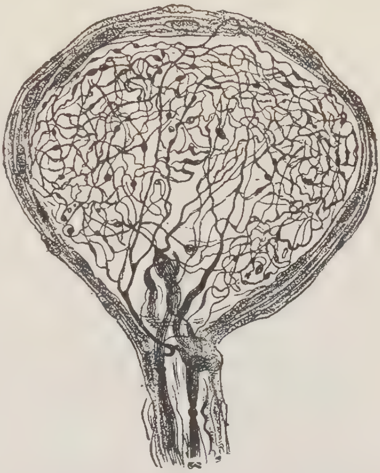


Fig. 140.—Genital Corpuscle from the Human Glans Penis. Methylene Blue Stain. (After Dogiel, from Böhm and von Davidoff.)

Cylindrical corpuscles (cylindrical end bulbs of Krause) contain a single axial nerve fiber with few or no branches, terminating in a knob-like or rounded extremity (Fig. 142). The fiber is surrounded by a semifluid substance, sometimes described as an inner bulb, and this is enclosed in a few concentric layers of cells which are continuous with the sheath of the nerve. Cylindrical corpuscles are found in the mucous membrane of the mouth and in the connective tissue of muscles and tendons.

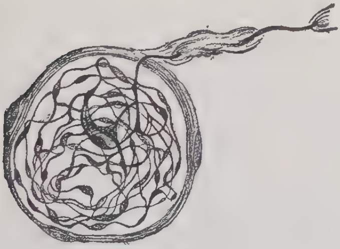


Fig. 141.—Bulbous Corpuscle from the Human Conjunctiva. Methylene Blue Stain. (After Dogiel, from Böhm and von Davidoff.)

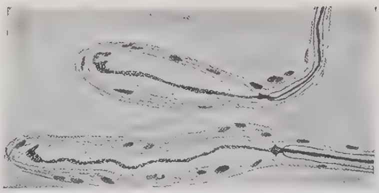


Fig. 142.—Cylindrical Corpuscles, from Intermuscular Septum of Cat. Methylene Blue Stain. (Huber.)

Lamellar corpuscles (or Pacinian corpuscles) are macroscopic elliptical structures 0.5–4.5 mm. long and 1–2 mm. wide (Fig. 143). They were first observed in dissections, as minute vesicular bodies attached to the terminal branches of nerves. Microscopically they are striking objects, suggesting an encysted foreign body. The axial core of the corpuscles is surrounded by concentric layers, sometimes as many as fifty, which represent a perineurium distended with fluid. A single large nerve fiber enters one end of the corpuscle and loses its myelin as it traverses the lamellæ. It extends through the semifluid core without obvious branches, sometimes being flattened and bandlike; it may fork at its further end or form a coil of branches, and it has been observed to pass out and enter another such corpuscle. Usually the corpuscles are sectioned obliquely or transversely so that the concentric layers completely encircle the inner core.

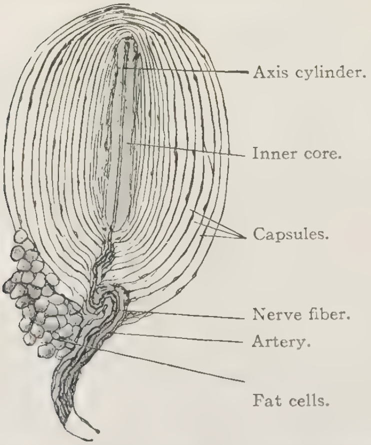


Fig. 143.—Small Lamellar Corpuscle from the Mesentery of a Cat. × 50.
The nuclei of the capsule cells, appear as thickenings. The myelin of the nerve fiber may be traced to the inner core.

Special methods have shown that the axial fiber may possess many short lateral branches ending in knobs, and that one or more delicate fibers may enter (or leave) the corpuscles in addition to the large one just described; they form a net surrounding the axial fiber. A small artery may pass into the corpuscle beside the nerve and supply the lamellæ with capillaries. Lamellar corpuscles are abundant in the subcutaneous tissue of the hand and foot and occur in other parts of the skin, in the nipple, and in the territory of the pudendal nerve; they are found near the joints (particularly on the flexor side) and in the periosteum and perimysium, in the connective tissue around large blood vessels and nerves, and in the tendon sheaths; also in the serous membranes, particularly in the mesenteries. According to Schumacher (Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1911, vol. 77, pp. 157–191) the lamellar corpuscles become inflated when the blood-pressure is increased, and "their structure and distribution, together with the results of experiments, indicate that they are regulators of the blood pressure."

Motor Endings. The motor nerve endings are the terminations of efferent nerves, in contact with smooth, cardiac or striated muscle fibers. The nerves to the smooth muscles are a part of the sympathetic system. They are non-medullated fibers which branch repeatedly, forming plexuses. From the plexuses very slender varicose fibers proceed to the muscle cells, in contact with the surface of which they end in one or two terminal or lateral nodular thickenings. Probably each muscle cell receives a nerve termination. Except that the nerve endings in heart muscle are a little larger, often provided with a small cluster of terminal nodules, they are like those of smooth muscle.

Striated muscles are innervated by the neuraxons of the ventral roots, which grow out from cell bodies remaining within the central system.

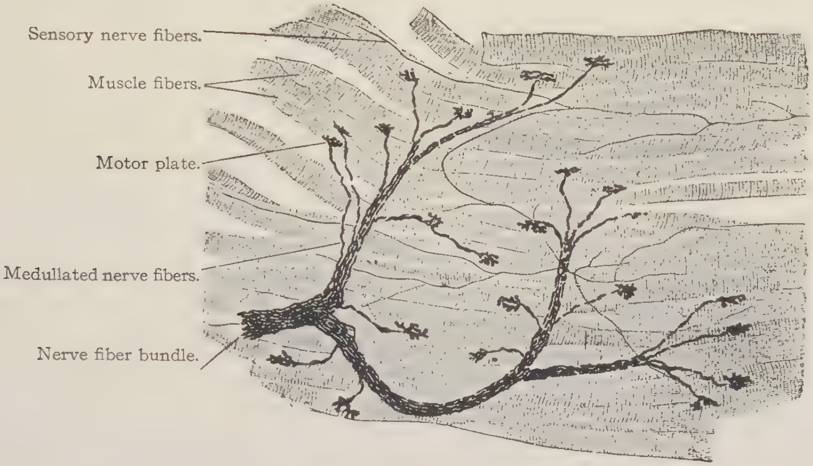


Fig. 144.—Motor Nerve Endings of Intercostal Muscle Fibers of a Rabbit. × 150.

They form plexuses of medullated fibers in the perimysium, from which branching medullated fibers extend into the fasiculi (Fig. 144). Each muscle fiber receives one of these branches, or sometimes two placed near together. They are usually implanted near the middle of the muscle fiber. The connective tissue sheath of the nerve blends with the perimysium, and the neurolemma is said to be continuous with the sarcolemma. On the inner side of the sarcolemma the myelin sheath ends abruptly, and the nerve fiber ramifies in a granular mass considered to be modified sarcoplasm, which may contain muscle nuclei. This entire structure appears as a distinct elevated area, estimated to average from 40 to 60 μ in diameter; it has been named the *motor plate*. A surface view and a section of a motor plate are shown in Fig. 145.

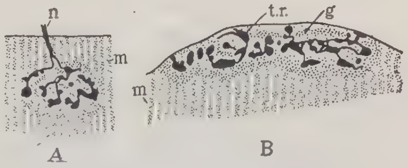


Fig. 145.—Motor Plates.

A, Surface view, from a guinea-pig; **B**, vertical section, from a hedgehog. (After Böhm and von Davidoff.) **g**, Granular substance of the motor plate; **m.**, striated muscle; **n.**, nerve fiber: **t. r.**, terminal ramifications of the nerve fiber.

NEUROGLIA

Neuroglia, developed from the ectoderm of the medullary tube, is the supporting tissue of the brain and spinal cord. Certain of the indifferent cells, instead of becoming neuroblasts, elongate radially, at first stretching from the cavity of the tube to the periphery. In a few regions they retain this original character, as in the median ventral wall of the cord and the retina of the eye, and in other regions the wall of the original tube remains thin, the cells forming a sheet of cuboidal epithelium, as in the choroid plexuses and the choroid coat of the eye. In the thicker portions of the tube, however, they divide, some remaining as a lining for the cavity, the ependymal cells, some attached to the outer surface where their processes become felted into an external limiting membrane, and some occupying more intermediate positions. All have small bodies and longer or shorter processes, sometimes very numerous and finely branched.

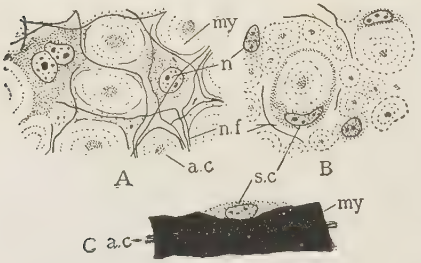


Fig 146.

A, Neuroglia cells and nerve fibers from a cross section of the spinal cord of an elephant. **B,** Neuroglia cells, nerve fibers and sheath cells, from the spinal cord of a pig, 2 weeks after birth. **C,** Isolated fiber from the cord of 21 cm. pig embryo, stained with osmic acid. (After Hardesty.) **a. c.,** Axis cylinder; **my.,** myelin; **n.,** neuroglia nuclei; **n. f.,** neuroglia fibrils; **s. c.,** sheath cell.

The best known type of neuroglia cell is shown in Figs. 146 and 147, and is characterized by containing, within the protoplasm of cell body and processes, stiff-looking fibers, which may extend from one cell to another These are only brought out by special stains such as phosphotungstic acid haematoxylin, the same used for fibroglia and myoglia fibers, which the

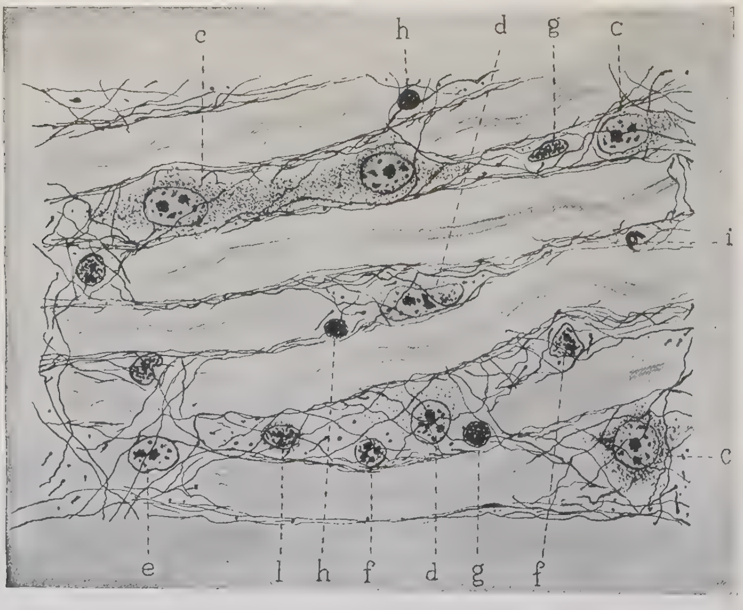


Fig. 147.—Neuroglia Cells and Fibers from the Spinal Cord of an Elephant. (Hardesty.) **c–i,** Successive stages in the transformation of neuroglia cells, ending with disintegrating nuclei (i); **l,** leucocyte. Benda's stain. × 940.

neuroglia fibers closely resemble in form and arrangement. When the fibers are stained it is usually impossible to distinguish the finer protoplasmic processes accompanying them, but the fibers are seen to form an intricate network, loosely surrounding nerve cells and nerve fibers, and extending both radially and longitudinally. A single process of each cell is said to reach and spread out on the surface of a blood vessel; this is supposed to derive nourishment from the blood and is called the "sucker foot." The processes of these cells may be either long or short.

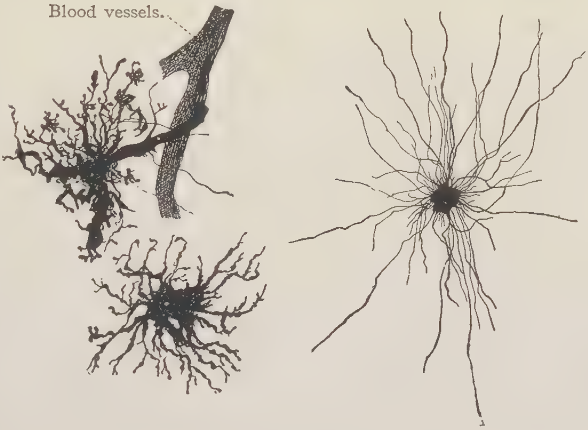


Fig. 148.—Neuroglia Cells from the Brain of an Adult Man. Golgi Method. × 280.

A second type (Fig. 148) resembles the first except that it never develops fibroglia fibers, and the processes are thicker, more branched, and contain vacuoles or granules. The protoplasm is differentiated into exoplasm and endoplasm. These are the so-called *protoplasmic neuroglia* cells. They have rather large oval nuclei, with many heavy chromatin granules near the membrane. They also have sucker feet. These cells are found only in the gray matter.

Microglia are small cells with elongated dark nuclei, very scant protoplasm, and processes with short spiny branches. They are found chiefly in the gray matter of the brain. They are not fixed elements, but may migrate in the tissues, and have been thought by some to be of mesodermal origin, and phagocytic in function.

Oligodendria ("few dendrites"), called the "third element" by Cajal, are recognizable in ordinary stains as apparently naked nuclei, spherical and vesicular, found as satellites to the larger nerve cells of the brain, and in rows along the fiber tracts of the brain and cord. With special stains the protoplasm is brought out. They are probably of mesodermal origin invading the medullary tube rather late, and may be analogous to the Schwann sheath cells and to the subcapsular satellites of the ganglia.

The knowledge of neuroglia has been advanced recently by Cajal and his pupils, del Rio-Hortega and Achúcarro, chiefly by the use of carefully devised stains. The original Spanish publications are not readily obtainable, but an excellent resumé including the methods used is given by Bailey and Hiller, Journ. Nerv. and Ment. Diseases, 1924, vol. 59, pp. 337–361.

VASCULAR TISSUE

Vascular tissue includes the blood vessels, the heart, and the lymphatic vessels, together with the blood and the lymph.

Blood Vessels

General Features. The existence of blood vessels was well known to the ancient anatomists, and a distinction was sometimes made between pulsating and non-pulsating vessels. They were all included by Aristotle under the term φλέψ (vein). He described the two great vessels at the back of the thorax, one of which is the vena cava; the other, as he states, "by some is termed the *aorta*, from the fact that even in dead bodies part of it is observed to be full of air." He added that "these blood vessels have their origins in the heart, for in whatever direction they happen to run, they traverse the other viscera without in any way losing their distinctive characteristics as blood vessels; whereas the heart is, as it were, a part of them" (Historia Animalium, Book 3, trans. by Thompson). Subsequently the term *artery* was applied to the aorta and its branches, which were found partly empty of blood after death, and were believed to convey air; the windpipe was called the *arteria aspera*.

Vesalius described an artery as "a vessel similar to a vein, membranous, round, and hollow like a pipe, by means of which vital spirit and warm blood, rushing impetuously, are distributed throughout the entire body; by the aid of these, and thus through the motion of the artery itself (which is by dilatation and contraction) the vital spirit and the natural warmth of the several parts are renewed" (De corporis humani fabrica, 1543, 4th ed., 1604). Vesalius described the arteries and veins as composed of coats (*tunicæ*) in which he found loose tissue and layers of fibers—circular, oblique, and longitudinal.

The valves of the veins, consisting of thin membranes projecting into their lumens, were described and clearly figured by Fabricius, under whom Harvey studied at Padua (De venarum ostiolis, 1603). Fabricius observed that the ostiola are found chiefly in the veins of the limbs and are "open toward the roots of the veins but closed below." He considered that "to a certain extent they hold back the blood, lest, like a stream, it should all flow together either at the feet, or in the hands and fingers." He stated that the veins can be easily dilated and distended, since they are composed of a simple and thin membranous substance; and concluded that the veins have valves to prevent over-distention, but the arteries, because of the thickness and strength of their walls, do not require them.

In demonstrating the circulation of the blood (in 1628) Harvey contributed little to the knowledge of the structure of the vessels. He could not find the microscopic connections between the arteries and veins, but they were discovered not many years later by Malpighi (De pulmonibus, Ep. II, 1661). In the membranous lungs of frogs and turtles, Malpighi found a *rete* or network of vessels connecting the artery and vein, so that the blood was not poured out into spaces, but was driven through tubules. He concluded that if in one case the ends of the vessels are brought together in a rete, similar conditions exist elsewhere, and he observed the circulation taking place in the diaphanous anastomosing vessels of the distended bladder of frogs. Leeuwenhoek (1698) clearly figured the minute vessels which pass from the arteries to the veins in the caudal fin of eels, and noted that the line of separation between the artery and vein is arbitrary.

The vessels which connect the arteries with the veins, because of their hair-like minuteness, were later called *capillaries.* Physiologically they form the most important part of the vascular system, because through their thin walls osmotic and gaseous exchange can take place most readily; and because in their narrow tubes the blood stream is finely divided and thus presents the greatest relative surface. Anatomically they are the most fundamental. They consist merely of endothelial tubes. All larger vessels, not only the arteries and veins, but also the heart, are derived from endothelial tubes and retain their endothelial lining. The endothelium, however, becomes surrounded by layers of smooth muscle fibers and connective tissue, which form the substance of the vessel walls. The arteries in general have thicker and more elastic walls than the veins, and tend to remain open after death; the thinner walls of the veins are prone to collapse.

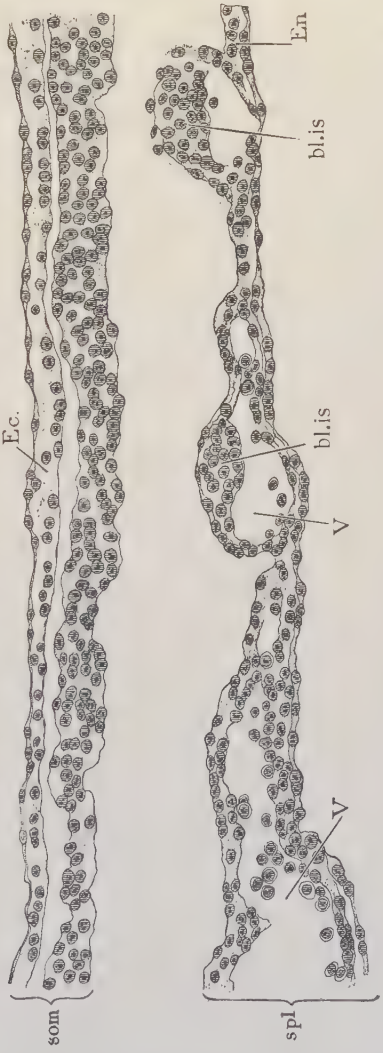


Fig. 149.—Section of the Area Vasculosa of a Chick Embryo of the Second Day. (Minot.) *Som*, Somatopleure. *Spl*, Splanchnopleure. *Ec*, Ectoderm. *E*, Entoderm. *bl.is*, Blood-islands. *V, V*, Blood-vessels. × 227 diams.

Origin. Some of the earliest blood vessels are formed in the splanchnopleure of the yolk sac, at some distance from the embryo proper. Between the entoderm and the splanchnic mesoderm groups of darkly staining cells are found, projecting into the cœlom. These are the blood islands (See Fig. 149). As seen on the right of the figure the group adheres to, or forms a part of, the overlying mesoderm, while below them a space occurs, bounded partly by the entoderm as a single layer of cells. In the next island, some of the group have become detached and are freely floating blood cells; others seem to have spread in a layer around the cavity and over the entoderm. The cavity thus becomes lined with an endothelial layer. The interpretation of the successive steps is, however, frequently difficult, and some authors maintain that the entoderm plays a large part in the formation of the islands. The splanchnic net of blood vessels (shown also in Fig. 28, p. 46) is formed by a growth and coalescence of the islands.

Development. In an early stage the blood vessels of the embryo form a network in the splanchnopleure. In mammals, as in the chick (Figs. 23 and 24, p. 42), the portion of the net nearest the median line forms, on either side of the body, a longitudinal vessel, the *dorsal aorta*. The part of the net folded under the pharynx constitutes successively (beginning posteriorly) the *vitelline veins*, the *heart*, and the *ventral aortæ*, and the latter are continuous in front of the pharynx with the dorsal aortæ. The heart first appears as two dilated vessels, one on either side, which are parts of the general network. They are brought together in the median line under the pharynx and fuse. At first the heart pulsates irregularly, but with the establishment of the circulation, its beats become rhythmical. The blood flows from the general network through the veins to the heart, and thence through the arteries back to the net. Whether all the vessels of the embryo are offshoots from the splanchnic net, or whether new vessels arise by coalescence of spaces in the mesenchyma is a long-standing question which is discussed later in the section on lymphatic vessels. Once the original tubes are established, new branches grow out, as shown in Fig. 150, through the mesenchyma with which they often appear to be inseparably connected. The sprouts are at first solid, but soon become hollow except at the growing tips. They may encounter similar offshoots from the same or other vessels and fuse with them. Through the anastomosis of such sprouts new capillary nets are produced.

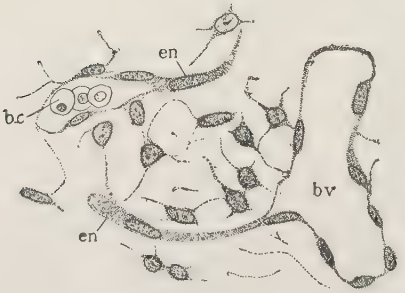


Fig. 150.

Blood vessels from a rabbit embryo of 13 days, developing as endothelial sprouts (**en**) from pre-existing vessels (**b.v.**); **b.c.**, blood corpuscle within a vessel.

The formation of a definite system of arteries and veins out of a general network may be partly explained on mechanical principles. The vascular outgrowths must take certain courses marked out by the epithelial structures. Thus in early stages they may grow between the somites, but not into them, producing a series of segmental vessels; they pass around the front of the fore-gut and up and down between its lateral outpocketings, so that the regular system of aortic arches appears to depend upon these epithelial obstructions; and they are guided along the under surface of the developing brain in a very characteristic manner. Epithelial obstructions therefore determine the position of the capillary plexuses. In each plexus the favorable channels enlarge and become the main arteries and veins, sending forth new branches and acquiring thick walls; whereas the vessels in which the current is slow remain small or disappear. These factors are further considered by Thoma (Histomechanik des Gefässsystems, 1893).

The way in which main trunks develop from indifferent networks has been described by Evans on the basis of extraordinarily perfect injections; thin fluid introduced into the vessels of a living chick embryo is distributed throughout the vascular system by the action of the heart (Anat. Rec., 1909, vol, 3, pp. 498–518).

The formation of anomalous vessels readily takes place by the persistence and enlargement of channels usually unfavorable. This is discussed by Bremer in explanation of various anomalies of the renal arteries (Amer. Journ. Anat. 1915, vol. 18, pp. 179–200). Innumerable forms of human vascular anomalies may thus be explained embryologically; some of them represent persistent vessels which are normally important at a certain stage of development, and others represent connections which are as abnormal in the embryo as in the adult (cf. Lewis, Amer. Journ. Anat., 1909, vol. 9, pp. 33–42).

A very characteristic form of circulation occurs in certain organs, in which the endothelium of the vessel walls is closely applied to the epithelium of the secreting tubules, or other parenchymal structure (Fig. 151). The walls of the vessels are as thin as those of capillaries, but their diameter is much greater, so that they have been described as lacunar vessels or "*sinusoids*," the term *sinus* being generally applied to the large thin-walled veins in the dura mater about the brain (Minot, Proc. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., 1900, vol. 29, pp. 185–215). Apparently the close apposition of the endothelium, on all sides, to the cells of the parenchyma is the

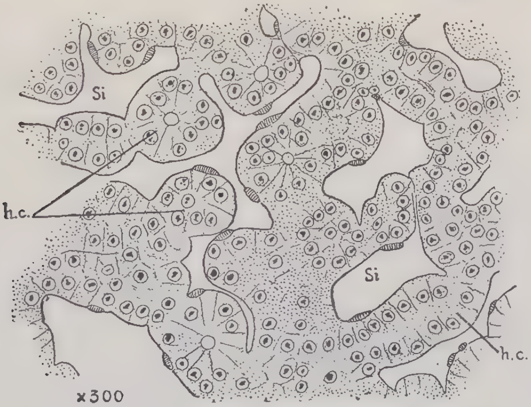


FIG. 151.—SINUSOIDS (Si) IN THE LIVER OF A CHICK EMBRYO OF ELEVEN DAYS. (Minot.) h.c., Cords and tubules of hepatic cells.

most essential characteristic of these vessels and must be of considerable physiological significance. There are few or no connective tissue cells between the thin lining of the vessel and the epithelial tissue which it nourishes. Capillaries, on the contrary, are imbedded in connective tissue, even though occasionally they approach close to an epithelium, sometimes appearing to enter it. In the lungs the capillaries are compressed between epithelial plates, but they do not resemble the vessels shown in Fig. 151.

Where sinusoids are most highly developed, as in the liver and Wolffian body of embryos, they possess another very significant characteristic. They are not connections between an artery and a vein, like the capillaries, but are subdivisions of veins. Thus in the liver, as shown in the diagram, Fig. 152, the portal vein enters the organ and is subdivided by cords of hepatic cells into sinusoids, such as are shown in section in Fig. 151. These reunite to empty into the vena cava inferior. The sinusoids of the liver have therefore been described as formed by the *intercrescence* of vascular endothelium and hepatic parenchyma. This arrangement of veins constitutes the hepatic portal circulation, taking its name from the entering vessel. The same type of venous circulation occurs in the Wolffian bodies, where it constitutes the "renal portal circulation," although it has no connection with the portal vein. It is probable that this form of circulation, which is generally lacunar or sinusoidal, represents a primitive type of vascularization, since a single vessel passing by or through an organ provides it with both afferent and efferent vessels. The arterio-venous circulation requires the presence of two vessels with currents flowing in opposite directions. There are indications that various organs in the human embryo have a transient "portal circulation" before the arteries connect with the network and become the main afferent channels.

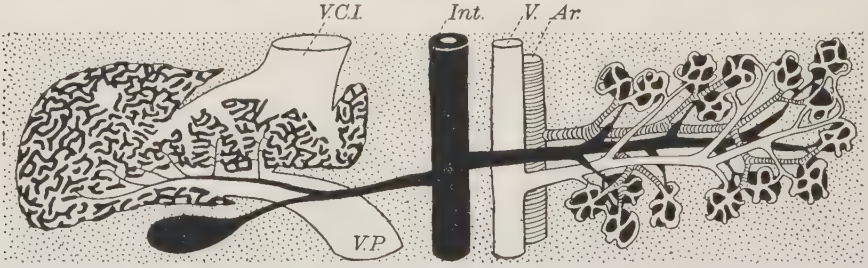


Fig. 152.—Diagram Showing on the Left the Liver and Its Sinusoids; on the Right the Pancreas and Its Capillaries.

The connective tissue is represented by dots. **Ar.,** Artery; **Int.,** intestine; **V.,** vein; **V. C. I.,** vena cava inferior; **V. P.,** portal vein.

Capillaries. The capillaries are endothelial tubes of varying diameter, the smallest being so narrow that the blood corpuscles must pass through them in single file. Their walls are composed of elongated, very flat cells, with irregularly wavy polygonal outlines which are clearly demonstrated in silver nitrate preparations (Fig. 153). Occasional "Rouget cells," large and stellate, may clasp the endothelial tubes; these are probably not a type of muscle cell, as they are said not to contract (Clark, Am. Journ. Anat., 1925, vol. 35, pp. 239–282). Between the cells, the red and white corpuscles frequently make their way out of the vessel. There are no pre-formed openings for this purpose, and the endothelial cells come together after the corpuscles have passed out. Certain endothelial cells are phagocytic, devouring objects which float in the blood; some of them may become detached and enter the circulation. Moreover endothelial cells are contractile, and may be stimulated to activity by the sympathetic fibers in the delicate perivascular plexus which is shown in methylene blue preparations. Some of the fibers end in contact with the cells and presumably control the caliber of the vessel; other fibers may be afferent and receive a stimulus when the vessel expands and stretches the plexus. The bulging of endothelial nuclei into the lumen of vessels, frequently seen in preserved specimens, is probably due to post-mortem contraction; in life the lining is presumably smooth.

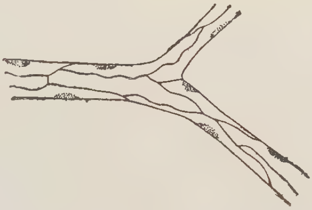


Fig. 153.—Capillary from the Tail of a Tadpole. Silver Nitrate Preparation. (After Koelliker.)

Although capillaries vary in diameter (4.5–12μ), those in a given territory are quite uniform, both as to caliber of individual vessels and the size and pattern of the meshes in the network. The closest meshes and largest capillaries occur in secretory organs and in the lungs, which are therefore abundantly supplied with blood. The muscles are well supplied by slender capillaries in a rectangular meshwork. Serous membranes and dense connective tissue have a scanty blood supply, from narrow capillaries in a coarse net. According to Clark (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1917, vol. 21, pp. 421–448) vascular sprouts may be put forth to engulf foreign particles or cells, and later be withdrawn. The endothelium therefore should be thought of as an active tissue, even in the adult. Some of the vessels of the capillary net may remain closed during the ordinary use of a part, but may be ready to receive the blood under unusual circumstances. For a modern conception of the capillaries the student is referred to Krogh's "Anatomy and Physiology of Capillaries," 1922. Injected capillaries in the intestinal villi and in the lung are shown in Figs. 241 and 283.

Arteries. The walls of the arteries are composed of three layers—the *tunica intima*, *tunica media*, and *tunica externa*, respectively. The intima includes the endothelium and generally an underlying elastic membrane, separated from the endothelium by a small amount of fibrous tissue. The media is primarily a layer of circular smooth muscle fibers; and the externa (formerly called the tunica adventitia) consists chiefly of connective tissue. The thickness of all these layers is greatest toward the heart. They become thinner at the places where the arteries branch, and in the pre-capillary vessels nothing remains but the endothelium.

The small terminal arteries are called *arterioles*. They are endothelial tubes encircled by scattered smooth muscle fibers. In Fig. 154, C, the oval nuclei of the endothelium are seen to be elongated parallel with the course of the vessel. As is usually the case, the walls of the endothelial cells are not visible. The rod-shaped nuclei of the muscle fibers are at right angles with the axis of the vessel. In the somewhat larger artery, B, the muscle fibers form a single but continuous layer, the media, outside of which the connective tissue is compressed to make the externa. Its fibers tend to be parallel with the vessel. The walls of such an artery are so thick that it is possible to focus on the layers separately; thus in A, the endothelium, which with a delicate elastic membrane beneath it constitutes the intima, is not seen, being out of focus. The nuclei of the media and externa are evident. A cross section of such a vessel is seen in Fig. 169.

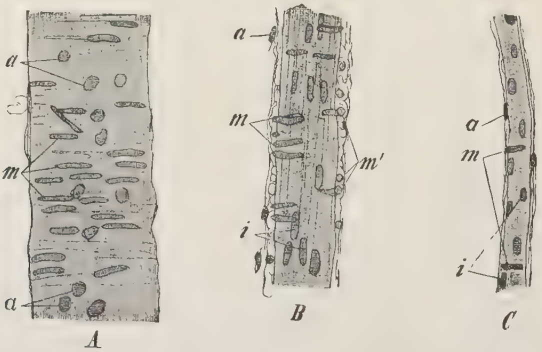


FIG. 154.—FRAGMENTS OF HUMAN ARTERIOLES. × 240.
i, Nuclei of endothelial cells; **m**, nuclei of circular muscle fibers; **a**, nuclei of connective tissue. In **A**, since the endothelium is out of focus, its nuclei are not seen.

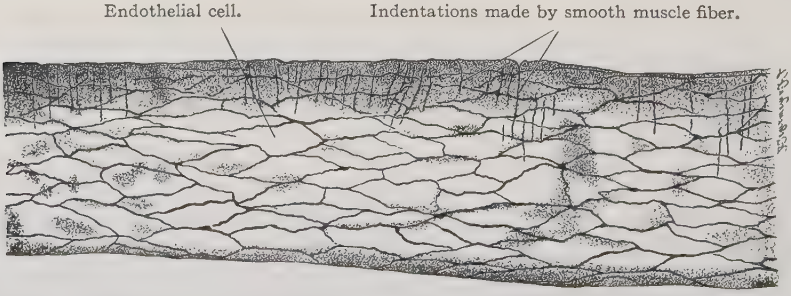


FIG. 155.—ENDOTHELIUM OF A MESENTERIC ARTERY OF A RABBIT. SURFACE VIEW. × 250.

The larger arteries are lined with endothelium similar to that of the capillaries, as shown in silver nitrate preparations (Fig. 155). This endothelium rests on a layer of connective tissue containing flattened cells and a network of fine elastic fibers. The meshes of the fibrous and elastic tissue are elongated lengthwise of the vessel, and on surface view they present a longitudinally striped appearance. In addition to this *subendothelial tissue* and the endothelium, the intima includes the *inner elastic membrane* (Fig. 156). This is usually a conspicuous layer thrown into wavy folds by the post-mortem contraction of the vessel. It is easily seen with ordinary stains, appearing as a refractive layer, and is deeply colored by resorcin-fuchsin and other elastic tissue stains (upper segment in Fig. 156). In smaller arteries the endothelium appears to rest directly upon the elastic network which replaces this membrane; and in such large ones as the external iliacs, the principal branches of the abdominal aorta, and the uterine arteries in young persons, the subendothelial tissue is said to be lacking. The inner elastic membrane is not a continuous sheet of tissue, since it is perforated by elongated apertures; it forms a *fenestrated membrane* and the development of such membranes from elastic networks has already been described (cf. Fig. 52, p. 73). The membrane is particularly thick in the larger arteries of the brain, and it is sometimes double.

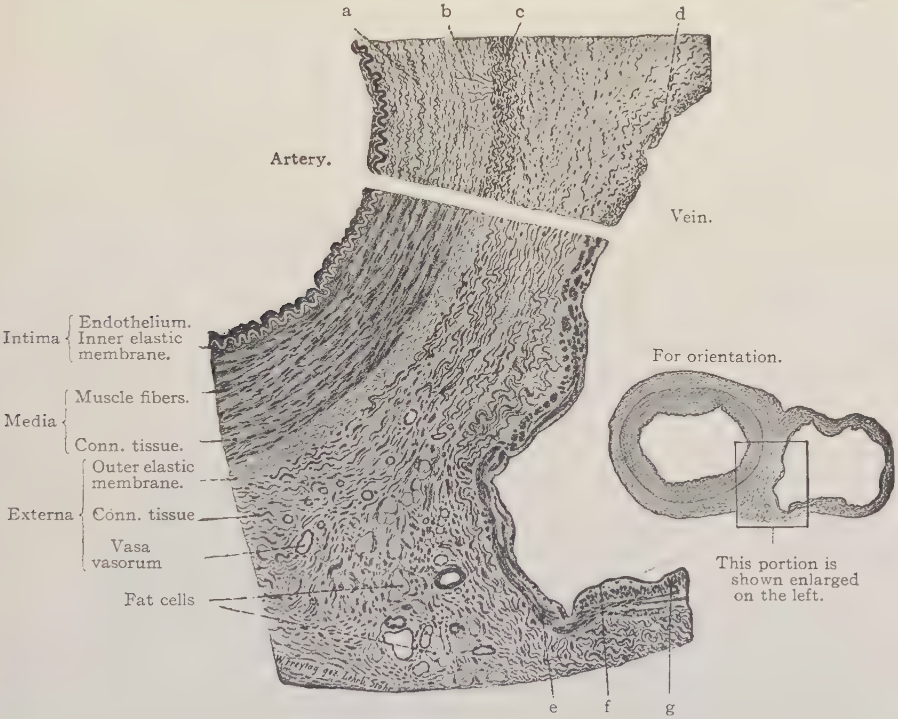


FIG. 156.—A SECTION THROUGH A HUMAN ULNAR ARTERY AND VEIN, SHOWING THE WALL OF THE ARTERY ON THE LEFT AND OF THE VEIN ON THE RIGHT. THE UPPER PART OF THE FIGURE (a–d) IS FROM A SECTION OF THE SAME VESSELS STAINED WITH RESORCIN-FUCHSIN, AN ELASTIC TISSUE STAIN. × 550.
a, Circular, and **b**, radial elastic fibers of the media of the artery; **c**, external elastic membrane; **d**, elastic fibers in the media of the vein; **e**, circular, and **g**, longitudinal muscle fibers of the media; **f**, endothelium.

The media, which consists of but a single layer of circular muscle fibers in the pre-capillary vessels, becomes many-layered in larger arteries.

Generally the fibers are all circular or perhaps oblique, but in the loose musculature of the umbilical arteries longitudinal fibers are numerous. Longitudinal fibers are said to occur in certain other vessels near the intima, being especially well developed in the subclavian artery. The post-mortem contraction of the circular fibers, which throws the intima into folds, causes a spiral crumpling of certain muscle nuclei, the significance of which has already been discussed (Fig. 91, p. 113). Between the muscle fibers there are circular elastic fibers, or plates in the larger vessels, which are thrown into wavy folds. Radial fibers, which connect these in a general network, are slender and require special staining. White fibers are present, apparently formed in considerable part by the muscle fibers which they bind together. The proportion between the muscular and elastic tissue in the media varies in different arteries. In the smaller vessels, the muscular tissue predominates, and this is true also of the cœliac, femoral and radial arteries. But in the common iliac, axillary and carotid arteries the elastic tissue prevails, and in this respect they resemble the largest arteries—the aorta and pulmonary artery.

The externa is a connective tissue layer which sometimes contains scattered bundles of longitudinal muscle fibers. It has many longitudinal elastic fibers, which are particularly numerous toward the media, where they are often grouped as the *external elastic membrane* (Fig. 156). This is not a fenestrated membrane, but is merely a dense zone of longitudinal fibers. It is said to be well developed in the carotid, brachial, femoral, cœliac and mesenteric arteries, and to be absent from the basilar and other cerebral arteries.

Nerves and vessels ramify in the externa. The walls of the larger arteries are supplied with small blood vessels, the *vasa vasorum*, derived from adjacent arteries. These are distributed chiefly to the externa; they may penetrate the outer part of the media but do not reach the intima. Lymphatic vessels form perivascular plexuses, and send branches into the externa. The nerves are medullated and non-medullated. They include vasomotor fibers which innervate the smooth muscle cells, and sensory or afferent nerves which have terminal arborizations in the intima and in the externa. Other nerve fibers end in lamellar corpuscles in the externa of the aorta and other large vessels.

Ganglia are not seen in the walls of the vessels, and the sympathetic fibers to the muscles therefore travel considerable distances to their terminations. In this respect the nerves to the smooth muscles of the vessels differ from those to the musculature of the digestive tube.

In the largest arteries (the aorta and pulmonary arteries) the intima is very broad (Fig. 157), and it increases in thickness with age. Its endothelial cells are less elongated than those of smaller arteries. They rest on a fibrous subendothelial tissue, containing flattened stellate or rounded cells, and networks of elastic tissue. The elastic fibers are thicker toward the media, finally producing a fenestrated membrane which corresponds with the inner elastic membrane of smaller vessels, but which is scarcely thicker than adjacent elastic lamellæ. The broad media consists of elastic membranes and muscle fibers, but the elastic tissue greatly predominates. On section the wall of the fresh aorta consequently appears yellow, and not reddish like the more muscular walls of smaller arteries. The elastic tissue is arranged in a succession of circular fenestrated membranes connected with one another by oblique fibers. Between them are the muscle cells. According to Koelliker, in the inner layers of the media, the muscle cells form an anastomosing syncytium of short, broad and flattened elements, somewhat resembling cardiac muscle (Fig. 158), but in the outer layers the fibers are of the ordinary type. The externa contains no outer elastic layer and is relatively thin; its inner elastic portion may have been taken over into the media.

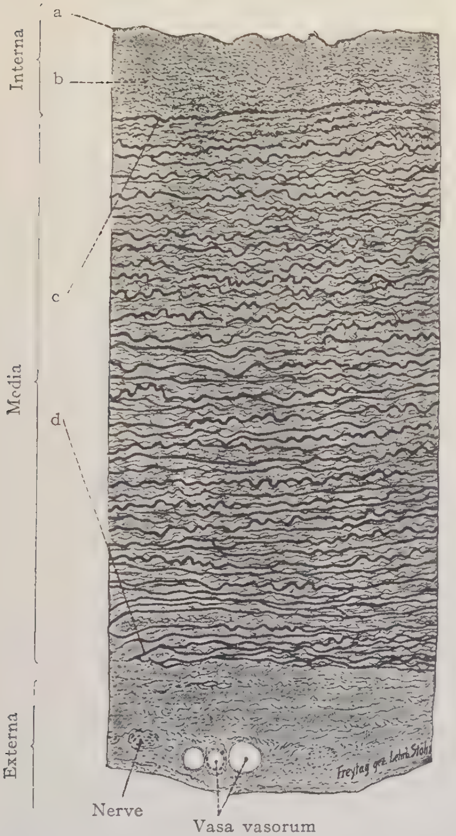


Fig. 157.—From a Transverse Section of the Human Thoracic Aorta, Stained with Resorcin-fuchsin. × 80.

a, Endothelium; **b**, subendothelial fibrous tissue; **c**, **d**, elastic membranes of the media.

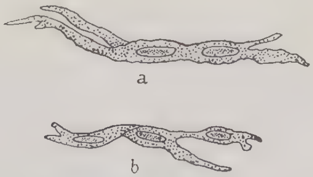


Fig. 158.—Branched Smooth Muscle Cells from the Thoracic Aorta of a Child at Birth (**a**) and at Four Years (**b**). (After Koelliker.)

Veins. Since the artery to any structure and the returning vein are often side by side, they are frequently included in a single section and may readily be compared. In embryos the veins are of much larger diameter than the corresponding arteries, and they have thinner walls. Although the difference in diameter is less marked in the adult, it generally remains a distinctive feature, and the difference in the thickness of the walls becomes accentuated (Fig. 156). In comparing the diameters of the ulnar vein and artery in Fig. 156, it should be remembered that the ulnar artery is usually accompanied by two returning veins, only one of which is shown in the figure. Because of their thinner walls, which contain relatively little elastic tissue, the veins are generally partly collapsed; the lumen is therefore irregular, whereas that of the arteries tends to be round (Fig. 156). Small veins full of blood may be round, however, and the arteries are sometimes irregularly contracted.

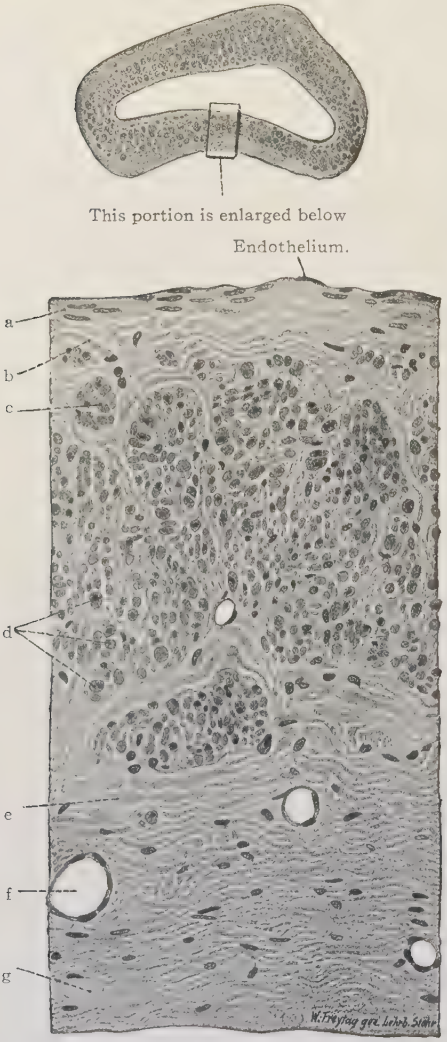


FIG. 159.—FROM A CROSS SECTION OF A HUMAN SUPRARENAL VEIN, STAINED WITH HÆMATOXYLIN. × 240. **a**, Circular muscle fibers of the media; **b**, connective tissue; **c**, **d**, longitudinal muscle fibers of the externa; **e**, connective tissue; **f**, small vein; **g**, fat cell.

The walls of the veins, like those of arteries, are composed of three layers, the intima, media, and externa. The intima includes the primary endothelium, which is composed of polygonal cells, generally shorter and broader than those of arteries. The endothelium rests on a thin layer of subendothelial fibrous tissue. The inner elastic membrane of arteries is represented in the smaller veins by a thin homogeneous membrane, but in larger veins it is replaced by a network of elastic fibers. In addition to these structures the intima of certain veins contains scattered oblique and longitudinal muscle fibers; they are said to occur in the iliac, femoral, saphenous and intestinal veins, the intramuscular part of the uterine veins, and especially in the dorsal vein of the penis near the suspensory ligament.

The media shows great variations. It is generally a thin layer consisting of circular muscle fibers, elastic networks and relatively abundant connective tissue, and is best developed in the veins of the lower extremity (especially the popliteal). In those of the upper extremity it is not so well marked, and it is still thinner in the larger veins of the abdominal cavity; it is reduced to fibrous tissue and is essentially absent from the vena cava superior, the veins of the retina, of the pia and dura mater, and of the bones.

The externa is the most highly developed layer of the veins. It consists of interwoven bundles of connective tissue, elastic fibers, and longitudinal bundles of smooth muscles which are more abundant than in the arteries. In certain veins (*e.g.*, the main trunk of the portal, the renal and suprarenal veins) the longitudinal muscle forms an almost complete layer of considerable thickness (Fig. 159).

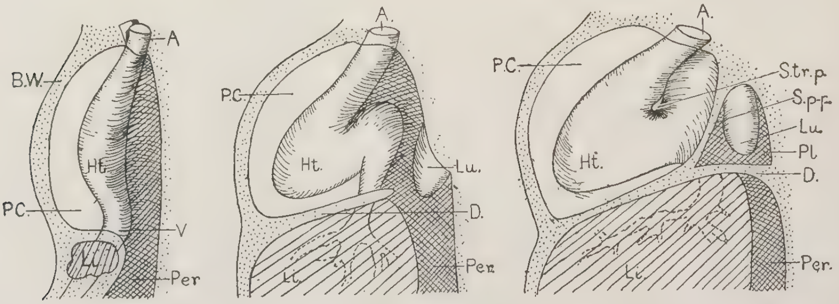
The valves of veins are paired folds of the intima, each shaped like half of a cup attached to the wall of the vein so that its convex surface is toward the lumen. In longitudinal section they appear like the valves of the lymphatic vessel shown in Fig. 169. The valves are generally found distal to the point where a branch empties into the vein, and they prevent its blood from flowing away from the heart. They are most numerous in the veins of the extremities, but appear also in the intercostal, azygos, spermatic, and certain other veins; none are found in the vertical trunks of the superior and inferior venæ cavæ. They counteract the effects of gravity upon the blood, and it has been suggested that their arrangement in man corresponds rather to a quadrupedal attitude than to an upright position. The endothelial cells on the surface of the valve toward the lumen of the vein are elongated parallel with the current, and beneath them there is a thick network of elastic tissue. On the side of the valve toward the wall of the vein, the long axis of the cells is transverse, and there the cells rest upon fibrous connective tissue.

The prevalence of elastic tissue in the arteries, especially those nearest the heart, provides a mechanism for guarding the thin-walled capillaries from the force of the heart beat. Water pumped through a thin rubber tube will emerge in a constant stream, but through a rigid pipe it will come out in separate jets. Thus when the arteries are hardened by disease the pulse can be seen beneath the finger nails. The musculature of the arteries serves to regulate the calibre, and govern the amount of blood to the different parts of the body.

The longitudinal muscles of certain veins may act as efficaciously as circular muscles to force the blood toward the heart, if valves are present. The volume between valves is reduced by the contraction of either set of muscles, or by pressure from surrounding structures. The latter applies especially to the thin-walled lymphatic vessels, and indicates the advantage of exercise or massage.

THE HEART

DEVELOPMENT. The heart has already been described as a median longitudinal vessel situated beneath the pharynx, formed posteriorly by the union of the vitelline veins, and terminating anteriorly in the two ventral aortæ (Figs. 23 and 24, p. 42). This endothelial tube is surrounded by the mesothelium of the body cavity, except along its dorsal border, where it is attached, as it were by a short mesentery, to the under side of the fore-gut. If the embryo is placed in an upright position, corresponding with that of the adult, the relations of the heart to the body cavity will be as shown in the diagram, Fig. 160, A. The posterior part of the body cavity, which becomes the peritoneal cavity, extends forward on either side and comes together across the median line beneath the heart, thus forming the *pericardial cavity*. As the heart develops it becomes bent upon itself as shown in Fig. 160, B; and below it, a shelf of tissue forms across the body, representing the future diaphragm. Dorsal to the diaphragm, the pericardial cavity still communicates with the peritoneal cavity, on either side of the body. In the region of this communication the lungs later develop, and partitions separate the part of the body cavity around them, namely the pleural cavity, from the pericardial and peritoneal cavities respectively. These partitions are the pleuro-pericardial membrane and the membranous part of the diaphragm (Fig. 160, C). Meanwhile the mesentery of the heart has become thin and has ruptured in the hollow of the U-shaped bend, forming the *sinus transversus pericardii*, which persists throughout life as a small but very definite structure.



A B C

Fig. 160.—Diagrams Illustrating the Formation of the Pericardial Cavity.

A., Aortic end of heart; **B. W.**, body wall; **D.**, diaphragm; **Ht.**, heart; **Li.**, liver; **Lu.**, lung; **P. C.**, pericardial cavity; **Per.**, peritoneal cavity; **Pl.**, pleural cavity; **S.p-p.**, pleuro-pericardial septum, **S. tr. p.**, sinus transversus pericardii; **V.**, venous end of the heart.

While the heart is still a simple tube consisting of endothelium internally and mesothelium externally, with a space between them bridged by protoplasmic strands, it beats regularly, although possessing neither nerves nor muscles. Without causing any interruption of the circulation the simple tube becomes divided into four chambers, namely the right and left *atria* (or auricles[1]) and the right and left *ventricles*. The process of subdivision may be outlined as follows:

When the tube becomes bent into a U, the venous end of the heart is carried anteriorly, dorsal to the aortic end, as shown in Fig. 161, A–C. At the same time the ventral or aortic limb of the U is carried to the right of the median plane (C). The dorsal limb is divided into two parts by an encircling transverse constriction, the *coronary sulcus* (*s.c.*). Its thick-walled portion, ventral to the sulcus, forms the *ventricles;* the thin-walled dorsal portion becomes the *atria*. In the human embryo of three weeks (C) the atria are represented by a single cavity subdivided into right and left parts only by an external depression in the median plane. The right portion receives all the veins which enter the heart (the vitelline veins and their tributaries) and is much larger than the left portion. The cavities of the atria not only freely communicate with each other but they have a common outlet into the undivided ventricle. From the ventricle the blood flows out of the heart through the aortic limb. In a complex manner, described in text-books of embryology, a median septum develops, dividing the heart into right and left halves.

---

[1] According to the anatomical nomenclature adopted at Basle, the term *auricle* (diminutive of *auris*, ear) is restricted to what was formerly called the *auricular appendix*, and the term *atrium* (chamber) is used for the cavity as a whole.

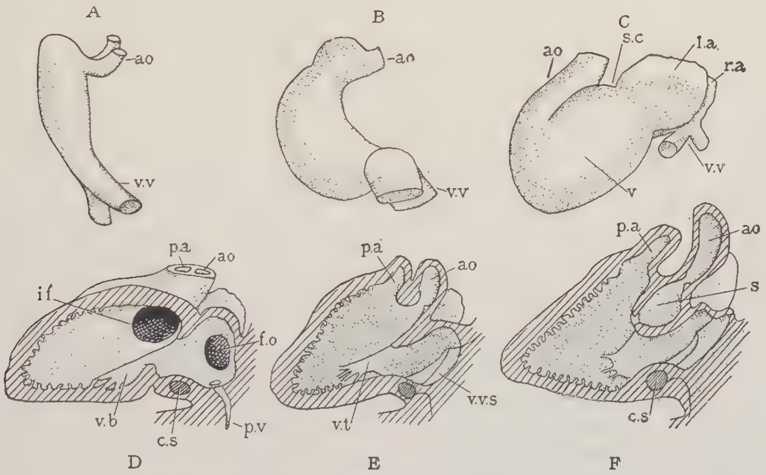


Fig. 161.—Embryonic Hearts.

A and **B**, From rabbits nine days after coitus; **C**, from a human embryo of three (?) weeks; **D** and **E**, from a 12-mm. pig (**D** sectioned on the left of the median septum, and **E** on the right of it); **F**, from a 13.6-mm. human embryo, sectioned like **E**. The hearts are all in corresponding positions with the left side toward the observer, the anterior end toward the top of the page, the dorsal side to the right. **ao.**, Aorta; **c. s.**, coronary sinus; **f. o.**, foramen ovale; **i. f.**, interventricular foramen; **l.a.**, left atrium; **p. a.**, pulmonary artery; **p. v.**, pulmonary vein; **r. a.**, right atrium; **s.**, septum membranaceum separating the root of the aorta from the right ventricle; **s. c.**, coronary sulcus; **v.**, ventricle; **v. b.**, bicuspid valve; **v. t.**, tricuspid valve; **v. v.**, vitelline vein; **v. v. s.**, valves of the venous sinus.

In the heart of a 12-mm. pig embryo this septum has already formed (Fig. 161, D) and has been exposed in the drawing by cutting away most of the left atrium and left ventricle. The septum between the atria becomes perforated as it develops, so that in embryonic life the atria always communicate. The perforation in the septum is the *foramen ovale.*

Encircling the orifice which connects each atrium with the corresponding ventricle, there is a ring of mesenchyma which in the adult becomes dense fibrous tissue—the *annulus fibrosus.* Extending from this ring into the left ventricle there are two flaps of tissue partly detached from the ventricular walls. They constitute the *bicuspid valve* (or mitral valve).

Toward the apex of the heart each flap passes into strands of tissue attached to the walls of the ventricle. These strands become the *chordæ tendineæ* of the adult, and the muscular elevations into which they are inserted are the papillary muscles (*musculi papillares*). The differentiation of these structures has not taken place in the stage shown in Fig. 161.

In the 12-mm. pig (Fig. 161, D) the median septum which has grown up from the apex of the heart, so as to separate the right and left ventricles from each other, is not complete. The ventricles still communicate through the *interventricular foramen*, and through this aperture the blood passes from the left side of the heart to enter the root of the aorta. The root of the aorta is shown in E, a section of the same heart made on the right of the median septum. The pulmonary artery and the part of the aorta near the heart develop first as a single vessel; they become separated from one another by the formation of a partition. As long as the dividing wall is incomplete, the blood from either ventricle may pass out through either artery as shown in E. In the more advanced human embryo, F, the partition between the aorta and pulmonary artery has extended so that it joins the interventricular septum, and causes the interventricular foramen to open into the root of the aorta only (*s*). This portion of the interventricular wall which is the last to form, is translucent in the adult, and is known as the *septum membranaceum*.

As previously noted all the veins come together to enter the right atrium. The original vitelline veins are no longer directly connected with the heart, and their persistent cardiac outlet becomes the terminal part of several large branches. These are the *superior vena cava* from the head and arms, the *inferior vena cava* from the trunk and legs (receiving as branches the hepatic vein draining the portal system from the intestine, and the umbilical vein from the placenta); and the *coronary sinus* which, as it passes across the heart in the coronary sulcus, receives branches from the wall of the heart. All these veins come together in a cavity, ill defined in mammals, known as the *sinus venosus*, and this sinus empties into the right atrium through an orifice guarded by a valve with right and left flaps. With further growth the sinus venosus becomes a part of the atrium, and the superior and inferior venæ cavæ and coronary sinus open separately, guarded by imperfect valves derived from the valves of the sinus venosus. The left flap of this valve is said to assist in closing the foramen ovale; the right flap becomes subdivided into the rudimentary valve of the vena cava inferior (Eustachian valve) and the valve of the coronary sinus (Thebesian valve). The degeneration of the valve of the venous sinus seems to take place after the bicuspid and tricuspid valves have become well formed, and have rendered it superfluous. In early stages it must be regarded as the principal valve of the heart. The tricuspid valve, between the right atrium and right ventricle, develops from the cardiac walls in the same way as the bicuspid valve. Their formation is discussed by Mall (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1912, vol. 13, pp. 249–298).

In the embryonic heart, the left atrium receives most of its blood through the foramen ovale, but the pulmonary veins early grow out from it as a small vessel (Fig. 161, D) which sends four branches to the lungs. These are given off near the heart, and with the enlargement of the atrium they come to open into it separately. After birth they are the only supply of the left atrium, and they convey the same quantity of blood as the veins which enter the right atrium.

Layers of the Heart. Early in the development of the heart a third layer, consisting of mesenchyma, forms between the endothelium and mesothelium. It gives rise to the cardiac musculature, and toward the primary layers it produces connective tissue. The wall of the heart in the adult is divided into three layers, the *endocardium*, *myocardium* and *epicardium* respectively. The endocardium consists of the endothelium, which is continuous with that of the blood vessels, and of subendothelial fibrous tissue. According to Mall, this tissue is derived from the endothelium. The myocardium is the muscle layer, which is thin in the atria, but very thick in the ventricles; in the left ventricle it is much thicker than in the right. The epicardium consists of the pericardial epithelium together with underlying connective tissue. This layer is also called the *visceral pericardium*, and with the parietal pericardium it bounds the pericardial cavity, forming a closed sac containing the pericardial fluid. The general relations of these layers in an embryonic heart are shown in Fig. 162. The epicardium is a smooth layer. The musculature of the ventricles is arranged in trabeculæ covered with endothelium, between which there are blood spaces classed as sinusoids. In the adult the musculature is more compact, but internally it is indented by many clefts and irregular spaces, extending among the *trabeculæ carneæ* and the conical papillary muscles.

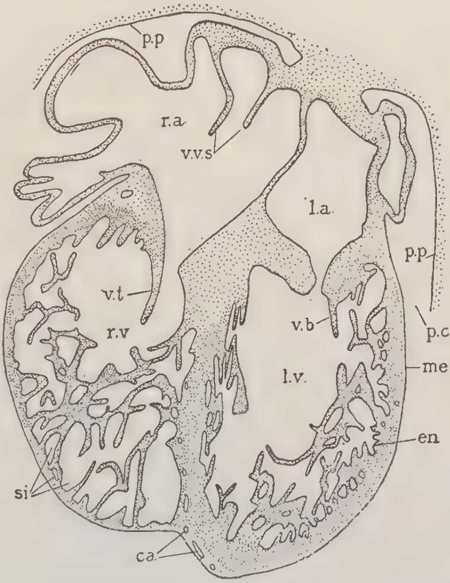


Fig. 162.—Section of the Heart Shown in Fig. 161, F. **ca.**, Capillaries; **en.**, endothelium; **l. a.**, left atrium; **l. v.**, left ventricle; **mes.**, mesothelium (of the epicardium, or visceral pericardium); **p. c.**, pericardial cavity; **p. p.**, parietal pericardium; **r. a.**, right atrium; **r. v.**, right ventricle; **si.**, sinusoids; **v. b.**, bicuspid valve; **v. t.**, tricuspid valve; **v. v. s.**, valves of the venous sinus.

Endocardium. The endocardium consists of endothelium which is a single layer of flat, irregularly polygonal cells, and of the underlying connective tissue which contains smooth muscle and many elastic fibers (Fig. 163). Elastic fibers are more highly developed in the atria than in the ventricles; they occur either as networks of thick fibers or fuse to form fenestrated membranes. Smooth muscle fibers are more numerous where the wall of the heart is smooth; they are most abundant in front of the root of the aorta.

The atrio-ventricular valves are essentially folds of endocardium containing dense fibro-elastic tissue continuous with the similar tissue in the *annuli fibrosi*. The valves contain muscle fibers toward these rings, and elastic fibers which are prolonged into the *chordæ tendineæ*. Blood vessels are found only in the basal portion of the valves, where the muscle fibers occur. The semilunar valves of the pulmonary artery and aorta contain neither muscle fibers nor vessels. Their elastic fibers are found chiefly on the ventricular sides of the valve, and in the *noduli* (which are thickenings in the middle of the circumference of each segment, to perfect their approximation when closed).

Myocardium. The myocardium consists of muscle fibers arranged in layers or sheets, which are wound about the ventricles in complex spirals, making a vortex at the apex of each ventricle. If the heart is boiled in dilute acid these layers may be unwound, and the heart has frequently been investigated in this way, as by Mall (Amer. Journn. Anat., 1911, vol. 11, pp. 211–266). The layers are composed of cardiac muscle, which is a syncytium of striated fibers with central nuclei and intercalated

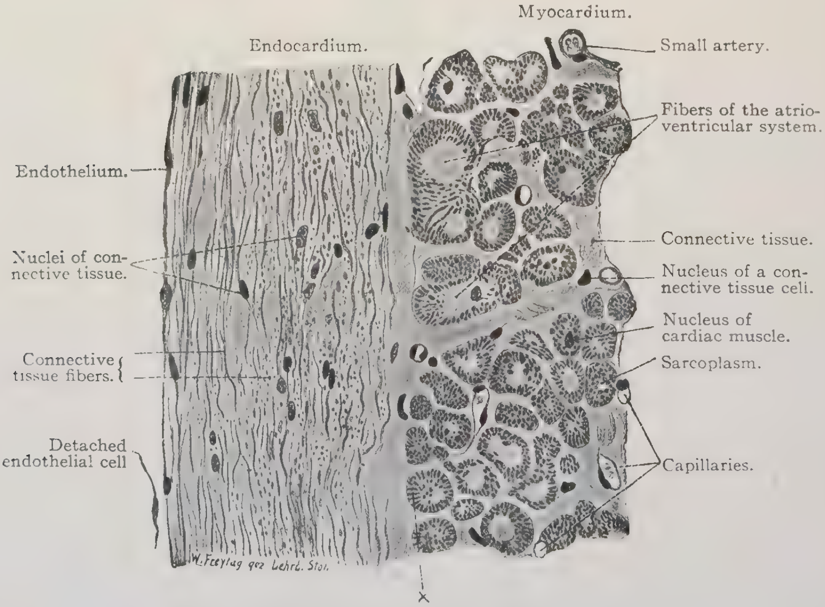

Myocardium.
Endocardium.
Small artery.
Fibers of the atrio-ventricular system.
Endothelium.
Connective tissue.
Nuclei of connective tissue.
Nucleus of a connective tissue cell.
Nucleus of cardiac muscle.
Connective tissue fibers.
Sarcoplasm.
Detached endothelial cell
Capillaries.
W. Freytag gez Lehrb. Stöhr
x

FIG. 163.—FROM A CROSS SECTION OF THE PECTINATE MUSCLE OF A HUMAN HEART (RIGHT ATRIUM). × 240.
The muscle fibrils in transverse sections appear as points; at x they are radially arranged.

discs, as already described (p. 128). Cardiac muscle is shown in longitudinal section in Fig. 106 (p. 127), and in transverse section in Fig. 163. Between the muscle fibers there are capillary branches of the coronary vessels which ramify in the epicardium. The capillaries come into close relation with the muscle fibers and some of them extend into the endocardium. Certain vessels, especially in the right atrium, empty into the cavity of the heart as small veins known as the *venæ minimæ* (or veins of Thebesius). Minute veins in the papillary muscles have been described as opening into the ventricle at both ends.

In the heart of adult frogs, the system of intermuscular clefts or lacunar vessels is the only blood supply of the ventricular musculature; the coronary vessels are limited to the epicardium. In turtles the coronary vessels supply an outer layer of the ventricular muscles, but the greater part is still nourished by the central lacunæ or sinusoids. This sinusoidal circulation, which is characteristic of the adult heart in lower vertebrates, occurs also in mammalian embryos, but it becomes vestigial in adult mammals.

A structure which has recently received much attention because of its functional importance is a small band of muscle fibers, associated with nerves, which passes from the septum between the atria into the septum between the ventricles. This *atrio-ventricular bundle* or "bundle of His" (discovered independently in 1893 by Kent and His, Jr.) represents the only connection between the musculature of the atria and ventricles; it passes through the fibrous tissue where the *annuli fibrosi* come together. The position of the bundle is shown in Fig. 164, after Curran (Anat. Rec., 1909, vol. 3, pp. 618–632). Extensive branches in the atria come from both sides of the heart into the inter-atrial septum, and converge from the fossa ovalis, the roots of the tricuspid valve and the orifice of the coronary sinus to form the *atrio-ventricular* node. This is "a small mass of inter-woven fibers in the central fibrous body of the heart," and the main bundle, 2–3 mm. wide, passes from it into the inter-ventricular septum. It passes under the *pars membranacea*, and divides into two branches which are distributed to the right and left ventricles, respectively. Their extensive ramifications have been modelled by Miss DeWitt. She describes the models, and briefly summarizes previous investigations of the bundle, in

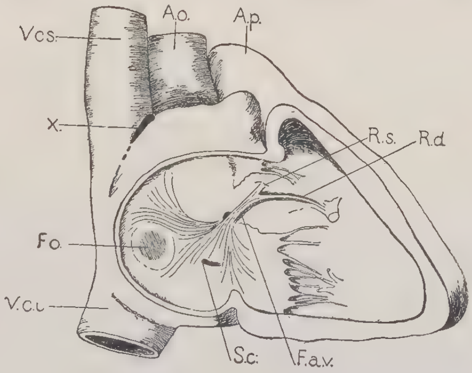


Fig. 164.—The Atrio-ventricular Bundle (**F. a. v.**), and the Position of the "Sino-atrial Node" (**x**) in a Human Heart. (After Curran and Aschoff.) **Ao.**, Aorta; **A. p.**, pulmonary artery; **F. o.**, fossa ovalis; **S. c.**, coronary sinus; **R. d.**, right branch of the atrio-ventricular bundle; and **R. s.**, its left branch; **V. c. i.**, vena cava inferior; **V. c. s.**, vena cava superior.

the Anatomical Record (1909, vol. 3, pp. 475–495); the subject is more fully considered by Aschoff (Verh. d. deutsch. path. Gesellsch., 1910, pp. 3–35).

The atrio-ventricular bundle is composed of muscle fibers which are pale macroscopically. They are larger than those of ordinary cardiac muscle, but contain fewer fibrils, peripherally placed and surrounded by abundant scaroplasm (Fig. 163). In the ventricle they are specially rich in glycogen. In the node, however, according to Miss DeWitt, the fibers, though varying greatly in size, are much smaller than those found elsewhere in the heart. Several of them unite at a point, producing stellate groups, and the entire node is an intricate network.

The fibers of the atrio-ventricular bundle resemble those described by Purkinje in the sheep, horse, cow and pig, but which he could not find in the rabbit, dog and man (Arch. f. Anat., Physiol. u. wiss. Med., 1845, pp. 281–295). In the walls of the ventricle, immediately beneath the endocardium, he observed "first with the naked eye, a network of gray, flat gelatinous threads, which in part were prolonged into the papillary muscles, and in part passed like bridges across the separate folds and clefts." Under the microscope, they appeared very granular, but he decided that they were probably muscular. Purkinje's fibers are regarded as imperfectly developed muscle fibers. In the human heart they are not as distinct from the other cardiac muscle fibers as in the sheep. It is possible that they are directly continuous with the cardiac syncytium, although, as noted by Miss DeWitt, if the transition is gradual it will be very difficult to observe in sections.

At the junction of the superior vena cava and the atrium, Keith and Flack have described a peculiar musculature imbedded in densely packed connective tissue, composed of striated, fusiform fibers, plexiform in arrangement, with well-marked elongated nuclei, "in fact, of closely similar structure to the node" (Journ. Anat. and Physiol., 1907, vol. 41, pp. 172–189). These fibers are said to be in close relation with the vagus and sympathetic nerves; they have a special arterial supply. According to Keith and Flack they are situated at the junction of the sinus venosus and the atrium, and they form the *sino-atrial node* (sino-auricular node). The sino-atrial node is found immediately beneath the epicardium in the position shown in Fig. 164. In it the impulse for the heart beat is believed to originate, and to be transmitted to the atrio-ventricular node; the latter correlates the contraction of the atrium with that of the ventricle. See also Johnstone and Wakefield, Ant. Rec., 1922, vol. 24. pp. 223–231.

Epicardium. The epicardium is a connective tissue layer, covered with simple flat mesothelium and containing elastic fibers and many fat cells. The latter are distributed along the course of the blood vessels.

Vessels and Nerves. The branches of the coronary vessels pass from the epicardium into the myocardium, forming capillaries in intimate relation with the muscle fibers. The heart is thus supplied with aerated blood from the root of the aorta, as well as by the blood within its own cavities; on the left side this is aerated, but not on the right.

The lymphatic vessels, draining toward the base of the heart, are very abundant, and true lymphatic vessels are found in all layers of the heart. The tissue spaces in the myocardium are also extensive.

The nerves to the heart have already been described as forming the cardiac plexus. This plexus receives branches from the vagus and from the sympathetic cardiac nerves proceeding from the cervical sympathetic ganglia. It sends its fibers toward the heart, where they follow the coronary vessels in their ramifications. The *cardiac ganglion* is associated with the superficial part of the cardiac plexus, and is under the arch of the aorta. Other small ganglia occur on the posterior wall of the atria, and scattered ganglion cells are found along the atrio-ventricular bundle. They have been reported along the nerves elsewhere in the heart. The ganglion cells are probably in connection with efferent fibers from the central nervous system, which include two sorts—fibers from the ventral ramus of the accessory nerve, which pass out with the branches of the vagus and inhibit cardiac action; and fibers from the spinal nerves, by way of the inferior cervical ganglion, which accelerate it. Histologically nerve endings have been seen both within and around the capsules of cardiac ganglion cells. It is said that the medullated nerve fibers from the central system end within the capsules; and that non-medullated branches from adjacent sympathetic ganglia end outside of them. Motor endings in contact with cardiac muscle have also been found. Sensory endings have been described both in the epicardium and endocardium. They consist of terminal ramifications forming "end-plates." Some of these fibers presumably connect with sympathetic cells near at hand; others are terminations of afferent medullated fibers which are said to pass to the medulla, along the vagus trunk, as the "depressor nerve."

Lymphatic Vessels

General Features. The lymphatic vessels are far less conspicuous than the blood vessels, but they are no less important and are widely distributed throughout the body. Those which occur in the mesentery and are filled with a milky fluid after intestinal digestion has been going on are the most conspicuous. These "arteries containing milk" were observed by Erasistratus, an anatomist of Alexandria who died in 280 B. C., but the observation was discredited by Galen. When Aselli in 1622 found the white vessels in a living dog which he had opened, and had shown by cutting into them that they were not nerves, it was essentially a new and great discovery. Aselli observed that the vessels were filled only after digestion, at other times being scarcely visible. He traced them to a mass of lymph glands which he mistook for the pancreas, and believed that they passed on into the liver (De lactibus sive lacteis venis, 1627). Years before the physiological observations of Aselli, Eustachius (who died in 1574) had described the main trunk of the lymphatic system in his treatise on the azygos vein (De vena sine pari, Syngramma XIII, Opusc. anat., 1707). He states that from the posterior side of the root of left jugular vein (Fig. 165) "a certain large branch is given off, which has a semicircular valve at its origin, and moreover is white and full of aqueous humor."

> "Not far from its source, it splits into two parts which come together a little further on. Giving off no branches, and lying against the left side of the vertebræ, having penetrated the diaphragm, it is borne along to the middle of the loins. There, having become larger and folded around the great artery, it has an obscure ending, not clearly made out by me up to the present time."

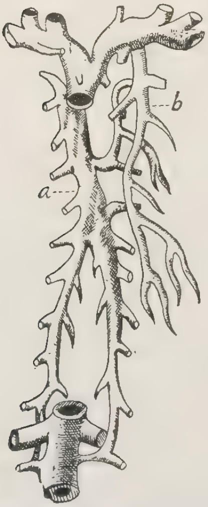
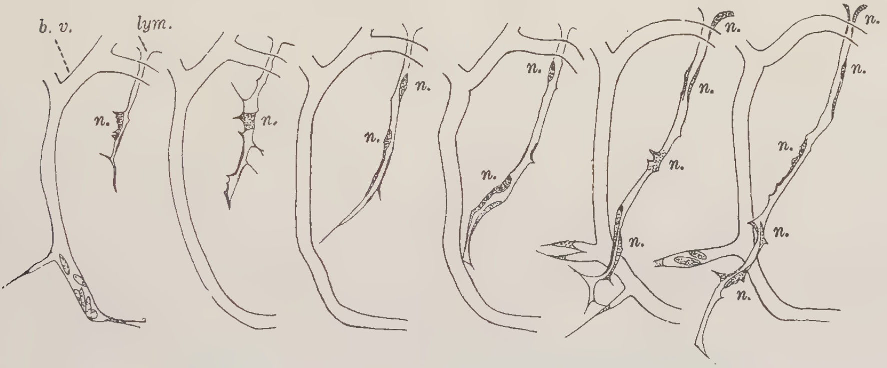


Fig. 165.—The Azygos Vein (a) and Thoracic Duct (b) as Figured by Eustachius.

The vessel so well described by Eustachius is now known as the *thoracic duct*. It has the structure of a vein, and empties its contents into the blood at the junction of the left internal jugular and left subclavian veins. It receives branches from the left side of the head and the left arm, as well as from the trunk of the body. There is a corresponding vessel on the right side, known as the *right lymphatic duct*. It drains the right side of the head, the right arm, and adjacent territory, emptying at the junction of the right internal jugular and subclavian veins. Having no connection with the abdominal lymphatic vessels, however, it is much smaller than the thoracic duct on the left.

The connection between the lacteal vessels in the mesentery, seen by Aselli, and the thoracic duct observed by Eustachius, was demonstrated physiologically by Pecquet (Experimenta nova anatomica, 1651). He found a whitish fluid coming from the vena cava superior of a dog from which the heart had been excised, and observed that its flow was increased by pressure on the mesenteries. Moreover he described the receptaculum chyli, or enlargement of the thoracic duct dorsal to the aorta, which receives the chylous fluid. This is now called the *cisterna chyli*. The distribution of the lymphatic vessels, which are ramifications of these main trunks, was followed out by skillful injections, and the results of such studies were presented in great folios by Mascagni (1787) and Sappey (1874). Considered as a whole the lymphatic system may be compared with a venous system which has no corresponding arteries; it is composed entirely of afferent vessels.

The question of the origin of blood vessels and lymphatic vessels has occupied the minds of many anatomists. The early embryologists held that all blood vessels of the body were derived as sprouts from the vascular net on the yolk sac, and later Ranvier extended this idea to include lymphatic vessels, which he thought grew out from the veins. A later school, of which Rückert and Huntington and McClure were leaders, claimed the independent origin of many vessels, of which the aorta was one, from the vacuolization of connective tissue cells or from the coalescence of mesenchymal spaces, which later anastomosed with existing vessels. Bremer by reconstructions in rabbit embryos was able to trace a network of fine solid cords between such isolated spaces and the yolk-sac blood vessels, suggesting that the apparently independent spaces were in fact irregularly hollowed-out portions of a continuous net. But Gräper and Hahn, on the other hand, found the aorta present on both sides in chick embryos from which one-half of the yolk-sac had previously been cut away, thus proving the independent origin of this vessel. For the lymphatic vessels, F. T. Lewis (Amer. Jour. Anat., 1910, vol. 10, pp. 177–311) maintained that the apparently detached spaces which precede the formation of well-defined vessels arise as sprouts from the veins, and in certain regions retain open endothelial connections with the main trunks, while in others becoming detached or connected only by slender endothelial strands; to others these detached spaces are evidence of an independent origin from the perivascular mesenchyma, though in certain places anastomoses occur later.



May 16, 11.30 A. M. | May 16, 11.30 P. M. | May 17, 11 A. M. | May 18, 12.30 P. M. | May 19, 11 A. M. | May 19, 11 P. M.

FIG. 166.—SUCCESSIVE STAGES IN THE GROWTH OF A LYMPHATIC VESSEL (**lym.**) IN THE TAIL OF A TADPOLE (*Rana palustris*). × 135. (Clark.)
b. v., Blood vessel; **n.**, nucleus of the lymphatic vessel.

Obviously the method of injection in living embryos, as practiced by Evans, is not suitable for the study of the origin of endothelial vessels, though extremely valuable in tracing their subsequent extension. Isolated spaces, whether or not joined to the vascular system by solid strands, would not be revealed by this method. Clark's observations on the vessels in the tails of tadpoles apply to the growth and activity of the endothelium, not to its developmental origin. He anaesthetized the tadpoles in small boxes with sides of cover-glass thickness, and could thus see and draw the lymphatic and blood vessels of the membranous part of the tail under immersion lenses. By repeating the anaesthetization and drawing the same vessels at intervals, the growth of vascular sprouts was demonstrated, as shown in Fig. 166. Sometimes the sprout would grow toward an escaped blood corpuscle or some foreign fragment, which would be engulfed and returned to the main stream. His numerous papers are referred to in the Amer. Journ. Anat., 1925, vol. 35, pp. 239–264.

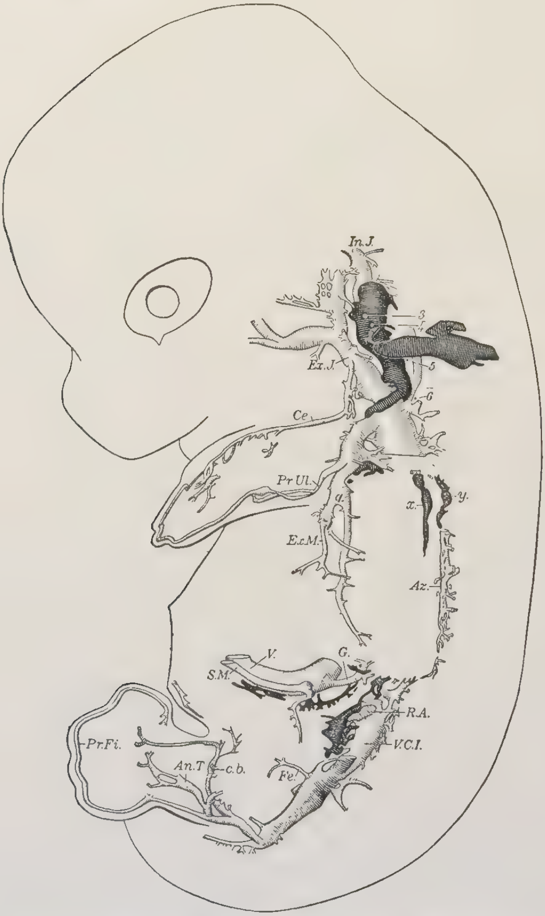


Fig. 167.– Lymphatic Vessels and Veins in a Rabbit of Fourteen Days, Eighteen Hours; 14.5 mm. × 11.5.

The lymphatics are heavily shaded, **x** being a vessel along the left vagus nerve and **y** along the aorta. The large jugular lymph sac is in contact with the internal jugular vein, **In. J.**; it passes to the junction of the external jugular (**Ex. J.**) and subclavian veins, the latter being formed by the union of the primitive ulnar, **Pr. Ul.**, and external mammary veins, **Ex. M.** The mesenteric sac is in front of the vena cava inferior (**V. C. I.**) and below the renal anastomosis (**R. A.**). Other veins include **AZ.**, azygos; **V.**, vitelline; **G.**, gastric; **S. M.**, superior mesenteric; etc. The figures indicate the position of the corresponding cervical nerves.

Perhaps it is chiefly the difference in the methods employed by different investigators which has led to the long controversy. Even a careful study of microscopic sections leads to different interpretations. The difficulty of distinguishing an intercellular space between mesenchymal cells, open freely on all sides among the mesenchymal processes, from a similar space lined by a definite endothelium can be very real, since the endothelium is so thin as to be practically invisible when it lies in the plane of the slide. A resumé of the enormous amount of work done on this subject is given by McClure, Anat. Rec., 1921, vol. 22, pp. 219–237.

Development. The development of the mammalian lymphatic system begins with the formation of a pair of very large sacs lined with endothelium, situated at the junction of the jugular and subclavian veins (Fig. 167). These *jugular lymph sacs* were first described by Miss Sabin (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1902, vol. 1, pp. 367–389); they appear in human embryos measuring about 10 mm. and are formed by the union of several outgrowths from the veins, or by the coalescence of tissue spaces which subsequently join the veins. In slightly older embryos, another lymph sac is produced at the root of the mesentery, below the place where the renal veins enter the vena cava inferior (Lewis, Amer. Journ. Anat., 1902, vol. 1, pp. 229–244). At other places, which must be regarded as secondary centers, lymphatic vessels appear in the mesenchyma as isolated spaces, usually along the course of the veins, at no great distance from the jugular and mesenteric lymphatics. Subsequently they become connected with one another by endothelial outgrowths, such as extend from the lymphatic vessels into the peripheral tissues as described by Clark. The mesenteric sac thus becomes connected with the left jugular sac (symmetri-

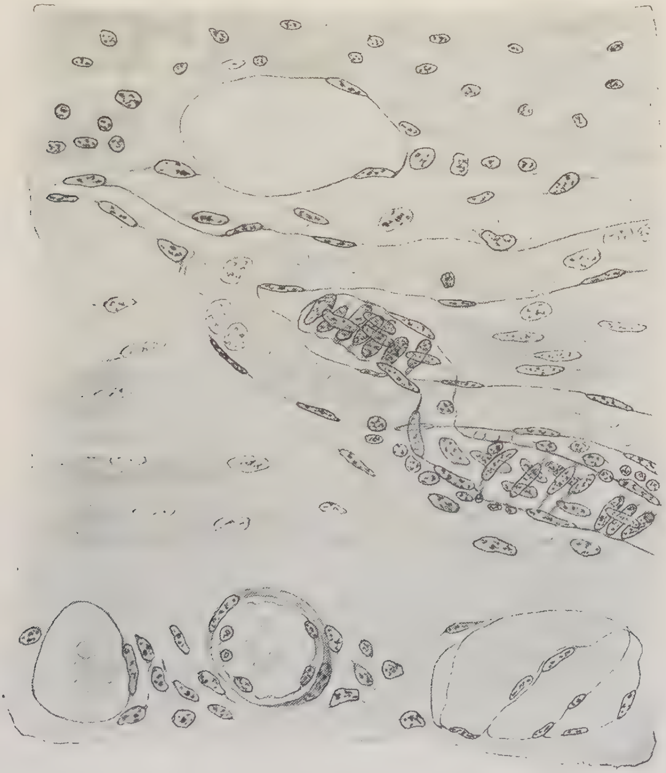


Fig. 168.—Small Vessels between the Muscular Layers of the Small Intestine.
Above, a lymphatic vessel in cross section; at the left, a capillary entering a looped venule; crossing the venule is an arteriole with a few circular muscle fibers, seen in section at the sides and cut longitudinally either above or below the endothelial nuclei. In the lower part of the figure a venule, an arteriole (not contracted) and a lymphatic vessel with valves.

cal connections with both jugular sacs occur in some animals) and the connecting vessels constitute the thoracic duct. The cisterna chyli is a secondary enlargement dorsal to the aorta. In the adult the sacs are replaced by plexuses of smaller vessels.

LYMPHATIC VESSELS IN THE ADULT. In sections of the intestine from an animal in which intestinal digestion was in progress, lymphatic vessels may readily be found between the muscle layers (Figs. 168 and 169).

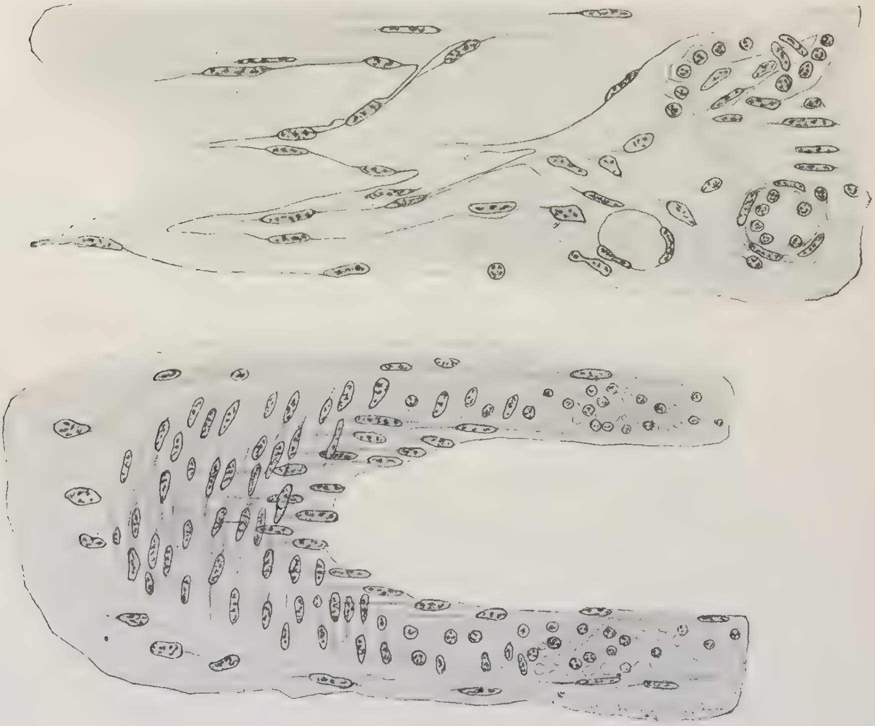


FIG. 169.—FROM THE SAME REGION AS FIG. 168.

A lymphatic vessel is shown cut lengthwise at a valve, just distal to an entering branch. At the lower right corner an arteriole, the endothelium thrown into ridges by the contracted muscles. The lower figure is a small artery cut obliquely; note the endothelial ridges, containing nuclei, of the top wall of the vessel, and the transversely running muscle, changing to transversely cut muscle fibers as the sides of the vessel come into the section.

Their walls are decidedly thinner than those of blood vessels of the same caliber, and their contents are typically a granular or fibrinous coagulum free from red corpuscles, but containing an occasional lymphocyte. It must be remembered, however, that blood vessels seen in sections are not infrequently empty, and that blood corpuscles may be taken into the lymphatic vessels. Having learned to recognize the lymphatics in such favorable situations as the intermuscular tissue, one may readily identify them in the connective tissue layer internal to the circular muscle of the intestine, and in the connective tissue around the bronchioles in the lung; in the embryonic lung they are very conspicuous. They may then be sought for in various organs, but a sharp distinction must be drawn between the endothelium-lined lymphatic vessels and the interfibrillar tissue spaces.

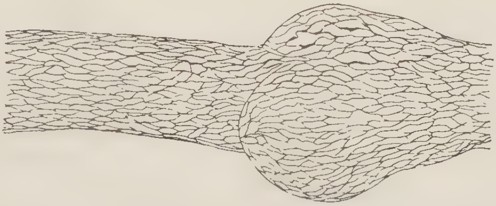


FIG. 170.—SILVER NITRATE PREPARATION OF A LYMPHATIC VESSEL FROM A RABBIT'S MESENTERY, SHOWING THE BOUNDARIES OF THE ENDOTHELIAL CELLS, AND A BULGING JUST BEYOND A VALVE.

When prepared with silver nitrate, the outlines of the endothelial cells are seen to resemble those of blood vessels (Fig. 170), and in the larger lymphatic vessels the endothelium with the underlying connective tissue forms a *tunica intima*. These lymphatics (0.2–0.8 mm. in diameter), are often composed of three coats, though loose in texture. The media contains circular smooth muscle fibers and a small amount of elastic tissue; and the externa is composed of longitudinal connective tissue and scattered bundles of longitudinal muscle. Thus they resemble the veins more closely than the arteries. Valves are very numerous in lymphatic vessels. They are shown in section in Fig. 169. In the small vessels the valves are described as folds of endothelium, such as would be produced if the distal part of the vessel were pushed forward into the proximal part. The vessels are often distended on the proximal side of the valve, producing bulbous enlargements, as shown in Fig. 170. Owing to the presence of these valves, compression of tissue containing lymphatic vessels, or the contraction of the muscles of the media, causes an onward flow of the lymph. The nerves to lymphatic vessels are like those of the blood vessels. Lymphatics are provided with vasa vasorum. As shown by Evans (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1907, vol. 7, pp. 195-208) very small lymphatic vessels are accompanied by blood capillaries, and the larger lymphatics are surrounded by a wide-meshed capillary network resting on the outer side of the lymphatic media. (In the same volume of the Journal, pp. 389-407, Miller describes the network of blood capillaries around the lymphatic vessels of the pleura.)

BLOOD

Blood consists of round cells entirely separate from one another, floating in an intercellular fluid, the *plasma*. The plasma also contains as a regular and apparently important functional constituent, the *blood plates* (or platelets), together with smaller granular bodies. Blood cells or *corpuscles* are of two sorts, (1) *red corpuscles* or *erythrocytes*, which become charged with the chemical compound, *hæmoglobin*, and which lose their nuclei as they become mature; and (2) *white corpuscles* or *leucocytes*, which are of several kinds, all of them retaining their nuclei and containing no hæmoglobin. The redness of blood is not due to the plasma, but is an optical effect produced by superimposed layers of the hæmoglobin-filled red corpuscles. Thin films of blood, like the individual red corpuscles seen fresh under the microscope, are yellowish green. Blood has a characteristic odor which has been ascribed to volatile fatty acids; it has an oily feeling associated with its viscosity, an alkaline reaction, and a specific gravity said to average in the adult from 1.050 to 1.060.

Red Corpuscles. *Development.* The first cells in the embryonic blood are apparently all of one sort, derived from the blood islands. They are large, round cells with a delicate membrane and a pale granular protoplasmic reticulum; their relatively large nuclei contain a fine chromatin network with several coarse chromatin masses. Hæmoglobin later develops in their protoplasm, giving it a refractive homogeneous appearance. Stained with orange G or eosin it is clear and brightly colored, generally quite unlike any other portion of the specimen. With iron hæmatoxylin it stains black. Often the hæmoglobin has been more or less dissolved from the corpuscles, which then appear granular or reticular.

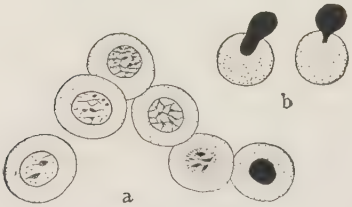


Fig. 171.—The Development of Red Corpuscles in Cat Embryos. (Howell.)

a, Successive stages in the development of a normoblast; **b**, the extrusion of the nucleus.

The developing red blood corpuscles are known as *erythroblasts*, especially in their younger stages when the nuclei are reticular. In later stages the nuclei become densely shrunken or pycnotic, and stain intensely with hæmatoxylin. The entire cells become smaller, and are then called *normoblasts*. The transition from an erythroblast to a normoblast is shown in Fig. 171, a; during this process the cells divide repeatedly by mitosis.

It will be noticed that the terms applied to developing corpuscles are compounded of words which describe the formative cells, instead of indicating what they produce. Thus *erythroblast* signifies a red formative cell. *Normoblast* (Lat. *norma*, model or type, and Gr. βλαστός) is an objectionable term to designate a nucleated red corpuscle of the usual size and form, in contrast with the large *megaloblasts* which occur in certain diseases of the blood. Megaloblasts have reticular nuclei and presumably represent a younger stage than the normoblasts. A reform in the nomenclature of blood cells based upon morphological principles, is advocated by Minot (Human Embryology, ed. by Keibel and Mall, 1912, vol. 2), and when agreement shall have been reached regarding the relationships of the cells, it will be possible to adopt a reasonable terminology.

In becoming mature red corpuscles the normoblasts lose their nuclei. Before they disappear, the pycnotic nuclei often assume mulberry, dumbbell, trefoil or other irregular shapes. According to older observations they then fragment, and are dissolved within the normoblasts; but it is now generally believed that they are extruded from the cells, either in one mass (Fig. 171, b) or in detached portions, and that the extruded nuclei are devoured by phagocytes. Emmel (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1914, vol. 16, pp. 127–205) watched the formation of non-nucleated red corpuscles, or plastids, in living blood from pig embryos. He found that the apparent extrusion of the nucleus is caused by the constriction of the cytoplasm of a nucleated cell, the nucleus and part of the protoplasm finally separating from a non-nucleated portion, the plastid, or red corpuscle. In the adult, however, cells with fragmented nuclei are much more commonly seen than those showing constriction. The loss of the nuclei begins in human embryos of the second month. In embryos of the seventh month, nucleated corpuscles in the circulating blood have become infrequent, and after birth it is rare to find one, except under pathological conditions.

In withdrawing from the circulating blood the nucleated red corpuscles do not disappear from the body. Since 1868 it has been known that the red marrow, found within certain bones in the adult, contains an abundance of erythroblasts, which multiply by mitosis. They are the source of the new corpuscles constantly entering the circulation. In certain diseases of the blood, imperfectly developed normoblasts also leave the marrow and circulate as in the embryo. Before the marrow assumes the bloodforming function, the liver is the chief hæmatopoietic organ. Beginning in embryos of about 7.5 mm., and continuing until birth, erythroblasts are found between the hepatic cells and the endothelial cells of the sinusoids, and in certain stages they occur in vast numbers. Toward birth, however, the erythroblasts in the liver are no longer abundant, and in a few weeks after birth they are said to disappear entirely. Red blood corpuscles are formed also in the embryonic spleen, though to a less extent than in the liver, and in some mammals the spleen normally contains erythroblasts in the adult.

In regard to the source of the erythroblasts in the spleen, liver and red marrow, two opinions are held. It is well known that erythroblasts and fully-formed red corpuscles may wander out of the vessels into connective tissue. Accordingly it is often stated that the circulating erythroblasts, which at first multiply in the blood vessels, later withdraw to the reticular tissue of the liver, spleen, and marrow and there proliferate. Others consider that the erythroblasts are formed *in situ* in these various places from the endothelial or reticular tissue cells.

Both phylogenetically and ontogenetically the developmental history of the red blood corpuscle is repeated. In adult fishes nucleated cells comparable to erythroblasts are the normal form; in reptiles the normoblast is the adult cell. In young mammalian embryos, again, the cell with vesicular nucleus appears first, later are found forms with contracted nuclei, and still later the non-nucleated plastids. Typical erythroblasts are shown in sections of a chick embryo of 96° (Fig. 36), and normoblasts are present in the blood stream of 10 mm. pig embryos.

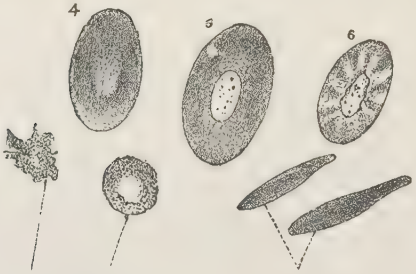


Fig. 172.—Blood Corpuscles from a Frog.
4, 5, and 6, Surface views of red corpuscles; 6, after treatment with water. × 600.

Mature Red Corpuscles. In the lower vertebrates, the mature red corpuscles or erythrocytes are oval nucleated bodies, more or less biconvex, thus differing radically from those of adult mammals. They are very large in the amphibia (Fig. 172). But even in the latter class there are a few species in which the blood is characterized by the presence of non-nucleated erythrocytes so that erythroplastids of this sort are not confined to mammals. (Emmel, 1924, Amer. Journ. Anat., Vol. 33.) When a drop of freshly drawn mammalian blood is spread in a thin film on a glass slide, beneath a cover glass, it is seen to consist chiefly of biconcave discs, and of those in the form of shallow saucers (Fig. 173). They have a remarkable tendency to pile up in *rouleaux*, like rolls of coins. It is said that discs of cork weighted so that they will float beneath the surface of water, will come together in a similar way if their surfaces have been coated with an oily substance. If the blood coagulates, filaments of fibrin will be seen in the plasma, as shown in the figure. In fresh specimens there is no fibrin, and within the blood vessels it does not form

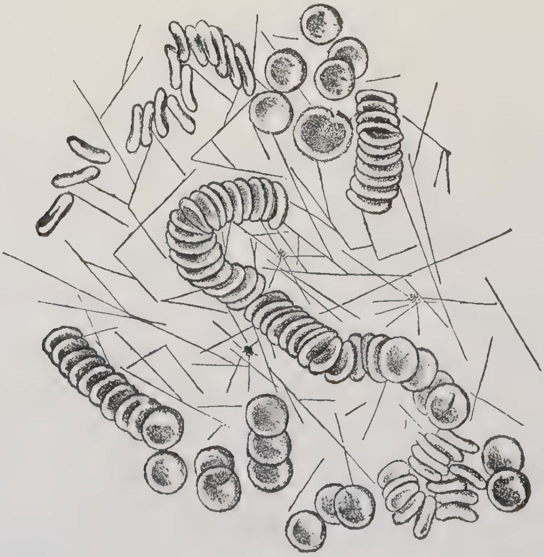


Fig. 173.—Red Corpuscles Forming Rouleaux. Fibrin in Filaments Radiates from the Blood Plates. (From Da Costa's Clinical Hæmatology.)

under normal conditions. Moreover when they are within the endothelial tubes, red corpuscles do not come together in rouleaux. It is evident that the thin film of blood, though very fresh, is examined under extremely artificial conditions; and from such preparations, conclusions as to the normal shape of the corpuscles should not be hastily drawn. Within the blood vessels the red corpuscles are typically cup-shaped.

Rindfleisch (Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1880, vol. 17, pp. 21–42) found that the corpuscles in guinea-pig embryos, after losing their nuclei by extrusion, are at first bell-shaped; but he considered that afterward they become biconcave discs from impact with others in the circulating blood. Commenting upon this statement, Howell (Journ. of Morph., 1890, vol 4, pp. 57–116) writes:

"I feel convinced that the bell shape which Rindfleisch ascribes to the corpuscles which have just lost their nuclei is a mistake. The red corpuscles even of the circulation, as is well known, frequently take this shape when treated with reagents of any kind, or even when examined without the addition of any liquid. It seems very natural to suppose that the biconcavity of the mammalian corpuscle is directly caused by the loss of the nucleus from its interior. Certainly as long as the corpuscles retain their nuclei, they are more or less spherical, and after they lose their nuclei they become biconcave."

In the year preceding Howell's publication, Dekhuyzen discussed *cup-shaped* corpuscles (Becherförmige rote Blutkörperchen, Anat. Anz., 1899, vol. 15, pp. 206–212) which he found as a transient stage in mammals, and which his assistant saw in blood drawn from his finger. Dujardin (Manuel de l'observateur au microscope, 1842) found many corpuscles shaped "like cups, or cupules (acorn cups) with thick borders" in blood altered by the action of phosphate of soda. The first reference to such forms is by Leeuwenhoek (1717) who put a drop of blood in a concoction of pareira brava, and found that most of the globules which make the blood red, have "a certain bend or sinus receding within, as if we had a vesicle full of water and by pressure of the finger should hollow out the middle of the vesicle as a pit or depression." Von Ebner, in Koelliker's Handbuch (1902), writes of bell or cap-shaped corpuscles produced in warmed blood by the thickening of the border on one surface of the disc. Weidenreich in 1902 (Arch. f. mikr. Anat., vol. 61, pp. 459–507) after thorough study of blood variously preserved, and also examined while circulating in the mesentery of a rabbit, concluded that "the red corpuscles of mammals have the form of bells (Glocken)." Arey (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1917, vol. 22, pp. 439–474) reviews the previous work on the shape of red blood corpuscles, and adds some new experiments. He concludes "that the biconcave disc represents the normal shape of the erythroplastid—the concavo-convex cup being merely an occasional modification," which may be brought about through irregular shrinkage of the disc.

According to this observer in solutions corresponding to ca. 0.9 per cent. sodium chloride concentration (normal saline), biconcave forms predominate, but cup shapes appear in less concentrated (hypotonic) solutions. Thus blood obtained by pricking through a hypotonic fixative placed on the finger would give cups; and the same would be true of tissues immediately fixed in such fluids. Many of the usual fixatives are hypotonic. Anaesthetization also may induce cup forms, thus invalidating many of the results of direct examination of flowing blood in the capillaries. Since the corpuscles are extremely delicate and easily moulded, pressure from contact may change their shape, and in fixed tissues square or angular forms are frequent.

In examining films of fresh blood, the biconcave discs will be seen to change their appearance as the objective is lowered. When sharply in focus the thin central portion appears light (Fig. 174, A); but in high focus the center is dark, perhaps owing to the dispersal of light by the lenticular corpuscles. The biconcave shape is apparent when the corpuscle is seen on edge (Fig. 174, B). The cup-shaped forms are shown in Fig. 174, D; and E represents one of the innumerable shapes due to shrinkage. The cups may be irregularly infolded, presenting shapes which can be imitated by indenting a soft hat. If the corpuscles are placed in water or a dilute solution, their hæmoglobin passes out and water enters, so that they are reduced to transparent membranes or shadows (Fig. 174, F). Such forms are often seen in clinical examinations of urine. In dense solutions, and in fresh preparations as the plasma becomes thicker from evaporation, water leaves the corpuscles. They then shrink, producing spiny or nodular round masses of hæmoglobin, known as *crenated corpuscles* (Fig. 174, G). A 0.6 per cent. aqueous solution of common salt is said to cause the least distortion from swelling or shrinkage. In life the corpuscles doubtless change their shape, responding to the variations in their hæmoglobin content and in the surrounding plasma. Occasionally they are spherical (according to Schultze, and others), and deviations from the primary form are to be expected. In these changes the corpuscles act like membranes filled with fluid. In the mature corpuscles, however, the outer layer is thick, blending with the contents within; and since no sharp bounding line can be seen histologically, the corpuscles have been described as lacking membranes. The plastic nature of the membrane is shown by heating the blood film. The corpuscles then become globular and send out slender varicose processes, or round knobs attached by pedicles (Fig. 174, H). These small spheres become detached in great numbers.

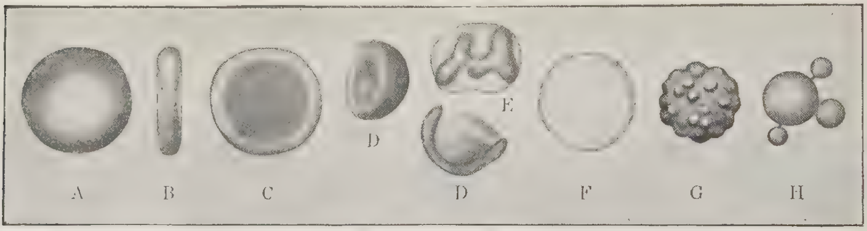


Fig. 174.—Red Corpuscles in Various Conditions.

The dimensions of red corpuscles are quite constant. Those in human blood average 7.5 μ in diameter and ordinarily vary from 7.2 to 7.8 μ. They sometimes surpass these limits. In biconcave form they are about 1.6 μ thick. The cups average 7 μ in diameter and are 4 μ in depth. Spherical corpuscles are said to be 5 μ in diameter. The blood of mammals other than man also contains cups which become discs. The latter are oval in the camel group but round in all others. Their average diameters are less than in man (7.3 μ in the dog, 7.48 μ in the guinea-pig), but the species of animal cannot satisfactorily be determined from the diameter of the corpuscles. In a given section, as already noted, the red corpuscles furnish a useful gauge for estimating the size of other structures.

The number of red corpuscles in a cubic millimeter of human blood averages five million for men, and four million five hundred thousand for women. By diluting a small measured quantity of blood and spreading it over a specially ruled slide, the corpuscles may be counted, and the number per cubic millimeter calculated. A diminished number is of clinical importance.

Histologically the red corpuscles usually appear as homogeneous bodies. By certain methods a granular network can be found in the cytoplasm of some of them. Clinically considerable stress is laid on this reticulation as indicating newly formed corpuscles (as in cases of anæmia). It may be due to the persistence of the protoplasmic reticulum of the erythroblasts, or to the presence of mitochondria, which are said to be absent in the mature corpuscle. Other evidences of immaturity are the "Howell-Jolly bodies" and "Cabot rings," large or minute masses within the protoplasm, taking nuclear stains and supposed to represent fragments of the disintegrating nucleus. Recently Isaacs (Anat. Record, 1925, vol. 29, pp. 299–313) notes that a brilliantly refractive granule in the cell denotes a still later stage of immaturity. The fatty exoplasmic layer which invests the corpuscle and serves as a membrane is not sharply marked out in stained specimens; it appears to blend with the contents of the corpuscle. Although the corpuscles may pass out of the vessels by "diapedesis," they are not actively motile, and their margins never present pseudopodia. The characteristics of hæmoglobin may be described as follows:

Hæmoglobin is an exceedingly complex chemical substance which combines readily with oxygen to form *oxyhæmoglobin.* To the latter the bright color of arterial blood is due. Venous blood becomes similarly red on exposure to air. Through the oxyhæmoglobin, oxygen is transferred from the lungs to the tissues. Hæmoglobin may be dissolved from the corpuscles by mixing blood with ether, and upon evaporation it crystallizes in rhombic shapes which vary with different animals. Those from the dog are shown in Fig. 175, 4; in man they are also chiefly prismatic. Hæmoglobin is readily decomposed into a variety of substances, some of which retain the iron which is a part of the hæmoglobin molecule, others lose it. *Hæmatoidin*, considered identical with a pigment (bilirubin) of the bile, is an iron-free substance occurring either as yellow or brown granules, or as rhombic crystals. The crystals (Fig. 175, 3) may be found in old blood extravasations within the body, as in the corpus luteum of the ovary. *Hæmosiderin*, which contains iron, appears as yellowish or brown granules sometimes extremely fine, either within or between cells. The iron may be recognized by the ferrocyanide test which makes these minute granules bright blue. If dry blood from a stain is placed on a slide with a crystal of common salt the size of a pin-head, and both are dissolved in a large drop of glacial acetic acid which is then heated to the boiling point, a product of hæmoglobin is formed, called *hæmin*. It crystallizes in rhombic plates or prisms of mahogany brown color (Fig. 175, 1). Such crystals would show that a suspected stain was a blood stain, but they afford no indication of the species of animal from which it was derived.

The duration of the life of mature red corpuscles is unknown, but is supposed to be brief. They may be devoured intact by phagocytes, but generally they first break into numerous small granules. These may be ingested by certain leucocytes, or by the peculiar endothelial cells of the liver. Their products are thought to be eliminated in part as bile pigment. The destruction of red corpuscles occurs especially in the spleen and hæmolymph glands; to a less extent in the lymph glands and red bone marrow. Pigmented cells in some of these structures derive their pigment from destroyed corpuscles. Sometimes a "stippling" or granule formation occurs within the corpuscle, which has been ascribed to degeneration of the hæmoglobin. The dissolution of red corpuscles is known as *hæmolysis* and follows the injection of certain poisonous substances into the blood. It occurs in various diseases. The study of the effects of mixing the blood of one species of animal with that of another, has provided a very perfect means of distinguishing the species from which a blood stain of unknown origin may have been derived.

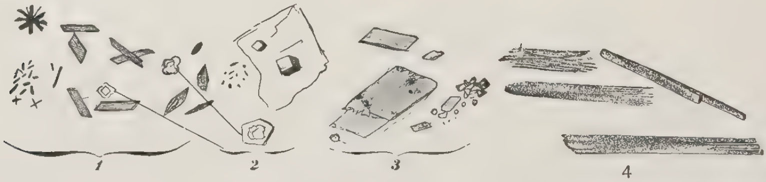


Fig. 175.

1, Hæmin crystals and 3, hæmatoidin crystals from human blood; 2, crystals of common salt (× 560); 4, hæmoglobin crystals from a dog (× 100).

White Corpuscles. The white corpuscles or leucocytes are those blood cells which retain their nuclei and do not contain hæmoglobin. The number of white corpuscles in a cubic millimeter of human blood is about eight thousand. If it exceeds ten thousand the condition is called *leucocytosis* and becomes of clinical importance. There exists, therefore, normally but one leucocyte for five or six hundred red corpuscles. In the circulating blood the two sorts are said not to be evenly mixed; the leucocytes are more numerous in the slower peripheral part of the blood stream, near the endothelium. The leucocytes may be divided into three classes according to their nuclear characteristics, namely, into *lymphocytes*, *large mononuclear leucocytes*, and *polymorphonuclear leucocytes*.

Lymphocytes have already been briefly described with the constituents of connective tissue (Fig. 54, p. 75). Ordinarily they are small cells, about the size of red corpuscles, 4–7.5 μ in diameter. Large ones may be double this diameter. Their protoplasm forms a narrow rim, sometimes almost imperceptible, about the dense round nucleus (Fig. 176, A). The chromatin is arranged in a network associated with coarse chromatic masses such as cause a characteristic checkered appearance. Some of the masses rest against the nuclear membrane. Lymphocytes are capable of amœboid motion but not to the extent of the polymorphonuclear type. It is thought that they are not often phagocytic, though sometimes stainable granules may be found in their protoplasm. They form from 22 to 25% of all leucocytes.

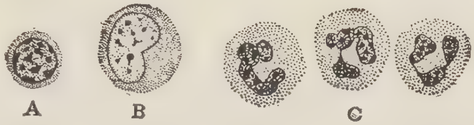


Fig. 176.—Leucocytes as seen in a Section of Human Tissue Preserved with Zenker's Fluid.
A, Lymphocyte; **B,** large mononuclear leucocyte; **C,** three polymorphonuclear neutrophiles.

Large mononuclear leucocytes, sometimes 20 μ in diameter, form only from 1 to 3% of the leucocytes. They possess round, oval, slightly indented, or crescentic nuclei, which are vesicular and usually eccentric in position. Their chromatin occurs in a few large granules; as a whole the nucleus is clear and pale (Fig. 176, B). The protoplasm, which is abundant, usually lacks coarse granules or other distinctive features. Sometimes it contains a few deeply staining granules. The large mononuclear leucocytes are notably phagocytic. In certain respects they are intermediate between lymphocytes and polymorphonuclear cells, and they were formerly known as "transitional cells." Apparently, however, they are derived directly from the modified endothelial cells lining the sinuses of the lymph glands, and they have sometimes been regarded as the youngest of the forms of cells shown in Fig. 176.

Polymorphonuclear leucocytes are cells somewhat larger than red corpuscles, being from 7.5 to 10 μ in diameter. They are characterized by having nuclei with irregular constrictions leading to an endless variety of shapes (Fig. 176, C). The nodular subdivisions may be connected by broad bands or by slender filaments. It is said that in degenerating cells the nucleus becomes divided into several separate masses. Such forms can properly be called "polynuclear," an abbreviated term which is a misnomer as applied to the ordinary cells; "mononuclear" as designating the preceding types is also unfortunate since it implies that others have several nuclei. The irregular shape of the polymorphous nuclei has been ascribed to degenerative changes, comparable to those seen in the erythroblast nuclei. On the other hand this shape is by some considered to be of advantage as affording more nuclear surface. Within the concavity of the nucleus the centrosome may be found, surrounded by a light area;

usually it occurs as a diplosome. (In the forms of corpuscles with round nuclei eccentrically placed, the centrosome is on the side where the protoplasm is most abundant.) The polymorphonuclear leucocytes are actively amœboid, and particles readily pass through their superficial layer, but like other forms of leucocytes they are covered with a very delicate cell membrane.

Max Schultze in the first paper published in the Archiv für mikroskopische Anatomie (1865, vol. 1, pp. 1–42) described an apparatus for the examination of microscopic specimens at the body temperature, which he used in studying human blood. He observed the active creeping movements of the leucocytes, closely similar to those of the most delicate amœbæ, and watched them take up particles of carmine and other dyes placed in a drop of fresh blood. "The act of ingestion," as he describes it, "is accompanied by no striking maneuver." He adds that he has never seen special processes sent out to overcome foreign bodies, but that the creeping corpuscle, during its uniform advance, passes over them and presses them into its substance. He diluted the blood with two-thirds of its volume of fresh cow's milk, and observed that the leucocytes moved with the same rapidity as before, and ingested the oil globules which are much larger than the pulverized dye-stuff.

A fundamental characteristic of polymorphonuclear leucocytes is the development of distinct *granules* in their protoplasm. They can be seen in fresh unstained specimens, in which it is evident that some of the cells contain coarse granules, and others fine granules. The lymphocytes and the large mononuclear leucocytes contain neither sort, and are therefore described as *non-granular*. In order to study the granules a drop of blood is spread thinly over a cover glass and dried, afterward being stained with a "blood stain," which is a carefully prepared mixture of acid and basic dyes. The details of nuclear structure are not preserved by this method, but the granules are clearly differentiated (Fig. 177). With several of the blood stains the fine granules are colored purple or lilac; and the coarse granules are found to be of two sorts, one kind staining red with eosin, and the other blue with the basic dye. *Only one sort of granule occurs in a single cell.*

Leucocytes containing coarse blue granules, which often obscure the nucleus, are called *mast cells*, or basophilic leucocytes. In order to distinguish between them and the mast cells of connective tissue, which contain similar granules (see Fig. 53, p. 74) those in the blood are often called *mast leucocytes*. They form only 0.5% of the leucocytes and in sections special methods are required to demonstrate them, as the granules are often dissolved. These cells have recently been interpreted as degenerating forms, but their significance has not been fully established.

Leucocytes with coarse granules which stain red with eosin, an acid stain, are called *eosinophiles* (sometimes oxyphiles, or acidophiles). They constitute from 2 to 4% of the leucocytes in the blood. Eosinophilic cells, apparently distinct from those of the blood, occur also in connective tissue, and since their granules are preserved by ordinary methods, and eosin is a dye used in routine examinations, these cells are often seen. According to Weidenreich the eosinophilic granules are minute fragments of red corpuscles, or products of their degeneration, which have been ingested. Badertscher (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1913, vol. 15, pp. 69–86) finds that eosinophiles are very numerous in the vicinity of the degenerating muscle fibers in salamanders, during the time when their gills atrophy. He agrees with Weidenreich that the eosinophilic granules are not products of protoplasmic activity but are derived from material outside of the cells; and he likewise finds that they are taken up by lymphocytes which thus become eosinophiles. Badertscher's work is of interest on connection with cases of trichiniasis in man, in which the number of eosinophiles in the blood becomes greatly increased, and at the same time there is extensive degeneration of the muscles, caused by the parasites. There is, therefore, reason to believe that esinophilic granules are hæmoglobin derivatives, but, as stated by Minot, "renewed investigation of the eosinophiles in man is very desirable."

The third type of granular cell, unlike the eosinophiles and basophiles contain *fine* granules, and these stain purple or lilac by taking both acid and basic stains simultaneously. They are called *neutrophiles*, and form between 70 and 72% of the leucocytes in the blood. They are actively amœboid and are the principal wandering cells of the body, leaving the blood vessels more readily than other forms. In suppurative processes they accumulate around the centers of infection, and they are of very great clinical importance.

SUMMARY OF THE FORMS OF LEUCOCYTES

Lymphocytes, 22 to 25% of the leucocytes, are small (about the size of a red corpuscle) or large (perhaps twice the diameter of a red corpuscle), non-granular, with round checkered nuclei.

Large mononuclear leucocytes, 1 to 3%, may be two or three times the diameter of red corpuscles. They are non-granular, or with few granules, and have pale vesicular nuclei, round or crescentic.

Polymorphonuclear leucocytes, larger than red corpuscles, are granular, with nuclei variously constricted or bent. They include—

Basophiles, 0.5%, with very coarse basophilic granules obscuring the nucleus.

Eosinophiles, 2 to 4%, with coarse eosinophilic granules.

Neutrophiles, 70 to 72%, with fine neutrophilic granules.

The origin of the different types of blood corpuscles and their relations to each other have been the subject of an immense amount of investigation. Strictly speaking, the youngest stages of erythroblasts are leucocytes,

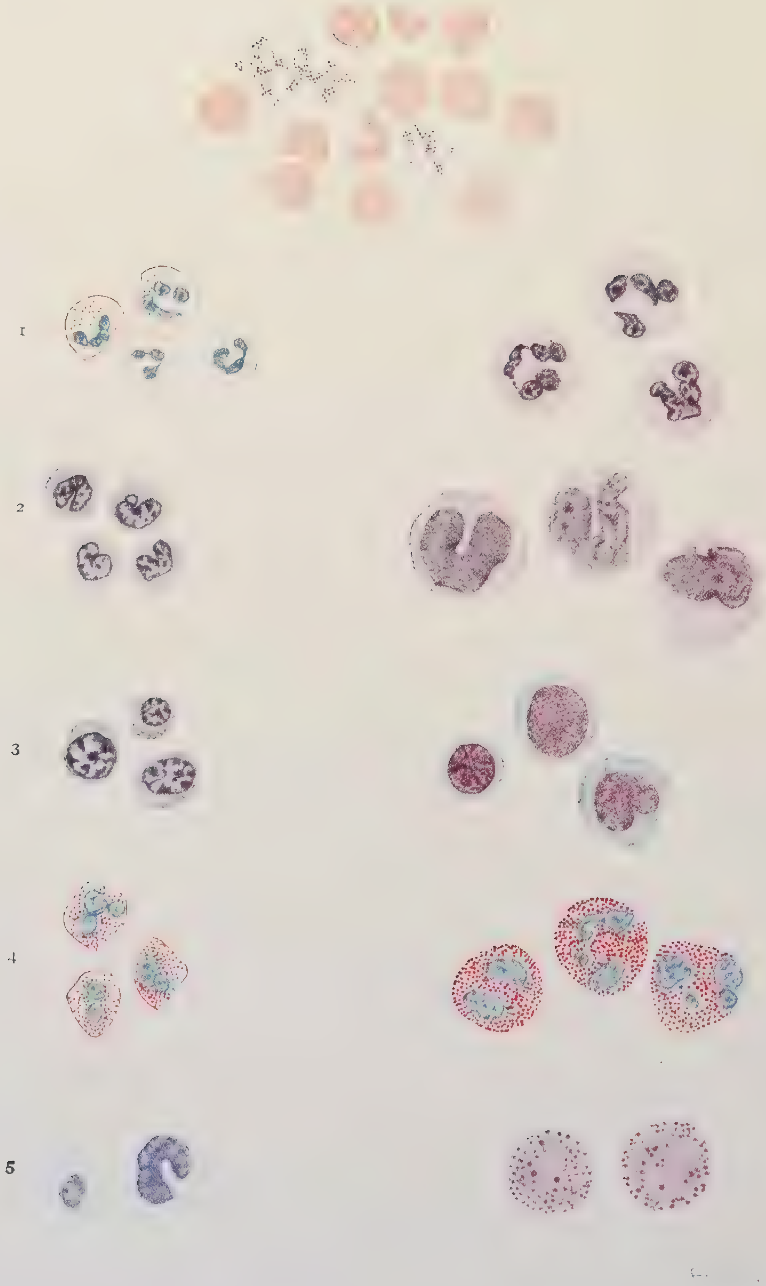


Fig. 177.—Human Blood Corpuscles. (After Mallory.)

Left hand column, as seen after Zenker's fixation and haematoxylin and eosin stain; at the right, as seen in smears stained by Wright's triple stain. **1**, neutrophiles; **2**, mononuclear leucocytes; **3**, lymphocytes; **4**, eosinophiles; **5**, basophiles.

in that they retain their nuclei and do not contain hæmoglobin. In 1890 Howell wrote, "Before 1869 it was quite generally believed that the red corpuscles are formed from the white corpuscles—in fact, some of the most recent investigations favor this view, although the evidence is so overwhelmingly against it." He might have written the same today, for many still believe that all types of blood corpuscle, red and white, come from a common stem cell, the hemocytoblasts, resembling the lymphocyte, and derived either from the mesenchyma or the reticular tissue of certain organs. This is referred to as the "monophyletic theory." Opposed to this is the "polyphyletic theory," supported by those who believe in diverse origins of red and white corpuscles, and of the various forms of white corpuscles, each type being distinct from the beginning. A third, the "dualistic theory," would provide two parent cells, one for the red corpuscles and one for the leucocytes.

The question is complicated by the extravascular origin of most, if not all, of these cell types in the adult, and the similarity or identity of some of the free cells of the connective tissue and the blood leucocytes. Leucocytes can leave the blood vessels and wander in the tissue spaces, yet the eosinophiles and mast cells of the connective tissue are considered by many as distinct from those in the blood. The same distinction does not seem to be made in the case of the lymphocytes and neutrophilic polymorphonuclear leucocytes, and the mononuclear leucocytes or monocytes of the blood are usually considered the same cells as the clasmatocyte of the tissue spaces.

The attempt to trace the lineage of cells depends on the recognition of transition stages between one type and another. The changes may be evident in the shape and character of the nucleus, in the staining of the protoplasm, or in the acquisition of characteristic granules in the protoplasm. Unless under exceptional circumstances the variation is slight, and differences of opinion may arise from differences of interpretation. The continuous observation of individual cells as they make their changes has not been accomplished. Certain of the cells, in both the blood and the tissues, regularly ingest particles of definite size after the injection of some of the "vital dyes," but Downey (Anat. Record, 1918, vol. 15, pp. 103–133) warns "that the intravitam reaction of colloidal dyes is not specific, and that it does not serve to distinguish between blood cells and tissue macrophages."

Against the monophyletic interpretation, it has been asserted that the lymphocytes of the adult are a different form of cell from the primitive blood cells, and that they are not found in embryos until the time when lymph glands develop. These arise rather late—in rabbits of 25 mm. and in human embryos of 40 mm. (Lewis, Anat. Record, 1909, vol. 3, pp. 341–353). Some authors meet this by recognizing two groups of red cells, the primitive intravascular forms that disappear and the definitive extra-vascular (*i.e.* developing extra-vascularly, from lymphocytes) group that is permanent.

Some of the probable developmental processes will be seen in the study of the blood-forming organs, the lymph glands and the bone marrow. The question is still a live one, and was recently the subject of a symposium at a meeting of the American Association of Anatomists. One of the late papers, which gives further references, is by Jordan (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1925, vol. 35, pp. 105–131). Perhaps the most significant studies are by Maximow (Physiol. Reviews, 1924, vol. 4, no. 4) and by Sabin in the same journal.

Blood plates (Fig. 177) are small granular bodies (*Körnchen*, *plaques*) which were recognized as a normal constituent of the blood by Schultze in 1865. Previous references to them occur, and Zimmermann described them as "elementary corpuscles," believing that they gave rise to red corpuscles (Arch. f. path. Anat., 1860, vol. 18, pp. 221–242). They are 2–4 μ in diameter, and between 245,000 and 778,000 have been estimated to occur in a cubic millimeter of human blood. They are readily reduced to granular débris in ordinary sections, but when well preserved and properly stained, they are found to consist of a central granular core and a hyaline outer layer. Often they appear stellate, and on a warm stage they exhibit amœboid movements. They are concerned in the clotting of the blood, or thrombus formation, and during coagulation threads of fibrin extend out from them as seen in Fig. 173. It is possible, however, that they are only passively involved in this process. In the amphibia certain small spindle-shaped cells appear to be similarly related to fibrin-formation, and they are called *thrombocytes;* the same term is sometimes applied to the blood plates. In blood clots several days old, blood plates are still found, indicating that they have more than a transient existence.

The source of the blood plates has been known to American histologists for several years, since they have had the opportunity of examining preparations made by J. H. Wright and described by him in 1906. The specimen shown in Fig. 178 is one of several which were entrusted to the writer for demonstration at the meeting of the American Association of Anatomists in 1906; figures of them are reproduced in color in the Journal of Morphology (1910, vol. 21, pp. 265–278). Fig. 178 represents a giant cell of the bone marrow, sending out two processes or pseudopodia into a blood vessel; the endothelium is interrupted at their place of entrance. By the special stain which Dr. Wright perfected, the central and large part of the cytoplasm of the giant cells is seen to consist of red or violet granules, identical in form and color with the granules in the center of the blood plates. Moreover the giant cells are shown to have a clear blue exoplasmic layer, which sends out slender processes, and this exoplasm also is identical in structure with that of the blood plates. Some of the blood plates are free in the vessels; others in rows or clumps are still connected with the giant cells. Fig. 178 shows a few detached plates, and one which is budding off from a pseudopodium, but the color contrasts which make these preparations convincing are scarcely indicated. Through Wright's investigations it has been made clear that blood plates are detached portions of the cytoplasm of the giant cells in the bone marrow, and of similar giant cells in the spleen; their granular center is endoplasm, and their hyaline border is exoplasm.

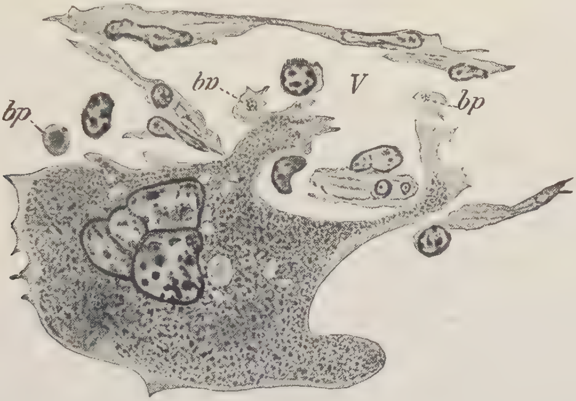


FIG. 178.—GIANT CELL FROM THE BONE MARROW OF A KITTEN, SHOWING PSEUDOPODIA EXTENDING INTO A BLOOD VESSEL (V), AND GIVING RISE TO BLOOD PLATES (bp). (J. H. Wright.)

Plasma is the fluid intercellular substance of the blood. It contains various granules, some of which are small fat drops received from the thoracic duct. These increase after the ingestion of a fat meal, and are absent unless fat is eaten. They are carried to the tissues for their nutrition, and thus gradually disappear from the plasma. They are usually ultramicroscopic in size, but revealed by dark-field illumination. Gage has studied them carefully (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1924, vol. 34, pp. 1–85), and proposes the name of "chylomicra." Other granules occurring in variable quantity are refractive particles, not fatty, either round or elongated; they are known as hæmatoconia (or hæmoconia). In ordinary sections the plasma appears as a granular coagulum. In the process of clotting, fibrin forms from the plasma, and with the entangled corpuscles, it constitutes the blood-clot; the fluid which remains is the serum. The process of fibrin formation is of considerable histological interest, owing to a possible analogy with fibril formation in connective tissue.

LYMPH

The contents of the lymphatic vessels is called lymph. This fluid is not identical with plasma, or with tissue fluid, yet all three are similar. Nutrient material passes from the plasma into the tissue fluid which bathes all the cells of the body; and in return the products of metabolism of the non-epithelial cells enter the tissue fluid from which they may be taken over either into the plasma or lymph, first passing through the endothelial walls of the vessels. Thus in the intestine much of the absorbed fat is transferred across the tissue spaces to the lymphatic vessels (lacteals) within which it forms a milky emulsion known as *chyle*. This form of lymph mingles with other varieties coming from the various parts of the body, and together they are poured into the plasma at the jugulo-subclavian junction. Histologically lymph appears as a fine coagulum, containing lymphocytes and large mononuclear phagocytic cells. The cells are not abundant. Occasionally other forms of blood corpuscles are found in lymphatic vessels, but the lymphocytes greatly predominate.

The fluid within the peritoneal, pericardial, and pleural cavities contains normally a small number of cells, which have been classed by Emmel (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1916, vol. 20, pp. 73–124) in two groups: the basophilic staining and usually phagocytically active cells or "coelomic macrophags," and the eosinophilic, non-phagocytic cellular elements. Emmel derives the former chiefly from the proliferation of the lining mesothelium, the latter from degenerating red blood corpuscles. Lymphocytes are rare or entirely lacking.

The cerebrospinal fluid, varying chemically from both blood plasma and lymph, has extremely few cells, mostly lymphocytes with an occasional large mononuclear leucocyte. Pathologically other cell types may be present in large numbers.

III. SPECIAL HISTOLOGY

BLOOD FORMING AND BLOOD DESTROYING ORGANS

Bone Marrow

Bone marrow is the soft tissue found within the central cavities of bones. Its source in the embryo is the vascular mesenchyma invading a cartilage which is being replaced by bone. Early in its development it contains osteoblasts and osteoclasts, and these cells may be found in adult marrow, where it is in contact with the bone. The greater part of the mesenchyma becomes reticular tissue with fat cells intermingled. Where the fat cells predominate, as in the shafts of the long bones, the tissue is called "yellow marrow," as distinguished from "red marrow" where fat cells are infrequent. The meshes of the reticular tissue are occupied by an extraordinary variety of cells, most of which are called *myelocytes* (marrow cells). In ordinary sections the tissue of the marrow appears to be riddled with large round holes. Under high magnification the holes are seen to be fat cells, the nuclei of which are here and there included in the section (Fig. 179). The reticular tissue framework of the marrow consists of flattened cells, generally seen cut across; their nuclei then appear slender and elongated. The abundant meshwork of fibrils associated with these cells is not apparent in ordinary sections, because the great number of cells in the meshes overlap the reticular strands. These floating cells comprise premyelocytes; myelocytes which are neutrophilic, basophilic or eosinophilic; erythroblasts and normoblasts; young lymphocytes; mature corpuscles both red and white; and giant cells.

Premyelocytes are cells with large round vesicular nuclei containing one or two coarse chromatin masses, and surrounded by basic protoplasm free from specific granules (Fig. 179). These cells are parents of myelocytes, and are sometimes called "myeloblasts"—a poor term, since they do not produce marrow. They are by some considered the parent cell of all types of blood cells; the embryonic type of nucleus and undifferentiated protoplasm should be noted. Their frequently angular shape as seen in sections may indicate adhesion to the network of reticular fibers. They apparently may reproduce cells of their own type, thus assuring the constant supply; or they may change to cells of other types. The most interesting changes to follow in the bone marrow are those leading to the granular leucocytes.

Cells in developmental stages leading to any one of the three types of granular leucocytes are called myelocytes; the prefix neutrophilic or eosinophilic, etc., indicating the special type. The nucleus becomes smaller, the chromatin more finely divided; oval or indented shapes occur, and finally the subdivision into the beaded form may take place. The protoplasm is reduced in amount with the reduction of the nucleus; and the characteristic granules appear in it. These may occur at first in one part only of the otherwise hyaline protoplasm, and in any one cell are always of the same type. In the drawing, neutrophilic and eosinophilic myelocytes are shown. Basophilic myelocytes may be present, but according to Downey these cells are merely an "unripe" form of eosinophile, which changes in the bone marrow to its adult form (see Ringoen, Anat. Record, 1915, vol. 9, pp. 683–701).

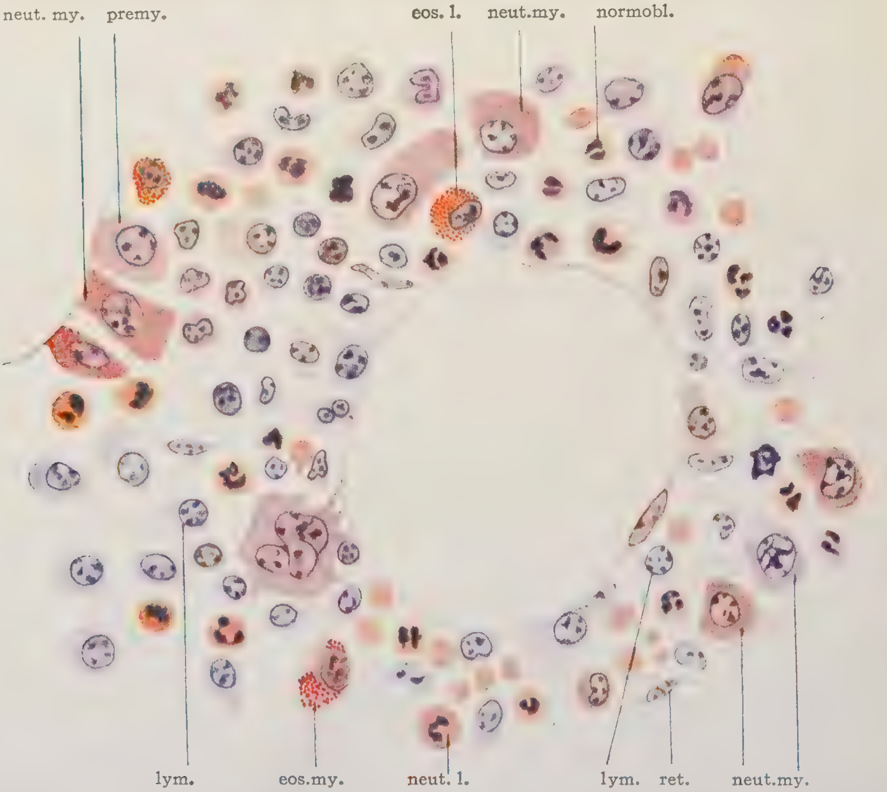


FIG. 179.—BONE MARROW; THE CENTRAL FAT CELL SHOWS ITS NUCLEUS, AND IS TOUCHED BY THE PSEUDOPODIA OF A GIANT CELL. THE RETICULAR TISSUE FRAMEWORK CONTAINS YOUNG FORMS OF BOTH RED CORPUSCLES AND LEUCOCYTES.

premy., premyelocyte; **neut. my.**, neutrophilic myelocyte; **neut. l.**, adult form of neutrophilic leucocyte; etc.

The oldest cells enter the blood vessels as granular leucocytes. Several generations, derived by mitosis, intervene between the young myelocytes and the mature leucocytes. Only in certain diseases do myelocytes enter the circulating blood.

Erythroblasts are generally found in clusters, some being young with vesicular nuclei, others being normoblasts with dense irregular nuclei, such as have already been described. Rarely a nucleus may be found which apparently is partly extruded. Cup-shaped corpuscles are seen in the tissue meshes.

Lymphocytes are not a conspicuous element of the marrow, yet they are present and sometimes in disease become abundant. Young forms, such as are found in the lymph glands, may be present, showing that lymphocyte production is a minor function of this organ.

The giant cells of the marrow have a single polymorphous nucleus. They have therefore been named "megakaryocytes," in distinction from the multinucleate osteoclasts or "polykaryocytes." The nucleus is so large that it may be cut into several slices, and by combining these it has been found that the entire nucleus is a hollow sphere with perforated walls; the nuclei, however, are very irregular, and some may be of other forms. With Wright's stain the protoplasm clearly shows an outer hyaline exoplasm and an inner granular endoplasm. It has been said that the latter is divisible into two concentric zones, which differ from the protoplasm within the nuclear sphere. In ordinary preparations these details are not evident. A large number of centrosome granules (over one hundred) have been found, and pluripolar mitoses have been observed. A phagocytic function has been ascribed to these giant cells, but it has also been denied. Their origin is unknown, but is said to be from the leucocyte series of cells. Their important function of producing blood plates has already been described (p. 202).

The relations of the blood vessels to the reticular tissue are of great interest. It has been thought that the endothelium blends with the reticulum so that no sharp distinction can be made between the two. It seems more probable that the endothelium is merely more permeable than usual, by a freer separation of its cells. The same problem is presented by the blood vessels and reticular tissue of the lymph glands and spleen (see Drinker, Am. J. Physiol., 1922, vol. 62, pp. 1–92).

The functions of the marrow are the production and dissolution of bone, the storing of fat, the formation of granular leucocytes (neutrophiles, eosinophiles, and mast cells), of red corpuscles, and to a less extent of lymphocytes; to these some would add the destruction of red corpuscles, as indicated by ingested fragments and intercellular granules.

Lymph Nodules and Lymph Glands

The lymph glands arise as nodules of dense tissue in close relation with an artery, a vein and a lymphatic vessel, as seen in the photographs, Figs. 180 and 181. The first distinct lymph glands in the body are a pair in the axillary region, a pair in the iliac region, and a pair or two in the maxillary region. They are found in rabbit embryos of about 30 mm., and in human embryos of about 40 mm. These first glands are soon followed by others in their vicinity, producing axillary, inguinal and cervical groups, respectively; and scattered glands more peripherally situated along the vessels develop later. At the same time, the tissue around the jugular and mesenteric lymph sacs becomes transformed into dense lymphoid tissue, which is resolved into the chains of deep lymphatic glands. These acquire a structure similar to that of the superficial glands. There is no satisfactory evidence that the dense lymphoid tissue of which the glands are composed is produced by the emigration of cells from the arteries, veins or lymphatics associated with them.

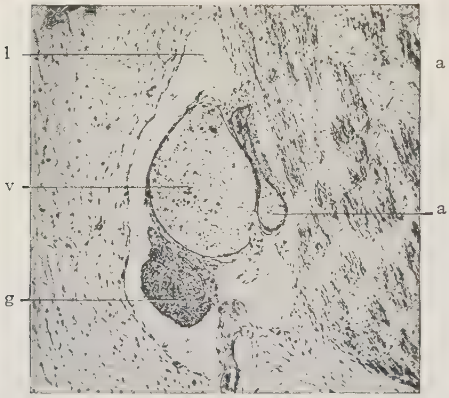


Fig. 180.—The First Axillary Lymph Gland of the Rabbit. From an Embryo of Twenty Days, 29 mm. × 60.

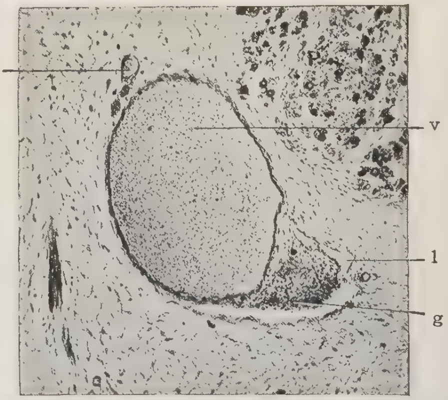


Fig. 181.—One of the Earliest Cervical Lymph Glands. From a Human Embryo of 42 mm. × 60.

a, Artery; **g**, lymph gland; **l**, lymphatic vessel; **v**, vein.

In further development the lymph glands become organized as shown in the diagrams, Figs. 182 and 183. The left half of each diagram represents a younger stage than the right half. These instructive figures were prepared by Stöhr on the basis of Kling's studies (Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1904, vol. 63, pp. 575–610). In the youngest stage (Fig. 182) it is seen that the blood vessels enter and leave the gland on one side, at a place called the *hilus* (Lat. *hilum*, a small thing, applied to the eye of a bean, and to similar hollows in bean-shaped organs). The lymphatic vessel, as a plexiform *peripheral sinus*, encircles the entire structure. After the gland has enlarged, lymphatic vessels extend into the mass of lymphoid tissue, as shown on the right of Fig. 182, and eventually they pass clear through it in a system of anastomosing sinuses. The lymph then flows into the gland from the periphery, and out at the hilus; both the afferent and efferent vessels are shown in Fig. 183. Finally a connective tissue capsule develops around the larger glands, and in some of them it extends into the interior, producing a system of supporting *trabeculæ*, either round or lamellar. These may unite with one another as shown on the right of Fig. 183. When present within the gland they are always found in the central axes of the lymph sinuses.

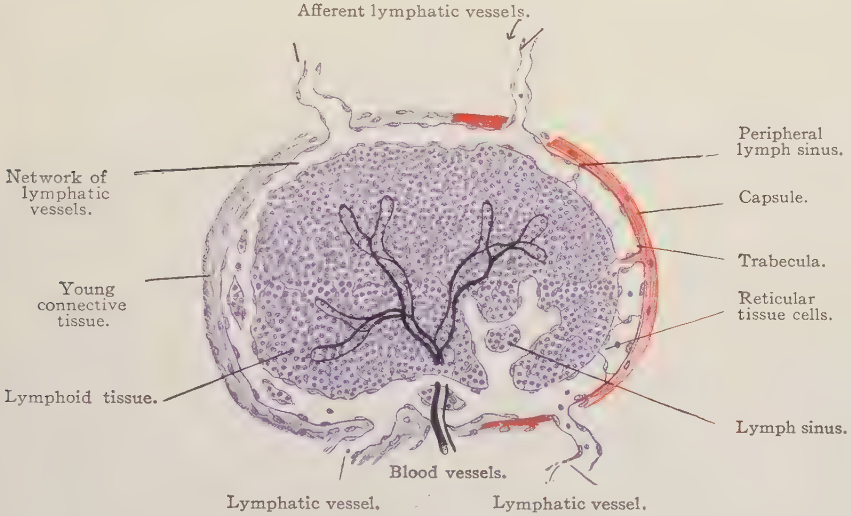


FIG. 182.

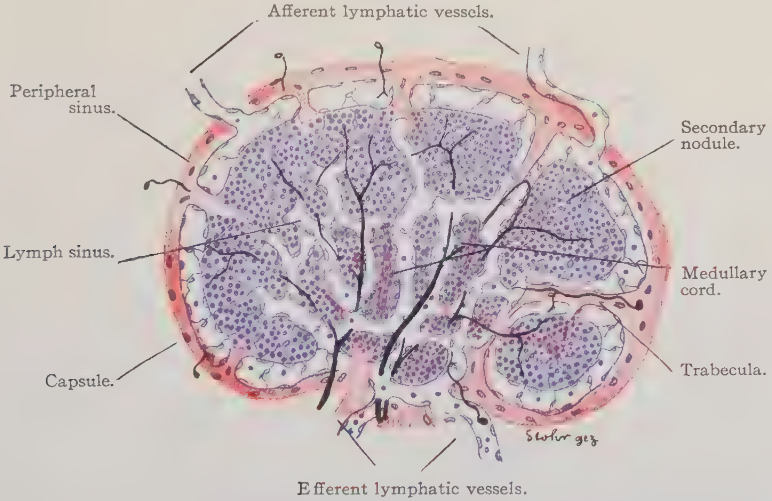


FIG. 183.—DIAGRAMS REPRESENTING FOUR STAGES IN THE DEVELOPMENT OF LYMPH GLANDS.

By the production of the internal lymph sinuses, the substance of the gland is subdivided into rounded *nodules* and elongated *cords* of lymphoid tissue. The nodules are found at the periphery of the gland and collectively they form its *cortex;* the cords constitute the *medulla*. Several other organs, *e.g.*, the kidney and suprarenal glands, are divided into an outer cortex (bark) and an inner medulla (pith). In the center of each cortical nodule there is often a light spot, seen with low power, which constitutes the *germinal center*. These general features of a lymph gland are shown in Fig. 184. It is evident that certain of the secondary nodules in the cortex are imperfectly separated from one another, and that they are continuous below with the anastomosing medullary cords.

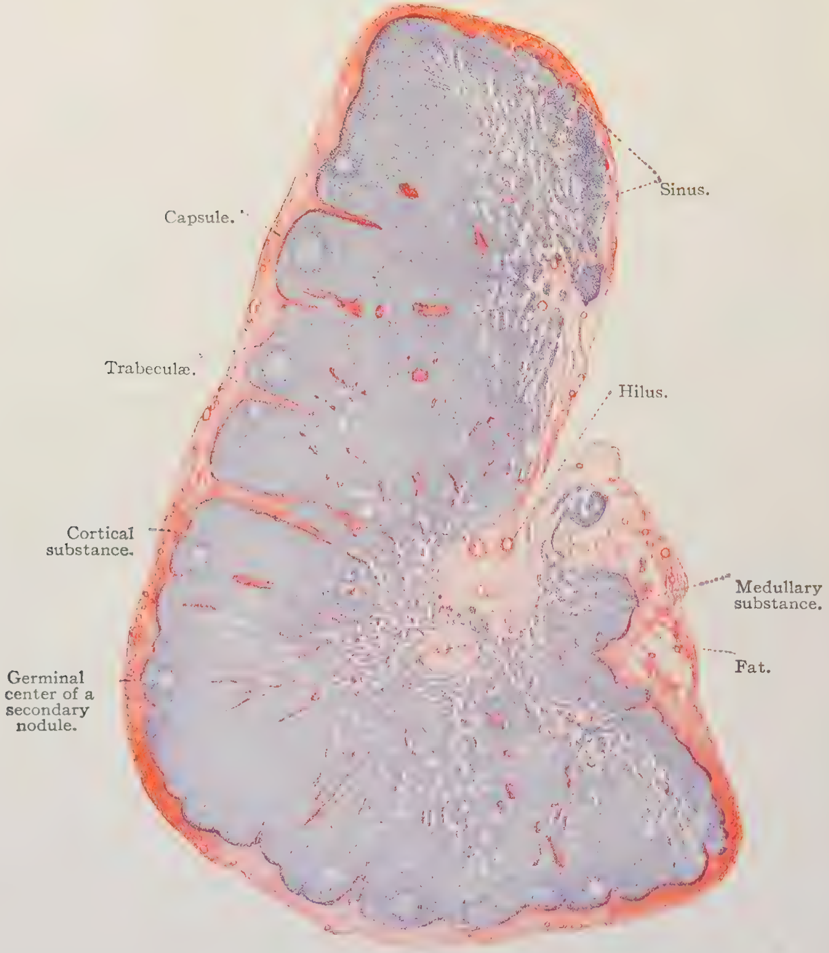


Fig. 184.—Longitudinal Section of a Human Cervical Lymph Gland. × 12.

The lymph glands of the adult (*lymphoglandulæ*, also called lymph nodes) are round or reniform structures varying in length from a few millimeters to a few centimeters. The largest of them show trabeculæ and are subdivided into cortex and medulla as above described; the small ones remain permanently in the various developmental stages shown in Figs. 182 and 183. The smallest structures consist of but a single nodule.

Lymphoid tissue (formerly called adenoid tissue) consists of a framework of reticular tissue (see Fig. 60, p. 81) together with detached cells, chiefly lymphocytes, which fill its meshes. Stained with hæmatoxylin it is very dark, because of the preponderance of nuclear material, and its appearance, even under low magnification is quite characteristic. It is found in diffuse form, in cords, or in nodules, the grouping of the lymphocytes depending on the local fineness of the reticular mesh, since the free cells are readily floated out of a wide-meshed area. In sections, the oval nuclei of the reticular cells are readily seen, but the anastomosing processes are so overlain by the lymphocytes that they become mostly invisible. Eosinophiles and the various forms of blood corpuscles may leave the blood vessels and be present in the meshes in small numbers.

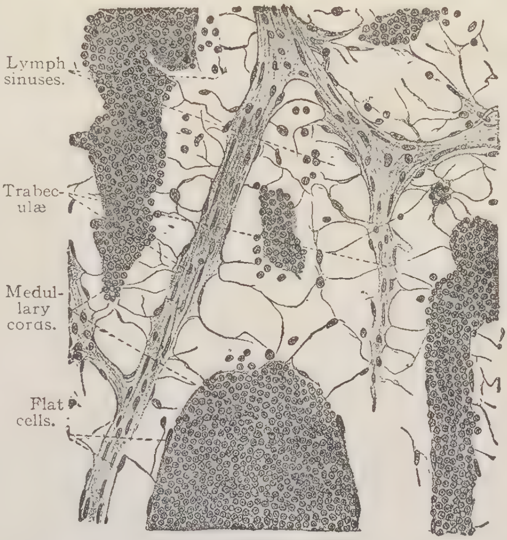


Fig. 185.—From the Medulla of a Lymph Gland of an Ox. × 240.

The lymph nodules are thought to be centers of lymphocyte production, perhaps active intermittently. They often show a lighter central area, called the "germinal center" (Fig. 186) in which cells resembling the premyelocytes, with considerable protoplasm and large nuclei, may represent the ancestral form of the lymphocyte, and various stages in lymphocyte development may be followed. Mitotic figures may be frequent. The ancestral cell, sometimes called a "lymphoblast," has large pale nucleus, with one or two prominent chromatin granules, and an abundant nongranular protoplasm. The nucleus becomes progressively smaller, the chromatin increases and is more finely divided, finally taking the characteristic lymphocyte arrangement. The protoplasm is meanwhile reduced in amount, but remains without specific granules. The germinal center merges laterally into closely packed lymphoid tissue, with small adult lymphocytes which may leave the nodule. In certain organs containing germinal centers (*e.g.*, spleen), it is known that lymphocytes are produced. On the other hand geminal centers are absent from the early stages of embryonic nodules, when production of lymphocytes would be expected to be rapid. Latta (Anat. Record, 1922, vol. 24, pp. 233–246) considers them areas of degeneration.

Lymphoid tissue is found widely throughout the body, in lymph glands and spleen, and in the mucous membranes of various organs. Lymphoid nodules irregularly massed about epithelial pits become the essential tissue of the tonsils. Throughout the intestinal tract "solitary nodules" occur, and in the lower part of the small intestine these become so numerous as to fuse, constituting the "aggregate nodules" or "Peyer's patches," readily visible to the naked eye. The appendix is crowded with lymph nodules. Wherever it occurs, lymphoid tissue has essentially the same structure. The function of the lymphocytes is probably the elaboration of a material to counteract toxins in the blood or lymph.

The lymph sinuses are not well-defined endothelial tubes, but appear rather as washed-out portions of the reticular tissue. If the endothelial tubes which line the lymphatic vessels enter the lymph gland to form the sinuses, it must be considered that their cells separate and that strands of reticular tissue pass across them. Some authorities consider that the endothelial tissue blends freely with the reticular tissue, so that any distinction is here arbitrary. The reticular tissue cells, or endothelial cells, lining the sinuses are highly phagocytic, and ingested fragments may be seen within them in sections. Certain of these cells become detached, and there is reason to believe that they are the source of the large mononuclear leucocytes. Lymphocytes from the adjacent cords and nodules also enter the lymph as it passes through the sinuses, and thus they are added to the circulation. Within the cords and nodules they are enclosed in a closer meshed reticulum than that of the sinuses, which may prevent them from escaping too freely.

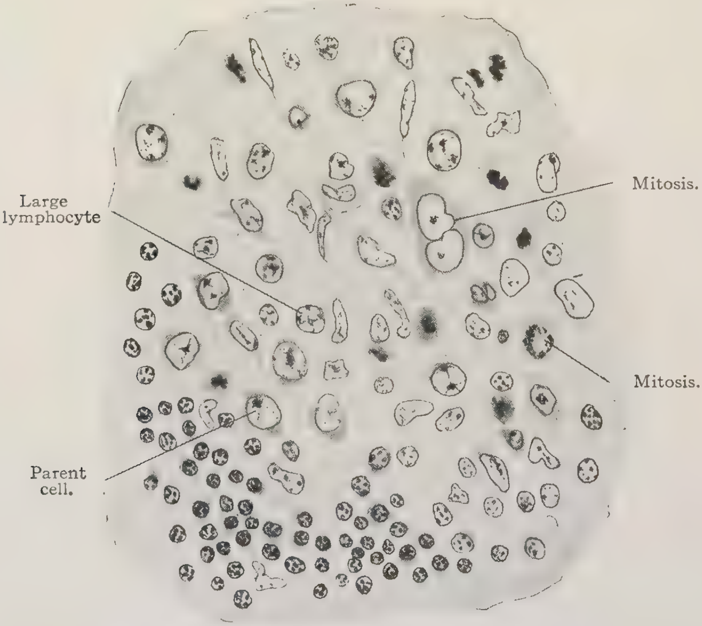


Fig. 186.—Germinal Center of Lymph Gland, Human.
Within the reticular tissue meshes are large clear cells, resembling premyelocytes; gradations can be followed to the large and small lymphocytes. Mitoses are frequent.

The capsules of the lymph glands consist of fibrous connective tissue, containing elastic elements which increase in abundance with age. Smooth muscle fibers are present as scattered cells or as slender bundles. The trabeculæ, which are extensions of the capsule, are composed of the same tissues. They are completely surrounded by the lymph sinuses as shown in Fig. 185. The flat cells over their surfaces may be regarded as endothelial cells.

The blood vessels of a lymph gland enter chiefly at the hilus, but in the larger glands some of them come in from the periphery and run in the trabeculæ; others however pass out through the trabeculæ into the capsule. The principal artery enters at the hilus and divides at once into several branches, which travel in the trabeculæ for a short distance, and then pass over into the medullary cords. They extend through the axes of the cords into the nodules, giving off small branches which form a venous network at the periphery of these structures. The veins which drain this network soon cross the sinuses and enter the trabeculæ, in which they travel toward the hilus alongside the arteries (Calvert, Anat. Anz., 1897, vol. 13, pp. 174–180).

The arrangement of vessels shown in the nodules is called a vascular unit, and is frequently found in other organs. It represents the economical distribution to and drainage of an area of limited size, and can be understood by studying the blood supply of an intestinal villus as shown in Fig. 240, A. An artery runs in the center of this structure giving off capillary branches on all sides toward the periphery, where the capillaries unite to form two or more veins which return the blood to the base. In compact tissues, the peripheral veins drain the two neighboring units between which they lie. The diameter of the unit depends on the length of the capillaries, and this again is regulated by the rate of blood flow and the time necessary for exchanges of oxygen, etc., between blood and tissues. A shorter capillary would be inadequate, a longer one unnecessary. The length varies in different organs, but is rarely more than .5 mm.; the units therefore are 1 mm. or less in diameter.

Nerves to the lymph glands are not abundant. They consist of medullated and non-medullated fibers, which form plexuses about the blood vessels, and supply the muscle cells in the capsule and trabeculæ. They have not been found in the nodules and cords.

The function of the lymph glands is not only to produce lymphocytes which enter the lymphatic vessels and are conveyed through the thoracic duct into the blood, but also to "filter the lymph." If certain poisonous substances, inert particles, or bacteria are brought to the gland in the lymph, they may be removed by the phagocytic endothelial or reticular tissue cells. The gland at the same time may become enlarged by congestion, and by multiplication of its cells.

HÆMOLYMPH GLANDS

Hæmolymph glands resemble small lymph glands, ranging in size from a "pin-head to an almond." They occur especially in the retroperitoneal tissue near the origin of the superior mesenteric and renal arteries, but are found elsewhere, and it has been said that their distribution coincides with that of ordinary lymph glands. They are darker than the lymph glands, and on section yield blood in place of lymph. No lymphatic vessels are associated with them, when typically developed, and instead of a lymph sinus they possess a similar structure filled with blood, the *blood sinus*. The lymphoid tissue with its blood supply, together with the capsule and trabeculæ, are like the corresponding structures in lymph glands. The capillary blood vessels, however, are readily permeable, so that their contents, both plasma and corpuscles, escape into the blood sinus. The hæmolymph gland is therefore a "blood filter." Many blood corpuscles fragment in passing through it, and are removed from the circulation by phagocytic cells, which in consequence become pigmented. The eosinophilic cells which are found in hæmloymph glands have been explained as due to the ingestion of hæmoglobin products, but it has been questioned whether these cells are more abundant than in ordinary lymph glands. A second function of the hæmolymph glands, depending upon the lymphoid tissue around their arteries, is the production of lymphocytes which may enter the blood vessels directly.

According to von Schumacher (Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1912, vol. 81, pp. 92–150) the hæmolymph glands begin their development like ordinary lymph glands, but after the formation of the peripheral sinus, the connections with afferent and efferent lymphatic vessels are lost. He finds various intermediate forms between the lymph and hæmolymph glands, depending upon the extent of atrophy of the lymphatic connections, and the extent to which blood escapes from the intraglandular vessels. Meyer (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1917, vol. 21, pp. 374–405) describes an independent origin, with no relation to lymphatic vessels. They may be related to certain "accessory spleens" described as occasionally found. After accidents accompanied by extravasations of blood, the sinuses of ordinary lymph glands may become filled with red corpuscles, conveyed to them by the afferent lymphatic vessels. Such glands differ obviously from the true hæmolymph glands, which structurally and functionally are intermediate between lymph glands and the spleen.

Spleen

The spleen, being five or six inches long and four inches wide, is much the largest organ of the lymph gland series. It is the first of them to develop, appearing in rabbits of 14 days (10 mm.) as a condensation of the mesenchyma in the dorsal mesentery of the stomach. At this stage the only lymphatic vessels in the embryo are those near the jugular vein. Lymph glands are not indicated until six days later. (For the development see Thiel and Downey, Am. J. Anat., 1920, vol. 28, pp. 279–339). The blood vessels enter the spleen at its hilus and branch freely. In early stages they form an ordinary capillary plexus, but subsequently their walls become so pervious that most of the blood escapes into the reticular tissue in passing from the artery to the vein. Surrounding the arterial branches there is a zone of lymphoid tissue, which arises rather late in embryonic life. In reptilian spleens it is so abundantly developed that the organs resemble mammalian hæmolymph glands. In the guinea-pig the lymphoid sheath of the arteries is continuous, though narrow; in man it is so interrupted as to form a succession of spindle-shaped or spherical masses, called *splenic nodules* (Malpighian corpuscles). An

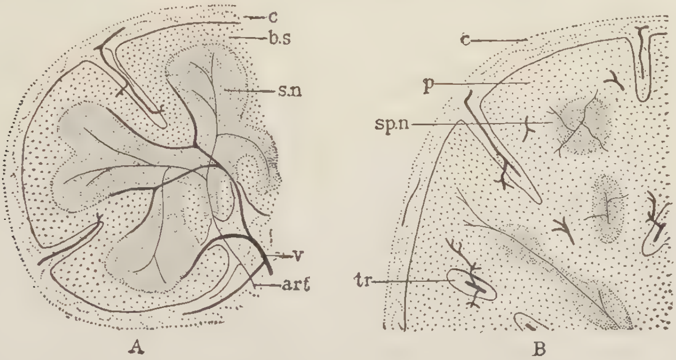


Fig. 187.—Diagram of a Hæmolymph Gland, **A**, and of a Part of the Spleen, **B**.

The arteries are shown as slender lines (**art.**) and the veins as heavy ones (**v.**); **c.**, capsule; **b. s.**, blood sinus, corresponding with the splenic pulp, **p.**; **s. n.**, secondary nodule; **sp. n.**, splenic nodule; **tr.**, trabecula.

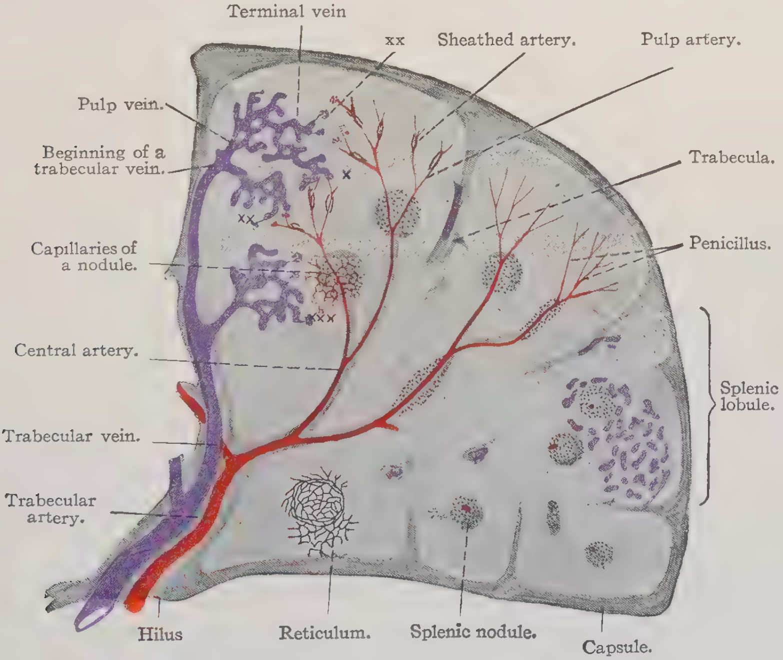


Fig. 188.—Diagram of the Blood Vessels of the Human Spleen.

At **x** is shown the direct connection of terminal arteries with terminal veins (the existence of such a connection has been questioned). At **xx** and **xxx** are the free endings of the terminal veins in the pulp and near the nodules respectively.

arterial branch passes through each nodule. Thus, as compared with the hæmolymph gland, the spleen is deficient in lymphoid tissue (Fig. 187). The bulk of the spleen is composed of *splenic pulp*, which corresponds with the blood sinus of the hæmolymph glands. Its framework of reticular tissue is continuous with that of the nodules, and it contains blood corpuscles of all sorts, special phagocytic cells known as *splenic cells*, and the terminal branches of both arteries and veins. There are no lymphatic vessels within the spleen. The capsule and trabecular framework are highly developed as in the largest lymph glands. The following features of the spleen may be described in turn—the blood vessels, the pulp, the nodules, the capsule and trabeculæ, and finally the nerves.

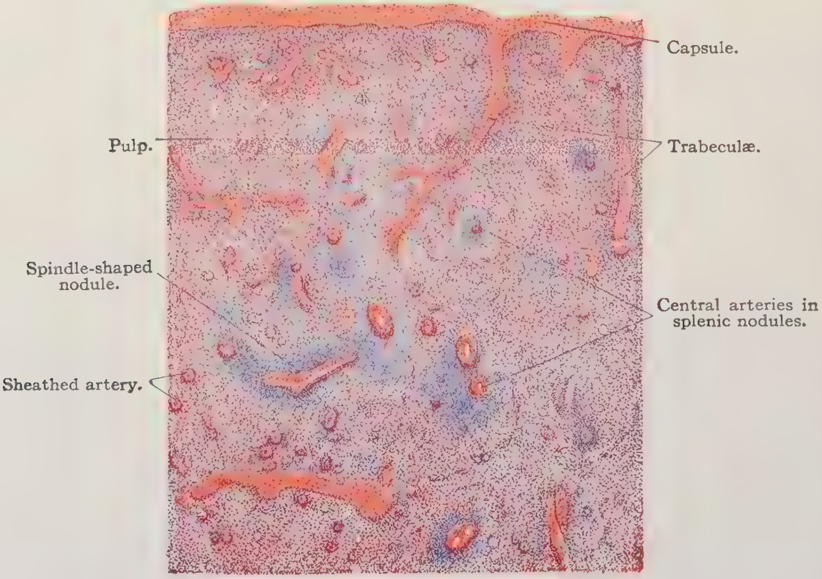


Fig. 189.—Part of a Section of the Spleen from an Adult Man. × 15.

As shown in the diagram, Fig. 188, the splenic artery enters at the hilus and, accompanied by veins, its branches are found in the largest trabeculæ. When about 0.2 mm. in diameter the arteries leave the trabeculæ, in which the veins continue further. The arteries, however, are still surrounded by a considerable connective tissue layer, the outer portion of which becomes reticular and is filled with the lymphocytes of the nodules. The nodules occur near where the artery branches. Small arterial twigs ramify in the nodules, in the periphery of which they anastomose before passing into the pulp. When the main stems are about 15 μ in diameter, they lose their surrounding lymphoid layer and pass into the pulp, where they form brush-like groups of branches (*penicilli*). These branches do not anastomose. For a short distance before their termination the walls of the branches possess ellipsoid thickenings, due to a longitudinal arrangement of closely applied fibers of reticular tissue. These "sheathed arteries" are 6–8 μ in diameter, and have been supposed to regulate the amount of blood which enters the terminal portion of the artery, beyond them. Some authorities state that this distal part connects with the terminal veins, meeting them at an acute angle. According to others such connections are infrequent, and still others believe that the arteries empty only into the reticular tissue. Numerous careful injections have shown the readiness with which the arterial blood mingles with the pulp cells.

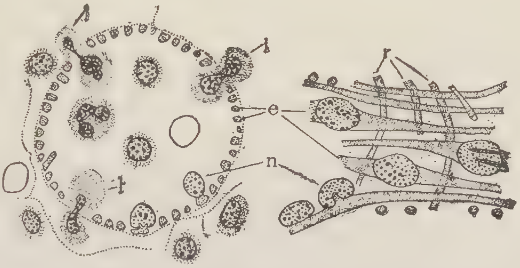


Fig. 190.—Cross Section (A) and Surface View (B) of Terminal Veins from the Human Spleen.

e., Rod shaped endothelial cells, with projecting nuclei, **n**; **r.**, encircling reticular tissue; **l.**, leucocytes passing between the endothelial cells. (After Weidenreich.)

The *terminal veins* or splenic sinuses begin as dilated structures (sometimes unfortunately called "ampullæ," the latter term being applied also to the terminal arteries). They are irregular, branching and anastomosing spaces, occupying most of the pulp. Their endothelium has become perforated so that it shows longitudinally arranged narrow slits, which give the cells the appearance of elongated fusiform elements, resembling smooth muscle fibers. The transverse connections are inconspicuous. In the outer portion of their protoplasm fibrils, like myofibrils, have been described. The nuclei are distinctive, bulging far into the lumen, and fitting to the main body of the cell by a notch on their outer side (Fig. 191). Presumably they are covered by a thin film of protoplasm. On surface view, the perpendicular walls of the notch may give the appearance of parallel lines within the oval nucleus. It has been stated that the cells are contractile, as are many other endothelial cells. They rest on the reticular fibers which form a basket work about the vessels. A continuous basement membrane stretching across the intervals between endothelial cells probably does not exist, since a free passage through the clefts for cells of all kinds is essential to splenic function.

Several terminal veins unite to form a pulp vein, lined with ordinary endothelium, which enters a trabecula in which it passes toward the hylus. In the trabeculæ the veins are almost without coats of their own, relying on the trabecular connective tissue for support. The trabecular veins join to form the splenic vein.

The splenic circulation just outlined is remarkable in that the blood leaves the vessels to flow freely in tissue spaces. In most other parts of the body this would lead to the formation of a clot. In the placenta the same sort of extravasation without clotting occurs, and in the lymph gland the afferent vessels open into intercellular spaces. The presence of reticular tissue seems to be essential for this phenomenon, and perhaps shows the close relationship between this tissue and endothelium. Special provision is made also for the return of the blood elements from the tissue spaces to the veins. Outside of the vessels the blood current must be extremely slow, affording opportunity for the action of phagocytic cells of the pulp on the blood elements. For further details regarding the circulation see Weidenreich (Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1901, vol. 58, pp. 247–376) and Mall (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1903, vol. 2, pp. 315–332).

The *splenic pulp* consists of a reticular tissue framework (Fig. 60, p. 81). It supports the terminal arteries and veins, and in its meshes are the white and red corpuscles passing between them.

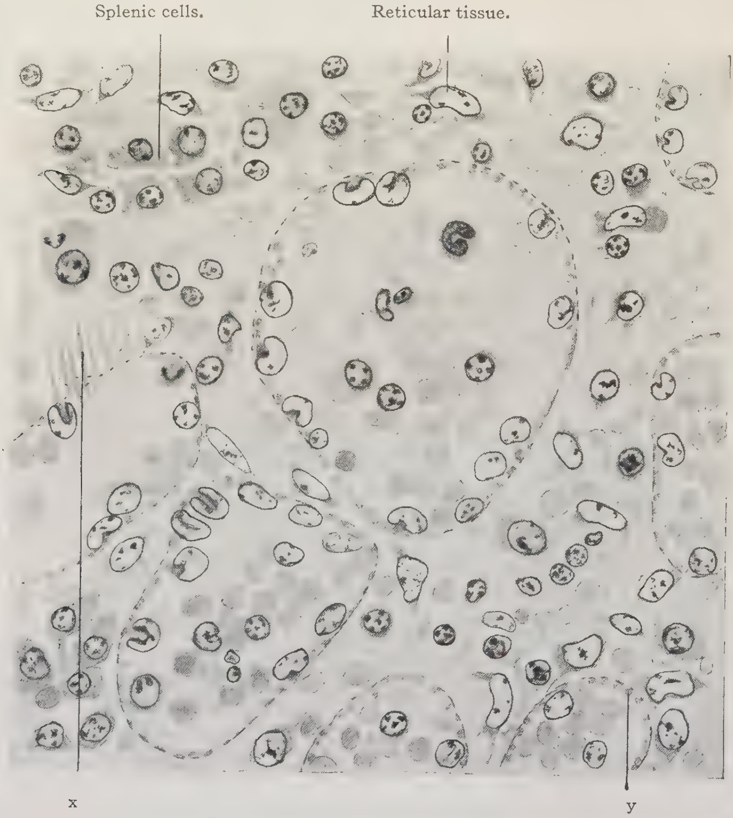


Fig. 191.—Splenic Pulp, Human.
Terminal veins cut across and obliquely. **x**, the endothelium cut lengthwise, resting on reticular fibers; **y**, same cut transversely.

The pulp appears as a diffuse mass of cells infiltrated with red corpuscles, and since the vessels within it are thin-walled and hard to follow, likewise containing corpuscles, it is often impossible in ordinary sections to determine which cells are inside and which are outside of the vessels (Fig. 191). The nodules are not sharply separated from the pulp, so that lymphocytes are abundant in their vicinity. These lymphocytes enter the terminal veins and thus are removed from the spleen. In the splenic vein the proportion of lymphocytes to red corpuscles is said to be seventy times as great as in the splenic artery. One of every four red corpuscles have been reported by two investigators, but later estimates are lower. It seems evident that lymphocyte production is an important function of the spleen. Another is the destruction of old red blood corpuscles, which of course increases the lymphocyte percentage in the splenic vein. As in the hæmolymph glands, granular debris is found, and occasionally whole red corpuscles are found within the phagocytic cells which abound in the pulp, and are called *splenic cells.* They are often pigmented or eosinophilic, with large round nuclei and considerable protoplasm. They vary in size, but the small forms are most numerous. Some resemble plasma cells, and may be related to the lymphocytes; others are probably derived from the reticular cells, which are themselves phagocytic. Some are described as multinucleate. Erythroblasts are not found in the normal adult human spleen; they occur, however, in certain blood diseases, and are normal in some adult mammals, as in the skunk. They are abundant in the spleens of human embryos. Giant cells are numerous in the spleens of young animals but are seldom found in the human adult. They are described as megakaryocytes, and are like those in bone marrow. The formation of granular leucocytes, which has been asserted, presumably does not occur.

The *splenic nodules* are quite like the secondary nodules of lymph glands. They consist of a reticular tissue framework continuous with that of the pulp, but having finer meshes. Fine elastic fibers are associated with it. It contains lymphocytes, and near the central arteries germinal centers are sometimes distinct. The nodules have been regarded as varying in shape from time to time, being but transient accumulations of lymphocytes.

The *capsule* of the spleen is divided into two layers. The outer is the *tunica serosa* and the inner, the *tunica albuginea.* The serosa consists of the peritoneal mesothelium, which covers the spleen except at the hilus, and of the underlying connective tissue. The albuginea is a dense layer of connective tissue, containing elastic networks and smooth muscle fibers. Similar tissue is found in the trabeculæ. The muscle elements are less numerous in the human spleen than in those of many animals. By contraction they force blood from the pulp and cause the circulation to follow more definite channels. When they are paralyzed, the pulp becomes filled with the blood corupscles. A regular but very slow pulsation of the organ has been detected.

The nerves of the spleen, from the right vagus and the cœliac sympathetic plexus, are medullated and non-medullated fibers, chiefly the latter. They form plexuses around the blood vessels and send fibers into the pulp. Besides supplying the muscles of the vessels and trabeculæ, some of them are thought to have free sensory endings. Lymphatic vessels are said to occur in the capsule and trabeculæ, but not in the pulp or nodules of the spleen.

The spleen is a large organ, without obvious subdivisions. On its surface, when fresh, there is a mottled effect due to areas bounded more or less definitely by trabeculæ. Such areas, about 1 mm. in diameter, have been described by Mall as "lobules," and he states that they "can easily be seen on the surface of the organ or in sections." A lobule, as he describes it, has a central artery, and its base is where the lymphoid sheath of the artery terminates. It has peripheral veins, often three, enclosed in the trabeculæ. A lobule is composed of some ten structural (or histological) units, imperfectly separated from one another by branches of the trabeculæ. Each unit contains a central terminal artery (branches of the lobular artery) and has peripheral veins (branches of those about the lobule). Apparently, therefore, the lobules shown in the diagram, Fig. 188, except along its lower border, represent groups or pairs of Mall's lobules. Stöhr notes that "a division into lobules in the interior of the spleen is impossible." The arrangement of lobules at the periphery suggests an ill-defined cortex. Lobes have also been described, corresponding with the main branches of the splenic artery, but the lobes are not generally recognized. The spleen may present inconstant subdivisions, which sometimes produce detached portions called *accessory spleens.*

THE ENTODERMAL TRACT

Development of the Mouth and Pharynx

In a previous section the early development of the fore-gut or pharyngeal pocket of entoderm has been described and illustrated (Figs. 23 and 24). This fore-gut of the young embryo is to produce the pharynx, œsophagus, and stomach of the adult. Its anterior extremity encounters the ectoderm at the bottom of a depression. The ectoderm and entoderm there fuse to make the *oral plate* (Fig. 192), which becomes thin, ruptures, and disappears. Just anterior to the plate, in the median line, the ectoderm sends a gland-like projection toward the brain. It branches and becomes detached from the oral ectoderm, lying in the *sella turcica* of the adult. It is known as the *anterior lobe of the hypophysis*, and will be described with the brain, from which the posterior lobe develops. The ectoderm in front of the oral plate forms also the epithelium of the lips and of the peripheral part of the mouth, including the enamel organs of the teeth. The salivary glands are also considered ectodermal, but before they develop the oral plate has disappeared and the boundary between ectoderm and entoderm cannot be sharply drawn.

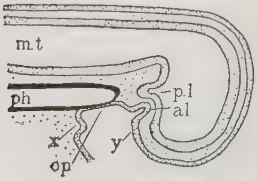


Fig. 192.—Diagram Showing the Relations between Ectoderm and Entoderm in the Mouth of a Mammalian Embryo.

a. l., and **p. l.**, Anterior and posterior lobes of the hypophysis; **m. t.**, medullary tube; **ph.**, pharynx; **o. p.**, oral plate; **x.** and **y.**, ectoderm which produces the lip and enamel of the teeth in the lower and upper jaws respectively.

The entoderm of the mouth and pharynx is a layer of epithelium lining a broad, dorso-ventrally flattened cavity. From this cavity, a succession of paired outpocketings grow out laterally to meet the ectoderm on the side of the neck; these are the *pharyngeal pouches.* They reach the ectoderm at the bottom of furrows or clefts, corresponding in number with the pharyngeal pouches, and there the two germ layers fuse. The plates thus formed are comparable with the oral plate, and in fishes they rupture producing the *branchial clefts* (gill clefts).

Their arrangement in a young dog-fish is shown in Fig. 193. The mouth, *m*, leads into a cavity, the pharynx, which opens freely on the outer surface of the fish through five gill clefts, *g.c.* It also opens to the surface through the *spiracle, sp.*, a structure similar to the gill clefts, but anterior to them and having a more dorsal aperture. In respiration water is taken in through the mouth and spiracle, and passes out through the gill clefts; but sometimes water is ejected through the spiracle. In mammals the corresponding structure is counted as the first gill cleft.

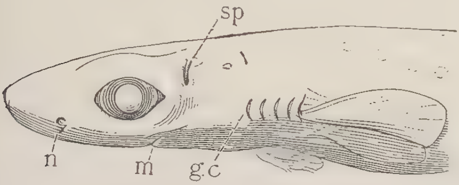


FIG. 193.—HEAD OF A YOUNG DOG-FISH.
g. c., Gill cleft; **m.**, mouth; **n.**, nasal pit; **sp.**, spiracle.

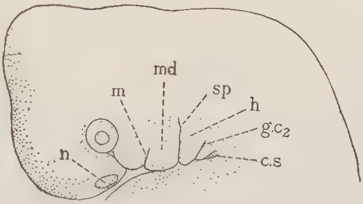


FIG. 194.—HEAD OF HUMAN EMBRYO OF 10 MM.
c. s., cervical sinus; **g. c. 2.**, second branchia groove; **h.**, hyoid arch; **m.**, mouth; **md.**, mandibular process; **n.**, nasal pit; **sp.**, auditory (spiracular) groove.

In mammalian embryos there are four well-defined pharyngeal pouches on either side, which reach the ectoderm at the bottom of corresponding grooves; but if their closing plates ever rupture they are soon restored, and permanent openings from the pharynx on the side of the neck are not found. The first pouch, corresponding with the spiracle, connects with the auditory groove (Fig. 194, *sp*). Around it the external ear develops, so that its position is always evident. The ectodermal depression which connects with the second pouch disappears, except in rare cases, where it forms a cervical fistula. This is a pit, or slender tube, in the skin of the neck, situated primarily between the hyoid bone and thyroid cartilage. The third and fourth pouches connect with the ectoderm at the bottom of a single funnel-shaped depression known as the *cervical sinus* (Fig. 194, *c.s.*). This also wholly disappears normally, but it may remain as a cervical fistula low down on the neck, and its deeper parts may give rise to branchial cysts. Thus all the ectodermal branchial grooves except the first normally disappear before birth.

The pharyngeal pouches, or entodermal portions of the gill clefts, as they occur in a mammalian embryo are shown in Fig. 195. The pharynx opens to the exterior at the mouth, *m*, and divides posteriorly into the trachea, *tr*, and œsophagus, *oe*. In the median dorsal line it gives rise to the anterior lobe of the hypophysis, cut off at *a. l.*, and in the median ventral line to the *thyroid gland, t.* This gland is a median structure, entirely separate from the pharyngeal pouches. It grows down through the hind part of the tongue, acquiring a position in front of the trachea. Its branching terminal part becomes separated from its outlet by the obliteration of its duct (called the *thyroglossal duct*). A blind pit, the *foramen cæcum*, permanently retained at the back of the tongue, marks the former outlet of the duct (Fig. 196, *f. c.*). Thus the thyroid gland is a detached clump of entodermal tubules in front of the trachea.

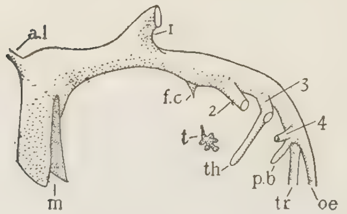


FIG. 195.—DIAGRAM OF THE PHARYNX OF A MAMMALIAN EMBRYO.

a. l., Anterior lobe of the hypophysis; **f. c.**, foramen cæcum; **m.**, mouth; **oe.**, œsophagus; **p. b.**, postbranchial body; **t.**, thyroid; **th.**, thymus; **tr.**, trachea; **1, 2, 3, 4,** the pharyngeal pouches.

The entodermal portions of the gill clefts are four paired lateral outpocketings. The first (Fig. 195, 1) extends to the auditory groove in the ectoderm, and becomes the *auditory tube* (Eustachian tube). The pharyngeal orifice of this tube in the adult is shown in Fig. 196 (*o. ph.*); the outer end of the tube expands to form the tympanic cavity of the ear, and will be further considered with the sense organs.

The second pharyngeal pouch (Fig. 195, 2) loses its connection with the ectoderm and becomes a relatively shallow depression on the side of the pharynx. At a certain stage it is in close relation with the orifice of the auditory tube, and it has been thought to give rise to the *pharyngeal recess* (fossa of Rosenmüller), but according to Hammar such is not the case. Instead, it produces only the *sinus tonsillaris*, into which a mound of lymphoid tissue, the *palatine tonsil*, later projects (Fig. 196, *tons.*). Above the tonsil the *supratonsillar fossa*, which may readily be seen on looking into the mouth, is to be regarded as a remnant of the original second pouch (Hammar Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1903, vol. 61, pp. 404–458).

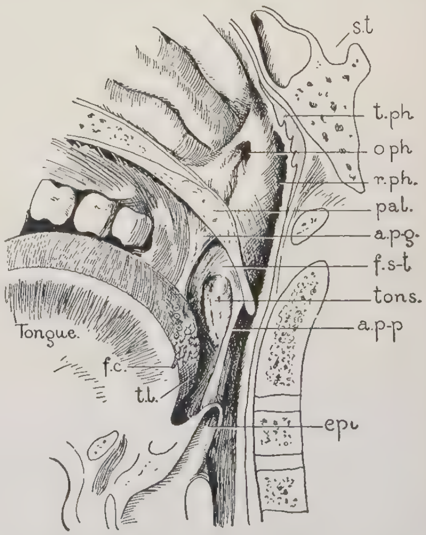


FIG. 196.—A MEDIAN SECTION THROUGH THE PHARYNX OF AN ADULT. (After Corning.)

a. p-g., Palato-glossal arch; **a. p-p.**, palato-pharyngeal arch; **epi.**, epiglottis; **f. c.**, foramen cæcum; **f. s-t.**, supratonsillar fossa; **o. ph.**, pharyngeal orifice of the auditory tube; **pal.**, soft palate; **r. ph.**, pharyngeal recess; **s. t.**, sella turcica (which contains the hypophysis); **t. l.**, lingual tonsil; **tons.**, palatine tonsil; **t. ph.**, pharyngeal tonsil.

The lingual and pharyngeal tonsils, which are similar in structure to the palatine tonsils, develop as median structures with no relation to the pharyngeal pouches. Therefore the second pouches are to be regarded as the site rather than the source of the palatine tonsils; there are no tonsils in the second pouches of the rat (Hammar).

The third pouch (Fig. 195, 3) near its junction with the ectoderm, sends a tubular diverticulum (*th*) down the neck behind the thyroid gland; it continues into the thorax, lying ventral to the arch of the aorta (as seen in front view in Fig. 197). This diverticulum loses its lumen, becomes detached from the pharynx, and unites with its fellow on the opposite side to form the *thymus*. Besides this elongated structure, each third pouch produces an *epithelial body*, or *nodulus thymicus*, which is a round clump of cells detached from the pouch at the upper end of the thymic diverticulum. Each epithelial body becomes attached to the posterior surface of the thyroid gland, forming the inferior pair of *parathyroid glands* (Fig. 197, *p.*).

The fourth pouch on either side (Fig. 195, 4) gives rise to an epithelial body similar to the nodulus thymicus. These likewise become detached as *parathyroid glands*, and they constitute the superior pair (Fig. 197, *p. g.*). Sometimes a parathyroid gland degenerates and disappears, and in other cases one of them may become subdivided, but typically there are four in the adult.

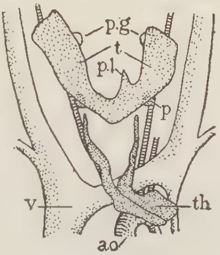


FIG. 197.
The thymus, **th.**, and thyroid, **t.**, of 20 mm. human embryo; **p.**, parathyroid gland (derived from the 3d pouch); **p. g.**, parathyroid gland (derived from the 4th pouch); **p. l.**, pyramidal lobe of the thyroid; **ao.** aorta; **v.**, vena cava superior. (After Verdun.)

Behind the fourth pouch, on either side, there is a tubular prolongation of the pharynx variously known as the postbranchial, ultimobranchial or telobranchial body. As the fourth pouch becomes well formed, the postbranchial body is so closely associated with it that together they form a Y-shaped structure, attached to the pharynx by a common stalk (Fig. 195). The postbranchial bodies then grow toward one another across the front of the neck, after the manner of the thymic diverticula. Their ventral ends become detached and imbedded in the thyroid gland, to the substance of which they were formerly believed to contribute. There is, however, no satisfactory evidence that they produce thyroid tissue, and they are generally supposed to disintegrate.

The first recognition of the significance of the mammalian gill clefts is credited to Rathke, in 1832, who published the following significant conclusions in his "Untersuchungen über den Kiemenapparat der Wirbelthiere."

"In all vertebrates without exception, in the earliest period of development, there are formed the beginnings of a branchial apparatus. Its elements vary in number in the different vertebrates, yet in tissue, form, position and connections they are very similar to one another, and are built upon the same plan. Their development, however, proceeds along different lines in the various animals. In some it is partly regressive, bringing about the most manifold and divergent modifications of these structures, not merely in form but also in tissue, type, and significance. Yet there always remains an analogy between them; and through easy transitions, the forms and types pass into one another from the bony fishes even to man. The branchial apparatus is most highly developed in fishes; in the other vertebrates its development is the less complete, the further, in general, these vertebrates are removed from the fishes."

The mammalian gill clefts, although rudimentary as branchial organs, are of the utmost anatomical importance. A single large artery passes from the ventral aorta to the dorsal aorta between the successive pouches, and also in front of the first and behind the last. These *aortic arches* therefore number one more than the series of pouches; from them, portions of the aorta, carotid and subclavian arteries are produced, as described in works on embryology. The nerves send trunks down between the pouches, the facial nerve being between the first and second, the glossopharyngeus between the second and third, and the superior laryngeal branch of the vagus between the third and fourth. Thus these structures determine the arrangement of the vessels and nerves.

On the basis of comparative studies the presence of a fifth pouch in mammals was predicted, and the posterior arm of the Y-shaped outgrowth, including the postbranchial body, is often described as such. A branch of the superior laryngeal nerve is said to pass between the arms of the Y, but a typical branchial relation between the nerves and the fifth pouch has not as yet been established. A "fifth aortic arch" is often represented as passing between the fourth pouch and the postbranchial body, but it has been shown that this arch differs from all the others in its order of development (forming only after the "sixth" is complete). Whereas the third, fourth, and last aortic arches all produce very important vessels, the questionable "fifth arch" is an insignificant plexiform anastomosis, which disappears rapidly. Small vessels, however, are always to be found near the postbranchial body in rabbit, pig and human embryos measuring 5–10 mm. The most convincing evidence of the presence of a fifth pouch is an actual contact with the ectoderm, posterior to the fourth pouch; this was recorded by Hammar in a 5-mm. embryo, but the contact on either side took place in only one 12 μ section. Grosser states that a closing membrane "is perhaps not always formed, and is at all events very transitory" (Human Embryology, ed. by Keibel and Mall, 1912, vol. 2). There are as yet very few observations to show that it ever occurs in mammalian embryos. The existence of a sixth pouch has been asserted on the basis of slight elevations which are perhaps inconstant.

TONSILS

The *palatine tonsils* are two rounded masses of lymphoid tissue, one on either side of the throat, between the arches of the palate (Fig. 196). Frequently they have been called *amygdalæ* (almonds), but the older Latin term for them is *tonsilla* (a stake to which boats are tied). They are covered by the *mucous membrane* or *tunica mucosa*, which throughout the digestive tract consists of several layers. The soft moist entodermal *epithelium* rests on a connective or reticular tissue layer, the *tunica propria.* A structureless basement membrane, the *membrana propria*, is often present immediately beneath the epithelium. The epithelium, membrana propria, and tunica propria together form the mucous membrane, which in dissection would be stripped off as a single structure. Beneath it, and sometimes not clearly separable from the tunica propria, is the *submucous layer*, or *tela submucosa*. It is a vascular connective tissue, by which the mucous membrane is attached to underlying muscles or bones. All the layers named are involved in the tonsils which, however, are essentially lymphoid accumulations in the tunica propria.

The epithelium of the palatine tonsils is a stratified epithelium of many layers, with flattened cells on its smooth free surface, and columnar cells beneath. Its attached surface is invaded by connective tissue elevations or papillæ, so that it appears wavy in sections (Fig. 198). The stratified epithelium lines from ten to twenty almost macroscopic depressions, called *tonsillar pits* or *fossulæ* (crypts). These are irregularly tubular and sometimes branched. Many lymphocytes penetrate between the epithelial cells and escape from the free surface into the saliva, becoming "salivary corpuscles." In places the tonsillar epithelium is so full of lymphocytes as to appear disintegrated, a condition which was first described by Stöhr (Biol. Centrabl., 1882, vol. 2). It occurs also in the epithelium of the lingual tonsil as seen in Fig. 200. In the reticular tissue of the tunica propria, especially around the pits, there are many lymph nodules, some of which are well defined, with germinative centers, but many others are fused in indefinite masses. The lymphoid tissue constitutes the bulk of the tonsil.

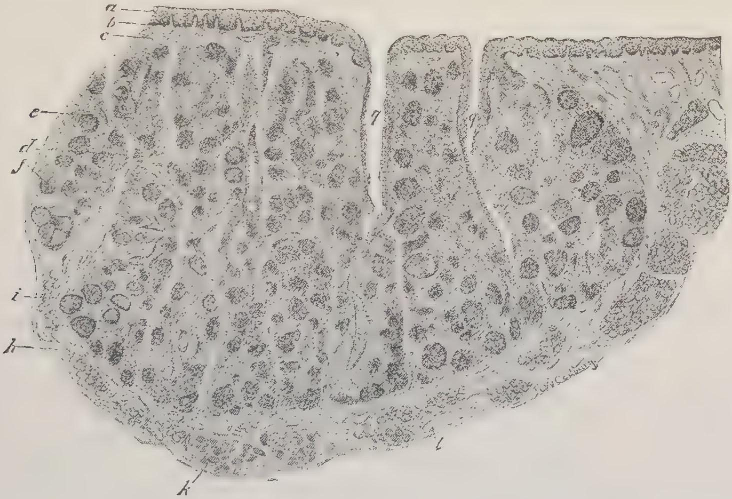


FIG. 198.—VERTICAL SECTION OF A HUMAN PALATINE TONSIL.
a, Stratified epithelium; **b**, basement membrane; **c**, tunica propria; **d**, trabeculæ; **e**, diffuse lymphoid tissue; **f**, nodules; **h**, capsule; **i**, mucous glands; **k**, striated muscle; **l**, blood vessel; **q**, pits. (From Radasch.)

The submucous layer forms a capsule for the organ, into which it sends trabecular prolongations. It contains many blood and lymphatic vessels, together with branches of the glossopharyngeal nerve and sphenopalatine ganglion which supply the tonsil. It contains also the secreting portions of small mucous glands, some of which empty into the pits, but most of their ducts terminate in the mucous membrane surrounding the tonsil. They resemble other mucous glands of the mouth which will

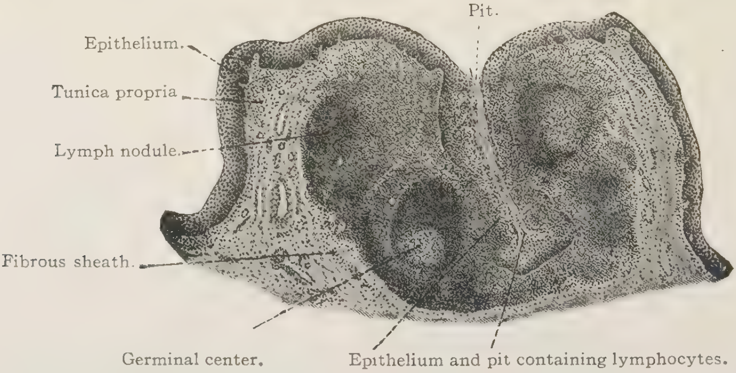


Fig. 199.—Vertical Section through a Pit in the Lingual Tonsil of an Adult Man. × 26.

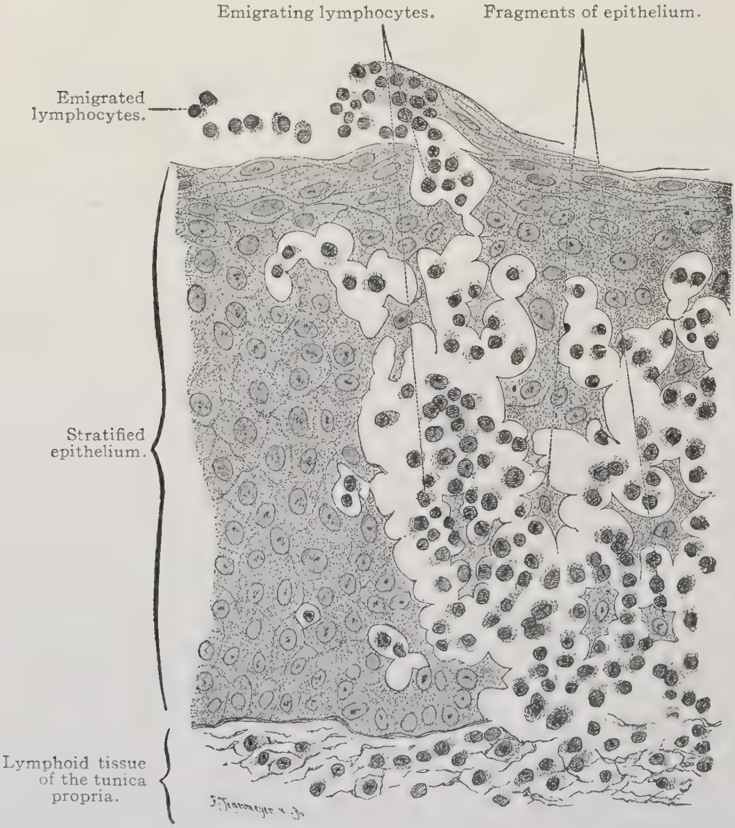


Fig. 200.—From a Thin Section of a Lingual Tonsil of an Adult Man. × 420. On the left the epithelium is free from lymphocytes, on the right many lymphocytes are wandering through.

be described presently. Beyond the submucosa is striated muscle, belonging to the arches of the palate and to the superior constrictor of the pharynx; striated muscle fibers are therefore readily included in sections of the tonsil.

The *pharyngeal tonsil* is an accumulation of lymphoid tissue on the median dorsal wall of the pharynx, between the openings of the auditory tubes (Fig. 196). In childhood it is liable to become irregularly enlarged so as to obstruct the inner nasal openings, thus forming the "adenoids" of clinicians. It is covered with stratified epithelium, which is ciliated in embryonic life; and in the adult, cilia may be found upon the epithelium within the pits. The pits and lymphoid tissue are quite like those of the palatine tonsils.

The *lingual tonsil* is an aggregation of pits surrounded by lymphoid tissue (Fig. 199). It is found in the back part of the tongue (Figs. 196 and 202), the surface of which is very different in texture from the front part, presenting low mounds with central depressions. Each depression is the outlet of a pit. Lymphocytes pass through the epithelium (Fig. 200) and become salivary corpuscles, which are said to produce substances protecting the tissue from bacterial invasion.

As a group the three sets of tonsils form an incomplete ring of lymphoid tissue guarding the entrance to the pharynx. They may be considered as a special accumulation of the lymphoid nodules found throughout the intestinal tract. The special features of the tonsils are the arrangement of the nodules about the pits, which may be considered as the ducts of glands or abortive glands, and the passage of the lymphocytes to the surface, even through a stratified epithelium. The pits may form convenient pockets for the growth of bacteria, and it is seldom that some evidence of their action is not shown by the resulting necrosis, even in tonsils considered normal.

Development and Structure of the Tongue

The tongue consists of two parts, an anterior and a posterior, which differ in origin and adult structure. Separating the branchial clefts from one another there are columns of tissue known as *branchial arches*. They come together in the median ventral line to form the floor of the mouth (Fig. 201). In this figure the upper jaw and roof of the pharynx have been cut away; the branchial clefts are seen as dark depressions bounded laterally by thin plates. The first branchial arch (1) is between the oral and auditory clefts. In the median ventral line an elevation (*tuberculum impar*) arises between this arch and the second; it becomes continuous with a larger elevated portion of the mandibular arch to form the anterior part of the tongue (t^1). The second and third arches unite toward the median ventral line and there produce the posterior part of the tongue (t^2). Between the anterior and posterior parts is the opening of the thyroglossal duct, later the foramen cæcum. The epiglottis is an elevated part of the third arch separated from the posterior part of the tongue by a curved groove.

In the adult (Fig. 202) the *dorsum* of the anterior part of the tongue is roughened with elevations or *papillæ.* These are chiefly the slender *filiform papillæ* and *conical papillæ;* but knob-like forms, the *fungiform papillæ,* are scattered among them over the entire surface, and in life they can be easily distinguished owing to their red color. Near the junction of the anterior and posterior parts of the tongue there is a V-shaped row of larger papillæ, generally six to twelve in number, called *vallate papillæ.* Their name refers to the deep narrow depression which encircles them.

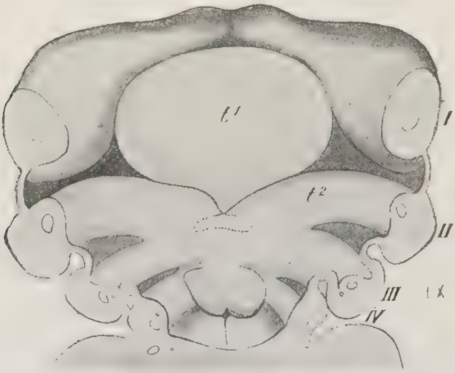


Fig. 201.—Floor of the Pharynx of a 10-mm. Human Embryo.

I-IV. Branchial arches; **t¹**, anterior part of the tongue; **t²**, second arch, joining the posterior part of the tongue toward the median line. The thyroid gland is dotted. The epiglottis extends over the fourth arch. (From McMurrich, after His.)

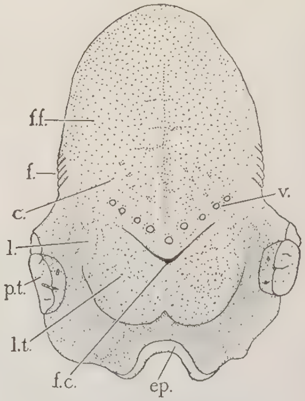


Fig. 202.—The Upper Surface of the Adult Tongue.

c., Conical papillæ; **ep.,** epiglottis; **f.,** foliate papillæ; **f. c.,** foramen cæcum; **f.f.,** position of the filiform and fungiform papillæ; **l.,** lenticular papillæ; **l. t.,** lingual tonsil; **p. t.,** palatine tonsil; **v.,** vallate papillæ.

Behind the apex of the V, which is directed toward the throat, is the foramen cæcum. On either side of the tongue, as indicated in the figure, there are from three to eight parallel vertical folds (2–5 mm. long) occurring close together; these are the *foliate papillæ.* In the foliate and vallate papillæ the organs of taste are most numerous. The under surface of the tongue is free from epithelial papillæ; its mucosa resembles that which lines the mouth. The posterior part of the tongue has a nodular surface covered with soft epithelium and contains the lingual tonsil, which has already been described. Laterally it presents fold-like elevations called *lenticular papillæ.*

Filiform papillæ (Fig. 203) are slender cornified epithelial projections, composed of pointed cells which are described as stacked like superimposed hollow cones. The cells have undergone a horny hyaline degeneration. These projections are arranged in clumps which rest upon a

12TH NERVE

group of from five to twenty connective tissue elevations, or secondary papillæ; and these in turn are at the summit of a cylindrical or conical primary papilla, composed of vascular connective tissue with numerous elastic fibers. These primary papillæ form the basal portions of the filiform papillæ. They are well shown in Fig. 204, along with the secondary papillæ, but the cornified processes of the thick epithelium above them have undergone post-mortem disintegration. Most of the papillæ of the tongue are of the filiform type.

Fungiform papillæ (Fig. 204) are rounded elevations with a somewhat constricted base, varying in height from 0.5 to 1.5 mm. In life they are red, since their epithelium is not cornified and transmits the color of the blood beneath. They contain a primary connective tissue papilla, with but few elastic fibers, beset on all sides with secondary papillæ.

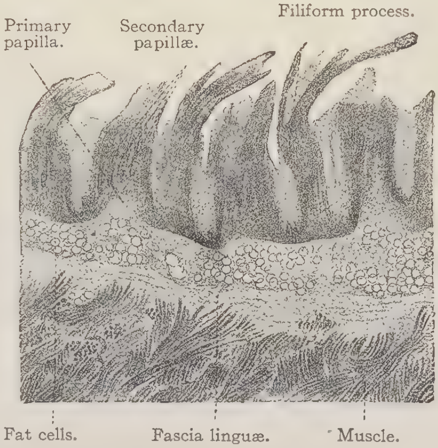
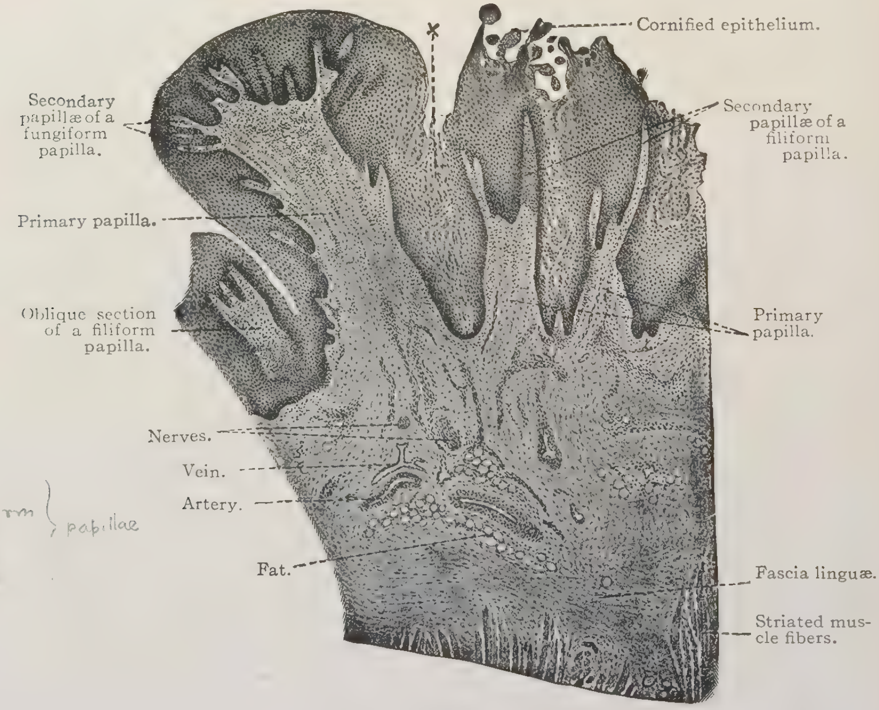


FIG. 203.—FROM A LONGITUDINAL SECTION OF THE DORSUM OF A HUMAN TONGUE. × 12.

The primary connective tissue papillæ cause corresponding elevations on the surface of the tongue, while the secondary papillæ cause differences in thickness of the stratified epithelium. The latter may be considered as a means of increasing the area of the basal layers in proportion to the surface, and thus providing more cells capable of reproduction and of replacing the loss from the surface. The number and height of the secondary papillæ in any stratified epithelium may be taken as a measure of the normal surface loss of dead cells. The secondary papillæ also provide an economic arrangement for the blood supply, each representing a vascular unit with central artery.

The vallate papillæ resemble broad fungiform papillæ. They are from 1 to 3 mm. broad and 1 to 1.5 mm. tall, each being surrounded by a deep groove (Fig. 205). Their connective tissue often contains longitudinal, oblique, or encircling smooth muscle fibers, the last named being found near the lateral walls. Secondary papillæ are confined to the upper wall. Occasionally the epithelium sends branched prolongations into the underlying tissue. These may become detached from the surface and appear as concentric bulb-like bodies such as are generally known as "epithelial pearls." There are also branched serous glands which grow down from the epithelium, having ducts which open into the deep grooves (Fig. 205). The foliate papillæ are parallel folds of mucous membrane, in the epithelium of which there are many *taste buds*. These structures, which occur also in the lateral walls of the vallate papillæ will be described with the nerves of the tongue.

The tunica propria of the mucous membrane is a loose connective tissue layer containing fat. It is not sharply separated from the denser submucosa. At the tip of the tongue, or *apex linguæ*, and over the dorsum, the submucosa is particularly firm and thick, forming the *fascia linguæ*. Three sorts of glands branch in the submucosa and may extend into the superficial part of the muscle layer. These are the serous glands found near the vallate and foliate papillæ; mucous glands occurring at the root of the tongue, along its borders, and in an area in front of the median vallate papilla; and the two mixed *anterior lingual glands*, from half an inch to an inch long, each of which empties by five or six ducts on the under surface of the apex. The structure of these types of glands will be described in the section on oral glands.


x
Cornified epithelium.
Secondary papillæ of a fungiform papilla.
Secondary papillæ of a filiform papilla.
Primary papilla.
Oblique section of a filiform papilla.
Primary papilla.
Nerves.
Vein.
Artery.
Fat.
Fascia linguæ.
Striated muscle fibers.

liform
ngiform } papillae
[illegible]
[illegible]

FIG. 204.—FROM A LONGITUDINAL SECTION OF THE HUMAN TONGUE. × 25. x, Epithelium showing post-mortem disintegration.

The muscular layer consists of interwoven bundles of striated fibers which are inserted into the submucosa or into the intermuscular connective tissue. Some of these striated fibers are branched. The musculature of the tongue is partly divided into right and left halves by a dense median connective tissue partition, the *septum linguæ*, which begins low on the hyoid bone, attains its greatest height in the middle of the tongue, and becomes lower anteriorly until it disappears. It does not extend clear through the tongue since it ends 3 mm. beneath the dorsum. The muscles of the tongue are partly vertical (*Mm. genioglossus, hyoglossus*, and *verticalis linguæ*), partly longitudinal (*Mm. styloglossus, chondroglossus, superior* and *inferior longitudinalis linguæ*) and partly transverse (*M. transversus linguæ*). The *glossopalatine muscle* of the palatine group also enters the tongue. Some of the muscle fibers are oblique but many of the bundles cross at right angles. In the connective tissue between them, medullated nerves are abundant. Some are sensory nerves to the mucosa, but many of them are the lingual branches of the hypoglossal nerve which supply all the tongue muscles except the inferior longitudinal; the latter is supplied by fibers from the chorda tympani. Sensory spindles have been found in the lingual muscles.

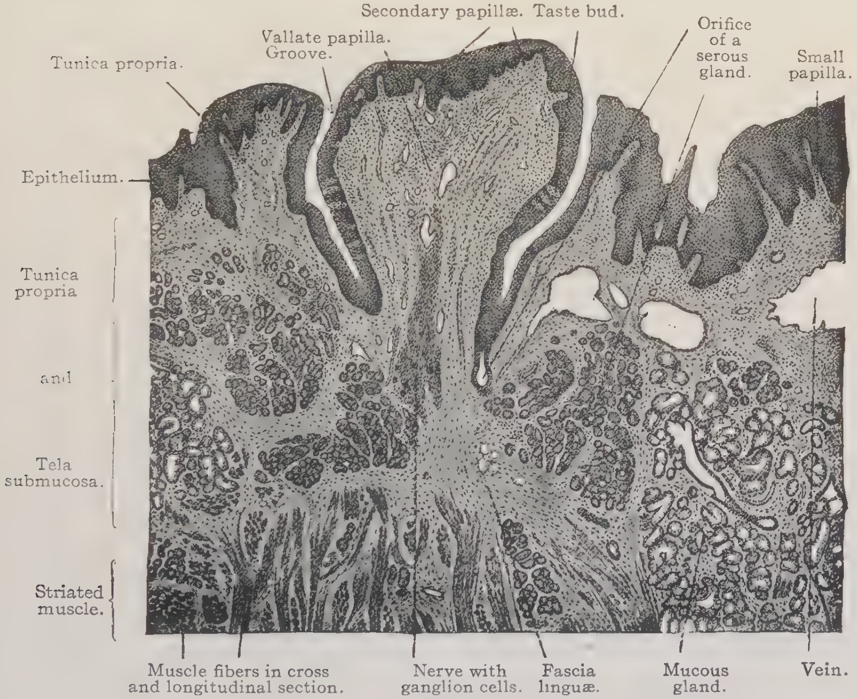


FIG. 205.—VERTICAL SECTION OF A HUMAN VALLATE PAPILLA. × 25.

Blood vessels are numerous in the submucosa and form extensive capillary networks in the tunica propria of both primary and secondary papillæ. Small lymphatic vessels also form a network in the tunica propria, and this is continuous with a coarser net in the submucosa.

The sensory nerves are the terminations of the lingual branches of the mandibular nerve anteriorly, and of the lingual branches of the glossopharyngeus posteriorly. In the submucous connective tissue they form a plexus of medullated and non-medullated fibers, and in some places, notably beneath the vallate papillæ, nerve cells are found, grouped in small ganglia (Fig. 205). The terminal branches of these nerves probably end in part in bulbous corpuscles, but most of them, as non-medullated fibers, enter the epithelium and extend to the outer epithelial cells, generally without branching (as on the left of Fig. 206). Others enter the groups of specialized epithelial cells, known as *taste buds*, which are believed to be the special organs of taste. Within the buds the nerves divide into coarse varicose branches which end freely, without uniting with the cells or anastomosing with one another.

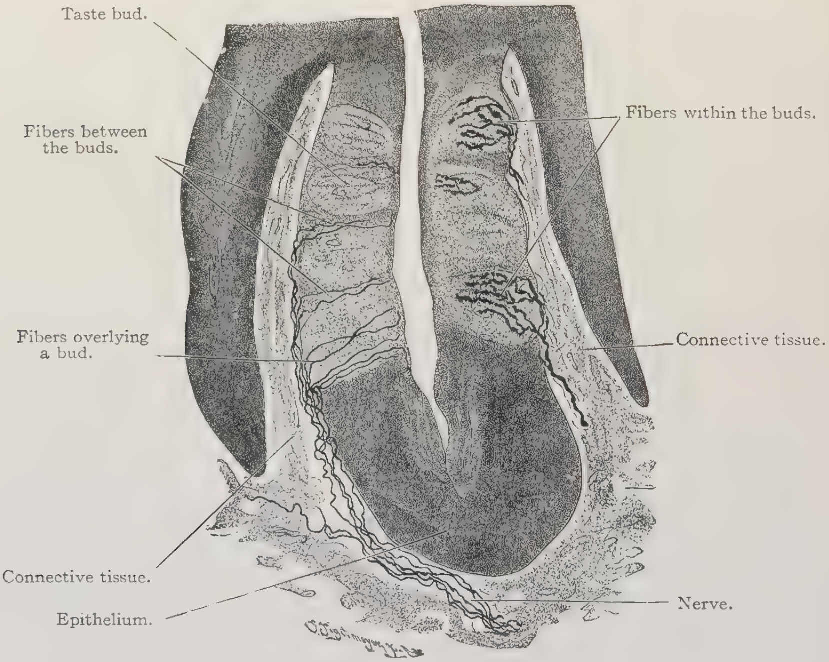


FIG. 206.—FROM A VERTICAL SECTION OF THE FOLIATE PAPILLA OF A RABBIT. × 220. (Nerve fiber stain.)

Taste buds are round or oval groups of elongated epithelial cells, most of which extend from the basal to the free surface of the epithelium. In embryos of from five to seven months they are more numerous than in the adult, occurring in many filiform papillæ, in all the fungiform, vallate and foliate papillæ, and also upon both sides of the epiglottis. Subsequently they are destroyed with an infiltration of leucocytes except on the lateral walls of the vallate and foliate papillæ, on the laryngeal surface of the epiglottis, and a small portion of those on the anterior and lateral fungiform papillæ. These remain in the adult. In the outer half of each bud the cells converge like the segments of a melon, so that their ends are brought together in a small area. This area is at the bottom of a little *pore* or short canal found among the outermost flat cells of the epithelium. The taste pore opens freely to the surface, but in oblique sections it may appear bridged as in Fig. 207.

Within the bud two sorts of elongated cells may be distinguished, namely, *supporting cells* which are chiefly peripheral, and *taste cells* which are central. There are also certain cells which lie wholly in the basal part of the bud, and lymphocytes which have entered the bud from below are frequently seen among the other cells. The supporting cells are paler than the gustatory cells, and may be uniform in diameter or tapering toward their ends; they are sometimes forked or branched below. The taste cells are darker and more slender, being thickened to accommodate the narrow nucleus which is usually near the middle of the cell. At the taste pore these cells end in a stiff refractive process which is a cuticular formation. The processes extend into the deeper part of the pore but do not reach its outlet. These cells are believed to transmit the gustatory stimuli to the nerves which branch about them. To a less extent the nerves are said to ramify around the supporting cells, which perhaps have other functions than their name implies.

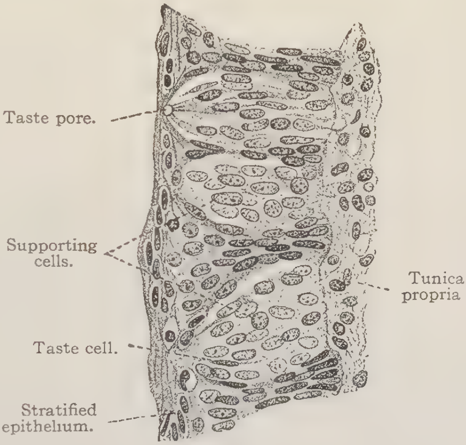


Fig. 207.—From a Vertical Section of a Human Foliate Papilla. × 330.

The processes of the taste cells are protected by their position within the pore from any injury by friction on the surface. They can only be stimulated by substances in solution which can enter the pore. A dry tongue, as after atropin which inhibits the secretion of the oral glands, cannot taste dry salt or sugar.

Mouth and Pharynx

The lining of the mouth, like the covering of the tongue, consists of epithelium, tunica propria, and submucosa. At the lips, toward the line of transition from skin to mucous membrane, hairs disappear from the skin. The epithelium becomes thicker but more transparent as it crosses the line (Fig. 208). Its outer cells are still cornified, but they are not so flat and compactly placed as in the skin. The deeper cells appear vesicular. Within the mouth, except on the tongue, cornified cells are absent, but granules of the refractive horny substance, *keratohyalin*, are said to occur in the outer cells, even in the œsophagus. The free surface of the epithelium is generally smooth, but its under surface is indented by many connective tissue papillæ, which are particularly long and slender in the gums and lips (Fig. 208). At the inner border of the lips at birth, there are free papillary projections described as "true villi," but these later disappear. Cilia are found on the oral, pharyngeal and œsophageal epithelia in the embryo, but in the adult cilia persist only in certain parts of the pharynx.

The tunica propria in the mouth, as is generally the case in the digestive tract, has few elastic fibers. Some of its tissue is reticular, and in it, lymphoid accumulations are frequent; they may extend into the submucosa. On the oral surface of the soft palate there is a layer of elastic tissue between the propria and submucosa. A similar layer is found in the œsophageal end of the pharynx. It increases in thickness upward, at the expense of the submucosa, so that it forms a thick layer in the back of the pharynx in contact with the muscles, among the fibers of which it sends prolongations. This elastic layer, as the *fascia pharyngobasilaris*, is attached to the base of the skull.

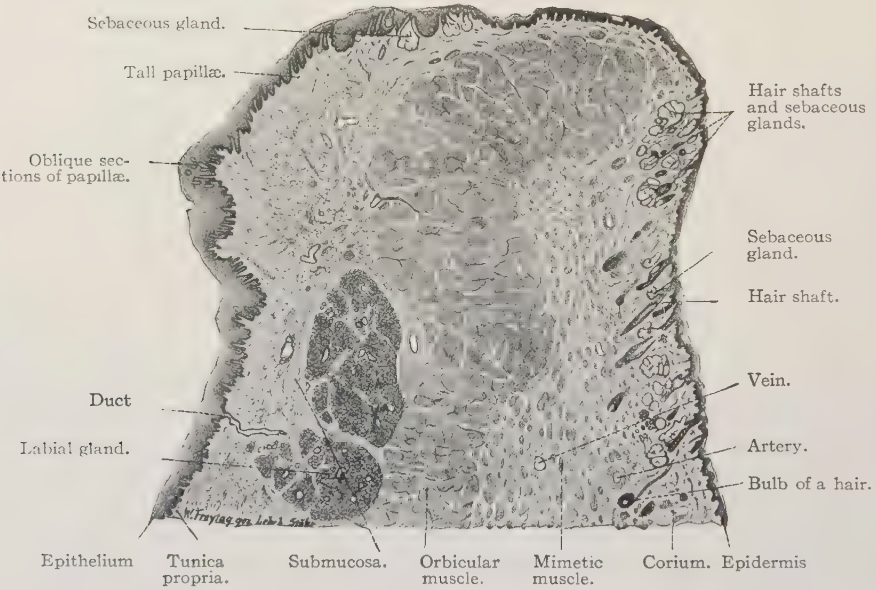


FIG. 208.—VERTICAL SECTION THROUGH THE LOWER LIP OF A MAN OF NINETEEN YEARS. × 10. Epidermis and corium constitute the skin; epithelium, t. propria, and submucosa form the oral mucous membrane.

In most of the oral region there is no sharp line of separation between the propria and the submucosa. The latter may be a loose layer containing fat, and allowing considerable movement of the mucosa, or, as in the gums and hard palate, it may be a dense layer binding the membrane closely to the periosteum. In the submucosa are the branches of various glands. On the inner border of the lips and the inner surface of the cheek, there are *sebaceous glands* without hairs, which first develop during puberty. This type is described with the skin. The other oral glands are considered in the following section.

Glands of the Oral Cavity

The oral glands include serous glands, mucous glands and mixed glands, to be described in turn. In the general account of the processes of secretion (p. 64) the mucous and serous cells have already been described. Their arrangement in the particular oral glands follows.

Serous Glands

The serous oral glands are the parotid glands and the serous glands of the tongue (v. Ebner's glands). The latter are branched tubular glands limited to the vicinity of the vallate and foliate papillæ. Generally they open into the grooves which bound these papillæ. Their ducts are lined with simple or with stratified epithelium, which is occasionally ciliated. Their small tubules consist of a delicate *membrana propria* or basement membrane, which surrounds the low columnar or conical serous cells. In this simple epithelium, cell walls are lacking. With special stains and high magnification, a dark granular zone toward the lumen has been distinguished from the clear basal portion of the cell which contains the nucleus (Fig. 209). The lumen of the tubules is very narrow and receives the still narrower intercellular secretory capillaries (Fig. 210).

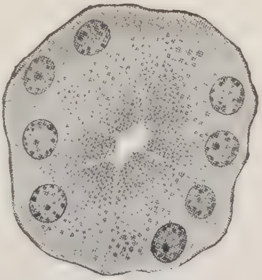


Fig. 209.—Tubule of a Serous Gland from the Human Tongue. × 750.
Secretory granules toward the lumen are finer than those further out. The light intercellular lines represent the secretory capillaries.

The *parotid glands* are the largest oral glands. Each is situated in front of the ear and is folded around the ramus of the mandible; its duct, the *parotid duct* (Stenson's), empties into the mouth opposite the second molar tooth of the upper jaw. The parotid gland is an organic, branched serous gland, subdivided into lobes and lobules. The *accessory parotid gland* appears as a lobe separated from the others. The parotid duct is characterized by a thick membrana propria, and consists of a two-layered columnar epithelium with occasional goblet cells. As the duct branches repeatedly, the epithelium becomes a simple columnar epithelium, after being pseudostratified, with two rows of nuclei. Possibly the epithelium near the outlet of the duct is also pseudostratified. This *excretory* portion of the duct is followed by the *secretory* part, formed of simple columnar cells with basal striations, perhaps indicative of secretory activity (Fig. 211). As shown in the diagram (Fig. 212) and in the section (Fig. 213) the secretory ducts become slender, forming the *intercalated ducts*. These are lined with flat spindle-shaped cells which are continuous with the large cuboidal serous cells of the terminal alveoli. The gland cells when empty of secretion are small and darkly granular, and when full are larger and clearer. They rest upon a basement membrane containing stellate cells. Intercellular secretory capillaries end blindly before reaching the basement membrane.

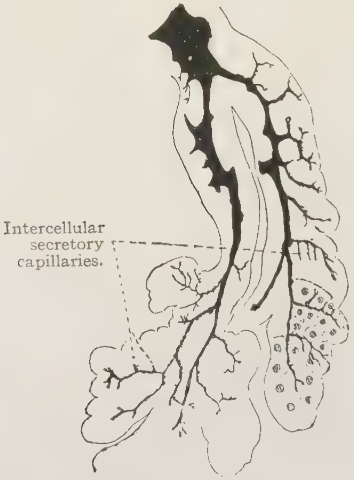


Fig. 210.—Section of a Serous Gland from the Tongue of a Mouse. × 240.
Prepared by Golgi's method, a precipitate has formed in the ducts. The right lower part of the figure has been completed by adding the cell outlines.

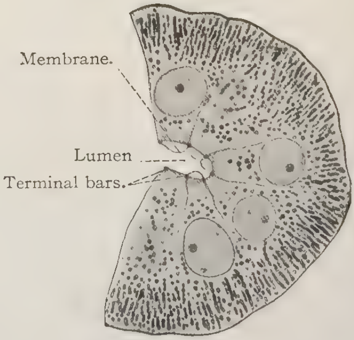


Fig. 211.—Part of a Cross Section of the Secretory Duct from the Parotid Gland of a Mouse.
The basal rods (mitochondria) toward the lumen break apart into secretory granules.

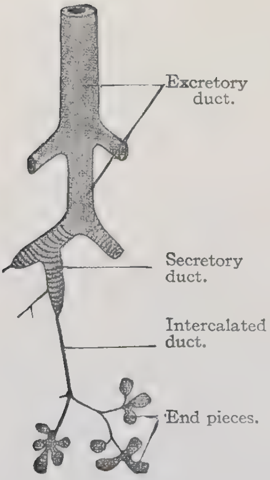


Fig. 212.—Diagram of the Human Parotid Gland.

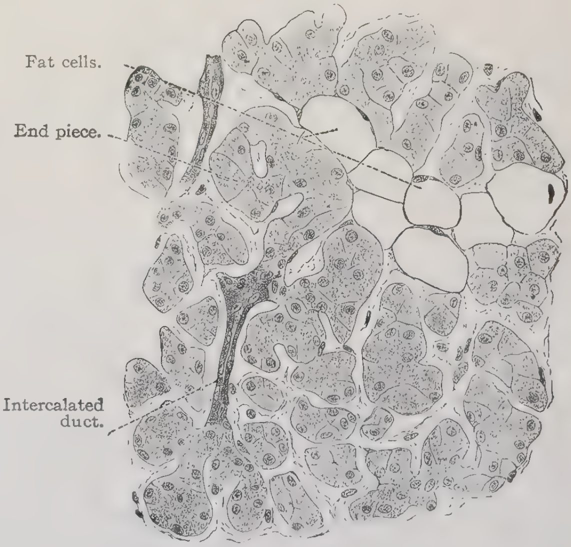


Fig. 213.—Section of the Parotid Gland of an Adult Man × 252.
The very narrow lumen of the alveolo-tubular end pieces is no shown.

Between the alveoli, which are somewhat elongated and branched there is vascular connective tissue containing fat cells. In denser form it surrounds the lobules and lobes of the gland, and the larger ducts. The ducts which are found in the connective tissue septa are called interlobular ducts, in distinction from those which are surrounded by the alveoli in which they and their branches terminate. The latter are intralobular ducts. They are smaller and have less connective tissue around them than the interlobular ducts, of which, however, they are continuations.

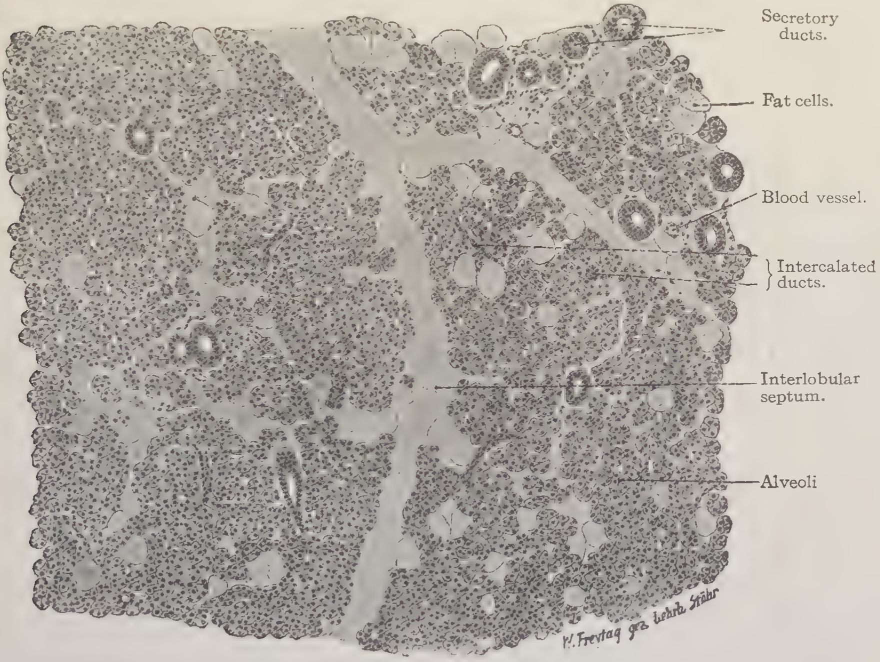


Fig. 214.—Section of the Parotid Gland from a Man of Twenty-three Years. × 100. Portions of three lobules are shown, which have drawn apart from one another in the process of preparation Note the abundance of secretory ducts.

Vessels and Nerves. The arteries generally follow the ducts from the connective tissue septa into the lobules, where they produce abundant capillary networks close to the basement membranes. The veins derived from these soon enter the interlobular tissue, and may then accompany the arteries. The lymphatic vessels follow the ducts, and branch in the interlobular connective tissue, in which they terminate. Only tissue spaces have been found within the lobules. The nerve supply is from several sources. Sympathetic nerves from the plexus around the carotid artery accompany the blood vessels into the parotid gland, and by controlling the blood supply have an important bearing upon secretion. The nerves which reach the gland cells are in connection with the tympanic branch of the glossopharyngeal nerve. This branch extends to the otic ganglion, from which fibers pass to the parotid gland by way of an anastomosis with the auriculo-temporal branch of the mandibular nerve. Within the gland the nerves pass along the ducts, where they are associated with microscopic ganglia, and form plexuses beneath the basement membranes of the alveoli. From these plexuses, fibers penetrate the basement membranes and form simple or branched varicose endings in contact with the gland cells. Other nerves enter the substance of the gland, either to pass through it or to contribute to its nerve supply; these include branches of the trigeminal, facial and great auricular nerves, the last coming from the second and third cervical nerves. Free sensory endings of medullated fibers are said to occur in the epithelium of the ducts.

Mucous Glands

The purely mucous glands of the mouth are simple branched alveolo-tubular glands found on the anterior surface of the soft palate and on the hard palate (*palatine glands*), along the borders of the tongue (*lingual glands*), and in greater numbers in the root of the tongue. There they may open into the tonsillar pits through ducts lined with columnar epithelium, sometimes ciliated. The wall of the tubules consists of a structureless basement membrane and of columnar mucous cells, varying according to their functional condition. The empty cells are narrower than the others, and the nuclei, though at the base of the cell and transversely oval, are not as flat as in cells full of secretion. Seldom can cells be found completely occupied by unaltered protoplasm. A single gland, or even a single alveolus, may contain cells in different phases of secretion, as is clearly seen when special mucin stains are used. Secretory capillaries are not found in the purely mucous glands.

Mixed Glands

The mixed oral glands are the sublingual, submaxillary, anterior lingual, labial, buccal, and molar glands.

The *sublingual glands* are two groups of glands, one on either side of the median line, under the mucous membrane in the front of the mouth. The largest component is an alveolo-tubular structure emptying by the *ductus sublingualis major* on the side of the *frenulum linguæ.* The main stem and the principal branches of the large sublingual duct are lined by a two-layered or pseudostratified columnar epithelium, as in the parotid duct. They are surrounded by connective tissue containing many elastic fibers. Ducts less than .05 mm. in diameter have a simple columnar epithelium, which in a few places becomes low and basally striated to form the secretory ducts. As shown in the diagram, Fig. 215, the secretory ducts are very short, and they are accordingly infrequent in sections;

the slender intercalated ducts are absent. The terminal secreting portions of the gland are somewhat tortuous structures, often presenting outpocketings. They consist of mucous and serous cells quite evenly mixed, so that the gland has a characteristic appearance under low magnification (Fig. 216). The serous cells sometimes border upon the lumen, but often they are separated from it by the mucous cells so that they form crescents (Fig. 217). Only the serous cells are provided with the branched inter-cellular secretory capillaries. Around the tubules there is a basement membrane including certain stellate cells. The interlobular connective tissue contains many lymphocytes.

Near the gland just described, but apparently quite distinct from it, there is a group of 5 to 20 alveolo-tubular glands which open by separate ducts, the *ductus sublinguales minores*. These glands consist almost exclusively of mucous cells.

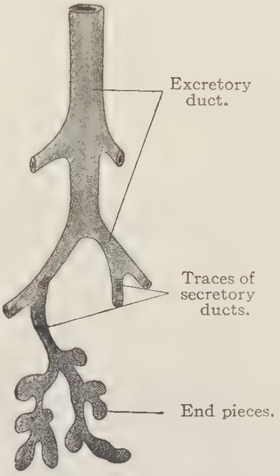


FIG. 215.—DIAGRAM OF THE HUMAN SUBLINGUAL GLAND.

The sublingual gland as a whole receives fibers from the submaxillary ganglion, and so from the chorda tympani, which passes to this ganglion

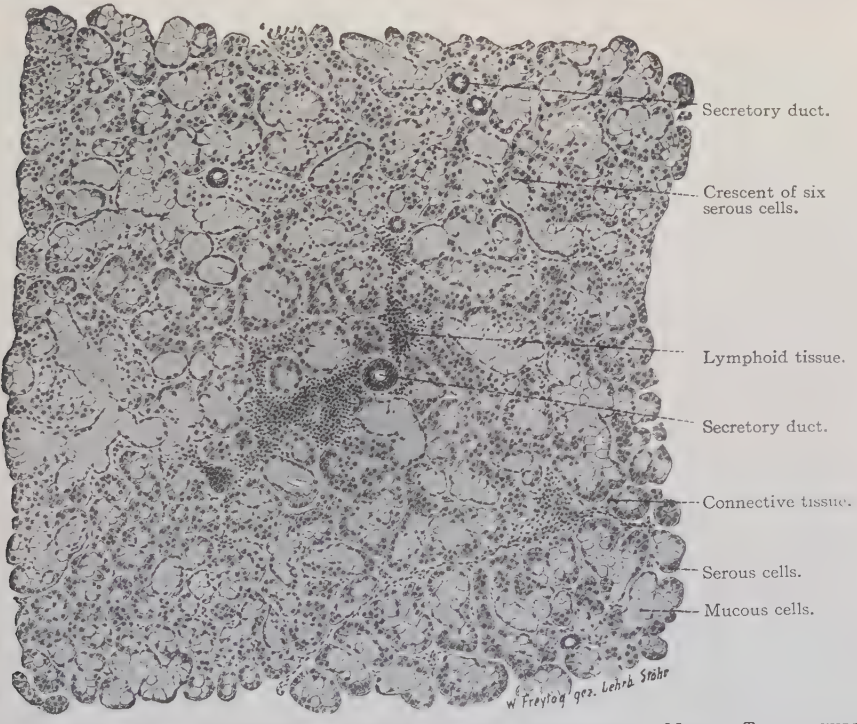


FIG. 216.—SECTION OF THE SUBLINGUAL GLAND (GL. SUBL. MAJOR) FROM A MAN OF TWENTY-THREE YEARS. × 100.

by way of an anastomosis with the lingual branch of the mandibular nerve. Its ducts are said to have sensory fibers, probably derived from the lingual nerve. Sympathetic fibers from the superior cervical ganglion, which have ascended the neck as perivascular plexuses, extend to the sublingual gland around its arteries.

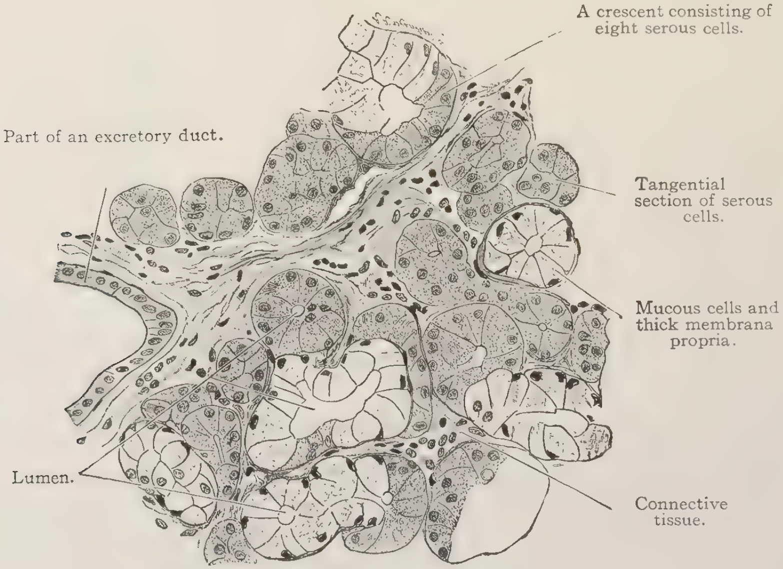

A crescent consisting of eight serous cells.
Part of an excretory duct.
Tangential section of serous cells.
Mucous cells and thick membrana propria.
Lumen.
Connective tissue.

FIG. 217.—SECTION OF A HUMAN SUBLINGUAL GLAND. × 252.

The *submaxillary glands* are a pair of branched alveolar glands, in part tubuloalveolar, found in the floor of the mouth, each being drained by a *submaxillary duct* (Wharton's) which opens on the sides of the frenulum linguæ near its front margin. Sometimes this duct is joined by the *ductus sublingualis major* so that the two have a common outlet. Its orifice may be lined by stratified epithelium, but this soon gives place to the two layered form. Secretory ducts are well developed (Fig. 218) and their basally striated cells contain a yellow pigment. The intercalated ducts, which are lined with simple cuboidal epithelium, lead to terminations of two sorts. Most of these consist entirely of serous cells. The others are mixed, but the crescents are small, composed of only a few or even of single serous cells (Figs. 219 and 220). Secretory capillaries such as have already been described, are related only to the serous cells. Elastic tissue surrounding

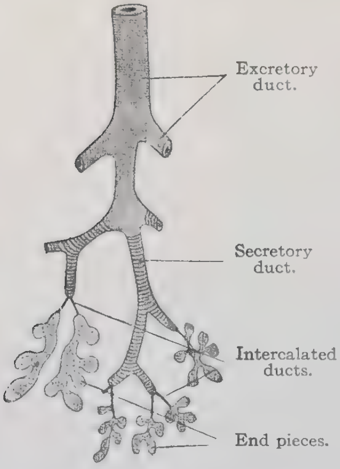


FIG. 218.—DIAGRAM OF THE HUMAN SUBMAXILLARY GLAND.

the alveoli has been thought to aid in expelling the secretion through the ducts. The nerves have the same origin as those of the sublingual gland.

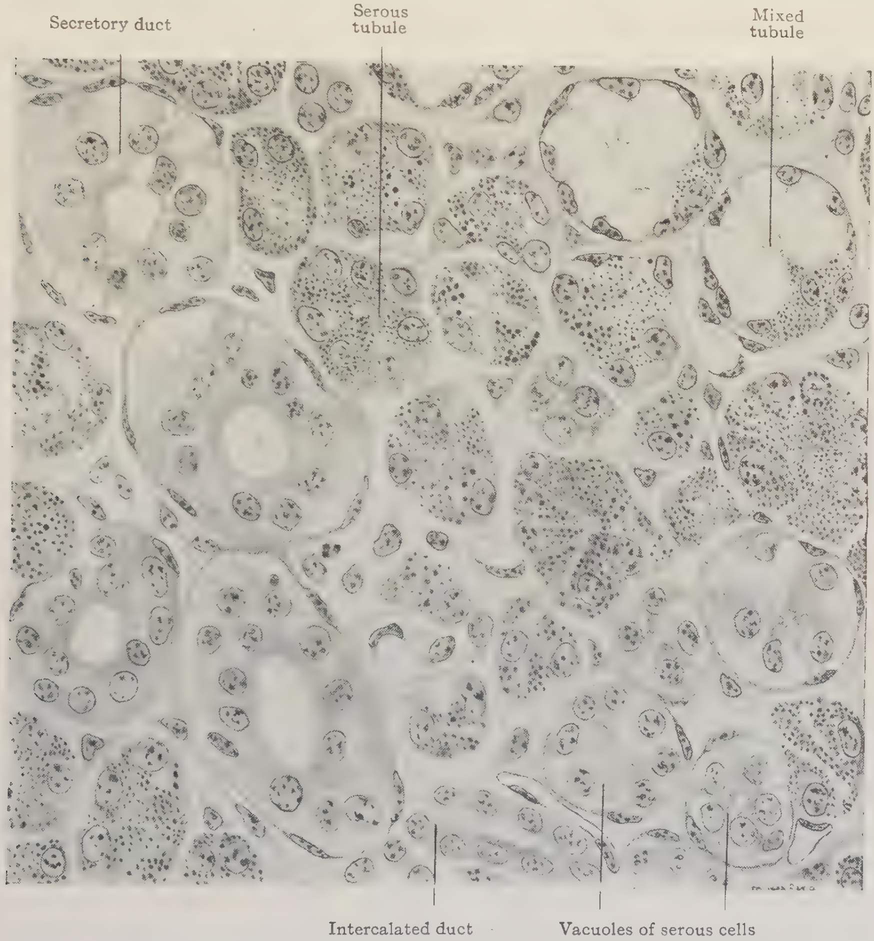


Fig. 219.—Section of Submaxillary Gland of Adult Man; Mucous and Serous Cells.

In the oral glands, not infrequently degenerating lobules occur, characterized by abundant connective tissue between tubules with wide lumens and low gland cells. Sometimes they are surrounded by leucocytes.

The Development of the Digestive Tube

The digestive tube of mammals arises as two outgrowths from the yolk-sac—the fore-gut and hind-gut respectively. They are shown in Fig. 221, A, which represents a young rabbit embryo placed in a vertical position. Most of the spherical yolk-sac has been cut away. Anteriorly the fore-gut (*ph*) is seen extending from the yolk-sac to the oral plate; posteriorly the sac has given rise to a short hind-gut from which a tubular ventral outgrowth, the *allantois*, has begun to develop. The allantois will be described with the membranes which surround the embryo. In an older stage (Fig. 221, B) the fore-gut and hind-gut have elongated, and the connection of the tube, which they form, with the yolk-sac is becoming reduced to a slender stalk. The entodermal tube within the stalk is called the *vitelline duct*. Posteriorly the intestine and allantois unite and form the *cloaca*, which is closed to the exterior by the *cloacal membrane*. (The marked bend in the intestinal tube shown in Fig. 221, B, which is often seen in human embryos, is exaggerated, if not produced altogether, by a post-mortem sagging of the yolk-sac.)

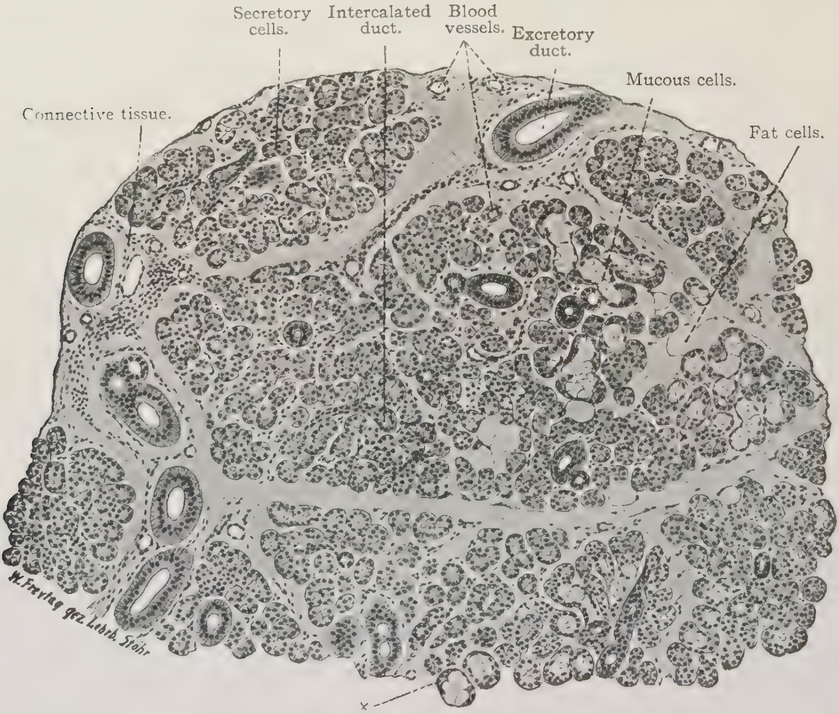


FIG. 220.—SECTION OF THE SUBMAXILLARY GLAND FROM A MAN OF TWENTY-THREE YEARS. × 100. Note that the serous cells predominate, and that secretory ducts are abundant. (A characteristic crescent is shown at x.)

In the later stage (Fig. 221, C) both the fore-gut and hind-gut have greatly elongated; together they form a loop of intestine extending out into the cavity of the umbilical cord. Near the bend in this loop the yolk-sac is still attached to the intestine by a stalk; the sac itself has been cut away in the figure. In addition to the pharynx already described, the fore-gut has given rise to an expanded portion or *stomach*. Between the stomach and pharynx it remains tubular and becomes the *œsophagus;* posterior to the stomach it is likewise tubular and there it forms a part of the small intestine. The first portion of the small intestine is called the *duodenum*, and is followed by the *jejunum* which passes without demarcation into the *ileum*. The ileum includes the portion to which the yolk-stalk is attached, and terminates at a bulbous enlargement (Fig. 221, C, *cae*) which gives rise to the *cæcum* and *vermiform process*. This *bulbus coli* (Johnson) marks the beginning of the large intestine or *colon*, and the cæcum and vermiform process are parts of the large intestine. Toward the cloaca the colon becomes the *rectum*, and near its termination it forms an elongated bulbous enlargement, the *bulbus analis*. This bulb forms essentially the *zona columnaris* in the anal part of the rectum. The *anus* is produced after the cloaca has separated into dorsal and ventral portions. The ventral division, which carries with it the allantois, becomes expanded to form the bladder, but its outlet remains relatively narrow and becomes the urethra. The outlet of the rectum is the anus, which is at first closed by the *anal membrane;* this membrane ruptures in embryos measuring from 20 to 30 mm., except in the occasional cases of imperforate anus. The tissue which subdivides the cloaca reaches the surface and constitutes the perineum.

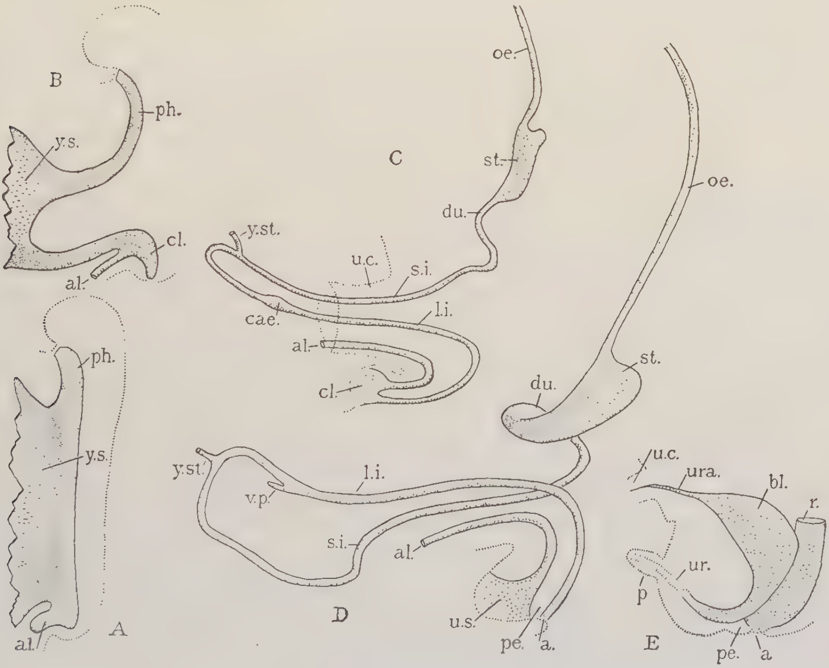


Fig 221.—Stages in the Development of the Digestive Tube.

A. Rabbit of nine days. **B.** Man 2.15 mm. (after His). **C.** Pig, 12 mm. **D.** Man, 17.8 mm. (after Thyng). **E.** Man, about five months. **a.**, Anus; **al.**, allantois; **bl.**, bladder; **cae.**, bulb of the colon; **cl.**, cloaca; **du.**, duodenum; **l. i.**, large intestine; **oe.**, œsophagus; **p.**, penis; **pe.**, perineum; **ph.**, fore-gut; **r.**, rectum; **s. i.**, small intestine; **st.**, stomach; **u. c.**, umbilical cord; **ur.**, urethra; **ura.**, urachus; **u. s.**, urogenital sinus; **v. p.**, vermiform process: **y. s.**, yolk-sac; **y. st.**, vitelline duct within the yolk-stalk.

In human embryos of about 10 mm. the intestinal loop becomes twisted on itself (Fig. 221 D), and the large intestine is carried across the small intestine in the duodenal region. The vermiform process thus comes to lie on the right side of the body, and the colon, after it is withdrawn from the umbilical cord into the body, is so bent as to form *ascending*, *transverse*, and *descending* portions, below which, as the convoluted *sigmoid colon*, it connects with the rectum. The disposition of the adult intestines depends chiefly upon this primary torsion of the intestinal loop, and upon the subsequent elongation of the small intestine, which forms many loops and coils.

Meanwhile the yolk-sac has become detached, and its stalk has disappeared, usually leaving no indication of its former position. The stalk does not become the vermiform process, as was once supposed, but occasionally it produces a blind pouch of the ileum, 3–9 cm. long, situated about three feet above the beginning of the colon. This is the *diverticulum ilei*, described and correctly interpreted by Meckel in 1812.

The division of the intestine into six parts is a heritage from the Arabians. Duodenum, jejunum, ileum, cæcum, colon and rectum were well recognized in the fifteenth century, when, following Hippocrates, they were counted from below upward. The various names which have been applied to them are discussed by Hyrtl (Das arabische und hebräische in der Anatomie, Wien, 1879). Those which are now adopted have the following significance. The rectum is the *straight* terminal portion. "Colon is the *κῶλου* of Aristotle, which according to Pliny is a great source of pain (colic)." The cæcum, or blind intestine, was so named by Galen, who did not practice human dissection and so referred to the more elongated pouch in lower animals. The name has generally been considered inappropriate for the human cæcum. The Greek synonym *τυφλὸν* (blind) is used in the medical term *typhlitis* (inflammation of the cæcum). The ileum (from *ϵἰλέω*) is the coiled portion, and is arbitrarily defined as the lower three-fifths of the small intestine. The jejunum (Lat., fasting) is the portion generally found void and empty (Avicenna), since food passes through it rapidly. The duodenum, which has no free mesentery, was originally considered a part of the stomach; its name indicates that its length is twelve finger-breadths. Hyrtl notes that the same term has sometimes been applied to the rectum.

Layers of the Digestive Tube. The wall of the digestive tube is composed of four layers—(1) tunica mucosa, (2) tela submucosa, (3) tunica muscularis, and (4) tunica adventitia or tunica serosa. The parts which are covered with peritoneum have a serous coat for their outer layer; the parts imbedded in connective tissue have the adventitious coat instead.

The *tunica mucosa* consists of *epithelium*, *tunica propria*, and the *lamina muscularis mucosæ*. The epithelium is the entodermal lining of the tube, and is folded and inpocketed so as to form innumerable pits and glands, varying in their nature in different parts of the tube. The tunica propria consists of reticular tissue, which in places becomes characteristic lymphoid tissue. It is set apart early in development as a layer with abundant nuclei, thus differing from the underlying mesenchyma. At a later stage the *lamina muscularis mucosæ*, or muscle layer of the mucous membrane, develops beneath it, separating it from the submucosa. The muscularis mucosæ is a thin layer of smooth muscle fibers.

The *tela submucosa* (*tela*, tissue) is a connective tissue layer which contains many blood and lymphatic vessels, and the ganglionated *plexus submucosus.*

The *tunica muscularis* usually consists of an inner circular and an outer longitudinal layer of smooth muscle fibers, separated by a thin layer of connective tissue which contains the ganglionated *plexus myentericus.*

The *tunica serosa* is a connective tissue layer, covered by the peritoneal epithelium.

The wall of the digestive tube comprises portions of all the germ layers. The epithelium lining the cavity and glands is entodermal, the muscles and connective tissue are of mesenchymal origin and therefore mesodermal, as is also the peritoneal epithelium when that is present; the nerve cells and nerve fibers within the walls are of ectodermal origin. See Figs. 25, 26, and 116.

The layers enumerated are to be examined in the œsophagus, stomach and intestine, which differ from one another histologically, since these layers are variously modified.

ŒSOPHAGUS

The œsophagus is a tube about nine inches long, the several layers of which are continuous anteriorly with those of the pharynx, and posteriorly with those of the stomach. The mucous membrane is thrown into folds, except when the tube is distended by the passage of food; but the muscularis merely thickens on contraction, so that it always forms a smooth round layer (Fig. 222).

The epithelium is thick and stratified like that of the pharynx. Its outer cells are flattened in the adult, but in the embryo they include numerous islands of tall ciliated cells, some of which are found at birth. The basal surface of the epithelium rests upon connective tissue papillæ or ridges.

The glands of the œsophagus are of two sorts, superficial and deep. The deep glands (*glandulæ œsophageæ profundæ*) develop as scattered tubular downgrowths which pass through the tunica propria and muscularis mucosæ into the submucosa, where their blind ends expand and branch, producing a cluster of tubulo-alveolar end pieces. The terminal portions at birth are still poorly developed. The tubules are composed wholly of mucous cells, although the basal protoplasm sometimes simulates crescents. The ducts are slender tubes generally lined with simple epithelium. They tend to slant toward the stomach, and they enter the epithelium where it dips down between the connective tissue papillæ. The cells of the ducts become continuous with the basal layer of the epithelium. Large ducts are sometimes lined with stratified epithelium, often ciliated,

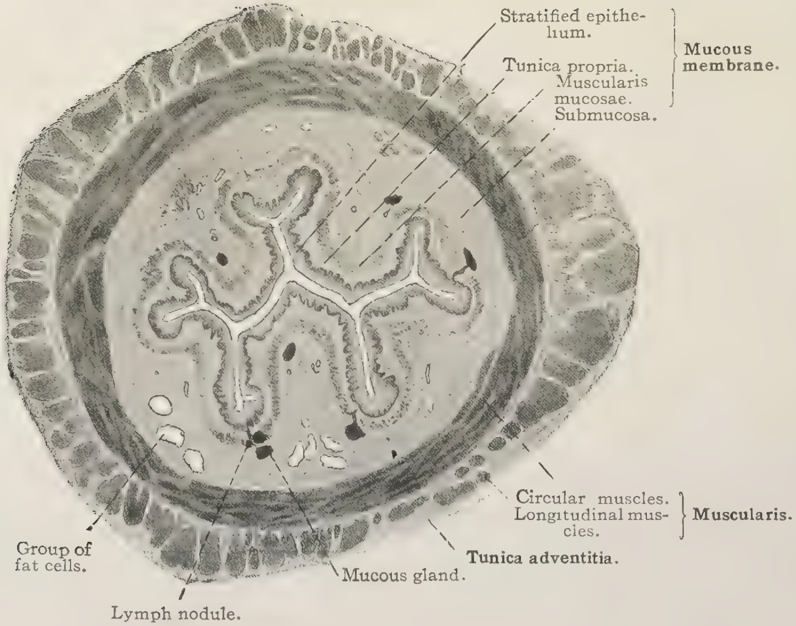


FIG. 222.—TRANSVERSE SECTION OF THE UPPER THIRD OF THE HUMAN ŒSOPHAGUS. × 5.

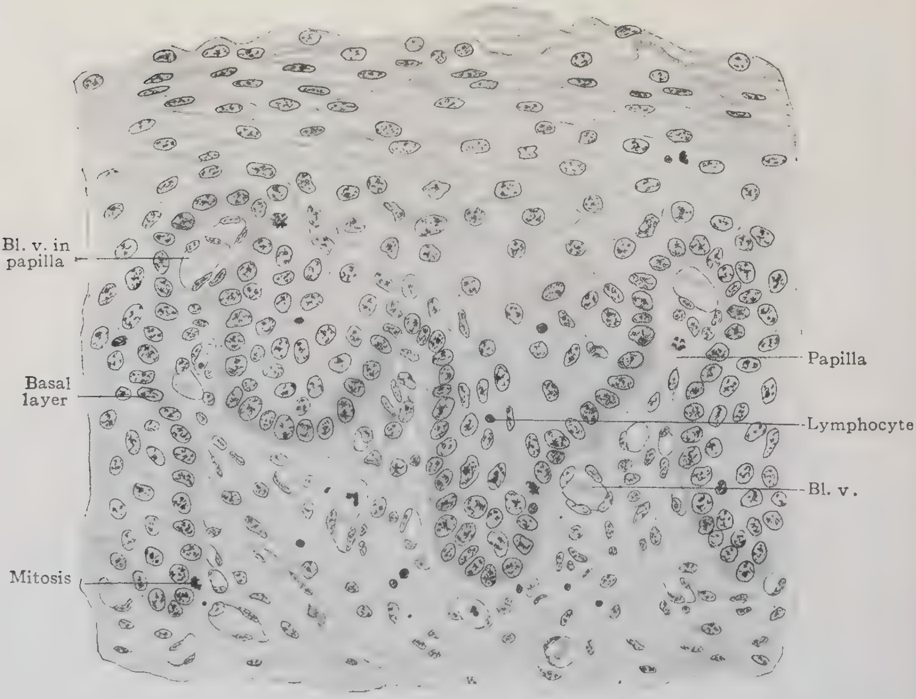


FIG. 223.—STRATIFIED SQUAMOUS EPITHELIUM FROM HUMAN ŒSOPHAGUS.

and they may present cyst-like dilatations. Lymphocytes tend to accumulate around the ducts and occasionally they form nodules in the tunica propria. The glands may show signs of infiltration and degeneration. The number of deep glands varies greatly in different individuals. They are usually more numerous in the upper half of the œsophagus.

The superficial glands (*glandulæ œsophageæ superficiales*) are limited to two rather narrow zones near the ends of the œsophagus. They are always found at the entrance of the stomach, extending from 1 to 4 mm. up the œsophagus; and generally (in 70% of the cases examined by Schaffer) they occur between the level of the cricoid cartilage and fifth tracheal ring. They develop in the embryo much earlier than the deep glands, and appear as small areas of tall mucous cells which pass clear through the stratified epithelium. These islands of simple epithelium become depressed into shallow pockets from which a cluster of tubules grows out, but they never pass through the muscularis mucosæ into the submucosa. In the adult the upper group may be seen with the naked eye as an "erosion" of the mucous membrane. The glands produce a form of mucus which stains less readily with the mucus-stains than that of the deep glands. No special function has been assigned to this secretion. Glands of the lower group are shown in Fig. 224. They are freely branch-

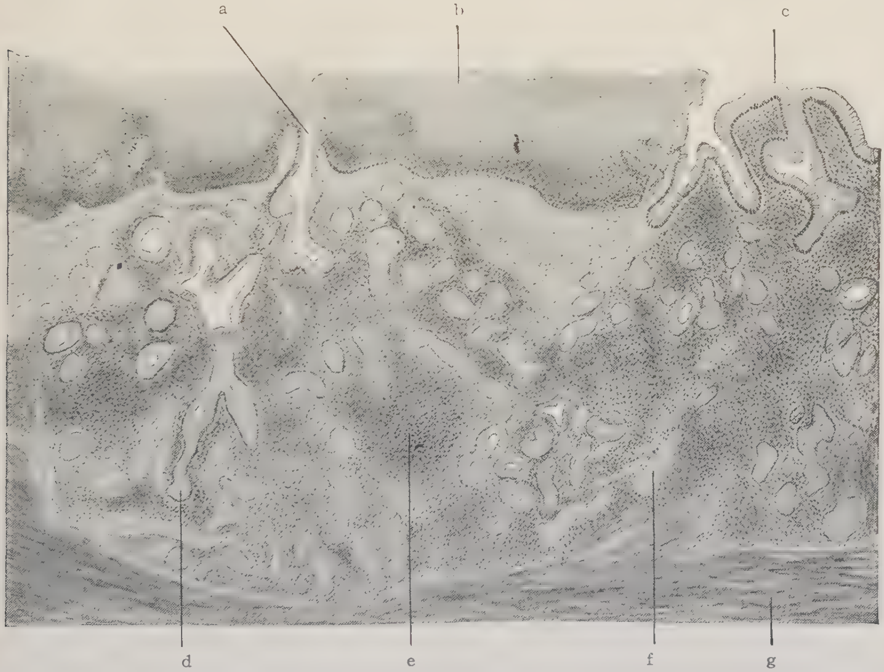


Fig. 224.—Longitudinal Section Through the Junction of the Human Œsophagus and Stomach. × 60.

a, Duct of a superficial œsophageal gland; **b**, œsophageal epithelium; **c**, gastric epithelium; **d**, tubule of the gland **a**; **e**, lymphoid nodule; **f**, lymphatic vessel; **g**, lamina muscularis mucosæ.

ing mucous glands, the ducts of which open at the tops of connective tissue papillæ. They very frequently show cystic enlargements.

The tunica propria in the œsophagus has fewer cells in its meshes than that of the lower parts of the digestive tube. In places it includes solitary lymph nodules. The muscularis mucosæ is very wide in the œsophagus. It is a layer of longitudinal smooth muscle fibers, which is thrown into longitudinal folds when the œsophagus is contracted. It begins anteriorly at the level of the cricoid cartilage, arising as scattered bundles inside the elastic layer of the pharynx. As the muscles increase to form a distinct layer, the elastic lamina terminates. The submucosa is a loose connective tissue layer, containing many vessels and nerves, groups of fat cells, and the bodies of the deep mucous glands. The muscularis consists of an inner circular and an outer longitudinal layer, as elsewhere in the digestive tube, but in the upper part of the œsophagus the layers are composed of striated muscle fibers. These fibers are not a downward extension of the striated pharyngeal constrictors, but apparently develop from exactly such mesenchymal cells as produce smooth muscle further down. The striated muscles in man are limited to the upper half of the œsophagus; in the rabbit they extend its whole length. Striated and smooth muscles intermingle in the middle region in man.

The adventitia is loose connective tissue, containing many vessels and the plexiform branches of the vagus nerves. From these nerves, medullated and non-medullated fibers enter the œsophagus and form a ganglionated myenteric plexus between the muscle layers, and the plexus submucosus in the submucosa. Medullated fibers proceed from the vagus trunks to the motor end plates of the striated muscles, which are thus stimulated reflexly from the central nervous system. Other fibers pass from the myenteric plexus to the plexus submucosus and thence to the epithelium, in which free nerve endings have been found. Such fibers, together with those to the smooth muscles, provide for local reflex action, whereby the contents of the œsophagus causes contraction above, and relaxation below, the place of stimulation. This takes place independently of the central system, and is the form of innervation characteristic of the intestine.

Stomach

Form and Subdivisions. The opening through which the œsophagus connects with the stomach is the *cardia* (Gr. καρδία, heart), and the opening from the stomach to the intestine is the *pylorus* (Gr. πυλωρός, gate-keeper). The pylorus received its appropriate name from Galen (in the second century), who recognized that through its sphincter muscle it controlled the exit of food. The significance of 'cardia' was discussed by Fabricius (1618) who cites Galen as stating that the upper orifice of the stomach is called the heart because the symptoms to which it gives rise are similar to those which sometimes affect the heart, sometimes even the brain; but for Fabricius, 'cardia,' as applied to this orifice, merely indicates a chief part of the body. The stomach as a whole is termed *gaster*, from the Greek, but the Latin *ventriculus* was generally used by the early anatomists. Although flaccid and shapeless when seen in the dissecting room, the stomach has a very characteristic form. Its epithelium, from an embryo of 44.3 mm., is shown in Fig. 225, and an adult stomach is seen in Fig. 231. It is a tube which is greatly distended toward the left, where its border forms the greater curvature; its right border is the lesser curvature. As a whole the stomach is divided into two parts, the cardiac portion (*pars cardiaca*) and pyloric portion (*pars pylorica*). This fundamental subdivision occurs in many animals, as was recognized by Sir Everard Home in 1814. The pyloric part is relatively long in the embryo. It becomes subdivided into the *pyloric vestibule* and the *pyloric antrum*. The latter is its smaller part extending to the pylorus; between the two, on the greater curvature, is the *sulcus intermedius*, well shown in Fig. 231. (The term *pyloric antrum* has been variously employed, since in its original description by Willis (1674) the vestibule is not recognized; Cowper (1698) applies *antrum* to the terminal subdivision as above defined.) The cardiac part of the stomach is divided into a main portion, or body of the stomach (*corpus gastri*), and a blind pouch, formerly called the saccus cæcus, but now less appropriately known as the *fundus gastri* (the bottom of the stomach). Recently the gastric canal (*canalis gastri*) has been recognized along the lesser curvature of the human stomach. It is a channel, highly developed in ruminants, which conveys liquids from the cardia to the pars pylorica, when the stomach is filled with more solid contents. Ordinarily open toward the interior like a groove, it may become closed as a tube during its physiological activity. Beyond the cardia there is a conical expansion of the œsophagus, not always well defined, known as the *cardiac antrum*, and beyond the pylorus is the first part of the duodenum or *duodenal antrum*. (A further account of the development of these subdivisions will be found in the Amer. Journ. Anat., 1912, vol. 13, pp. 477–503.)

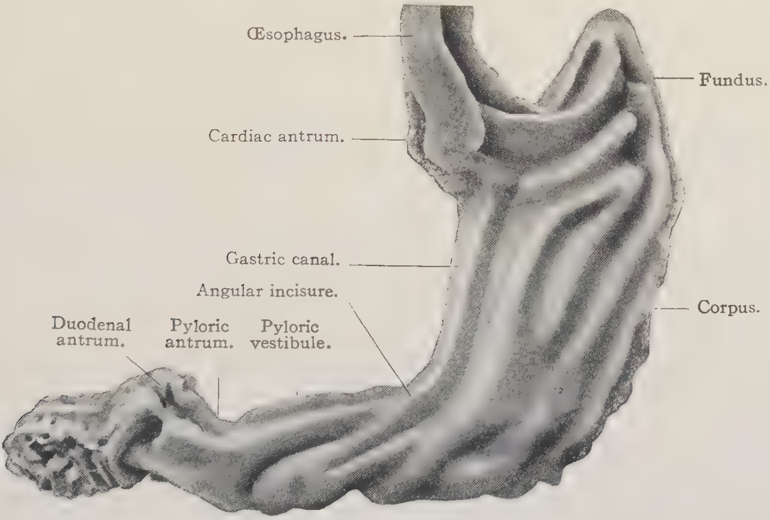


FIG. 225.—MODEL OF THE GASTRIC EPITHELIUM IN A HUMAN EMBRYO OF 44.3 MM. × 18 diam

The inner surface of the stomach presents macroscopic longitudinal folds, which become coarse and prominent as the organ contracts. They are sinuous, and anastomose in an irregular network. As finer markings, there are rounded or polygonal areas, 2–4 mm. in diameter, which may appear as elevations or depressions. They have been ascribed to the contraction of muscle fibers in the mucous membrane, to varying amounts of lymphoid tissue, and to the varying height of the glands. Toward the pylorus there are small leaf-like elevations, the *plicæ villosæ*, which may connect with one another in a network. The epithelium of the stomach is thin enough to transmit the color of the underlying tissue, and appears pinkish gray; whereas the color of the œsophagus, with a thicker epithelium, is white.

The gastric epithelium, like that of the entire intestine, is a single layer of columnar cells. In the stomach the cells are tall and contain mucus, but they do not ordinarily acquire the bulging goblet shape, since the adjacent cells likewise contain mucus. This simple layer of mucous cells is continuous at the cardia with the basal layer of the stratified epithelium of the œsophagus, and the transition is abrupt. The outer strata of the œsophageal epithelium may form an overhanging wall (Fig. 224), or the number of layers may have become reduced so that such a wall is absent. Sometimes an island of stratified epithelium occurs just beyond the line of transition. The gastric epithelium forms three types of glands, known as cardiac, gastric, and pyloric glands respectively, none of which extend into the submucosa.

The *cardiac glands* are like the superficial glands at the lower end of the œsophagus, of which they may be regarded as a continuation. They extend only from 5 to 40 mm. into the stomach, and in the narrow zone which they occupy, they present a gradual transition to the gastric glands. Their branches, instead of continuing divergent, become groups of perpendicular tubes descending from epithelial pits; and deeply staining eosinophilic cells and the granular chief cells become included in their epithelium.

The cells characteristic of the cardiac glands contain a mucus which does not respond readily to mucin stains. Like the superficial glands of the œsophagus, the cardiac glands develop early, and they are found widely distributed among mammals.

The *gastric glands* (sometimes inappropriately called fundus glands) occur over the entire surface of the stomach, except near the cardia and pylorus. Each gastric gland is divided into an outer portion, or *gastric pit* (*foveola gastrica*), and a group of slender cylindrical tubules which empty into the bottom of the pit. During development, as the lining of the stomach expands greatly, the number of pits increases. Toldt estimated that there were 129,912 in the stomach at three months; 268,770 at birth and 2,828,560 at ten years. The increase is accomplished by division of the pits from below upward. In spite of the fact that many new branches develop. the average number of tubules emptying into each pit becomes reduced as the pits become subdivided; and the average of seven per pit

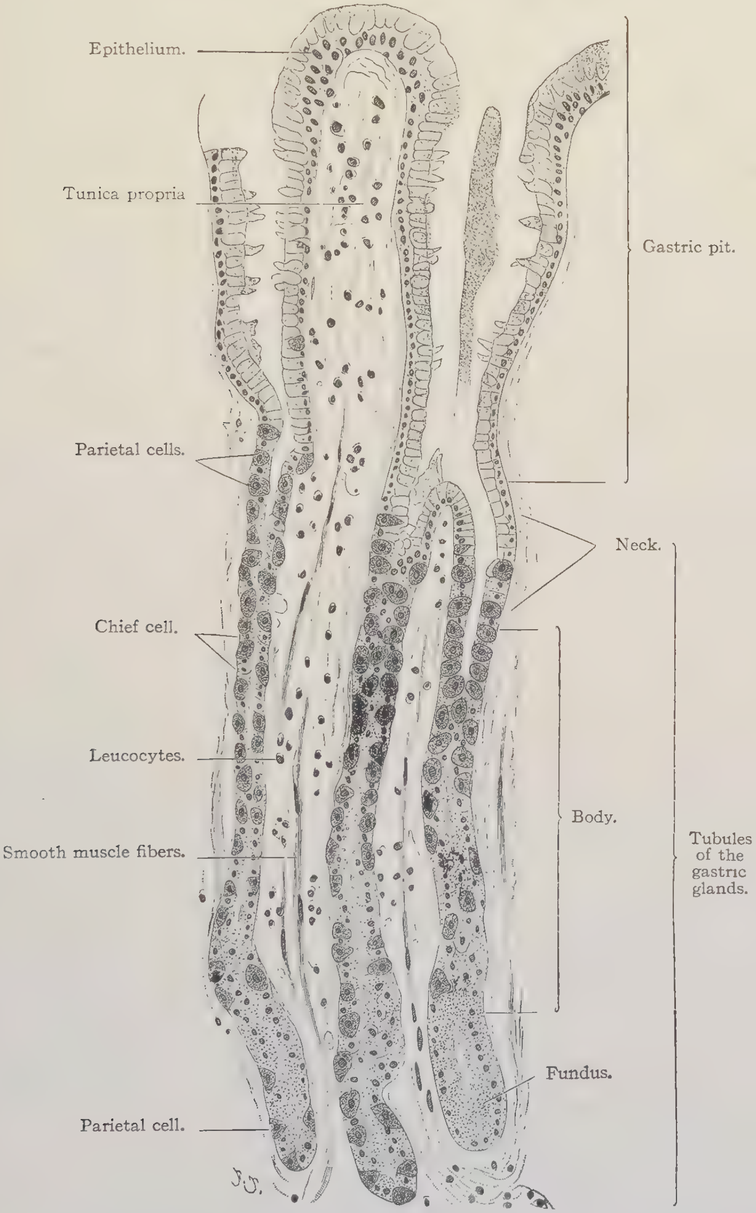


Fig. 226.—Vertical Section of the Mucous Membrane of a Human Stomach, showing Gastric Glands (Glandulæ Gastricæ Propriæ). × 220.

observed at birth becomes three in the adult (Toldt, Sitz.-ber. Akad. d. Wiss. Wien, 1881, vol. 82, pp. 57–128).

The pits are often described as if they were epithelial depressions separate from the glands, since the same sort of epithelium which lines them is found on the free surface. Developmentally, however, they are to be regarded as parts of the glands, comparable with ducts. The epithelial cells of the pits (Fig. 226) consist of a basal protoplasmic portion containing elongated, round, or sometimes flattened nuclei, and an outer portion containing the centrosome and secretion. The mass of mucus may cause the thin top plate to bulge, and in preserved tissue to rupture, but this may be due to reagents. The mucus first appears in granular form.

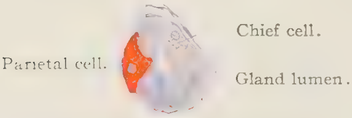


FIG. 227.—TRANSVERSE SECTION OF A HUMAN GASTRIC GLAND. × 240.

The gastric tubules are straight or somewhat tortuous slender structures, with narrow lumens. The portion which joins the pit constitutes the neck of the gland, and the slightly expanded basal end is the fundus. Apparently the neck is the zone of growth, since it is the place where mitotic figures are found. Each tubule is composed of cells of two sorts, *chief cells* and *parietal cells.*

The chief cells usually form the greater part of the tubules. They are wedge-shaped cells, having a narrow contact with the lumen. In general they have the aspect of serous cells, containing round nuclei and granular protoplasm. The granules, which are coarser toward the lumen, do not respond to mucin stains. They accumulate, and the chief cells enlarge in the absence of food from the stomach; but during gastric digestion, the cells become small and the granules disappear. They apparently give rise to the pepsin of the gastric juice, and are called *zymogen granules.* After death the chief cells rapidly disintegrate, and the granules are seldom well preserved except in special preparations.

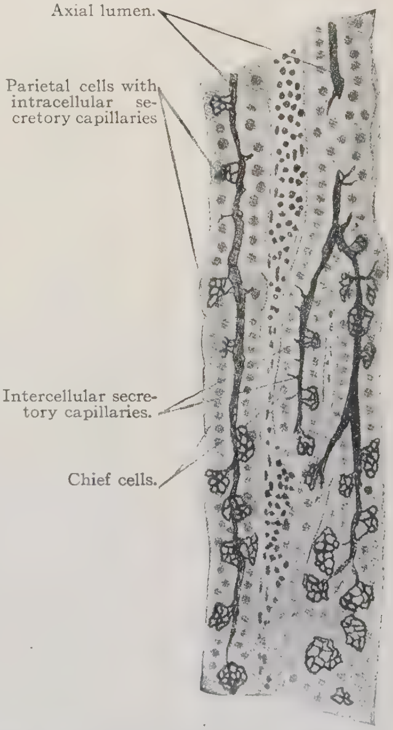

Axial lumen.
Parietal cells with intracellular secretory capillaries
Intercellular secretory capillaries.
Chief cells.

FIG. 228.—GOLGI PREPARATION, SHOWING THE SECRETORY CAPILLARIES IN GASTRIC GLANDS. × 230.

The parietal cells, may be readily distinguished from the chief cells in fresh tissue; the latter are dark and contain refractive granules, whereas the parietal cells are clear. In ordinary preparations they are better preserved than the chief cells, and exhibit a finely granular structure, being deeply stained with the anilin protoplasmic dyes. They differ so markedly from the chief cells that they have been erroneously believed to develop from the surrounding tunica propria. As seen in Fig. 226 they occur chiefly along the body of the tubule, being infrequent at its fundus. They are large cells, containing one or occasionally two round nuclei, and are crowded away from the lumen like the cells in the serous crescents (Figs. 226 and 227). They discharge their secretion through secretory

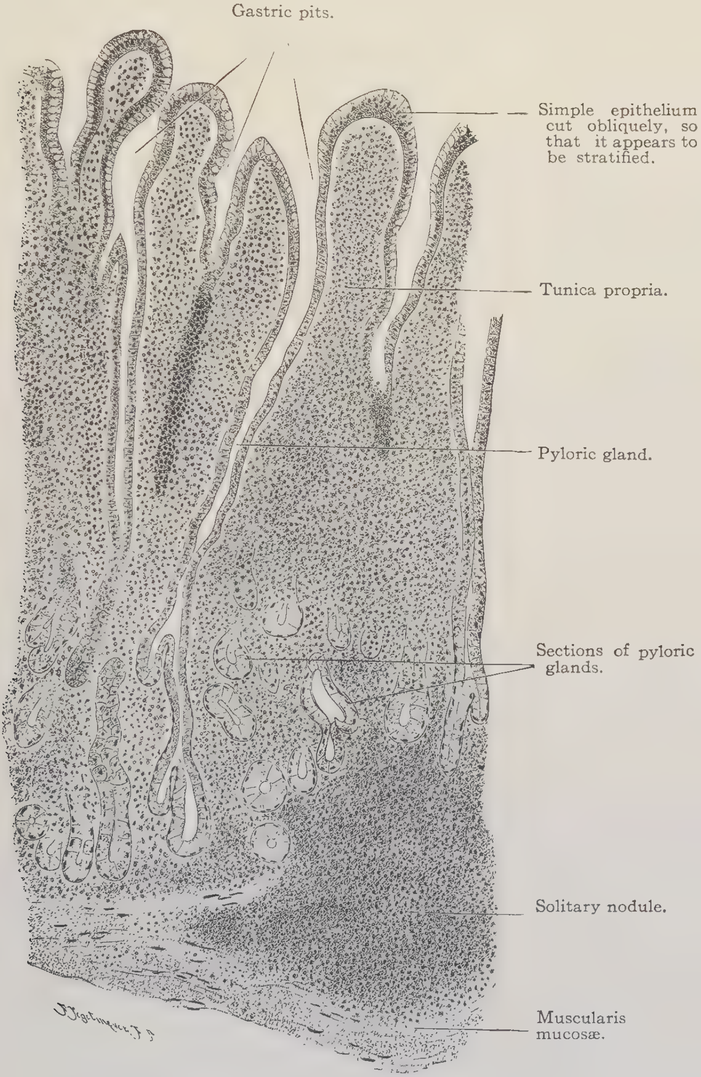

Gastric pits.
Simple epithelium cut obliquely, so that it appears to be stratified.
Tunica propria.
Pyloric gland.
Sections of pyloric glands.
Solitary nodule.
Muscularis mucosæ.

Fig. 229.—Vertical Section of Human Pyloric Glands. × 90.

capillaries which produce basket-like networks within the protoplasm; thus they differ from the chief cells which have only intercellular secretory capillaries. The secretory capillaries of the parietal cells may be demonstrated by the Golgi method, which produces a precipitate wherever secretion is encountered (Fig. 228). After fasting, the parietal cells are small and their intracellular capillaries have disappeared. Following abundant meals, these cells enlarge and may contain vacuoles due to the rapid formation of secretion. They produce the hydrochloric acid which is found in the gastric juice.

Recent investigations show differences in the gastric epithelial cells which may lead to the recognition of other types in addition to the chief and parietal cells. Certain cells, for instance, give the chromaffin reaction. This is discussed by Dawson, Anat. Rec., 1927, vol. 35, pp. 99–107.

The *pyloric glands* are found near the pylorus, but the area which they occupy is not sharply set off; they pass over into gastric glands through a "transition zone." Pyloric glands have very deep pits, from which short, winding, branched tubules grow out. Their form in the adult is shown in Fig. 229. The cells in the pits are mucous cells, and those in the tubules are also regarded as mucous cells. The latter are columnar, with rounded nuclei in their basal part, and protoplasm which may closely resemble that of the chief cells. Parietal cells are occasionally found, and such cells have been reported in the duodenal glands and in the superficial glands of the œsophagus. Slender dark cells, apparently due to compression, are found in the pyloric glands of the dog. In certain respects the pyloric glands are transitional between gastric and duodenal glands.

In material which has not been fixed very shortly after death, the epithelium of the stomach and remaining parts of the digestive tube is apt to be badly preserved. The cells are often separated from one another and indistinct in detail. This may be due to "autodigestion," the action of the digestive fluid already present in the lumen on the recently dead cells with which it is in contact. The cells beneath the surface are not affected.

The *tunica propria* consists of the small amount of reticular and connective tissue which is found between the closely packed glands and immediately beneath them (Fig. 230). It is sufficient to support the numerous capillaries branching about the glands, the terminal lymphatic vessels and nerves, numerous wandering cells and a few vertical smooth muscle fibers prolonged from the muscularis mucosæ (Fig. 226). The lymphatic vessels begin blindly near the superficial epithelium and pass between the glands into the submucosa where they spread out and are easily seen; they continue across the muscularis and pass through the mesentery to join the large lymphatic trunks. Solitary nodules occur in the gastric mucosa, especially in the cardiac and pyloric regions (Figs. 224 and 229). They originate in the reticular tissue of the tunica propria, and may extend through the muscularis mucosæ into the submucosa, where they may expand to a considerable size. In peripheral sections of such a nodule the expanded submucosal portion may alone appear, and its connection with the tunica propria may not be evident. The muscularis mucosæ may be divided into two or three layers of fibers having different directions. The submucosa contains its plexus of nerves and many vessels, together with groups of fat cells. Its elastic fibers are said to be abundant toward the pylorus.

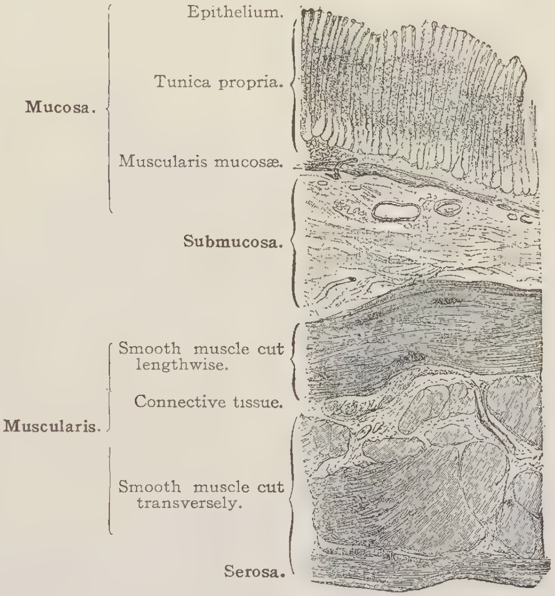


Fig. 230.—Vertical Section of the Wall of a Human Stomach. The tunica propria contains glands standing so close together that its tissue is visible only at the base of the glands toward the muscularis mucosæ.

The muscular coat of the stomach consists of three layers of smooth muscle, an outer longitudinal, middle circular, and inner oblique layer respectively. These layers can be recognized by dissection more readily than by microscopic examination, and were found by Willis in 1674. The middle layer is the one most highly developed. It not only surrounds the body of the stomach, but as the fundus pushes outward, muscle fibers of this layer encircle its apex concentrically. Toward the pylorus, along the antrum, the circular layer gradually thickens, thus forming the *sphincter pylori;* it becomes abruptly thin in the duodenum. There is no sphincter at the cardia, where the circular layer is continuous with that of the œsophagus, but elastic tissue in the muscularis is said to be specially abdundant and to "contribute to the tonus of the cardiac musculature." The outer longitudinal layer, continuous with the outer layer in the œsophagus and duodenum, is an incomplete layer, being deficient toward the greater curvature. As the body of the stomach bulges outward to form this curvature, the longitudinal fibers apparently become separated into scattered bundles. In the pars pylorica, however, there is a continuous longitudinal layer, and some of its fibers, which become

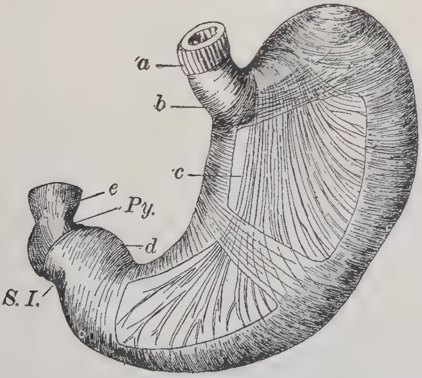


Fig. 231.—A Dissection of the Musculature of the Stomach. (Spalteholz.)
a and **e**, Longtiudinal layer; **b** and **d**, circular layer; **c** oblique layer; **Py.**, pylorus; **S. I.**, sulcus intermedius.

intermingled with those of the sphincter pylori, serve to dilate the pylorus. The innermost layer, composed of oblique fibers, is not represented in the œsophagus and duodenum, and is said to be absent from the pars pylorica. The peculiar arrangement of its fibers is shown in Fig. 231, in which the outer longitudinal layer has been almost entirely removed, and windows have been cut through the circular layer; the oblique fibers are seen against the submucosa. They form a longitudinal strand parallel with the lesser curvature, and they pass from one side of the stomach to the other across the notch between the œsophagus and fundus. These fibers are important in the activity of the gastric canal, but they do not produce the canal as some have supposed. From these longitudinal bundles, fibers curve obliquely toward the greater curvature, where, as transverse fibers they cross to the opposite side. Thus the musculature of the stomach is so arranged that it is very difficult to determine the plane of section in a small piece of gastric mucous membrane, which is usually cut obliquely; but the section shown in Fig. 230, with inner and outer layers cut lengthwise and a middle layer cut across, is consistent with a longitudinal section of the *corpus gastri.*

The *tunica serosa* consists of connective tissue with well-developed elastic nets, and a covering of peritoneal epithelium interrupted only along the curvatures, at the mesenteric attachments. It contains the nerves and vessels which supply the stomach. The right and left vagus trunks descend beside the œsophagus as the main stems in a plexiform network, and then come together along the lesser curvature. From there they send plexiform branches over both sides of the stomach, and the main stems continue into the small intestine. Sympathetic nerves from the cœliac plexus pass to the pyloric end of the stomach and join the vagus plexus. The further distribution of the nerves in myenteric and submucous plexuses is similar to that in the small intestine.

Duodenum

The duodenum contains branched mucous glands, the bodies of which are found in the submucosa. These are called *duodenal glands* (Brunner's glands) and they occur nowhere else in the small intestine (Fig. 232). Their cells produce a mucus which stains with difficulty, thus contrasting with the mucus of the goblet cells in the tubular glands above them. The nature of their epithelium is shown in Fig. 233, which shows also that a portion of their tubules may lie above the muscularis mucosæ, in the tunica propria. As in the pyloric glands, occasional parietal cells have been found, and also the dark cells, due to compression. Secretory capillaries extend out from the lumen between the cells, and the tubules are provided with a structureless basement membrane. The ducts of the duodenal glands may open on the free surface of the epithelium, or into the lower ends of the tubular pits situated in the mucous membrane and known as *intestinal glands.* The duodenal glands are so numerous toward the stomach that the submucosa may be filled with their tubules. They are also abundant near the *duodenal papilla* where the bile and pancreatic ducts enter the descending portion of the duodenum. Beyond this point they become fewer, and disappear before the end of the duodenum is reached. Except for these glands the duodenum is essentially like the remainder of the small intestine, described in the following section.

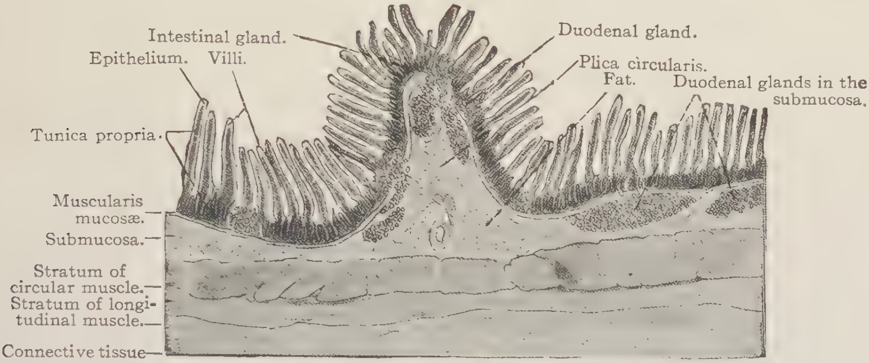


FIG. 232.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION OF THE HUMAN DUODENUM. × 16.

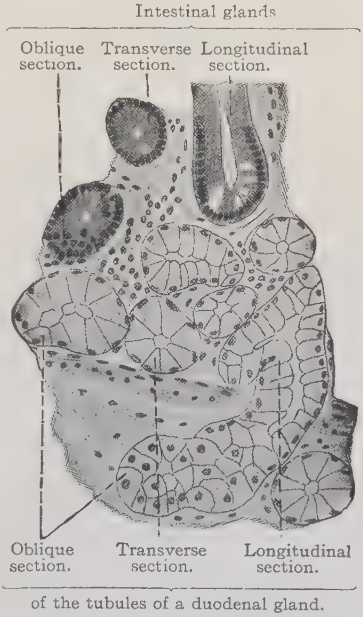


FIG. 233.—FROM A SECTION OF A HUMAN DUODENUM. × 240.

Only the lower half of the mucosa and upper half of the submucosa are sketched.

JEJUNUM AND ILEUM

The lining of the small intestine, including the duodenum, has a velvety appearance, due to the presence of innumerable cylindrical, club-shaped or foliate elevations, known as *villi* (hairs or nap). True villi are found in the large intestine of the embryo but they disappear before birth; they are said to occur also in the pyloric end of the stomach, but it is questionable whether these are typical villi or merely irregular folds. Elsewhere in the digestive tube, villi are absent. At the bases of the villi there are simple tubular pits of glandular epithelium, which extend to the muscularis mucosæ but do not penetrate it; these are the *intestinal glands* (*glandulæ intestinales*, formerly known as crypts of Lieberkühn). An enlarged surface view of the hardened mucous membrane is shown in Fig. 234, A. The orifices of the glands appear as round holes; the villi, which are from 0.2–1.0 mm. in height, have fallen over in various directions. Within the duodenum the villi are low leaf-like folds, 0.2–0.5 mm. high, seen in side view in the reconstruction, Fig. 234, B. Their shape cannot be determined from inspecting single sections (cf. Fig. 232).

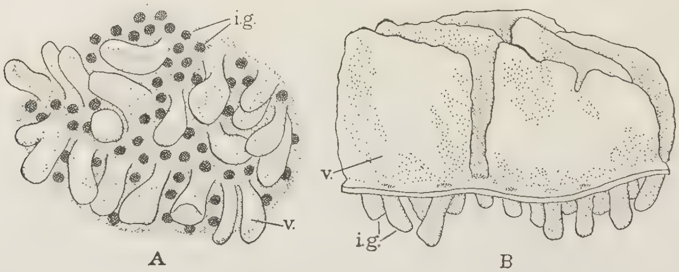


Fig. 234.

A, Surface view of the hardened mucosa of the small intestine (after Koelliker). **B,** Side view of a wax reconstruction of the epithelium in the human duodenum (Huber). **i. g.,** Intestinal gland; **v.,** villus.

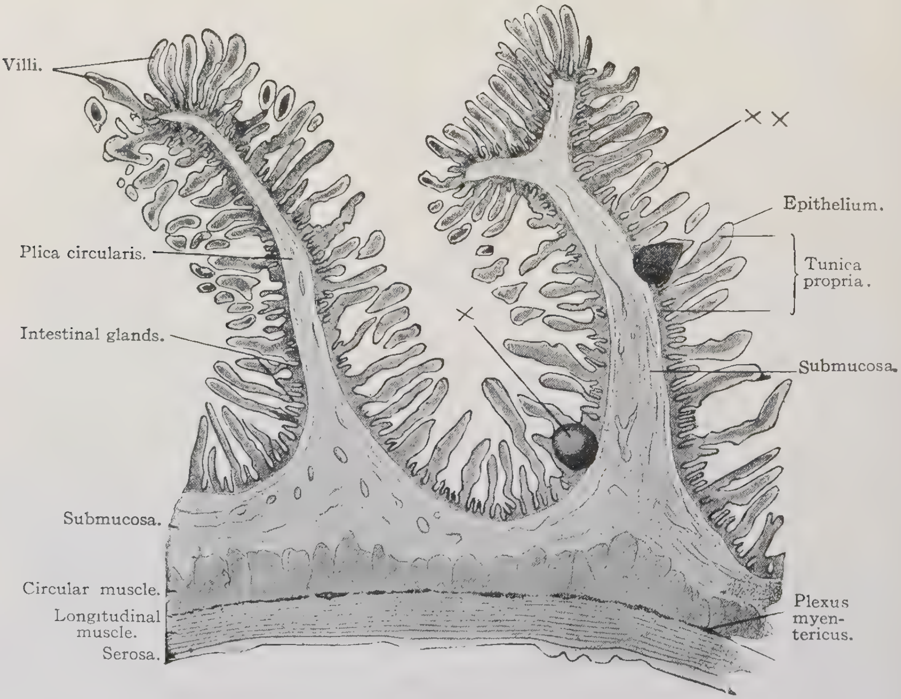


Fig. 235.—Vertical Longitudinal Section of the Jejunum of an Adult Man. × 16.

The plica circularis on the right supports two small solitary nodules, which do not extend into the submucosa; one of them exhibits a germinal center, **x.** The epithelium is slightly loosened from the connective tissue core of many of the villi, so that a clear space, **xx,** exists between the two. The isolated bodies lying near the villi (more numerous to the left of the plicæ circulares) are sections of villi that were bent, so that their ends were cut off in sectioning.

It will be seen that villi are essentially circumscribed folds, and they have been said to arise through the subdivision of longitudinal ridges (Berry, Anat. Anz., 1900, vol. 17, pp. 242–249). According to Johnson (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1910, vol. 10, pp. 521–561) they develop as low knob-like elevations which increase in height. They may become subdivided, as indicated by bifid villi (Fig. 234).

The small intestine contains other elevations of its lining which are much larger than the villi. These are the circular folds (*plicæ circulares*, formerly known as Kerkring's *valvulæ conniventes*), which are seen conspicuously on opening the intestine. They are thin leaf-like membranes, in places very close together, which, as their name implies, tend to encircle the tube. Sometimes they form short spirals, and they may branch and connect with one another. They begin in the duodenum, and beyond the duodenal papilla they are tall and close together. They are highly developed in the jejunum and form its most characteristic feature. In the ileum they are lower and further apart; and they may come to an end two feet above the colon. The villi correspondingly are taller and more numerous in the jejunum than in the ileum, in the distal part of which they are short and scattered, finally disappearing on the colic surface of the *valve of the colon* (ileo-cæcal valve). Thus few and short villi and scattered plicæ indicate that a section of the intestine is from the ileum.

As seen in sections, the *plicæ circulares* are elevations of the submucosa (Fig. 235) covered on both sides by the entire mucous membrane —villi, glands and the muscularis mucosæ. A low plica of the duodenum is shown in Fig. 232.

Villi may be regarded as a method of increasing the surface area of the intestine, and thus providing for a greater number of the epithelial cells. For this purpose a projection above the general surface is as effective as a depression (gland). The distribution of glands and villi in the gastro-intestinal tract corresponds with the processes of digestion and absorption of food. In the stomach the food is mixed with pepsin and hydrochloric acid, the deep branching glands affording surface enough for the necessary active cells, which pour their secretion through the pits. In the duodenum and especially the jejeunum absorption takes place. Little secretion is added and the glands are short. For absorption, however, actual contact of the epithelial cells with the partly fluid intestinal contents is necessary, and the cells covering the villi are surface cells capable of such contact. By the time the food reaches the ileum most of the absorption has taken place, and the villi there are low and scattered; in the colon they are absent. The plicæ circulares increase the surface still further, and the whole small intestine is coiled because of its overgrowth in length.

The glands, villi, and plicæ have usually been regarded as permanent structures, serving to increase the secreting and absorbing surfaces of the intestine. In mammals they apparently are not obliterated by the normal distention of the intestine, although the villi may become shorter, the glands shallower, and the plicæ may be partially taken up like the folds of the œsophagus. In the guinea-pig, and to some extent in the rabbit and cat, Heitzmann found that the villi change their shape with the intestinal contractions and expansions associated with its physiological activity. Johnson (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1913, vol. 14, pp. 235–250) has shown that in guinea-pigs the villi and glands of the contracted intestine have the form seen in Fig. 236, A; with normal distention due to abundant food, they appear as in B; and with extreme artificial distention, the glands and villi are nearly obliterated as in C. The tube expands to this limit, beyond which additional pressure has no effect until it ruptures. On releasing the pressure, glands and villi return to their normal size. Interesting questions are suggested, as to how the muscle fibers become rearranged in the thin layer when the intestine is distended, and what takes place in the blood and lymphatic vessels.

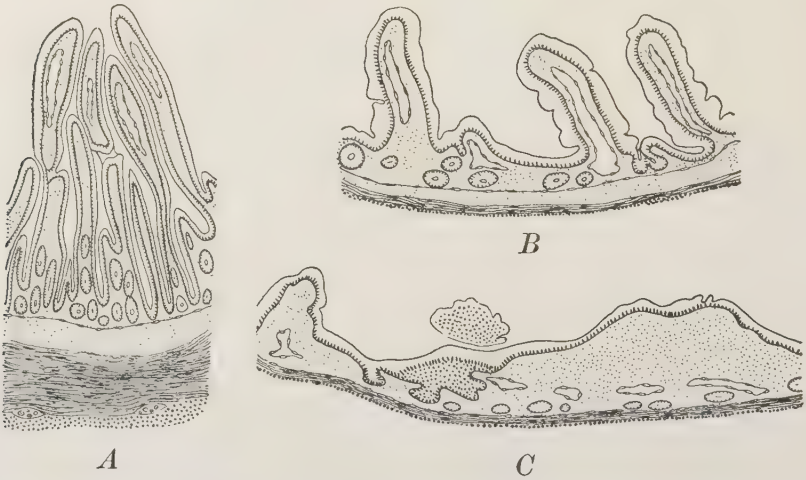


FIG. 236.—EFFECTS OF DISTENTION ON THE SMALL INTESTINE OF THE ADULT GUINEA-PIG. × 50. (Johnson.)
A, Strongly contracted; **B,** normally distended with food; **C,** distended with a pressure of 150 cm. of water.

W. H. Lewis' conception of smooth muscle as held together only by adhesion and returning to its original arrangement, after displacement, by capillary attraction is given on p. 114 (muscle).

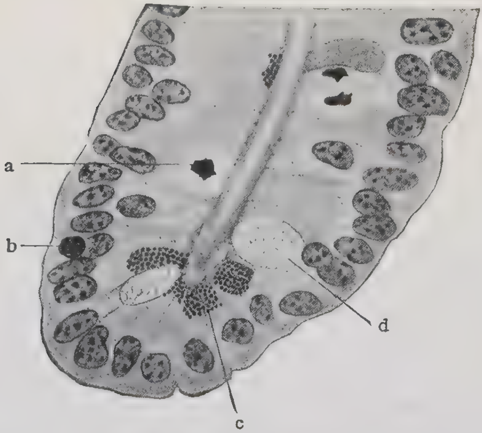


FIG. 237.—THE FUNDUS OF AN INTESTINAL GLAND FROM THE DUODENUM OF A GUINEA-PIG, IRON HÆMATOXYLIN. × 480.
a, Cell in mitosis; **b,** lymphocyte; **c,** Paneth's cell; **d,** goblet cell.

Finer Structure of the Glands and Villi. At the blind lower end or fundus of the glands, there occur certain cells containing many coarse granules in that part of their protoplasm which is toward the lumen (Fig. 237). These cells were first described by Paneth (Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1888, vol. 31, pp. 113–191) and are known as *Paneth's cells.* They are found in the glands of the duodenum, jejunum and ileum, but not in those of the large intestine. Although they may be observed with ordinary stains, they are more strikingly demonstrated in iron-hæmatoxylin preparations. Apparently they produce a special secretion, which enters the lumen of the gland in the form of fine granules when the digestion of fat is taking place, and may perhaps be concerned also with protein digestion but not with that of carbohydrates (Miram, Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1912, vol. 79, pp. 105–113). They do not contain mucinogen granules, although goblet cells occur in their immediate vicinity.

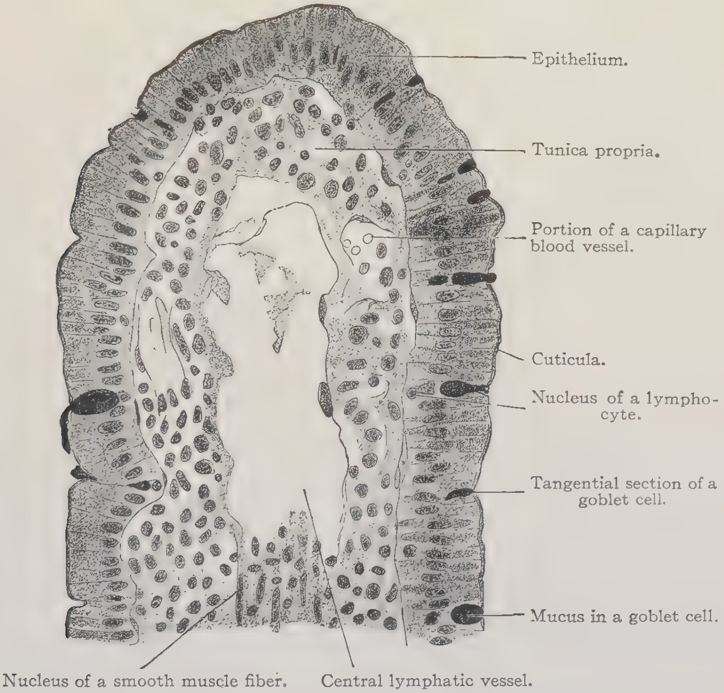

Epithelium.
Tunica propria.
Portion of a capillary blood vessel.
Cuticula.
Nucleus of a lymphocyte.
Tangential section of a goblet cell.
Mucus in a goblet cell.
Nucleus of a smooth muscle fiber.
Central lymphatic vessel.

Fig. 238.—Longitudinal Section through the Apex of the Villus of a Dog. × 360. The goblet cells contain less mucus as they approach the summit of the villus.

A short distance above the fundus, the epithelial cells of the glands exhibit mitotic figures. From this it is inferred that the outer cells, including those of the villi, are renewed from below, so that the cells may be said to creep along the basement membrane until they are cast off. The cells near the bottom of the gland have terminal bars, but they are not as distinct as those of the villi. During division, the cell seems to be drawn up from the basement membrane, as if held in position by the terminal bars (Fig. 237, *a*). The plane of division is at right angles with the long axis of the gland (as shown on the right of Fig. 237), and after mitosis the nuclei move back to the basal layer. Lymphocytes which have made their way between the epithelial cells (Fig. 237, *b*), are frequently seen, and when near the lumen and over-stained they may be mistaken for mitotic figures.

The sides of the glands and surfaces of the villi are covered with simple columnar epithelium, similar to that shown in Fig. 237. It contains goblet cells separated from one another by cells free from mucus. The cells of the villi are taller than those in the glands, and the goblet cells are somewhat larger, but toward the tip of the villus they become slender and empty (Fig. 238). The top plates or *cuticulæ* become thicker from the fundus of the gland outward to the tips of the villi, and when well developed they exhibit vertical striations which are considered to be protoplasmic processes lodged in pores. The top-plate of the goblet cells is thin and apparently ruptures to allow the escape of the mucus.

Interest in the villi centers chiefly in their relation to the absorption of nutritive material from the intestinal contents (*chyme*). Water, inorganic salts, and the simple sugars pass through the guarding membranes without change. Within the body they may make new combinations. But other food materials, proteins, fats, and carbohydrates (except the simple sugars) mostly undergo rather profound changes in the digestive tract. They are in general broken down by hydrolysis into simpler products, and then rebuilt in the tissues. The process of passing through the epithelium may be considered as a reversed secretion, the material being taken in by the cells at their upper or free pole, elaborated within the protoplasm, and discharged from the basal surface. Fat, in the form of fatty acids which do not blacken with osmic acid, is conveyed through the cuticula and resynthetized within the cell to fat droplets, which are discharged from the base and sides of the cell. Occasionally lymphocytes between the cells ingest these droplets. The major part of the fat, however, as soon as it passes through the epithelium, appears as very fine fat droplets, which enter the central lymphatic vessel of the villus where they form a fine emulsion. Gage and Fish (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1924, vol. 34, pp. 1–86) have named these droplets "chylomicra." They are $\frac{1}{2}$ μ to 1.0 μ in diameter, and best seen with the dark-field microscope. Gage traced them in the lacteals and blood-vessels, and by means of fat stains (Sudan III) could note the storage of fat after meals in certain organs and in the adipose tissue. Fat is mainly absorbed in the jejunum and upper ileum.

None of the other food materials can be followed microscopically either through the epithelium or in the vessels, though they may be traced chemically.

Mingazzini thought that the proteins were secreted from the base of the cells in the form of small hyaline spherules, which later broke down and discharged their contents between the epithelium and the reticular tunica propria. In certain fixed specimens (Fig. 239, a) a space occurs beneath the epithelium in which pale spherules closely crowded together may be seen. These may be the result of the coagulation of the tissue fluids in a shrinkage space. Macklin (Anat. Record, 1926, vol. 32, p. 216) finds no such spaces or spherules in living villi, but can produce both by various technical methods.

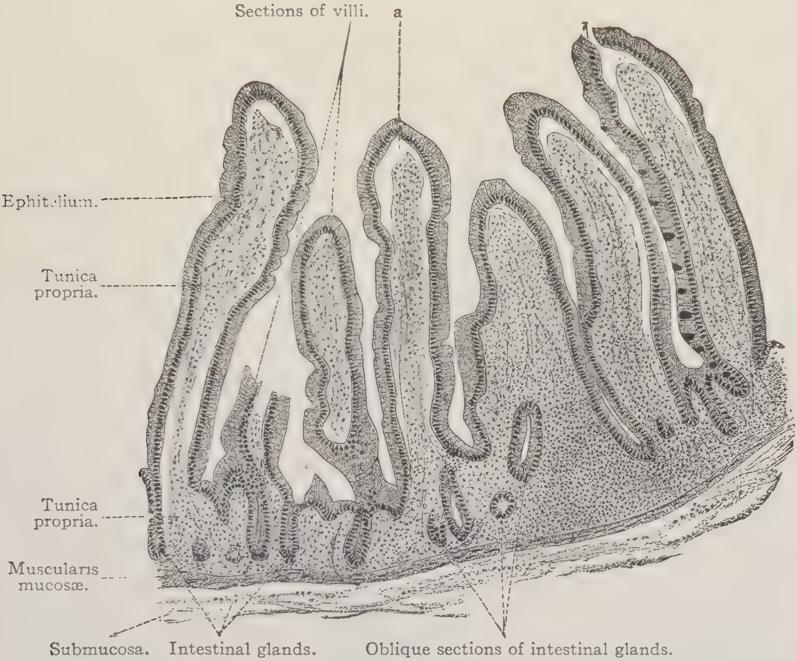


Fig. 239.—Vertical Section of the Mucous Membrane of the Jejunum of an Adult Man. × 80. The space, **a**, between the tunica propria and the epithelium of the villus is perhaps the result of the shrinking action of the fixing fluid. At **b** the epithelium has been artificially ruptured. The goblet cells have been drawn on one side of the villus on the right.

Outer layers of the small intestine. The tunica propria, which forms the cores of the villi and extends between the glands, is a recticular tissue, containing the usual types of free cells and also a large number of plasma cells (see p. 75). Slender strands of smooth muscle extend up and down the villi, being inserted into the reticulum, and by contraction they cause the villi to shorten. The *muscularis mucosæ* consists of an inner circular and an outer longitudinal layer, thus duplicating on a small scale the tunica muscularis. The submucosa is a connective tissue layer, such as has been described in the stomach and œsophagus, and the muscularis is divided into a thick inner circular layer of smooth muscle and a thinner outer longitudinal layer, between which is a thin stratum of intermuscular connective tissue. The muscle layers are arranged spirally, a closely wound spiral in the circular layer and a long spiral in the outer layer. This interesting feature is discussed by F. T. Lewis (Science, 1922, vol. 55, pp. 1–5). The intestine is covered externally by the *tunica serosa*. The distribution of the vessels and nerves in these layers is as follows.

Blood vessels. The arteries pass from the mesentery into the serosa, in which their main branches tend to encircle the intestine. Smaller branches from these pass through the muscle layers to the submucosa, in which they subdivide freely (Fig. 240, A). In crossing the muscle layers they send out branches in the intermuscular connective tissue. These and the arteries of the serosa and submucosa supply the capillary networks found among the muscle fibers. The capillaries are mostly parallel with the muscles. From the submucosa the arteries invade the mucosa, forming an irregular capillary network about the glands, and sending larger terminal branches into the villi. There is usually a single artery for a villus, and it has been described as near the center, with the veins at the periphery (Fig. 240), or sometimes on one side of the villus with the vein on the other. The network of blood vessels in the villi is very abundant as shown in Fig. 241. The veins branch freely in the submucosa and pass out of the intestine beside the arteries. The muscularis mucosæ has been described as forming a sphincter for the veins which penetrate it; thus it may control the amount of blood within the villi. No valves occur until the veins enter the tunica muscularis; there they appear, and continue into the collecting veins in the mesentery. They are absent from the large branches of the portal veins which receive the blood from the intestines.

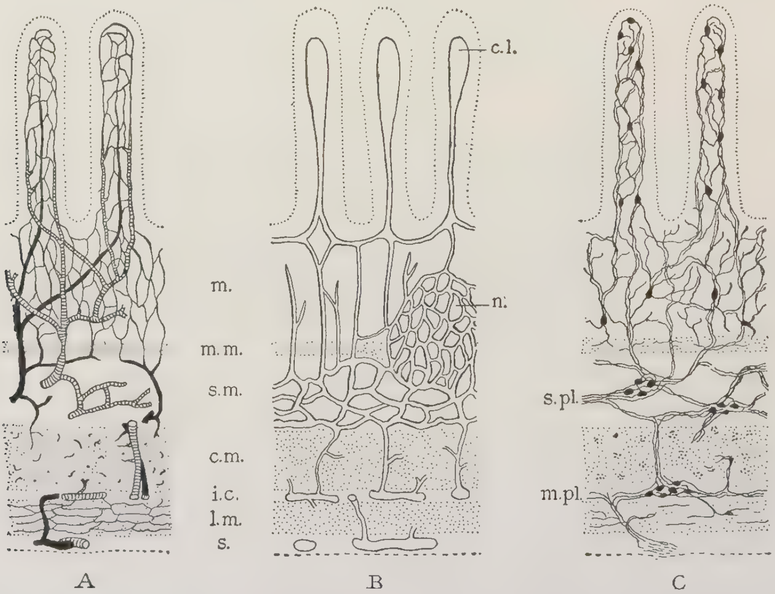


Fig. 240.

A., Diagram of the blood vessels of the small intestine; the arteries appear as coarse black lines; the capillaries as fine ones, and the veins are shaded (after Mall). **B,** Diagram of the lymphatic vessels (after Mall). **C,** Diagram of the nerves, based upon Golgi preparations (after Cajal). The layers of the intestine are **m.,** mucosa; **m. m.,** muscularis mucosæ; **s. m.,** submucosa; **c. m.,** circular muscle; **i. c.,** intermuscular connective tissue; **l. m.,** longitudinal muscle; **s.,** serosa. **c. l.,** central lymphatic; **n.,** nodule; **s. pl.,** submucous plexus; **m. pl.,** myenteric plexus.

Lymphatic vessels. The intestinal lymphatics (lacteals) appear as central vessels within the villi (Fig. 240, B). Each villus usually contains a single lacteal ending in a blind dilatation; sometimes there are two or three which form terminal loops. In some stages of digestion the distention of these lymphatics is very great and their endothelium is easily seen in sections. When collapsed they are hard to distinguish from the surrounding reticulum. Small lateral branches and a spiral prolongation of the central lymphatic have been found by injection, but these may be

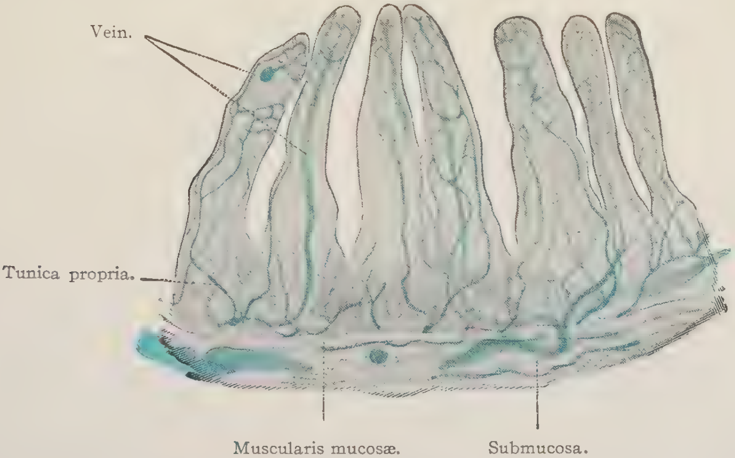


FIG. 241.—VERTICAL SECTION OF THE MUCOUS MEMBRANE OF THE HUMAN JEJUNUM. × 50. The blood vessels are injected with Berlin blue. The vein of the first villus on the left is cut transversely

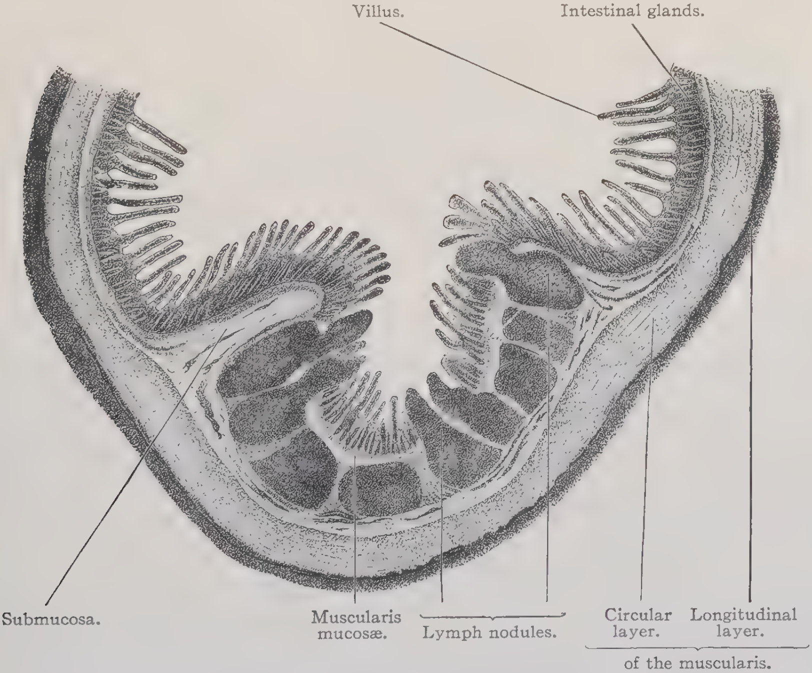


FIG. 242.—TRANSVERSE SECTION OF AGGREGATE NODULES OF THE SMALL INTESTINE OF A CAT. The crests of four nodules were not within the plane of the section. × 10.

tissue spaces into which the injected fluid has been forced. The lymphatics branch freely in the submucosa and have numerous valves. They cross the muscle layers, spreading in the intermuscular tissue and the serosa, and pass through the mesentery to the thoracic duct.

Lymphoid tissue. The lymphoid tissue of the intestine occurs primarily in the tunica propria, and in three forms—diffuse lymphoid tissue, solitary nodules, and aggregate nodules. Solitary nodules are seen in Fig. 235 The nodules are surrounded by small vessels, the lymphatics being drawn in Fig. 240, B. Blood vessels may make a similar net, and penetrate the outer portion of the nodule. The germinative centers are similar to those in the lymph glands.

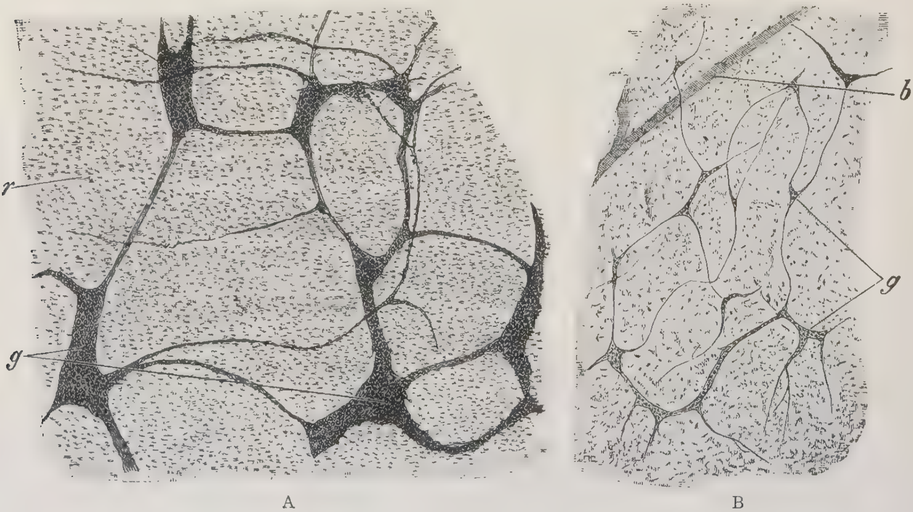


FIG. 243.

A, Surface view of the plexus myentericus of an infant. × 50. **g.** Groups of nerve cells; **r,** layer of circular muscle fibers recognized by their rod-shaped nuclei. **B,** Surface view of the plexus submucosus of the same infant. × 50. **g,** Groups of nerve cells; **b,** blood vessel visible through the overlying tissue.

Aggregate nodules (Peyer's patches) are oval areas, usually from 1 to 4 cm. long but occasionally much larger, composed of from ten to sixty nodules in close contact (Fig. 242). The nodules may be distinct or blended in a single mass. They distort the intestinal glands with which they are in relation, and immediately above the nodules the villi are partly or wholly obliterated. Thus they appear as dull patches in the lining of the freshly opened intestine, and may be readily seen. There are from fifteen to thirty of them in the human intestine (rarely as many as fifty or sixty) and they occur chiefly in the lower part of the ileum on the side opposite the mesentery. A few occur in the jejunum and the distal part of the duodenum. In the vermiform process, diffuse aggregate nodules are always present, but they do not occur elsewhere in the large intestine.

Nerves. The small intestine is supplied by prolongations of the vagus nerves, which are joined by branches of the superior mesenteric plexus of the sympathetic system. The latter are regarded as the principal supply. This plexus is ventral to the aorta, and sends branches through the mesentery into the serosa. The manner in which they penetrate the other layers, forming the *myenteric plexus* (Auerbach's plexus) between the circular and longitudinal muscle-layers, and the *submucous plexus* (Meissner's plexus) in the submucosa, is shown in Fig. 240, C. In surface view, obtained by stripping the layers apart, these plexuses are seen in Fig. 243. Their branches supply the smooth muscle fibers. From the submucous plexus the nerves extend into the villi, where nerve cells have been detected by the Golgi method (Fig. 240, C); it has been suspected, however, that some of these "nerve cells" are portions of the reticular tissue. The nerve fibers probably terminate in contact with epithelial cells and provide for local reflex action, whereby the muscles contract in response to stimulation of the epithelium. Most of the intestinal nerves are non-medullated, but they include a few large medullated fibers said to have free endings in the epithelium. The vagus fibers are said to pass to the intrinsic ganglia, and to excite both secretion and motion; the fibers from the cœliac ganglion run directly to their endings, and inhibit action.

MESENTERY AND PERITONEUM

The serous membrane which surrounds the intestinal tube and certain other abdominal viscera is a part of the lining of the body cavity. Its general relations are shown in the diagram, Fig. 244. After covering the ventral surface and the sides of the intestinal tube, the two layers of serous membrane come together to form the mesentery and extend to the dorsal body wall; then, separating, they pass laterally as the lining of the abdominal walls and again come together in the midventral line. This serous membrane, or peritoneum, consequently forms a closed sac. It is divisible into the visceral peritoneum which covers the viscera, and parietal peritoneum which lines the body walls. In all cases its free surface is covered with a single layer of flat polygonal cells, resembling endothelium (Fig. 245, B). Although quite flat, the cells have a thin cuticular border which is said to be striated, and the cuticulæ of adjacent cells fit together closely. The lateral walls of these flat cells are connected with one another by protoplasmic bridges; thus in passing through the epithelium along the intercellular boundaries, one or two intercellular vacuoles would be encountered (Fig. 245, A). Wandering cells pass readily through this epithelium, between the cells, and substances in the peri-

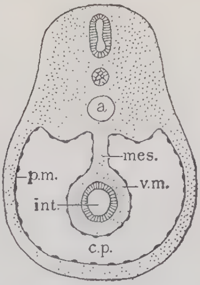


FIG. 244.—DIAGRAM OF A MESENTERY AS SEEN IN CROSS SECTION OF THE ABDOMEN). After Minot.)

a., Aorta; **c. p.**, cavity of the peritoneum; **int.**, intestine; **mes.**, mesentery; **p. m.** and **v. m.**, parietal and visceral layers of mesothelium.

toneal cavity are taken up into the subserous lymphatics. It has long been thought that there are permanent orifices or "stomata" between the epithelial cells (Fig. 245, B), bounded either by modified protoplasm or by separate small cells, and that lymphatic vessels open directly into the serous cavity through such stomata. This is contrary to recent investigations of the nature of lymphatic vessels, and the existence of stomata as permanent apertures has been denied. The stomata, so frequently found in a great variety of animals may be shrinkage effects caused by reagents, but their interpretation is not clear. In any case, the transfer of material through the epithelium takes place readily, and the substances or cells which pass through may be taken up freely by the closed lymphatic vessels in the underlying tissue.

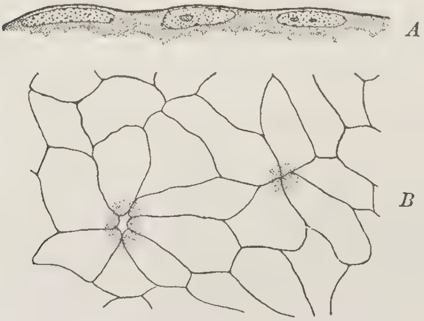


Fig. 245.—Serous Membranes.
A, Vertical section of the epithelium (after Heidenhain); **B,** Surface view, showing two stomata (after Ludwig.)

In the mesentery, a thin layer of connective tissue with elastic networks and interwoven bundles of white fibers fills the interval between the two epithelial layers. In this connective tissue there are many lymphatic and blood vessels, and nerves to the various organs. Mast cells may be found along the vessels, especially in young animals (Fig. 53, p. 74) and various other forms of wandering cells occur. The connective tissue layer is denser in the parietal than in the visceral peritoneum. In places where the peritoneum is freely movable there is a *subserous layer* of loose fatty tissue, but there is no subserous layer in the intestine.

Vermiform Process

The vermiform process, or appendix, is a "worm-like" prolongation of the cæcum. Although small in size, in structure it more closely resembles the large intestine, of which it is a part, than the small intestine. In embryos of three and one-half to five months it is lined with villi, but with further development the villi flatten out and disappear. Meanwhile the glands, which are of the same type in both small and large intestines, have developed and are increasing in number and in length. Sometimes they penetrate the muscularis mucosæ. In the adult (Fig. 246) they are simple tubes, occasionally forked, thus indicating the way in which they multiply in the embryo. As early as the fourth month, lymphoid tissue has been found in the vermiform process, and at birth the lymphoid nodules in the tunica propria are abundant and more or less confluent. The great development of lymphoid tissue is the most important histological feature of the vermiform process in the adult. It may invade and partly break up the muscularis mucosæ, and extend into the submucosa. The latter, together with the inner circular and outer longitudinal muscle layers, and the serosa, are similar to the corresponding layers of the small intestine, already described.

During the fifth month of embryonic life, Stöhr has found an interesting normal form of degeneration in the glands of the vermiform process (Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1898 vol. 51, pp. 1–55). The tunica propria around them appears to thicken, and the goblet cells in the neck of the degenerating gland, after becoming flattened, produce a solid strand. The strand then ruptures and the detached fundus becomes cystic. Subsequently it shrinks to a small nodule surrounded by dense connective tissue, and ultimately disappears. This degeneration is said to be limited to the fifth and sixth months.

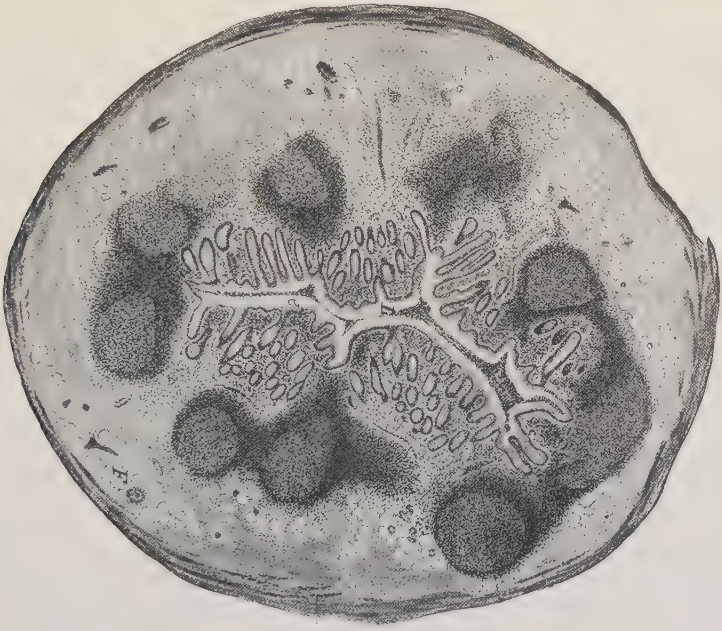


Fig. 246.—Transverse Section of the Human Vermiform Process. × 20. (Sobotta.) Note the absence of villi and the abundance of nodules. Clear spaces in the submucosa are fat cells. Only a part of the circular layer of the muscularis has been drawn.

The lumen of the normal vermiform process in the adult, when empty, is thrown into folds, between which are deep pockets; but the normal condition is found in scarcely 50% of individuals over forty years of age (Stöhr). Often the lumen is narrowed or even obliterated. The epithelium with its glands and the lymphoid nodules then disappear, and are replaced by an axial mass of fibrous tissue. This is surrounded by the unaltered submucosa and muscularis; the serosa may show the results of inflammatory conditions.

CÆCUM AND COLON

The human cæcum and colon contain villi only in the embryo. These villi disappear at about the sixth month. The production of new cells does not keep pace with the expansion of the epithelial tube, and the villi therefore gradually flatten and disappear. In the parts of the embryonic intestine distended with secretions and desquamated cells (constituting the *meconium*), the villi disappear earlier than in the contracted portions (Johnson).

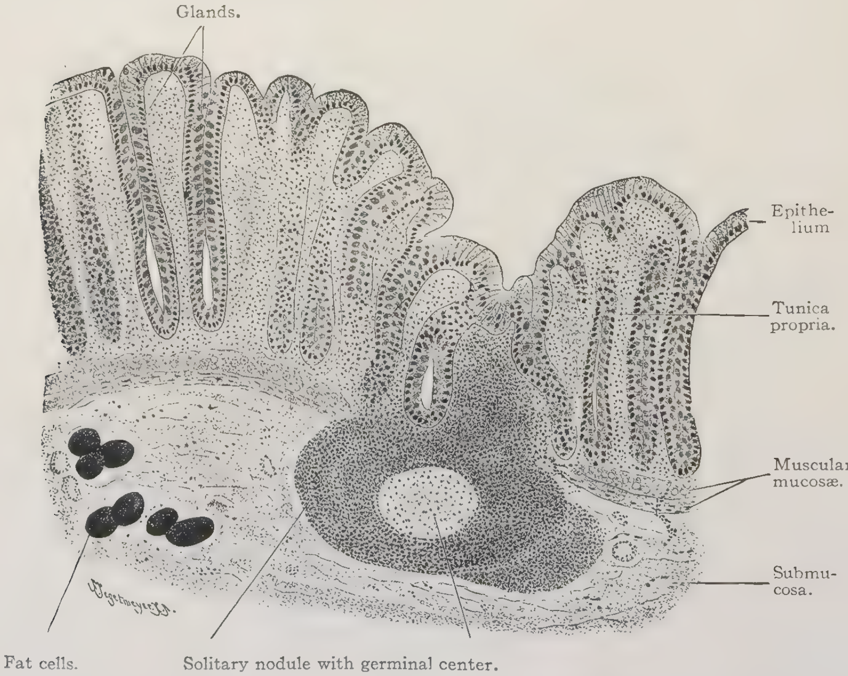


FIG. 247.—VERTICAL SECTION OF THE MUCOUS MEMBRANE OF THE DESCENDING COLON OF AN ADULT MAN. × 80.
The fat has been blackened with osmic acid. Compare the length of the glands with those of the small intestine (Fig. 239), from the same individual and drawn under the same magnification.

After the villi have gone, the mucosa contains only tubular pits or glands, lined with simple columnar epithelium (Fig. 247). These glands are similar to those in the small intestine but are longer—sometimes twice as long (0.4–0.6 mm.). They contain more goblet cells, but cells of Paneth are absent. Striated cuticular borders appear near the outlets of the glands, and are well developed upon the columnar cells lining the intestinal lumen. Solitary nodules are numerous, especially in the cæcum.

The *tunica muscularis* of the colon and cæcum has a characteristic arrangement not found in the vermiform process. The longitudinal smooth muscle fibers of the outer layer become gathered into three equidistant longitudinal bands or *tæniæ* (Fig. 248); between them the longitudinal fibers form a thin layer which may be interrupted. The tæniæ come together at the root of the vermiform process and are continuous with its outer muscle layer. Since the longitudinal muscle layer does not elongate as rapidly as the parts within it, the inner layer of circular smooth muscle, together with the mucosa and submucosa, become thrown into a succession of transverse crescentic folds or *plicæ semilunares.* The horns of the crescents are opposite the tæniæ. Between the semilunar folds the wall of the large intestine bulges outward, forming the *haustra* (Lat., buckets). The valve of the colon (*valvula coli*) is a pair of folds or *labia,* which resemble the semilunar folds; that is, they include fibers of the circular muscle layer, but the layer of longitudinal fibers passes directly from the ileum to the colon without entering the valves. The serosa of the colon contains lobules of fat which form pendulous projections known as *appendices epiploicæ.*

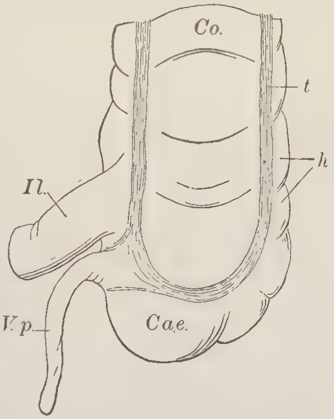


FIG. 248.—VERMIFORM PROCESS (V. p.), CÆCUM (Cae.), AND PARTS OF THE ILEUM (Il)., AND COLON (Co.). (After Sobotta.)
h., Haustra; t., tænia.

RECTUM

The rectum is divided into two parts, an upper which extends from the third sacral vertebra to the pelvic diaphragm, and a lower which continues downward to the anus. The lining of the first part is thrown into several folds, the *plicæ transversales recti* (valves of Houston). These are large semilunar folds which usually extend only part way around the rectum, but they have been described in some cases as having a spiral arrangement. The second part of the rectum, the *pars analis recti* (anal canal), presents on its inner wall a number of longitudinal folds, known as *rectal columns* (columns of Glisson or Morgagni). At their lower extremities the columns unite with one another, thus forming small transverse plicæ or *anal valves.* The grooves between the columns extend downward behind the valves, forming a series of blind pockets, the *sinus rectales.*

The mucous membrane of the first part of the rectum is similar to that of the colon, but its glands are somewhat longer (0.7 mm.). Solitary nodules are present. The muscularis mucosæ, submucosa, and circular layer of smooth muscle also resemble those of the colon, but the three tæniæ spread out and unite so as to form a continuous layer of longitudinal muscle. In the upper part of the rectum this layer is specially thickened dorsally and ventrally. As the rectum loses its mesentery, the tunica serosa is replaced by adventitious connective tissue.

The pars analis recti is the region of transition from mucous membrane to skin. This transition is not gradual but takes place in three steps, thus forming three distinct superimposed zones. From above downward these are the *zona columnaris*, *zona intermedia*, and *zona cutanea* (Fig. 249). The last, however, does not belong to the *pars analis*, properly speaking, but to the outside skin.

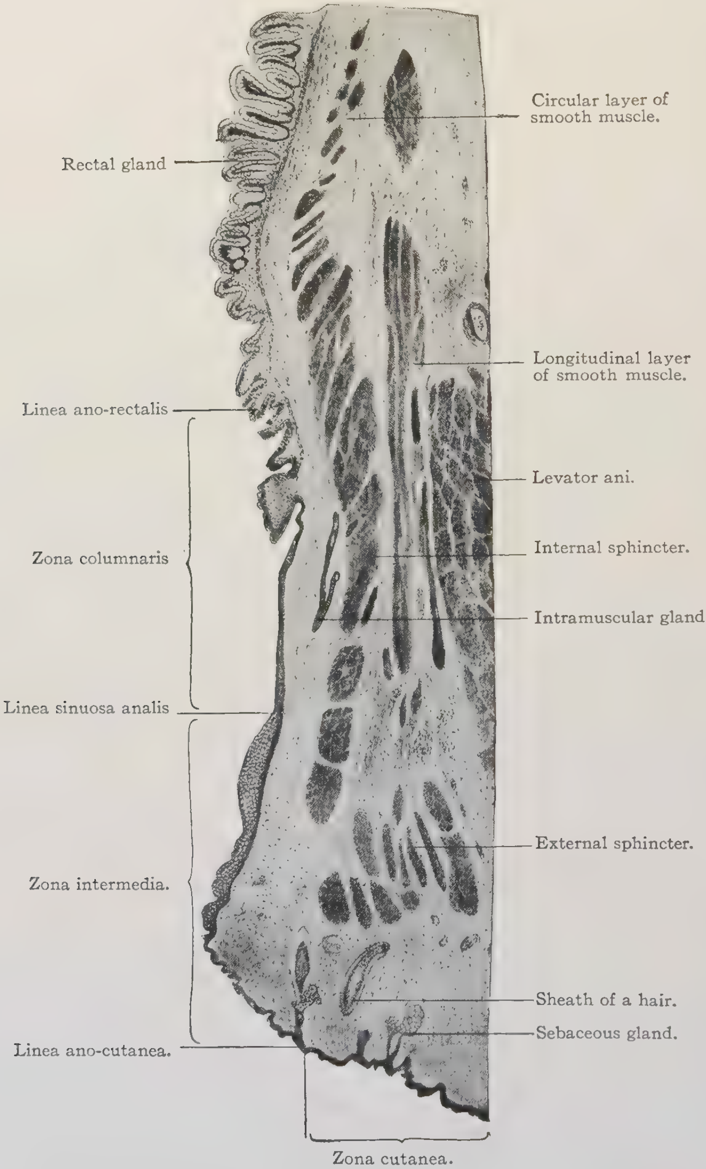


FIG. 249.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION THROUGH THE PARS ANALIS RECTI. From a human embryo of 187 mm. (about four months). (F. P. Johnson.)

The zona columnaris is the region of the rectal columns, but these are not always limited to this zone. They may extend upward into the first part of the rectum for a short distance, and they may also be continuous downward with the so-called *anal skin folds.* In the upper part of the zona columnaris the simple columnar epithelium of the superior portion of the rectum becomes two- or three-layered. Its outer cells are columnar, with finely granular protoplasm. The transition takes place gradually at the *linea ano-rectalis.* In the upper part of the zone there are usually a few intestinal glands containing numerous goblet cells, and a few goblet cells are found also in the surface epithelium. In the lower part of the zona columnaris, arising from the rectal sinuses, there are a few branched tubular gland-like structures, the *intra-muscular glands.* There are seldom more than six or eight in any one rectum. The main ducts of these glands extend outward, and usually downward, and penetrate the internal circular muscle (internal sphincter). Here a flask-shaped swelling is usually met with. Extending beyond this ampulla there are several tubular branches which continue through the internal sphincter and end blindly in the intra-muscular connective tissue. Occasionally a tubule is seen piercing the longitudinal muscle layer. Around the terminations of the tubules, which are sometimes swollen, there is a small amount of lymphoid tissue. The epithelium lining the main ducts of these glands consists of several layers of polygonal cells, but the ampullæ and branches are lined with one or two layers of cuboidal cells. Secretory cells are present in the embryo and at birth, but are apparently wanting in the adult.

The transition between the zona columnaris and zona intermedia is marked by a rather abrupt change in the epithelium, which becomes many layered and squamous. This transition takes place at the level of the anal valves, but between the valves it extends upward on the rectal columns. Thus it follows a zig-zag line, the *linea sinuosa analis* (ano-cutaneous line of Hermann). Within the zona intermedia the epithelium, composed of several layers of polygonal cells, is thicker than the epidermis. Dermal papillæ are present, but hairs and sweat glands are absent. In the lower part of this zone there are a few isolated sebaceous glands without hairs, and the epithelium is slightly cornified. Thus it gradually goes over into skin, forming a true *linea ano-cutanea,* but this line is not well marked. It has been defined as the place where the first sheaths of the hairs appear.

The skin immediately surrounding the anus forms the zona cutanea. Sweat glands are absent from the region bordering on the anus, but at a distance of 1.0–1.5 cm. there is an elliptical zone, 1.25–1.5 cm. wide, containing simple tubular coiled glands, the *circum-anal glands* of Gay. These are very similar to sweat glands but are considerably larger.

The outer layers of the pars analis recti include a very vascular tela submucosa, which contains numerous nerves and lamellar corpuscles. The muscularis mucosæ terminates in slender longitudinal bundles which extend for varying distances into the rectal columns (forming the M. dilatator ani internus of Rüdinger). The circular layer of the tunica muscularis becomes thickened at its termination, forming the *M. sphincter ani internus;* it extends a little below the linea sinuosa analis. Beyond the internal sphincter, which is composed of smooth muscle, striated muscle fibers surround the anus forming the *M. sphincter ani externus.* The outer longitudinal layer of the tunica muscularis ends in relation with connective tissue strands which diverge as they pass downward through the external sphincter, to terminate in the subepithelial tissue of the zona cutanea.

LIVER

DEVELOPMENT AND GENERAL STRUCTURE

The liver first appears in human embryos of about 2.5 mm. as a diverticulum of the ventral wall of the fore-gut, near its junction with the yolk-sac. If the embryo is placed in an upright position (Fig. 250, A) the liver is seen to be below the heart, and between the vitelline veins as they pass from the yolk-sac to their cardiac termination. The diverticulum projects into a mass of mesoderm, to which His gave the old anatomical term for diaphragm, namely *septum transversum.* The diaphragm develops in the anterior or upper part of this septum; the lower or posterior part constitutes the ventral mesentery, which extends from the fore-gut to the ventral body wall. The hepatic diverticulum is in the mesenteric part of the septum, although it is always connected with the overlying diaphragmatic shelf.

Very early the liver becomes divided into two parts, (1) the somewhat rounded diverticulum proper, lined with columnar cells with pale protoplasm, and (2) a mass of anastomosing cords or trabeculæ, composed of deeply staining cells with round nuclei and abundant granular protoplasm. These two parts are so unlike in appearance that they have been thought to proceed from different germ layers, the trabeculæ being described as formed from mesenchyma in the septum transversum. This opinion is erroneous; the entire structure is entodermal, and the trabeculæ grow out from the diverticulum. They encounter the vitelline veins, which ramify around them, producing the lacunar vessels or sinusoids already described (Fig. 151, p. 167).

In an embryo of 10–12 mm. (Fig. 250, B), the hepatic diverticulum has elongated and is connected with the mass of anastomosing trabeculæ at several points. It shows also some detached ducts and round knob-like swellings. The vitelline veins have been subdivided by the trabeculæ to form the sinusoids. The part of the vein below the liver becomes modified to form the portal vein, which thus brings blood to the sinusoids. The upper part, collecting the blood from the sinusoids after its passage through the liver, is known as the hepatic vein, while the vitelline connection with the heart becomes the vena cava inferior. In the 10-mm. embryo the circulation of the liver is wholly venous. The trabeculæ consist of cells which are doubtless very active, taking up and transforming material received from the blood, but it may be questioned whether bile is secreted at this stage, since no complete system of ducts has been demonstrated.

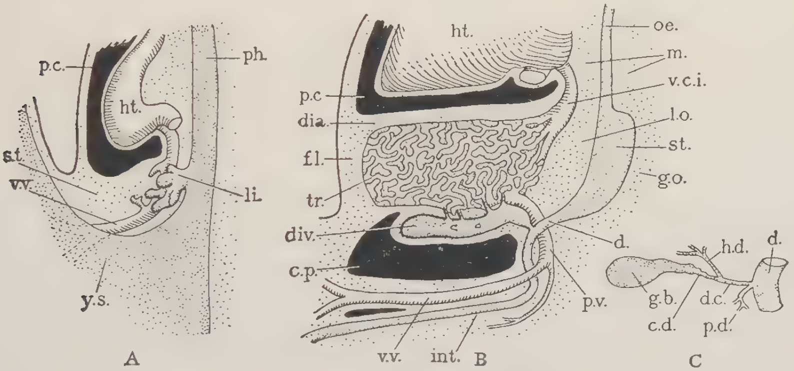


FIG. 250.—DIAGRAMS OF THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE LIVER.

A, From a 4.0-mm. human embryo. **B,** From a 12-mm. pig. **C,** The ducts in the human adult. **c. d.,** Cystic duct; **c. p.,** peritoneal cavity; **d.,** duodenum; **d. c.,** ductus choledochus; **dia.,** diaphragm; **div.,** distal end of the diverticulum; **f. l.,** falciform ligament; **g. b.,** gall bladder; **g. o.,** greater omentum; **h. d.,** hepatic duct; **ht.,** heart; **int.,** intestine; **li.,** liver; **l. o.,** lesser omentum; **m.,** mediastinum; **oe.,** œsophagus; **p. c.,** pericardial cavity; **p. d.,** pancreatic duct; **ph.,** pharynx; **p. v.,** portal vine; **s. t.,** septum transversum; **st.,** stomach; **tr.,** trabecula; **v. c. i.,** vena cava inferior; **v. v.,** vitelline vein; **y. s.,** yolk-sac.

In later stages the mass of anastomosing trabeculæ is drained by a system of ducts lined with clear cuboidal or columnar epithelium. These all empty into a single *hepatic duct*, which represents one of the original connections between the trabeculæ and the diverticulum. (In the otter there are said to be as many as seven persistent ducts.) The hepatic duct (Fig. 250, C) is joined by the cystic duct which comes from the tapering pyriform *gall bladder* (*vesica fellea*). The latter is perhaps to be regarded as a special subdivision of the original diverticulum, rather than as its expanded terminal portion. In certain mammals, as in the horse and elephant, the gall bladder is lacking. After the hepatic duct has joined the cystic duct, the common bile duct (*ductus choledochus*) thus formed proceeds to the duodenum into which it opens, together with the pancreatic duct, at the *duodenal papilla*. The common bile duct is an elongated portion of the original hepatic diverticulum.

Ligaments of the Liver. At the time of its earliest formation the liver bulges laterally from the ventral mesentery, on both sides, thus forming right and left lobes. The lobes are covered with the peritoneal epithelium.

The mesenchyma beneath this epithelium produces loose connective tissue immediately surrounding the trabeculæ, internally; this latter becomes the *capsula fibrosa* (or capsule of Glisson). The part of the ventral mesentery extending from the intestine to the liver is known as the *lesser omentum*, and the part between the liver and the ventral body wall is the *falciform ligament*. These lie in the median plane (Fig. 251). Beneath the liver, the peritoneal cavity comes to extend across the median line so that the gall bladder is covered with peritoneum, except along its attachment to the under side of the liver. On the upper surface of the liver, the original broad connection with the septum transversum becomes relatively narrow dorso-ventrally, and forms a pair of lateral ligaments which pass from the upper surface of the liver to the diaphragm. They extend across the liver at right angles with the falciform ligament and lesser omentum. The left lateral ligament retains these simple relations and is known as the *left triangular ligament*. The right lateral ligament, except at its tip (the *right triangular ligament*), extends down over the posterior surface of the liver as an extensive area of fusion with the diaphragm; this is the *coronary ligament* (Fig. 254). The significance of this asymmetrical condition will be explained with the veins of the liver.

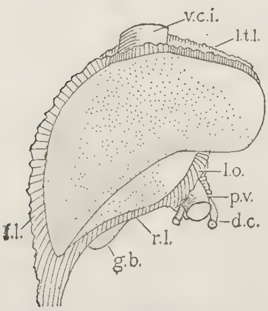


Fig. 251.—The Left Side of an Adult Liver. (Compare with Fig. 250, B.)

d. c., Ductus choledochus; **g. b.**, gall bladder; **f. l.**, falciform ligament; **l. o.**, lesser omentum; **l. t. l.**, left triangular ligament; **p. v.**, portal vein; **r. l.**, round ligament; **v. c. i.**, vena cava inferior.

Development of the veins of the liver. The hepatic trabeculæ are always in close relation with the veins which are conveying nutriment to the heart. These are (1) the vitelline veins conveying nutriment from the yolk-sac, (2) the umbilical veins conveying nutriment from the placenta, and (3) the portal vein conveying absorbed food from the intestine. The liver also has important relations with the vena cava inferior.

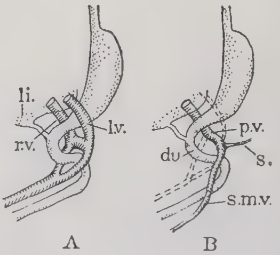


Fig. 252.

The formation of the portal vein, **p. v.**, from the right and left vitelline veins, **r. v.**, and **l. v.**; **du.**, duodenum; **li.**, liver; **s.**, splenic vein; **s. m. v.**, superior mesenteric vein.

The portal vein, which is the principal afferent vessel of the adult liver, is derived from the vitelline veins. The latter, as they pass from the yolk-sac into the abdominal cavity, fuse with one another so as to form a single trunk (Fig. 250, B. *v.v.*). On reaching the duodenum, the trunk separates into its components, and they pass into the liver as the right and left vitelline veins (Fig. 252, A). Before entering the liver they anastomose with one another dorsal to the duodenum, as shown in the figure. Thus, with the connections between the right and left veins within the liver, two complete venous rings are formed around the intestine. Branches extend out from these rings, notably the superior mesenteric vein which receives blood from the primary loop of intestine, and the splenic vein which not only drains the spleen but receives the inferior mesenteric vein together with pancreatic and gastric branches. The superior mesenteric vein (Fig. 252, *s.m.v.*) is joined by the splenic (*s.*) to form the *portal vein* (*p.v.*), and the portal vein is a persistent portion of the peri-intestinal rings formed by the vitelline veins. Other parts of the rings atrophy, and as the yolk-sac degenerates and becomes detached, the main vitelline trunk disappears. The portal system of veins is therefore a derivative of the vitelline system; its blood flows through the liver in the vitelline sinusoids.

The formation of the rings as above described takes place with great constancy, and apparently the only variations observed in their atrophy are the two cases described by Begg (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1912, vol. 13, pp. 105–110).

The umbilical veins are at first a pair of vessels, but they early unite in the umbilical cord. The single vein thus formed brings the embryonic blood back to the body after its excursion to the placenta. On reaching the body, the vein divides into right and left vessels, which are contained in the ventral body wall, and at first pass directly to the heart by joining the cardinal system; later they anastomose with the vitelline sinusoids in the liver, and the right umbilical vein then atrophies, leaving the left vein to convey the blood to the liver. In Fig. 253, the left vein is larger than the right, and is seen connecting with the hepatic sinusoids. Gradually it shifts from the left side to the median line. It then passes from the umbilical cord to the under surface of the liver along the free edge of the falciform ligament, where, after the umbilical cord has been severed, it degenerates to form the *round ligament of the liver* (Fig. 254). This extends to the *porta* or entrance to the liver, where the portal vein goes in and the hepatic duct comes out. Beyond this point the umbilical vein may be followed as the *ductus venosus* in the embryo, or the ligament of the ductus venosus in the adult, to the vena cava inferior. The ductus venosus may be defined as the channel made by the umbilical vein in passing to the vena cava inferior across the under surface of the liver. It is sometimes completely enfolded by the hepatic trabeculæ, and it communicates with the hepatic sinusoids. It follows the line of attachment of the lesser omentum, and empties into the vena cava inferior.

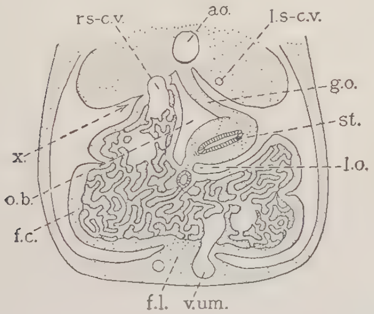


Fig. 253.—Cross Section of a Mammalian Embryo, to show the Adhesion, **x**, between the Right Lobe of the Liver and the Dorsal Abdominal Wall.

ao., Aorta; **f. c.**, fibrous capsule and serosa; **f. l.**, falciform ligament; **g. o.**, greater omentum; **l. o.**, lesser omentum; **l. s-c. v.**, left subcardinal vein; **o. b.**, omental bursa; **r. s-c. v.**, right subcardinal vein; **st.**, stomach; **v. um.**, left umbilical vein.

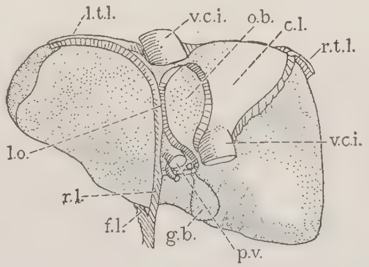


Fig. 254.—Dorsal Surface of the Adult Liver.

c l., Coronary ligament; **f. l.**, falciform ligament; **g. b.**, gall bladder; **l. o.**, lesser omentum; **l. t. l.**, left triangular ligament; **o. b.**, caudate lobe bounding the omental bursa ventrally; **p. v.**, portal vein; **r. l.**, round ligament; **r. t. l.**, right triangular ligament; **v. c. i.**, vena cava inferior.

The vena cava inferior apparently does not send much blood into the liver but passes along its dorsal surface. An essential part of this great vein is formed from the hepatic sinusoids. Before the vena cava inferior has developed, the blood in the dorsal body wall flows to the heart through the posterior cardinal veins, one on either side of the aorta. Each posterior cardinal vein shows a ventral subdivision, the right and left subcardinal veins respectively, which are seen in section in Fig. 253. As shown in the figure, the stomach prevents the liver from approaching the dorsal body wall (at the root of the mesentery) on the left, but on the right there is no such obstruction, and the liver approaches and fuses with the body wall immediately in front of the right subcardinal vein. This fusion constitutes the coronary ligament (cf. Fig. 254); and across it, the subcardinal vein anastomoses with the hepatic sinusoids. By a rapid enlargement of this anastomosis, the trunk of the vena cava inferior is formed. It drains the posterior cardinal system of veins, and the outlet of the vitelline veins into the heart becomes the terminal portion of the inferior vena cava; the main vessel from the liver, the hepatic vein, is thereafter described as a branch of the vena cava inferior. The development of the posterior part of the vena cava inferior is described in connection with the Wolffian body (p. 313); for a fuller account, see the Amer. Journ. Anat., 1902, vol. 1, pp. 229–244. Occasionally the trunk of the vena cava is entirely surrounded by a band of hepatic tissue, as in Fig. 254.

Lobes of the liver. The structures already described form the boundaries of the lobes of the liver, which in man are few and not sharply marked out. Right and left lobes have already been mentioned as the lateral halves of the liver; they are not separated from one another by an internal septum or identation of the surface. The left lobe is relatively small, and has a thin margin. It terminates in the *appendix fibrosa* at the extremity of the left triangular ligament. This appendix represents a portion of the liver from which the hepatic cells have degenerated and disappeared, leaving chiefly the anastomosing ducts. It indicates that in earlier stages the left lobe was more extensively developed. Similar tissue containing aberrant ducts (*vasa aberrantia*) may be found around the vena cava and in some other parts of the liver. The quadrate lobe is marked out by the porta, the round ligament, and the fossa containing the gall bladder. The caudate lobe is bounded by coronary ligament, lesser omentum and porta. The caudate process of this lobe extends to the right lobe over the *foramen epiploicum* (of Winslow) between the vena cava and the porta.

The hepatic artery. The liver in an embryo of 10 mm. has no arteries, but at that stage the hepatic artery can be followed to the porta. Later it extends through the connective tissue around the gall bladder, so that the cystic branch of the adult appears to be the main vessel in the young embryo. Still later, as the connective tissue which surrounds the structures at the porta gradually extends into the liver around the branches of the hepatic duct and portal vein, the hepatic artery sends branches in with it, and they form capillaries which empty into the adjacent portal sinusoids. Branches of the artery ramify also in the connective tissue capsule around the entire liver. The quantity of blood supplied to the liver by the artery always remains much smaller than that brought in by the portal vein, and it is distributed to the connective tissue. There are no vessels between the hepatic cells other than the "capilliform sinusoids" derived directly from the embryonic lacunæ of the vitelline veins.

MICROSCOPIC STRUCTURE

A section of the embryonic liver, or of the human liver at birth, shows great areas of anastomosing trabeculæ, with intervening sinusoids, and occasionally a larger vein. The trabeculæ seem passively floating in the blood stream, and the gradual assumption of adult characteristics in the liver is chiefly due to rearrangements of the blood channels according to well-known "laws." The sinusoidal net is altered by the ingrowth of connective tissue along the portal vein branches, coating the most advantageously placed sinusoids and turning them into veins, and cutting off their side branches. The same connective tissue encloses some of the neighboring cords, which then become ducts and lose their side branches. Because of the net-like arrangement of sinusoids and trabeculæ this process merely shifts the connections of both, as is shown in the diagram, Fig. 255, A, B. A similar, but less extensive, ingrowth of connective tissue gradually coats the hepatic veins and their branches. Between the terminal twigs of the portal vein and those of the hepatic vein run the sinusoids, just as the capillary net connects the arterioles and venules in the ordinary circulation. One remarkable feature is that in all parts, even of the adult liver, the sinusoids are equidistant from the entrance of the portal vein and the exit of the hepatic vein, as measured along the blood channels. Two injection masses, forced simultaneously into the two veins, portal and hepatic, will meet in all the sinusoids. Just as the terminal arteries and veins in the ordinary circulation interdigitate with each other, so in the liver the terminal branches of portal and hepatic veins interdigitate. As is the case with capillaries, the length of the sinusoids is governed by the rate of blood flow and the time necessary for the exchanges between blood and tissues. In the adult liver this averages about half a millimeter, though there is wide variation. The vascular unit of the liver would therefore comprise an area of about half a millimeter radius, or one millimeter diameter, centered about a terminal branch of the portal vein, and with hepatic terminal branches marking the periphery. The hepatic artery, which accompanies the portal vein at the hilus and in all its branches, is also central in the vascular unit, draining also into the sinusoids. The bile, on the other hand, originating in the trabeculæ and flowing through a lumen contained in them, flows in the opposite direction toward the terminal bile ducts, which accompany the terminal branches of the portal vein. This arrangement of centrifugal blood flow and centripetal secretion flow denotes a structural unit, as described on p. 220.

In comparing the structural unit of the liver with that of other glands, one must keep in mind two characteristics of the liver in its development.

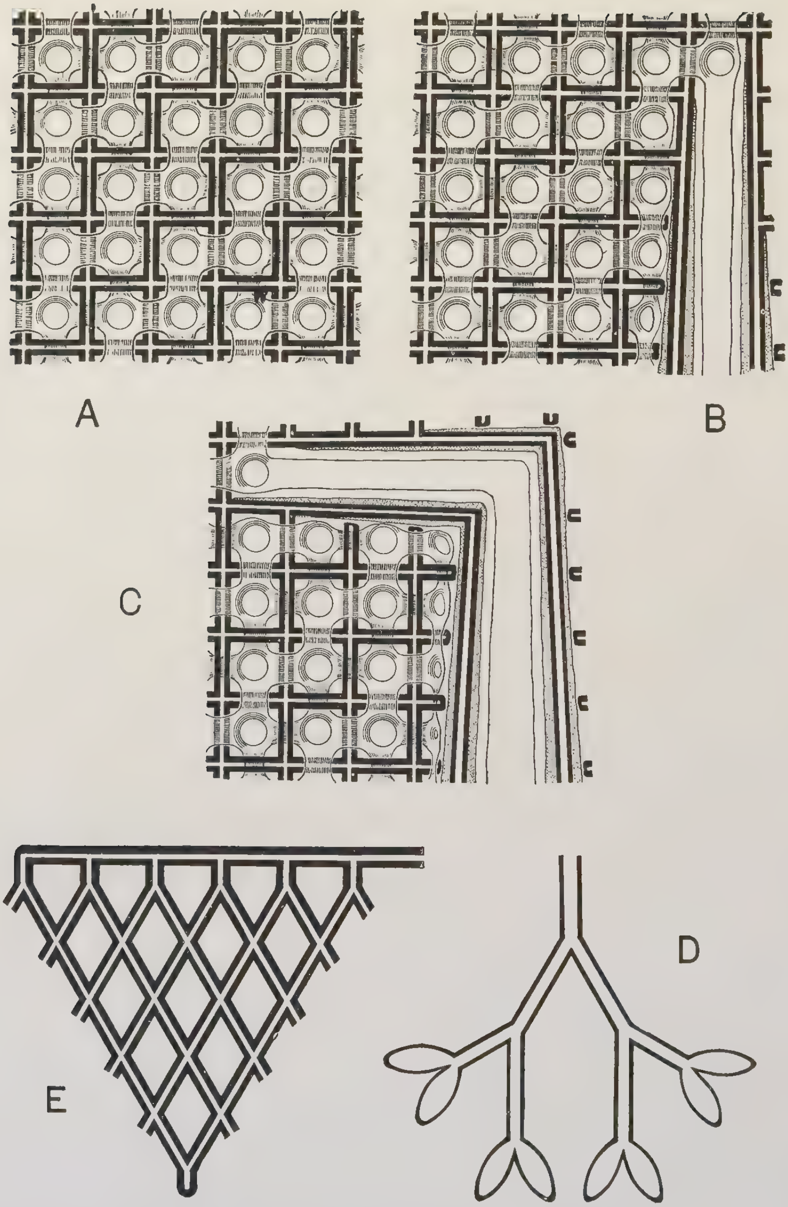


Fig. 255.—Diagram to Show Formation of Liver Lobule.

A, net of anastomosing liver cords, in the spaces of which are sections of the sinusoidal net. **B,** a portal branch vein made by the ingrowth of connective tissue, which also surrounds the two neighboring liver cords; the side branches of both vein and cords are cut off, the two enclosed cords becoming ducts. Because of the anastomoses both cords and sinusoids have other connections. **C,** the same process continued further; the cords and sinusoids now have connection only from the bottom or the left of the figure. **D,** ordinary branching gland, showing many end pieces. **E,** anastomosing gland, showing reduction to one end-piece, from several branches. A group of four or more of such figures, with end pieces brought together at the central vein, would represent a liver lobule.

In other secreting glands the original diverticulum divides repeatedly, the smaller branches spreading in all directions and remaining distinct from each other, even to the final end pieces, which end blindly (Fig. 255, D). The liver diverticulum sends many branches from its upper or oral side (Fig. 250, B), and these branches anastomose with each other to form the network of hepatic cords. The anastomoses allow frequent rearrangements in the connections of the cords (which are really elongated secreting tubules) as has been explained. Since they are enclosed in the same connective tissue, two or more terminal ducts accompany one terminal portal branch. Each duct has branches, the liver cords, from only one side (Fig. 265).

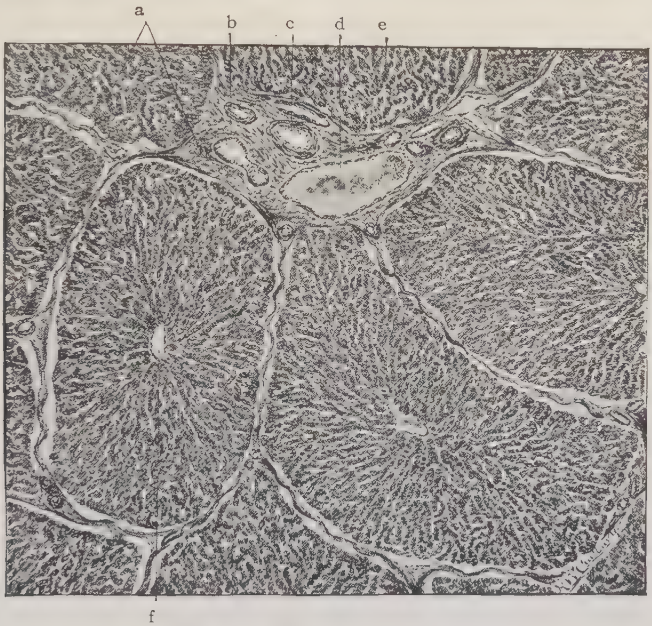


Fig. 256.—Liver of a Pig. (Radasch.)
The lobules have artificially shrunken from the interlobular tissue, **a**; **b**, bile duct; **c**, hepatic artery; **d**, interlobular vein (a branch of the portal); **e**, trabeculæ; **f**, central vein.

Branching glands tend to spread out in fanshape (Fig. 255, D) but an anastomosing gland (if we consider only the connection between the branches of a single terminal duct) tends to come to a point (Fig. 255, E). The flow of the blood from the portal vein would elongate the meshes of the network of trabeculæ. Four such groups of trabeculæ as are shown in E, arising from four separate terminal ducts, would form a square. Anastomoses between adjacent trabeculæ would occur. The terminal branch of the hepatic vein now seems central, since all the trabeculæ radiate from it. Such structures form the *lobules* of the liver. They are not vascular units, and so differ from those of most other glands in that the flow of blood is centripetal and of secretion centrifugal.

In the liver of the pig the lobules are marked by bands of portal connective tissue (Fig. 256). In the human liver (Fig. 257) the lobules are poorly defined, since they are not enclosed in a capsule, and since both trabeculæ and sinusoids anastomose freely from lobule to lobule. When cut in cross section, they are marked by the central vein (hepatic terminal) and by several peripherally arranged apparently isolated masses of connective tissue, which are at quite uniform distances from one another. These are sections of the branching connective tissue strands which have grown in from the porta, and in which lie the portal vein branches, the bile ducts, and the branches of the hepatic artery. They were named *portal canals* by Kiernan (Trans. Roy. Soc. London, 1833, pp. 711–770), and still retain this obviously misleading name. The structures within them are the "interlobular" vessels and ducts (Fig. 257).

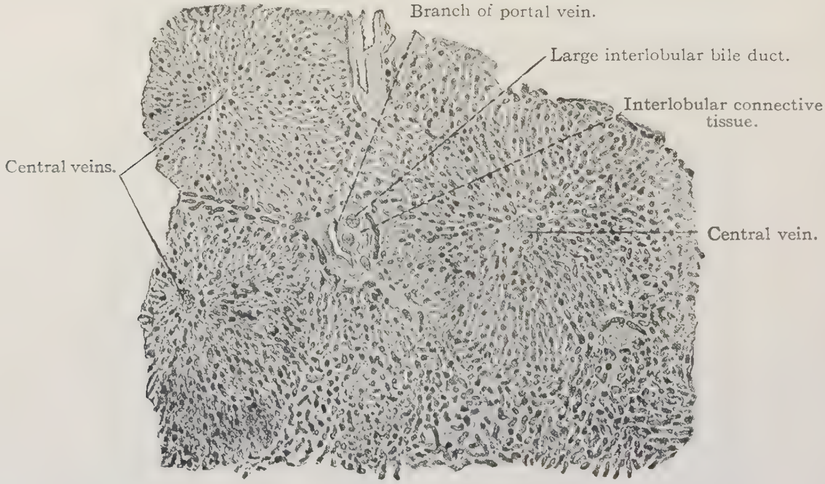

Branch of portal vein.
Large interlobular bile duct.
Interlobular connective tissue.
Central veins.
Central vein.

FIG. 257.—FROM A TANGENTIAL SECTION OF THE HUMAN LIVER. × 40.
The three central veins in cross section mark the centers of three lobules, which are not sharply separated, at the periphery, from their neighbors. Below and at the right the lobules are cut obliquely and their boundaries are not seen.

Within each lobule thus marked out there is a central vein or enlarged sinusoid, toward which the capilliform sinusoids between the hepatic trabeculæ converge. Occasionally there are two veins, side by side. These *central veins* empty at right angles into *sublobular veins* (Fig. 258), which come together to form the main branches of the *hepatic vein.* All these veins, in contrast with the portal branches, have very little connective tissue around them, and they are not associated with bile ducts or arteries; thus the hepatic veins are readily distinguished from the portal veins. The flow of the blood (Fig. 260) is from the portal veins (in the portal canals) through the capilliform sinusoids to the central veins, thence through the sublobular veins into the hepatic vein, which empties into the vena cava inferior. The arteries empty through capillaries into the capilliform sinusoids adjacent to the portal canals, and there is some evidence that the hepatic cells at the periphery of the lobule are better nourished than those in its interior.

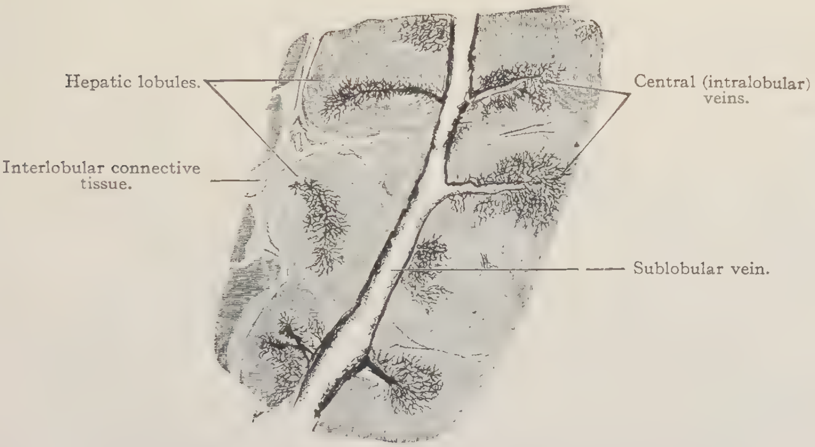

Hepatic lobules.
Interlobular connective tissue.
Central (intralobular) veins.
Sublobular vein.

FIG. 258.—FROM A VERTICAL SECTION OF A CAT'S LIVER, INJECTED THROUGH THE VENA CAVA INFERIOR
The central veins and the sublobular vein into which they empty are cut longitudinally. × 15.

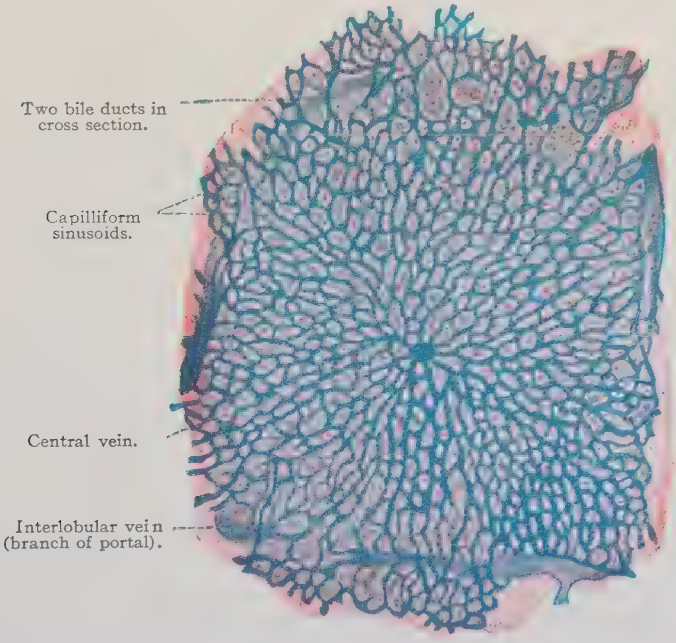

Two bile ducts in cross section.
Capilliform sinusoids.
Central vein.
Interlobular vein (branch of portal).

FIG. 259.—FROM A SECTION OF THE HUMAN ADULT LIVER INJECTED THROUGH THE PORTAL VEIN.

Parenchyma. The liver performs two main functions, the storage of food and the production of bile. Its cells are continually bathed by blood bearing food, which comes, in the embryo, at first from the yolk-sac and later from the placenta, and after birth from the intestines. The liver stores the food after digestion and gives it back between meals, so that the rest of the body may have a constant supply. Bile is used for the digestion of food in the intestine, and its secretion by the liver cells begins in late fetal life. The parenchyma or essential tissue of the liver is found in the anastomosing trabeculæ of the lobules. The general arrangement of the cells in these trabeculæ is shown in Fig. 260, in which, however, the slender lumens are rendered conspicuous by special treatment. These lumens, or *bile capillaries*, are ordinarily inconspicuous, and the trabeculæ appear on superficial examination as solid cords of cuboidal cells, with abundant granular protoplasm and large round central nuclei. Often the hepatic cells contain two nuclei, and large cells with several nuclei,

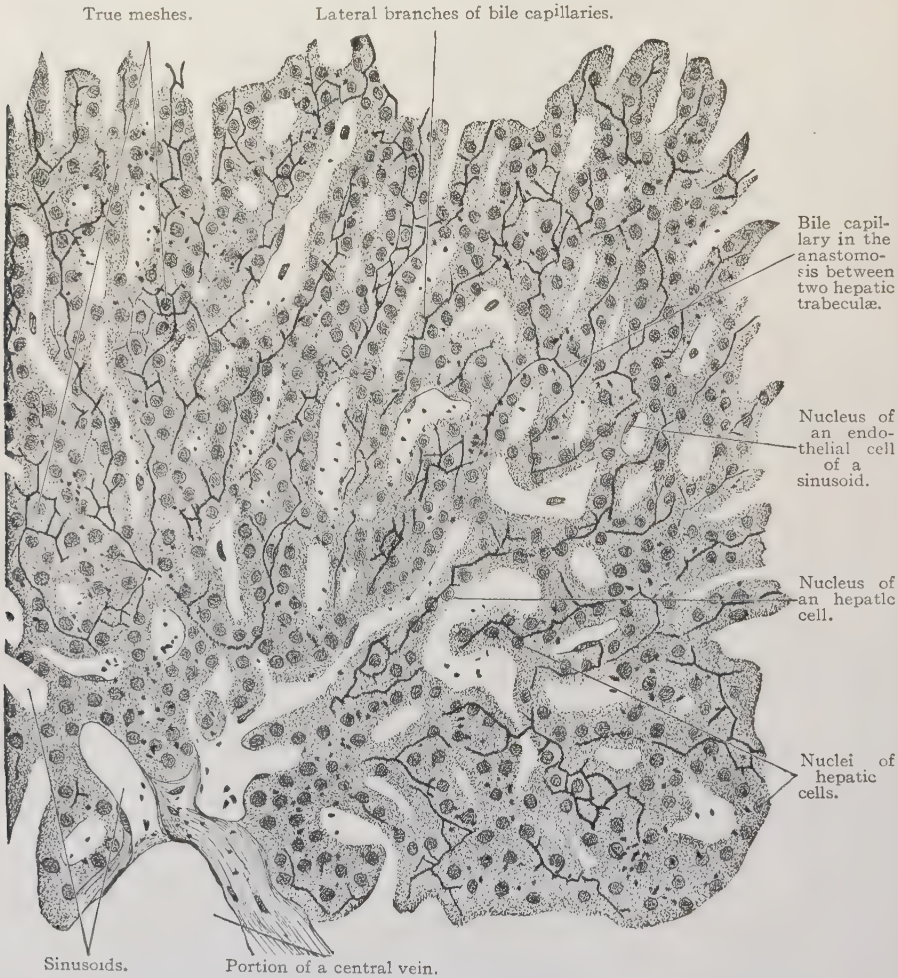

True meshes.
Lateral branches of bile capillaries.
Bile capillary in the anastomosis between two hepatic trabeculæ.
Nucleus of an endothelial cell of a sinusoid.
Nucleus of an hepatic cell.
Nuclei of hepatic cells.
Sinusoids.
Portion of a central vein.

FIG. 260.—FROM A CROSS SECTION OF A HUMAN HEPATIC LOBULE. × 300. Golgi preparation. The boundaries of the hepatic cells could not be seen. The black dots are precipitates of the silver.

produced by amitosis, have been reported. The general characteristics of hepatic cells are shown in Fig. 261. They are arranged chiefly in double rows which in certain positions appear single.

The hepatic cells have very delicate cell membranes, which are sometimes said to be absent. Their protoplasm often contains brown pigment, especially toward the central vein. Near the periphery of the lobule the cells may contain fat droplets of varying size, found normally in well-nourished individuals. Pathologically the droplets may be large and widely distributed. Glycogen (p. 88) occurs in granules and larger masses, especially after abundant meals. In ordinary specimens both fat and glycogen have been dissolved, leaving vacuoles; those caused by glycogen may sometimes be distinguished by their irregular shape. In the fasting condition, the cells are relatively small, dark, and obscurely outlined, but during digestion they become larger with a clearer central part and a peripheral zone of coarse granules. In man both conditions may be found in one liver. The bile, secreted by the hepatic cells, probably through granule formation, frequently contains granules and fat droplets such as are found within the cells. It is eliminated through the bile capillaries.

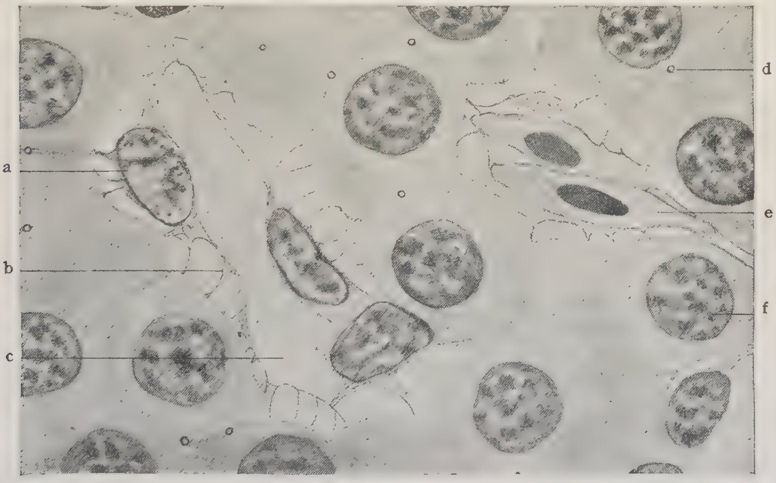


FIG. 261.—SECTION OF THE LIVER OF A SALAMANDER (Necturus). × 380.
a, Endothelial cell; **b**, endothelial reticulum; **c**, blood vessel; **d**, bile capillary; **e**, red corpuscle; **f**, hepatic cell.

The *bile capillaries* are minute tubes with continuous cuticular walls, presumably formed by the local modification of the cell membranes of two adjacent hepatic cells. The completed capillary, however, shows no indication of being formed of lateral halves which have fused. Cross sections of the large bile capillaries in the liver of Necturus are shown in Fig. 261, and their arrangement in the human liver is indicated in Fig. 260. They extend through the axis of the two-rowed trabeculæ of cells, giving off short intercellular branches at right angles. Thus the bile capillaries shown in Fig. 261 between the two sinusoids, may be separate axial capillaries, or they may be intercellular branches of an axial capillary which is in the plane of the printed page. In some places the bile capillaries completely encircle an hepatic cell, forming "true meshes" (Fig. 260). They may form larger meshes due to the anastomosis of trabeculæ. Occasionally a bile capillary is in relation with three surrounding hepatic cells, or even more, thus resembling the lumen of an ordinary gland-tubule.

With the growth of the liver the lobules are continually rearranged. When the cords elongate to such an extent that the sinusoids between them become longer than is necessary for proper function, the central vein divides, or rather two of its branch sinusoids become central veins, marking two daughter lobules. At the periphery new terminal portal branches and ducts are formed by the encroachment of the connective tissue. The process has been described by Mall and by Johnson (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1919, vol. 25, pp. 299–231) and is shown in Fig. 262.

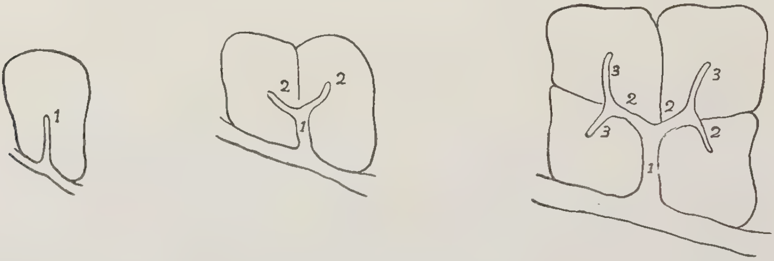


Fig. 262.—Diagram Showing Method of Increase in Number of Lobules of Liver. (Johnson.)

In some animals, *e.g.* pig, the connective tissue which accompanies the portal vein and the branches of bile duct increases normally until each lobule is surrounded by a definite capsule. A similar increase of connective tissue in man would be pathological. The lobules of the pig can therefore be isolated (Johnson, Amer. Journ. Anat., 1918, vol. 23, p. 273–288). They are short cylinders of varying shapes and sizes, ranging from 0.5 mm. to 2.0 mm. in diameter, and averaging 702,000 in number in the pig's liver.

In the shark a liver cord is a gland-like tubule, with usually eight columnar cells forming the wall, as seen in cross section, and with a conspicuous lumen. In the frog the number of cells has been reduced to three; each top plate therefore bounds one-third of the lumen. In mammals the number of cells is reduced to two, and the lumen (bile capillary) is extremely small; yet the human trabeculæ should be thought of as gland tubules. It is interesting to compare the fluidity of the bile which can flow through the narrow bile capillaries with its known viscosity in the gall bladder. Though bile is said to be found in the human intestine not earlier than the third month, and to attain its digestive function much later, the bile capillaries have been recognized at 10 mm.

In addition to intercellular capillaries there are said to be *intracellular branches*, several of which may penetrate the protoplasm of a single cell and end in knobs, as shown by the Golgi method. Since neighboring capillaries may be free from these branches, they are regarded as temporary phases of functional activity, accompanying the discharge of secretion.

They have been reported as forming baskets within the protoplasm, similar to those found in parietal cells of the stomach.

The bile capillaries and their branches are generally separated from the lining of the blood vessels by an appreciable portion of the hepatic cells. Pathologically they may extend nearer the vessels and may rupture, so that the bile escapes into the perivascular tissue and is distributed over the body, causing jaundice.

Endothelium and Perivascular Tissue. The endothelium of the capilliform sinusoids which border upon the hepatic trabeculæ is specially modified; it is well shown in the coarse-grained liver of Necturus (Fig. 261), but the same form occurs in the human liver. The endothelial cells, which are phagocytic, produce a network of reticular fibers toward the hepatic cells (Fig. 263). The reticulum contains no elastic elements, and the only cell bodies associated with it are those of the endothelium. Fine fibrillæ of connective tissue, mostly radially disposed in the lobule, have been described close to the liver cells. In the reticular meshwork in the embryo, erythroblasts multiply in great numbers, and to some extent leucocytes are formed, but in the adult the recticulum is free from cells. The endothelial cells, moreover, do not fit closely together, and are known as the *stellate cells* of *Kupffer*. They are among the most phagocytic cells of the body, taking up vital dyes with avidity. It is probable that whereas the blood flows through the capilliform sinusoids toward the central vein, there is a current of tissue fluid in the reticulum taking the reverse direction and passing toward the portal canal. This fluid is the source of the great quantity of lymph which flows from the liver.

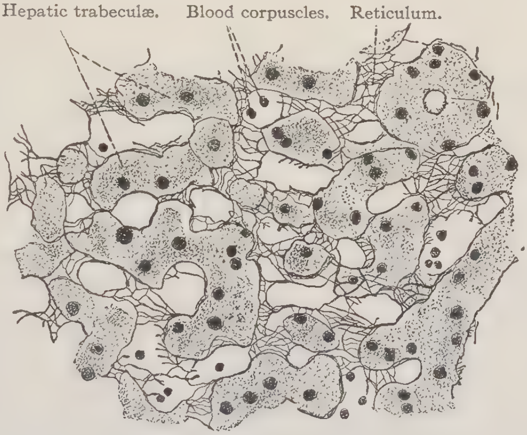


Fig. 263.—Section of the Liver Prepared by the Bielschowsky Method. × 300.

Portal canals. The portal canals are strands of connective tissue extending into the liver from the transverse fissure or porta (which is essentially a hilus). They constitute the interlobular tissue of the liver, and the ducts, arteries, and veins which they contain are often called interlobular. In addition to the structures already considered, the portal canals contain lymphatics and nerves; these and certain features of the ducts require further consideration.

The lymphatic vessels are abundant, forming plexuses around the ducts and blood vessels, and receiving fluid from the perivascular reticulum within the lobules; but no lymphatic vessels enter the lobules. They pass out of the liver at the porta, where lymph glands are found Certain of the lymphatics in the capsule of the liver drain toward the porta; others enter the diaphragm.

The nerves are chiefly non-medullated fibers from the sympathetic system, but the liver also receives branches from the vagus. These nerves are principally distributed to the blood vessels, but some are said to penetrate the lobules and end in contact with the hepatic cells.

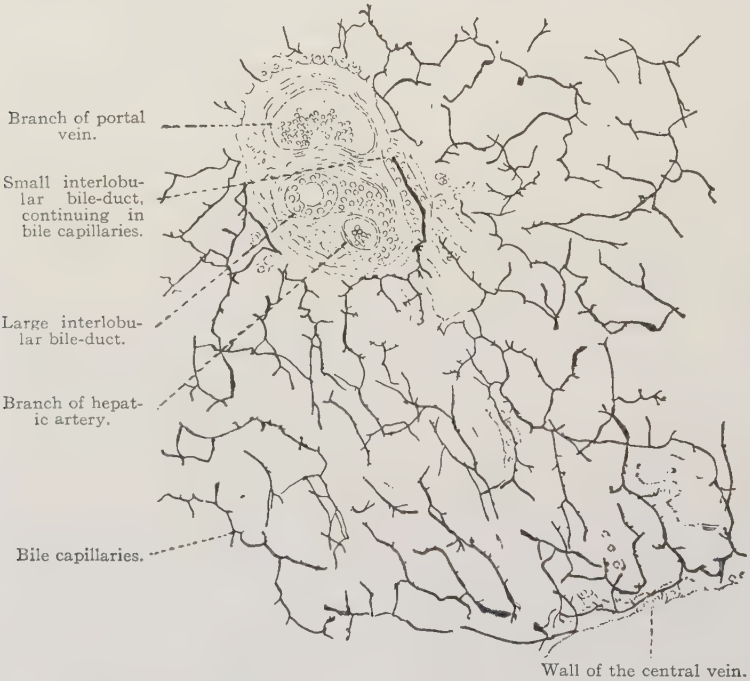

Branch of portal vein.
Small interlobular bile-duct, continuing in bile capillaries.
Large interlobular bile-duct.
Branch of hepatic artery.
Bile capillaries.
Wall of the central vein.

FIG. 264.—GOLGI PREPARATION OF THE LIVER OF A DOG. × 240.

The interlobular ducts are lined with simple columnar or cuboidal epithelium. They anastomose with one another, and have blind pockets; in the larger ducts, there are branched mucous glands. The connection between the ducts and the hepatic trabeculæ is difficult to observe, and it was once thought that the ducts with their ramifications produced the bile, leaving the parenchyma for the function of internal secretion. Through injections, however, or by using the Golgi method, the connection between the bile capillaries and the bile ducts can be readily demonstrated (Fig. 264). They are found at the periphery of the portal canals, and were described histologically by Hering (Stricker's Handbuch, Leipzig, 1871). On the side toward the connective tissue these "canals of Hering," or periportal ducts, exhibit a flat or cuboidal epithelium, like that of ordinary ducts; but toward the lobule they are bounded by hepatic cells, or by flat cells interrupted by hepatic cells (Fig. 265). Thus the hepatic trabeculæ are directly inserted into the walls of the ducts, and the bile capillaries connect with the lumen.

The *hepatic*, *cystic* and *common bile ducts* all have a simple columnar epithelium, with occasional goblet cells and branching mucous glands. Around the hepatic duct there is a wide zone formed by the ramifying ducts of these mucous glands, as they extend into the surrounding connective tissue. The connective tissue layer is said to contain many elastic fibers. It is followed by a tunica muscularis consisting chiefly of circular fibers. These form a sphincter around the common bile duct, at the duodenal papilla. In the cystic duct there are folds of mucous membrane, containing muscle fibers, and forming the "spiral valve."

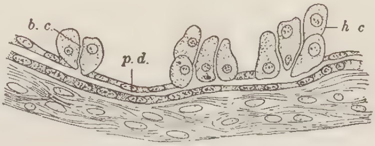


Fig. 265.—The Connection Between Bile Capillaries and Bile Ducts in a Human Embryo of Four and a half Months. (After Toldt and Zuckerkandl.) **b. c.**, Bile capillary; **h. c.**, hepatic cell; **p. d.**, periportal duct.

The *gall bladder* is lined with a folded mucous membrane covered with tall epithelial cells similar to those of the intestine (Fig. 266). They have elongated basal nuclei and secretory granules (mucin) in the outer part of their protoplasm. The free surface is covered with a distinct cuticular border, and terminal bars have been observed. Goblet cells are absent and mucous glands are infrequent. There is a very profuse net of subepithelial blood vessels. The muscularis consists of obliquely circular fibers arranged in a plexiform layer. Among them are groups of sympathetic nerve cells which supply the muscle, and medullated fibers which end in the epithelium. The subserous tissue is highly developed and contains large lymphatic vessels.

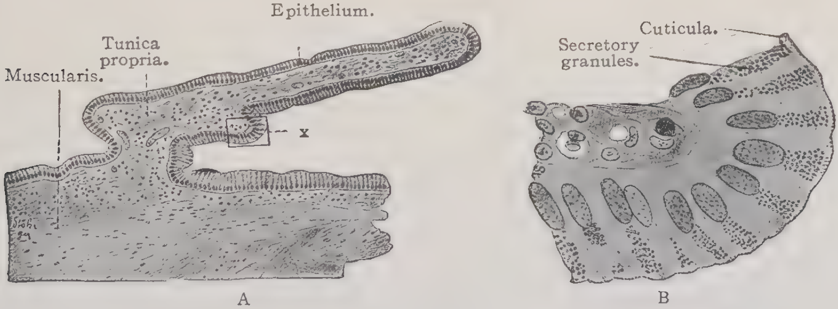


Fig. 266.—From a Section of the Gall Bladder of an Adult, **A.** × 100. **B**, the portion **x** of **A.** × 560

The function of the gall bladder, beside the storage of bile, is also to remove certain of the bile fluids and probably to add other constituents, as shown by the secretory granules. Hepatic bile and bladder bile differ in color and consistency. It has been suggested that, in animals without gall bladder, similar alterations are carried on in the intrahepatic ducts, which are said to be enlarged. A recent description of the gall bladder and of the remarkable changes it undergoes in distention is given by Boyden (Anat. Record, 1925, vol. 30, pp. 333–363).

PANCREAS

Development and General Features. Although the pancreas in the adult is a single gland, it arises in the embryo as two entirely distinct entodermal outgrowths, known as the dorsal and ventral pancreases respectively. The dorsal pancreas grows out from the dorsal wall of the intestinal tube, a little below the level of the common bile duct in most mammals, but a little above it in man. The ventral pancreas grows down from the common bile duct at its junction with the intestinal tube. As seen in Fig. 267, A, and B, the ventral pancreas may be more or less bi-lobed. Usually it grows to the right of the intestine and there meets the dorsal pancreas, which approaches it in close relation with the portal vein.

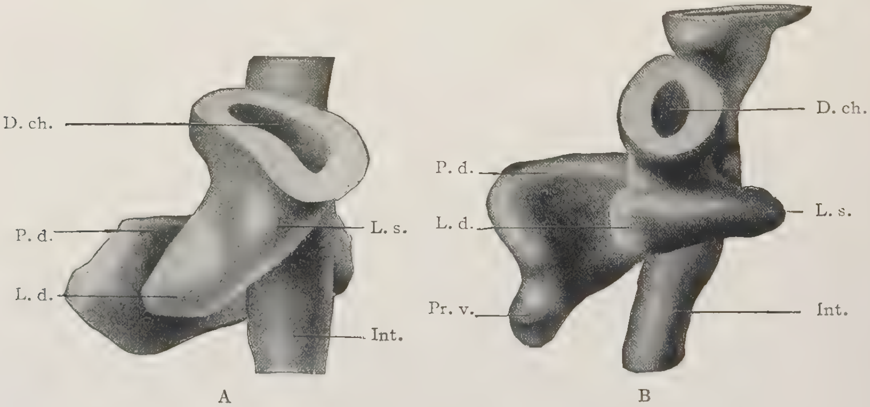


FIG. 267.—MODELS OF THE VENTRAL PANCREAS IN PIG EMBRYOS. × 120.
A, 5.1 mm., **B**, 6.0 mm. **D. ch.**, ductus choledochus; **Int.**, intestine; **L. d.**, right lobe, and **L. s.**, left lobe of the ventral pancreas; **P. d.**, dorsal pancreas; **Pr. v.**, ventral process of the dorsal pancreas.

The left lobe of the ventral pancreas sometimes grows around the left side of the intestine and joins the dorsal pancreas, so that the intestine is encircled by pancreatic tissue (annular pancreas); sometimes it grows out beneath the gall bladder where it ends in a cystic enlargement. Usually the left lobe is scarcely indicated. As a rather frequent abnormality, accessory pancreases of small size, but sometimes of very typical structure, are found along the intestine, or even in the wall of the stomach, especially at the constriction between its cardiac and pyloric portions. Such glands may or may not extend through the tunica muscularis. The anomalies of the pancreas are reviewed by Boyden (Am. J. Anat., 1925, vol. 36, pp. 151–183).

After the dorsal and ventral pancreases have come in contact, they are related to one another as shown in Fig. 268, A. The dorsal pancreas is much larger than the ventral pancreas, and it grows across the body toward the left until it reaches the spleen. Thus it gives rise to the *body* and *tail* of the pancreas of the adult; and it forms also the ventral part of the *head* of the gland, which fills the concavity in the duodenal loop. In the adult its duct opens into the duodenum 1–3 cm. above the orifice of the common bile duct, but it has been tapped by an anastomosis with the ventral pancreas. Its outlet persists as the *accessory pancreatic duct*, discovered by Santorini (1775). It is shown in the dissection, Fig. 268, B, but a large branch ordinarily found descending from it in front of the pancreatic duct, *p. d.*, is not included. In some cases the accessory duct becomes impervious, but it is generally functional, and if the outlet of the main duct were blocked by gall-stones or otherwise, the presence of this accessory duct would be of considerable importance. In some mammals, as in the pig, it is normally the chief duct.

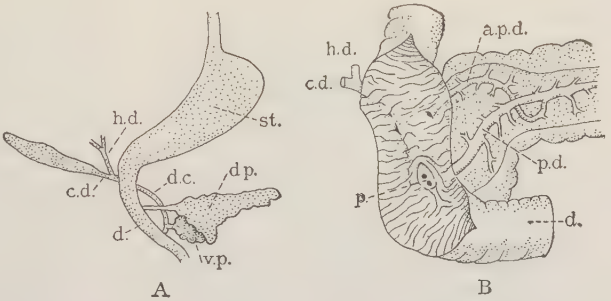


FIG. 268.—A, DIAGRAM OF THE PANCREAS FROM A 15-MM. HUMAN EMBRYO. B, DISSECTION OF THE DUODENUM AND PANCREAS OF AN ADULT. (After Schirmer.)

a. p. d., Accessory pancreatic duct; **c. d.**, cystic duct; **d.**, duodenum; **d. c.**, ductus choledochus; **d. p.**, dorsal pancreas; **h. d.**, hepatic duct; **p.**, duodenal papilla; **p. d.**, pancreatic duct; **st.**, stomach; **v. p.**, ventral pancreas.

The duct of the ventral pancreas either opens into the duodenum close beside the common bile duct (Fig. 268, B), or it retains its embryonic relation (Fig. 268, A) and opens into the common bile duct near its duodenal orifice. The duct of the ventral pancreas, by an anastomosis with the duct of the dorsal pancreas, becomes the outlet of the main *pancreatic duct*, which was first figured by Wirsung (1642). It will be noted that a large part of the dorsal pancreatic duct, extending through the body and tail, becomes incorporated in this main duct of Wirsung; the ventral pancreas supplies only its outlet.

In the adult no histological distinction has ever been found between the two pancreases, but although alike in structure and close together, there is no general anastomosis between them. Rarely they remain entirely separate. Usually, on injecting the ducts, only one connection is found between the dorsal and ventral pancreases, but in an abnormal case two connections have been observed. Moreover, anastomoses between the smaller ducts and tubules in the separate glands have not been found in human adults. Rings of pancreatic tissue occur in the embryo, and in adult guinea-pigs Bensley has demonstrated a free anastomosis of the ducts (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1911, vol. 12, pp. 297–388); such a condition has not yet been found in man.

Microscopic structure. As a whole the pancreas somewhat resembles the parotid gland. It is divided into lobes and lobules by connective tissue septa containing blood and lymphatic vessels, nerves, and interlobular ducts (Fig. 269). The lobules are composed chiefly of short tubules, or *alveoli*, which in models appear pear-shaped; in sections they are cut at all possible angles. Instead of exhibiting a well-defined lumen, the alveoli appear to be clogged with cells, known as *centro-alveolar cells* (or centro-acinal cells). Irregularly distributed among the alveoli there are round areas of paler cells, peculiar to the pancreas (Fig. 269). They may be at the center or periphery of the lobule, or occasionally in the interlobular connective tissue. These important structures were first described in Langerhans' thesis in 1869 (Inaug. Diss., Berlin), and are known as the pancreatic *islands* (islands of Langerhans).

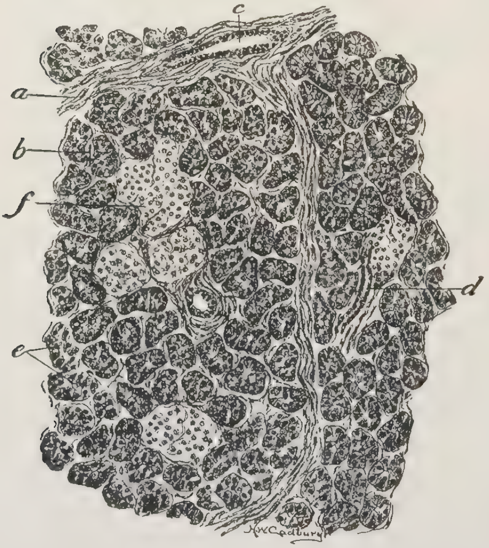


FIG. 269.—SECTION OF HUMAN PANCREAS, SHOWING SEVERAL ISLANDS. (Radasch.)

a, Interlobular connective tissue containing an interlobular duct, **c**; **b**, capillary; **d**, interlobular duct; **e**, alveoli; **f**, pancreatic island.

The alveoli are composed chiefly of the secreting *pancreatic cells* (Fig. 270). Toward the lumen their protoplasm contains coarse granules of *zymogen*, which accumulate while the cell is inactive and are eliminated during secretion. Apparently they are transformed into fluid as they are discharged, for they are not found free in the intestine In fresh specimens the granules are refractive and easily seen, but in preserved tissue they are readily destroyed, so that the granular zone appears reticular. The granules are soluble in water, and are darkened by osmic acid. The basal protoplasm of the pancreatic cells is vertically striated. It contains the round nucleus which has coarse masses of chromatin. Within the pancreatic cells there have been found "paranuclei" of unknown nature, thought to be functionally important. After the discharge of secretion, the inner zone of the cells becomes smaller, and the cell boundaries more distinct. The cells in Fig. 270, A, have not discharged; the inner zone is large and reticular, showing that the granules were present, but dissolved in the fixation of the tissue. The pancreatic cells rest upon basement membranes containing "basket cells."

The cells of the pancreatic acinus are peculiarly suitable for studies of secretion, as the gland secretes only when food reaches the duodenum, or under the action of certain drugs. At other times the cells are resting. By removing the organ at definite periods, various stages in secretory activity can be obtained. The long mitochondria, which are the cause of the basal striations, the granules, the Golgi apparatus, and other constituents of these cells have been frequently investigated. The secretion contains a proteolytic enzyme, trypsin, and a lipolytic enzyme, steapsin.

The centro-alveolar cells may be darker or lighter than the pancreatic cells, but they are always smaller, and may be readily identified from their central position. They do not contain zymogen granules. The intralobular intercalated ducts, which connect with the alveoli, are very slender, and their walls are formed of flat cells (Fig. 270, A). They terminate in clusters of alveoli, which often present clover-leaf forms. The centro-alveolar cells have been interpreted as due to the invagination of these ducts into the alveoli, but apparently they do not develop in this way; they are formed as an inner stratum of a two-layered epithelium. The secretory capillaries of the alveoli are shown in Fig. 271. They extend between the centro-alveolar cells to the pancreatic cells, and may be prolonged between the latter, but they do not reach the basement membrane.

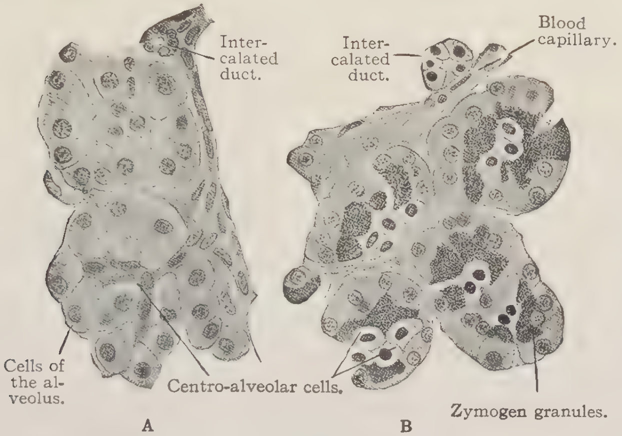


FIG. 270.—FROM SECTIONS OF A HUMAN PANCREAS. × 500.
In section **A** the granules are dissolved, the centro-alveolar cells are flat and dark; in section **B** the granules are distinct, the centro-alveolar cells are cuboidal and clear.

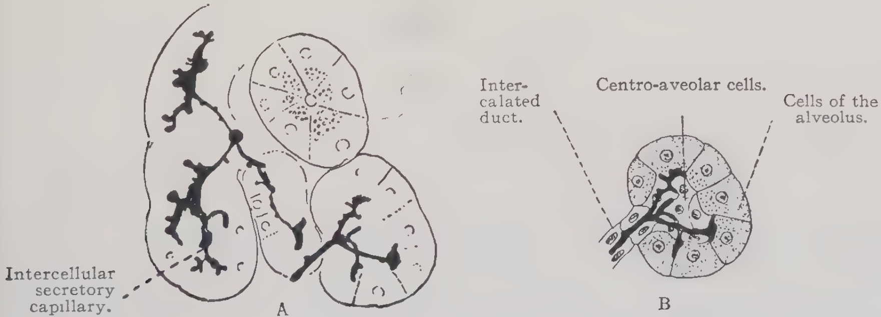


FIG. 271.—**A**, FROM A SECTION OF THE PANCREAS OF AN ADULT MAN. × 320. **B**, AN INTERPRETATION OF THE RIGHT LOWER PORTION OF **A**.

The intercalated ducts pass into excretory ducts lined with cuboidal epithelium, without the intervention of secretory ducts such as are found in the salivary glands. The plan of the pancreatic ducts is shown in Fig. 272. The main pancreatic and accessory pancreatic ducts are composed of simple columnar epithelium surrounded by a connective tissue layer, outside of which is a zone of circular smooth muscle fibers. The latter are gathered into sphincters at the major and minor duodenal papillæ, where the ducts open. Occasional goblet cells and small glands resembling mucous glands have been found in the mucosa of the large ducts.

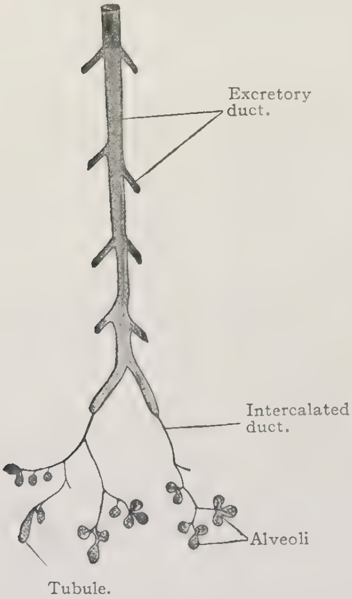


FIG. 272.—DIAGRAM OF THE PANCREAS.

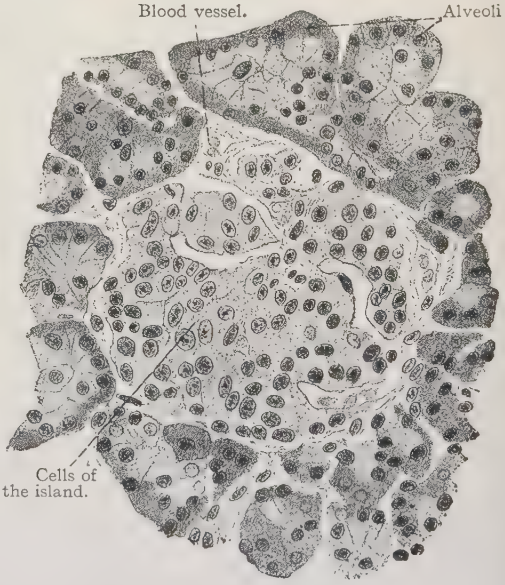


FIG. 273.—AN ISLAND OF THE PANCREAS WITH THE SURROUNDING ALVEOLI, FROM AN ADULT. × 400.

The blood and lymphatic vessels and nerves of the pancreas resemble those of the salivary glands. The capillaries have notably wide meshes so that considerable portions of the alveoli are not in contact with them. The nerves end around the blood vessels, ducts and pancreatic cells. They are chiefly non-medullated sympathetic fibers from the cœliac plexus, associated with scattered nerve cells found within the pancreas. Lamellar corpuscles occur in the connective tissue.

The pancreatic islands are usually not to be found in human embryos under 50 mm. in length. Thus they develop only after the pancreatic glands have come together and attained considerable size. They arise as outgrowths from the smaller ducts, with which they may retain a solid stalk-like connection, or they may become wholly detached. According to Bensley, detached islands in the guinea-pig are infrequent. In the embryo, as in the adult (Fig. 273), they consist of coiled anastomosing cords of cells, or irregular masses, which are in close relation with the endothelium of dilated capillary blood vessels, though this relation is readily destroyed by shrinkage in preserved specimens. The islands are composed of pale cells with very delicate cell walls, and they contain finer granules than those in the pancreatic cells. In fresh preparations Bensley observed that these granules exhibit the Brownian movement, and that colorless spaces occur among them, representing the canals of Holmgren's trophospongium. (See p. 9.) When preserved by special methods, two forms of island-cells may be distinguished by the staining reactions of their granules. In one type of cell the nucleus is oval, with finely granular chromatin; and in the other it is round, with large chromatin granules. Saguchi (Am. J. Anat., 1920, vol. 28, pp. 1–57) discusses these cell types; but it should be remembered that the activity of the islands is presumably continuous, and that the different appearances may indicate different phases of secretion in a single type of cell. Having neither ducts nor lumen, the islands produce an internal secretion, which is received by the blood vessels. There is evidence that this secretion plays an important part in carbohydrate metabolism. If the pancreas is removed, sugar appears in the urine; thus producing one of the symptoms of diabetes. If, however, the ducts of the pancreas are tied, although the pancreatic alveoli degenerate, the islands remain functional, and sugar is not found in the urine. Thus the islands are regarded as physiologically distinct from the remainder of the pancreas.

Glycosuria, or the presence of sugar in the urine, denotes a failure of the normal carbohydrate metabolism. Attempts to isolate a hormone which would restore this metabolism were unsuccessful until Banting and his associates, reasoning that the digestive pancreatic secretion might destroy the island secretion in extracts of the whole gland, sought pure island secretion in the fetal pancreas, in which the activity of the alveolar cells had not commenced. This was successful. Similar hormones have been secured from certain fish, in which the island tissue is entirely separate from the alveolar tissue.

Morphologically the islands are likewise distinct, and Bensley finds that the possibility of the transformation of alveolar tissue into island tissue, or conversely of island tissue into alveolar tissue, "has not a single well-established fact to support it" (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1911, vol. 12, pp. 297–388). The number of islands, however, is subject to great variation, there being from 13,000 to 56,000 in the entire pancreas of guinea-pigs (Bensley), the average being twenty-two islands per cubic millimeter. In all stages, both in the guinea-pig and in man, they are usually most numerous in the tail of the pancreas, and least numerous in its head (Opie, Johns Hopkins Hosp. Bull., 1900, vol. 11, pp. 205–209).

RESPIRATORY APPARATUS

Development. The respiratory apparatus, consisting of the larynx, trachea, bronchi, and lungs, arises as a median ventral outgrowth of the fore-gut, immediately behind the last pharyngeal pouches. It apparently is in no way related to the branchial pouches, but it may correspond with the air-bladder of the bony fishes. At the stage when the lung-bud develops, the fore-gut is laterally flattened, so that its lumen is a dorso-ventral cleft. The lung-bud develops as a pear-shaped swelling, directed downward, on the ventral border of the fore-gut; and this swelling becomes split off, from below upward, to form the trachea. During this splitting the whole laterally flattened portion of the fore-gut elongates, thus providing the length of the trachea, which does not grow out like the ducts of glands. Anomalous connections of the oesophagus with the trachea may be explained by the local failure of the two tubes to separate. The upper end of the trachea, with the cartilages which develop around it, constitutes the larynx. At the lower end of the trachea, the pyriform dilatation spreads out on either side to form the primary bronchi (Fig. 274, A).

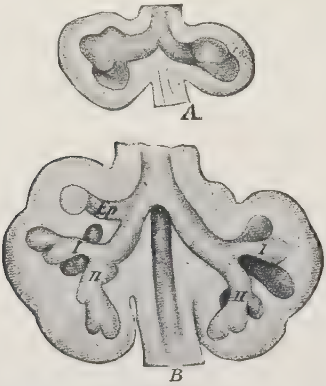


FIG. 274.—RECONSTRUCTIONS OF THE LUNGS OF YOUNG EMBRYOS, SEEN FROM THE VENTRAL SURFACE. (His.) **A**, A younger stage than **B**; **ep**, apical-bronchus; I, II, primary bronchi.

The tracheal and bronchial tubes are lodged in a mass of connective tissue, situated above and behind the pericardial cavity, and since this tissue stands in the middle of the thorax it is known as the *mediastinum.* It is comparable with a broad mesentery. As the bronchi push out laterally they occupy right and left folds bulging from the mediastinum, called by Ravn the *pulmonary wings* (*alæ pulmonales*). Into these the bronchi extend and produce branches after the manner of a gland (Fig. 274, B). The pulmonary wings consist of mesenchyma, covered by the epithelium which lines the body cavity. At first they project into the part of the body cavity which connects the peritoneal with the pericardial cavity; later, by the development of the pleuro-pericardial and pleuro-peritoneal membranes respectively (the latter being a part of the diaphragm) the chamber into which the pulmonary wings project is entirely cut off from the rest of the body cavity. On either side, it forms a pleural cavity (see Fig. 160, p. 176). The epithelium and underlying connective tissue covering the pulmonary wings, constitute the *visceral pleura;* and the similar layers toward the thoracic wall form the *parietal pleura.* These layers are comparable in development and structure with the corresponding layers of the peritoneum. Other subdivisions of the pleura are the mediastinal, pericardial, and diaphragmatic pleuræ. The lung is connected with the mediastinum by a short and broad stem of connective tissue, through which the bronchi, vessels and nerves extend. This is the *root* of the lung, and the vessels enter at the *hilus*.

The branches which are given off by the stem-bronchus within the pulmonary wings, are formed with great regularity, and they have been carefully studied in many mammals. Very early in development, the human lungs become asymmetrical, and at the stage shown in Fig. 274, B, the three lobes of the right lung and the two lobes of the left lung are already indicated. In the pig the asymmetry is greater, since on the right an unpaired lobe proceeds directly from the trachea; in certain animals, as in the seal, the right and left lungs have symmetrical bronchi. Whether the symmetrical condition is the primary one, and how the bronchi of one lung should be homologized with those of the other, are questions which have been much discussed. For the comparative anatomy of the bronchi, see Huntington, Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci., 1898, vol. 11. pp. 127–148; for their development, especially in the pig, see Flint, Amer. Journ. Anat., 1906, vol. 6, pp. 1–137.

The blood vessels of the lungs are derived from several sources. They include the large pulmonary arteries and veins, which are the principal vessels of the lung, and the small but important bronchial arteries and veins. The pulmonary vessels are shown in Fig. 275, which represents the trachea and right lung of a human embryo, seen from the left side; the left lung has been cut away at *l. br.*

The *pulmonary arteries* develop in connection with the *pulmonary arches*, which are two vessels, one on either side, passing from the ventral aorta to the dorsal aorta. Approximately midway in its course, each of these arches sends a branch to the lung of the corresponding side. Subsequently the trunk of the ventral aorta becomes spirally subdivided by a septum, so that the portion leading to the pulmonary arches is split off from the rest; the way in which its root becomes connected with the right ventricle only, has been described with the development of the heart. As a result of this subdivision, the pulmonary artery leaves the heart and divides into right and left arches, each of which sends a branch to the lung on the same side and then passes on to the dorsal aorta. The connection between the right arch and the right dorsal aorta is soon lost, however, so that the vessel to the right lung (Fig. 275 *r. r.*) appears to be given off from the main pulmonary artery. The left pulmonary arch enlarges, and until birth it forms a great vessel, known as the *ductus arteriosus*, which conveys most of the blood from the pulmonary artery into the aorta. The amount of blood which goes to the inactive lungs may be inferred from the relative size of the vessels shown in the figure. Soon after birth, when respiration has begun, the ductus arteriosus closes, becoming a fibrous cord, and then the volume of blood going through the pulmonary artery equals that in the aorta. (For further details regarding the development of the pulmonary arteries, see Bremer, Amer. Journ. Anat., 1912, vol. 13, pp. 111–128.)

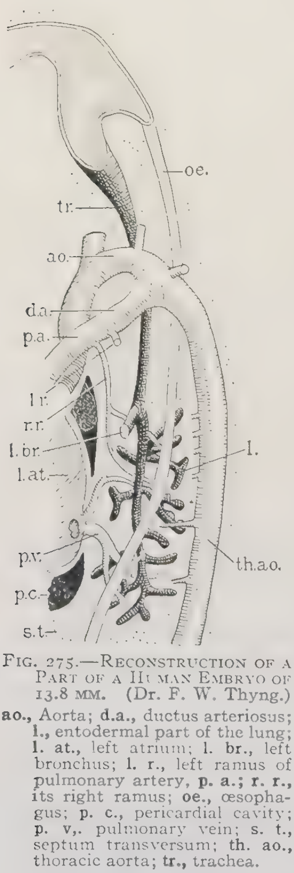


Fig. 275.—Reconstruction of a Part of a Human Embryo of 13.8 mm. (Dr. F. W. Thyng.) **ao.**, Aorta; **d.a.**, ductus arteriosus; **l.**, entodermal part of the lung; **l. at.**, left atrium; **l. br.**, left bronchus; **l. r.**, left ramus of pulmonary artery, **p. a.**; **r. r.**, its right ramus; **oe.**, œsophagus; **p. c.**, pericardial cavity; **p. v,.** pulmonary vein; **s. t.**, septum transversum; **th. ao.**, thoracic aorta; **tr.**, trachea.

The *pulmonary veins* are at first represented by a capillary plexus around the lung-bud, which receives its blood in part from the pulmonary arteries already described, and in part from branches of the dorsal aorta, some of which persist as the bronchial arteries. The capillary plexus is drained partly by branches of the posterior cardinal or azygos veins, representing the future bronchial veins, and partly by a minute vein which has grown out from the left atrium and is destined to become the great pulmonary veins. At a certain stage these veins, two from each lung, have a common orifice in the left atrium; but in later stages, as the heart enlarges, their short common stem is taken up into the wall of the atrium, so that the four pulmonary veins acquire separate openings. The early stages in the development of the pulmonary veins in the cat have been studied by Brown (Anat. Rec., 1913, vol. 7, pp. 299–330).

The small *bronchial arteries*, one or two on each side, are branches of the upper part of the thoracic aorta (Fig. 275); sometimes one of them proceeds from an intercostal artery. The bronchial arteries enter the hilus of the lung and pass into the fibrous tissue in the walls of the bronchi. The main stems branch with the bronchi. They produce capillary networks in the bronchial mucous membrane, and send branches to the peribronchial connective tissue, supplying it with capillaries and becoming the vasa vasorum of the main branches of the pulmonary artery (Miller, Anat. Anz., 1906, vol. 28, pp. 432–436). In some animals Miller finds that the bronchial arteries pass on into the pleura, as in the horse; in others, like the dog, terminal branches of the pulmonary arteries supply the pleura; and in the human lung the pleura receives both pulmonary and bronchial vessels (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1907, vol. 7, pp. 389–407).

The *bronchial veins* are small branches of the azygos vein. They do not receive all the blood from the bronchial arteries, since some capillaries from the latter are drained by the pulmonary veins.

LARYNX

The mucous membrane of the larynx is a continuation of that of the pharynx, and accordingly consists of epithelium and tunica propria. A submucosa connects it with the underlying parts. In most places the epithelium appears to be stratified and columnar, but it is said to be pseudo-stratified, with nuclei at several levels. It is difficult to determine whether or not all the cells are in contact with the basement membrane. This type of epithelium, which occurs also in the trachea, is ciliated. The stroke of the cilia is toward the pharynx. A stratified epithelium with squamous non-ciliated outer cells is found on the vocal folds (true vocal cords), on the anterior surface of the arytænoid cartilages and on the laryngeal surface of the epiglottis. The distribution of the two sorts of epithelium above the vocal folds is subject to individual variation. The squamous epithelium often occurs in islands, and is said to replace the ciliated after local infectious desquamation. The tunica propria is composed of fibrous connective tissue with many elastic fibers, and beneath the epithelium it forms a basement membrane (*membrana propria*). It includes reticular tissue containing a variable number of lymphocytes, which are gathered in solitary nodules in the wall of the laryngeal ventricle (sinus of Morgagni). Connective tissue papillæ are found chiefly beneath the squamous epithelium. At the free border of the vocal folds and on their under surface, the papillæ unite to form longitudinal ridges. On the laryngeal surface of the epiglottis there are only isolated papillæ, against which rest the short taste buds.

The submucosa contains mixed, branched, tubulo-alveolar glands, measuring from 0.2 to 1.0 mm.; they are abundant in the ventricular folds but are absent from the middle part of the vocal folds. The ventricular folds (false vocal cords) consist of a loose vascular fatty tissue, often containing small bits of elastic cartilage about 1 mm. long, and similar cartilages measuring 2–3.5 mm. are sometimes found in the anterior ends of the vocal folds.

The cartilages of the larynx are mostly of the hyaline variety, resembling those of the ribs. To this class belong the thyroid, cricoid, the greater part of the arytænoid, and often the small triticeous cartilages. Elastic cartilage is found in the epiglottis, the cuneiform and corniculate cartilages, the apex and vocal process of the arytænoids, and generally the median part of the thyroid. In women this portion is not involved in the ossification (chiefly endochondral) which begins in the thyroid and cricoid cartilages between the twentieth and thirtieth years. The triticeous cartilages (nodules in the lateral hyothyroid ligaments, named from their resemblance to grains of wheat) are sometimes composed of fibro-cartilage.

The blood vessels form two or three networks parallel with the surface, followed by a capillary plexus just beneath the epithelium. The lymphatic vessels similarly form two communicating networks, of which the more superficial consists of smaller vessels and is situated beneath the capillary plexus. The nerves form a deep and a superficial plexus which are associated with microscopic ganglia. Non-medullated fibers end either beneath the epithelium in bulbs and free endings with terminal knobs, or within the epithelium in free ramifications and in taste buds. Below the vocal folds, subepithelial nerve endings and buds are absent, but many intraepithelial fibers occur, which surround individual taste cells. The nerves and vessels of the larynx are numerous, except in the dense elastic tissue of the vocal folds.

Trachea and Bronchi

The trachea consists of a mucosa, submucosa, and a fibrous outer layer containing the tracheal cartilages. The general arrangement of the layers is the same as that found in the large bronchi (Fig. 276).

The *mucosa* consists of pseudo-stratified columnar epithelium with cilia proceeding from distinct basal bodies (Fig. 41, p. 58) and frequent mucous cells. The mucus tends to catch the dust particles in the inspired air, the cilia sweep the mass toward the pharynx. Paralysis of the cilia by anæsthetics may be a contributing factor in "ether pneumonia." Exceptionally, the lining of the trachea, toward the œsophagus, has been found to consist of stratified squamous epithelium resting on connective tissue papillæ. Beneath the epithelium there is a broad basement membrane, followed by a layer of reticular tissue containing many lymphocytes, forming a tunica propria. Beneath the reticular tissue there is a layer of coarse longitudinal elastic fibers, which may readily be seen in hæmatoxylin and eosin preparations. This layer may be compared with the muscularis mucosæ of the intestine.

The *submucosa* is a layer of loose fatty connective tissue extending to the perichondrium of the tracheal cartilages. It contains the bodies of the tracheal glands, which include both serous and mucous cells, and are beautiful objects for the study of serous crescents.

The outer layer of the trachea is continuous with the tissue of the mediastinum. It contains abundant blood and lymphatic vessels, and nerves, both medullated and non-medullated. Internally it forms the perichondrium around the succession of C-shaped hyaline cartilages, the free ends of which are toward the œsophagus. In the intervals between these ends there is a layer of transverse smooth muscle fibers, usually accompanied by outer longitudinal fibers. As in the intestine, elastic fibers are abundant among the muscle cells. In old age, the hyaline cartilages show fibrous degenerative changes, and may become partly calcified.

The primary bronchi have the same structure as the trachea, but in their subdivisions changes occur. The epithelium is gradually reduced to a single layer of cells, with fewer goblet cells. The C-shaped rings of cartilage are replaced by irregular plates found on all sides of the tube (Fig. 276). These diminish in size as the bronchi become smaller, and disappear in those about 1 mm. in diameter. Usually the cartilages are hyaline, but elastic cartilage is said to occur in places. The circular muscle fibers form a layer completely surrounding the tube internal to the cartilages. Branched tubulo-alveolar *bronchial glands* extend further down the tubes than the cartilages. In the larger bronchi they are present in great numbers, and their bodies lie outside of the muscular layer and project into the spaces between the cartilages. The mucosa is thrown into longitudinal folds; it is covered with ciliated epithelium containing goblet cells and resembling that of the trachea. Lymphocytes are numerous in the tunica propria, sometimes collecting in solitary nodules and wandering into the epithelium.

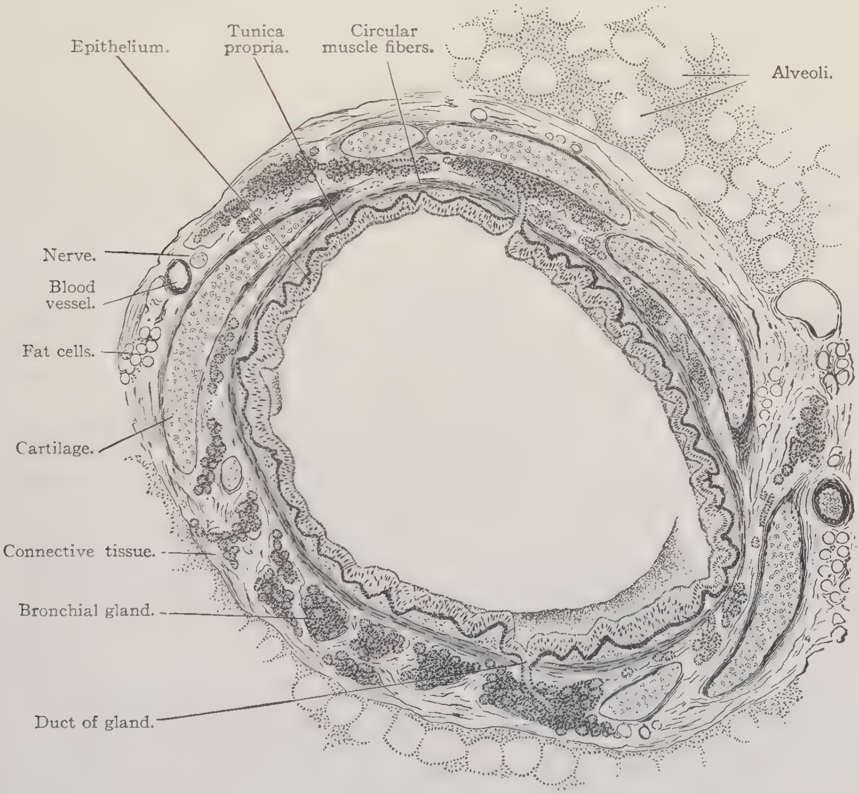


Fig. 276.—Cross Section of a Bronchus 2 mm. in Diameter, from a Child.

The small bronchi, 0.5-1.0 mm. in diameter, are known as *bronchioles*. They are lined with ciliated or non-ciliated cuboidal epithelium, without glands, and are free from cartilage.

The absence of cartilaginous plates allows the smaller bronchioles to be almost completely constricted by the action of their circular muscles, thus practically preventing the passage of air to the end-pieces of the lung where oxygenation of the blood can take place. The spasmodic contraction of these muscles which is present in one form of asthma is automatically relieved when the blood returning by way of the bronchial arteries reflects the lack of oxygen in the lungs by an insufficient supply to the muscles, causing them to relax. There seems, however, to be certain differences in the muscular arrangement in rodents.

LUNGS

The arrangement of the ultimate branches of a bronchiole is shown in the diagram, Fig. 277. The *respiratory bronchioles*, 0.5 mm. or less in diameter, at their beginning contain a simple columnar ciliated epithelium. Further in their course the goblet cells disappear, cilia are lost, the cells become cuboidal, and among them are found thin, non-nucleated plates of different sizes. These plates constitute the *respiratory epithelium*. The transition from the cuboidal to the respiratory epithelium occurs irregu-

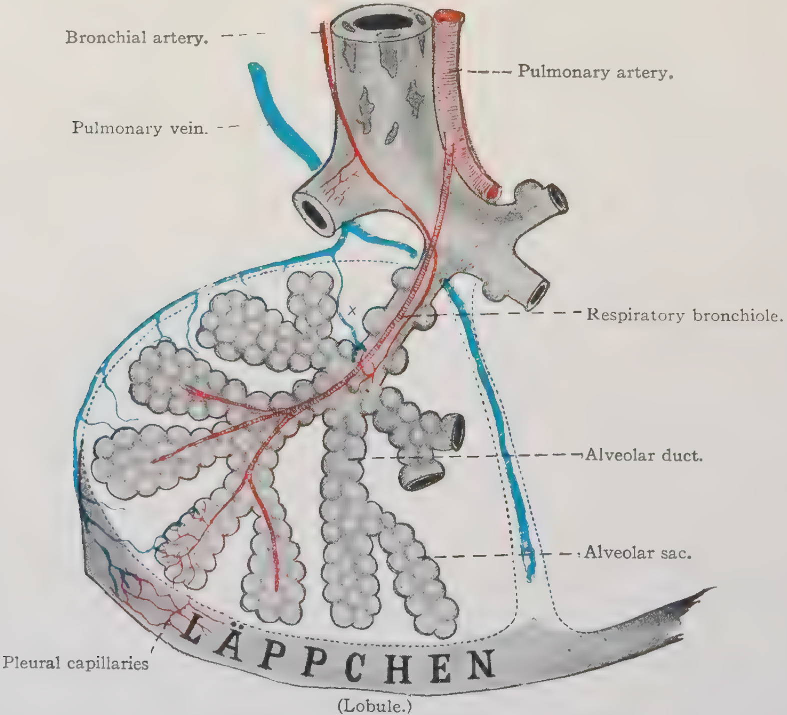


FIG. 277.—DIAGRAM OF A LOBULE OF THE LUNG, SHOWING THE BLOOD VESSELS AND THE TERMINAL BRANCHES OF A BRONCHIOLE.

larly, so that a bronchiole may have cuboidal epithelium on one side and respiratory epithelium on the other; or one sort of epithelium may form an island in the midst of the other. Hence the respiratory bronchioles contain a mixed epithelium (Fig. 278, A). The respiratory epithelium steadily gains in extent until the cuboidal epithelium has disappeared.

At irregular intervals along the bronchioles the respiratory epithelium forms hemispherical outpocketings or *alveoli*. The *alveolar ducts*, from 1 to 2 mm. long, differ from the respiratory bronchioles in that they contain only the respiratory epithelium and are thickly beset with alveoli. The layer of smooth muscle fibers may be traced to the end of the alveolar ducts, where it terminates. Since the muscles do not extend over the alveoli, but merely surround the main shaft of the duct, the layer is greatly interrupted, and some consider that it ends in the course of the duct. The respiratory bronchiole may be continued as a single alveolar duct or may divide into two or more. The alveolar ducts branch to produce *alveolar sacs* (infundibula) which are cavities in the center of clusters of alveoli. The sacs resemble the ducts as shown in Fig. 277.

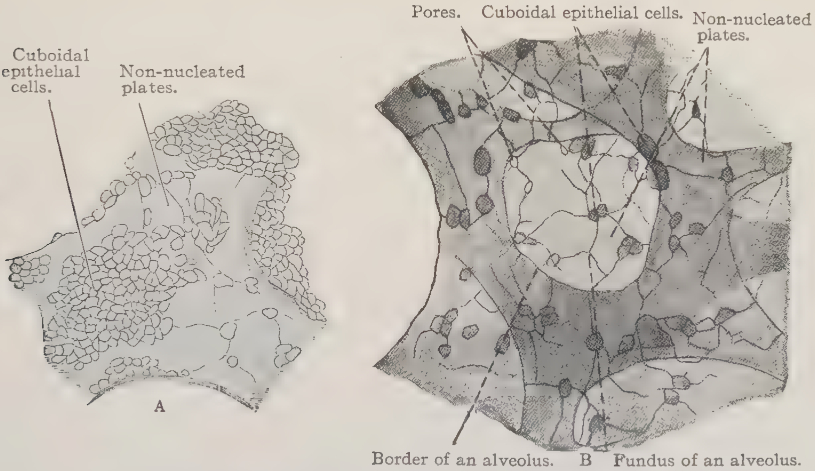


Fig. 278.—From Sections of the Human Lung. × 240.

A, Mixed epithelium of a respiratory bronchiole; **B,** an alveolus sketched with change of focus; the border of the alveolus is shaded; it is covered by the same epithelium as that of the (clear) fundus of the alveolus; the nuclei of the cells are invisible. (Silver nitrate preparation.)

According to Miller (Arch. f. Anat. u. Entw., 1900, pp. 197–228) who has made careful reconstructions of the terminal branches in the human lung, an *atrium*, or round cavity, should be recognized between the alveolar duct and the alveolar sac. The alveolar duct is said to terminate by opening into 3 to 6 atria, the entrances to which are surrounded by smooth muscle fibers forming "a sort of sphincter;" the atria possess no muscle fibers. Each atrium is connected with two or more alveolar sacs, and is moreover beset with alveoli (Fig. 279).

Stöhr states that the recognition of an atrium between the alveolar duct and alveolar sac seems to him superfluous; "in good casts of the human lung it is not to be distinguished, and in other animals it is inconstant."

In sections, without resort to reconstructions, very little can be found out concerning the relations of the alveoli to the bronchial ramifications. The following structures are all which can easily be identified: (1) alveoli; (2) spaces bounded by alveoli (alveolar sacs, atria and alveolar ducts, the ducts having muscle fibers in their walls); (3) small bronchioles having scattered alveoli along their walls, and therefore presenting a mixed epithelium (respiratory bronchioles); and (4) bronchioles with no respiratory epithelium.

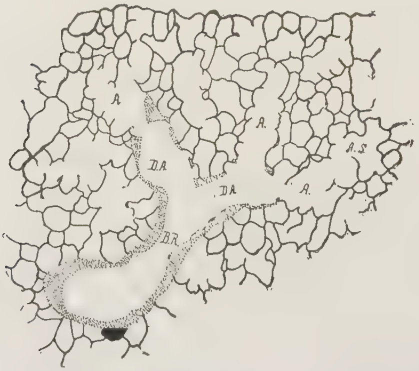


Fig. 279.—Camera Lucida Drawing from a Section of a Calf's Lung. (Miller.)
The stippling indicates smooth muscle and cuboidal epithelium; the lines, respiratory epithelium. **B. R.,** Respiratory bronchiole; **D. A.,** alveolar duct; **A.,** atrium; **A. S.,** alveolar sac.

The study of sections of the adult lung is facilitated by comparison with those from an embryonic lung. Comparable sections, including the pleura, and drawn at the same scale of magnification, are shown in Figs. 280 and 281. In the lung of the embryo of four months, the terminal branches of the bronchioles are found in the centers of lobules, one of which is shown in Fig. 280 (bounded by *b. v.* and *lym.*). The axial bronchioles break up into ramifying tubules lined with cuboidal cells, and at birth the alveoli which are found at the end of these structures are also lined with cuboidal epithelium. The main arteries run with the axial bronchioles in the centers of lobules; and the large veins and lymphatic vessels are at their periphery. This arrangement is retained in the adult (Fig. 277). Deep in the lung, the small bronchi are surrounded by considerable connective tissue, containing arteries, veins and large lymphatic vessels.

The last branching of the fetal lung produces a cluster of three or more end pieces for each terminal bronchiole. The earlier divisions of the bronchial tree have been dichotomous (two branched). During late fetal life the cuboidal epithelium lining the end pieces undergoes a fatty degeneration, the cytoplasm becoming hyaline and losing its mitochondrial content (Stewart, Anat. Rec., 1923, vol. 25, pp. 181–199). The connective tissue, also through fatty degeneration, partly disappears, making space for the expansion of the alveoli. The softened epithelial cell is flattened by pressure brought about either by gasping movements in utero, or with the first respirations. The epithelial cells overlying the capillaries thus become squamous, or more usually produce a flange-like process covering the vessel, the part of the cell between the vessels remaining cuboidal in shape and containing the spherical nucleus. The thicker nucleated portions of several cells are thus grouped together in the meshes of the capillary network, their flanges radiating over the surrounding vessels. After

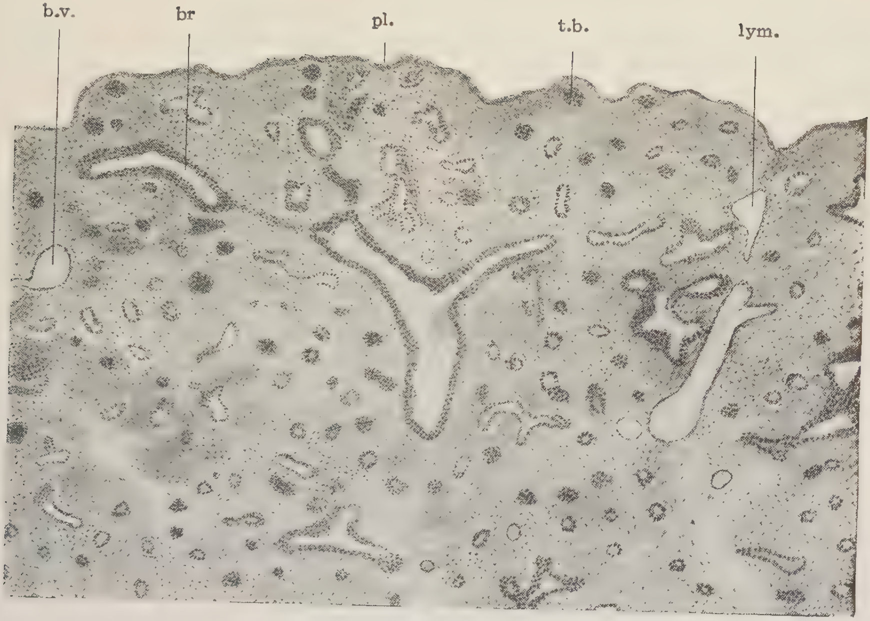


FIG. 280.

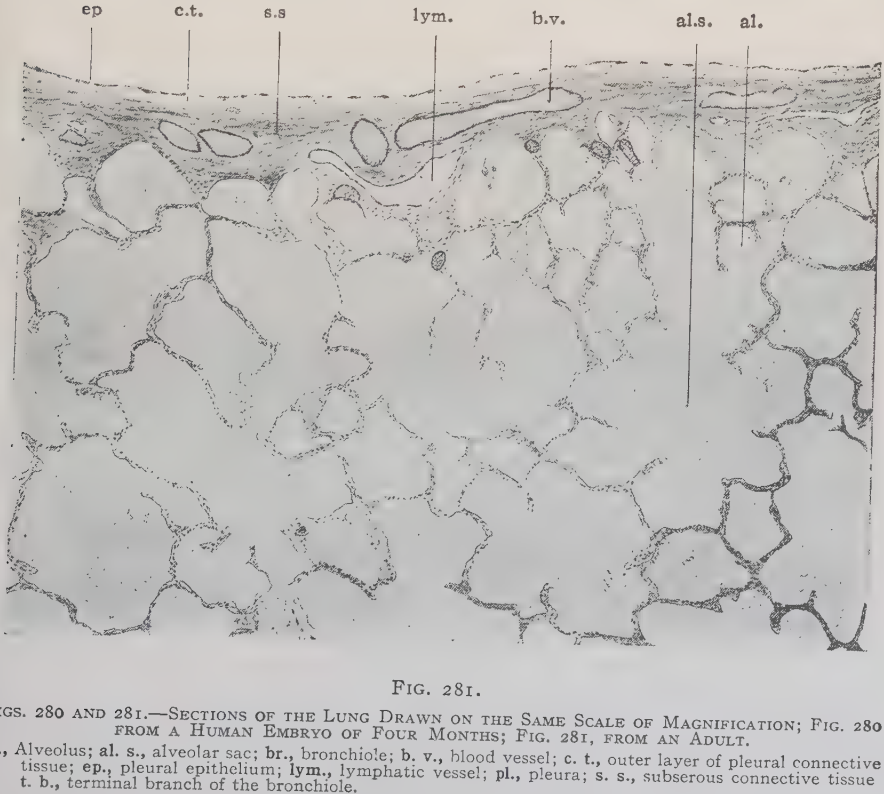


FIG. 281.

FIGS. 280 AND 281.—SECTIONS OF THE LUNG DRAWN ON THE SAME SCALE OF MAGNIFICATION; FIG. 280 FROM A HUMAN EMBRYO OF FOUR MONTHS; FIG. 281, FROM AN ADULT.

al., Alveolus; **al. s.**, alveolar sac; **br.**, bronchiole; **b. v.**, blood vessel; **c. t.**, outer layer of pleural connective tissue; **ep.**, pleural epithelium; **lym.**, lymphatic vessel; **pl.**, pleura; **s. s.**, subserous connective tissue **t. b.**, terminal branch of the bronchiole.

respiration has been established, the alveoli become greatly distended. The flanges become extremely thin, and are applied closely to the endothelium; the two together form a physiologically inert membrane for the exchange of gasses. Stewart describes a segmentation of the plates, so that some of them are non-nucleated; also an occasional overlapping to allow for expansion. The elasticity of the tissues, however, is presumably sufficient to accommodate the change, which may be very great. An alveolus measuring 0.1 mm. when nearly empty of air may expand to 0.3 mm. during inspiration. Pores have been described leading from one alveolus to another.

The human fetus is not viable if born before the clusters of end pieces capable of forming respiratory epithelium are produced. In the opossum, however, which is normally born at from 10–12 mm. in length, the flange-like plates in relation to capillary blood vessels are formed in the epithelium of the future bronchi and bronchioles, which are expanded for air sacs, and resemble reptilian lungs. In the bird, according to Ogawa (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1920, vol. 27, pp. 333–393), the endothelium comes directly in contact with the air in the alveoli, the epithelial lining being interrupted. The extreme thinness of the plates and their apparent fusion with the endothelium make this a difficult point to determine.

With the expansion of the alveoli the connective tissue containing the capillary vessels is flattened out in very thin layers. These layers are bounded on either side by the respiratory epithelium of adjacent alveoli. The resulting adjustment of the cells and plates is shown in the diagram. The thicker portions of the cells of one alveolus meet the plates of the neighboring wall and form the props for a network of flattened spaces in which run the capillaries. The exchange of gasses can take place on both sides of the capillaries; the endothelial nuclei are usually found near the epithelial cells. This economically excellent arrangement is not, however, always attained, as shown in Fig. 282. Besides the epithelium and endothelium the alveolar walls contain connective tissue cells, wandering cells, many elastic fibers, and the contents of the blood stream. The richness of the capillary network in the alveolar wall is seen in injected specimens (Fig. 283), and may be compared with similar injections of the intestinal villus (Fig. 240). Respiration takes place by the transfer of gases between the blood in these vessels and the air in the alveoli, therefore through the endothelial cells and alveolar plates, together with the trivial amount of connective tissue which may intervene.

The pulmonary and bronchial blood vessels have already been described, and their relations to the lobule of the lung are shown in Fig. 277. The pulmonary arteries are axial vessels within the lobules, breaking up into terminal branches at the atria, and these branches become axial along the alveolar sacs. Each terminal branch has been described as the center of an ultimate lobule or structural unit. The veins are peripheral

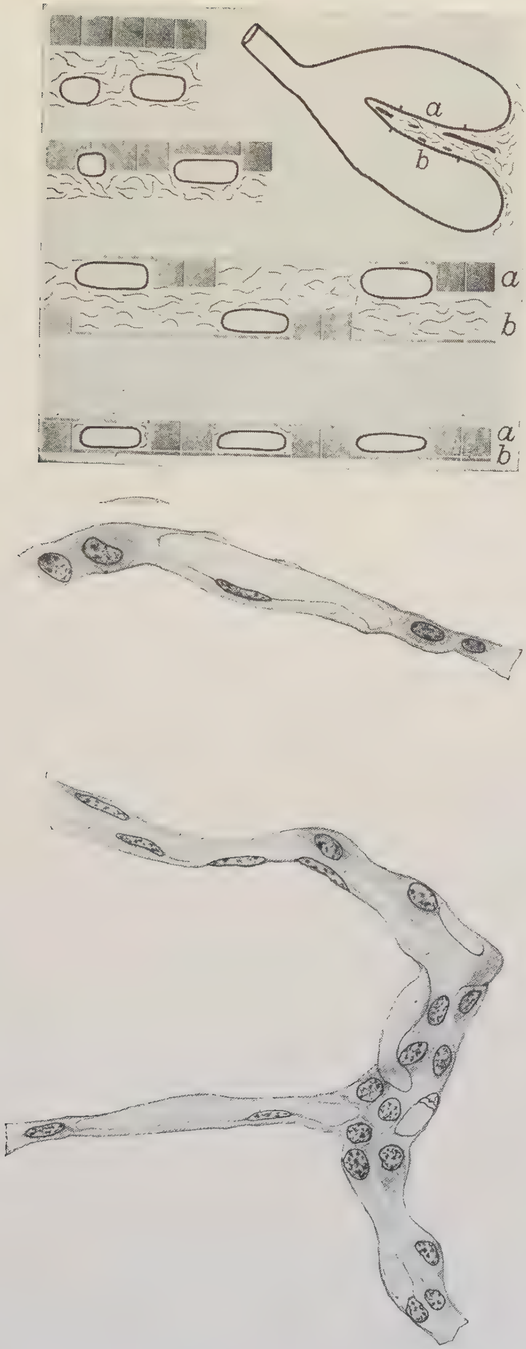


FIG. 282.—ABOVE, DIAGRAM TO SHOW THE DISPOSITION OF RESPIRATORY EPITHELIUM ON TWO ADJACENT ALVEOLAR WALLS, **a** AND **b**.

The vessels sink into the epithelium, which provides epithelial plates to cover them, and as the walls approach, the vessels are functional on both sides. Below, human lung: parts of the walls between alveoli in section. The upper fragment shows cuboidal cells and epithelial plates in relation to the endothelium of the capillary, almost diagrammatically. In the lower drawing many of the epithelial cells are merely flattened, and often the capillaries can function from only one side.

both in the units and larger lobules; between the latter they run through connective tissue septa.

The abundant lymphatic vessels are arranged in a superficial set draining into the pleura by way of the interlobular septa; and a deep set draining toward the hilus along the bronchi, accompanying the large vessels. Lymphatics of the deep set do not extend into the lobules; they terminate along the alveolar ducts. Around the larger bronchi and at the root of the lung, lymph glands are numerous. A conspicuous feature of the sections of the lung is the presence of black soot in the tissue around the lymphatic vessels. It penetrates the pulmonary epithelium in the smallest bronchioles, apparently passing between the epithelial cells. Some of it is taken up by phagocytes. Having entered the lymphatic vessels it is distributed along their courses. On the surface of the lung it is seen in the interlobular septa, marking out the boundaries of the lobules. Because of the steady increase in this deposit, the color of the lungs changes from birth until old age.

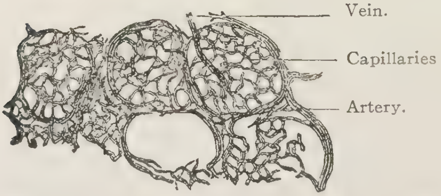


Fig. 283.—From a Section of the Lung of a Child, Injected Through the Pulmonary Artery. × 80.
Of the five alveoli drawn, the three upper ones are fully injected.

The nerves of the lung include the pulmonary plexus derived from the sympathetic system. Its fibers enter at the root of the lung and spread around the bronchi and vessels, to which they are chiefly distributed. Small ganglia are found within these plexuses. The vagus also sends branches to the lungs, including medullated and non-medullated fibers, which join the sympathetic plexuses.

Pleura

The visceral pleura is a thinner layer than the parietal pleura, and is closely attached to the lung. It is covered with a single layer of flat mesothelial cells, which in the collapsed lung become thicker and shorter. In specimens which have been handled, this layer is often lacking. It rests upon a thin layer of fine-meshed fibrous tissue, beneath which is the coarse subserous layer continuous with the interlobular septa of the lung (Fig. 281). This tissue is highly elastic. In the subserous layer, blood vessels, derived from both pulmonary and bronchial arteries, form an abundant capillary plexus. The superficial lymphatic vessels are very evident, and in relation with them lymphoid tissue is found, and occasionally lymph nodules. Stomata, which have been described, are presumably artificial apertures in the epithelium and are not connected with the lymphatic vessels.

The parietal pleura is a thicker and less elastic layer. Ventrally and below, toward the pleuro-pericardial membrane, it exhibits folds containing fat (*plicæ adiposæ);* and sometimes it forms vascular elevations resembling synovial villi—the *pleural villi.* Fat may be found in the pleura elsewhere.

The nerves of the pleura are derived from the phrenic, sympathetic and vagus nerves. In the parietal pleura typical lamellar corpuscles may be found, together with the smaller variety, known as the Golgi-Mazzoni corpuscles.

URINARY ORGANS

Wolffian Bodies and Wolffian Ducts

On the twenty-eighth of November, 1759, Caspar Friedrich Wolff, then in his twenty-sixth year, defended a thesis entitled "*Theoria generationis,*" and obtained the degree of doctor of medicine at Halle. In addition to the fundamental principles which this renowned thesis set forth, it included an account of the development of the kidneys in chick embryos. From the diffuse *substantia cellulosa* along the ventral side of the spinal column, beginning on the third day of incubation, Wolff saw two elongated bodies gradually take form, and become the *kidneys,* each being connected with the cloaca by a *ureter.* These structures, however, are not the kidneys of the adult, and they are generally known as *Wolffian bodies;* their ureters are the *Wolffian ducts.* They are large and important organs in human embryos, as shown in Fig. 284. The true or permanent kidneys of mammals arise later, and the Wolffian bodies degenerate, becoming vestigial in the female; in the male, however, they acquire new functions, and are retained as a portion of the genital ducts (namely the ducts of the epididymis). In the embryo they are renal organs built upon the same plan as the permanent kidneys, and moreover in the fishes and amphibia they are the kidneys of the adult.

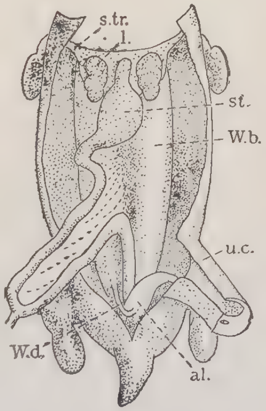


Fig. 284.—Dissection of a Human Embryo of Thirty-five Days. (After Coste.)
al., Bladder; **l.**, lung; **st.**, stomach; **s. tr.**, septum transversum; **u. c.**, umbilical cord; **W. b.**, Wolffian body; **W. d.**, Wolffian duct.

Still another renal organ develops in embryos, anterior to the Wolffian body, and it has been found that the Wolffian duct is primarily the duct of this anterior kidney or *pronephros;* consequently the Wolffian duct is sometimes called the pronephric duct. The pronephros is the functional kidney in only the lowest of vertebrates (myxinoids). Singularly it has been found that "the human pronephros is by far the best developed within the groups of mammals" (Felix, in Keibel and Mall's Human

Embryology, Vol. 2). Except for its duct, it entirely disappears in very young embryos (5 mm.). All the renal organs—pronephros, Wolffian body (or mesonephros), and kidney (or metanephros)—are developed from the nephrotomes. They are all composed of mesodermal tubules, each of which is in close relation with a knot of capillary blood vessels derived from branches of the aorta. Such a knot of vessels is a *glomerulus*, and certain products are eliminated from the glomerulus into the tubules to form the urine.

Excretion in some of the worms is accomplished by means of tubes leading from the cœlom almost directly to the surface of the body in each segment. The inner opening is funnel-shaped and guarded by cilia. Near this opening a glomerulus develops. In the pronephros of vertebrates segmental tubes still drain from the cœlom by a funnel-shaped opening, called the nephrostome, with a glomerulus in relation with each, but they open into two longitudinal ducts, running on each side of the body to the allantois. In the mesonephros, the nephrotome or neck of the somite, becomes cut off from the rest of the cœlom; its cavity (often only a slit) represents, however, a specialized portion of the cœlom, and is in definite relation with a glomerulus. One or more tubules develop from each nephrotome and join the pronephric duct. In the metanephros, the cells which form the tubules are thought to have migrated from the posterior nephrotomes. The cavities which develop in them may thus be thought of as isolated portions of the cœlom. Each such cavity comes in relation with a glomerulus, and the tubule which develops opens into a branch of the pronephric duct.

Development of the Wolffian Body and Wolffian Duct. The general relations of the nephrotome to the mesodermic somites and to the cœlomic epithelium have already been briefly discussed (p. 44). A nephrotome from a young rabbit embryo is seen in section in Fig. 285, A, together with its elevation which contributes to the formation of the Wolffian duct. The nephrotome here shown is from one of the anterior segments and belongs with the pronephros.

In human embryos, according to Felix, pronephric tubules are formed from the seventh to the fourteenth segments, and perhaps from those further forward. The elevations to which these nephrotomes give rise turn posteriorly and unite with one another to form the Wolffian duct. This is at first a solid cord of cells which grows posteriorly in the trough between the somites and somatic mesoderm. It lies near the ectoderm, but it is now generally agreed that the ectoderm takes no part in its formation. Finally its growing extremity reaches the ventral portion of the cloaca and fuses with it. Later this ventral part of the cloaca becomes cut off to form the bladder, and the Wolffian ducts then empty into the neck of the bladder. The pronephric tubules meanwhile become detached from the cœlomic epithelium, but they remain rudimentary and degenerate without having any glomeruli formed in connection with them.

The mesonephric tubules develop from the more posterior nephrotomes, after the Wolffian duct has formed. They acquire openings into the

Wolffian duct, but do not contribute to its development. In producing mesonephric tubules, the nephrotomic tissue becomes detached and separates into masses which form vesicles (Fig. 285, B). Each vesicle elongates and becomes an S-shaped tubule, one end of which fuses with the Wolffian duct and opens into it; the other end remains blind. A knot of capillaries, derived from a branch of the aorta, develops in the distal concavity of the S and becomes a glomerulus; a glomerulus is formed in connection with every Wolffian tubule. The tubules then elongate and become coiled, and together they produce the rounded swellings on either side of the root of the mesentery, which are the Wolffian bodies (Fig. 285, C). The genital glands arise as mesodermal thickenings on the ventro-medial surface of these bodies.

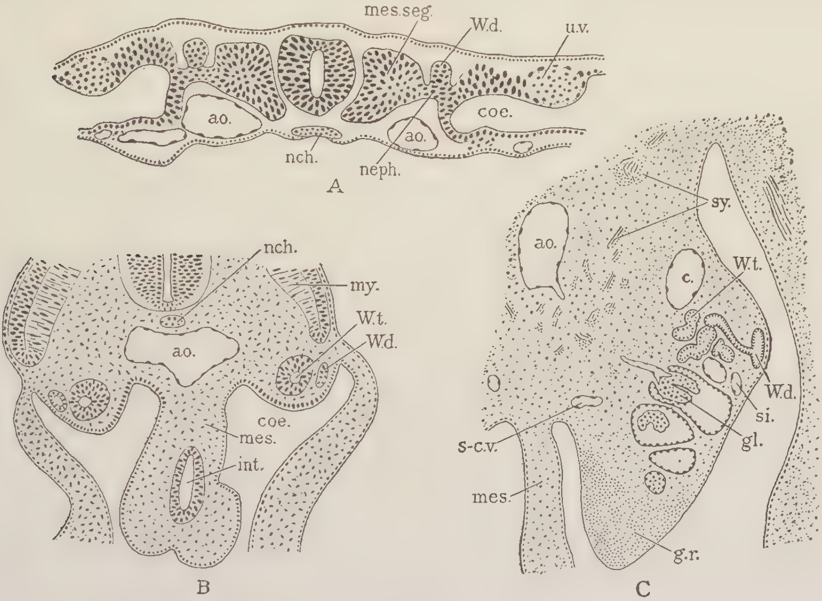


Fig. 285.—**A,** Transverse Section of a Rabbit Embryo of Nine Days; **B,** Human Embryo, 4 mm.; **C,** Human Embryo, 10 mm.

ao., Aorta; **c.,** posterior cardinal vein; **coe.,** cœlom; **gl.,** glomerulus; **g. r.,** genital ridge; **int.,** intestine; **mes.** mesentery; **mes. seg.,** mesodermic somite; **my.,** myotome; **nch.,** notochord; **neph.,** nephrotome; **s-c. v.** subcardinal vein; **si.,** sinusoid; **sy.,** sympathetic nerves; **u. v.,** umbilical vein; **W. d.,** Wolffian duct **W. t.,** Wolffian tubule.

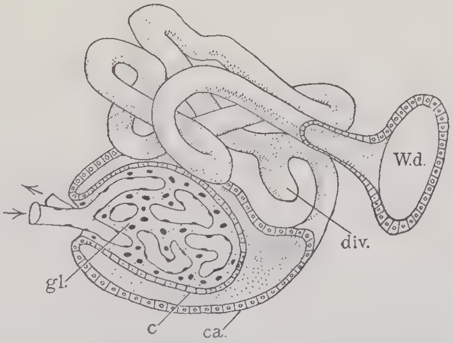


Fig. 286.—Reconstruction of a Wolffian Tubule from a Human Embryo of 10.2 mm. (Except the glomerulus, after Kollman.)

c., Inner layer, and **c. a.,** outer layer of the capsule of the glomerulus; **div.,** diverticulum; **gl.,** glomerulus; **W. d.,** Wolffian duct.

A single Wolffian tubule is shown in Fig. 286 and the way in which its distal end envelops the glomerulus is clearly indicated. It is said to form the *capsule* of the glomerulus. By passing through the inner layer of this capsule, fluid from the blood vessels enters the tubule and is conveyed through the Wolffian duct to the bladder. The tubules are generally unbranched, and are lined with simple epithelium. The shape of their coils has been studied by Lewis, 1920, Am. J. Anat., vol. 26, pp. 423–435. The epithelium is in part glandular, and contributes to the formation of the urine. Finally it may be noted that a nephrotome may divide into several vesicles (sometimes perhaps as many as four), and therefore the number of Wolffian tubules is greater than the number of corresponding segments. In man the maximum number is 83 (Felix). The mesonephric tubules also extend forward, so that some segments contain both mesonephric and pronephric tubules.

It is generally believed that the Wolffian bodies of mammalian embryos are active renal organs, producing a form of urine which collects in the allantoic sac. In pig embryos this sac and the Wolffian bodies are both unusually large. In the human embryo, however, the allantois is very small and the Wolffian bodies degenerate early, before the kidney becomes functional. Therefore Felix (Keibel and Mall) maintained that the Wolffian body "does not function as an excretory organ." It has recently been shown that in those animals in which the allantois and Wolffian bodies degenerate (or never fully develop, as in the mouse) there are indications that fetal excretion takes place through the placenta (Bremer, Amer. Journ. Anat., 1916, vol. 19, pp. 179–209).

Veins of the Wolffian Body. In determining the arrangement of the large veins of the abdomen, the Wolffian bodies are of fundamental importance. They are supplied by the *posterior cardinal veins* which pass from the tail of the embryo, on either side of the aorta, to the heart. Before entering the right atrium of the heart, they are joined by the *anterior cardinal veins* from the head, thus forming the right and left *common cardinal veins*, or "ducts of Cuvier." As each posterior cardinal vein extends along the dorsal side of the Wolffian body, it sends branches in among the tubules, and these unite ventrally on either side in the *subcardinal vein* (Fig. 287, A). Thus each Wolffian body is lodged in a venous loop formed by the posterior cardinal and subcardinal veins, and such a loop is found in all classes of vertebrates. Venous blood entering the Wolffian body posteriorly flows out from it anteriorly, and circulates among the tubules in lacunar vessels, closely resembling the hepatic sinusoids. This is the "renal portal system." It should be noted, however, that the renal sinusoidal vessels are poorly developed in mammalian embryos.

In sections these veins are readily recognized. The mesonephric arteries pass from the aorta to the glomeruli of the Wolffian body, between the subcardinal vein in front and posterior cardinal vein behind (Fig. 285, C). In places, the subcardinal veins form large anastomoses across the mid-ventral line; the posterior cardinal veins are further apart, and receive intersegmental branches from the dorsal musculature.

As the kidneys grow upward behind the Wolffian bodies, their ureters become encircled by a branch from the posterior cardinal vein (Fig. 287, A). The venous loop around the ureter was described by Hochstetter (Morph. Jahrb., 1893, vol. 20. pp. 543–648), and its dorsal limb, together with secondary anastomoses, has been named the *supracardinal vein* (Huntington and McClure, Anat. Rec., 1907, vol. 1, pp. 29–30). The transformation of these veins into the branches of the inferior vena cava is represented somewhat diagrammatically in Fig. 287, B, and may be briefly described as follows:

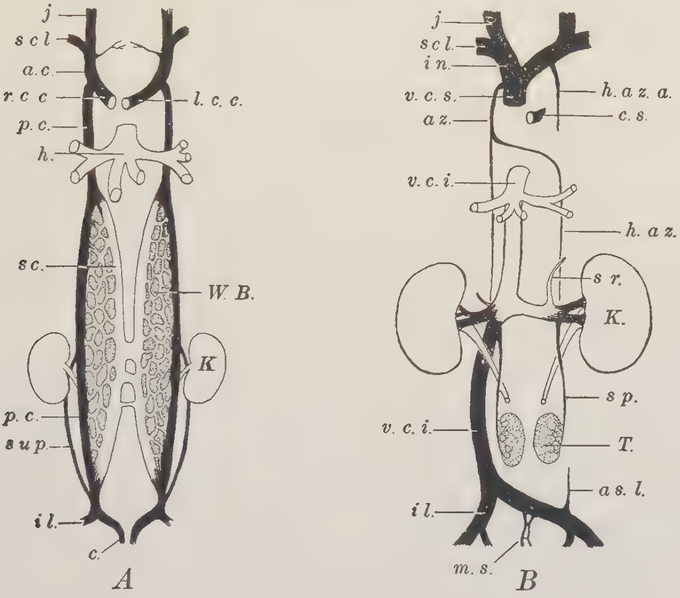


FIG. 287.—THE TRANSFORMATION OF THE POSTERIOR CARDINAL SYSTEM OF VEINS.
a. c., Anterior cardinal; **as. l.**, ascending lumbar; **az.**, azygos; **c.**, caudal; **c. s.**, coronary sinus; **h.**, hepatic; **h. az.**, hemiazygos; **h. az. a.**, accessory hemiazygos; **il.**, common iliac; **in.**, innominate; **j.**, jugular; **K.**, kidney; **l. c. c.**, left common cardinal; **m. s.**, median sacral; **p. c.**, posterior cardinal; **r. c. c.**, right common cardinal; **s. c.**, subcardinal; **scl.**, subclavian; **sp.**, spermatic; **sr.**, suprarenal; **sup.**, supracardinal; **T.**, testis; **v. c. i.**, vena cava inferior; **v. c. s.**, vena cava superior; **W. B.**, Wolffian body.

The anastomosis between the subcardinal veins becomes a part of the left renal vein. Above this anastomosis the right subcardinal vein connects with the veins of the liver and forms a portion of the vena cava inferior. The left subcardinal vein, above the renal anastomosis, becomes reduced to the left suprarenal vein (Hochstetter). The subcardinal veins below the renal anastomosis are associated with lymphatic vessels to which they apparently give rise; otherwise they disappear.

The posterior cardinal veins above the renal anastomosis, after they have been tapped by the formation of the vena cava inferior, are known as the azygos and hemiazygos veins, and the outlet of the left common cardinal becomes cut off as the coronary sinus (Fig. 287, B, which shows also the formation of the superior vena cava). Below the renal anastomosis the posterior cardinal veins give rise to the genital veins (spermatic or ovarian), and the Wolffian body becomes reduced to an appendage of the genital glands. As the genital glands descend into the pelvis, their veins become elongated; and the corresponding arteries, derived from the mesonephric arteries, are likewise elongated. The supracardinal vein on the right side becomes a part of the vena cava inferior; on the left it is probably represented by the ascending lumbar vein.

The kidneys are supplied by vessels which enter them after they have attained their permanent position. Their arteries and veins consequently pursue a straight course from the aorta and vena cava, respectively, to the hilus of the kidney.

KIDNEY

Development. The kidney develops after the Wolffian body has been formed. It arises in two parts, one of which is an outgrowth of the Wolffian duct; the other is a mass of dense mesenchyma surrounding this outgrowth, and said to be derived from the posterior nephrotomes. Both parts are mesodermal. The part derived from the Wolffian duct may be considered first.

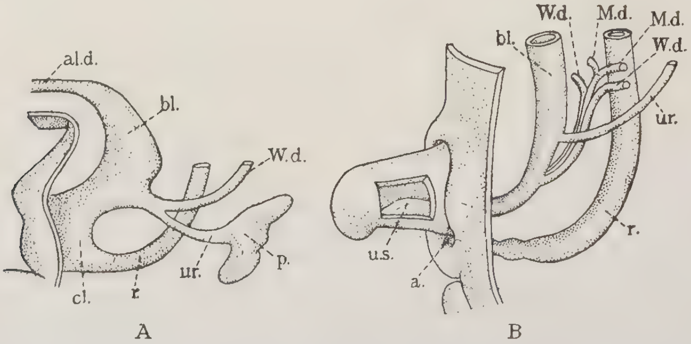


FIG. 288.—THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE RENAL PELVIS AND URETER. (Keibel.)
A, Human embryo of 11.5 mm. (4½ weeks); **B,** 25 mm. (8–9 weeks). **a.,** Anus; **al. d.,** allantoic duct; **bl.,** bladder; **cl.,** cloaca; **M. d.,** Müllerian duct; **p.,** pelvis of the kidney; **r.,** rectum; **ur.,** ureter; **u. s.,** urogenital sinus; **W. d.,** Wolffian duct.

Each Wolffian duct, near the place where it enters the cloaca, forms a knob-like outpocketing which elongates rapidly, becoming the *ureter.* The distal end of the outpocketing expands and becomes lobular, thus producing the *pelvis* of the kidney. After the ventral part of the cloaca has been split off to form the bladder, the ureter and Wolffian duct, on either side, open into it by a common outlet (Fig. 288), A. Later, the terminal portion of each Wolffian duct is taken up into the wall of the expanding bladder, so that the ureters acquire openings separate from those of the ducts. With further growth the orifices of the Wolffian ducts are carried toward the median line and downward toward the outlet of the bladder (Fig. 288, B) and this position is permanently retained.

Meanwhile the lobes of the renal pelvis have become deeper and formed pouches known as the *major* and *minor calyces.* In the adult there are usually two major calyces, one at either end of the pelvis, and from these most of the minor calyces grow out; the others spring directly from the main pelvic cavity. There are seven to twenty in all, each representing the single pelvis of a simple kidney, such as is found in the cat or rabbit; the human kidney is thus a multiple organ. From the minor calyces the *collecting tubules* grow out. Each tubule has an enlarged extremity which divides into two branches with a U-shaped crotch, like a tuning-fork. The branches subdivide repeatedly in the same manner, so as to make pyramidal masses of straight tubules radiating from the calyces. Thus the renal outgrowth from the Wolffian duct produces the epithelial lining of the ureter, pelvis, calyces and collecting tubules, including all of their branches.

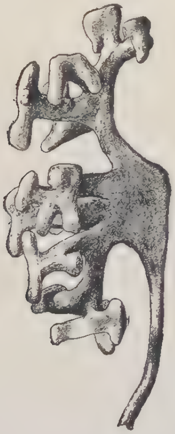


FIG. 289.—RECONSTRUCTION OF THE URETER, RENAL PELVIS, AND ITS BRANCHES IN A 20-MM. HUMAN EMBRYO. (Huber.)

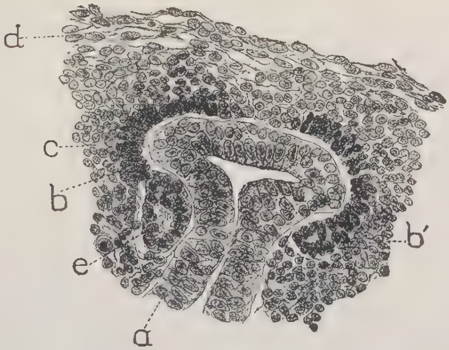


FIG. 290.—FROM A SECTION OF A KIDNEY OF AN 18-MM. HUMAN EMBRYO. × 233. (Huber).

a., Primary collecting tubule, with dilated extremity; **b. b′.**, inner layer, and **c.**, outer layer of dense mesenchyma; **d.**, loose mesenchyma; **e.**, vesicle, the beginning of a renal tubule.

The second part of the kidney, which consists of dense mesenchyma, becomes subdivided into masses enveloping the enlarged tips of the branching collecting tubules. Some of its cells become arranged so as to form vesicles (Fig. 290), one of which is shown in the reconstruction, Fig. 291, A. The vesicles are at first entirely separate from the collecting tubules. Each vesicle becomes elongated, making an S-shaped tubule (Fig. 291, B, C), and its outer or upper end unites with the collecting tubule (Fig. 291, D). A glomerulus develops in the lower curve of the S, and is gradually enveloped in the terminal part of the tubule, which thus forms its capsule. Between the capsule and the collecting tubule, the renal tubules become greatly convoluted. One of the loops in the coils thus formed elongates downward, lying close beside and parallel with the collecting tubule; this is the *loop of Henle* (Fig. 291, J).

Three tubules of the adult kidney are shown diagrammatically in Fig. 292. Each *capsule* connects with a *proximal convoluted tubule*, which, after extending outward toward the surface of the kidney, turns downward as the *descending limb* of Henle's loop. The descending limb is a straight tubule, the lower portion of which is of small diameter owing to the flatness of the cells in its walls; its lumen is not reduced. This "thin segment," as shown in the diagram, does not form the entire descending limb, but only its lower part. Frequently it passes around the bend into the ascending limb. The tubule, after turning the bend, forms the *ascend-*

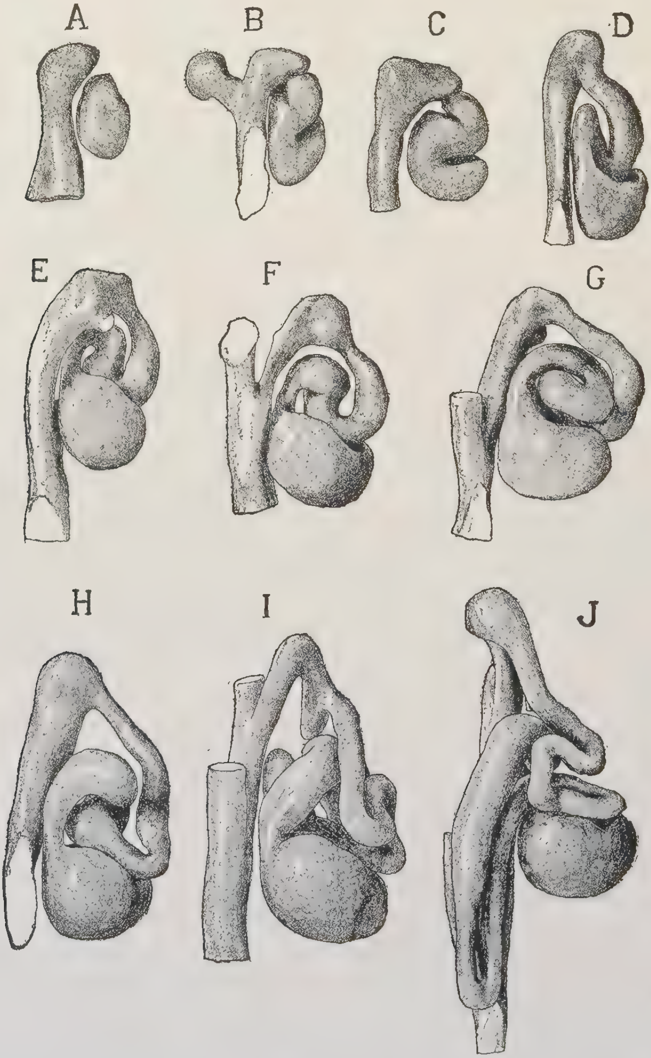


FIG. 291.—MODELS SHOWING SUCCESSIVE STAGES IN THE DEVELOPMENT OF A URINIFEROUS TUBULE INCLUDING THE ASSOCIATED PORTION OF THE COLLECTING TUBULE. (Huber.)
From a human embryo of the seventh month. × 160.

ing limb of Henle's loop. It returns to the vicinity of the capsule from which it arose, and makes a few coils, thus constituting the *distal convoluted tubule* (intercalated or intermediate tubule). By means of the *junctional tubule* it joins the arched collecting tubule and this passes into the straight descending *collecting tubule.* From the capsule to the collecting tubule no branches occur; and this extent of the tubule represents the part derived from mesenchyma. The collecting tubules receive many branches. Traced toward their outlet in the pelvis they become larger, finally forming the *papillary ducts.*

In the diagram (Fig. 292) the tubules are represented as much coarser than is actually the case. Their true proportions in the rabbit's kidney have been shown by Huber, who, with extraordinary success, has isolated individual tubules, keeping them intact from the capsule to the collecting tubule (Anat. Rec., 1911, vol. 5, pp. 187–194). They are 20–30 mm. in length and less than 0.1 mm. in diameter. Huber's account of the development of the kidney, from which Figs. 307–309 have been taken, is in the supplement to the Amer. Journ. Anat., 1905, vol. 4.

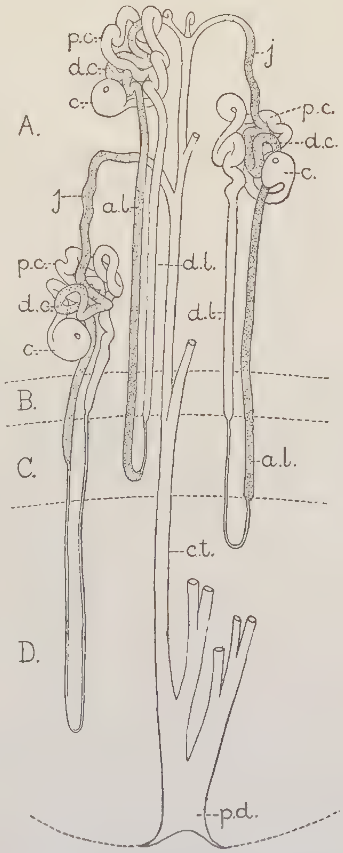


Fig. 292.—Diagram of Three Uriniferous Tubules in Relation with a Collecting Tubule. (Modified from Huber.)

a. l., Ascending limb of Henle's loop; **c.**, capsule; **c. t.**, collecting tubule; **d. c.**, distal convoluted tubule; **d. l.**, descending limb; **j.**, junctional tubule; **p. c.**, proximal convoluted tubule; **p. d.**, papillary duct.

A, cortex; **B-D**, medulla, subdivided into an inner zone (**D**) and an outer zone (**B-C**); the latter includes an inner band or stripe (**C**), and an outer band (**B**).

From the shape of the complete urinary tubules as a whole, as shown in Fig. 292, it will be seen that a group of them crowded together will be narrow at the bottom, where the narrow straight tubules are, but broad above, where the glomeruli and convoluted tubules occupy more space. In large numbers the upper mass will bulge so that the straight tubules will be almost surrounded by the combined upper convoluted portions, giving a "kidney-shaped" figure with the collecting tubules opening at the hylus. The kidney of many animals is composed of such a single group of tubules. The straight tubules, radiating from the hylus, form the medulla; the convoluted tubules and the glomeruli form the cortex. Since the glomeruli are at different levels, representing new additions at different periods of growth, the collecting tubules stretch into the cortex to reach the convoluted tubules, which they join near the glomerulus in each case. The collecting tubules run in groups, which grow smaller and smaller as more and more of the tubules end by joining convoluted tubules. These tapering groups are called rays, sometimes "medullary rays" because they are of the same substance (straight tubules) as the medulla, sometimes "cortical rays" because they are found in the cortex. They extend almost to the kidney surface. In the rays are also found the straight tubules of Henle's loop, which can develop more readily among other straight tubules than among the convoluted.

Surface Markings. The cut surface of a human kidney, whether it is divided lengthwise or across (Fig. 293) shows macroscopic markings representing the grouping of the tubules. The kidney is multiple, *i.e.*, it is composed of many single groups of tubules. Two are shown in the figure, each of which is similar to the whole kidney of a cat or a rabbit; from seven to twenty simple kidneys are fused to form the human organ. The ureter opens into the pelvis, an expanded sac, which is prolonged into the cup-like calyces, representing the pelvis of simple kidneys. Every calyx receives a nipple-like projection of the substance of the kidney, known as a *renal papilla.* Sometimes two of them project into one calyx. They are soft, dark red structures, and it does not appear on inspection that the grayish lining of the calyx is reflected over their outer surface; this is seen in sections. Toward the apex of each papilla there are from 15 to 20 foramina, which are the orifices of as many papillary ducts; through them the urine enters the calyx. The foramina are barely visible without magnification. Each papilla forms the apex of a *renal* (or Malpighian) *pyramid*, described by Malpighi (1666) in his treatise "on the structure of the viscera," which gave the first account of various almost microscopic "corpuscles" and surface markings. The base of the pyramid is toward the periphery of the kidney, and may be lobular as in the figure. From two to nine

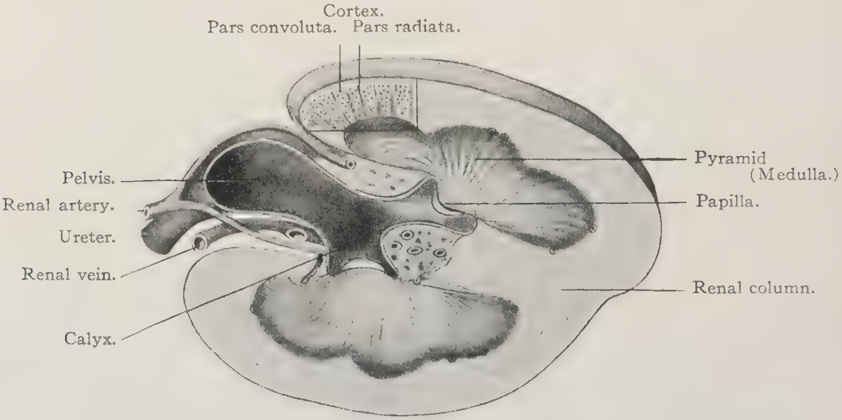


FIG. 293.—THE SURFACE MARKINGS OF THE HUMAN KIDNEY. (After Brodel.)

embryonic or primary pyramids are said to fuse to form a pyramid of the adult kidney. In favorable specimens the pyramid is seen to be divided into an inner and an outer zone, and the latter is composed of two concentric bands. The significance of these markings will be considered later. The base of each pyramid is surrounded by a lighter zone, the *cortex*, 6–8 mm. wide. Between pyramids this dips down to the renal sinus, forming the renal columns (of Bertin); one of them is shown in Fig. 293. They represent the fusion of adjacent parts of simple kidneys. The pyramids collectively constitute the *medulla* of the kidney.

The cortex shows radial striations, the tapering rays, which are called the pyramids of Ferrein, and are known collectively as the radiate part of the cortex (*pars radiata*). Between the rays is the convoluted part of the cortex (*pars convoluta*), containing the convoluted tubules and the *renal corpuscles* (Malpighian corpuscles), consisting of the glomeruli and their capsules. They are barely visible without magnification.

Over the outer surface of the kidney, there is a fibrous capsule (*tunica fibrosa*) which may be readily stripped off when normal; and outside of this there is a fatty layer (*capsula adiposa*). The fat surrounds the pelvis and extends into a hollow of the kidney known as the *renal sinus;* this is the excavation which contains the pelvis and its calyces. In this fatty tissue the large blood vessels enter the kidney, passing chiefly over the anterior or ventral surface of the pelvis; having reached the boundary zone between cortex and medulla at the border of each calyx, they enter it, and pursue an arched course, giving off both cortical and medullary branches.

The arrangement of the renal tubules in relation to the cortex and medulla is as follows. The convoluted part of the cortex contains the capsules, and both proximal and distal convoluted tubules. The rays contain the collecting tubules, together with the outer portions of Henle's loops. The medulla contains the larger collecting tubules and the deeper portions of Henle's loops; since these are all straight tubules, the medulla resembles the radiate part of the cortex. Tubules which are connected with capsules deep in the cortex, near the boundary zone, send their Henle's loops much further into the medulla than those from the outer capsules; and in the deeply placed tubules the thin segment of Henle's loop is not limited to the descending limb but extends well up into the ascending limb. Thus it happens that a broad *inner zone* of the medulla (*i.e.*, toward the papilla) contains only thin segments of renal tubules in addition to the large collecting tubules (Fig. 292, D); and the zone so characterized may be distinguished macroscopically The papilla contains only collecting tubules, but the loops of Henle turn back at different levels, and therefore the papillary zone entirely free from loops is not well defined. The *outer zone* of the medulla contains both thick and thin segments of Henle's loops, in addition to the collecting tubules. In the descending limbs the change to thin segments occurs at a more or less definite level within this outer zone, thus subdividing it into a narrow outer band, with few thin segments, and an inner band containing many of both sorts. These zones have only recently been recognized (Peter, Untersuchungen über Bau and Entwickelung der Niere, Jena, 1909).

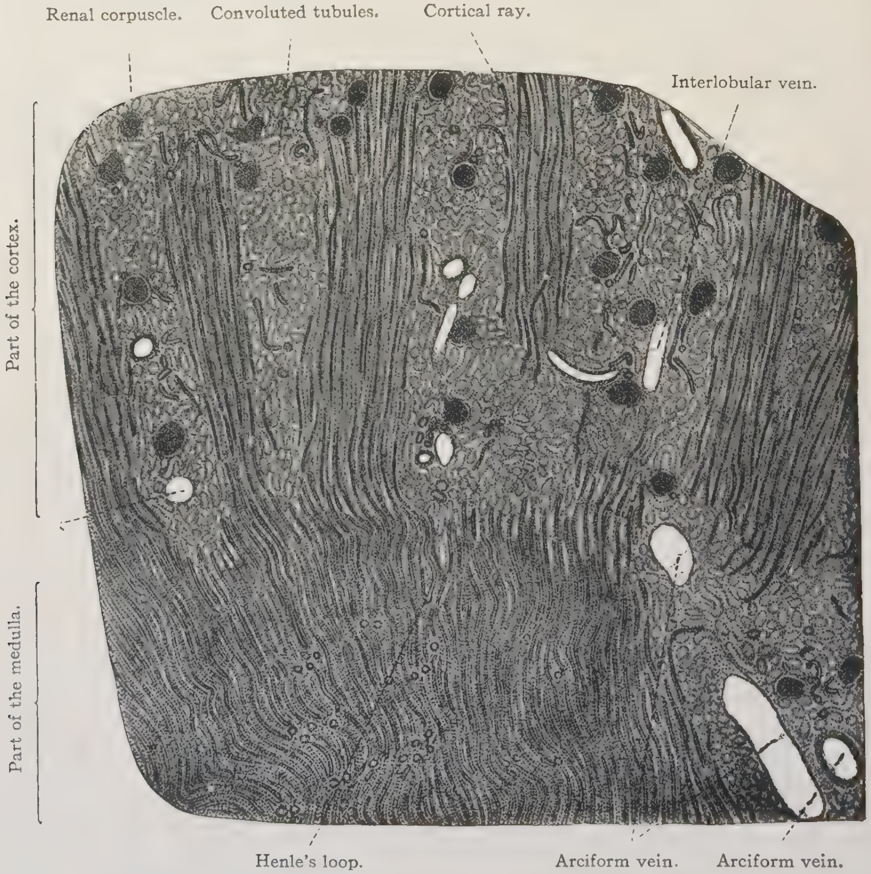


FIG. 294.—PART OF A RADIAL SECTION OF A HUMAN KIDNEY. × 5.
At x a renal corpuscle has dropped out.

Sections of the Kidney. Since a radial section of the kidney shows both cortex and medulla, it is the form usually made for pathological examinations (Fig. 294). The tubules may be studied to better advantage, however, in tangential sections, one through the cortex and the other through the medulla. The tubules are seen in cross section. The rays of the cortex appear as islands of circular sections surrounded by the irregular convoluted tubules, among which are the scattered renal corpuscles. The greater part of such an island is shown in the lower portion of Fig. 295. The renal tubules are lined throughout with simple epithelium and their characteristic features will now be considered, beginning with the glomerular capsule.

The renal corpuscle develops as the invagination of one side of the blind end of the embryonic S-shaped tubule by the intrusion of a glomerulus. It is essentially a knot of arterial capillaries covered by one wall of the tubule, the inner layer of the capsule (of Bowman), while the outer wall forms the outer layer of the capsule. The two layers are continuous where the arteries enter the glomerulus. The space between the two layers is continuous with the lumen of a convoluted tubule. The function of the inner layer is to pass water and certain salts in solution from the blood to the lumen. This is provided for by the presence of very thin epithelial plates which merge with the capillary endothelium to form a thin membrane.

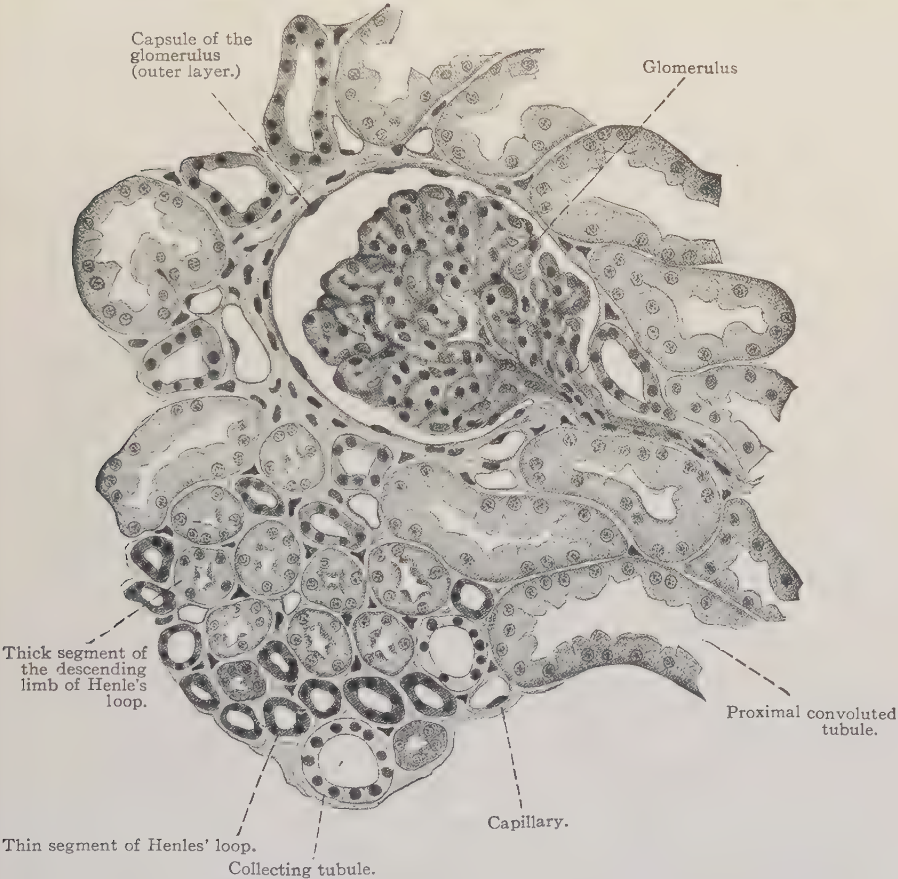

Capsule of the glomerulus (outer layer.)
Glomerulus
Thick segment of the descending limb of Henle's loop.
Proximal convoluted tubule.
Capillary.
Thin segment of Henles' loop.
Collecting tubule.

FIG. 295.—TANGENTIAL SECTION OF THE CORTEX OF A HUMAN KIDNEY. × 200. (Schaper.) The pars radiata is seen in the lower left corner. The line from "capsule of the glomerulus" passes between two distal convoluted tubules.

The formation of this membrane can be studied in radial sections of the kidney of a four months' fetus. The renal tubules which have their capsules close to the medulla are the first to develop; others are formed successively outward, the youngest being immediately beneath the kidney capsule. They represent in section the stages shown in Fig. 291. The younger glomeruli are covered by a tall columnar epithelium, the inner capsular layer, the height of the cells probably indicating preparation for rapid growth; the outer layer is of flat cells. The blood vessels push apart the cell bases of the inner layer and approach the surface, until only a thin plate-like layer of protoplasm covers the endothelium. The double nature of the thin layer overlying the blood stream of the glomerulus can occasionally be detected near the nuclei, where the plate and the endothelium separate. The cells between the capillaries become cuboidal as more and more of their substance is stretched over the endothelium. The capillary net is divided into lobules (usually five) by deep clefts (Fig. 303), plainly visible when the glomerulus is favorably oriented. The epithelial layer closely follows the lobulations, and thus presents a greatly increased surface. The entire glomerulus grows to a diameter of 0.13 to 0.20 mm.

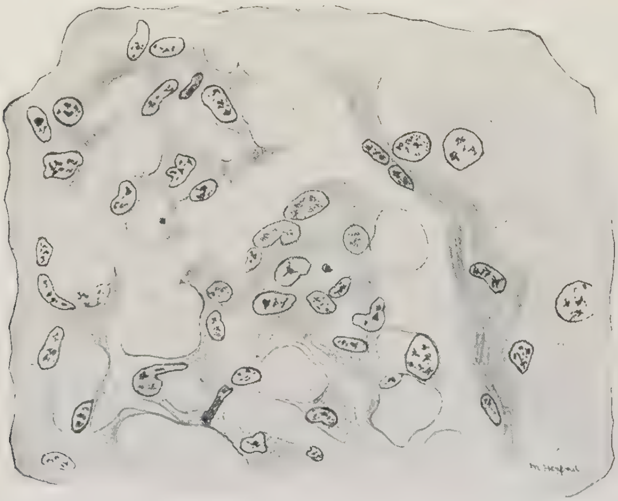


Fig. 296.—Part of Glomerulus of Human Kidney; at Right the Outer Layer of Bowman's Capsule; at Left, Lobulated Edge of Glomerulus, Showing Capillaries Covered by Their Epithelial Plates, with Cuboidal Epithelial Cells Forming the Rest of the Surface.
At left lower corner endothelium and plate are distinguishable, elsewhere they are fused.

The capillaries of the glomerulus are gathered again into a single efferent vessel, still conveying arterial blood, since little oxygen or food has been used in these capillaries. It runs near the afferent vessel and is smaller in diameter; this may cause the pressure in the glomerulus to be increased, or may merely indicate the loss of volume of blood there. A small amount of reticular tissue supports the epithelium and the capillaries.

The flat epithelium of the outer layer of the capsule rests on a basement membrane, and changes at the "neck of the capsule" to the low columnar epithelium of the proximal convoluted tubules. These are large (40–60 μ in diameter) with irregular lumen, sometimes slit-like. Cell walls are indistinct or lacking. The cells show granules, often arranged in vertical rows at the base, and occasionally clear spaces are seen near the upper pole. A "brush border," suggestive of short nonmotile cilia may be present. These characteristics point to active secretion. The lumen is wide and the cells are low after copious urine production; and the reverse is true when urine is scanty.

The upper segment of the descending limb of Henle's loop is similar in structure to the proximal convoluted tubules. It is a straight tubule, however, and is found in the radiate part of the cortex (Fig. 295).

The upper segments of the ascending limbs are also found in the *pars radiata.* Their protoplasm is less granular than that of the descending limbs, but closely resembles that of the distal convoluted tubules. The latter are much shorter then the proximal convoluted tubules, and are typically shown in Fig. 295 (there being one on either side of the label line to the "capsule of the glomerulus"). Huber (*loc. cit.*) describes these tubules as showing "an outer dark zone which is finely striated, and an inner zone which is lighter, the nuclei being placed at the junction of the two zones." It is probable, from their position, that the distal convoluted tubules in Fig. 295 are parts of the tubules which connects with the glomerulus shown in the figure.

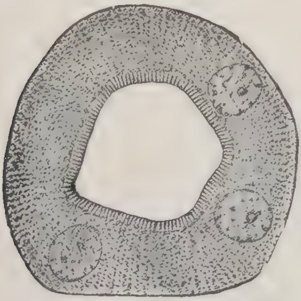


FIG. 297.—CROSS SECTION OF A CONVOLUTED TUBULE FROM A RABBIT. (Szymonowicz.)

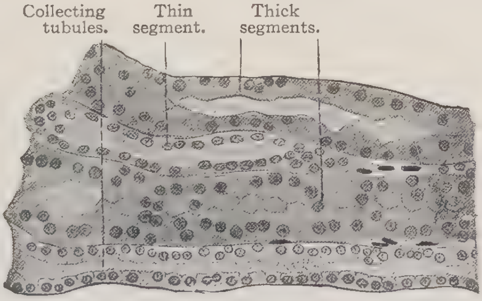


FIG. 298.—TUBULES OF THE PARS RADIATA. FROM A RADIAL SECTION OF A HUMAN KIDNEY. × 240.

The thin segments of Henle's loops are slender (9–16 μ in diameter), but have large lumens. Cell walls are absent, and the cells are so flat that their nuclei may occasionally cause elevations; the protoplasm is never so thin as that of the endothelium of the capillaries, however. As is shown in Fig. 292, the thin segment of the loop may occur on the descending or the ascending limb of the loop, or on both. It is not profitable, therefore, to attempt to distinguish its position.

The arched collecting tubules, into which the distal convoluted tubules empty, pass into the collecting tubules of the rays, which are readily identified. They have round and clear-cut lumens; cell walls are distinct (in all but the smallest), and the nuclei are regularly arranged. Thus the collecting tubule resembles an excretory duct.

The structures seen in the radiate part of the cortex are therefore the ascending and descending limbs of Henle's loops, with some of the thin segments, and the collecting tubules; they are shown in longitudinal section in Fig. 298. The convoluted part of the cortex contains proximal and distal convoluted tubules and glomerular capsules.

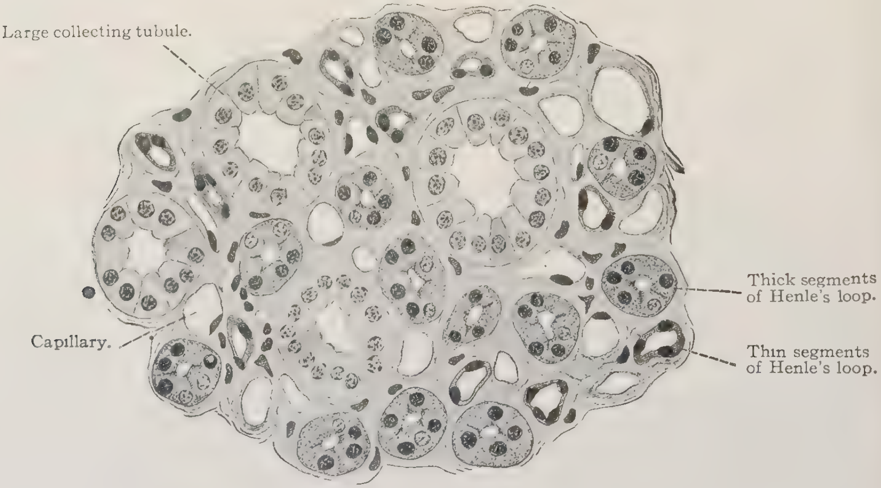

Large collecting tubule.
Capillary.
Thick segments of Henle's loop.
Thin segments of Henle's loop.

FIG. 299.—TRANSVERSE SECTION THROUGH THE MEDULLA OF A HUMAN KIDNEY. × 320. (Schaper.)

The medulla (Fig. 299) contains the same elements as the rays. The collecting tubules are larger, and their walls are more distinct. Among their columnar cells a few are decidedly darker than the others. The thick segments of Henle's loops are easily distinguished from the thin segments. The loops are found only in the outer part of the medulla, as they do not reach the papilla. The larger papillary ducts are lined with tall columnar epithelium which changes abruptly to the stratified epithelium of the pelvis.

The action of the different portions of the renal tubule has long been the subject of investigation, but with no general agreement as to details. Histologically, the glomerulus seems fitted for the passage of water and the physical filtration or osmosis of salts from the blood, perhaps under pressure. The cuboidal cells present may perform some further physiological secretion. The large granular cells of the proximal convoluted tubules probably add secretions to the fluid as it passes through the lumen —possibly urea, though this is also present in capsular urine. The cells of the thin segments and of the distal convoluted tubules are lower and less granular, and may serve to re-absorb some of the immense amount of fluid necessary to carry the salts and other soluble materials through the glomerular wall. Sugar also is said to be used as a vehicle, and to be present in the capsular urine; but it is normally re-absorbed somewhere in the tubule. The collecting tubules presumably act merely as ducts.

The whole question is one of physiological chemistry, and is treated at length by Cushny ("The Secretion of Urine," 1926). He gives this warning: "It may be taken that while the anatomical features may offer suggestions as to the function of an organ, it is impossible to accept them as offering definite evidence for or against any theory of renal activity."

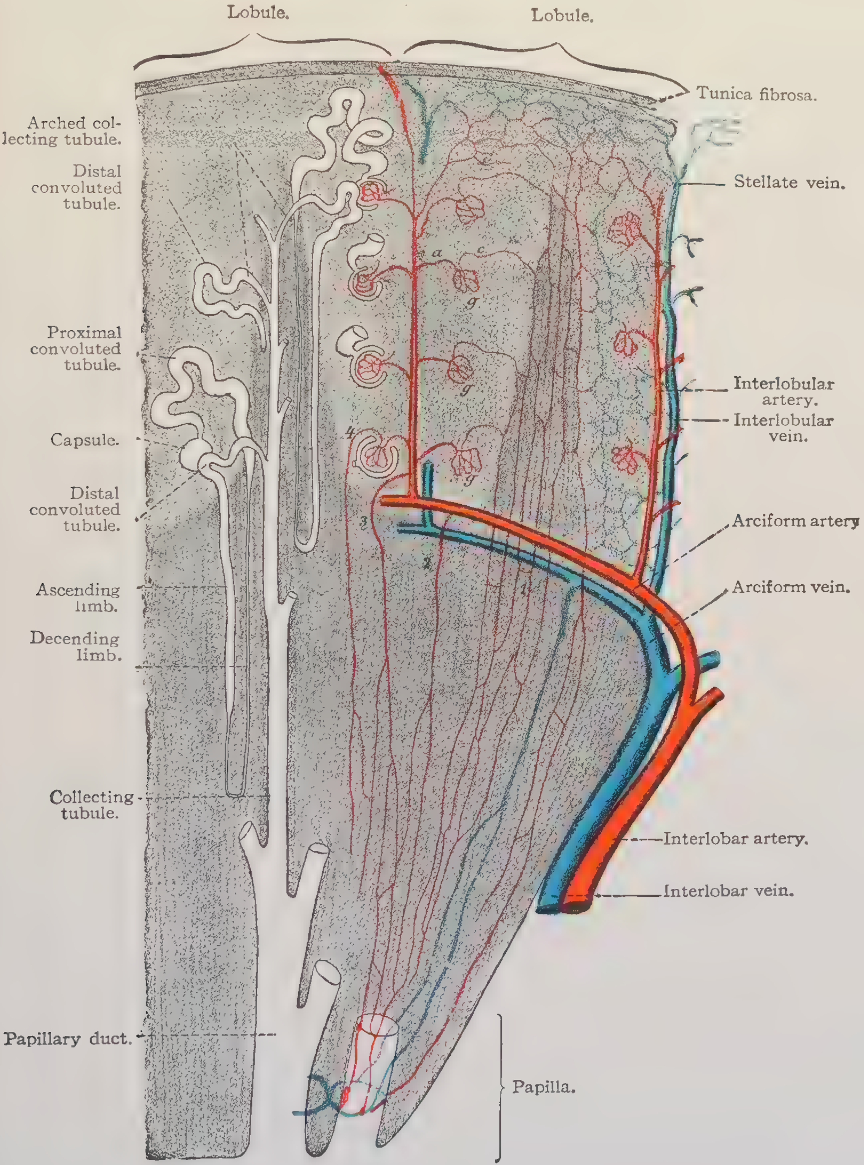


Fig. 300.—Diagram of the Course of the Renal Blood Vessels.

Connective tissue. Between the renal tubules there is a small amount of interstitial connective tissue. It is more abundant toward the papillæ and around the vessels and glomeruli than elsewhere. Beneath the epithelium of the tubules it forms basement membranes, apparently homogeneous, but actually composed of fine fibrils. The normal amount of interstitial tissue should be carefully studied, since its increase is indicative of an important pathological condition. This tissue is continuous with that of the fibrous capsule. The latter contains elastic fibers, which increase in abundance with age, and also smooth muscle fibers.

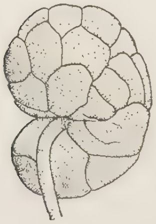


FIG. 301.—KIDNEY OF A CHILD AT BIRTH. (After Hertwig.)

Lobes and lobules. In embryonic life the kidney is divided into *lobes*, bounded by the renal columns, and indicated by grooves upon the outer surface (Fig. 301). The grooves become obliterated during the first year. In the ox similar grooves are permanent; in many mammals as in the cat and rabbit, they never exist, since the kidney has but one lobe, papilla and pyramid. The *lobules* or *structural units* of the kidney are the areas centering around each radiate division of the cortex, by which they are drained (Fig. 300). They are not bounded by connective tissue septa. (Traut, Carn. Contrib. Emb., 1923, No. 76.)

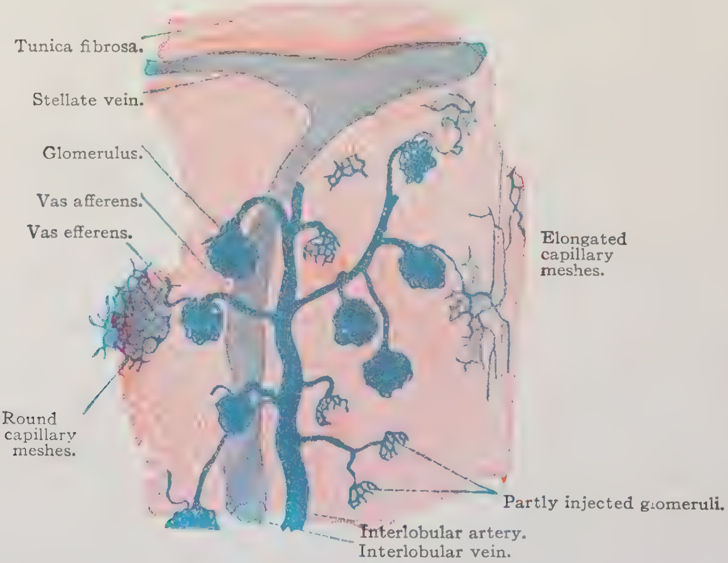


FIG. 302.—FROM A SECTION OF THE INJECTED CORTEX OF AN ADULT HUMAN KIDNEY. × 30.

Blood vessels. The kidney has a capillary circulation. The renal artery passes from the aorta to the *hilus*, or notch on the medial border of the kidney. It divides into several branches, most of which pass over the ventral surface of the pelvis into the fat around the calyces (Fig. 293). Thence, as *interlobar arteries*, they extend to the boundary layer between the cortex and medulla where they are known as *arciform arteries* (Fig. 300). These send *interlobular* arteries through the convoluted part of the cortex and their terminal branches enter the fibrous capsule. It will be noted that the kidney is exceptional in having its arteries at the periphery of its lobules. From the interlobular arteries small stems pass to the *glomeruli*, each of which receives a single twig (Fig. 302). This is resolved into a knot of capillary loops, the endothelium of which seems to blend with the inner layer of the capsule. The glomerulus often appears lobed, due to the arrangement of its vascular loops. The capillaries unite to form a single efferent vessel which is smaller in diameter than the afferent vessel. The entire glomerulus is regarded as arterial. On leaving it, the efferent vessel divides into small branches. These spread among the convoluted and straight tubules of the cortex. The medulla is supplied by straight branches (*arteriolæ rectæ*) from the interlobular, efferent and arciform arteries (as shown in Fig. 300). The veins of the medulla begin around the papillæ, and as *venulæ rectæ* empty into the arciform veins. The cortical veins are the *interlobular* vessels which are beside the corresponding arteries. They arise from converging veins in the renal capsule, which on surface view form stellate figures (*venæ stellate*). The interlobular veins drain the capillaries of the cortex, but have no direct relation with the glomeruli. *Interlobar veins* follow the arteries, passing out from the hilus of the kidney over the ventral surface of the renal pelvis.

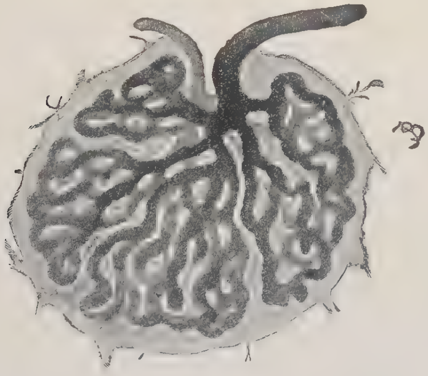


FIG. 303.—GLOMERULUS FROM AN INJECTED HUMAN KIDNEY. (From Szymonowicz.)
Afferent and efferent arteries and lobulated capillary plexus. × 160.

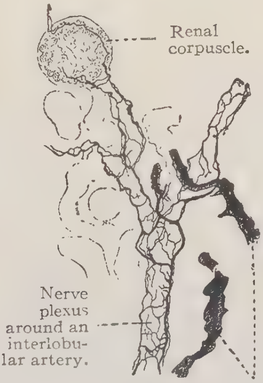


FIG. 304.—FROM THE KIDNEY OF A MOUSE. GOLGI PREPARATION. × 180.

Lymphatic vessels are said to occur within the cortex and to follow the blood vessels out at the hilus. The cortical lymphatics also pass through the tunica fibrosa to connect with a network in the adipose capsule. They proceed to neighboring lymph glands.

The *nerves* are medullated and non-medullated. There is a sympathetic plexus at the hilus associated with small ganglia, and from it interlacing nerves extend into the kidney around the vessels (Fig. 304). Fine branches supply the epithelial cells, especially those of the convoluted tubules. They form plexuses beneath and above the basement membrane, and have free intercellular endings.

Renal Pelvis and Ureter

The renal pelvis and ureter both consist of a mucosa (and submucosa), muscularis and adventitia (Fig. 305). The mucosa includes the epithelium and tunica propria, the latter blending with the submucosa. In sections the epithelium resembles that of the moderately contracted bladder (Fig. 306), and its cells when found detached in urine are not distinguishable from bladder cells. The epithelium is stratified but consists of few layers. The basal cells are rounded, those of the middle layer are club shaped or conical with rounded ends, and the outer cells are columnar, cuboidal, or somewhat flattened. Their lower surface may be indented by the rounded ends of several underlying cells, as is particularly the case in the contracted bladder (Fig. 307). Two nuclei are often found in a superficial cell, and in some animals they are known to arise by amitosis. Leucocytes frequently enter the epithelium. In some animals mucous glands have been found extending into the tunica propria, and there are gland-like pockets in man. Some of these have no lumen and it is said that none are true glands. Capillary blood vessels, which are abundant in the mucosa, are found directly beneath the epithelium and present the deceptive appearance of becoming intra-epithelial. The tunica propria consists of fine connective or reticular tissue, with few elastic fibers. It contains many cellular elements and some lymphocytes, and passes without a definite boundary into the loose connective tissue of the submucosa.

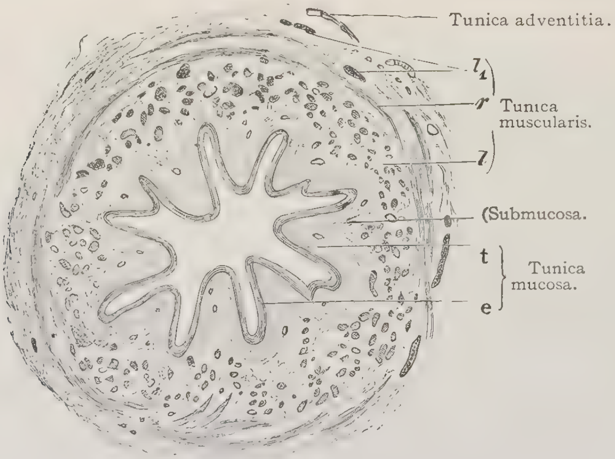


Fig. 305.—Transverse Section of the Lower Half of a Human Ureter. × 15.
e., Epithelium; **t.**, tunica propria; **l.**, inner longitudinal muscle bundles; **r**, circular layer of muscle bundles **l_1**, outer longitudinal muscle bundles.

The tunica muscularis has considerable connective tissue among its smooth muscle bundles. The latter form an inner longitudinal and an outer circular layer. In the lower half of the ureter there is a third, outer longitudinal layer, specially thickened along the last 5 cm. Around the papillæ of the kidney the circular fibers form a "sphincter." The part of the ureter which passes obliquely through the wall of the bladder has only longitudinal fibers, ending in the tunica propria of the bladder. By contracting they open the outlet of the ureter. The adventitia consists of loose fibro-elastic connective tissue.

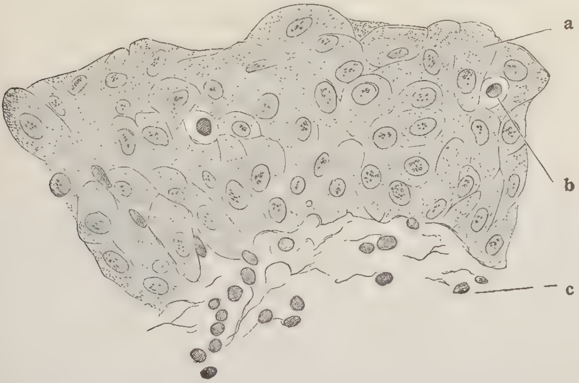


FIG. 306.—VERTICAL SECTION OF THE MUCOUS MEMBRANE OF A HUMAN BLADDER. × 560.
a, Columnar cell with cuticular border; **b**, lymphocyte; **c**, tunica propria.

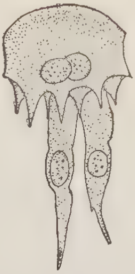


FIG. 307.—A SUPERFICIAL EPITHELIAL CELL AND TWO CLUB-SHAPED CELLS FROM A CONTRACTED BLADDER. (Koelliker.)

Lymphatics and blood vessels are numerous. There are sympathetic nerves to the muscles, and free sensory endings in the tunica propria and epithelium.

BLADDER

The development of the bladder from the ventral part of the cloaca has been described on page 243. Its epithelium is entodermal whereas that of the ureters opening into it is mesodermal. There is however no demarcation between the layers in the adult, since both produce the same sort of "transitional epithelium." (This term, introduced by Henle (Allg. Anat., 1841) as a designation for epithelia which are intermediate between stratified squamous and simple columnar, such as occur at the cardia and elsewhere, is now generally restricted to the peculiar epithelium of the bladder, ureter and renal pelvis.)

The bladder consists of a mucosa, submucosa, muscularis and serosa. The epithelium has been described as two-layered in the distended bladder, the outer cells having terminal bars; in the contracted condition it becomes several-layered and the bars form a net extending into the epithelium. Thus it is not believed that during distention the layers shown in Fig. 306 merely flatten; they are thought to "slip by each other." The columnar cells may, however, become extremely flat. The appearances of the epithelium in the bladder and ureter of the dog under various conditions of distention and contraction have been figured by Harvey (Anat. Record, 1909, vol. 3, pp. 296–307). The superficial cells have a cuticular border; they often contain two nuclei, and their darkly granular protoplasm has been considered suggestive of secretory activity. Round or oval pockets extend into the tunica propria (Fig. 308). Some of them have no lumen, or are detached from the epithelium, but others are pits containing a colloid substance. The pits are rudimentary glands. In the adult, branched tubules lined with cylindrical epithelium may sprout from the bottom of the pits, thus forming true glands. Their occurrence is limited to the fundus, which is the dorsally bulging lowest part of the bladder, and to the neighborhood of the urethral outlet. In the latter position they have been regarded as rudimentary prostatic glands.

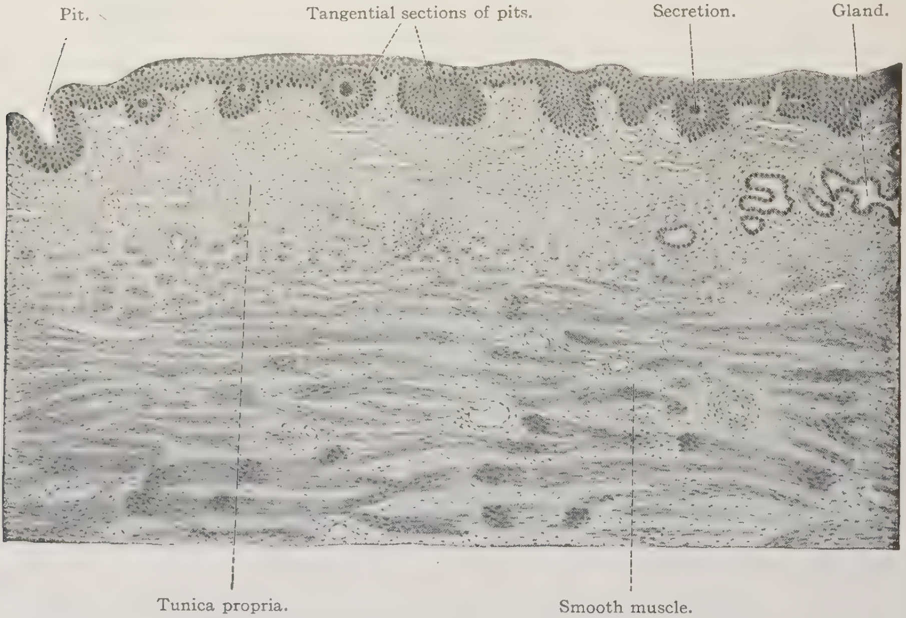


Fig. 308.—Section through the Fundus of the Urinary Bladder of an Adult Man. × 48.

The tunica propria sometimes contains solitary nodules. It blends with the submucosa, as in the ureter, and contains lymphatic and blood vessels, the latter extending very close to the epithelium.

The muscularis consists of smooth muscle fibers arranged in three interwoven layers, which are seldom separable in sections. They are an inner longitudinal, middle circular and outer longitudinal layer. The circular fibers are strengthened at the beginning of the urethra to form the "internal sphincter" of the bladder, a muscle not always distinct.

The serosa is a connective tissue layer covered with mesothelium. In the non-peritoneal part of the bladder it is replaced by an adventitia or fibrous layer.

Non-medullated nerves, with scattered groups of ganglion cells, are found outside the muscles and also among them. Medullated fibers terminate around the ganglion cells; others pass through the ganglia to intra-epithelial sensory endings.

URETHRA (IN THE FEMALE)

The male urethra will be described with the genital organs; only its upper portion is homologous with the urethra of the female. The latter is exclusively the outlet of the urinary tract. The epithelium has been variously described as stratified, with outer squamous cells, or as pseudostratified, and columnar. It may be of different forms in different individuals. The lumen is irregularly crescentic, with longitudinal folds (Fig. 309). Branched tubular *urethral glands* are found only in small numbers, except near the outlet. Their secretion is mucoid, but is not typical mucus. In the submucosa there are many thin-walled veins constituting the *corpus spongiosum*. This is comparable with the upper

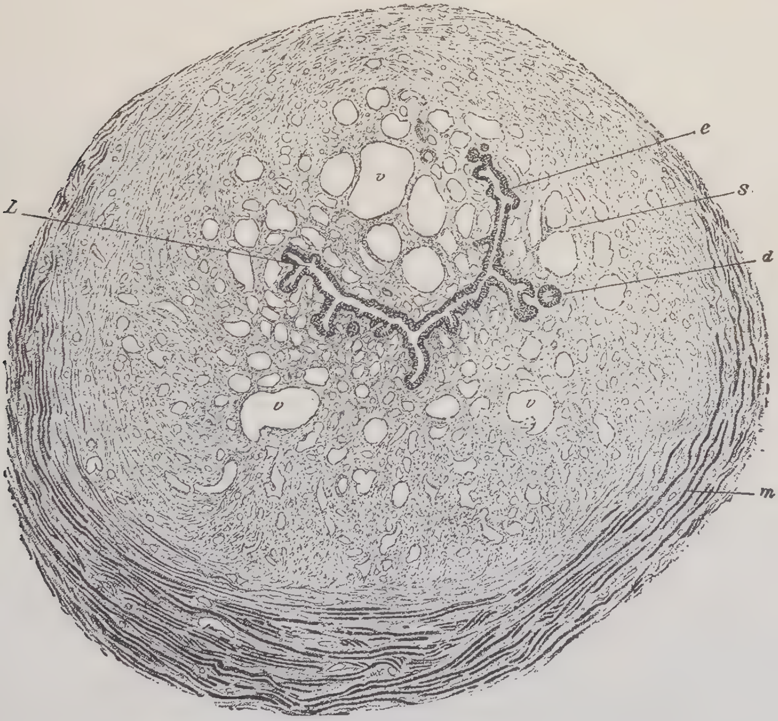


FIG. 309.—CROSS SECTION OF THE FEMALE URETHRA. (Koelliker.)
d., Gland-like diverticulum; **e.**, epithelium; **L.**, lumen of the urethra; **m.**, striated muscle; **s.**, corpus spongiosum, containing venous spaces (**v**) and smooth muscle.

part of the more highly developed corpus cavernosum urethræ of the male. (Compare with Fig. 333, p. 354.) The muscularis is a thick layer, consisting of inner longitudinal and outer circular smooth muscle fibers, among which the veins extend, and connective tissue with many elastic fibers is abundant. The striated *constrictor urethræ* is outside of the smooth muscle layer, as shown in the figure.

MALE GENITAL ORGANS

Development and General Features

The discovery that the Wolffian bodies become a part of the genital system was made by Oken, through dissections and injections of dog embryos (Beiträge, Heft II, 1807). Rathke studied these "Oken's bodies" further, and found more accurately their relation to the epididymis and ductus deferens. Müller (Bildungsgeschichte der Genitalien, 1830) wrongly delcared that they do not form the epididymis; but he discovered that "at the time when the Wolffian bodies are most highly developed, the germ of the ovary or testis lies on their inner side; and on their outer side, extending even to their upper end, there is a duct which does not connect with the Wolffian bodies—it appears to have arisen from their short and much stouter excretory duct." He saw that this second duct, now known as the *Müllerian duct*, formed a part of the uterine tubes. In fact it forms the entire tubes together with the uterus and vagina; in the male it produces interesting vestigial structures which are constantly present in the adult.

The Müllerian duct arises as an outpocketing of the cœlomic epithelium near the anterior end of the Wolffian body. The orifice into the peritoneal cavity becomes surrounded by irregular folds known as *fimbriæ*. As the Müllerian duct grows posteriorly by the elongation of its blind end, it lies in contact with the Wolffian duct as seen in Fig. 310, but the Wolffian duct does not contribute toward its formation. The two Müllerian ducts reach the neck of the bladder side by side, and acquire openings into it between those of the Wolffian ducts. Near the bladder the two Müllerian ducts fuse with one another so that their distal part is represented by a single median tube, on either side of which is a Wolffian duct (Fig. 288, B, page 314). In the female the united portion becomes the *vagina* and *uterus*, and the separate parts are the *uterine* (or Fallopian) *tubes*. In the male the united portion becomes a small blind pocket, the *prostatic utricle*, opening into the prostatic urethra. Each fimbriated extremity becomes transformed into the *appendix testis*, and the remaining portion of the ducts, except for occasional fragments, becomes obliterated. Thus only the two extremities of the Müllerian ducts are ordinarily permanent in the male (Fig. 312).

The *genital glands* in either sex begin as a thickening on the ventromedial border of each Wolffian body (Fig. 310). A section of this *genital ridge* is shown in Fig. 285, C, page 311. The ridge is a dense mass of mesoderm covered by the peritoneal epithelium, which here consists of a syncytium very closely connected with the underlying tissue. According to Felix (Keibel and Mall's Human Embryology, vol. 2) *everything* that is later developed within the genital ridge has a common origin from the peritoneal epithelium. The ridge becomes infiltrated by an epithelial mass which then separates from the peritoneal layer. Beneath the peritoneum this mass produces the dense connective tissue capsule which surrounds the testis, called, from its whiteness, the *tunica albuginea;* within the genital ridge it is "quite suddenly" resolved into anastomosing cords with looser tissue between them, and the cords become the tubules of the testis. Allen, in an earlier account (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1904, vol. 3 pp. 89–155), likewise finds that the cells of the peritoneum and the underlying mesenchyma appear to form a continuous protoplasmic network, and "the stroma cells are practically identical with the peritoneal cells from which they are originating." But Allen concludes that "the tubules of the testis are formed as solid invaginations of the peritoneum, which later become separated from it, and grow by the activity of their component cells." There is, then, a difference of opinion as to whether the tubules of the testis are formed directly from the stroma within the genital ridge (Felix), or as invaginations from the peritoneal epithelium (Allen). A figure of an 11-mm. human embryo published by Felix appears to accord with Allen's interpretation, and such a condition is shown diagrammatically in Fig. 311.

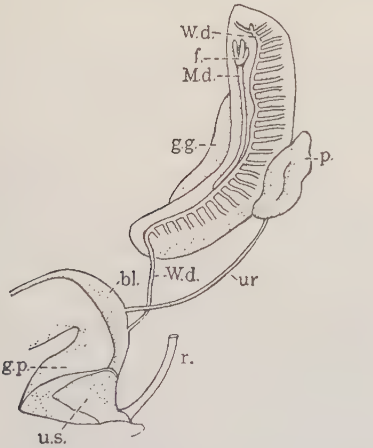


FIG. 310.—FROM A RECONSTRUCTION OF A 13.6-MM. HUMAN EMBRYO. (F. W. Thyng.)

bl., Bladder; **f.,** fimbriæ; **g. g.,** genital ridge; **g. p.,** genital papilla; **M. d.,** Müllerian duct; **p.,** renal pelvis; **r.,** rectum; **ur.,** ureter; **u. s.,** urogenital sinus; **W. d.,** Wolffian duct.

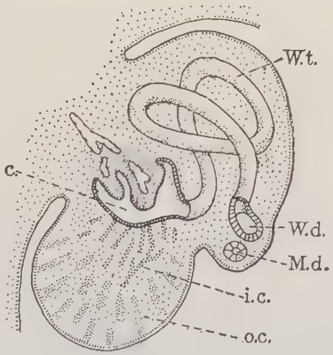


FIG. 311.—DIAGRAM OF THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE TESTIS, BASED UPON FIGURES BY MACCALLUM AND B. M. ALLEN.

c., Glomerular capsule; **i. c.,** inner or rete cords; **M. d.,** Müllerian duct; **o. c.,** outer or sex cords; **W. d., W. t.,** Wolffian duct and tubule.

As the cords become detached from the peritoneum, they form arching anastomoses, convex toward the periphery of the ridge; and with further growth they become greatly convoluted. They acquire lumens, and become the *tubuli contorti*, in the walls of which spermatogenesis takes place. The shapes presented by these tubules in the embryo have been carefully modelled by Bremer (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1911, vol. 11, pp. 393–416).

Toward the interior of the genital ridge the cords become more slender and converge toward the Wolffian body. There they are imbedded in a considerable mass of tissue, which in the adult becomes the *mediastinum testis*. The inner ends of the contorted tubules, toward the mediastinum, remain straight, forming the *tubuli recti;* and these, further inward, become thin-walled and anastomose freely, thus constituting the *rete testis* (Fig. 312). According to Allen the tubuli contorti are developed from the middle third of the genital ridge only; the cords of the anterior third grow down between these and the Wolffian glomeruli, in the mediastinum, acquire connections with the tubuli contorti and become the tubuli recti and the rete.

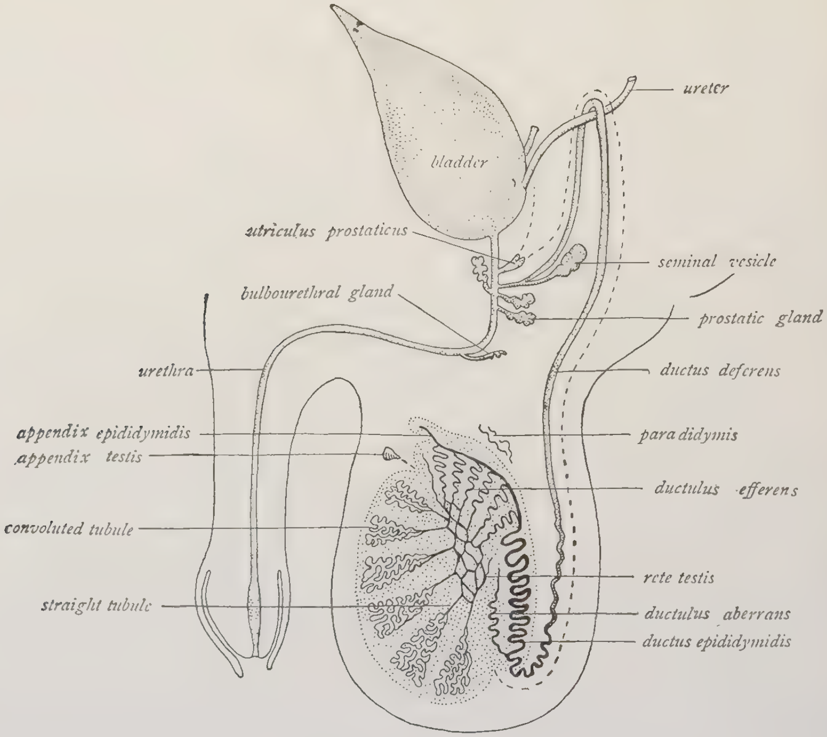


FIG. 312.—DIAGRAM OF THE MALE SEXUAL ORGANS. (Modified from Eberth, after Waldeyer.) (The course of the Müllerian duct is indicated by dashes.)

All the tubules thus far considered are produced by the genital ridge. Their inner ends, which form the rete, acquire openings into the capsules of the degenerating Wolffian glomeruli, or sometimes directly into a

Wolffian tubule. From ten to fifteen Wolffian tubules thus become connected with the rete testis, and serve to convey the genital products to the Wolffian duct; these tubules are known as the *ductuli efferentes.* In the adult each of them is a greatly convoluted tube which if straightened measures 8 inches (20 cm.). When coiled, it forms a conical mass or *lobule of the epididymis,* with its apex toward the rete, and its base toward the Wolffian duct which it enters (Fig. 312). The Wolffian duct, which passes along the dorsal surface of the testis, is also greatly convoluted so that it measures about 20 feet when straight (6–7 meters). Together with the efferent ducts this coiled mass constitutes the *epididymis* (Gr. ἐπί, upon; δίδυμος, testis). Along the testis the Wolffian duct is called the *ductus epididymidis,* and from the testis toward the urogenital sinus it is named the *ductus deferens.* Near its termination a saccular outgrowth, like a distended gland, develops from each Wolffian duct. It is called the *seminal vesicle,* and that portion of the Wolffian duct between the duct of the vesicle and the urethra is named the *ejaculatory duct.* Thus the Wolffian duct is arbitrarily divided in the adult into three parts, the ductus epididymidis, ductus deferens, and ductus ejaculatorius.

It has been noted that only 10–15 of the Wolffian tubules persist as efferent ducts; in man, according to Felix, these are the fifty-eighth to seventieth out of a series of eighty-three which develop. Thus a great many degenerate, and certain appendages of the epididymis are explained as persistent remnants. The *appendix epididymidis* may represent a part of the Wolffian duct or an anterior tubule (Fig. 312); its history is still obscure. Other anterior tubules may be retained as *appendages of the rete.* The *paradidymis* is "a functionless remnant of the Wolffian body," situated behind the head or upper end of the epididymis and in front of the cord of veins which accompany the ductus deferens.

Giraldès first described it (Bull. Soc. Anat. Paris, 1857) and Koelliker named it the "organ of Giraldès;" Henle called it the *paraepididymis* (*i.e.*, the organ beside the epididymis), and Waldeyer later shortened the term and changed its meaning. Felix (*loc. cit.*, 1912) contrary to the earlier descriptions, places the paradidymis "between the epididymis and the testis, slightly below the head of the epididymis." Toldt (Verh. Anat. Gesellsch, 1892, pp. 241–242) recognized two forms of paradidymis, but both are behind the epididymis and in front of the veins of the spermatic cord. The precise origin of these tubules from the Wolffian body has not been determined.

Other remains of the Wolffian body, apparently derived from the tubules below those which become efferent ducts, are known as *aberrant ducts* (*ductuli aberrantes*). There may be two or three of them; usually there is said to be but one. It proceeds from the duct of the epididymis, or rarely from the ductus deferens at its junction with the duct of the epididymis, and terminates in a coiled mass, sometimes having branches. The length of the aberrant duct is "4–36 cm., generally 5–8 cm." (Henle).

The External Genital Organs. After the cloaca has been divided into ventral and dorsal portions by the downward growth of the perineal septum, the ventral portion below the outlets of the Wolffian ducts is called the *urogenital sinus.* It receives both urinary and genital products, and in the male it forms all of the urethra below the orifices of the ejaculatory ducts. In the young embryo, the distal part of the urogenital sinus becomes laterally compressed so that it forms an epithelial plate. This plate reaches the external surface of the body along the mid-ventral line of an elevation known as the *genital papilla* (or tubercle). The genital papilla (Fig. 310) becomes very prominent in embryos of both sexes. In the male it continues its development and forms the penis, along the under side of which the urogenital sinus acquires a cleft-like opening (Fig. 313, A). This elongated aperture closes from behind forward, along the line permanently marked by a *raphe* (or seam). In the abnormal cases of *hypospadias*, the urogenital sinus retains a more or less extensive opening on the under side of the penis. A rounded terminal *glans* is early differentiated at the apex of the genital papilla. The epidermis is adherent to it, but later becomes separated by the formation and splitting of an epithelial plate, thus producing the reflection of skin called the *prepuce.* The urogenital sinus becomes secondarily prolonged through the glans so as to form the terminal part and external orifice of the urethra. The entire urethra is divided into three parts: (1) the prostatic portion (*pars prostatica*), which includes the outlet of the bladder together with the upper end of the urogenital sinus, and receives the ejaculatory and prostatic ducts; (2) the membranous part (*pars membranacea*), which is the short dilatable portion traversing the "pelvic diaphragm;" and (3) the long cavernous portion (*pars cavernosa*), which is surrounded by the cavernous vascular tissue.

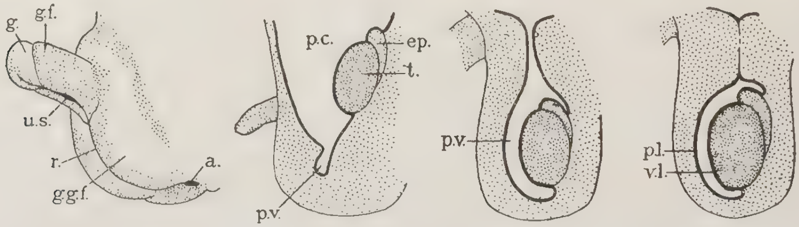


Fig. 313.—**A**, Diagram of the Embryonic External Genital Organs in the Male; **B, C, D**, Diagrams of the Descent of the Testis. (After Eberth.)

a., Anus; **ep.**, epididymis; **g.**, glans penis; **g. f.**, lesser genital folds; **g. g. f.**, greater genital folds; **p. c.**, peritoneal cavity; **p. v.**, processus vaginalis; **r.**, raphe; **t.**, testis; **p. l.**, parietal layer of the tunica vaginalis; **u. s.**, urogenital sinus; **v. l.**, visceral layer of the tunica vaginalis.

The *scrotum* develops as a median pouch at the dorsal end of the urogenital raphe. It is continuous above with the pair of large genital folds which tend to encircle the base of the genital papilla, being deficient only below (Fig. 313, A). At the stage when the testis and Wolffian body are still within the abdomen, lying behind the peritoneum, the peritoneal cavity sends a prolongation, the *processus vaginalis*, over the pubic bone into each half of the scrotum (Fig. 313, B). A large retroperitoneal column of connective tissue, the *gubernaculum testis*, extends from the posterior end of each testis into the depth of the scrotum. For reasons still obscure, such as unequal growth or the shortening of this cord, the testes pass down in front of the pubic bones, into the scrotum (Fig. 313, C). The Wolffian duct becomes bent over the ureter as shown in Fig. 312, and this important relation is found in the adult. Except on its dorsal border, the testis is closely invested by the peritoneum of the processus vaginalis. Later the distal part of the processus becomes separated from the abdominal cavity by the obliteration of its stalk. The part remaining about the testis is the *tunica vaginalis*, having a parietal and a visceral layer as shown in Fig. 313, D. The descent of the testes is completed shortly before birth, except in the occasional cases of "undescended testis."

In certain animals the testis remains normally within the abdominal cavity. In others it become functionless if so retained or if placed there experimentally. Such testes are called cryptorchid. Moore (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1924, vol. 34, pp. 337–358) suggests that in these cases a difference in the temperature between peritoneal and scrotal cavities may cause the degeneration, and would consider the scrotum as an organ for regulating temperature. Why it is useful in some animals and not in others is not clear.

TESTIS

The general arrangement of the parts of the testis, as they appear in cross section, is shown in Fig. 314. From the tunica albuginea, small connective tissue septa (*septula testis*) pass to the mediastinum, dividing the testis into "100–200" pyramidal lobules with their apices toward the rete. The tunica albuginea is a dense connective tissue layer, containing numerous elastic fibers which increase in abundance with age. Its outer surface is covered with the visceral layer of the tunica vaginalis. The inner portion of the albuginea is very vascular, forming a distinct layer at birth (the tunica vasculosa). Connective tissue extends from the septula among the convoluted tubules. Immediately surrounding them there is a delicate basement membrane, followed by a layer of closely interwoven elastic fibers and flat cells.

The *convoluted tubules* are very long, slender loops, anastomosing or opening at each end into the rete, and may be branched or "double arched" (Curtis, Amer. Journ. Anat., 1918, vol. 24, pp. 338–394). They are coiled or bent in stiff, short curves, each tubule forming several small, compact convoluted areas, which enclose terminal arterioles, and may thus be regarded as secretory units. Anastomosis between tubules of neighboring lobules have been reported.

The tubules are lined with a highly specialized stratified epithelium (Fig. 315). The cells divide and differentiate as they pass from the basal layer outward. Finally each outer cell produces a single large cilium, or flagellum, projecting from the free surface, and becomes detached as a spermatozoon. The process of transformation of the basal cells, or spermatogonia, into spermatozoa is known as *spermatogenesis.* Its cytological features, as observed in the testis of the grasshopper, have already been described (p. 26). Ordinary sections of the human testis present the following characteristics:

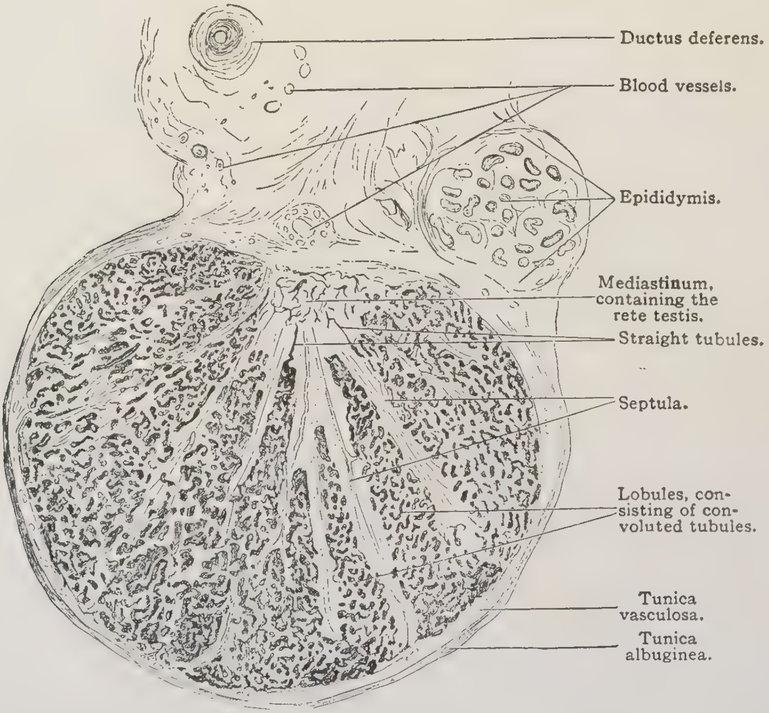


Fig. 314.—Cross Section of the Testis of a Child at Birth. × 10.

Each tubule is composed of cells of two sorts—*sexual cells* and *sustentacular cells.* At birth the cords and developing tubules contain relatively few sexual cells (Fig. 316). These are characterized by their large size, clear protoplasm, and round vesicular nuclei. It is said that they retain a primitive granular arrangement of their mitochondria. These cells multiply by ordinary mitosis, producing the spermatogonia. Thus the sexual cells in various forms eventually far outnumber the sustentacular cells.

The sexual or genital cells are apparently produced from the cords in the testis, relatively late in embryonic development. It was suggested by Nussbaum, however, that the sexual cells are set apart much earlier—"they do not come from any cells that have given up their embryonic character or gone into building any part of the body." In accordance with this idea, it is considered by some authorities that in the segmentation stages, a line of undifferentiated cells is set apart to become the sexual cells, and that from the beginning they are distinct from the somatic cells which form the rest of the body. Various authors have attempted to trace the genital cells before their appearance in the testis or ovary; large round cells have been noted in the different germ layers and in various supposed pathways toward the germinal ridge. They are said to be recognizable by a difference in mitochondrial content. By some these are considered primordial germ cells, which will later be incorporated in testis tubule or ovarian follicle; for others they are merely degenerating cells of the tissue. At

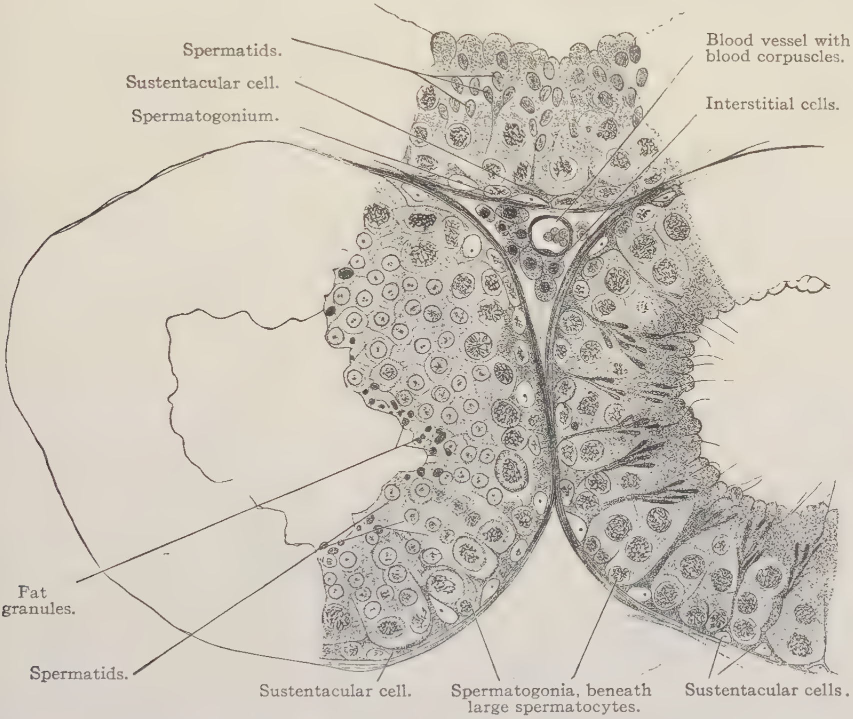


FIG. 315.—CROSS SECTIONS OF SEMINIFEROUS (CONVOLUTED) TUBULES OF A MOUSE. × 360.

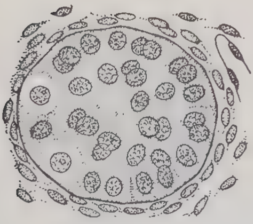


FIG. 316.—CROSS SECTION OF A CONVOLUTED TUBULE OF THE TESTIS AT BIRTH. (Eberth.)

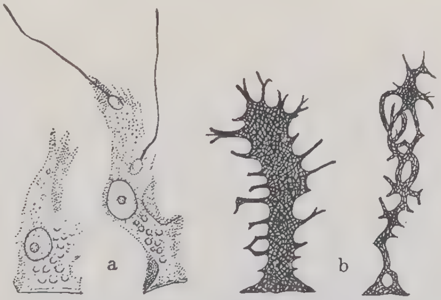


FIG. 317.—SUSTENTACULAR CELLS. a., Isolated (Koelliker); b., Golgi preparations. (Böhm and von Davidoff.)

present it has by no means been demonstrated that the mammalian sexual cells are not differentiated products of the testis or ovary, adapted for the special purpose of reproduction.

The sustentacular or supporting cells, often called *Sertoli's cells*, are at first indifferent cells forming a syncytium (Fig. 316). With the increase in the number of spermatogonia, their protoplasm is resolved into a network of strands, molded by the surrounding cells (Fig. 317). Their nuclei are radially compressed into ovoid shapes, and lie in columns of protoplasm extending from the periphery of the tubule toward its lumen. Each nucleus has a distinct nucleolus, apart from which its chromatic material is very scanty. In man the nuclei are in the lower half of the branching protoplasmic columns, the polygonal bases of which are in contact with one another beneath the spermatogonia; in some animals (*e.g.*, mouse) the nuclei are flattened against the basement membrane.

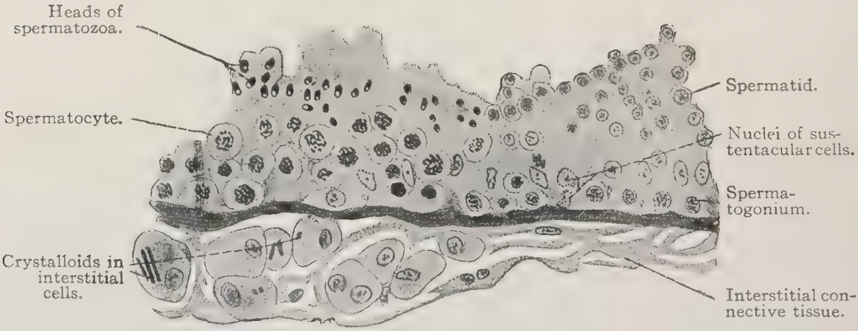

Heads of spermatozoa.
Spermatocyte.
Crystalloids in interstitial cells.
Spermatid.
Nuclei of sustentacular cells.
Spermatogonium.
Interstitial connective tissue.

Fig. 318.—From a Longitudinal Section through a Convoluted Tubule of a Human Testis. × 60.

Within the protoplasm fat droplets occur, together with brown granules; crystalloid bodies in pairs may also be found. As seen in Fig. 317, *a*, the heads of the spermatozoa appear attached to, or imbedded in, the protoplasm of the sustentacular cells, which are supposed to nourish them. The spermatozoa may be gathered in characteristic clumps at their upper ends (Fig. 315).

In ordinary sections of the testis, the sustentacular cells may be recognized by their distinctive nuclei (Fig. 318). The sexual cells in the basal row are presumably spermatogonia. Above them are the spermatocytes, which are larger; their nuclei usually show spiremes or other indications of cell division. Secondary spermatocytes are further out than the primary spermatocytes; and above them are the spermatids in various stages of transformation into spermatozoa. Since spermatogenesis occurs in "waves," the outer cells in a tubule cut lengthwise form a succession of zones, each of which shows gradations from young spermatids to mature spermatozoa (see Curtis, Am. Journ. Anat., 1918, vol. 24, pp. 339–394); a single zone is included in Fig. 318. In transverse sections all the superficial cells may be of one stage, which differs from that in the adjoining tubule (Fig. 315).

Stages in the transformation of a spermatid into a spermatozoon are shown in the diagram Fig. 319. The chromosomes of the spermatid disappear in a dense chromatic network which becomes apparently homogeneous. This deeply staining nucleus passes to one end of the protoplasm of the spermatid. It becomes the essential part of the *head* of the spermatozoon, which in man is a flattened structure, oval on surface view, and pyriform with its apex forward when seen on edge (Fig. 320). The head is at the anterior end of the spermatozoon, which during its development is directed toward the basal layers of the convoluted tubule. The anterior end of the head is probably covered by a thin layer of protoplasm, known as the *galea capitis*. The archoplasm of the spermatid (known as the *idiozome*) is said to leave the centrosome and to enter the protoplasm of the galea capitis, where it forms the *perforatorium*. If this exists in man, it is in the form of a cutting edge following the outline of the front of the head; in other animals the perforatorium may be a slender spiral or barbed projection, which enables the spermatozoon to penetrate the ovum.

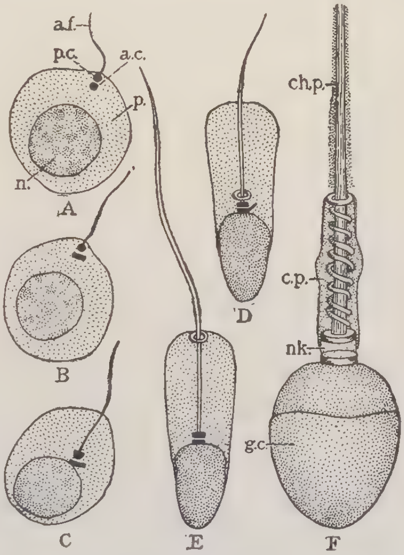


Fig. 319.—Diagrams of the Development of Spermatozoa. (After Meves.)

a. c., anterior centrosome; **a. f.**, axial filament; **c. p.**, connecting piece; **ch. p.**, chief piece; **g. c.**, galea capitis; **n.**, nucleus; **nk.**, neck; **p.**, protoplasm; **p. c.**, posterior centrosome.

The protoplasm of the spermatid forms an elongated mass at the posterior end of the nucleus. It contains the centrosome which soon divides in two. Of these the anterior forms a disc which becomes adherent to the nuclear membrane. The posterior centrosome also becomes a disc after giving rise to a motile *axial filament*, which grows out from it like a cilium. The disc-like centrosome attached to the anterior end of the filament becomes thin in such a way that its peripheral portion is detached and as a ring surrounding the filament it passes to the posterior limit of the protoplasm. The protoplasm between the two parts of the posterior centrosome is reduced to a thin layer in which a spiral filament develops, winding about the axial filament. Distal to the centrosome ring, the axial filament, which consists of fine fibrils, is surrounded by a thin membrane, which terminates or becomes very thin near the extremity of the filament. This membrane, which in salamanders forms a conspicuous undulating frill, is thought to be a product of the filament and not an extension of the protoplasm. In man it is inconspicuous, and many of the details here described can be made out only under most favorable conditions. The preceding account is based on studies of the guinea-pig (Meves, Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1909, vol. 73, pp. 751–792).

Mature spermatozoa are divided into three parts—the *head*, *neck*, and *tail*. The head (3–5 μ long and 2–3 μ wide) includes the nucleus, galea capitis and perforatorium. The neck consists of the anterior centrosome and the substance, not traversed by the axial filament, between it and the posterior centrosome. The neck in man is not constricted as in some forms, yet it is a place where the head may become detached. The tail includes three parts, the *connecting piece*, *chief piece* and *end piece*. The connecting piece (6 μ long and scarcely 1 μ wide) consists of protoplasm, axial and spiral filaments, and the two parts of the posterior centrosome. The chief piece (40–60 μ long) is the axial filament with its surrounding membrane; and the end piece (10μ) is a prolongation of the filament. When the spermatozoa become free they float in the albuminous fluid secreted in small quantity by the tubules of the testis. They pass through the straight tubules and rete to the epididymis, in which they accumulate, and where they first become motile. Their motility is greater, however, in the seminal fluid, which is a mixture of the products of the epididymis, seminal vesicles, prostate and bulbo-urethral glands. By an undulating movement of the tail, the head is propelled forward, always being directed *against* such a current as is made by cilia, at a rate of $\frac{1}{8}$ of an inch in a minute. Water inhibits the motion, which is favored by alkaline fluids; it occurs also in those faintly acid. For three days after death spermatozoa may retain their activity in the seminal passages; in the female urogenital tract they may live a week or more. In addition to normal spermatozoa, giant forms, and some with two heads or two tails occur, but these are probably functionless abnormalities. The production of spermatozoa, beginning at puberty, continues throughout life, but with advancing age the rate diminishes. Since about 60,000 spermatozoa occur in a cubic millimeter of seminal fluid, it has been estimated that 340 billions are produced in a lifetime.

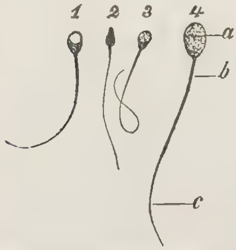


FIG. 320.—SPERMATOZOA: 1. 2. 3. HUMAN 4, FROM A BULL.
a, Head; b, connecting piece, and c, chief piece of the tail. 1, 3, and 4, Surface views; 2, side view. × 360.

The discovery of spermatozoa was reported to the Royal Society of London, in 1677 by Leeuwenhoek. They were first seen by Dr. Ham, "a man of singular modesty," to whom Leeuwenhoek gives full credit for the discovery in his letters to the Royal Society. He wrote as follows:

"This discerning youth visited me and brought with him, in a small glass vial, seminal fluid from a man who had cohabited with a diseased woman; and he stated that after some minutes when the fluid had become so attenuate that it could be put in a slender glass tube, he had seen living animalcules in it, which he thought were produced by some putrefaction. He added that those animalcules seemed to him to be provided with tails, and that they did not survive the space of twenty-four hours. Moreover he declared that when terebinth had been given to the patient internally, the animalcules appeared to be dead.

"I poured this material in a glass tube and examined it in the presence of Dr. Ham, and saw some live animalcules in it. But when after two or three hours, I examined the material more carefully, by myself, I saw that all the animalcules were dead."

Leeuwenhoek diligently pursued the study of these animalcules, and found them in enormous numbers in the semen of insects, fishes, birds and quadrupeds. He estimated that there were 150,000,000,000 in the milt of one fish, or more than ten times the number of men then living (13,385,000,000 homines in orbe terrarum). Leeuwenhoek believed that the animalcules were of two sexes, and that the egg consisted of a fluid in which they swam about and developed. To some it seemed not unreasonable that new individuals should be enclosed in the spermatozoa, like an insect in its chrysalis, and Dalenpatius (1699) thought that he could observe them. As quoted by Vallisneri, he wrote as follows, illustrating his account with the figure here reproduced (Fig. 321).

"We have seen some animalcules having just the form of tadpoles such as are found in brooks and muddy bogs in the month of May. The tail is four or five times as long as the body. They move with wonderful rapidity and by the strokes of their tails produce little waves in the substance in which they swim. But who would believe that in these a human body was hidden? Yet we have seen such with our own eyes. For while we were observing them attentively, a large one threw off its surrounding membrane and appeared naked, showing distinctly two legs, thighs, breasts and arms. The cast-off skin, drawn upward, covered the head like a cap, and it was a delightful and incredible sight. Because of the minuteness of the object, the sex could not be distinguished. After the little creature had lost its membrane it soon died."

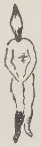


Fig. 321.

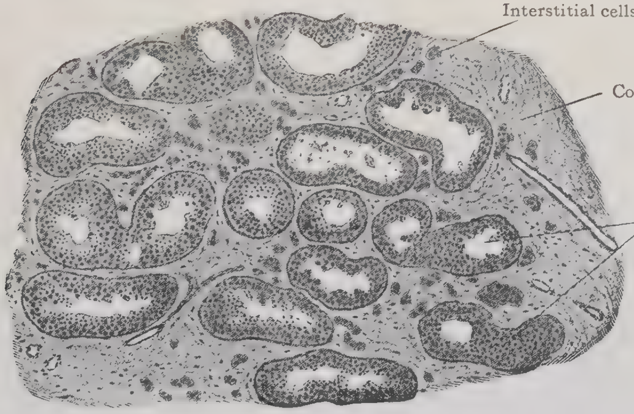


Fig. 322.—From a Cross Section of the Testis of a Man Twenty-two Years Old. × 50.

This is a gross presentation of the *preformation theory*, according to which the various parts of the adult are represented in the very young embryo. It was held by many who could not verify such observations. An alternative theory is that of *epigenesis*, according to which the body and its parts arise out of formless substance. Descartes (1664) wrote that the source of a new individual "seems to be only a confused mixture of liquors, which, serving to leaven one another, become heated; some of their agitated particles dilate, and press upon the others, gradually disposing them in the way necessary to form organs." Such physico-chemical speculations however, are quite as imaginative as any views of the preformationists and Descartes's epigenesis was early characterized as "a very lame account of the forming of an animal." Nevertheless, the doctrine of epigenesis, as advocated by Harvey (1651) and Wolff (1759), prevailed over the cruder ideas of preformation. If, however, the spermatozoon can contribute to the production of only one of the myriad forms of animals, even the sex of which is apparently predetermined, it is evident that the spermatozoon must possess a very definite chemical composition, and perhaps a corresponding ultra-microscopic structure. Doubtless there is a preformation no less remarkable than that expressed through the active imagination of Dalenpatius.

The *interstitial cells* (Figs. 318 and 322) probably arise from mesenchymal cells of the genital ridge, though some authors consider them as transformed Sertoli's cells. They are rounded or polygonal structures, in close contact, and without distinct cell boundaries. In their abundant protoplasm there may be pigment and other granules, fat droplets, and rod-shaped crystalloids, the significance of which is unknown.

The interstitial cells, although not intimately related with the vessels, are thought to produce an internal secretion, and certain observations suggest that the sexual instinct is dependent on these cells rather than upon the spermatozoa (*cf.* Whitehead, Anat. Rec., 1908, vol. 2, pp. 177–182). During senile or experimentally induced atrophy of the testis, the interstitial cells at first increase; later they are destroyed. At the same time the basement membrane becomes thickened and hyaline, fat droplets accumulate, and the sexual cells disappear from the tubules, leaving the sustentacular cells. Kingsbury compares the interstitial cells to similar cells in the ovary, in which he finds no evidence of secretion. On the other hand, Lipschutz (Endocrinology, 1923, vol. 7, pp. 1–18) considers them the seat of endocrine function in the testis.

Tubuli Recti and the Rete. The large convoluted tubules are 140 μ in diameter. As they pass toward the epididymis they decrease in size; they receive branches at acute angles and their windings diminish. Sexual cells disappear, leaving only the sustentacular cells in the form of a simple columnar epithelium. This flattens abruptly to form the lining of the straight tubules. These may enter the septula at any point from near the mediastinum to quite near the tunica albuginea. Both the straight tubules and the rete are lined with a simple epithelium of low cells. In some places these are very flat, suggesting endothelium; in others they are columnar. The characteristic dilatations of the rete tubules are shown in Fig. 323. They contain spermatozoa and immature sexual cells together with pigment granules and broken down cells.

The *arteries* of the testis are branches of the internal spermatic artery, which descends through the spermatic cord, beside the ductus deferens. The branches enter the testis in part through the mediastinum, and in part through the tunica vasculosa. They thus enter the septula both from the mediastinum and from the periphery. Branches leave the septula and form capillary plexuses around the convoluted tubules. There is some indication of vascular units within the lobules, but they are not well marked. The veins accompany the arteries. Lymphatic vessels are numerous in the tunica albuginea and extend among the tubules. Nerves from the spermatic plexus form a net in the deeper part of the tunica albuginea, and from there surround the vessels and tubules; the presence of intra-epithelial endings has not been established with certainty.

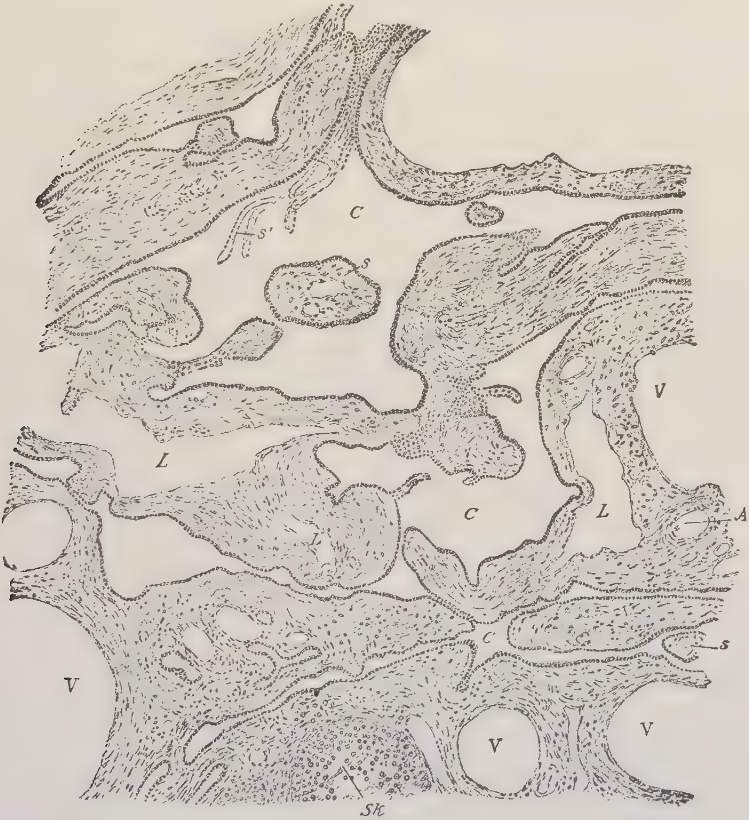


FIG. 323.—SECTION OF THE HUMAN RETE TESTIS. × 96. (Kölliker.)
A, Artery; **C,** rete tubules; **L,** lymphatic vessels; **s,** connective tissue partly surrounded by rete tubules; **Sk,** part of a convoluted tubule, to the left of which are sections, probably of straight tubules; **V,** vein.

EPIDIDYMIS

The *efferent ducts*, which pass from the rete to the duct of the epididymis, are lined with an epithelium in which groups of columnar cells alternate with those which are cuboidal (Figs. 324 and 325). Thus the inner surface of the epithelium has depressions suggesting glands, but the basal surface is free from outpocketings. The epithelium is generally simple, although in the tall parts it may appear two or three layered. The cells contain fat, pigment, and other granules, and produce a secretion which may appear in vesicular masses on the surface of the cells. Often the tall cells, and occasionally the short ones, are ciliated. The cilia vibrate so as to produce a current toward the ductus epididymidis. The cilia and secreting vacuoles are said to represent different phases of activity in similar cells. Beneath the cilia, basal bodies are found, said to be derived from the centrosomes and not genetically related to mitochondria. During the ciliated phase the cells divide only amitotically (Jordan and Helvestine, 1923, Anat. Record, v. 25, pp. 7–17). The epithelium rests on a striated basement membrane which is surrounded by a layer of circular smooth muscle fibers, several cells thick. The muscle layer is thickest toward the ductus epididymidis. Among the muscle cells there are elastic fibers, which, like

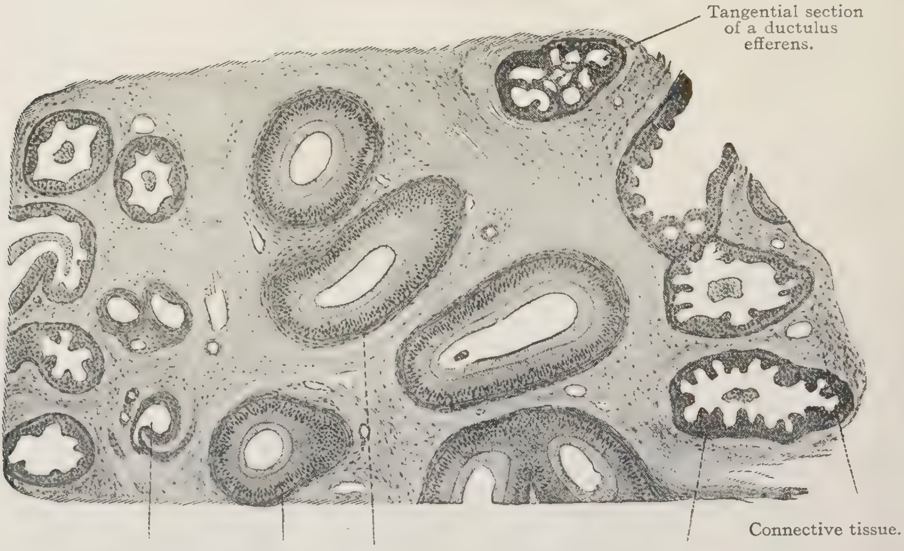

Tangential section of a ductulus efferens.
Connective tissue.
Blood vessel.
Epithelium
Circular muscles
of the ductus epididymidis.
Transverse section of a ductulus efferens.

Fig. 324.—From a Section of the Head of a Human Epididymis, showing Sections of the Ductus Epididymidis in the Center, and of Ductuli Efferentes on the Sides. × 50.

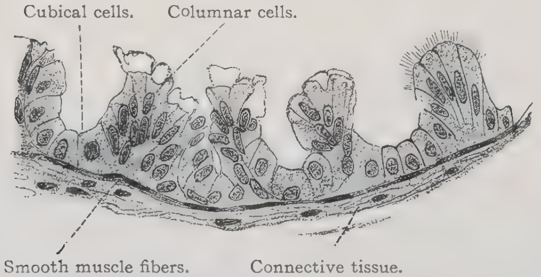


Fig. 325.—Transverse Section of a Ductulus Efferens, from the Testis of an Adult Man.

The right-hand end of the illustration is schematic. No cilia could be seen, although those of the epithelium of the epididymis were well preserved. × 360.

those of the ductus epididymidis and ductus deferens, first appear at puberty. There are no glands in the efferent ducts, but the irregularities in the epithelium are thought to be due to glandular activity. Before puberty and in old age these irregularities are slight.

The *ductus epididymidis* is lined by a two-rowed epithelium, with rounded basal cells and tall outer columnar cells. The latter contain secretory granules and sometimes pigment, and have in the middle of their free surfaces long non-motile hairs, without basal bodies, which in sections are usually matted in conical processes (Fig. 40, b, p. 56). These are said not to be discernible in fresh preparations; this would indicate that they represent coagulated secretions. According to Jordan and Helvestine, however, these cilia are the result of the disappearance of the hyaloplasmic constituents along the distal border of the cells during secretory activity. The epithelium may contain round cavities opening into the lumen or forming closed cysts. The delicate membrana propria and thick circular muscle layer complete the wall of the ductus, the convolutions of which occur in a loose connective tissue. Toward the ductus deferens the muscle layer thickens. There are no glands in the ductus epididymidis, but its cells produce considerable secretion in which the spermatozoa become active.

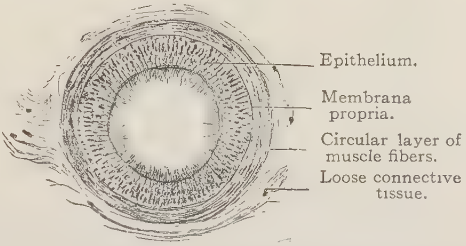


Fig. 326.—Transverse Section of a Human Ductus Epididymidis. × 80.

The blood vessels of the epididymis, which are few in comparison with those of the testis, lie in part so close to the efferent ducts as to cause the membrana propria to bulge toward the epithelium. The nerves, besides perivascular nets, form a thick *plexus myospermaticus* provided with sympathetic ganglia. It is found in the muscle layer, which it supplies, sending fibers also into the mucosa. In the ductus deferens and seminal vesicles this plexus is said to be more highly developed than in the epididymis.

Ductus Deferens

The ductus deferens begins as a convoluted tube continuous with the ductus epididymidis; it becomes straight and passes to its termination in the ductus ejaculatorius. Shortly before reaching the prostate it exhibits a spindle-shaped enlargement or *ampulla* about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch long and $\frac{3}{8}$ inch wide (Fig. 328). The ductus deferens consists of a mucosa, muscularis and adventitia. Near the epididymis the epithelium is like that of the ductus epididymidis, but in the spermatic cord this changes to a simple columnar layer, without basal cells; the non-motile cilia may disappear. Toward the ampulla it may be several rowed, resembling the epithelium of the bladder. It rests on a connective tissue tunica propria, which is surrounded by the three layers of the muscularis. The inner and outer layers are longitudinal and generally less developed than the middle circular layer. The adventitia is a loose elastic connective tissue, blending with that which forms the *spermatic cord*. The latter contains numerous arteries, veins, lymphatics and nerves, together with the striated muscle fibers of the cremaster muscle, and the rudiment of the processus vaginalis. The veins are very numerous and constitute the pampiniform plexus (*i.e.*, tendril-like). Their walls are usually provided with a very thick musculature including both circular and longitudinal fibers.

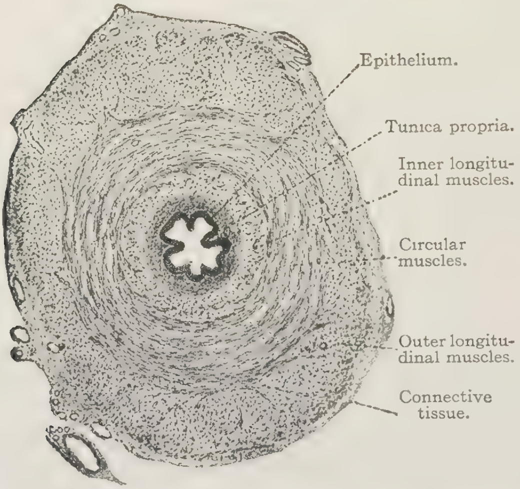


Fig. 327.—Cross Section of the Human Ductus Deferens. × 24.

In the ampulla the longitudinal folds, which are low in the ductus deferens, become tall and branched, so that they partly enclose irregular spaces (*diverticula*). Similar folds occur in the seminal vesicles. It is doubtful whether in either place any of the spaces should be considered glands. Around the ampulla the musculature is irregularly arranged; the longitudinal layers separate into strands which terminate toward the ejaculatory ducts.

Seminal Vesicles and Ejaculatory Ducts

The seminal vesicles grow out from the ductus deferentes at the prostatic ends of their ampullæ. Their development has been studied by Watson (Am. J. Anat., 1918, vol. 24, pp. 395–441). Each consists of a number of saccular expansions arranged along the main outgrowth, which is irregularly coiled. The lining of the sacs is honeycombed with folds as shown in Figs. 328 and 329. There are no true glands, the irregularity serving merely to increase the surface. The epithelium may consist of two layers, for between the bases of the low columnar cells a varying number of small cells may be found, sometimes forming an almost complete basal layer. The height of the columnar cells varies with the distention of the vesicles. Granules occur in the cells, and after puberty they are said to contain an iron-free lipochrome, giving a brownish color to the epithelium. The secretion is a clear gelatinous material, sometimes brownish. In specimens stained with eosine it appears as a stringy, dull-red mass, partly filling the larger lumens. Spermatozoa are generally found in the human vesicles, but except during sexual excitement they are absent from the vesicles of rodents; this and other facts indicate that the function of the organ is primarily glandular. The lumens of the various sexual glands are generally of very large caliber, associated with the storing of secretions. During ejaculation the spermatozoa are forced from the ductus epididymidis and ductus deferens by the action of their muscular walls, and the contents of the seminal vesicles and prostate are added. According to Akutsu (Pfluger's Arch., 1903, v. 96, pp. 541–553), the stimulation for the entire complex is carried by the hypogastric nerves.

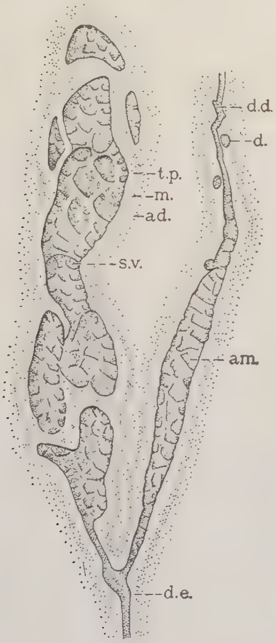


Fig. 328.—Seminal Vesicle and Ductus Deferens. (This is natural size.) (After Eberth.)

ad., Adventitia; **am.**, ampulla; **d.**, diverticulum; **d. d.**, ductus deferens; **d. e.**, ductus ejaculatorius; **m.**, muscularis; **s. v.**, seminal vesicle; **t. p.**, tunica propria.

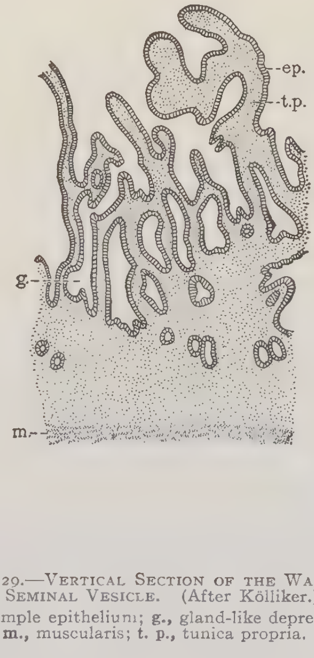


Fig. 329.—Vertical Section of the Wall of a Seminal Vesicle. (After Kölliker.)

ep., Simple epithelium; **g.**, gland-like depression; **m.**, muscularis; **t. p.**, tunica propria.

The *ductus ejaculatorii*, along their dorso-median sides, are beset with a series of appendages, which do not project externally but are wholly enclosed in the connective tissue wall of the duct. Some of these appendages show the same structure as the seminal vesicles and therefore might be described as accessory seminal vesicles; others are simply convolutions of alveolo-tubular glands which may be compared with prostate glands. The mucous membrane of the ductus ejaculatorii is like that of the seminal vesicles, except that its folds are not so complicated. Muscle fibers occur only around the appendages. The wall of the duct itself consists of an inner dense layer of connective tissue with circular strands, and an outer loose layer (adventitia).

Appendices and Paradidymis

The appendices are frequently called *hydatids*, which is a general term for watery cysts. The *appendix testis* is a small lobule of connective tissue projecting from the groove between the head of the epididymis and the testis (Fig. 330). It is quite constant, having been reported in 90% of the testes examined. The projection is covered with the peritoneum of the tunica vaginalis, which may be thickened around it, or corrugated, suggesting the fimbriated orifice of the uterine tube. The appendix consists of vascular connective tissue and encloses a canal, or fragments of canals, lined with simple columnar epithelium which is sometimes ciliated. It is generally not cystic, and it may be pedunculated, so that the terms "hydatid of Morgagni" and "sessile hydatid," formerly applied to it, are inappropriate. Although its canal has been reported as connecting with the seminal ducts, this is not now believed to be the case; the structure is regarded as the degenerated end of the Müllerian duct.

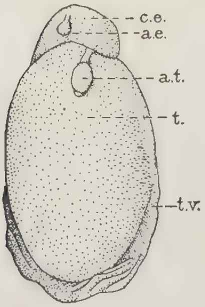


Fig. 330.—Front View of a Testis, somewhat reduced. (After Eberth.) **a. e.**, Appendix epididymidis; **a. t.**, appendix testis; **c. e.**, caput epididymidis; **t.** testis; **t. v.**, tunica vaginalis.

The *appendix epididymidis* (stalked hydatid) is not always present. Among 105 cases examined by Toldt it was found twenty-nine times. It consists of loose vascular connective tissue covered by the vaginalis, and contains a dilated canal lined with columnar epithelium, sometimes ciliated. The canal generally has no connection with the tubules of the epididymis. It is regarded as a persistence of detached degenerating Wolffian tubules, or possibly of the terminal portion of the Wolffian duct.

The *paradidymis*, according to Toldt (Verh. Anat. Gesellsch., 1892, pp. 241–242), occurs in two forms. The first is found frequently, but by no means regularly, in older embryos and in children. It is a round or elongated structure, conspicuous because of its white color, found on the ventral side of the spermatic cord, either behind the head of the epididymis or higher up. Microscopically it is seen to be a thin, coiled, blind canal, expanded in places, and lined with a simple columnar epithelium. Occasionally there are two to four such structures at varying distances from one another. In later years they all disappear. They never contain spermatozoa.

The second form of paradidymis was found by Toldt in late childhood and in adults, but it does not occur regularly. It is always immediately behind the head of the epididymis and in front of the pampiniform plexus. It consists of a canal, sometimes with saccular dilatations, which is easily followed with the naked eye. The tubule may be closed at both ends, or one end may connect with the epididymis or testis; sometimes one end connects with the testis and the other with the epididymis. These tubules may contain spermatozoa, and they have been said to resemble the efferent ducts in structure. They may be ciliated.

Toldt regards the first form of paradidymis as due to persistent Wolffian tubules, and the second as a late separation of an efferent duct from its connection with the epididymis. He notes that the second form may give rise to cysts of varying size. Other cysts in the vicinity of the epididymis are said to arise from inpocketings of the tunica vaginalis.

PROSTATE

The prostate is a group of branched tubulo-alveolar glands, imbedded in a mass of muscular tissue, which stands before the outlet of the bladder. The smooth muscle of the adult prostate forms a quarter of the bulk of the organ, and together with an elastic connective tissue, it unites the numerous glands in a compact mass. The development of these glands up to the time of birth, has been studied by Lowsley (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1912, vol. 13, pp. 299–349). He finds that the prostate includes from fifty-three to seventy-four separate glands (the average number being sixty-three) which are grouped in five lobes. The middle lobe consists of nine to ten large glands growing out from the dorsal side of the urethra, between the bladder and the openings of the ejaculatory ducts. The glands of the posterior lobe grow out from the dorsal wall of the urethra below the ejaculatory ducts; those of the right and left lobes develop from the sides of the prostatic urethra; and those of the anterior lobe proceed from its ventral surface. The anterior lobe is well developed in young embryos, but it "shrinks into insignificance at the twenty-second week." It may persist in the adult, but the great mass of the prostatic glands is at the sides and back of the prostatic urethra. The number of glands apparently becomes reduced. In the adult it is said to be from thirty to fifty.

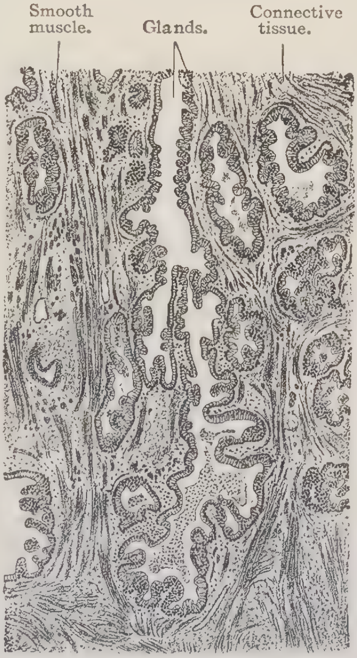


FIG. 331.—FROM A SECTION OF THE PROSTATE OF A MAN TWENTY-THREE YEARS OLD. × 50.

The glandular epithelium is simple and either cuboidal or columnar. It may appear stratified as it passes over the folds in the walls of the tubules. Near the outlet of the larger ducts the epithelium is like that of the bladder and prostatic urethra. In the prostatic alveoli, of older persons especially, round or oval colloid masses from 0.3 to 1.0 mm. in diameter occur; as seen in sections (Fig. 332) they exhibit concentric layers. Their reactions on treatment with iodine solutions suggest amyloid. These concretions are probably deposited around fragments of cells. Octahedral crystals also occur in the prostatic secretion, which is a thin milky emulsion, faintly acid; it has a characteristic odor, whereas the other constituents of the seminal fluid are said to be odorless.

The smooth muscle fibers are found everywhere between the prostatic lobules; toward the urethra they thicken to form the internal sphincter of the bladder. Smooth muscle is also abundant on the surface of the prostate, and it borders upon the striated fibers of the sphincter of the membranous urethra. The prostate is abundantly supplied with blood and lymphatic vessels. The numerous nerves form ganglionated plexuses from which non-medullated fibers pass to the smooth muscles; others of the nerves have free endings; still others, both in the outer and inner parts of the gland in dogs and cats, end in cylindrical lamellar corpuscles.

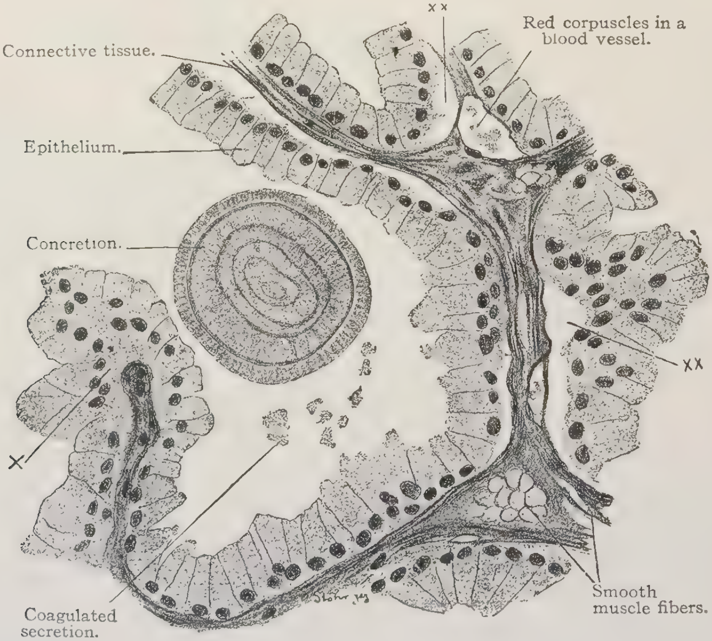


FIG. 332.—FROM A SECTION OF THE PROSTATE OF A MAN TWENTY-THREE YEARS OLD. × 360. The epithelium is cut obliquely at **x**, and has artificially separated from the connective tissue at **xx**.

The ducts of the prostate are of smaller caliber than the irregular glandular portions, and concretions may block the outlets of individual glands. Continued secretion may cause distention, accompanied by a flattening of the epithelium, and by an increase of the muscular tissue in an endeavor to relieve the pressure. The enlarged gland may ultimately constrict the urethra, which it nearly encircles. In rodents one pair of the lobes of the prostate is differentiated to supply the material which causes the coagulation of the seminal fluid in the vagina, and the formation of the vaginal plug. (Engle, 1926, Anat. Record, v. 34, pp. 75–90.)

The *utriculus prostaticus* (uterus masculinus, vagina masculina) is a small pocket lined with stratified epithelium, opening into the dorsal wall of the urethra midway between the orifices of the ejaculatory ducts, or a little above them. It is sometimes absent, and is occasionally quite deep. Lowsley failed to find any small prostatic tubules opening into it, such as have been reported as occasionally present. The utriculus prostaticus is the lower end of the Müllerian ducts, which have fused, and it corresponds with the vagina in the female.

URETHRA AND PENIS

The form of epithelium found in the bladder extends through the prostatic to the membranous part of the urethra. Its outer cells gradually become elongated and it changes to the simple or few-layered columnar epithelium of the cavernous portion. In the dilatation of the urethra near its distal end, the *fossa navicularis*, the epithelium becomes stratified with its outer cells squamous; the underlying papillæ of the tunica propria become prominent, and the whole is the beginning of the gradual transition from mucous membrane to skin.

Glands. Small groups of mucous cells are scattered along the urethra; and in the cavernous part, especially on the upper wall, they form pockets called *urethral glands* (of Littré). Often these pockets are on the sides of epithelial pits so that the glands are branched. Non-glandular pits also occur, known as *urethral lacunæ*, and the "paraurethral ducts" near the external orifice are large lacunæ of various sorts. The development of the urethral glands has been studied by Johnson (Journ. Urol., 1920, v. 4, pp. 447–501).

Two glands of considerable importance empty by irregularly dilated ducts, $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. long, into the beginning of the cavernous urethra. The bodies of these *bulbo-urethral glands* (Cowper's glands) are found one on either side of the membranous urethra, in close relation with striated and smooth muscle fibers. The end pieces, which are partly alveolar and partly tubular, anastomose. They consist of mucous cells, with intercellular secretory capillaries, and produce a clear, glairy mucus, discharged during sexual excitement. The ducts, surrounded by thin rings of smooth muscles, consist of simple low epithelium. They may connect directly with the end pieces, or a secretory duct may intervene.

The *muscularis* of the prostatic part of the urethra consist of an inner longitudinal and an outer circular layer of smooth muscles. Both layers continue throughout the membranous part; the circular layer ends in the beginning of the cavernous urethra leaving only oblique and longitudinal bundles in its distal part.

Corpus cavernosum urethræ. In the submucosa of the cavernous urethra there are many veins (Fig. 333) which become larger and more numerous in and beyond the muscularis. This vascular tissue which surrounds the urethra is limited by a dense elastic connective tissue layer, the *tunica albuginea*, and the structure which is thus bounded is the *corpus cavernosum urethræ*. Toward the perineum it ends in a round enlargement, the *bulbus urethræ*, and distally it terminates in the *glans penis*. The urethra enters the upper surface of this corpus cavernosum near the bulbus. Branches of the internal pudendal (pudic) artery, namely, the arteriæ bulbi and the urethral arteries, penetrate the albuginea, and the former pass the length of the cavernous body and end in the glans. These arteries have particularly thick walls of circular muscle, and in cross sections the initma may be seen to form coarse rounded projections into the lumen. These projections contain longitudinal muscles and subdivisions of the inner circular elastic membrane (Fig. 334). The arteries in the corpus cavernosum produce capillaries found chiefly toward the albuginea. The capillaries empty into thin-walled venous spaces which appear as endothelium-lined clefts in a connective tissue containing many smooth muscle fibers. The cavernous body is permeated with these spaces which, at times of sexual excitement, become distended with blood, reducing the tissue between them to thin trabeculæ. Such distensible vascular tissue is known as *erectile tissue*. Some arteries connect directly

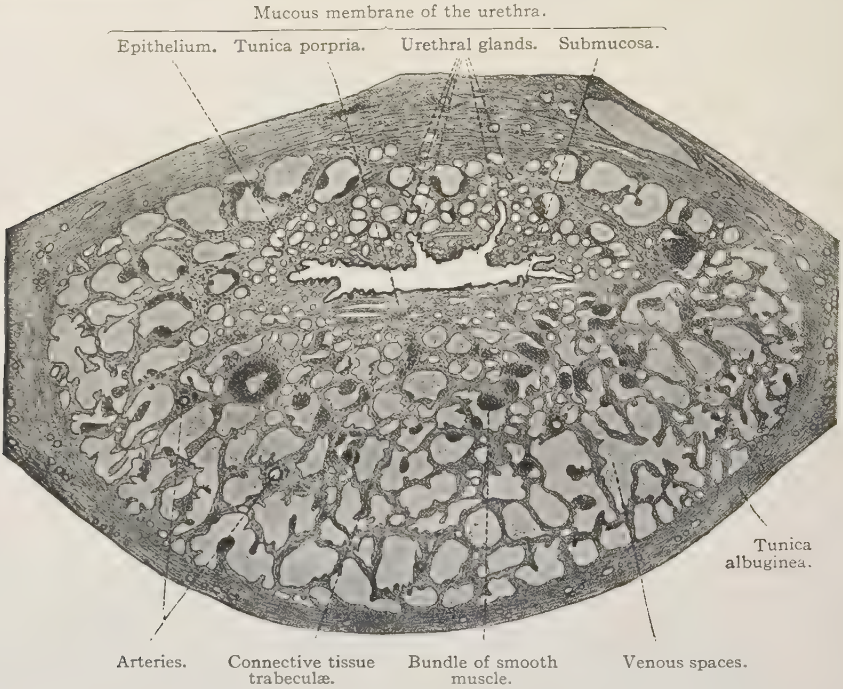


FIG. 333.—TRANSVERSE SECTION OF THE PARS CAVERNOSA URETHRÆ OF MAN. × 28.

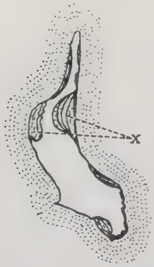


FIG. 334.—CROSS SECTION OF AN ARTERY OF THE BULBUS URETHRÆ, SHOWING THICKENINGS OF THE INTIMA AT X. Elastic tissue stain. (After Eberth.)

with the venous spaces, and such as appear coiled or C-shaped in a collapsed condition are called *arteriæ helicinæ.* The *venæ cavernosæ* have such very thick walls that they resemble arteries. They contain an abundance of inner longitudinal muscle fibers, and since these are not evenly distributed but occur in columns, the lumen of the veins is usually crescentic or stellate in cross section. Emissary veins pass out through the albuginea and empty into the median dorsal vein of the penis.

The *corpora cavernosa penis* are a pair of structures similar to the cavernous body of the urethra, and are found side by side above it (Fig. 335). The septum between them is perforated distally so that they communicate with one another. Each is surrounded by a very dense albuginea, 1 mm. thick, divisible into an outer longitudinal and an inner circular layer of fibrous tissue. The septum is formed by the median fusion of these layers. The cavernous or erectile tissue of which these corpora are composed is essentially like that around the urethra.

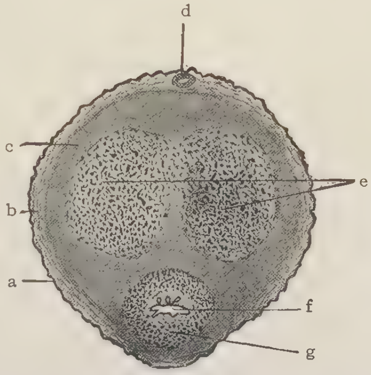


Fig. 335.—Cross Section of a Penis.
a., Skin; **b.**, subcutaneous tissue; **c.**, tunica albuginea; **d.**, dorsal vein; **e.**, corpora cavernosa penis; **f.**, urethra; **g.**, corpus cavernosum urethraæ. (Bailey.)

All three cavernous bodies are surrounded by fascia and subcutaneous tissue containing blood vessels, lymphatics and nerves. The lymphatic vessels form a superficial and a deep set, the latter receiving branches from the urethra. The principal sensory nerves are the medullated *dorsal nerves of the penis.* They terminate in many tactile corpuscles in the papillæ beneath the skin, in bulbous and genital corpuscles in the deeper connective tissue, and in lamellar corpuscles found near or in the cavernous bodies. Free endings also occur. The sympathetic nerves are from a continuation of the prostatic plexus. They constitute the cavernous plexus, which includes the *major cavernous nerves* accompanying the dorsal nerves of the penis, and the *minor cavernous nerves* which enter the roots of the corpora cavernosa penis. The sympathetic nerves supply the numerous smooth muscles of the trabeculæ and cavernous blood vessels. They are said to be joined by fibers from the lower spinal nerves, the *nervi erigentes.*

FEMALE GENITAL ORGANS

Development and General Features

Although it is probable that sex is determined at the time of the fertilization of the ovum, and that it cannot be modified by subsequent conditions of any sort, the sex of young embryos cannot be recognized. All human embryos of 13 mm. possess a prominent genital papilla; they have both Wolffian and Müllerian ducts, in so far as the latter have developed; and they contain genital ridges which are still in an "indifferent stage"—it cannot be said whether they will become ovaries or testes—(*cf.* Fig. 310, p. 333). Slight sex differences in the shape of the genital papilla and in the position and extent of the cloacal membrane have been described, and may serve to shorten the indifferent period. (Spaulding, Contrib. to Embry., 1921, vol. 13, pp. 67–88.) In the female the Müllerian ducts become highly developed, the Wolffian ducts degenerate, and the genital ridges produce ovaries.

The Müllerian Ducts. Before reaching the urogenital sinus, the lower ends of the Müllerian ducts are in contact, being situated between the Wolffian ducts (Fig. 336). The figure here reproduced represents a portion of the genital apparatus shown in Fig. 288, B, p. 314, both being sketched from the beautiful lithographs accompanying Keibel's fundamental account of the development of the human urogenital tract, which students should consult in its original form (Arch. f. Anat. u. Entw., 1896, pp. 55–156). A fusion of the Müllerian ducts begins just above their lower termination and extends downward to the urogenital sinus. Thus the entire ducts form a Y-shaped structure, and the lower part of the stem becomes the vagina. It is at first a solid cord of cells, but those in the center break down and a lumen appears, "first in embryos of 150–200 mm." The lower end of the vagina remains closed by epithelium for some time longer, and as the vagina enlarges, a transverse fold, the *hymen*, is formed at this point. With the breaking down of the central cells, the hymen becomes perforate; it then usually forms a crescentic fold on the dorsal side of the entrance to the vagina (Fig. 337). Its remains permanently mark the orifice of the Müllerian ducts.

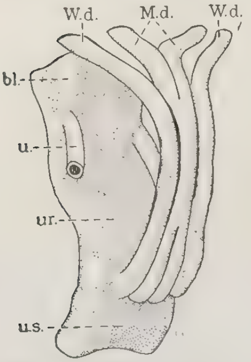


FIG. 336.—RECONSTRUCTION SHOWING THE FUSION OF THE MULLERIAN DUCTS. (After Keibel.)

bl., Bladder; **M.d.**, Müllerian duct; **u.**, ureter; **ur.**, urethra; **u.s.**, urogenital sinus; **W.d.**, Wolffian duct.

Above the vagina the Müllerian ducts form the lining of the uterus, which develops from the upper part of the stem of the Y, and from the inner ends of its arms. This region of junction becomes surrounded by a very thick layer of smooth muscle. The occasional occurrence of a median septum in the uterus or vagina, dividing them into right and left halves, is due to imperfect fusion of the Müllerian ducts.

The outer portions of the Müllerian ducts retain relatively thin walls and become the *uterine* (or Fallopian) *tubes*. Each opens freely through its fimbriated extremity into the abdominal cavity.

The Wolffian Bodies and Wolffian Ducts. In the female these structures become functionless and degenerate. Their principal derivative is a group of blind tubules, which may readily be seen in the translucent mesentery-like membrane extending between the ovary and tube. These tubules were named the "organ of Rosenmüller" after their discoverer, who described them in 1802, and were called the "parovarium" (later corrected to paroöphoron) because of their position beside the ovary; but when it was shown that these tubules were homologous with the epididymis, they were given a corresponding name, and are now known as the *epoöphoron* (ἐπί, upon; ὠοφόρος, ovary). The epoöphoron consists of "8 to 20" *transverse ducts*, which begin with blind ends in or near the upper end of the ovary and follow a more or less convoluted course to the *longitudinal duct*, into which they empty (Fig. 337). They are lined with simple cuboidal or columnar epithelium, sometimes ciliated, and are surrounded with muscle fibers. Occasionally there are detached solid cords in their vicinity, and sometimes the tubes become cystic. Obviously they correspond with the efferent ducts of the testis, and the longitudinal duct, into which they empty, represents the duct of the epididymis. Some of the transverse tubules, or the main duct itself, may extend into soft round nodules of tissue projecting from the mesentery, to which they may be attached by slender pedicles. These *appendices vesiculosæ* correspond with the appendix of the epididymis. Frequently there is a vesicular appendix entirely separate from the epoöphoron, situated near the fimbriated orifice of the uterine tube, and said by Felix to develop around an accessory Müllerian duct. Although accessory ducts have not been found in the male, the relations of this structure to the Müllerian duct suggest a comparison with the appendix testis. Both in the female and the male the appendages have been described as of two sorts, connected with the Müllerian and Wolffian ducts respectively.

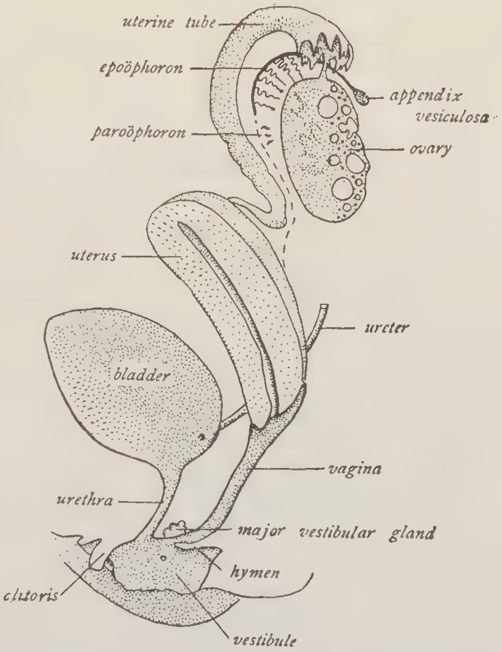


Fig. 337.—Diagram of the Female Genital Organs.

The occasional presence of uterine tissue within the cortex of the ovary is thought to represent the lower end of a short accessory Müllerian duct enclosed by the developing gland. The organ at present called the paroöphoron is a remnant of the Wolffian tubules corresponding with the paradidymis, occasionally found near the hylus of the ovary, disappearing by the fifth year.

The lower end of the Wolffian duct, which corresponds with the ductus deferens, may remain as the *canal of Gärtner*. This canal terminates near the hymen. It may extend upward beside the vagina, and be enclosed in the musculature of the lower part of the uterus; usually it is entirely obliterated.

Development of the Ovary. Like the testis, the ovary is formed from the middle portion of the genital ridge. The peritoneum which covers it gives rise to the mass of cells in its interior, and deep within, the cells become arranged in medullary cords and a *rete ovarii*, the latter developing probably from the anterior third of the genital ridge. The rete cords do not connect with the Wolffian tubules. They acquire lumens about birth, and are bounded by simple epithelium; they remain in the adult and may become cystic (Wilkerson, Anat. Rec., 1923, vol. 26, pp. 75–77).

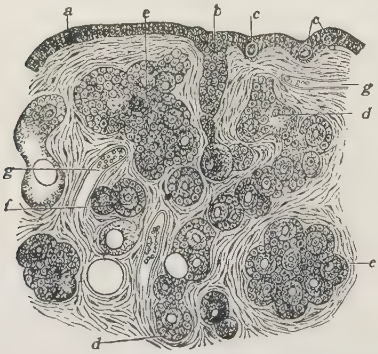


FIG. 338.—SECTION OF THE OVARY AT BIRTH. (Waldeyer.)

a, Epithelium; **b**, epithelial cord; **c**, sexual cell; **d**, detached cord; **e**, group of follicles; **f**, a single primary follicle; **g**, blood vessel.

The medullary cords contain sex cells and supporting cells, and become segmented by the connective tissue into rounded or irregular groups, in which the ova are surrounded by the indifferent cells. These groups, or primary follicles, are imbedded in a stroma likewise derived from the peritoneum. They develop to large hollow structures, as will be explained later, during fetal life. They degenerate, however, without coming to maturity. Meanwhile the ovary increases greatly in size, new material being added peripherally from the peritoneal layer or by the multiplication of the cells beneath it. New cords are formed containing the two types of cells (Pflüger's egg-tubes). New follicles are made from the inner end of these cords (Fig. 338). After birth the peritoneal layer becomes separated from the cords by a tunica albuginea. The activity of the follicles ceases somewhat, so that a definite cortex appears, marked by the presence of immature follicles in a connective tissue stroma. A good description of the development in the cat is given by Kingsbury (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1913, vol. 15, pp. 345–387).

In the rete ovarii and the cords there is an obvious homology with the rete and tubules of the testis. Some writers would restrict this homology to the fetal cords and follicles, all of which degenerate early. The later growth of follicles would then be considered as a female characteristic superposed on the male structure.

Felix considers that the follicles develop, for the most part at least, directly from the tissue of the genital ridge, and states that tubes or cords growing in from the peritoneal epithelium, as described by Pflüger, do not exist in the human ovary

Ligaments. As the Müllerian ducts come together below, they occupy ridges covered with peritoneum. These ridges coalesce so as to form a partition which crosses the pelvis from side to side and rises upward from its floor. Ventral to the partition is the bladder, separated from it by the vesico-uterine pouch; dorsal to it is the rectum, separated by the deeper recto-uterine pouch; and within it are the uterus and tubes. In the adult these folds of peritoneum extending laterally from the uterus constitute its *broad ligaments*. The Wolffian bodies and ovaries, which at first occupy vertical ridges on either side of the root of the mesentery, appear to slip down or descend into the interior of the broad ligaments, from the dorsal surfaces of which the ovaries later project.

Above each ovary there is a band of fibrous tissue which extends to the orifice of the tube, and running along this band there is a fimbria known as the *fimbria ovarica;* this arrangement apparently serves to keep the orifice of the tube in close relation with the ovary. Below the ovary, between the laminæ of the broad ligament, a cord of fibrous tissue passes from it to the musculature of the uterus, lying just below the uterine tube; this is the *ovarian ligament*. The *round ligaments* start from the uterine musculature not far from the ends of the ovarian ligaments. They pass downward, one on either side within the broad ligament, and terminate in the folds which correspond with those of the scrotum. The ovarian and round ligaments are believed to be subdivisions of a single structure equivalent to the *gubernaculum testis*.

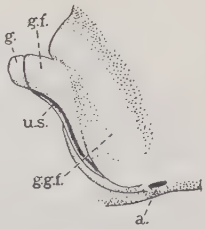


FIG. 339.—DIAGRAM OF THE EXTERNAL GENITAL ORGANS OF A FEMALE EMBRYO.

a., anus; **g.**, glans clitoridis; **g. f.**, lesser genital folds (labia minora); **g. g. f.**, greater genital folds (labia majora); **u. s.**, uro-genital sinus (vestibule).

The External Genital Organs. The urogenital sinus, which receives the urethra and vagina, becomes a shallow space called the *vestibule* (Fig. 337). The genital papilla, with the *glans* at its apex, becomes relatively shorter as the female embryo develops. It forms the *clitoris*, analogous with the penis, and is covered by the lesser genital folds, the *labia minora*. (Compare Fig. 339 with Fig. 313, A, page 336.) The labia form a prepuce for the clitoris but do not unite beneath it to make a raphe; they remain separate, as parts of the lateral boundaries of the vestibule. The larger genital folds, *labia majora*, likewise remain separate. They receive the ends of the round ligaments of the uterus which pass into them over the pubic bones, sometimes accompanied by a prolongation of the peritoneal cavity forming a processus vaginalis. In late stages of development the labia majora become large enough to conceal the clitoris and labia minora, which previously project between them.

OVARY

The ovary is an oval body about an inch and a half long, covered by a modified portion of the peritoneum, the epithelial cells of which are cuboidal or low columnar. Along its *hilus* it is attached to a mesentery, the *mesovarium*, which is a subdivision of the broad ligament of the uterus. The epithelium of the mesovarium is continuous with that of the ovary, and its connective tissue joins the mass which forms the ovarian medulla. This tissue, rich in elastic fibers and containing strands of smooth muscle, surrounds the vessels and nerves. The blood vessels are abundant, and they pursue a very tortuous course both in the mesovarium and within the ovary. This is strikingly shown in Clark's injections (Johns Hopkins Hosp. Rep., 1900, vol. 9). They are derived in part from branches of the uterine vessels, but are chiefly the terminations of the ovarian artery and vein. Large stems traverse the medulla and form capillary plexuses around the follicles in the cortex. Thin-walled lymphatic vessels arise in the cortex below the rather dense sub-peritoneal layer (or *tunica albuginea*) and pass out at the hilus. The nerves are chiefly non-medullated sympathetic fibers, derived from the plexus which accompanies the ovarian artery, and distributed to the blood vessels. Ganglion cells have been found near the hilus, and a few medullated fibers occur. It is said that certain fibers end in contact with the cells of the follicles.

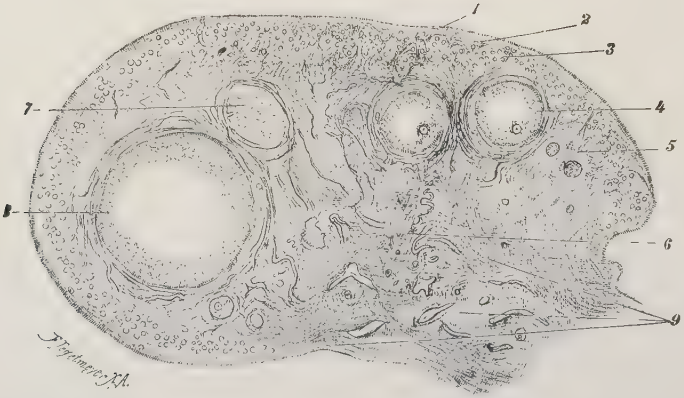


FIG. 340.—CROSS SECTION OF THE OVARY OF A CHILD EIGHT YEARS OLD. × 10.
1, Germinal epithelium; 2, tunica albuginea; 3, peripheral zone with primary follicles; 4, vesicular follicle; 5, stroma ovarii; 6, medulla; 7, 8, peripheral section of vesicular follicles; 9, hilus, containing large veins.

The relation of the cortical stroma to the looser tissue of the medulla is so characteristic that sections of the human ovary containing few ova and no active follicles may be readily identified. Usually a section of the ovary may be recognized as such without magnification, owing to the presence of the large cysts or follicles in which the maturing ova are contained. These extend from the cortex into the medulla, and are numerous even in childhood (Fig. 340).

Growth of the Follicles. It is probable that all the sexual cells which are to be produced in a life-time are present in the ovaries at birth. At that stage, at least, many of those previously formed have already degenerated; and the ovaries contain a great excess of ova, all but a few hundred of which are destined to atrophy within the limits of the genital glands. In so far as the sexual cells have ceased to multiply and have entered upon the growth period, they represent the last generation of oögonia, and are being transformed into primary oöcytes. During this transformation they increase greatly in size, finally becoming about 0.3 mm. in diameter. These egg cells have already been described in detail (p. 32). They are conspicuous in sections as large, round, deeply staining cells, with round or oval vesicular nuclei, each containing a prominent nucleolus. The cells become so large that frequently they are cut into several sections, and portions of protoplasm without nuclei are to be expected. The larger oöcytes are surrounded by the clear, radially striated *zona pellucida* (Fig. 19); their protoplasm may contain the vitelline bodies previously described.

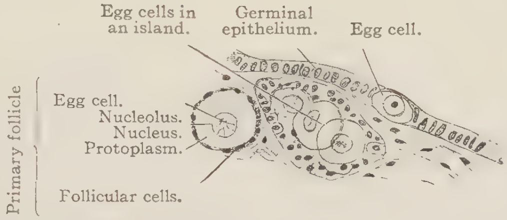


Fig. 341.—From a Section of the Ovary of a Child Four Weeks Old. × 240.

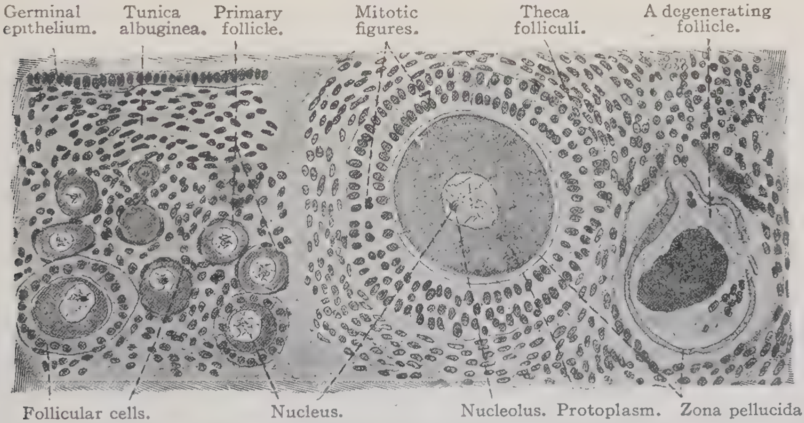


Fig. 342.—From a Section of a Rabbit's Ovary. × 240.

The follicles are composed of oöcytes and their surrounding cells. After the groups of egg cells and indifferent cells become subdivided, each oöcyte is typically surrounded by a single layer of flat follicular cells, and this *primary follicle* lies isolated in the stroma of the cortex, beneath the tunica albuginea (Figs. 341 and 342). As the follicle enlarges, the follicular cells become more numerous, and thus crowd each other into cuboidal and columnar shapes, and later form a stratified layer. A crescentic cleft filled with fluid appears in the midst of the stratified epithelium on one side of the follicle, and by the accumulation of fluid, or *liquor folliculi*, this cleft becomes a spherical cavity (Fig. 343). The fluid is regarded by some as a transudate from the blood vessels, which are abundant in the stroma outside of the follicle. Others consider that it is actively secreted by the cells of the follicle, certain of which undergo liquefaction. Spaces, around which the cells are radially arranged, and containing a stainable fluid differing from that in the main cavity, may appear in the epithelium (Call-Exner bodies). By the development of the main cavity, the stratified epithelium becomes a relatively thin layer, the *stratum granulosum*, which decreases in width as the follicle enlarges. The oöcyte is on one side of the follicle, contained in a heap of cells known as the *cumulus oöphorus* (formerly called the discus proligerus). This is connected with the wall of the follicle, but in certain sections it may appear completely detached (*e.g.*, in a section at right angles with the plane of the page, near the top of the cumulus in Fig. 343).

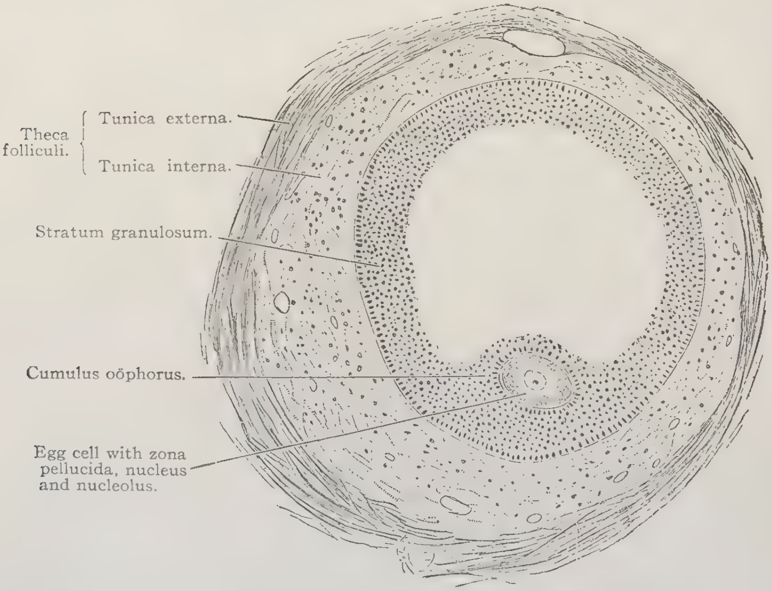


FIG. 343.—SECTION OF A LARGE VESICULAR FOLLICLE OF A CHILD EIGHT YEARS OLD. × 90. The clear space within the follicle contains the liquor folliculi.

As the follicle increases in size it moulds the surrounding connective tissue stroma into a sheath, the *theca folliculi* (Fig. 342). This later becomes differentiated into a vascular *tunica interna*, and a fibrous *tunica* *externa* (Fig. 343). The tunica interna contains many cells with abundant protoplasm. It is separated from the epithelium of the follicle by a delicate membrana propria.

In distinction from the solid *primary follicles*, those with cavities are known as *vesicular follicles* (Graafian follicles). They increase in diameter from 0.5 to 12.0 mm., and are then ready to discharge the contained oöcyte. Occasionally a single follicle has two oöcytes, and rarely more. Kennedy (Journ. Anat., 1924, vol. 58, pp. 328–334) reports several cases of polyovular follicles in man, and thinks they are not extremely rare. As many as eleven oöcytes have been counted in one follicle. It cannot be stated whether the additional oöcytes develop by division of the oögonium within a primary follicle, or by the failure of a group of primitive sexual cells to become separated from one another.

Ovulation and the Corpus Luteum. Around the mature vesicular follicle, the tunica interna becomes very thick and cellular, forming elevations toward the stratum granulosum. At this stage the follicle is large, being about half an inch in diameter, and one surface of it is so close to the ovarial epithelium as to cause it to bulge and then to rupture. Through the opening thus made the liquor folliculi escapes, together with the oöcyte. The latter is said to become detached by the formation of fluid-filled spaces between the cells of the cumulus; it generally carries with it more or less of the innermost layer of the cumulus, and these cells, because of their radial arrangement, are termed the *corona radiata*. As the oöcyte leaves the follicle there is apparently a chance for it to become lost in the abdominal cavity, but the fimbriated orifice of the tube is near at hand, and the stroke of its cilia produces a current toward its entrance. In a guinea-pig Hensen observed that the fimbriæ were in very active motion, sweeping here and there over the surface of the ovary so powerfully that the effect of ciliary action must have been trivial. The ova, surrounded by the mucoid cells of the follicles, adhered more closely to the fimbriæ than to the smooth surface of the ovary. Except toward the time of ovulation, Hensen found that the fimbriæ were relatively inactive (Zeitschr. f. Anat. u. Entw., 1875, pp. 213–270). The discharge of the ovum from the follicle is known as *ovulation*.

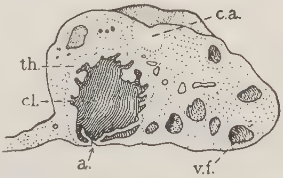


FIG. 344.—OVARY, CUT ACROSS SLIGHTLY REDUCED.
a., Aperture through which the ovum escaped; **c. a.**, corpus albicans; **cl.**, blood clot in a corpus luteum of ovulation; **th.**, theca folliculi; **v. f.**, vesicular follicle. (After Rieffel.)

Thomson (Journ. Anat., 1924, vol. 58, pp. 328–334) finds that ovulation is not the result of the increased amount of the liquor folliculi secreted by the stratum granulosum. The cells of this layer, after secreting a small amount of this fluid, may remain inactive for long periods. The Call-Exner bodies are areas of their degenerative liquefaction. The impulse causing distention of the follicle comes from without as an increased blood supply in the theca interna. Tissue fluids are forced into the follicle, often lifting the passive follicle cells from the theca and thus loosening the ovum. Muscle fibers, which he recognizes in the theca externa, also play a part. He suggests that the action may result either from the general turgescence of the genital organs in menstruation, or from a more sudden increase of blood during sexual excitement.

It may be noted that in approaching the peritoneal epithelium, through which the rupture occurs, the follicle must push aside or distend the connective tissue of the tunica albuginea. This is ordinarily a rather weak layer, but it has been suggested (by Reynolds) that in some cases it is more highly developed and acts as an obstruction to ovulation.

After ovulation, blood escapes from the capillaries of the tunica interna and forms a clot within the empty follicle (Fig. 344). This clot is sometimes called the *corpus hæmorrhagicum*. On all sides it is surrounded by the cells of the stratum granulosum, which enlarge and produce a yellow fatty pigment. They form a yellow convoluted zone which may easily be seen without magnification; the entire structure is then known as the *corpus luteum*. Vascular strands of connective tissue extend between the lutein cells (Fig. 345) and enter the central clot. The extravasated blood breaks down into granules and hæmatoidin crystals, and is gradually absorbed. It is replaced by gelatinous connective tissue which finally contracts into a dense white fibrous nodule, and this scar is known as the *corpus albicans*. Meanwhile the lutein cells undergo hyaline degeneration and become resorbed. The surface of the ovary, which is smooth in childhood, becomes pitted and irregular with the increasing formation of these corpora albicantia.

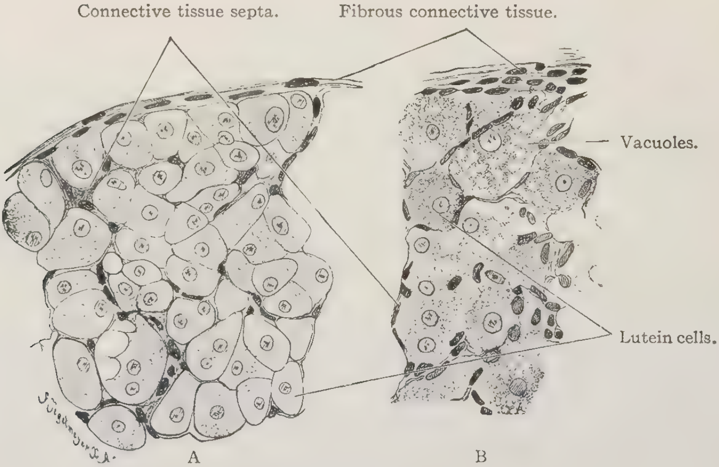


FIG. 345.—**A**, PORTION OF A CORPUS LUTEUM OF A RABBIT. **B**, PORTION OF A CORPUS LUTEUM OF A CAT. × 260.
In **B** the lutein cells have become fatty and contain large and small vacuoles.

Provided that pregnancy does not take place, the corpus luteum reaches its maximum development in about two weeks after ovulation, and it becomes reduced to a scar in about two months. If pregnancy occurs, it enlarges further and persists at the height of its development until the fifth or sixth month. Its diameter is then 1.5–3.0 cm., and at the end of pregnancy it is still quite large and yellow. If the corpus luteum is removed, the ovum fails to become attached to the wall of the uterus. There is both experimental and histological evidence that it produces an internal secretion which is probably received by the blood vessels invading it from the theca. In order to distinguish between the corpus luteum of pregnancy and that of unproductive ovulation, the former is called the *true* corpus luteum; the latter is the *corpus luteum spurium.*

Many follicles degenerate at various stages in their evolution without discharging their ova. Leucocytes and cells from the stratum granulosum are said to invade the protoplasm of the oöcytes, in which they disintegrate. The zona pellucida, which surrounds the oöcyte, may become conspicuously folded and persist for some time (Fig. 342). The basement membrane of the stratum granulosum may also thicken and become convoluted. These degenerating or *atretic follicles* are finally reduced to inconspicuous scars. After the menopause the degeneration of the oöcytes becomes general.

Within the stroma of the cortex, *interstitial cells* are found, which resemble lutein cells but are smaller. They have been compared with the interstitial cells of the testis, and are said to contain secretory granules. Kingsbury (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1914, vol. 16, pp. 59–95) states that they are modified stroma or theca cells, and hence of connective tissue origin. The granules are of a lipoid nature, and represent degenerative conditions, as in atretic follicles. He finds insufficient evidence for regarding them as a gland of internal secretion, and questions whether the interstitial cells of the testis have that function. Others have located hormones in the liquor folliculi which have profound effects on the uterus and induce all the characteristics of the œstrous cycle (Allen and others, Amer. Journ. Anat. 1924, vol. 34, pp. 133–181).

Uterine Tubes

Each uterine tube is about 5 inches long and extends from its orifice in the abdominal cavity to its outlet in the uterus. It is divided into the fimbriated funnel or *infundibulum;* the *ampulla* or distensible outer two-thirds, the lumen of which is about a quarter of an inch in diameter; the *isthmus* or narrow inner third, not sharply separated from the ampulla; and the *uterine portion* which extends through the musculature of the uterus to the uterine orifice. The wall of the tube is composed of three layers, a mucosa, muscularis, and serosa (in addition to which a tela submucosa is enumerated in the Basle nomenclature). The mucosa is thrown into thin longitudinal folds, which are low in the isthmus, but tall and branched in the ampulla (Fig. 346). Occasionally the branches anastomose, enclosing a pocket, but glands are absent. The epithelium is chiefly simple columnar, and ciliated, the stroke of the cilia being toward the uterus; but there are areas of non-ciliated cells which are said to produce a mucoid fluid. The two types of cells are connected by intermediate forms. Areas of flat cells may occur at the periphery of the lumen. Mucous cells are absent.

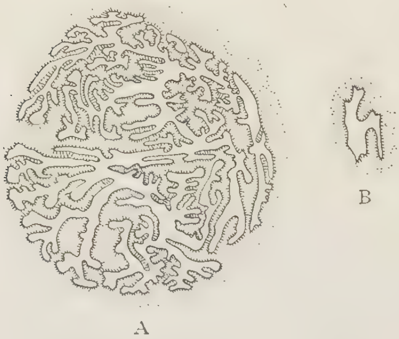


Fig. 346.—The Mucosa of the Uterine Tube. **A,** Near its Fimbriated End; **B.,** Near the Uterus. (After Orthmann.)

The folds of the mucous membrane are occasionally indented or over-hanging, so that in transverse sections detached fragments may appear, suggestive of villi (Fig. 347); but the fact that almost all of the many projections connect with the submucous layers indicates that they are elongated folds. Each of them contains a thin layer of cellular connective tissue, in which there are small arteries and veins running chiefly lengthwise of the tube. Lymphocytes occur in the meshes of the tissue and lymphatic vessels have been

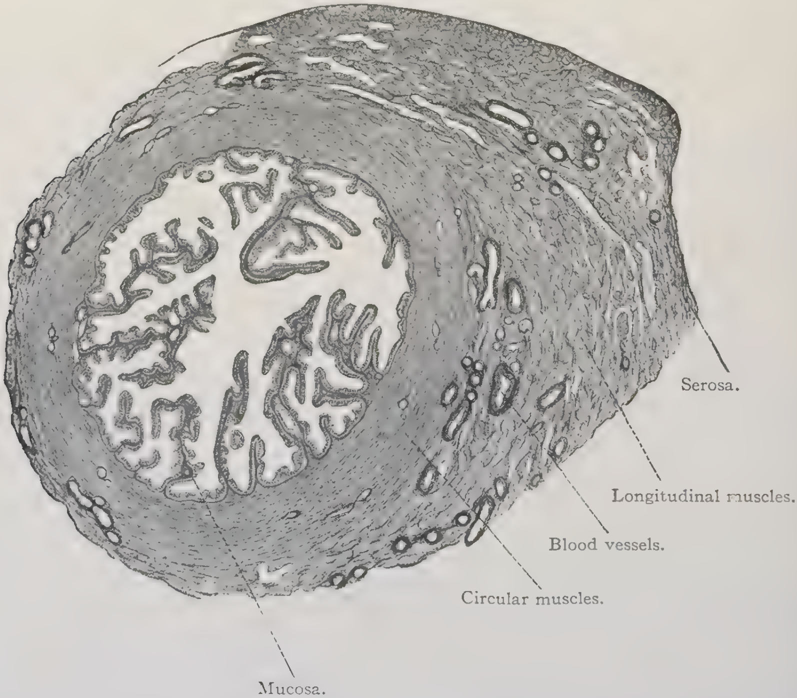


Fig. 347.—Cross Section, Near the Ampulla, of a Uterine Tube from an Adult Woman.

reported. Occasionally strands of smooth muscle fibers are found within the folds.

The mucous membrane rests directly upon the tunica muscularis which consists of a thick inner circular layer and a thin outer longitudinal layer of smooth muscle fibers, but both layers are resolved into coarse bundles by the abundance of intermuscular connective tissue.

Since the uterine tubes are imbedded in the broad ligaments, they are not closely invested by the peritoneum. There is a considerable layer (serosa) of loose connective tissue outside of the muscularis, and toward the ovary this tissue may include sections of the tubules of the epoöphoron. It contains the branches of the ovarian and uterine blood vessels which supply the tube. These are accompanied by lymphatic vessels and nerves. The latter innervate the tubal musculature and the mucous membrane.

Although the tubes are probably normally closed, the uninterrupted passage from vagina to abdominal cavity should be remembered as an opportunity for infection.

The cilia are presumably active only after ovulation, and sweep the ovum toward the uterus, creating at the same time a current against which the spermatozoa tend to force their way. Active peristalsis of the tube at this time has been reported in animals. Grynfeltt (Bull. d'Histol., 1923, vol. 1, pp. 393–400) finds true erectile tissue in the fimbria which could aid the muscles in their activity. Fertilization normally takes place in the tube in other animals and doubtless in man also.

Cases of extrauterine pregnancy occur in which the ovum is retained in the tube, caught perhaps in the pockets between folds. This is called tubal pregnancy, and progresses until the enlarging embryo ruptures the tube wall (usually in about six weeks), calling for operative interference. Abdominal pregnancy may be the result of the failure of an ovum to enter the tube, or of the extrusion of the developing embryo from the tube, either by the fimbriated extremity or through an early rupture of the wall which subsequently heals. Placental attachment in such cases has been found on the peritoneum of the abdominal wall or on most of the abdominal organs. Growth may continue, or lime salts may be deposited; but usually everything is absorbed. Ovarian pregnancy, the attempt of the fertilized ovum to develop within the follicle, has been reported by Hunter (Journ. Anat., 1921, vol. 56, pp. 57–76).

UTERUS

The uterus is a pyriform, muscular organ, flattened dorso-ventrally. It is about two and a half inches long, receiving the uterine tubes at its upper end or fundus, and ending below in the vagina. It is divided into *corpus* (and *fundus*) and *cervix*. The corpus and fundus together have a triangular cavity, which opens into the *canal of the cervix* through the *internal orifice;* the canal communicates with the vagina through the *external orifice* of the uterus. The lining of the cervix presents a feather-like arrangement of folds on its dorsal and ventral surfaces; these are the *plicæ palmatæ.* The walls of the uterus consist of a mucosa, muscularis and serosa (constituting the endometrium, myometrium, and perimetrium, respectively).

The corpus is lined with simple columnar epithelium, some areas of which are ciliated. The cilia have been described as difficult to preserve, and their absence from certain cells has been attributed to faulty fixation. According to Gage the uterine cilia are as readily preserved as those which occur elsewhere, and he finds that only one cell among fifteen or twenty is actually ciliated. Mucous cells are absent. The epithelium forms slender tubular pits, the *uterine glands*, but these produce no definite secretion. They are branched tortuous tubes extending through the broad mucosa (which is 1 mm. thick), and invading to a slight extent the muscular tissue beneath. They have been carefully modelled by Baumgartner, (Am. J. Anat., 1920. vol. 27, pp. 203–219). Occasionally they anastomose with one another, and in their deeper portion they have long horizontal branches, at right angles with the main tube. Sometimes a small group of glands opens into a single depression of the surface epithelium (Fig. 349). In older persons the glands degenerate, losing their connections with the surface and becoming cystic. Each gland is surrounded by a delicate basement membrane, and between them there is

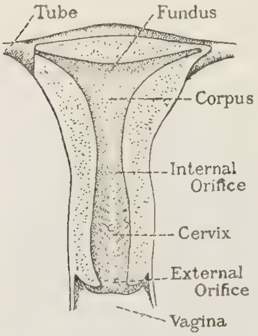


FIG. 348.—THE DORSAL HALF OF A VIRGIN UTERUS. Two-thirds natural size. (After Rieffel.)

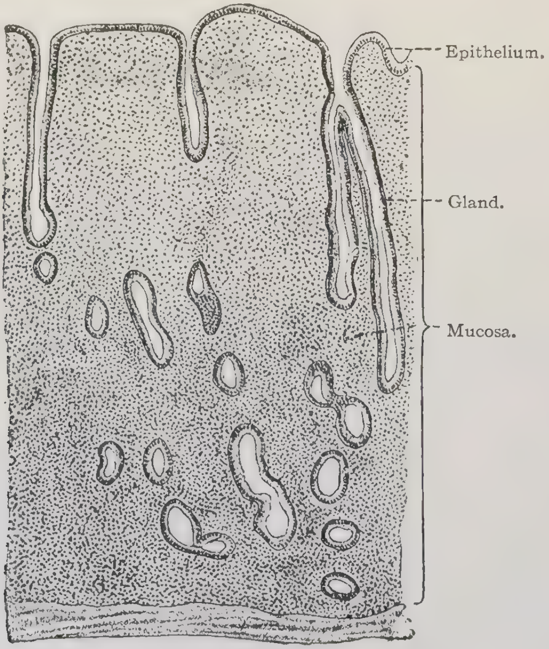


FIG. 349.—MUCOUS MEMBRANE OF THE RESTING UTERUS OF A YOUNG WOMAN. × 35. (After Böhm and von Davidoff.)

an abundant tunica propria, of reticular tissue, containing many nuclei, and with numerous lymphocytes. In the reticular tissue are blood vessels forming a rich capillary network around the glands and especially beneath the free surface. Lymphatic vessels form a wide meshed plexus with blind extensions. The whole mucosa forms the *endometrium.*

The upper and larger part of the cervix of the uterus is likewise lined with simple columnar ciliated epithelium, but its cells are taller than those of the corpus (60 μ as compared with 20 μ). Mucous cells occur, especially in the outpocketings of epithelial pits which constitute the branched *cervical glands.* They discharge a secretion which occludes the canal of the cervix during pregnancy. Often they produce macroscopic retention cysts, named "ovules of Naboth," after the Leipzig anatomist who first described them. Toward the external orifice of the uterus the epithelium becomes stratified and squamous, and rests on connective tissue papillæ. Thus it resembles the lining of the vagina of which it is a continuation, and after the first child-birth it extends further up into the cervix than before.

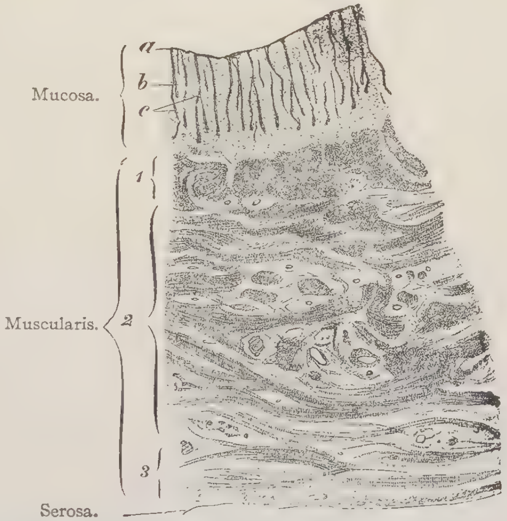


Fig. 350.—From a Transverse Section of the Middle of the Uterus of a Girl Fifteen Years Old. × 10.
a, Epithelium; b, tunica propria; c, glands; 1, inner muscular layer; 2, middle muscular layer; 3, outer muscular layer.

The musculature of the corpus is a thick investment of interwoven bundles which cannot be subdivided into well-defined layers (Fig. 350). It begins immediately outside the tunica propria, but the border between the two is very irregular, so that the bottoms of some of the glands lie deep in the clefts between the muscle bundles. The inner portion of the muscles has been regarded as "an immensely hypertrophied muscularis mucosæ." Further out there is a zone containing many blood vessels, which according to this interpretation marks the position of the submucosa (Schäfer). According to Henle and Stöhr, these vessels belong with the middle of three muscle layers, which is named, therefore, the "stratum vasculare." It is the thickest of the layers and its fibers are chiefly circular. The innermost layer or "stratum submucosum" (Stöhr) consists principally of longitudinal fibers. The outermost layer or "stratum supravasculare" contains circular fibers internally and longitudinal fibers externally. Some of the latter are continuous with the longitudinal fibers of the uterine tubes; others are said to enter the round ligaments, which contain also some striated fibers; and still others spread into the broad ligaments.

In the cervix the three strata of muscle fibers are found to be very distinct—inner and outer longitudinal, and middle circular. Although the uterus generally contains few elastic fibers, found only in its peripheral layers and running perpendicular to the plane of contraction of the muscles, elastic fibers are abundant in this position in the lower segment of the corpus and vaginal portion of the uterus. During the first half of pregnancy both elastic and muscular fibers increase in size and number; in the second half, the elastic fibers decrease in the musculature, but increase in the perimetrium (Stöhr). The way in which the thick layer of muscles in the resting uterus becomes arranged in the thin layer of late pregnancy is an unsolved problem, similar to that presented by the musculature of the bladder and intestine during distention.

The serosa covering the dorsal and ventral surfaces of the uterus is in part a well-defined layer, the perimetrium; but it blends with the connective tissue of the broad ligaments laterally and below, and here, from its position beside the uterus, is known as the "parametrium." Imbedded in the parametrium the main trunks of the uterine vessels run along the lateral margins of cervix and corpus, both artery and vein showing many kinks and convolutions. The vessels are thus apparently adapted to the future expansion of the uterus, but when it retracts after pregnancy they are said to show more pronounced bendings, as if they had been permanently elongated. The parametrium contains also numerous lymphatic vessels, together with the ganglionated sympathetic *utero-vaginal plexus*. Nerves from this plexus and from the third and fourth sacral nerves supply the uterus.

MENSTRUATION

Menstruation is the periodic degeneration and removal of the superficial part of the mucosa of the corpus, accompanied by hæmorrhage from the vessels of the tunica propria. Three successive stages may be distinguished, namely (1) the stage of *congestion*, lasting four to five days; (2) the stage of *desquamation* and *hæmorrhage*, four days; and (3) the stage of *regeneration* and *repair*, seven days. Thus the entire process requires about sixteen days, and after an interval of twelve days the cycle begins anew.

For four or five days before the discharge occurs, the thickness of the mucosa increases greatly, partly because of the congestion of the vessels, partly from an increase in the intercellular fluid (oedema). The reticular cells are thus separated from each other, especially in the compact layer. The glands become wider, longer, and more tortuous, opening between irregular swellings of the superficial epithelium. Red corpuscles pass out between the endothelial cells of the distended veins and capillaries, and form subepithelial masses, which however do not form clots, because of the presence of reticular tissue. This stage of congestion and tumefaction is followed by one of hæmorrhage and desquamation. The epithelium of the surface and outermost parts of the glands becomes reduced to granular débris, or it may be detached in shreds. The underlying vessels rupture and add to the blood which had escaped by diapedesis. A denuded surface remains, on to which open the necks of the glands. In the stage of regeneration the glands supply the necessary epithelium. By mitotic division within the glands cells are forced out of the necks and spread over the surface, at first as a layer of thin squamous cells, later becoming cuboidal and then columnar as the normal number is attained. The tunica propria is renewed, and the whole mucosa returns to its resting

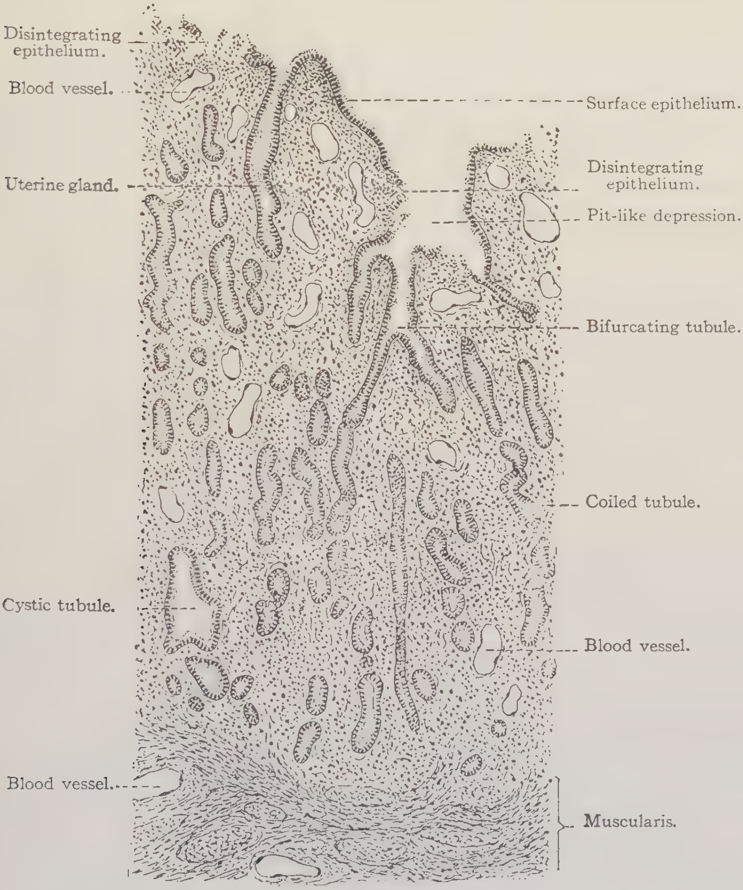


FIG. 351.—MUCOUS MEMBRANE OF A VIRGIN UTERUS DURING THE FIRST DAY OF MENSTRUATION. × 30. (Schaper.)

condition. Occasionally a gland neck may be blocked in some manner and be covered in by reticular tissue, thus leading to possible cysts. The cervix takes no part in menstruation except that the secretion of its glands may increase during the stage of congestion.

The different periods of the oestrous cycle are reflected in definite changes in the vaginal epithelium and vaginal content. (See numerous paper by Stockard and others in the American Journal of Anatomy, 1923, vol. 32, no. 3.)

Beginning at puberty (13–15 years) menstruation takes place normally once in 28 days for 33 years, more or less. During pregnancy it is interrupted, although the time when it should occur may be indicated by slight uterine contractions and finally by those which cause the delivery of the child. Thus the duration of pregnancy is described as ten menstrual cycles. The significance of menstruation is suggested by conditions in those mammals in which sexual seasons are annual or infrequent. In them a period of congestion, accompanied by uterine changes which are sometimes closely comparable with those of menstruation, precedes sexual intercourse and ovulation. Thus in the bitch ovulation takes place when the external bleeding "is almost or quite over," and this is the time of coitus. Domestication in various animals causes an increased frequency of the congestive cycles, sometimes unaccompanied by ovulation. It is generally accepted that human menstruation may take place without ovulation, and that ovulation may occur between menstrual periods, and also during pregnancy. It may even occur in children before menstruation has begun. Nevertheless ovulation probably occurs usually and normally at the close of menstruation. Coitus is not considered to be a factor in inducing ovulation, but it is said that in the rabbit and ferret, and in pigeons, ovulation may fail to occur in the absence of the male.

The following considerations are also important in establishing the age of young embryos. The time required for spermatozoa to travel to the upper end of the tube, where fertilization takes place, is probably about twenty-four hours. There they may fertilize the ovum at once if ovulation has just occurred. They retain their vitality and are capable of fertilizing the ovum during a period of ten days in the rabbit, and this may be true also of man. Thus it is probable that if coitus has occurred shortly before menstruation, the spermatozoa may remain active in the tube, and fertilize the ovum discharged at the close of the following menstruation.

THE DISCOVERY OF MAMMALIAN OVA

During the seventeenth century the ovary was called the *testis muliebris*, or *testis fœmineus*. It was believed to produce the mucoid secretion which escapes from the genital orifice, and this was regarded as seminal fluid. The uterine tubes were accordingly the *vasa deferentia mulierum*, serving to convey this fluid to the uterus, where, through a mixture and interaction of the male and female semina, an embryo was produced. Aristotle had argued to the contrary, but his opinion was summarily disposed of by Bartholin, who discussed the ovaries as follows (Anatomia, 1666):

"Their function is to produce semen in their own way, which Aristotle, against all reason and observation, has dared to deny to women, contrary to the express teaching of Hippocrates."

The ancient doctrine of Aristotle, expounded in his treatise on the generation of animals, was based upon the familiar facts that menstruation marks the beginning, and ceases at the end, of the child-bearing period; and moreover menstruation is interrupted while the embryo is being formed. Therefore he concluded that the menstruum supplies the substance and material for the new body, which arises like the curd in milk, through the agency of the semen. The semen engenders; the menstruum nourishes. The theory had already been advanced that the semen comes from all parts of the body, and that its particles reproduce the structures from which they are derived. This enticing speculation, revived by Darwin in his theory of pangenesis, was discussed at length and rejected by Aristotle.

Generation, therefore, was considered to result from the mixing of two fluids, and would have remained a barren physico-chemical problem until recent times, if further morphological observations had not been made. The view of Bartholin had at least the merit of definitely associating the ovary with the reproductive function. Vesalius and Fallopius had seen the follicles and corpora lutea; Fallopius described them as "vesicles filled with water or aqueous humor, some limpid and others yellow (Observationes, 1588). Many others had observed them, and from their resemblance to the ova of birds they had even been called "ova," when in 1672 a young Dutch physician, Regnerus de Graaf, made his thorough study of the female genital tract.

De Graaf concluded that the "semen muliebre" is not produced by the "testes muliebres," but that the general function of the latter is "to produce and nourish ova, and bring them to maturity." Consequently he proposed to substitute the name *ovary*, and to call the tubes *oviducts*. He declared that the ova escaped from the follicles through minute apertures (in the rabbit admitting a bristle) and made their way through the tubes to the uterus, in which they developed. The abnormal formation of a human embryo within the tube was figured and, to a certain extent, explained. De Graaf studied many mammals, and especially rabbits. He found minute ova in the oviducts and observed the follicles from which they had escaped. In older stages he recorded a general agreement between the number of corpora lutea and embryos. Since, however, he frequently referred to the entire follicles as ova, his results were not promptly accepted; the diameter of the isthmus of the tube is so small that the entrance of the follicles into the uterus was considered impossible. It was a matter of easy observation to determine more precisely the relation of the ova to the follicles. After many years this was done by Von Baer, an eminent embryologist, whose studies of the chick are regarded as "the most profound, exhaustive and original contribution to embryology which has ever been made" (Minot). This work bears the famous subtitle "*Beobachtung und Reflexion*"—the German expression of Haller's "*Observations suivies de Reflexion*" and De Graaf's "*Cogitationes atque observationes*." After describing the condition of the ova in the tubes of the bitch, Von Baer writes:

"It remained for me to ascertain the condition of ova in the ovary, for it seemed clearer than day that ova so small as those found in the tubes did not represent Graafian follicles expelled from the ovary; and I did not consider it probable that such solid bodies had been coagulated from the fluid of the vesicles. Now, contemplating the ovaries before making an incision, I clearly distinguished in almost every vesicle, a yellowish-white point unattached to the walls, which swam about freely in the fluid when the vesicle was pressed upon with a probe. Led on by a certain curiosity, rather than moved by hope that with the naked eye I had seen ovules in the ovaries through all the coats of the Graafian follicle, I opened a vesicle, and taking out a point in question on the blade of a knife, I placed it under the microscope. I was overcome with amazement when I saw the ovule, now recognized outside of the tubes, so clearly that a blind man could hardly doubt it. Surely it is strange and unexpected that an object so persistently sought for, and endlessly described as inextricable, in every physiological compendium, could so easily be placed before the eyes" (De ovi genesi, Lipsiae, 1827)

Thus the ova in mammalian ovaries, which had long been believed to exist, were first definitely seen within the follicles one hundred and fifty years after the discovery of the microscopic spermatozoa, the existence of which had never been suspected.

THE DECIDUAL MEMBRANES OF THE UTERUS AND EMBRYO

DEVELOPMENT AND GENERAL FEATURES

Before describing the mucous membrane of the uterus during pregnancy, it is necessary to consider the membranes which envelop the embryo. Although these are in contact with the lining of the uterus and in part intimately blended with it, they are portions of the embryo itself. The external membrane, toward the uterus, is known as the *chorion;* the inner membrane, toward the embryo, is the *amnion.* Since the embryo receives its nutriment from the wall of the uterus through blood vessels in the chorion, these membranes develop very early and thus provide for rapid growth. They are already present in the youngest human embryos which have yet been obtained.

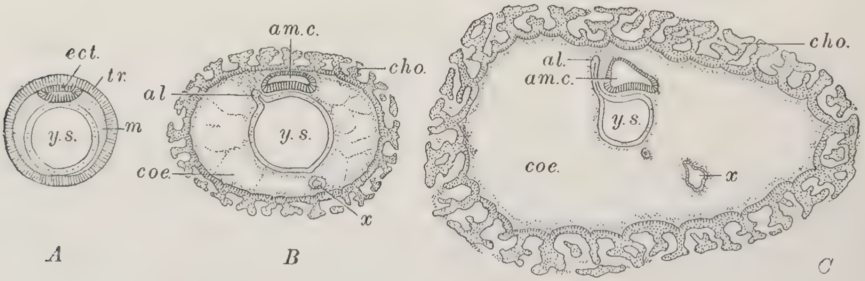


FIG. 352.—DIAGRAMS ILLUSTRATING THE EARLY DEVELOPMENT OF THE HUMAN EMBRYO (A IS HYPOTHETICAL).

al., Allantois; **am. c.**, amniotic cavity; **cho.**, chorion; **coe.**, cœlom; **ect.**, ectoderm; **m**, mesoderm; **tr.** trophoderm (trophoblast); **x**, entodermal cyst; **y. s.**, yolk-sac.

Of the fertilization and segmentation of the human ovum, which doubtless take place in the upper part of the uterine tube, nothing is known except by inference from lower animals. The four-celled stage has been observed once in a monkey, but the youngest known human embryo is already provided with ectoderm, mesoderm and entoderm, and has entered the uterus. As a purely hypothetical figure, we venture to present the diagram Fig. 352, A, followed by the diagrams B and C which include many features actually observed.

In Fig. 352, A, a mass of cells (*ect.*) represents the ectoderm which will later cover the body and line the inner membrane or amnion. This ectoderm probably arises in connection with the layer (*tr.*) which covers the entire vesicle and becomes the epithelium of the outer membrane or chorion. The layer in question has been named the *trophoblast* (or *trophoderm*).

The term trophoblast (*i.e.*, nutritive layer) was introduced by Hubrecht to correspond with the terms epiblast, mesoblast and hypoblast, which he used for the other germ layers. Since these are now generally called ectoderm, mesoderm and entoderm, the outer layer should be *trophoderm*, and the substitution of this name is therefore recommended. Trophoderm has, however, been used by Minot for the proliferating part of Hubrecht's trophoblast. It may be noted that a similar difficulty is encountered in His's angioblast which, as a germ layer, should be angioderm. Schäfer applies angioblast logically to the individual cells which become the endothelial lining of vessels. Consistency requires the use of "-derm" for germ layers, leaving "-blast" for formative cells.

In addition to the trophoderm and ectoderm, the hypothetical stage shown in Fig. 352, A, exhibits a yolk-sac completely lined with entoderm. Between the trophoderm and entoderm, the mesoderm has appeared and is separating into somatic and splanchnic layers, with the body cavity between them. The somatic mesoderm is closely applied to the trophoderm, and together they form the chorion; the splanchnic mesoderm is against the entoderm of the yolk-sac, and forms the outer layer of its wall. The early and rapid development of the mesoderm is characteristic of human embryos, as may be inferred from the later stages.

In the diagram Fig. 352, B, the *amniotic cavity* has appeared in the ectoderm. It is believed to arise as a cleft in a solid mass of cells, and not by the coalescence of ectodermal folds as in the chick; however, in the youngest human embryos observed, it is completely formed. The entoderm shows an outpocketing extending into the mesoderm at the future caudal end of the embryo; this is the *allantois*, which soon becomes a slender tube (Fig. 352, C). The mesoderm in which it is lodged later produces the "body stalk."

The allantois develops very early in human embryos, being present in most if not in all of the specimens thus far obtained. Possibly there is no allantois in the very imperfect embryo described by Bryce and Teacher (Contributions, etc., Glasgow, 1908), and there is uncertainty as to its presence in Peters's embryo (Ueber die Einbettung des menschlichen Eies, Leipzig, 1899); but in other very young specimens it is well defined. According to Keibel, the allantois first appears in chicks of about twenty segments; in rabbits of eleven segments; in pigs of four to five segments; and in the apes and man, before any segments have formed. Its very early appearance in human embryos is probably correlated with the rapid establishment of the placental circulation, for the umbilical vessels are primarily the vessels of the allantois.

In Fig. 352, B and C, the entoderm of the yolk-sac is represented as giving rise to a detached cyst (x). There is a cyst of this sort within the chorionic cavity of the somewhat damaged Herzog embryo in the Harvard Collection, and a smaller detached cyst in the very perfect Minot embryo. It is possible that such cysts are of regular occurrence, although destined to atrophy. They may be lodged in a strand of mesoderm extending from the lower pole of the yolk-sac downward to the chorion (Grosser, Anat. Hefte, 1913, Abt. I, vol. 47, pp. 653–686), and they may arise as indicated in the diagrams (Fig. 352).

As the body cavity develops between the somatic and splanchnic layers of mesoderm, it is at first bridged by strands of mesenchymal tissue, forming the "magma reticulare." These strands become attenuate and break down, so that the yolk-sac is then suspended in a well-defined "extra-embryonic cœlom." This part of the cœlom, although within the embryonic membranes, is outside of the body proper of the embryo, as will appear in the following diagrams.

The arrangement of the membranes surrounding human embryos of about 2 mm. is shown in Fig. 353, A. The chorion has become covered with branching elevations or villi, which contain a vascular core of chorionic mesoderm, not shown in the diagram. The body of the embryo is connected with the chorion by the mesodermic body stalk containing the allantois. This has become relatively slender. On one side it is covered by the ectoderm of the amnion. The ectoderm, as in preceding stages, may be divided into two parts. Toward the yolk-sac it is thickened and there it forms the axial medullary tube and gives rise ultimately to the epidermis covering the body. Continuous with this epidermal ectoderm is the thinner portion which lines the amnion, as shown in the figure. The amnion forms a membranous sac attached to the ventral side of the embryo, leaving an aperture through which the yolk-sac projects downward into the extra-embryonic cœlom. The cœlom now extends between the amnion and chorion, except at the narrow body stalk. The yolk-sac has given rise to the fore-gut and hind-gut, and the allantois now appears as an appendage of the latter.

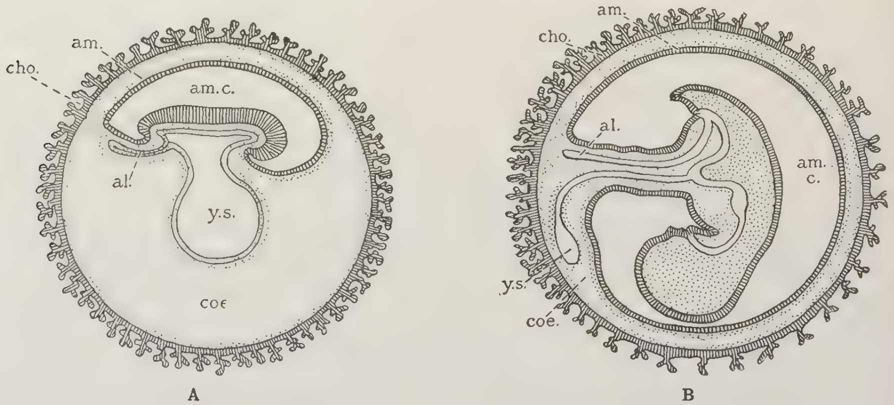


Fig. 353.—Diagrams Illustrating the Development of the Embryonic Membranes and the Formation of the Umbilical Cord.
al., Allantois; **am.**, amnion; **am. c.**, amniotic cavity; **cho.**, chorion; **coe.**, cœlom; **y. s.**, yolk-sac.

In Fig. 353, B, the embryo is represented as rotated so that its head is downward and its ventral side toward the left. It is now connected with the membranes by an *umbilical cord*, the composition of which may be seen by comparing A and B. Its principal constituent is the elongated body stalk, containing the allantois and covered above and on the sides with adherent amnion. Below, the amnion also forms the covering of the cord, but here it is separated from the body stalk by an extension of the body cavity. The yolk stalk passes from the primary loop of intestine through the cavity of the umbilical cord to the yolk-sac, in which it terminates. This sac is now lodged in its permanent position between the amnion and chorion. Ultimately the parts of the allantois, yolk stalk and body cavity within the cord are obliterated.

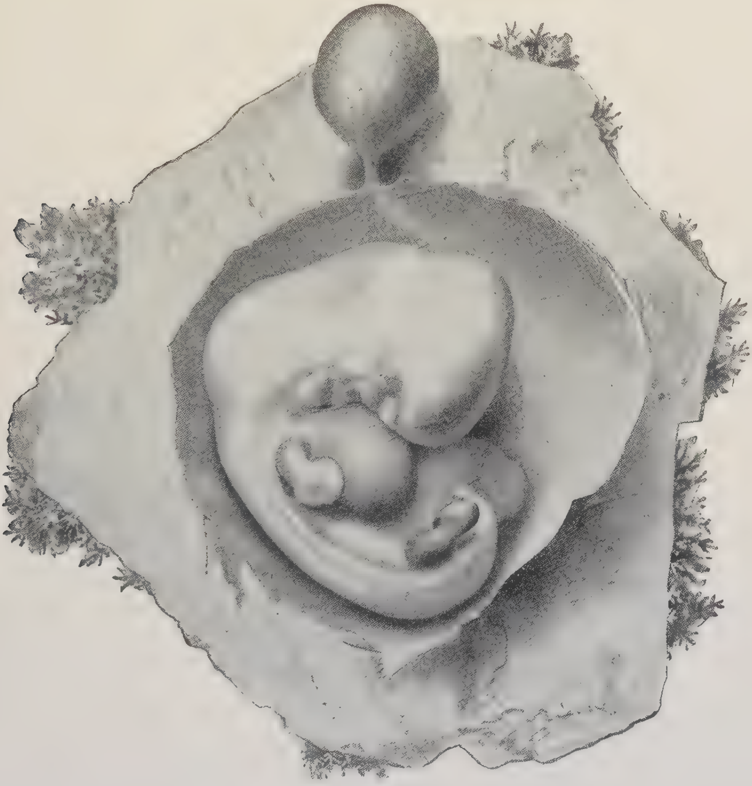


Fig. 354.—A Normal Human Embryo of 10.0 mm., Removed Surgically with the Uterus, Six Weeks after the Last Menstruation.

The appearance of a human embryo at a stage intermediate between those shown in Fig. 353 is reproduced in Fig. 354. An irregular piece cut out from the chorionic vesicle forms the background of the picture. Around the cut edges of this piece the shaggy chorionic villi are seen, directed toward the wall of the uterus. At the top of the figure is the spherical yolk-sac lodged between chorion and amnion, between which the yolk stalk passes to the distal end of the umbilical cord, which it enters. The amnion is a membranous sac completely enclosing the embryo; in the figure, half of it has been cut away to show the embryo within. The skin of the embryo is continuous with the covering of the umbilical cord, and distally this covering is reflected and becomes continuous with the amnion.

In later stages the umbilical cord is greatly elongated. It contains the umbilical vessels which pass between the embryo and the chorion, through the persistent body stalk. The amniotic cavity greatly enlarges to accommodate the growing embryo, and the mesoderm of the amnion comes in contact with that of the chorion, to which it adheres more or less firmly. The embryo is bathed in the amniotic fluid (*liquor amnii*) of uncertain derivation, once thought to be sweat from the embryo, and later considered to contain the products of the Wolffian body, and urine from the permanent kidneys. Occasionally toward birth the meconium from the intestine mingles with it and discolors it. It is now generally believed to be secreted by the amniotic epithelium.

Relation between the Embryonic Membranes and the Uterus. When the embryo within its chorionic vesicle passes from the tube into the uterus, it is probably in a stage comparable with that shown in Fig. 352 (B or C). By the activity of the proliferating trophoderm, the uterine mucosa is partially destroyed and the chorionic vesicle becomes imbedded in its substance. This process is known as the *implantation* of the ovum. The walls of the vessels in the tunica propria of the uterus are broken down, and the maternal blood flows over and around the chorionic villi, in contact with which it does not clot. Elsewhere in the body, except in reticular tissue, blood clots on escaping from the endothelial tubes. Toward the uterine cavity, however, there is a clot which completes the encapsulation of the chorionic vesicle in the mucosa. The mucous membrane itself later passes entirely around the vesicle as shown in Fig. 355, A.

The greater part of the mucosa of the uterus becomes cast off at the end of pregnancy; thus it forms a *membrana decidua*, which may be subdivided into three parts—(1) the *decidua basalis* (or serotina) on which the implanted chorionic vesicle rests, and which forms the maternal part of the *placenta;* (2) the *decidua capsularis* (or reflexa) which spreads over the part of the vesicle which is toward the uterine cavity; and (3) the *decidua vera*, which lines the remainder of the uterus. These subdivisions of the decidua are indicated in Fig. 355, A.

Soon after the ovum becomes implanted, the chorion ceases to be uniformly covered with villi. The villi toward the decidua basalis elongate and branch freely, producing the shaggy *chorion frondosum;* this is the embryonic portion of the placenta. As the chorionic vesicle enlarges, the villi directed away from the wall of the uterus, toward the decidua capsularis, become shorter and disappear, so that a large portion of the chorion becomes smooth—the *chorion læve.* Usually the umbilical cord passes to a nearly central position in the chorion frondosum; rarely it has a "marginal attachment" at the periphery of the frondosum, and it may have a "velamentous insertion" in the adjacent part of the chorion læve, through which the umbilical vessels then extend to the frondosum.

With the growth of the embryo, which fills and distends the uterine cavity, the decidua capsularis becomes thin, degenerates, and is resorbed, so that in the last half of pregnancy the chorion læve rests directly against the decidua vera (Fig. 355, B).

The *placenta* at birth is a discoid mass of spongy vascular tissue, about 7 in. in diameter and 1 in. thick, weighing a pound. It is composed of two parts, the *placenta uterina* and *placenta fetalis*, which in certain lower mammals can be readily separated, but in others, and in man, they cannot be disengaged. The uterine portion, as already stated, is the decidua basalis, and the embryonic or fetal portion is the chorion frondosum. At the margin of the placenta, the chorion frondosum is continuous with the chorion læve, which is adherent to the decidua vera. Lining the chorionic cavity and spreading from the distal end of the umbilical cord, the amnion forms a complete sac, with a smooth and glistening surface toward the embryo. It is lightly adherent to the chorion læve and to that surface of the placenta which is toward the embryo. From the way in which the chorion læve and chorion frondosum become differentiated, the fact that small accessory placentas sometimes occur near the main mass may be readily understood; detached groups of chorionic villi continue their growth, and their vessels communicate with those of the adjacent placenta. Such small accessory structures are known as *succenturiate* (*i.e.*, recruited) *placentas*.

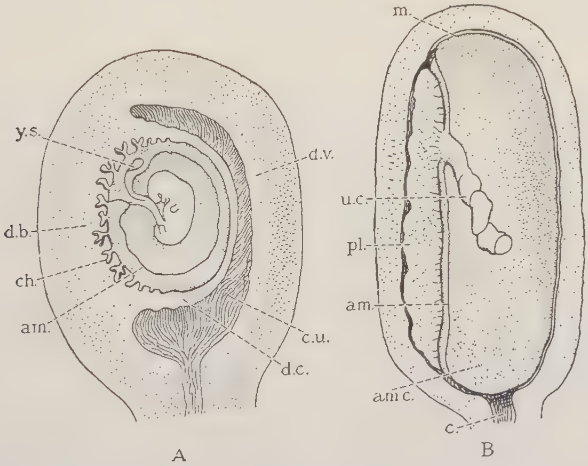


Fig. 355.—The Uterus and Decidual Membranes in Early Pregnancy, **A**, and in Late Pregnancy **B**. The Cord has been Cut and the Embryo Removed from **B**.

am., Amnion; **am. c.**, amniotic cavity; **c.**, cervix; **ch.**, chorion; **c. u.**, cavity of the uterus; **d. b.**, decidua basalis; **d. c.**, decidua capsularis; **d. v.**, decidua vera; **m.**, amnion and chorion læve drawn as one line; **pl.**, placenta; **u. c.**, umbilical cord; **y. s.**, yolk-sac.

Fate of the Membranes at Birth. Shortly before birth, the cervix of the uterus dilates and the sac of membranes containing the *liquor amnii* bulges into it. The membranes thus exposed are ruptured, and the amniotic fluid escapes. The birth of the child follows, and the umbilical cord then extends from the navel through the vagina to the placenta. The cord is so short in some mammals that it ruptures with the expulsion of the embryo; in other forms it is bitten off or otherwise severed, setting free the embryo. Occasionally the membranes rupture in such a way that the head of the infant remains more or less covered with a cap of amnion and chorion læve, formerly known as the "caul." After the birth of the child the uterine musculature contracts quite rapidly, and in about half an hour the after-birth is expelled, the sac of membranes being turned inside out in this process. The part from the fundus of the uterus is forced out first, and that from the lower segment of the uterus follows. Thus the amnion and the amniotic surface of the placenta are on the outside of the after-birth. The denuded uterine mucosa is gradually restored to its normal condition. As after menstruation, the epithelium spreads from the glands over the tunica propria.

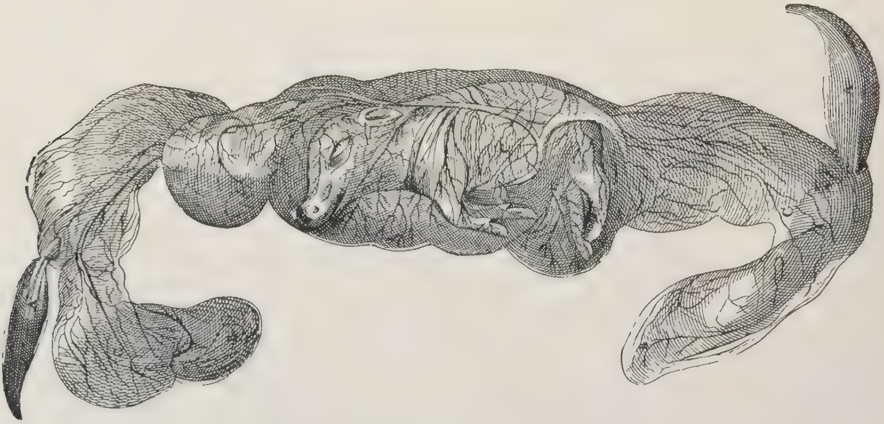


FIG. 356.—A PIG EMBRYO REMOVED FROM THE UTERUS, "SURROUNDED BY ITS THREE MEMBRANES." (Fabricius ab Aquapendente, 1687.)

The entire after-birth, since its delivery follows that of the child, was called the *secunda* or *secundina* by the ancient anatomists. The round flat mass which is its principal part was named the *placenta* by Fallopius, from its fancied resemblance to a pan-cake. Long before this, the membranes enveloping the embryo were known as the chorion, allantois, and amnion, and were described as the outer, middle and inner layers respectively. These ancient terms are of obscure derivation. *Chorion* (Gr., χὀριον) is the same as the Latin *corium*, which is applied to the vascular layers of the skin. In its Greek form it is used to designate the vascular *chorioid coat* of the eye, and the *chorioid plexuses* of the brain, but it refers particularly to the vascular embryonic membrane. *Amnion* is derived indirectly from ἀμνός (a sheep) and Hyrtl reasonably asks "How came the sheep to have his name enrolled in anatomy?" Whether the amnion was first observed in the sheep, or was so named because of its softness, or for some very different reason, is discussed by the early commentators. The *allantois* was first observed in the lower mammals in which it attains great size. For example, in the sheep and pig it forms an elongated sac filled with fluid and attached like the arms of a "T" to the distal end of the allantoic duct. This duct, which corresponds with the entire human allantois, issues from the ventral abdominal wall and divides into its two branches, as seen indistinctly through the chorion in Fig. 356 (over the body of the embryo). The allantoic sac extends almost the entire length of the chorion, and its ends break through the chorionic membrane, projecting freely as the allantoic appendages. In Fig. 356, the one at the right extends upward, and the one at the left, downward. Such an allantois was sought for in man, between the amnion and chorion, where a corresponding structure should be located. Hale (1701) was among those who thought that he found one, but he declared that "most of the ancients allow a human allantois not from their experience of it, but because they took it for granted that men and other animals were alike in their viscera." It was not until 1885 that it was clearly and finally stated that the human allantois was merely a blind tube in the body stalk, never being free or vesicular (His, Anatomie menschlicher Embryonen).

As to the appropriateness of the term *allantois* (sausage-like, from the Gr. ἀλλᾶς) there is difference of opinion. Fabricius (De formato fœtu, 1600) one of whose drawings is reproduced in Fig. 356, considers that the word really means "intestinal," or like a sausage *skin*.

Implantation. The presence of the chorionic vesicle produces a profound effect on the whole uterine mucosa. This is presumably the result of nervous influence, as in the case of menstruation; certainly it is not limited to those parts touched by the trophoderm. Everywhere the mucosa increases in thickness; the bases of the glands become tortuous and expanded, while the straight necks of the glands degenerate and become obliterated. The gland cells grow pale, desquamate into the lumen, and then undergo a form of hyaline degeneration by which they are reduced to irregular, aggregated hyaline masses often with clefts or cracks which stain intensely with eosine. This material, called by Minot "canalized fibrin," increases as pregnancy advances; but the loss of glandular epithelium is never complete, as in each gland probably a few cells remain intact and in place on the basement membrane. Meanwhile the reticular cells of the tunica propria multiply and enlarge to form "decidual cells." These cells which occur only in pregnancy (and in a rare tumor of the uterus) are not very distinctive in the first two months, but later are of large size (0.03 to 0.1 mm.) and irregular shape. Usually they contain a single nucleus, but often there are more, and in giant forms there may be thirty or forty. The mucosa can now definitely be divided into an upper compact layer, without glands, and a deeper cavernous layer where the closed glands are present. With the enlargement of the whole uterus during pregnancy the walls are stretched until the denuded gland lumens form horizontal slits above the muscularis. It is along the line of these glands that the decidua tears at parturition.

The characteristic decidua vera of the latter part of pregnancy is shown in Fig. 357. Fused with the upper surface of the compact layer is the chorion læve. The chorionic epithelium is usually a single layer of cuboidal cells; occasional mounds of cells may represent the remains of the chorionic villi which once clothed this chorion. The epithelium rests on the chorionic mesenchyma above. The space between chorion and amnion is the almost obliterated extraembryonic cœlom (see Fig. 353). The amnion also consists of embryonic mesenchyma and a simple epithelium. These cells, however, are columnar and probably secretory.

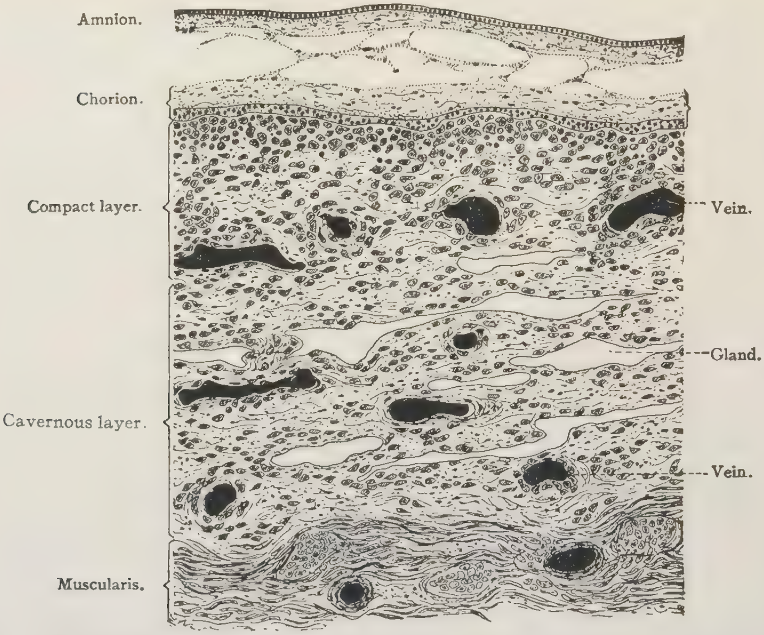


FIG. 357.—VERTICAL SECTION THROUGH THE WALL OF A UTERUS ABOUT SEVEN MONTHS PREGNANT WITH THE MEMBRANES IN SITU. × 30. (Schaper.)

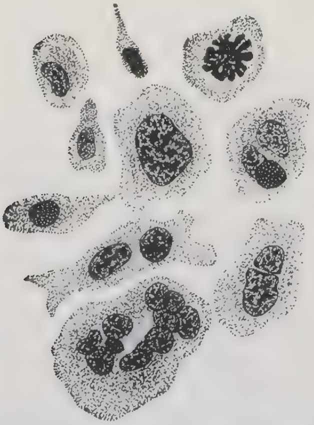


FIG. 358.—DECIDUAL CELLS FROM THE MUCOUS MEMBRANE OF A HUMAN UTERUS ABOUT SEVEN MONTHS PREGNANT. ONE CELL SHOWS A MITOTIC FIGURE. × 250. (Schaper.)

Placenta. The placenta is formed in part by the decidua basalis of the uterus, in part by the chorion frondosium with its fetal chorionic villi. To it is usually attached the umbilical cord, and the amnion is normally adherent to the chorion, but may readily be stripped off. During the implantation of the ovum, as already described, the chorionic villi have eaten into the decidua, have in part become imbedded in it, and also have destroyed the vessels of the compact layer so that the maternal blood circulates among the villi. This blood space is bounded by the cavernous layer of the decidua, and by the chorion, and at the edge of the placenta the space is limited by the fusion of the chorion læve with the decidua vera (Fig. 355, B). The pressure of the amniotic fluid against the resisting uterine wall aids this fusion. Within the maternal blood space are innumerable branches of the chorionic villi, bathed in the maternal blood, and making a soft pulpy mass, about an inch thick in the placenta at term. The fetal blood vessels, from the umbilical arteries and vein, course from the end of the umbilical cord through the mesoderm of the chorion; branches dip suddenly inward usually in pairs (a vein and an artery) and enter the main trunks of the villi. Following the branching of the villi the vessels run to the tips of the smallest branches, where the capillary connections between artery and vein are made. Nowhere does the fetal blood mingle with the maternal; the fetal blood receives nutriment from the maternal blood only through the action of the epithelial cells covering the villi, just as the blood and lymphatic vessels of the intestinal villi receive food from the contents of the intestine only through the intestinal epithelium.

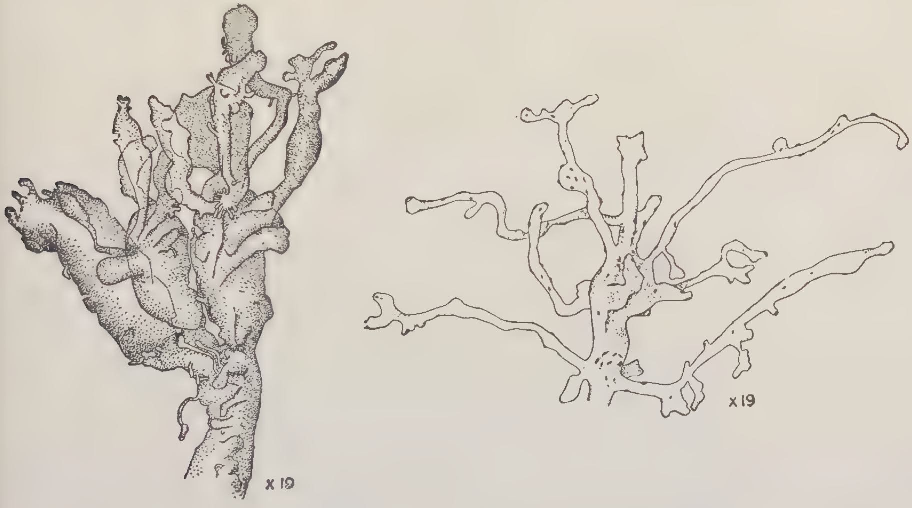


Fig. 359.—Isolated Terminal Branches of Chorionic Villi; that on the Left is from an Embryo of Twelve Weeks; on the Right, at Full Term. (Minot.)

The villi, then, are the active part of the placenta, and should be traced through their life of ten lunar months. In the earliest stage they are composed entirely of epithelium, but they soon acquire a core of chorionic mesenchymal tissue, in which are the terminal branches of the umbilical vessels. The epithelium is early divisible into two layers. The outer layer consists of densely staining protoplasm, with no cell boundaries; it is therefore called the syncytial layer. The nuclei are dark, round or flattened. Mitotic figures are seldom seen. Generally its nuclei are in a single layer at varying distances from one another (Fig. 360), but they may accumulate in "knots" or "proliferation islands," projecting from the surface, so that in certain planes of section they appear completely detached and suggest multinucleate giant cells. The deeper layer of epithelium consists of distinct cells with round nuclei and clear protoplasm. Although this is a single layer at the base of young villi, it produces great masses of cells at their tips. Both of these layers are derived from the trophoderm. The finding of bits of tissue with these two types of epithelium is the only sure proof of pregnancy in early stages.

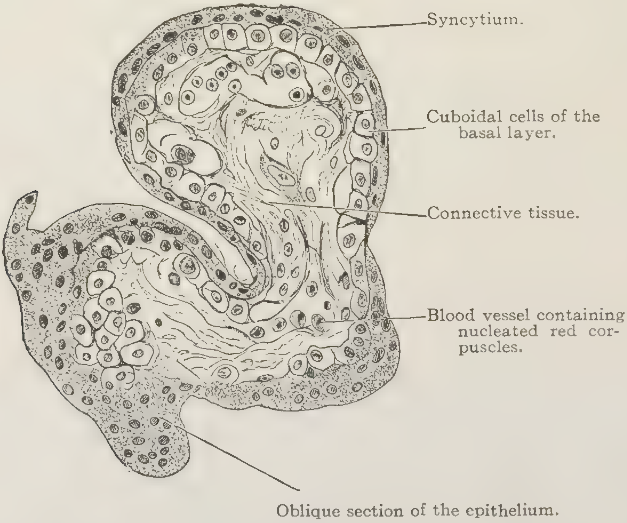

Syncytium.
Cuboidal cells of the basal layer.
Connective tissue.
Blood vessel containing nucleated red corpuscles.
Oblique section of the epithelium.

FIG. 360.—CROSS SECTION OF A HUMAN CHORIONIC VILLUS OF THE FOURTH WEEK OF PREGNANCY.

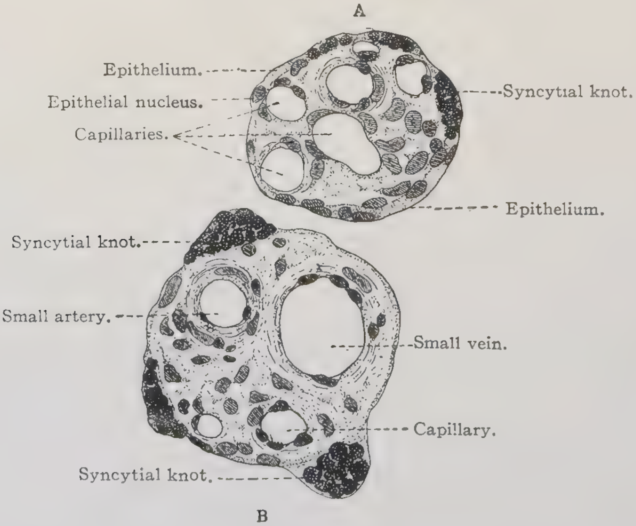


FIG. 361.—CROSS SECTION THROUGH A SMALLER (A) AND A LARGER (B) CHORIONIC VILLUS OF A HUMAN PLACENTA AT THE END OF PREGNANCY. × 250. (Schaper.)

From the fourth week of pregnancy the inner cellular layer becomes more and more irregular, and in the latter half of the term its cells have disappeared, leaving only the syncytial layer (Fig. 361). Even this outer layer undergoes a progressive degeneration. As more and more branches develop the main stems of the villi become inactive, carrying only trunk vessels; the capillary net and with it the cellular activity is transferred to the new tips floating in the maternal blood. The epithelium of the chorion and of the trunk villi may form "knots," or become converted into "canalized fibrin," or merely stretched out into a thin, non-nucleated layer. The syncytial knots are similar to the giant cell degeneration found pathologically in other organs, and the canalized fibrin is a type of hyaline degeneration, in which nucleus and protoplasm become replaced by a smooth, structureless substance, frequently arranged in layers, or riddled with minute holes. It stains intensely with eosine. Neighboring villi may be fused together by masses of this hyaline substance (Fig. 364). Thus degeneration of the older surfaces of the villi accompanies the production of new active areas.

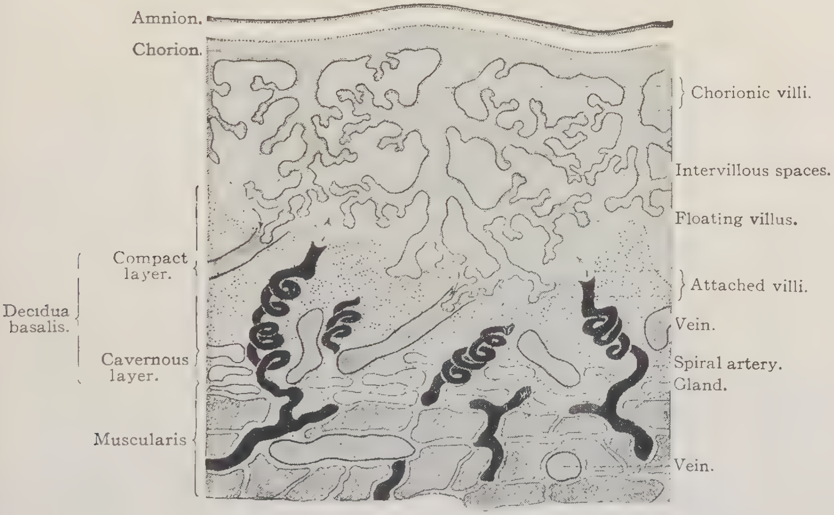


FIG. 362.—DIAGRAM OF THE HUMAN PLACENTA AT THE CLOSE OF PREGNANCY. (Schaper.)

The active trophodermic epithelium of the latter part of pregnancy shows occasionally a brush border, and often contains fat droplets. The protoplasm is granular, but no definite indications of its absorbtive activity are recognizable. Yet it is by means of this syncytial layer that oxygen and nutriment must pass from the maternal blood to the underlying fetal capillaries. That there must also be some exchange of waste products from fetus to maternal blood is also certain, since in the human fetus the Wolffian body degenerates very early, long before the kidney can be considered functional; the fetal waste must therefore be excreted by the mother. Bremer (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1916, vol. 19, pp. 179–209) has pointed out that, in the placentæ of those mammals in which the Wolffian body does not function, occasional areas are found on the active villi in which the syncytium has thinned to an epithelial plate in close relation with an underlying fetal capillary. This is the same sort of arrangement that is found in the glomerulus of the kidney, and may indicate that in these areas fetal excretion can take place (Fig. 363). Such epithelial plates are not found when the Wolffian body remains functional, as in pig and sheep.

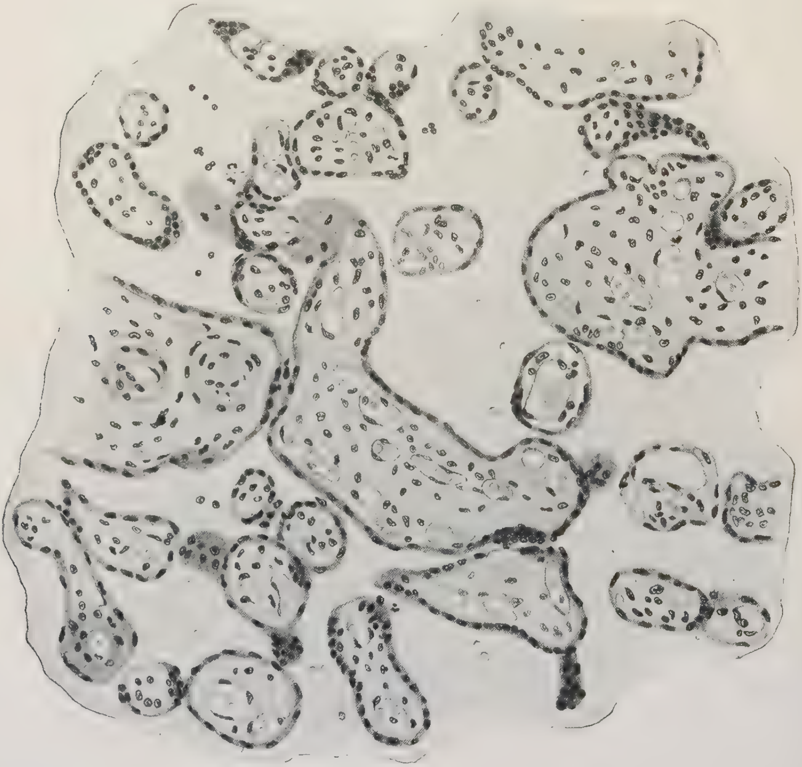


Fig. 363.—Section from the Placenta at Term; Villi Floating in the Maternal Blood Space.

The maternal part of the placenta can best be studied when the placenta is in situ, still attached to the uterine wall. Bounding the maternal blood space is the compact layer of the decidua basalis. Here and there the tips of villi are imbedded in this, forming attached villi. Their epithelium may be entirely wanting, or in the form of syncytial knots or hyaline material, but they are readily recognizable by the mesenchymal core (Fig. 366). The glands of the cavernous layer are closed cavities, stretched by the expansion of the uterine wall until at term they are long slits, parallel to the surface. Their epithelium degenerates, as in the glands of the decidua vera; masses of hyaline degeneration frequently found in the lumens perhaps represent the epithelial remains. But in many glands a careful search will show a few epithelial cells still in position on the wall. Between the glands and in the compact layer are masses of decidual cells. Below the decidua is the muscularis, stretched thin at term. The coiled arteries of the resting uterus have become partially straightened by the expansion of the wall. They run in extensions of the decidua which pass around the villi in the form of septa, subdividing the placenta into lobes or cotyledons, each perhaps representing the territory occupied by the ramifications of a single villus. (In the ruminants the cotyledons are widely separated by areas of smooth chorion, but in man they are closely adjacent, with septa between them.) The septa end before reaching the chorion, so that the division into cotyledons is noticeable only on the uterine surface of the placenta. From the septa the arteries open into the intervillous spaces. The veins which drain the intervillous spaces usually open between the septa, and pass obliquely through the cavernous layer and the muscularis as irregular spaces, whose endothelial lining is the only special coat. The floating tips of villi may be sucked into their open mouths by the current of maternal blood.

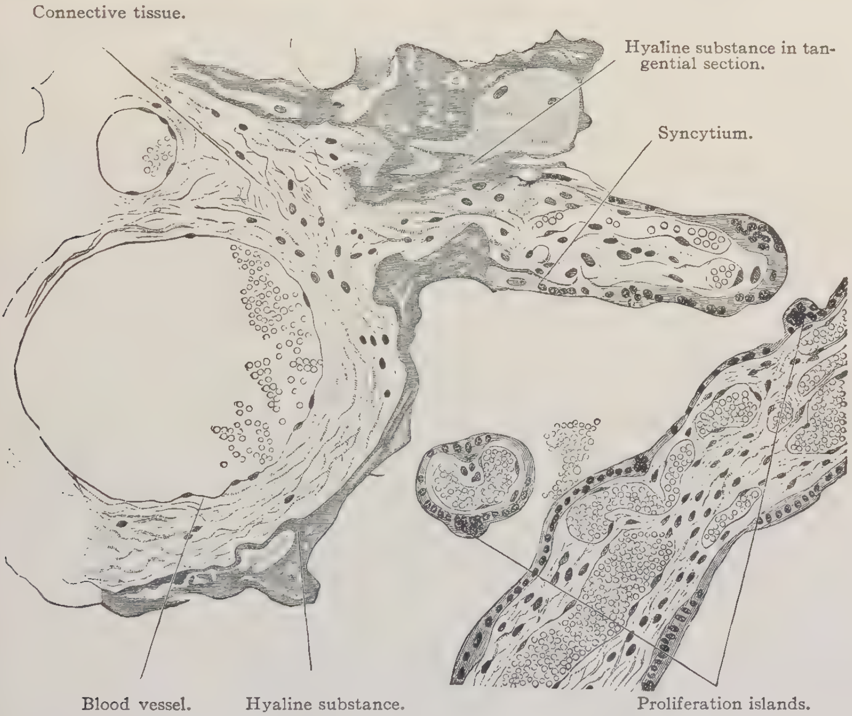


Fig. 364.—From a Section of a Human Placenta at Term. × 260.

At the time of birth, or parturition, the uterus contracts violently. The pressure on the amniotic fluid causes it to seek the only exit, by way of the os uteri. The membranes enclosing the fluid protrude through the cervix, and tend to expand it. Changes have already taken place in the muscles here to make them less resistant. As the chorion læve is disturbed in its relations to the decidua vera a rupture occurs in the weakest part, *i.e.* in the cavernous layer. This is torn as one would tear apart stamps along the perforated lines. The amnion, chorion and the upper part of the decidua are cast off; the lower part of the cavernous layer remains in position on the uterine wall. After the membranes have served their purpose of expanding the os they usually rupture, and the child is born, accompanied by the amniotic fluid, still attached to the placenta by the umbilical cord. Some time later the uterus contracts still further, and expels the placenta and membranes, the "after-birth." The placenta is dislodged from the uterine wall also by tearing free at the line of the cavernous layer.

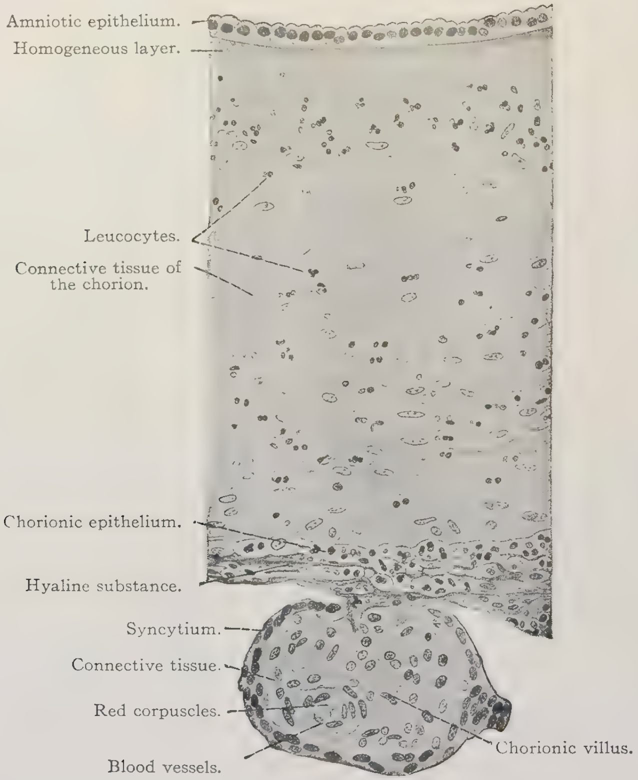


FIG. 365.—SECTION OF HUMAN PLACENTA AT TERM.

The fused amnion and chorion, and a villus. The chorionic epithelium, bordering the maternal blood space, has in part degenerated into cell knots and hyaline substance. × 260.

The great arteries and veins to the intervillous spaces are of course ruptured by this separation. Disastrous hæmorrhage is usually controlled by the pressure of the rapidly contracting muscle layers through which the vessels pass. The wide, saucer-shaped bottoms of the glands, left in the part of the cavernous layer remaining on the uterine wall, are converted into pits and ultimately into gland-shapes by the continued contraction of the muscles on which the passive, non-contractile decidua rests. At the same time the thin strip of decidua is thickened by the same contraction. The whole uterus is now lined by a fairly thick decidua, without surface epithelium, containing gland spaces opening on the surface. The few remaining glandular epithelial cells which have escaped destruction multiply and supply the new linings of the glands and renew the surface epithelium. The process is similar to the repair after menstruation.

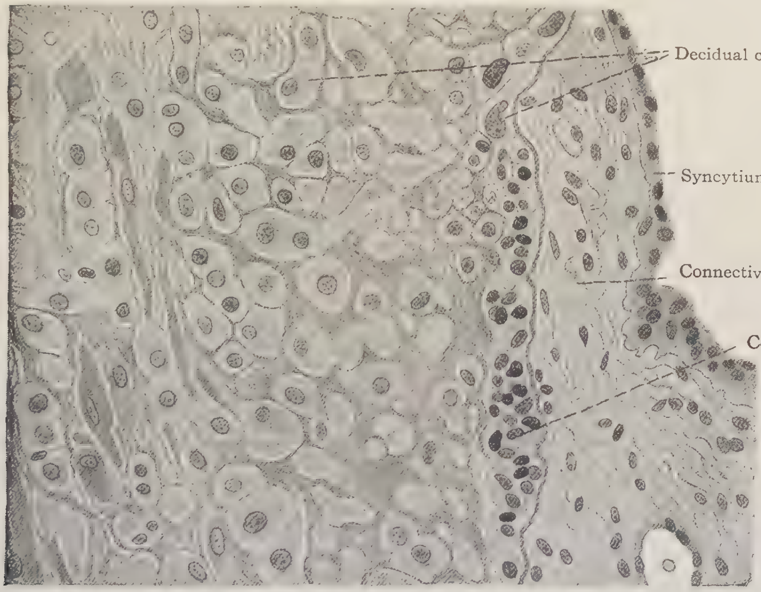


FIG. 366.—SECTION OF HUMAN PLACENTA AT TERM.
The compact layer of the decidua basalis, with decidual cells. At the right an attached villus with core of fetal connective tissue covered by the syncytial layer. The imbedded syncytium has degenerated to form cell knots. × 200.

The umbilical cord is a translucent, glistening, white or pearly rope of tissue about 2 feet in length, extending from the umbilicus to the placenta. It consists of mucous tissue (p. 69) covered with epithelium, and contains at birth three large blood vessels, two *umbilical arteries* and one *umbilical vein* (Fig. 367, B). The parallel arteries generally wind around the vein making sometimes forty revolutions. The surface of the cord shows corresponding spiral markings and often irregular protuberances called false knots. (True knots, tied by the intrauterine movements of the embryo, are very rare.) There are no lymphatic vessels or capillaries in the cord, and the large blood vessels do not anastomose. The walls of the arteries contain many muscle fibers, but very little elastic tissue, and they are usually found collapsed in sections; their contraction is of interest since nerves have been traced into the cord for only a very short distance. The vein generally remains open.

The *umbilical arteries* arise in young embryos as the main terminal branches into which the dorsal aorta bifurcates. These vessels curve ventrally on either side of the pelvis and pass out through the cord to the chorion; they are equidistant from the allantois which they accompany. In the adult the parts of these vessels near the aorta are known as the common iliac arteries, and the small offshoots from them which have grown down the limbs, have become the external iliac arteries. The distal course of the original vessels may still be followed through the hypogastric arteries (internal iliacs) up on either side of the median line to the navel; toward the navel the vessels have become reduced to slender cords. The *umbilical vein*, within the cord, represents the fusion of a pair. On entering the body it conveys the blood from the placenta, through the persistent left umbilical vein, directly to the under side of the liver, which it crosses as the ductus venosus, and then empties into the vena cava inferior. In the adult, its former course is marked by the round ligament of the liver and the ligament of the ductus venosus.

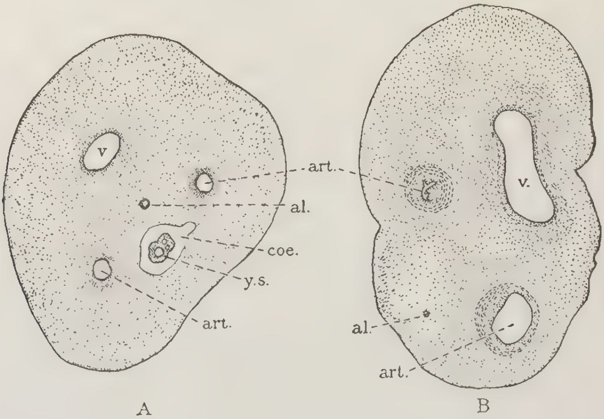


Fig. 367.—Cross Section of Umbilical Cords.
A, from an embryo of two months, × 20; **B,** at birth, × 3. **al.,** Allantois; **art.,** artery; **coe.,** cœlom; **v.** vein; **y. s.,** yolk stalk.

The *allantois*, which the umbilical vessels accompany, at first extends the entire length of the cord as a slender epithelial tube. Its condition at three months is shown in Fig. 368. At birth, it has become reduced to a very slender, and generally interrupted, solid strand of epithelial cells. That it may retain its continuity is stated by Ahlfeld (Arch. f. Gynäk., 1876, vol. 10, p. 81). This remnant may be sought for near the body of the embryo, and its tendency to retain its original position equidistant from the umbilical arteries is the best guide for locating it. By the use of Mallory's connective tissue stain, the epithelial cells may be stained red in contrast with surrounding blue fibrils. Within the body of the embryo the allantois is prolonged to the upper end of the bladder, with which it is continuous; this intra-abdominal part has long been called the *urachus* (*i.e.*, vas urinarium). If it remains pervious at birth, which is abnormal, urine may escape at the umbilicus.

The *yolk stalk*, surrounded by an extension of the body cavity, is found in young umbilical cords (Fig. 367, A). This stalk is a slender strand of mesoderm, containing the entodermal vitelline duct, and the vitelline vessels which accompany it to the yolk-sac. The loop of intestine from which the yolk stalk springs may also extend into the cavity of the cord, and if it has not been drawn into the abdomen at birth, umbilical hernia results. If the cavity of the vitelline duct remains pervious at birth, the intestinal contents may escape at the umbilicus. (Such a condition is known as a fecal fistula, whereas the pervious urachus constitutes a urinary fistula.) Ordinarily the yolk stalk and its vitelline vessels, together with the cœlom of the cord, have been obliterated before birth, so that no trace of them remains in sections of the cord.

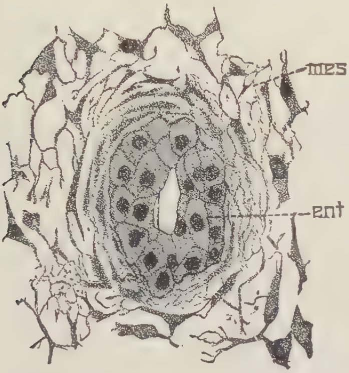


FIG. 368.—CROSS SECTION OF THE ALLANTOIC DUCT, FROM THE UMBILICAL CORD OF A HUMAN EMBRYO OF THREE MONTHS. × 340. (Minot.)

Ent., Entodermal epithelium; **mes.**, mesenchyma.

The *yolk-sac* may be found with almost every placenta, as a very small cyst adherent to the amnion in the placental area. If the distal end of the cord is gently stretched, a wing-like fold appears (Fig. 369), differing from all others by containing no large vessels; the fold indicates the direction of the yolk-sac, which may be exposed by stripping the amnion from the chorion. It may be beyond the limits of the placenta. Further

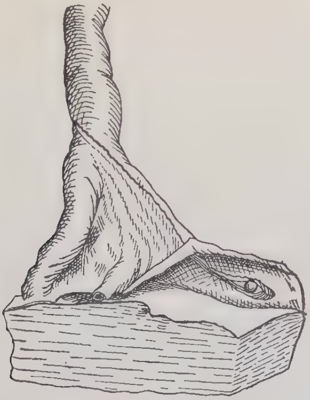


FIG. 369.—YOLK-SAC AND PERSISTENT VITELLINE VESSELS, EXPOSED BY REFLECTING THE AMNION AT THE DISTAL END OF THE CORD. (Lönnberg.)

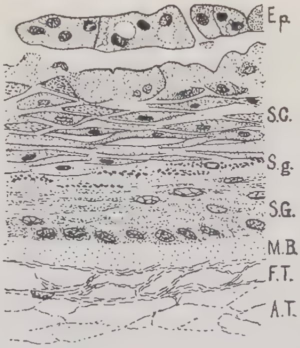


FIG. 370.—PART OF A HUMAN AMNIOTIC VILLUS. × 330.

Ep., Epitrichium; **S. C.**, stratum corneum; **S. g.**, stratum granulosum; **S. G.**, stratum germinativum; **M. B.**, homogeneous layer; **F. T.**, fibrous tissue; **A. T.**, areolar tissue.

details will be found in Lönnberg's admirable Studien über das Nabelbläschen, Stockholm, 1901.

Amniotic villi are irregular, flat, opaque spots on the amnion near the distal end of the cord. They are often present and may suggest a diseased condition. As seen in Fig. 370 they are areas of imperfectly developed skin, and as shown in this case (Lewis, Art. "Umbilical Cord," Buck's Hdb., 2nd ed.) they present all of its fundamental layers. Frequently these cornified areas are less fully developed. They have been compared with the pointed epithelial elevations which cover the surface of the umbilical cord in ruminants, but the latter do not appear as areas of imperfect skin, and probably are entirely different structures. They may appropriately be called villi, but the human "villi" scarcely rise above the surface. Their significance is unknown.

Vagina and External Genital Organs

The *vagina* consists of a mucosa, submucosa, muscularis and fibrosa. Its epithelium is thick and stratified, its outer cells being squamous and easily detached. It rests upon the papillæ of the tunica propria, and is thrown into coarse folds or *rugæ*. Glands are absent. The tunica propria is a delicate connective tissue with few elastic fibers, containing a variable number of lymphocytes. Occasionally there are solitary nodules, above which numerous lymphocytes wander into the epithelium. The submucosa consists of loose connective tissue with coarse elastic fibers. The muscularis includes an inner circular and a small outer longitudinal layer of smooth muscle. The fibrosa is a firm connective tissue, well supplied with elastic elements. Blood and lymphatic vessels are found in the connective tissue layers, and wide veins form a close network between the muscle bundles. There is a ganglionated plexus of nerves in the fibrosa.

The mucous membrane of the vestibule differs from that of the vagina in possessing glands. The numerous *lesser vestibular glands*, 0.5–3 mm. in diameter, produce mucus; they occur chiefly near the clitoris and the outlet of the urethra. The pair of *large vestibular glands* (Bartholin's) also produce mucus; they correspond with the bulbo-urethral glands in the male and are of similar structure. The hymen consists of fine-fibered, vascular connective tissue covered with mucous membrane. The clitoris is an erectile body, resembling the penis. It includes two small *corpora cavernosa*. The glans clitoridis contains a thick net of veins. It is not, as in the male, at the tip of a corpus cavernosum urethræ which begins as a median bulb in the perineal region; the bulbus in the female exists as a pair of highly vascular bodies, one on either side of the vestibule. Each is called a *bulbus vestibuli*. The labia minora contain sebaceous glands, 0.2–2.0 mm. in size, which are not connected with hair follicles; they first become distinct between the third and sixth years. The labia majora have the structure of skin.

The Ductless Glands

In the classification of glands (p. 63) it was pointed out that certain epithelial outgrowths lost their ducts by obliteration during the course of development. In other cases masses of cells grow from an epithelial surface either as solid cords or by the migration of individual cells, which later become grouped; these also form ductless glands. The lymph-glands and spleen are also strictly ductless glands, but are better classed with the testis and ovary as cytogenic, in that their function is, in part at least, the production of cells.

The ductless glands may arise from any of the germ layers. From the entoderm come the thymus, the thyroid (or thyreoid) gland, the parathyroid glands, and the islets of the pancreas. The glomus caroticum was formerly included in this group, but recent investigations show that its active cells are probably of ectodermal (sympathetic) origin, not from the entodermal pharyngeal pouches. From the ectoderm are derived also the three parts of the pituitary body, or hypophysis, the pineal gland, the medulla of the suprarenal gland, and the chromaffin bodies. The mesoderm provides the cortex of the suprarenal gland, the interstitial cells of the testis, and the corpus luteum of the ovary.

Histologically these glands vary greatly in appearance. In some the active cells are arranged in orderly rows or surround definite follicles; in others no order is observable, the cells lying in groups or even singly in the stroma. In some the "gland" is merely an inconspicuous part of some organ, as in the testis. Apart from these scattered groups of cells, however, the recognized ductless glands have certain points in common. All secrete definite, but different, substances which are taken up by the blood or lymphatic vessels and carried in the general circulation to act on other cells of the body; and in most of them the cells are arranged, therefore, in close relation to the vessels. The active principle of the secretion is known as a hormone. The glands are called endocrine glands, or glands of internal secretion.

The recent studies of the glands of internal secretion have been the means of great advances in physiology and medicine (see E. S. Shafer, "The Endocrine Organs," 1926). The action of the different glands is interrelated and often antagonistic. As an example may be mentioned the experiments of Gudernatsch (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1914, vol. 15, pp. 431–480). Tadpoles fed on thymus grow to huge size, but remain tadpoles, without developing the legs or losing the tail at the normal time of metamorphosis. Fed on thyroid gland, they develop into frogs while still small, and earlier than usual.

Histologically the endocrine glands fall into four classes. (*a*) The thymus gives the appearance of lymphoid tissue. (*b*) The thyroid gland, parathyroids, islets of the pancreas, cortex of the suprarenal gland, the anterior and middle lobes of the hypophysis, and the glomus caroticum show groups or cords of epithelioid cells in close relation with the vessels; in the hypophysis, and more fully in the thyroid gland, the cords become segmented and the cells of the resultant groups rearrange themselves to form hollow vesicles. (*c*) The posterior lobe of the hypophysis, the pineal gland, the medulla of the suprarenal gland and the chromaffin organs are of nervous origin, and are alike in having no definite arrangement of cells. (*d*) The interstitial cells and those of the corpus luteum lie irregularly in groups in the stroma. The decidual cells of the pregnant uterus should probably be added to this group.

Hormones or somewhat similar substances are said to be given off by the epithelial cells of the duodenum (secretin) and of the pyloric end of the stomach, (gastrin), acting especially on the pancreas and gastric glands respectively. It is probable that many other cells, as for instance the connective tissue cells, may contribute an "internal" secretion as part of their function. Yet it is not usual to class such cases as glands of internal secretion.

THYMUS

The thymus (Gr. θύμος, thymus) arises from the two tubular prolongations of the third pharyngeal pouches, which meet in the median line as shown in Fig. 197, and become bound together by their connective tissue coverings. The lumen is lost, and the cells proliferate. They form a broad, flat, bilobed mass with a tapering prolongation up either side of the neck. The bulk of the organ is in the thorax, beneath the upper part of the sternum. At birth it weighs generally between 5 and 15 grams (about half an ounce), and is relatively a large organ. Haller (1761) described it in older embryos as "a huge gland, scarcely smaller than the

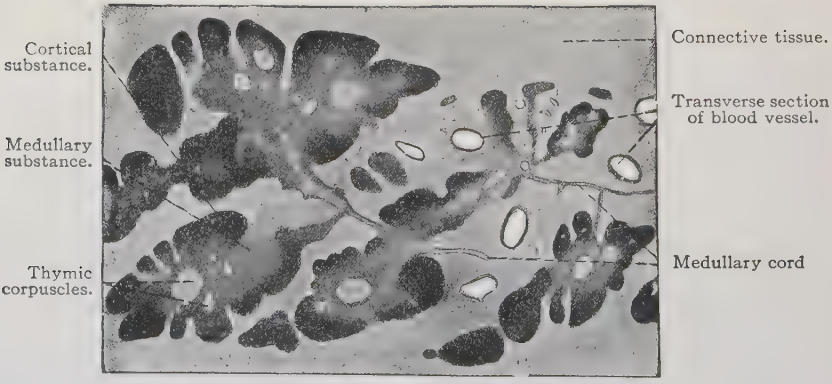


FIG. 371.—FROM A CROSS SECTION OF THE THYMUS OF A CHILD, ONE YEAR AND NINE MONTHS OLD. × 21.

kidney; but in the adult it is diminished, and having become constricted, dried up and much harder, it is almost buried in the surrounding fat." Meckel found ordinarily no trace of it at twelve years. These older ideas, however, have been revised. The thymus persists even in the aged, and only degenerates as the result of long or chronic diseases, according to Winiwarter (Bull. d'Histol., 1924, vol. 1, pp. 11–25), who gives a critical review of our present knowledge of the gland.

The thymus is subdivided by connective tissue layers into *lobes* from 4 to 11 mm. in diameter, and these are similarly subdivided into lobules of about 1 cu. mm. each. All the lobules in the right and left halves of the thymus, respectively, are attached to a cord of medullary substance, 1–3 mm. in diameter, as may be seen if the gland is pulled apart. This axial structure suggests the original diverticulum. Each lobule consists of a pale *medulla*, extending from the cord, and a darker peripheral *cortex* (Figs. 371 and 372). The entire structure somewhat resembles a lymph gland, from which, however, germinal centers are absent. It might be inferred that lymphoid tissue had developed in the mesenchyma surrounding the diverticulum, in the same way that such tissue forms about the tonsillar pits, but careful study has shown that the thymus is largely of entodermal origin. Whether the cells of its cortex, which closely resemble lymphocytes, are true lymphocytes or "deceptively similar epithelial cells" has not been determined.

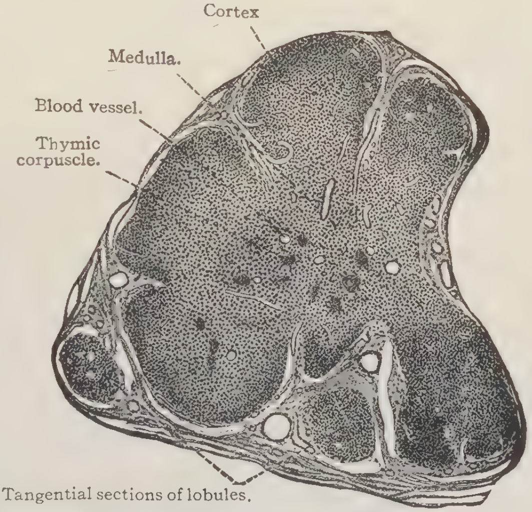


FIG. 372.—PART OF A SECTION OF THE THYMUS FROM A HUMAN EMBRYO OF FIVE MONTHS. × 50.

It is extremely difficult in embryonic tissues to trace with certainty the derivation of all the cells. There is a general agreement in this case that the original compact mass of entodermal cells, by vacuolization, becomes transformed into a reticulum. Small cells then appear in the meshes, especially in the cortex. They are first found at about the same time embryologically that true lymphocytes develop in the lymph gland; they resemble lymphocytes very closely, with spherical, dark nucleus and only a slight rim of basophilic protoplasm; and they could have migrated into the reticulum. On the other hand, in the thymus they are not arranged as in other lymphoid organs, with cords and germinal centers; and in function the two organs seem to have nothing in common. The small cells have been noted by many authors budding from the stellate epithelial cells of the reticulum, and Stöhr regarded them as epithelial cells deceptively similar to lymphocytes. Winiwarter agrees with this interpretation, but in the same volume Jolly still considers the thymus a lymphoid organ, but specialized; and Hammar (Centralbl. f. allgem. Path. u. path. Anat., 1923, vol. 33, pp. 505-513) also maintains the immigration theory.

These small cells, or thymocytes, are thickly crowded in the cortex in the meshes of a reticulum of stellate cells. They show frequent mitotic figures, but there are no germinal centers. They seem to be in no definite relation to the blood vessels, and there is no trace of lymph sinus or medullary cords. It has been suggested that thymocytes serve as reservoirs for nuclein to be used in the mitoses of body cells. The fact that the thymus, when fed to tadpoles, causes growth without differentiation, might corroborate this view.

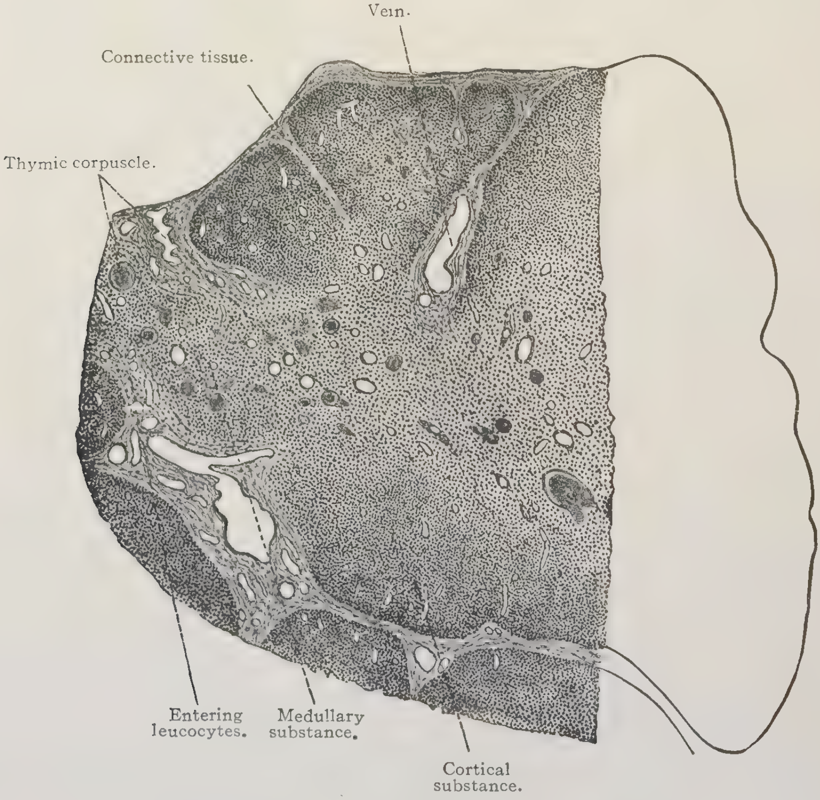


FIG. 373.—PART OF A SECTION OF THE THYMUS OF A CHILD AT BIRTH. × 50.

True lymphocytes, and other leucocytes, eosinophilic cells, and multinucleate giant cells have been found in the medulla. "Myoid cells," somewhat resembling muscle fibers, have been reported in the medulla of birds. Erythroblasts are said to occur in its outer portion and in the cortex. The thymus therefore is sometimes considered a blood-forming organ. Sometimes the medulla contains cysts, which may be lined in part with typical ciliated cells. The most characteristic structures in the thymus are the *thymic corpuscles* (Hassall's corpuscles) which are found exclusively in the medulla. They are rounded bodies, at first few in number and small (12–20 μ in diameter), but they increase rapidly in size (to a diameter of 180 μ) and new ones are constantly forming. They are said to be present at about the fifth month, and at birth they are numerous, varying in size as shown in Fig. 374. To produce them, the nucleus and protoplasm of an entodermal reticular tissue cell enlarge, and the nucleus loses its staining capacity by changes in its chromatin. A layer of deeply staining hyaline substance develops in the protoplasm. This increases until it fills the entire cell, often being arranged in concentric layers, and the nucleus becomes obliterated. Neighboring cells are concentrically compressed by the enlargement of this structure, and by hyaline transformation they may become a part of the corpuscle. The larger corpuscles are due to a fusion of smaller ones, or to hyaline changes occurring simultaneously in a group of cells. The central portion of a corpuscle may become calcified. Sometimes it is vacuolated, containing fat. The hyaline substance may respond to mucous stains, but generally it does not; it has been considered similar to the "colloid" of the thyroid gland. Leucocytes are said to become imbedded in the corpuscles, or to enter them and assist in their disintegration. Thymic corpuscles have been regarded not only as degenerative products of the entodermal epithelium but also as concentric connective tissue masses, and as blood vessels with thickened walls and obliterated cavities. Injections show that they are not connected with the blood vessels. Although they have recently been described as active constituents of the thymus, they are generally regarded as degenerations.

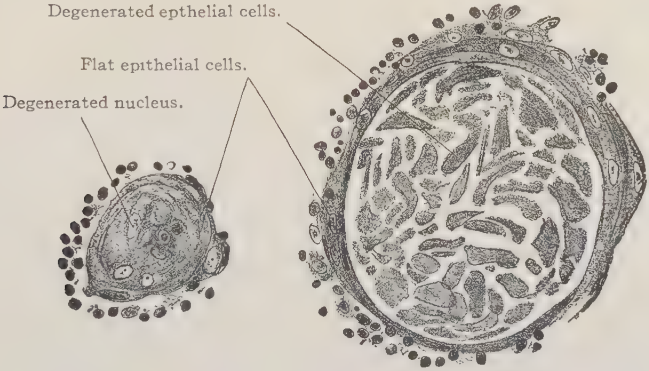


FIG. 374.—THYMIC CORPUSCLES, IN SECTION, FROM A MAN TWENTY-THREE YEARS OLD. × 360.

The arteries of the thymus enter it along the medullary strand, and extend between the cortex and medulla, sending branches into both but chiefly into the cortex. The cortical branches empty into veins between the lobules; the others into veins within the medulla. There are many interlobular lymphatic vessels, beginning close to the surface of the gland substance, and accompanying the blood vessels. There is nothing in the thymus to correspond with a lymph sinus. The nerves, chiefly sympathetic fibers, with some from the vagus, terminate along the vessels; a very few have free endings in the medulla.

THYROID GLAND

The thyroid (*i.e.*, shield-shaped) gland is a median, entodermal downgrowth from the tongue; its thyroglossal duct becomes obliterated, leaving the foramen cæcum to mark its former outlet. The downgrowth is joined by cells from the postbranchial bodies, which fuse with it. This entire structure comes to lie beside and in front of the upper part of the trachea. It consists of two lateral lobes, each about two inches long and an inch wide, connected by an *isthmus*, about half an inch wide, which crosses the median line ventral to the second and third tracheal rings. An unpaired *pyramidal lobe* extends from the isthmus or adjacent part of one lateral lobe toward the tongue (Fig. 197). Irregular detached portions of the gland, such as occur especially along the course of the thyroglossal duct, are called *accessory thyroid glands*.

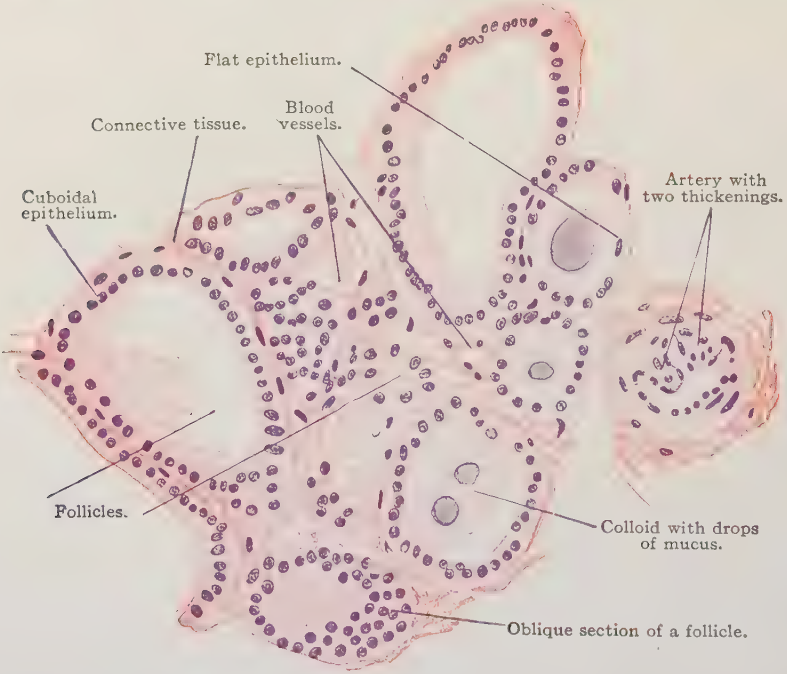

Flat epithelium.
Connective tissue.
Blood vessels.
Cuboidal epithelium.
Artery with two thickenings.
Follicles.
Colloid with drops of mucus.
Oblique section of a follicle.

FIG. 375.—SECTION OF A LOBULE OF THE THYROID GLAND FROM AN ADULT MAN. × 220.

The proliferating mass of entodermal cells forms at first a network of solid cords or platelike sheets. (Norris, Amer. Journ. Anat., 1916, vol.

20, pp. 411–447.) This becomes separated into small masses, within each of which a lumen may appear. The lumen enlarges and becomes spheroidal; the entodermal cells which surround it form a simple epithelium, either columnar, cuboidal, or flat. Flat cells are said to occur especially in old age; usually the cells are low columnar or cuboidal. The mature thyroid gland consists, therefore, of rounded, closed spaces, or *follicles*, bounded by a simple entodermal epithelium (Fig. 375). The follicles vary greatly in diameter. Generally they are rounded, but sometimes they are elongated, and occasionally they branch or communicate with one another. Models show occasional follicles of most bizarre shapes, due to the incomplete separation of the original network or to later growth by budding. Among them are cords or clumps of cells which have not acquired a lumen.

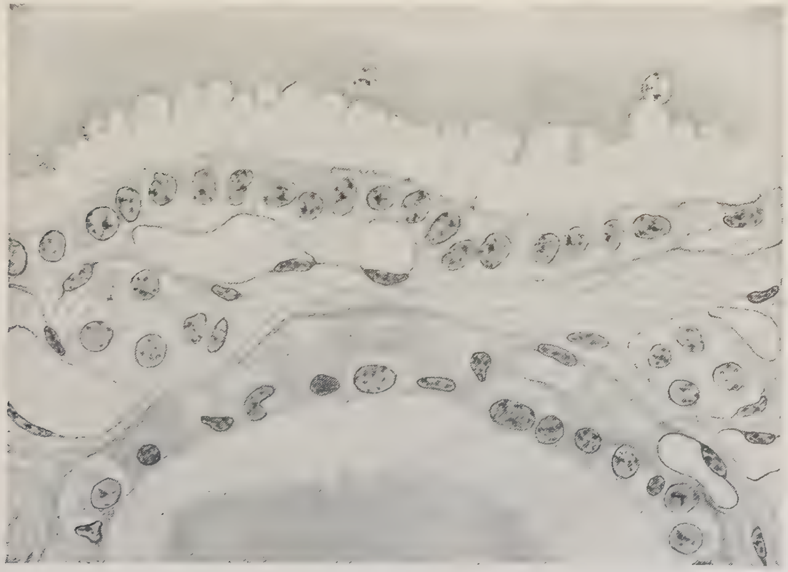


Fig. 376.—Thyroid Gland: Parts of Two Follicles with Connective Tissue between. The cells of the upper follicle show granules in the cytoplasm apparently forming the colloid. In the lower follicle the colloid seems to be "leaking" past a few cells with pycnotic nuclei to the tissue spaces outside. Two small cell groups show no lumen.

Within the follicles, and forming the most conspicuous feature of the thyroid gland in ordinary sections, is a hyaline material which stains deeply with eosine and is named "colloid." The hyaline material in the thymic corpuscles, the hypophysis, and in the coagulum in the cervical blood and lymphatic vessels, has also been designated colloid. In sections of the thyroid gland it usually does not fill the follicle but has contracted, producing a spiny border. This condition, however, has been noticed by some in fresh tissue, and may merely represent a difference in stainability of the more recent secretion. Granules, vacuoles and droplets of mucus, detached cells, leucocytes, and crystalloid bodies may be found in it. It is a product of the epithelial cells, in the protoplasm of which similar material has been detected. It has been said that it is transferred to the blood and lymphatic vessels, passing out between the epithelial cells, as is suggested in sections such as that shown in Fig. 376.

It has, however, been denied that the colloid thus leaves the follicle; and certainly specimens vary greatly in the frequency with which such appearances are found. Cowdry (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1922, vol. 30, pp. 25–38) maintains that there is a double secretion from the follicle cells, one from the free pole and one from the basal pole. Corresponding to this reversal of polarity he notes that the reticular material (Golgi apparatus) could be found at either end of the cell (see p. 9). Williamson and Pearse (Journ. Anat., 1923, vol. 58, pp. 193–198) describe a system of intracellular canals leading to the base of the epithelium for the removal of the secretion, but this has not been confirmed.

As has been learned by experiment, the thyroid gland produces an internal secretion which is essential for the normal growth and development of the body. Its relation to the colloid material is not clear. The finding of two sorts of thyroid cells, one of which produces colloid, and the other does not, lacks confirmation. Probably the differences noted can be accounted for by different phases of secretion. The cells may exhibit refractive, secretory granules, which are larger and coarser toward the free surface. Eosinophilic granules have been reported, and in certain animals other granules of fatty nature have been found, especially near the basal surface. Since the terminal bars are said to be deficient at the angles where the epithelial cells meet, an opportunity is afforded for the contents of the follicles to pass out between the epithelial cells to the vascular tunica propria. The cells through or between which it passes usually show dark or pycnotic nuclei, as though at the end of a term of active secretion.

The thyroid follicles are surrounded by loose elastic connective tissue, said to be reticular near the follicles, which contains very many blood and lymphatic vessels in close relation with the epithelium. Denser connective tissue forms a capsule and lobular partitions. It contains small arteries, the media and intima of which are said normally to present local thickenings (Fig. 375). The nerves from the cervical sympathetic ganglia form perivascular plexuses, and pass to the follicles.

Parathyroid Glands

It is generally stated that there are four parathyroid glands in man, the anterior or upper pair being derived from the fourth pharyngeal pouches, and the posterior or lower pair from the third (Fig. 197). They are therefore entodermal structures. In the adult they are round or oval bodies, said to measure from 3 to 13 mm., found on the dorsal or tracheal surface of the thyroid gland. They may be imbedded in its capsule or attached to it by pedicles. Sometimes they (the lower pair?) are found in the thymus. The parathyroid glands may be lacking on one side, where in other cases as many as four have been recorded; they may atrophy and disappear, or increase in number by subdivision. Both pairs possess a similar structure unlike that of either the thyroid gland or the thymus, but resembling the corresponding *epithelial bodies* of the lower vertebrates. They consist of masses and cords of polygonal, entodermal cells containing round nuclei with networks of chromatin. The protoplasm is pale, "almost homogeneous" or "slightly granular," sometimes containing vacuoles. Cell membranes are not prominent. Other cells, larger and containing granules which stain with eosine, may appear among the principal cells, but not until after the tenth year, it is said. They may be a functional stage of the other cells. Both kinds of cell contain fatty granules, and some glycogen. Occasionally a few small follicles are present, containing colloid material. These have been found to increase in number after the experimental removal of the thyroid glands. Between the cells and the large thin-walled blood vessels which pass among them, there is only a small amount of connective tissue. The glands are very vascular, and each receives a special arteriole from the inferior thyroid artery. A capsule surrounds the entire structure, said to contain occasional smooth muscle fibers. Little is known of the lymphatics. The nerves, of sympathetic origin, have been traced to both vessels and cells. The function is still little understood, but seems to be related to the percentage of calcium in the blood.

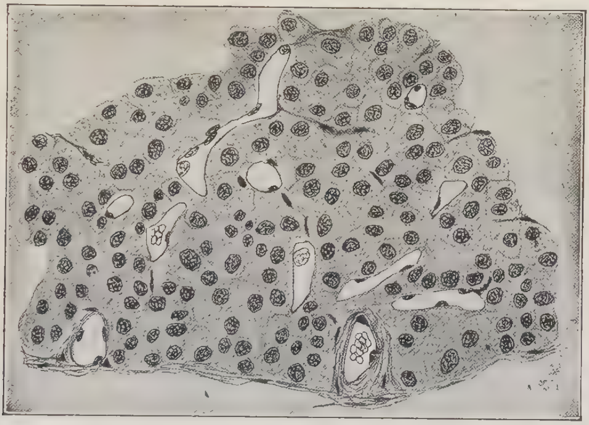


Fig. 377.—Section of a Human Parathyroid Gland. (Huber.)

SUPRARENAL GLANDS

Development and General Features. The suprarenal glands, or adrenal glands, are two flattened masses of cells, without lumen or ducts, situated in the retroperitoneal tissue above the kidneys. They vary considerably in size and shape, but are usually about a quarter of an inch thick and between 1 and 2 inches tall, sometimes being wider and sometimes narrower than their height. The right suprarenal gland is generally described as triangular and the left as crescentic.

The gland resting upon the kidney (*Glandula Reni incumbens*) was first described by Eustachius (Tractatio de Renibus, 1564). It was apparent from the outset that the relation of the suprarenal glands to the kidneys was merely that of juxtaposition, nevertheless most anatomists still find it convenient to describe them with the urinary organs. Certain early writers supposed that they were renal structures and named them "succenturiate kidneys." Bartholin (Anatomia, 1666) perceived the medulla, which he described as a cavity containing a black humor; and he published an extraordinary figure in which the gland resembles a cocoanut cut across with the lid lifted. In accordance with this conception he named the structures "atrobiliary capsules," and the name *capsule* is still often applied to them. Diemerbroeck (Anatome, 1672), following Wharton, states that "the glands are found at a place where there is a plexus of nerves, to which they are firmly united." In reviewing the various "conjectures" as to their function he writes, "Wharton thinks that in these capsules a certain juice is removed from the plexus of nerves on which they lie, useless indeed to the nervous system, but which, flowing thence into the veins, may serve some useful purpose." The intimate relation of these glands to the nervous system, and the production of an internal secretion received by the veins have since been demonstrated; in certain recent works the glands have even been described as parts of the nervous system. Diemerbroeck concludes by hoping that physicians, through many autopsies, may find out to what diseases these glands give rise. In 1855, Addison described the disease, usually fatal, which is thought to depend upon the loss of function of these glands. Their physiological importance has been amply demonstrated, but they still present fundamental problems, both as to function and structure.

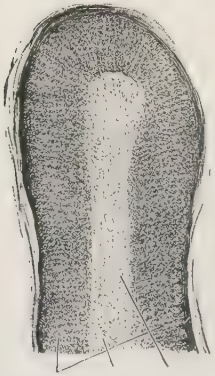


FIG. 378.—SECTION OF THE SUPRARENAL GLAND OF A CHILD. × 15.

A section through a fresh suprarenal gland reveals at once the division into cortex and medulla. The cortex is yellowish, owing to the presence of lipoid substance, and the medulla is dark brown, due in part to the large amount of blood which it contains. The color contrast is usually very striking, and it is shown also in unstained sections of tissue preserved in chromic acid solutions (Fig. 378), although the medulla may then be lighter than the cortex. Not only do the cortex and medulla differ in gross appearance, but they are radically different in embryonic origin, and in the sharks they exist as separate organs. In sharks the medulla is represented by groups of chromaffin cells associated with the sympathetic ganglia, and the cortex takes the form of an "interrenal gland," composed of cords of mesodermal cells with a sinusoidal circulation. In human embryos corresponding parts arise separately, but they come together to form a single gland.

The cortex appears first, and is formed from cells which develop as buds of the cœlomic epithelium, growing into the mesenchyma on either side of the root of the mesentery, medial to the Wolffian bodies. In embryos of 8–12 mm., the buds or cords have become detached from the peritoneal epithelium (Zuckerkandl), and in cross sections they appear as round masses of cells penetrated by a network of slender veins. The cells of these masses rest directly against the vascular edothelium, so that the vessels are described as sinusoids.

Meanwhile cells from the sympathetic ganglia grow ventrally along the medial side of these masses, where they are conspicuous because of their dark stain (Fig. 379). These cells, which give rise to the medulla of the suprarenal gland, are considered gland cells, in spite of their origin. Similar cells are found in relation with other sympathetic ganglia, usually in small groups on the dorsal side, where they are known as paraganglia. They contain granules which stain intensely with chromium salts, and on account of this affinity the cells are called "chromaffin cells." They produce the important internal secretion *adrenalin*. In embryos of 15–20 mm., strands of chromaffin cells are seen penetrating the cortical portion of the gland, but it is not until much later that they gather in a central mass which constitutes the medulla; even at 190 mm. the invasion is not complete (Zuckerkandl). As a whole, the gland acquires a relatively very great size in embryos.

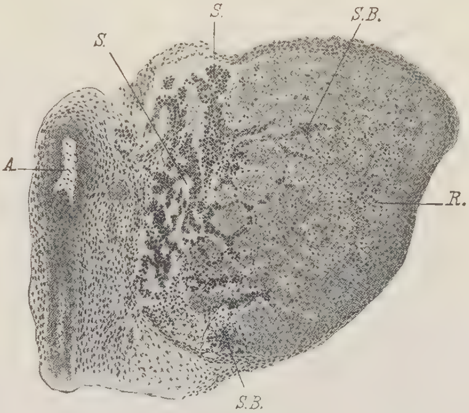


FIG. 379.—SECTION OF THE SUPRARENAL GLAND OF AN EMBRYO OF 17 MM. (Wiesel.)

A, Aorta; **R**, cortical portion; **S**, chromaffin tissue, penetrating to form the medulla at **SB**. (From McMurrich's Development of the Human Body.)

From this mode of development, it is seen that islands of medullary substance may occasionally occur in the cortex, and that outlying portions of the gland may not contain any medulla. Moreover portions of the gland frequently become detached, forming *accessory suprarenal glands*. These may remain near the main glands or may be carried down, with the descent of the adjacent sexual glands, into the broad ligament, or epididymis (cf. Wiesel, Sitzb. kais. Akad. Wiss., Wien, 1899, vol. 108, pp. 257–280). Such glands usually consist entirely of cortex, but they may contain medullary substance. Isolated *paraganglia*, consisting entirely of medullary substance, are not regarded as suprarenal glands. There is no evidence that accessory suprarenal glands may arise from the cœlomic epithelium at a distance from the main glands (Zucherkandl, Keibel and Mall's Human Embryology, vol. 2).

Adult Structure. The cortical substance may be divided into three layers or zones—the *zona glomerulosa*, *zona fasciculata*, and *zona reticularis* (Fig. 380). The zona glomerulosa, found just beneath the capsule, is said to develop between the second and third years after birth, "reaching its characteristic structure only in the later years of childhood." It consists of round masses of cells which in man are much like those of the zona fasciculata; in some animals they are distinguished by their columnar shape. The zona fasciculata is composed of cords of rounded or cuboidal cells, containing secretory granules and an abundance of fat vacuoles (Fig. 381). There is no lumen within these cords and they are not surrounded by basement membranes. Thin-walled vessels pass between them, sometimes lodged in connective tissue strands proceeding from the capsule. The cords of the zona fasciculata are perpendicular to the surface; they end below in a network, the zona reticularis. In this deeper portion the cells become pigmented, so as to form a dark brown band visible without magnification. Fat vacuoles are here smaller or absent. Fig. 381 shows also the close relation between the cells and the vascular endothelium. In portions of the suprarenal gland where the medulla is lacking, the zonæ reticulares of the opposite sides come together, forming the core of the organ.

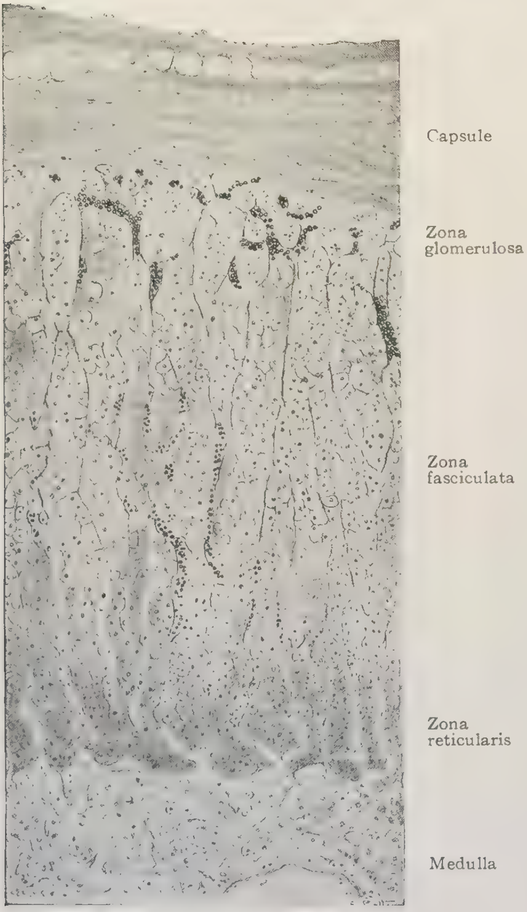


FIG. 380.—SECTION OF HUMAN SUPRARENAL GLAND, THROUGH CORTEX TO MEDULLA.

The medulla is composed of chromaffin cells arranged in strands and masses which unite to form a network, with lacunar veins filling the interstices (Fig. 381). The cells contain an abundant granular protoplasm, but they tend to shrink, even in well-preserved specimens, so that they appear stellate. Two types have been recognized, though it is probable that they represent different secretory phases of the same cells. The common type has abundant protoplasm filled with granules, which stain deeply, and with large, pale vesicular nuclei. Other cells are smaller, with fewer granules, and with dark almost pycnotic nuclei. They may be arranged in slender cords. The granules have been detected in the lumen of the veins, presumably expelled from the cells. Secretory capillaries have been described opening directly into the veins.

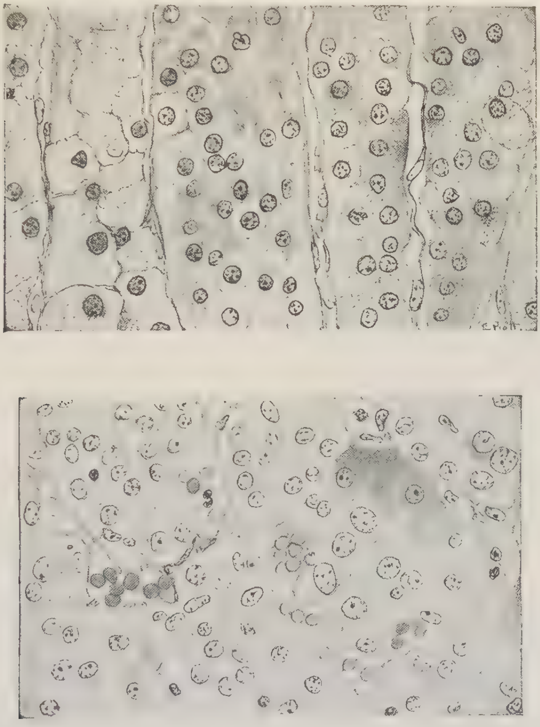


FIG. 381.—SUPRARENAL GLAND, HUMAN.
Above, section through the zona fasciculata; below, section of medulla.

The function of the cells of the medulla is the secretion of adrenalin into the blood stream. The cortical cells have been supposed to supply the precursors of adrenalin, which is only completed in the medulla; or to elaborate lipoids for general body use. The cortex increases during pregnancy, and by experiment has been proved necessary for life. In both cortex and medulla mitoses are frequently seen, indicating that the cells are often destroyed in the performance of their function. The effect of adrenalin in general is the contraction of smooth muscle, but its action is selective, and different on various blood vessels and organs. Thus it contracts the uterine muscles, but inhibits those of the intestinal tract. It also stimulates certain glands, and causes the contraction of pigment cells.

The capsule of the suprarenal glands is a connective tissue layer, said to contain smooth muscle fibers and small ganglia, in addition to vessels and nerves. Around the blood vessels especially, it contains elastic tissue. The capsule sends slender prolongations into the gland, and elastic tissue occurs in the medulla. The cortex contains very few if any elastic fibers, and its framework appears to consist of reticular tissue.

The arteries supplying the suprarenal glands are from several sources. They divide into many small branches in the capsule, and these penetrate the cortex, forming a long-meshed capillary network (Fig. 382). In the medulla the meshes become round and the vessels collect to form veins, the larger of which are accompanied by longitudinal strands of smooth muscle fibers. Some arteries are said to pass directly from the capsule to the medulla, without branching in the cortex. Within the medulla the veins unite to form the *central veins* which are the main stems of the *suprarenal veins* (Fig. 159, p. 174). They emerge at the *hilus;* the right empties into the inferior vena cava and the left joins the left renal vein.

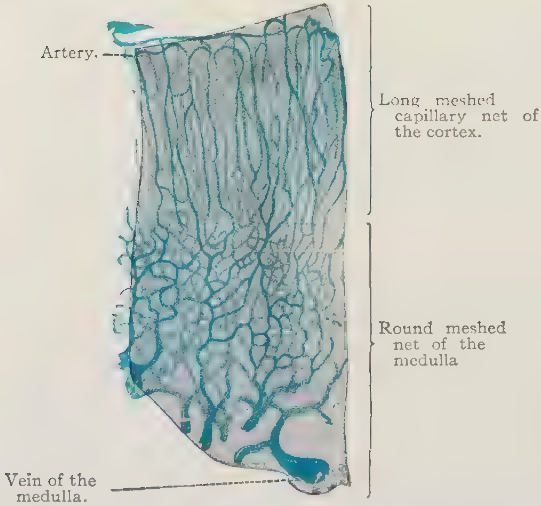

Artery.
Long meshed capillary net of the cortex.
Round meshed net of the medulla
Vein of the medulla.

Fig. 382.—From a Section of an Injected Suprarenal Gland of a Child. × 50.

Lymphatic vessels have been found in the capsule, where they may drain the cortex, and also in the medulla, emerging at the hilus.

The numerous, mostly non-medullated *nerves*, of which a human suprarenal gland receives about thirty small bundles, proceed chiefly from the cœliac plexus and pass with the arteries from the capsule into the medulla. Within the capsule they form a plexus, from which branches descend into the zona glomerulosa and zona fasciculata; there they end on the surface of groups of epithelioid cells, without penetrating between the individual cells. The plexus in the zona reticularis is more abundant, and is formed from fibers which descend directly through the outer zones; its fibers likewise terminate on the outer surface of groups of cells. In the medulla, the nerves are extraordinarily abundant and each cell is surrounded by nerve fibers. Groups of sympathetic ganglion cells are found here and there in the medulla but only rarely in the cortex. A part of the nerves terminate in the walls of the vessels.

GLOMUS CAROTICUM

The glomus caroticum (carotid body, carotid gland) is a knot of blood vessels situated at the bifurcation of the common carotid artery. It is a reddish body "5–7 mm. long, 2.5–4 mm. broad, and 1.5 mm. thick." It is intimately connected with the nerves in this region, both cranial and sympathetic, and many nerve fibres, medullated and non-medullated, enter it. A few multipolar ganglion cells are associated with them. Between its thin-walled capillaries there are strands of polygonal cells, some of which in man show the chromaffin reaction. In other animals the proportion of chromaffin cells is said to vary, and in the rat none are found. The cells not showing the chromaffin reaction are otherwise similar, yet they are not thought to represent merely another phase of secretion. No definite secretory granules are described. All of the cells in the strands were formerly thought to be derived from the third pharyngeal pouch, but the present opinion is that they are of sympathetic origin. For this reason the glomus has been classed as a paraganglion.

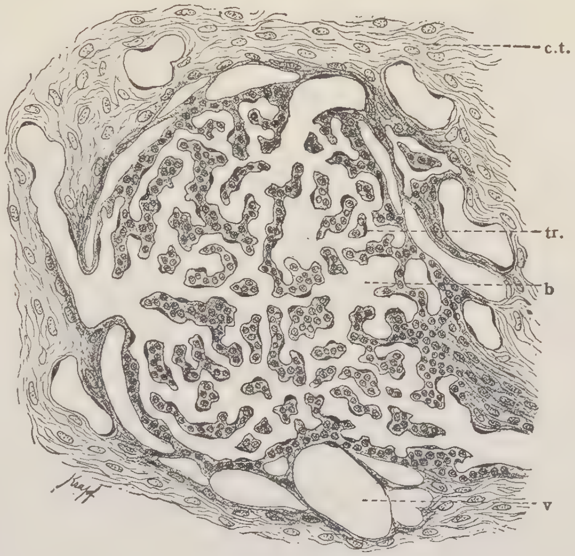


FIG. 383.—SECTION OF A PART OF THE GLOMUS CAROTICUM OF MAN. (After Schaper.)

b.v., Blood vessels; e.v., efferent vein; tr., trabecula; c.t., connective tissue septum.

Extracts of the gland do not give the reaction of adrenalin. Smith (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1924, vol. 34, pp. 87–131) states that "there is no evidence to warrant the inclusion of the carotid body in the endocrine system." Its function is unknown.

THE PARAGANGLIA

The paraganglia or chromaffin bodies are scattered minute masses found in relation with the sympathetic ganglia and composed of supporting cells and chromaffin cells resting against thin-walled blood vessels. They are therefore similar in origin and histological characteristics to the medulla of the suprarenal gland; but only when they are intimately connected with cords like those of the cortex should they be called accessory suprarenal glands. Their distribution in man is described in Keibel and Mall's Embryology, vol. 2, p. 157. They grow smaller with age without actually disappearing.

HYPOPHYSIS

The hypophysis (*i.e.*, a *growth beneath* the brain) is a rounded mass, about half an inch wide and a quarter of an inch thick, attached to the tip of the infundibulum, and lodged in the *sella turcica* of the sphenoid bone. Its stalk of attachment to the infundibulum extends through the fibrous membrane fastened to the four posts or corners of the sella, and in removing the brain, the hypophysis is therefore often torn from its stalk and left in the bony excavation. It is now known to be a most important organ of internal secretion, consisting of two parts which are as distinct from one another as the cortex and medulla of the suprarenal gland. The *anterior lobe*, or buccal or glandular part, is formed from *Rathke's pouch* (Rathke, Arch. f. Anat., Phys., u. wiss. Med., 1838, pp. 482–485) which grows upward from the oral ectoderm and encounters the knob-like *posterior lobe* or nervous portion, which is a part of the brain. The anterior lobe then sends up a short process on either side of the posterior lobe, like the thumb and first finger of a hand, and in later stages Cushing ventures to describe the posterior lobe as resting in the anterior lobe like a ball in a catcher's glove.

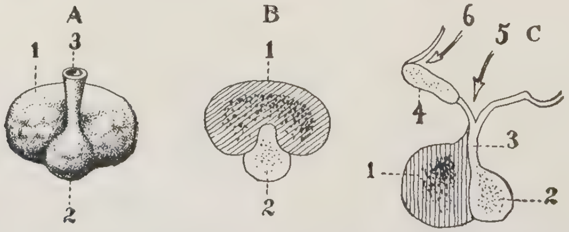


FIG. 384.—DIAGRAMS OF THE HYPOPHYSIS CEREBRI. (From Morris's Anatomy, after Testut.) **A,** Posterior surface. **B,** Transverse section. **C,** Sagittal section. **1,** Anterior lobe; **2,** posterior lobe; **3,** infundibulum; **4,** optic chiasma; **5,** infundibular recess; **6,** optic recess.

The anterior part of the flattened buccal pouch becomes greatly thickened by the multiplication of its cells, and is known as the pars distalis, or anterior lobe. The double process from this grows up and spreads along the tuber cinereum in the floor of the brain in front of the infundibulum, thus producing the pars tuberalis of the anterior lobe (Atwell, Amer. Journ. Anat., 1926, vol. 37, pp. 159–193). The cavity of the pouch becomes a transverse slit, the residual lumen, usually partially obliterated. The posterior wall, much less thickened, joins and fuses with the posterior lobe and partially surrounds its stalk, the infundibulum, thus forming the pars infundibularis or intermediate lobe. The posterior lobe, or pars nervosa, at first a hollow outgrowth from the brain, loses its cavity in man and in most mammals by the thickening of its walls, so that the enlarged rounded end and narrow stalk leading to the infundibulum are solid. Wherever the buccal portion meets the nervous portion there is considerable intermingling of the tissues, a fact to be taken into consideration in any attempt to separate the various lobes. The anterior lobe becomes separated from the roof of the mouth by the obliteration of its duct, which is reduced to a slender solid epithelial strand and ruptures in embryos of about 20 mm. A depression marking its former outlet has sometimes been found in the vault of the pharynx, and there may be a canal through the sphenoid bone, the *craniopharyngeal canal*, which follows the course of the former duct. It is said that a small "pharyngeal hypophysis," having the structure of the anterior lobe, is constantly found near the pharyngeal end of this canal, on the under surface of the sphenoid bone, and a similar accessory part is described in dogs, but not in man, beneath the dura of the sella turcica.

The posterior surface of both lobes, as they appear in the adult, is shown in Fig. 384, A, and a sagittal section is shown in C.

The hypophysis can hardly be overlooked in examining the brain, and its existence is recorded by the earliest writers. The epiphysis, on the top of the brain, was called the pineal body from its resemblance to a pine cone, and according to Hyrtl the hypophysis below, being a round structure attached to a stem, was named the "rose hip" by the Mohammedan physician Avicenna (ca. **A. D.** 1000). Vesalius introduced the name *pituitary gland*. The pituita or phlegm was believed to be excrementitious material, eliminated by the brain and received by the naso-pharynx, and its possible origin by way of the olfactory nerves had been discussed. Vesalius and his followers believed that it was collected by the infundibular funnel and eliminated by the pituitary gland. If the sella turcica of a prepared skull is examined, four grooves may be traced from it, two passing forward to the optic foramina, and two passing backward to the lacerated foramina. Vesalius pictured these four channels as outlets for the pituitary gland, the two latter (which in life are closed by cartilage) being in relation with the naso-pharynx. Bartholin recorded another function of the pituitary gland, namely, "to *close* the infundibulum lest vital spirits should escape," and finally V. C. Schneider showed conclusively that the pituitary gland is not the source of phelgm. According to Hyrtl this was accomplished in five classic but lengthy books, *De catarrhis*, 1640–1642, and he adds—"No physician and no anatomist should leave this fundamental and learned work unread—if he has time for it."

The *anterior lobe* consists of solid branched epithelial cords, of irregular caliber, connected with one another by frequent anastomoses. Between the cords and in close relation with them, there are wide lacunar capillaries derived from several arterioles which descend along the stalk of the infundibulum. The wide terminal vessels are arterio-venous connections having a sinusoidal structure. Injections show a very rich blood supply, said to be less marked in the pars tuberalis. The connective tissue is sparse except for a few larger trabeculae, so that the parenchyma rests directly upon the endothelium.

The cells of the cords are remarkable in their variety. With ordinary stains clear cells, with light staining protoplasm, can be distinguished from larger granular cells, whose granules are either oxyphilic or basophilic. The clear cells also may take either an acid or a basic tinge. With special fixing fluids and stains as many as six cell types have been described. The nuclei are usually round and vesicular, with little chromatin, but pycnotic nuclei are not infrequent. The distribution of the cells is apparently irregular within the pars anterior and within the individual cords. The eosinophilic granular cells usually outnumber the basophilic, and occur generally at the surface of the cords, resting against the blood vessels. Droplets of secretion, formed by the coalescence of granules, are found in the granular cells, and lipoid droplets are frequent in all types. Whether the cells form several kinds of secretion, or all represent a single secretory cycle in different phases is not definitely known. The basophilic cells are said to increase (in animals) during oestrus, and during pregnancy the oxyphiles may form large masses.

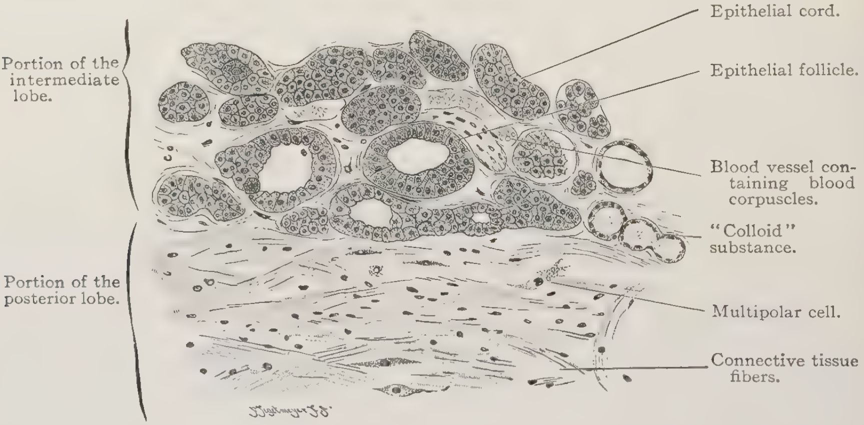

Portion of the intermediate lobe.
Portion of the posterior lobe.
Epithelial cord.
Epithelial follicle.
Blood vessel containing blood corpuscles.
"Colloid" substance.
Multipolar cell.
Connective tissue fibers.

Fig. 385.—Portion of a Horizontal Section of a Human Hypophysis, Showing the Boundary Line between the Anterior and the Posterior Lobes. Two Gland Follicles on the Left Each Contain a Dark Epithelial Cell. × 220.

The pars tuberalis and the intermediate lobe have a similar arrangement of cords and blood vessels, but the size and distinctness of the cords vary in the different lobes. The cells are apparently similar in character in all the buccal portion, though the size of the cells and of the granules in them is said to be greatest in the anterior lobe. A further distinction has been made by the number and size of the follicles present. Most commonly in the pars tuberalis, less frequently in the intermediate lobe, and only occasionally in the anterior lobe the cell cords become hollowed out to form follicles, the lumen of which contains a colloid material, similar in appearance and staining reaction to that found in the thyroid follicles. The cells forming the follicle wall are in a single layer, and may be of any of the types. Similar colloid masses may be present in the isolated portions of the residual lumen, the cells of which may be ciliated. It has been stated that the Golgi apparatus in the basophiles is directed toward the blood vessels, whereas in the oxyphiles it lies toward the center of the cord or toward the colloid of a follicle. This is of interest in relation with the reported movement of the apparatus in the thyroid cells, though the "colloid" in the two glands may have little in common. The colloid material may be either granular or hyaline, and may indicate merely the degeneration of the central cells of a cord, since some of the follicles have incomplete walls and since small masses of it are found free between the cells. By some authors, on the other hand, it is considered the main secretion of the gland.

The posterior lobe, or pars nervosa, contains ependymal and neuroglia cells, but no nerve cells and only a few nerve fibers. The ependyma lines the cavity which extends downward into the lobe from the infundibulum. According to Tilney, "very often in the human hypophysis the lumen is not only seen to be distended by large masses of colloid, but its walls are evaginated so as to give rise to cysts of varying sizes, all containing colloid" (Mem. of the Wistar Inst., No. 2, 1911). The colloid material may be seen in the substance of this lobe, and is thought by some to arise in the follicles of the middle and anterior lobes, and to be "activated" on its passage through the posterior lobe to the cerebro-spinal fluid. This has been denied by others, who consider it the remains of degenerated cells. Eosinophilic cells, probably from the intermediate lobe, may be present. The posterior lobe has only a meager blood supply.

According to Bailey (Journ. Med. Research, 1921, vol. 42, pp. 349–381), "The anatomical evidence as to the mode of secretion of the pituitary body is another much debated subject. The eosinophilic granules, the basophilic granules, the colloid and hyaline masses and the lipoids have all been considered the secretory product." But "we are forced to conclude that anatomical or anatomophysiological evidence of the mode of secretion of the pituitary gland is sadly lacking."

PINEAL BODY

The pineal body (sometimes called the epiphysis) is a median dorsal outpocketing of the diencephalon, terminating in a small nodule composed of neuroglia and round or polygonal epithelial cells, among which several types have been recognized by various authors. Large cells with granular cytoplasm and large deeply staining nuclei are the most numerous in man; but smaller cells with either pale or intensely staining vesicular nuclei, and some showing either basophilic or eosinophilic granules may also be present. The cells are arranged irregularly or in groups, but with no definite cords or follicles, and rest on neuroglia fibers among which are numerous blood vessels. All the cells have presumably been derived from the original ependymal lining of the evagination, and some authors distinguish between neuroglial cells and interneuroglial, though both may contain granules. The human pineal body contains no nerves. A connective tissue capsule sends prolongations into its interior to surround the groups of epithelial cells.

The pineal body was considered by the ancients as the seat of the soul; DesCartes supplied the familiar conjecture that all ideas which proceed from the five senses are perceived in the pineal body as a center, and that from it all nervous impulses irradiate. From the researches of comparative anatomy it became evident that the pineal region in lower vertebrates is related to an eye-like structure, usually developing just in front of it, and sometimes lying beneath a transparent cornea. The pineal body then came to be considered as a functionless remnant in man. But after an exhaustive study of this organ, Tilney and Warren (American Anatomical Memoirs, no. 9, 1919) disagree with this idea. "To consider the epiphysis in mammalia as a vestige in the light of the histological evidence here summarized seems to be an attitude which is wholly untenable, all the more so when this histological evidence points to the fact that the structure is a gland. For in this respect not only is the character of the cells significant, but their arrangement in definite acini, the rich vascular network about these acini, and the trabeculation by means of connective tissue which gives this structure the appearance common to all glands, are also suggestive of this fact.

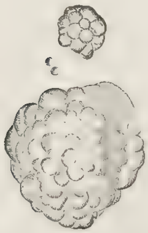


Fig. 386.—Acervulus from the Pineal Body of a Woman Seventy Years Old. × 50.

The final conclusion to be drawn from the histological evidence in the epiphyseal complex of vertebrates would seem clearly to indicate that this structure of the pineal region possesses a pluripotentiality whose fundamental, inherent tendency is in the interest of glandular differentiation and that in a few instances, as in cyclostomes, amphibia, and in primitive reptiles, the parapineal or pineal organ may become further differentiated in the interest of a highly specialized sensory mechanism which has, or has had, visual function." In spite of the character of the glandular cells, however, attempts to isolate and test the action of a pineal hormone have only lead to indefinite and sometimes conflicting results.

Within the pineal body, *acervulus cerebri* or "brain sand" is usually found, consisting of round or mulberry-like concretions, 5 μ to 1 mm. in diameter (Fig. 386). In specimens preserved in glycerin or balsam these concretions show distinct concentric layers. They consist of an organic matrix containing calcium carbonate and magnesium phosphate, and are sometimes surrounded by a thick connective tissue capsule.

Not infrequently, especially in old age, the brain substance contains round or elongated bodies, distinctly stratified, which are colored violet by tincture of iodine and sulphuric acid, and therefore are related to amyloid. These *corpuscula amylacea* are found almost always in the walls of the ventricles, and also in many other places in both gray and white substance, and in the optic nerve. They have a homogeneous capsule with occasional processes, and are evidently neuroglia cells transformed by amyloid infiltration.

SKIN

The skin (*cutis*) consists of an ectodermal epithelium, the *epidermis*, and a mesodermal connective tissue, the *corium* (Fig. 387). The ectoderm is at first a single layer but it soon becomes double, the outer cells staining more deeply, and being notably larger than the inner cells. Their characteristic dome shape is seen in the figure. The outer layer has been named the *epitrichium*, since the hairs which grow up through the underlying epithelium do not penetrate it, but cause it to be cast off. The epitrichium has been found on the umbilical cord and in places on the amnion. It may possibly be related to the chorionic syncytium. The deeper layer of ectoderm becomes stratified, and gives rise to the hairs, nails, and enamel organs. It also produces two types of glands, the *sebaceous glands* which are usually connected with hairs, and the *sweat glands*. These are widely distributed; locally the ectoderm forms the *mammary glands*, *ceruminous glands* of the ear, *ciliary glands* of the eyelids, and other special forms. The greater part of the surface of the skin presents many little furrows, the *sulci cutis*, which intersect so that they bound rectangular spaces. On the palms and soles the furrows are parallel for considerable distances, being separated from one another by slender ridges, the *cristæ cutis*, along the summits of which the sweat glands open. The ridges are most highly developed over the pads of tissue at the finger tips, where they present the familiar spiral and concentric patterns. These pads of connective tissue, the *toruli tactiles*, must not be confounded with elevations due to underlying muscles. The patterns of these ridges are now used so widely in finger print identification that their classification has become a separate science.

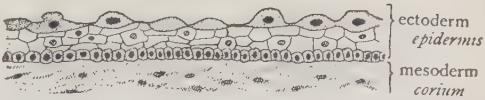


Fig. 387.—Skin from the Occiput of an Embryo of Two and One-half Months. (After Bowen.)
The outer layer of dark cells is the *epitrichium*.

In the pentadactylous mammals, each extremity typically presents five digital toruli, at the tips of the fingers or toes; four interdigital toruli, near the metacarpo- or metatarso-phalangeal joints; and two or three proximal cushions—a tibial and an elongated fibular; or a radial and two ulnar, one behind the other. Often the interdigital cushions fuse, as in the paw of the cat and the ball of the human foot, and the one between the thumb and fingers may be suppressed. These toruli are very prominent in the embryo. According to Miss Whipple (Zeitschr. f. Morph. u. Anthr., 1904, vol. 7, pp. 261–368) they are primarily walking pads, with ridges at right angles to the slipping force. Usually they are considered primarily tactile. The extensive literature pertaining to them has been reviewed by Schlagenhaufen (Anat. Hefte. 1906, Abt. II, vol. 15, pp. 628–662).

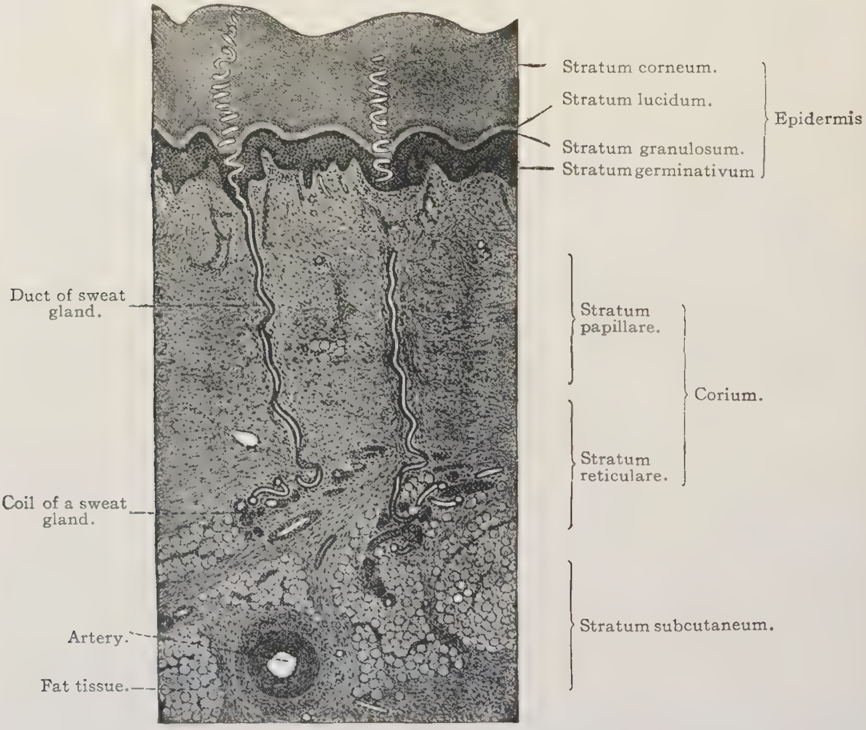


Fig. 388.—Vertical Section from the Sole of the Foot of an Adult. × 25.

Corium. The corium is a layer of densely interwoven bundles of connective tissue extending from the epidermis to the fatty, areolar *subcutaneous tissue* (Fig. 388). Toward the epidermis the corium forms *papillæ,* which vary considerably in size and number in different parts of the body. They are tallest (even 0.2 mm. high) and most numerous, often being branched, in the palms and soles. Beneath the epidermal ridges they may occur quite regularly in double rows, as long since observed by Malpighi. In the skin of the face the papillæ are poorly developed, and in advanced age they may wholly disappear. The papillæ are composed of cellular connective tissue, which forms a *tunica propria;* and each papilla contains a terminal knot of capillary blood vessels, or a tactile corpuscle (Fig. 139, p. 158). The corpuscles are most numerous in the sensitive finger tips, where they may be found in one papilla in every four.

The entire corium is somewhat arbitrarily subdivided into an outer *stratum papillare* and an inner *stratum reticulare* (Fig. 388). These layers blend with one another, but the outer portion consist of finer bundles of connective tissue, more closely interwoven than those in the coarse network characteristic of the stratum reticulare. Beneath the skin, but inseparable from it, is the *stratum subcutaneum*, which is composed of areolar tissue with large areas of fat cells; where the fat forms a continuous layer, it is known as the *panniculus adiposus*. Finally the bundles of the stratum subcutaneum connect more or less intimately with the fascia around the muscles, or, in places, with the periosteum.

The elastic fibers of the corium form evenly distributed networks, which are finer in the stratum papillare and coarser in the stratum reticulare. There is said to be a subepithelial network, and a layer of numerous coarse fibers immediately above the general layer of fascia. In old age a notable decrease in the elastic fibers has been recorded. The muscle fibers of the corium are chiefly the small bundles of smooth muscle attached to the sheaths of the hairs, forming the *arrectores pilorum*. Smooth muscle is diffusely distributed in the nipple, and in the scrotum it forms a layer pervaded by elastic tissue, known as the *tunica dartos*. Striated muscle fibers derived from the muscles of expression terminate in the skin of the face. The vessels and nerves of the corium are described on page 432.

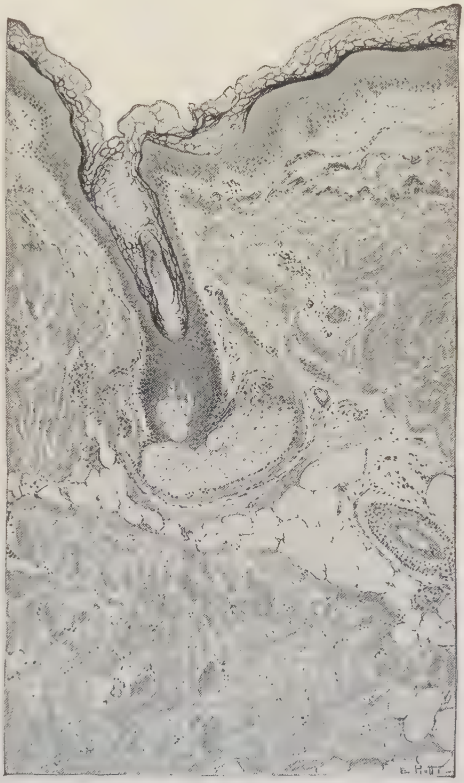


FIG. 389.—SECTION OF SKIN FROM ARM, HUMAN. Note the small stratum corneum and stratum granulosum as compared with the skin of the sole. A hair follicle and sebaceous gland are included.

Epidermis. If a piece of skin is boiled, the epidermis may be stripped off, carrying the tunica propria with it; and the epidermis itself may be separated into two layers. The outer layer is the *stratum corneum;* the inner is the *stratum germinativum.*

The stratum germinativum was formerly called the *stratum mucosum* or *rete Malpighii.* It was first described by Malpighi who recognized its soft or "mucous" nature, and referred to it as a rete since it forms a network between the papillæ of the corium (Fig. 390). Malpighi considered that the color of the Ethiopian skin was confined to this layer.

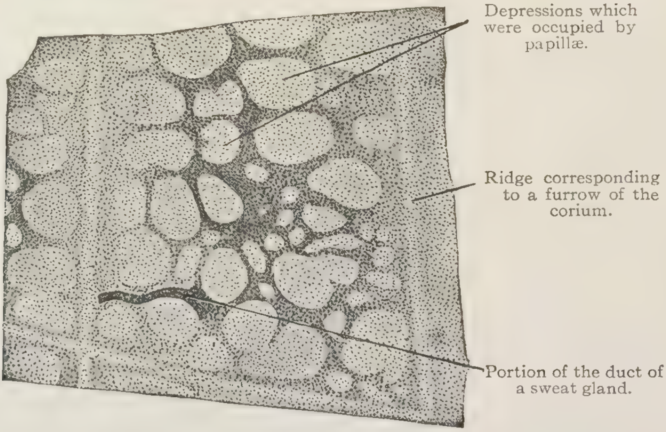

Depressions which were occupied by papillæ.
Ridge corresponding to a furrow of the corium.
Portion of the duct of a sweat gland.

Fig. 390.—Epidermis Detached from the Dorsum of the Human Foot, Seen from the Lower Surface. × 120.
The dark epithelial network between the papillæ is the rete Malpighii.

The stratum germinativum and stratum corneum are subdivisions of a single thick stratified epithelium. The basal cells, which rest directly upon the papillæ of the corium, constitute a single row of columnar cells, with elongated nuclei and no cell walls (Fig. 391). Through mitotic division these cells multiply and give rise to the outer polygonal cells,

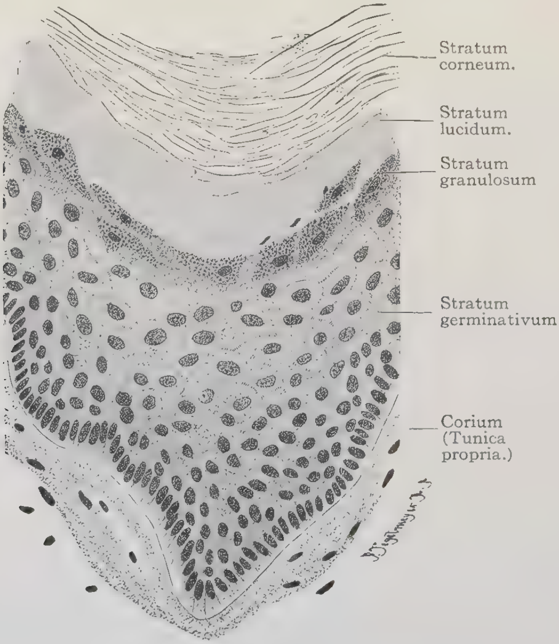


Fig. 391.—The Deeper Part of the Epidermis, from the Sole of the Foot of an Adult Man. × 360

but it is noteworthy that mitotic figures are seldom seen. The polygonal cells which form the bulk of the stratum germinativum are connected with one another by slender intercellular bridges through which fibrils pass from cell to cell. Because of this striking feature, the stratum germinativum was formerly called the stratum spinosum. As stated on p. 59 however, Chambers considers these bridges artefacts.

The transition from the stratum germinativum to the stratum corneum is abrupt. It may be marked by an incomplete layer of coarsely granular cells, such as are highly developed in the skin of the palms and soles, where they form the *stratum granulosum* (Fig. 391). In the stratum corneum the cells acquire a horny exoplasmic membrane; the bridges become short stiff spines; the protoplasm and nucleus are dry and shrunken; and in the outermost cells the nucleus wholly disappears. This process, called "keratinization," is described by Ludford, (Quart. J. Micr. Sc., 1924, vol. 69, pp. 27–57). The cells become flatter toward the surface, from which they are constantly being desquamated.

The stratum granulosum is an inconspicuous layer and the stratum corneum only a few cells thick in the skin over most of the body, but in sections of the palms and soles the process of cornification presents a more elaborate picture. Outward from the stratum germinativum there is a darkly staining, coarsely granular layer, one or two cells thick, which is followed by a clear, somewhat refractive band in which the cell outlines are indistinct. This layer seems saturated with a dense fluid formed by dissolution of the underlying granules. In hæmatoxylin and eosin specimens, the granular layer or *stratum granulosum* is followed by a pink and then by a bluish band, which are subdivisions of the clear *stratum lucidum.* These are followed by a very thick stratum corneum. Except in the palms and soles, the granulosum is thin and the lucidum is absent. Chemically the coarse granules of the stratum granulosum resemble the horny substance *keratin* (from which they differ by dissolving in caustic potash); they are therefore called *kerato-hyalin* granules. Their diffuse product in the stratum lucidum is named *eleidin.* In the corneum it becomes *pareleidin,* which, like fat, blackens with osmic acid, but the reaction occurs more slowly. The pareleidin is not due to fat entering the skin from oily secretions on its outer surface. Further information regarding these substances is supplied by Pinkus (Keibel and Mall's Human Embryology, vol. 1).

The color of the skin is due to fine pigment granules in and between the lowest layers of the epidermal cells. Underlying cells of the corium sometimes contain groups of finer pigment granules, but such cells are absent from the palms and soles and are infrequent elsewhere. They may be found in the deeply pigmented circum-anal tissue, and in the eyelids.

SWEAT GLANDS

The *glandulæ sudoriparæ* are long unbranched tubes terminating in a simple coil (described by Oliver Wendell Holmes as resembling a fairy's intestine, Fig. 392). The coil is found in the deep part of the corium or in the subcutaneous tissue (Fig. 388). The duct pursues a straight or somewhat tortuous course to the epidermis which it enters between the connective tissue papillæ. Within the epidermis its spiral windings are pronounced; it ends in a pore which may be detected macroscopically.

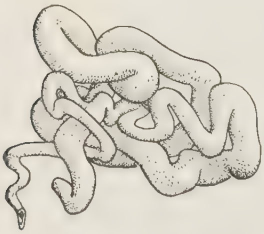


FIG. 392.—MODEL OF THE COILED PART OF A SWEAT GLAND FROM THE SOLE OF THE FOOT. (After Huber.)

The epithelium of the ducts consists of two or three layers of cuboidal cells; it has an inner cuticula, and an outer basement membrane covered by longitudinal connective tissue fibers. Within the epidermis its walls are made of cells of the strata through which it passes. The secretory portion of the gland (3.0 mm. long according to Huber) forms about three-fourths of the coil, the duct constituting the remainder. The secretory epithelium is a simple layer of cells, varying from low cuboidal to columnar, according to the amount of secretion which they contain. Those filled with secretion present granules, some of which are pigment and fat. The product is eliminated through intra- and intercellular secretory capillaries. It is ordinarily a fatty fluid for oiling the skin, but it becomes the watery sweat under the influence of the nerves. The gland cells are not destroyed by either form of activity. The secretory tubule is surrounded by a distinct basement membrane, within which there is a row of small longitudinally elongated cells described as muscle fibers. They do not form a complete membrane, and they appear as a continuation of the basal layer of cells of the ducts.

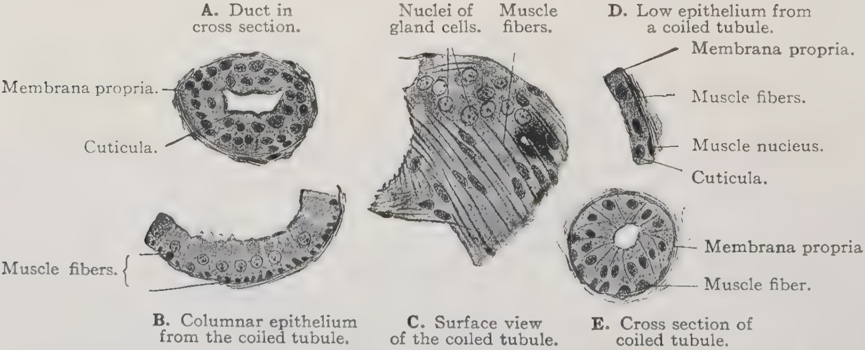

A. Duct in cross section.
Nuclei of gland cells.
Muscle fibers.
D. Low epithelium from a coiled tubule.
Membrana propria.
Membrana propria.
Muscle fibers.
Cuticula.
Muscle nucleus.
Cuticula.
Membrana propria
Muscle fibers.
Muscle fiber.
B. Columnar epithelium from the coiled tubule.
C. Surface view of the coiled tubule.
E. Cross section of coiled tubule.

FIG. 393.—A–D, FROM A SECTION OF THE SKIN OF THE AXILLA; E, FROM THE FINGER TIP OF A MAN OF TWENTY-THREE YEARS. × 230.
E is not a true cross section.

Sweat glands are distributed over the entire skin, except that of the glans and the inner layer of the præputium penis. They are most numerous in the palms and soles. In the axilla there are branched sweat glands and large forms with 30 mm. of coiled tube. They acquire their large size at puberty and have been considered as sexual "odoriferous" glands. In the vicinity of the anus there are also branched sweat glands, together with the large unbranched "circum-anal glands."

SEBACEOUS GLANDS

The sebaceous glands are simple, branched or unbranched alveolar structures situated in the superficial layer of the corium and usually appended to the sheath of a hair (Fig. 407). In connection with the lanugo, a large gland may be associated with a very small hair (Fig. 394), and in exceptional cases as at the margin of the lip or on the labia minora, they occur independently of hairs. They vary in size from 0.2 to 2.2 mm., the largest being found in the skin of the nose where the ducts are macroscopic. None are found in the palms or soles, where hairs also are absent.

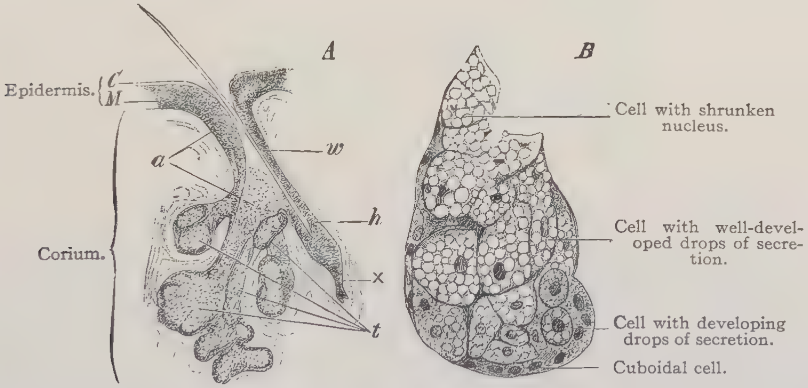

A
B
Epidermis. C
M
a
w
h
x
t
Corium.
Cell with shrunken nucleus.
Cell with well-developed drops of secretion.
Cell with developing drops of secretion.
Cuboidal cell.

FIG. 394.—**A**, FROM A VERTICAL SECTION THROUGH THE ALA NASI OF A CHILD. × 40. **C**, Stratum corneum; **M**, stratum germinativum; **t**, sebaceous gland consisting of four sacs, **a**, duct of the same; **w**, lanugo hair, about to be shed; **h**, sheath of the same, at the base of which a new hair, **x**, is forming. **B**, FROM A VERTICAL SECTION OF THE SKIN OF THE ALA NASI OF AN INFANT. × 240. Sac of a sebaceous gland containing gland cells in various stages of secretion.

The short duct is a prolongation of the outer epithelial sheath of the hair and is formed of stratified epithelium, the number of layers of which decreases toward the alveoli. The alveoli consist of small cuboidal basal cells, and of large rounded inner cells in all stages of fatty metamorphosis. As the cell becomes full of vacuoles, the nucleus degenerates, and the cell is cast off with its contained secretion. In life the product of the glands is a semi-fluid material, composed of fat and broken-down cells.

Glandulæ præputiales are sebaceous glands without hairs which are sometimes, but not always, found on the glans and præputium penis.

The designation "Tyson's glands" is not justified since Tyson described the epithelial pockets $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 cm. long which regularly occur near the frenulum præputii. Præputial glands and crypts are not found in the embryo. The præputium is united to the outer surface of the glans by an epithelial mass, which often persists after birth and is broken up by the formation of concentric epithelial pearls. Glands and crypts are absent from the præputium and glans of the clitoris.

MAMMARY GLANDS

In young mammalian embryos generally, the mammary glands are first indicated by a thickened line of ectoderm extending from the axilla to the groin. Later much of the line disappears, leaving a succession of nodular thickenings corresponding with the nipples. In some mammals this row of nipples remains, in others only the inguinal thickenings, and in still others only those toward the axilla. Thus in man there is normally only one nipple on each side, but structures interpreted as accessory nipples are frequent; they are not always situated along the mammary line. In an embryo of 25 cm. (Fig. 395) several solid cords have grown out from the ectodermal proliferation. There are ultimately from 15 to 20 of these in each breast, and they branch as they extend through the connective tissue. At birth the nipple has become everted, making an elevation, and at that time the glands in either sex may discharge a little milky secretion similar to the *colostrum* which precedes lactation. The glands grow in both sexes until puberty, when those in the male atrophy and only the main ducts persist. In the female enlarged terminal alveoli are scarcely evident until pregnancy. The glands until then are discoid masses of connective tissue and fat cells, showing in sections small scattered groups of duct-like tubes.

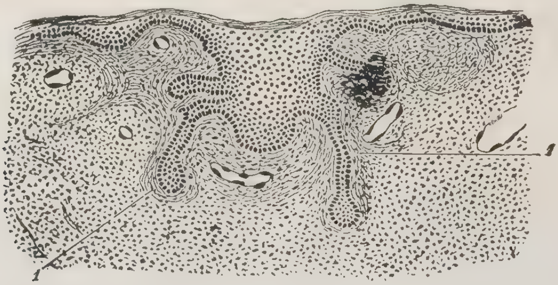


FIG. 395.—SECTION THROUGH THE MAMMARY GLAND OF AN EMBRYO OF 25 CM. 1, Connective tissue of the gland. (After Basch, from McMurrich.)

Toward the end of pregnancy each of the fifteen or twenty branched glands forms a mammary lobe, and its alveolo-tubular end pieces are grouped in lobules. The secretory epithelium is a simple cuboidal or flattened layer, in which fat accumulates at the seventh or eighth month of pregnancy. The fat first appears as small granules at the basal ends of the cells, where it is taken up from the surrounding tissue. It is not produced by the gland cells. Leucocytes, derived from the connective tissue, make their way between the epithelial cells of the alveoli and enter the gland lumen, where some of them degenerate; others receive fat from the gland cells, either in solution, or in drops which are devoured by phagocytic action. These fatty leucocytes grow to considerable size and are called *colostrum corpuscles*. Beneath the alveolar epithelium there are basal or basket cells, which have been compared with the muscle fibers of sweat glands. A basement membrane separates them from the connective tissue which contains many lymphocytes and eosinophilic cells.

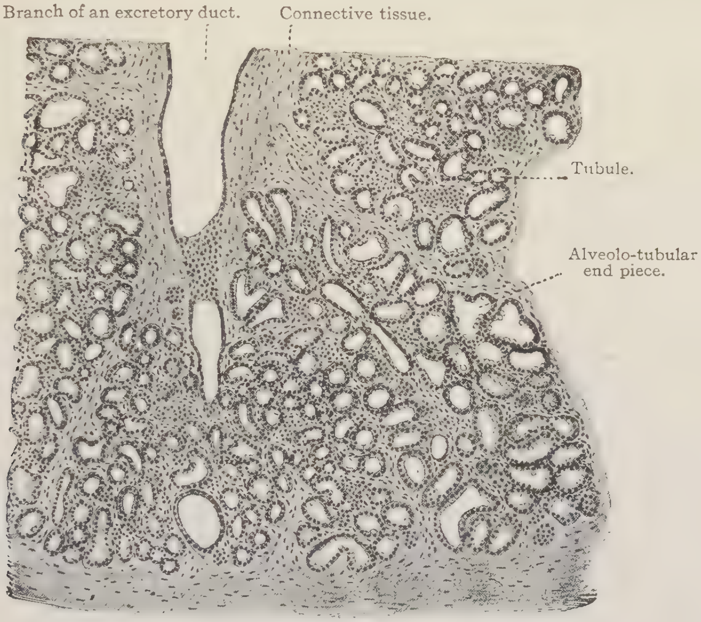


FIG. 396.—SECTION OF A HUMAN MAMMARY GLAND AT THE PERIOD OF LACTATION. × 50.

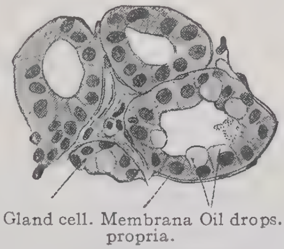


FIG. 397.—FROM A SECTION OF THE MAMMARY GLAND OF A NURSING WOMAN. × 250.

After the birth of the child, the gland cells become larger and are filled with stainable secretory granules and fat droplets; the latter are near the lumen and are often larger than the nucleus (Fig. 397). After two days of lactation, some of the gland cells are flat and empty of secretion. Others are tall and columnar, with a rounded border toward the lumen; often they contain two nuclei. The fat within them is not the result of degeneration as in sebaceous glands, nor a secretion produced by the nucleus; it accumulates through protoplasmic activity, and the cell may be filled several times before it perishes. Transitions between low empty cells and columnar forms occur, but mitoses are absent from the lactating gland. Mitotic divisions are numerous during pregnancy.

Milk consists of fat droplets, 2–5 μ in diameter, floating in a clear fluid which contains nuclein derived from degenerating nuclei, and occasionally a leucocyte or colostrum corpuscle. Free nuclei may be found, and some cells which undoubtedly are to be interpreted as detached from the alveoli of the gland. Emmel and Weatherford (Am. J. Anat., 1926, vol. 38, pp. 1–39) show that leucocytes contribute a definite cellular constituent to milk.

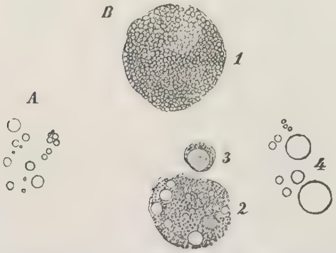


Fig. 398.—A., Milk Globules from Human Milk. × 560. B., Elements of the Colostrum of a Pregnant Woman. × 560.

1, Cell containing uncolored fat globules; 2, cell containing minute colored fat globules; 3, leucocyte; 4, milk globules.

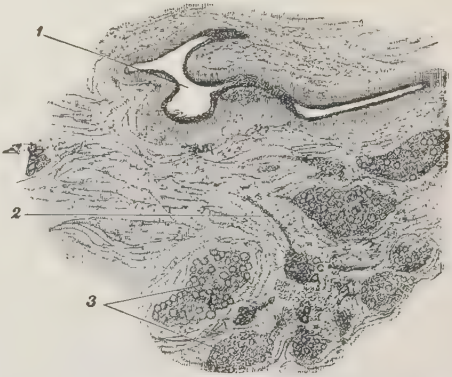


Fig. 399.—From a Thick Section of the Mammary Gland of a Woman Last Pregnant Two Years before. × 50.

1, Large excretory duct; 2, small excretory duct; 3, gland lobules, separated from one another by connective tissue.

At the end of lactation, the connective tissue, which has become greatly reduced owing to the enlargement of the glands, increases in quantity and the leucocytes reappear; as during pregnancy, they form colostrum corpuscles. The lobules become smaller and the alveoli begin to degenerate. In old persons all the end pieces and lobules have gone and only the ducts remain.

The *ducts* are lined with simple columnar epithelium, surrounded by a basement membrane and generally by circular connective tissue bundles. Toward the nipple each duct forms a considerable spindle-shaped dilatation, the *sinus lactiferus*. The epithelium near the outlet of the ducts is stratified and squamous.

The skin of the nipple, and of the *areola* at its base, contains abundant pigment in the deepest layers of its epidermis. The corium forms tall papillæ and contains smooth muscle fibers, some of which extend vertically through the nipple and others are circularly arranged around the ducts. There are tactile corpuscles in the nipple, and lamellar corpuscles have been found beneath its areola. It is particularly sensitive, and upon irritation becomes rapidly elevated, due both to muscular and vascular activity. There are many sweat and sebaceous glands in the areola, and occasional rudimentary hairs. The *areolar glands* (of Montgomery) are branched tubular glands having a lactiferous sinus and otherwise resembling the constituent mammary glands. Their funnel-shaped outlets are surrounded by large sebaceous glands. The areolar glands are regarded as transitions between sweat glands and mammary glands.

Blood vessels enter the breast from several sources and form capillaries around the alveoli. Lymphatic vessels are found in the areola, around the sinuses, and in the interlobular tissue. The collecting lymphatics pass chiefly toward the axilla; a few penetrate the intercostal spaces toward the sternum. The nerves are mostly those which supply the blood vessels, but fibers are said to extend to the glandular epithelium.

NAILS

The nails are areas of modified skin consisting of corium and epithelium. The corium is composed of fibrous and elastic tissue, the bundles of which in part extend vertically between the periosteum of the phalanx and the epithelium, and in part run lengthwise of the finger. In place of papillæ, the corium of the nail forms narrow longitudinal ridges, which are low near the root of the nail but increase in height toward its free distal border; there they abruptly give place to the papillæ of the skin. The epithelium consists of a *stratum germinativum* and a *stratum corneum*. The latter, according to Bowen (Anat. Anz., 1889, vol. 4, pp. 421–450), represents a greatly thickened stratum lucidum, but this opinion requires confirmation. In the embryo the horny substance is entirely covered by a looser layer, the *eponychium*, and this name is applied in the adult to the skin-like tissue which overlaps the root and sides of the nail (Fig. 400). The eponychium is the stratum corneum of the adjoining skin.

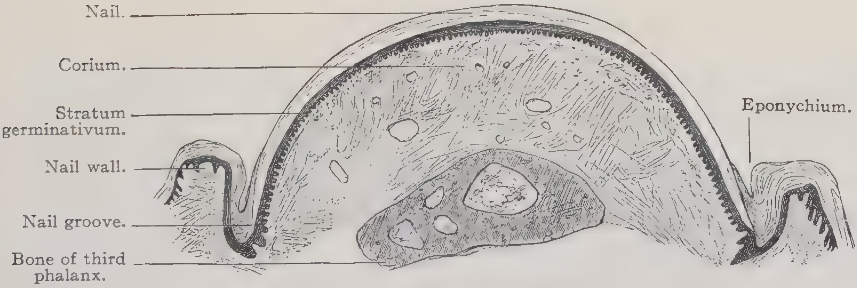


FIG. 400.—DORSAL HALF OF A CROSS SECTION OF THE THIRD PHALANX OF A CHILD. × 15. The ridges of the nail bed in cross section appear like papillæ.

It is now generally considered that the cells of the stratum germinativum covering the greater part of the "nail bed" do not produce any of the overlying horny material. This function is reserved for the germinative cells at the root of the nail, beneath the crescentic white area, the *lunula*, and its extension backward under the *nail fold*. The latter is a fold of skin which is deep at the root of the nail, but becomes shallower as it extends forward on either side, bounded by the nail wall. It is now stated that cornification in the nails takes place without the formation of keratohyalin granules, and a fibrillar arrangement of the keratin has been thought to account for the whiteness and opacity of the lunula. The cornified cells of the nail may be separated by placing a fragment in a strong solution of caustic potash and heating to boiling. The cells differ from those in the outer layers of the skin by retaining their nuclei (Fig. 401).

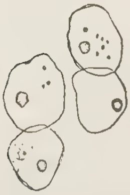


FIG. 401.—CELLS OF A HUMAN NAIL. × 240.

HAIR

Development. The hairs arise as local thickenings of the epidermis. They soon become round columns of ectodermal cells extending obliquely downward into the corium (Fig. 402). As the columns elongate the terminal portion becomes enlarged, forming the *bulb* of the hair, and a mesodermal *papilla* occupies the center of the bulb. On that side of the epithelial column which from its obliquity may be called the lower surface, there are found two swellings (Figs. 403–405). The upper is to become a *sebaceous gland*, discharging its secretion into the epithelial column; the lower or deeper swelling is called the "epithelial bed," and its cells, which increase by mitosis, contribute to the growth of the column. (The lower swelling is often described as the place of insertion of the arrector pili muscle.) Beginning near the bulb, the core of the column separates from the peripheral cells; the latter become the *outer sheath* of the hair. The core forms the *inner sheath* and the *shaft* of the hair. The cells of the shaft become cornified just above the bulb, and they are surrounded by the inner sheath as far as the sebaceous gland. Beyond this point the inner sheath degenerates, so that in later stages the distal part of the shaft is immediately surrounded by the outer sheath. As new cells are added to the hair from below, the shaft is pushed toward the surface. The central cells in the outer end of the column degenerate, thus producing a "hair canal" which is prolonged laterally in the epidermis (Fig. 406).

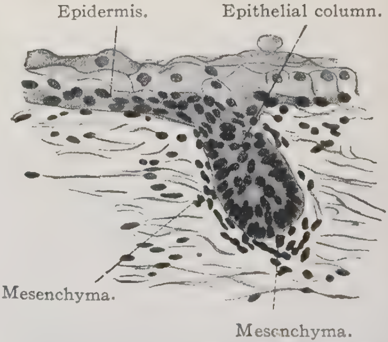


FIG. 402.—VERTICAL SECTION OF THE SKIN OF THE BACK OF A HUMAN EMBRYO OF FIVE MONTHS. × 230.

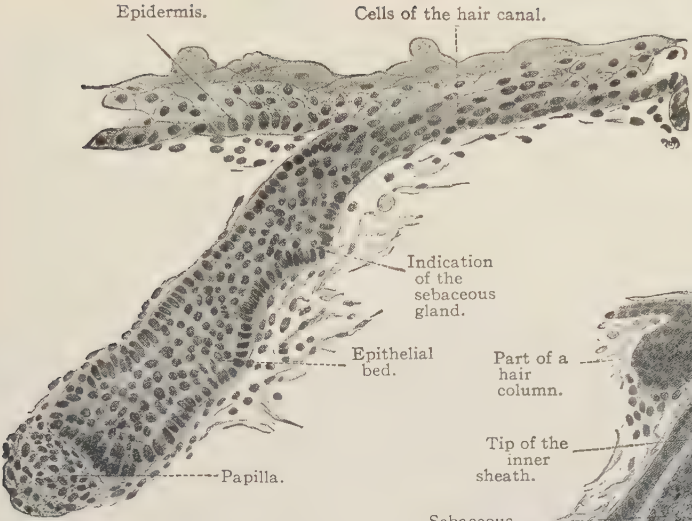


FIG. 403.—VERTICAL SECTION OF THE SKIN OF THE GLUTÆAL REGION OF A HUMAN EMBRYO OF FIVE MONTHS. × 230.

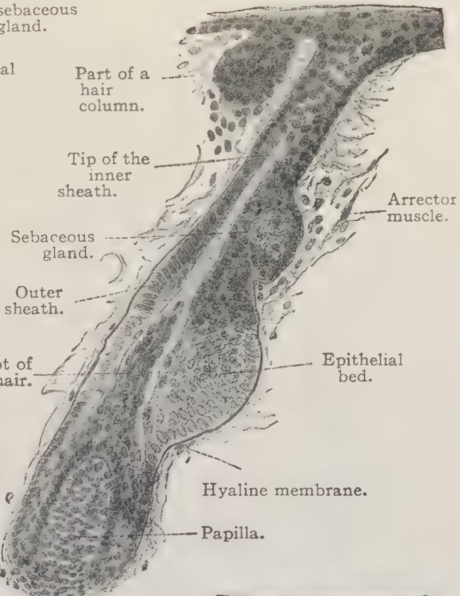


FIG. 404.—VERTICAL SECTION OF THE SKIN OF THE BACK OF A HUMAN EMBRYO OF FIVE AND A HALF MONTHS. × 230.

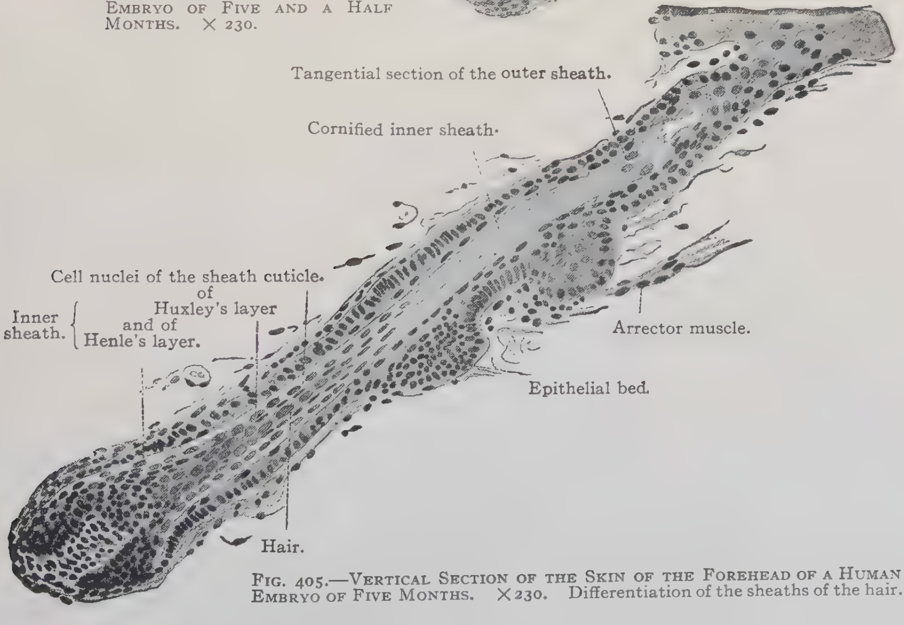

Tangential section of the outer sheath.
Cornified inner sheath.
Cell nuclei of the sheath cuticle.
Inner sheath. { of Huxley's layer and of Henle's layer.
Arrector muscle.
Epithelial bed.
Hair.

FIG. 405.—VERTICAL SECTION OF THE SKIN OF THE FOREHEAD OF A HUMAN EMBRYO OF FIVE MONTHS. ×230. Differentiation of the sheaths of the hair.

The shaft enters the canal, breaks up the overlying epitrichium, and projects from the surface of the body. That portion of the hair which remains beneath the epidermis is called its *root*. In addition to the epithelial sheaths, the root in all larger hairs possesses a *connective tissue sheath*, derived from the corium. This serves for the insertion of a bundle of smooth muscle fibers, the other end of which is connected with the elastic and fibrous elements in the superficial part of the corium. Since this muscle by contraction causes the hair to stand on end, it is called the *arrector pili*. Its insertion is always below the sebaceous gland and on the lower surface of the hair, as shown in Fig. 407. The hairs which cover the body of the embryo, persisting after birth to a variable extent, are soft and downy, and are known as *lanugo*. Arrector muscles are absent from the lanugo of the nose, cheeks and lips, and also from the eyelashes (cilia) and nasal hairs (vibrissæ).

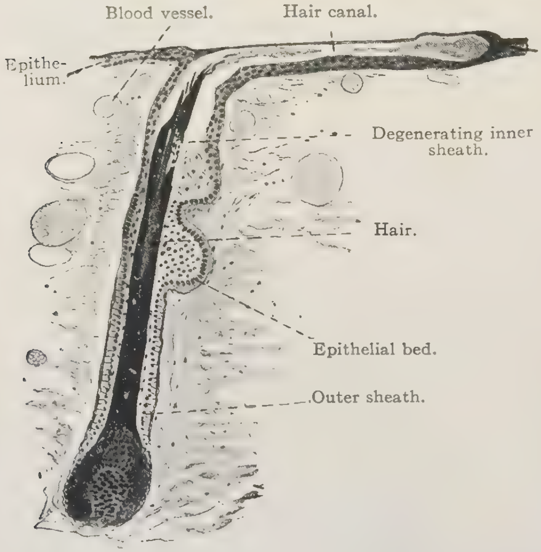


FIG. 406.—VERTICAL SECTION OF THE SKIN OF THE BACK OF A HUMAN EMBRYO OF FIVE AND A HALF MONTHS. × 120.
The staining with iron hæmatoxylin has made the horny parts so black that their details are invisible.

Adult Structure. The general appearance of hairs in sections of the adult skin is shown in Fig. 407, which includes also the sebaceous glands emptying into the sheaths of the hairs, and sweat glands which are usually entirely separate structures. Occasionally a sweat gland opens into the sheath of a hair near its outlet. Each hair consists of a papilla, bulb and shaft, together with sheaths around the root, namely an inner and outer epithelial sheath and, external to these, a connective tissue sheath. These structures, together with the arrector pili muscle which is inserted into the connective tissue sheath, are indicated in Fig. 407, but they are shown in detail in the longitudinal section, Fig. 408, and in the transverse sections, Figs. 500–504. They may be described as follows:

The *connective tissue sheath*, derived from the corium, is found around the roots of the coarser hairs, but is absent from the lanugo. It may be subdivided into three concentric layers. The outermost consists of loose connective tissue with longitudinal fibers, and contains elastic tissue and numerous vessels and nerves. The middle layer, which is thicker, consists of circular bundles of connective tissue without elastic fibers. The inner layer, also free from elastic tissue, is sometimes longitudinally fibrous, and sometimes homogeneous. It forms the outer stratum of the *hyaline* (or *vitreous*) *membrane*, and is continuous below with the thin but distinct layer which covers the papilla (Fig. 408). An inner stratum of the hyaline membrane is formed, according to Stöhr, from the epithelial cells of the root sheath. This inner stratum is provided with fine pores, and is always clear and homogeneous. It may unite with the connective tissue stratum so that both may appear as a single membrane. The connective tissue sheath is found fully developed only around the lower half of the root.

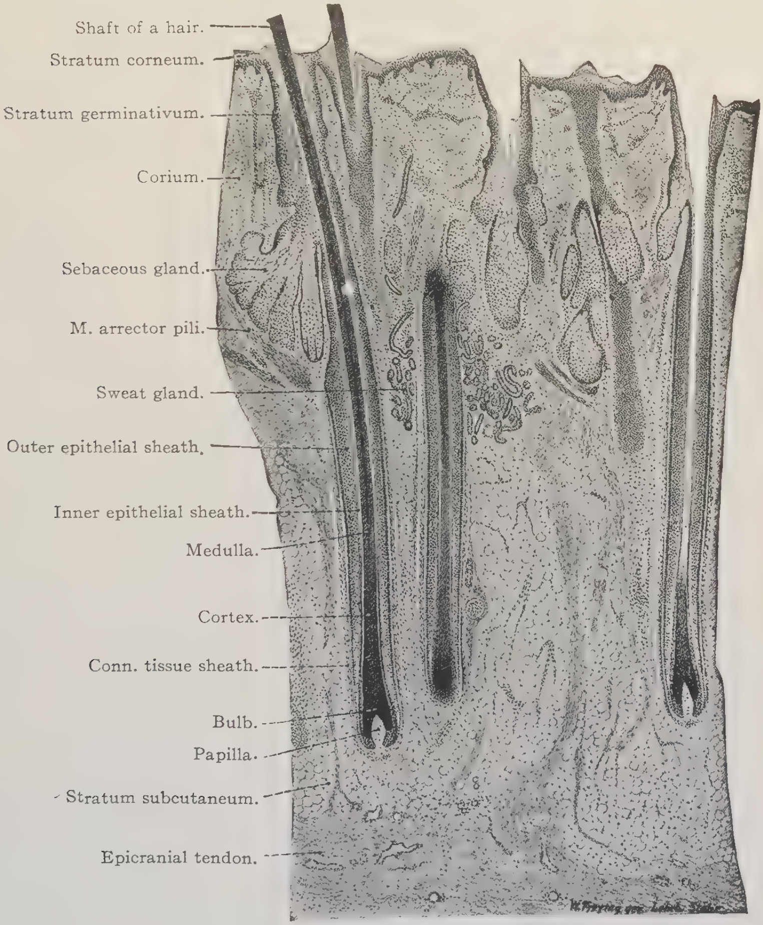


FIG. 407.—THICK SECTION OF THE HUMAN SCALP. × 20.

The *outer epithelial sheath* is an inpocketing of the epidermis. The stratum corneum extends to the sebaceous gland; the stratum granulosum continues somewhat deeper, but only a thinned stratum germinativum can be followed to the bulb. All of these are included in the outer epithelial sheath (Figs. 410–414, I, II, and 5).

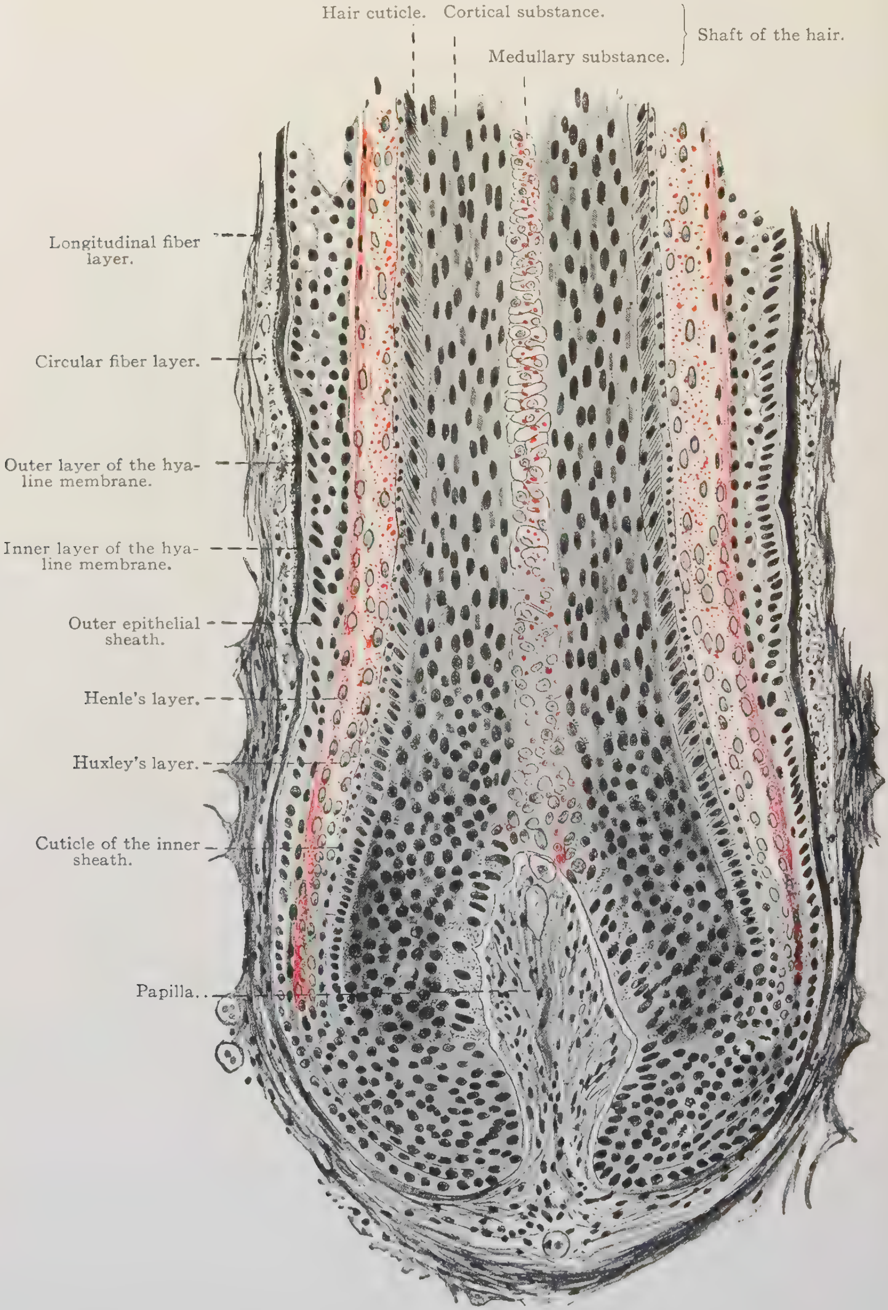


FIG. 408.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION OF THE LOWEST PART OF THE ROOT OF A HAIR. (From a section of the human scalp.) × 200.
The kerato-hyalin granules are colored red.

The *inner epithelial sheath* extends from the sebaceous gland to the bulb. It begins as a layer of cornified cells below the termination of the stratum granulosum, but it is not a continuation of that layer. Toward the bulb the inner sheath is divisible into two layers. The outer or *Henle's layer* consists of one or two rows of cells with occasional atrophic nuclei; for the most part they are non-nucleated. The inner or *Huxley's layer* is a row of nucleated cells. The inner surface of Huxley's layer is covered by a membrane, the cuticula of the sheath, composed of non-nucleated cornified scales. Traced downward, the elements of the inner epithelial sheath and its cuticula all become nucleated cells, but the layers may be distinguished almost to the neck of the papilla. There they lose their sharp boundaries, but may still be distinguished from the pigmented cells of the bulb. Traced upward, it is found that kerato-hyalin granules appear in Henle's layer at the level of the papilla, and in Huxley's layer somewhat higher (Fig. 408); still higher these granules disappear and the cells of the inner sheath become cornified.

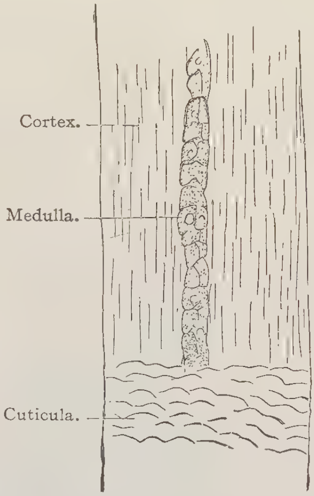


FIG. 409.—PART OF A WHITE HUMAN HAIR. × 240.

The *shaft* of the hair is entirely epithelial; it consists of cuticula, cortex and medulla (Fig. 409). The *cuticula,* which covers its surface, is a thin layer formed of transparent scales directed from the center of the shaft outward and upward, thus overlapping like inverted shingles. This arrangement is readily seen in wool and the hairs of various mammals, but is much less evident in human hair. The cuticula is composed of non-nucleated cornified cells.

The greater portion of the shaft is included in the *cortex.* Toward the bulb, the cortex consists of soft round cells; distally these cells become cornified, elongated and very closely joined together. Their nuclei are then linear. The cortex of colored hairs contains pigment both in solution and in the form of granules. These granules are partly within the cells, and partly between them. Moreover every fully developed hair contains minute intercellular air-spaces, found within both cortex and medulla. But a *medulla* is lacking in many hairs, and when present, in the thicker hairs, it does not extend their whole length. It consists of cuboidal cells containing kerato-hyalin (Fig. 408), and generally arranged in a double row. Their nuclei are degenerating.

Growth and Replacement of Hairs. The growth of the shaft, and of the inner epithelial sheath with its cuticula, takes place through continued

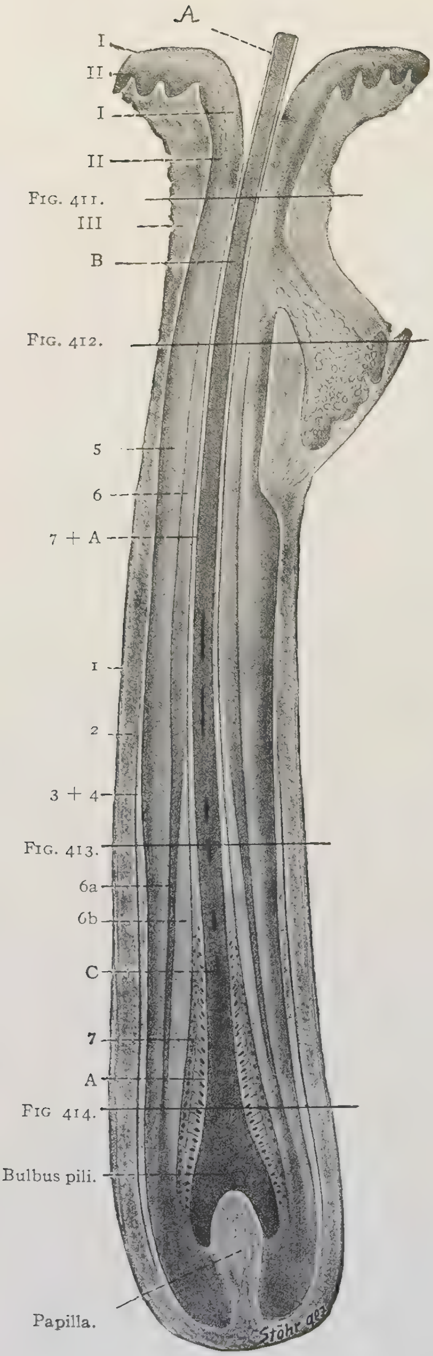


FIG. 410.

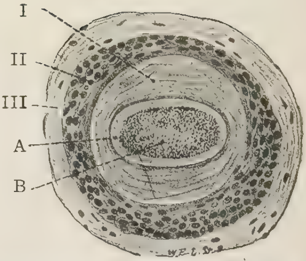


FIG. 411.

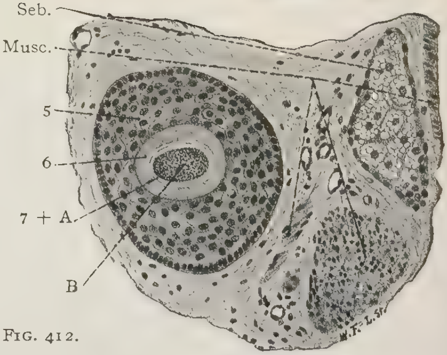


FIG. 412.

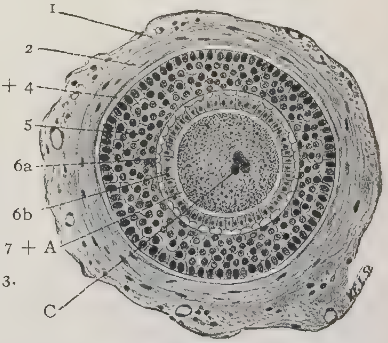


FIG. 413.

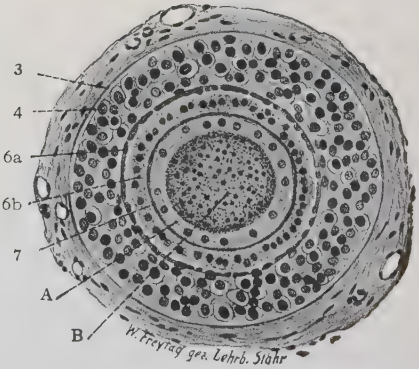


FIG. 414.

FIGS. 410–414.—FOUR CROSS SECTIONS OF A HAIR OF THE HEAD (× 160), WITH A DIAGRAMMATIC LONGITUDINAL VIEW FOR ORIENTATION.

A, Cuticula; **B,** cortex; **C,** medulla. **I,** Str. corneum; **II,** str. germinativum; **III,** corium. **1-3,** Connective-tissue sheath; **1,** longitudinal fiber layer; **2,** circular fiber layer; **3,** conn. tiss. hyaline membrane; **4;** epithelial hyaline membrane; **5,** outer epithelial sheath; **6,** inner epithelial sheath; **6a,** Henle's layer, **6b,** Huxley's layer; **7,** cuticula of the sheath; **Musc.,** arrector pili; **Seb.,** sebaceous gland.

mitotic division of the epithelial *matrix cells* of the bulb of the hair. These become cornified, and are added from below to the cells previously cornified. Accordingly the oldest cells are at the tip of the hair and the youngest are immediately above the bulb. The outer epithelial sheath grows in a radial direction from the inner surface of the hyaline membrane toward the shaft.

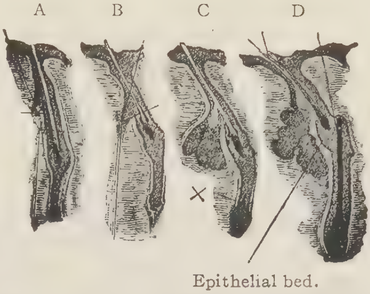


FIG. 415.—FOUR STAGES IN THE SHEDDING OF A HAIR. FROM THE SKIN OF THE NOSE OF A SEVEN AND ONE-HALF MONTHS EMBRYO. × 50.

Parts of **A** and **B** are shown enlarged in Figs. 407 and 408.

Shortly before and after birth, there is a general shedding of hair, subsequent to which the loss and replacement of individual hairs is constantly taking place. A hair of the scalp is said to last 1600 days, but the duration of other hairs has not been definitely determined. The process of removal begins with a thickening of the hyaline membrane and circular fiber sheath. The matrix cells cease to produce, first the inner epithelial sheath, and then the cuticulæ and shaft. The hollow bulb becomes a solid cornified "club." The matrix cells increase without differentiating into hair cells or sheath cells, and the clubbed hair, with its inner

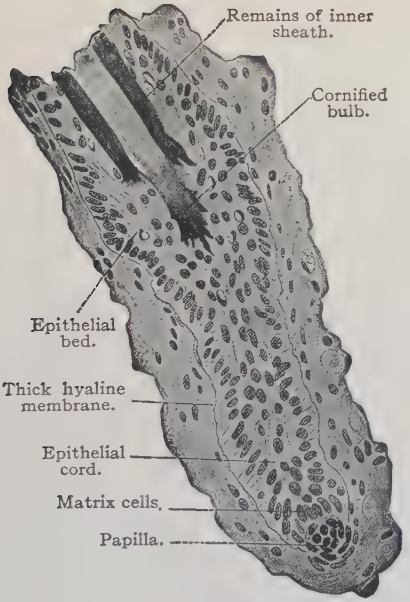


FIG. 416.—LOWER PART OF FIG. 415, **A**. × 230.

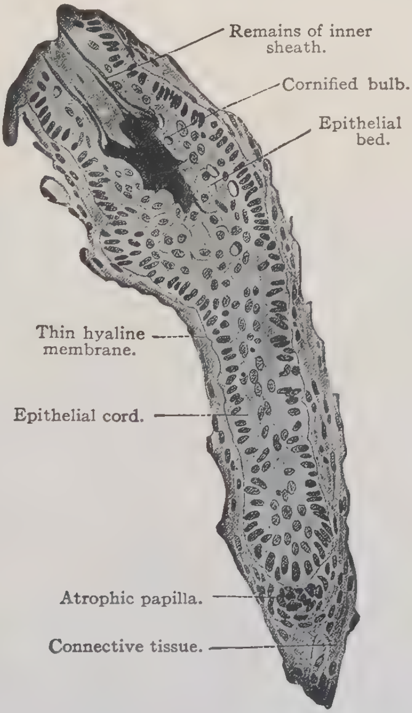


FIG. 417.—LOWER PART OF FIG. 415, **B**. × 230.

sheath, is forced outward to the level of the orifice of the sebaceous gland, where it may remain for some time (Fig. 415, D). The lower part of the outer epithelial sheath, which has become empty, forms an epithelial strand which shortens and draws the papilla upward; but the connective tissue sheath remains behind, forming the "hair stalk." After some time, the columnar cells of the epithelial bed proliferate, causing the epithelial cord to return to its former depth (Figs. 416 and 417), and a new hair develops in the old sheath upon the old papilla. The new hair in growing toward the surface completes the expulsion of its predecessor, which is dislodged together with cells of the adjacent epithelial bed.

Vessels and Nerves of the Skin

The arteries proceed from a network above the fascia, and branch as they ascend toward the surface of the skin. Their branches anastomose, forming a *cutaneous plexus* in the lower portion of the corium. From this plexus branches extend to the lobules of fat and to the coils of the sweat glands, about which they form "baskets" of capillaries. Other branches pass to the superficial part of the corium where they again anastomose, forming a *subpapillary plexus*, before sending terminal arteries into the papillæ. The subpapillary plexus sends branches also to the sebaceous glands and hair sheaths, but the papilla of a hair receives an independent artery. The veins which receive the blood from the superficial capillaries form a plexus immediately beneath the papillæ, and sometimes another just below the first and connected with it. The veins from these plexuses accompany the arteries and the ducts of the sweat glands to the deeper part of the corium, where they branch freely, receiving the veins from the fat lobules and sweat glands. Larger veins continue into the subcutaneous tissue where the main channels receive specific names.

The *lymphatics* form a fine-meshed plexus of narrow vessels beneath the subpapillary network of blood vessels, receiving tributary loops from the papillæ. This plexus empties into a wide-meshed subcutaneous plexus. There are lymphatic vessels around the hair sheaths, sebaceous glands, and sweat glands.

The *nerves* form a wide-meshed plexus in the deep subcutaneous tissue, and secondary plexuses as they ascend through the skin. The sympathetic, non-medullated nerves supply the numerous vessels, the arrector pili muscles, and the sweat glands; an epilamellar plexus outside of the basement membrane sends branches through the membrane to terminate in contact with the gland cells. Medullated sensory nerves end in the various corpuscles already described, and in free terminations, some being intraepithelial. Medullated fibers to the hairs lose their myelin and form elongated free endings with terminal enlargements in contact with the hyaline membrane. (The nerves to the tactile hairs of some animals penetrate the hyaline membrane and terminate in tactile menisci among the cells of the outer epithelial sheath.) Small, round or discoid elevations of the epidermis, visible with the naked eye, occur close to the hairs as they emerge from the skin, being on the side toward which the hairs slope. These "hair discs" (Pinkus) are said to be abundantly supplied with nerves. The corium beneath the nails is rich in medullated nerves, the non-medullated endings of which enter the Golgi-Mazzoni type of lamellar corpuscle (having a large core and few lamellæ), or they form knots which are without capsules. Elsewhere the skin contains

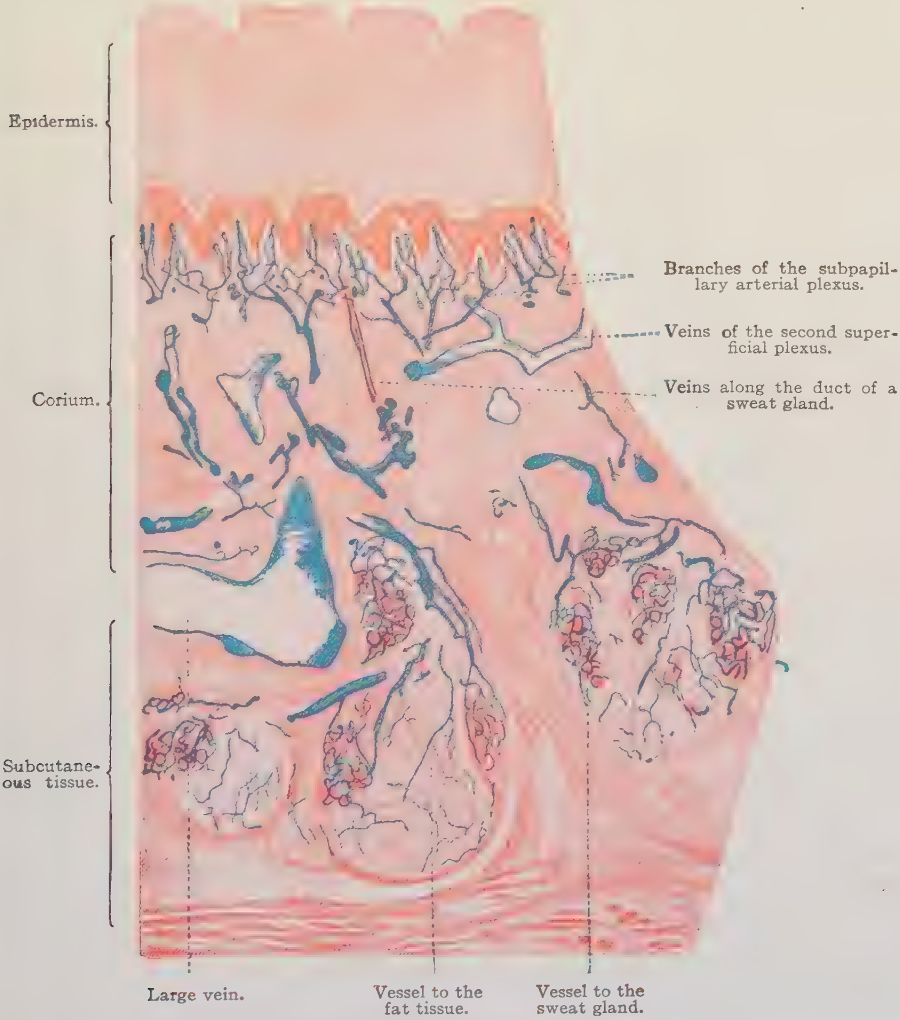

Epidermis.
Corium.
Subcutaneous tissue.
Branches of the subpapillary arterial plexus.
Veins of the second superficial plexus.
Veins along the duct of a sweat gland.
Large vein.
Vessel to the fat tissue.
Vessel to the sweat gland.

FIG. 418.—PART OF A VERTICAL SECTION OF THE INJECTED SKIN OF THE SOLE OF THE FOOT. × 20. The veins are not completely filled by the injection.

tactile corpuscles in its papillæ and lamellar corpuscles in the subcutaneous tissue, together with free endings in the corium and epidermis (as far out as the stratum granulosum).

In the skin of the palms and soles the vessels and nerves pass through the corium in tunnels of cellular connective tissue which pass into the papillæ. Thus pressure, as in standing, is borne by the dense fibrous tissue, while the vessels and nerves escape.

TEETH

A tooth consists of three parts, *crown*, *neck*, and *root* or *roots*. The crown is that portion which projects above the gums; the root is the part inserted into the *alveolus* or socket in the bone of the jaw; and the neck, which is covered by the gums, is the connecting portion between the root and crown. A tooth contains a *dental cavity* filled with *pulp*. The cavity is prolonged through the *canal of the root* to the *apex of the root*, where it opens to the exterior of the tooth at the *foramen apicis dentis*. The foramen is shown but is not labelled, in Fig. 419. The solid portion of the tooth consists of three calcified substances, the *dentine* or ivory (*substantia eburnea*), the *enamel* (*substantia adamantina*), and the *cement* (*substantia ossea*). Of these the dentine is the most abundant. It forms a broad layer around the dental cavity and root canal, and is interrupted only at the foramen. Nowhere does the dentine reach the outer surface of the tooth. In the root it is covered by the cement layer, which increases in thickness from the neck toward the apex; and in the crown it is enclosed by the broad layer of enamel. The enamel, however, becomes thin toward the neck, where it meets and is sometimes overlapped by the cement. The pulp, dentine, and cement are of mesenchymal origin, the dentine and cement being varieties of bone. *The enamel is an ectodermal formation*, but so intimately associated with the others that it may be described with them.

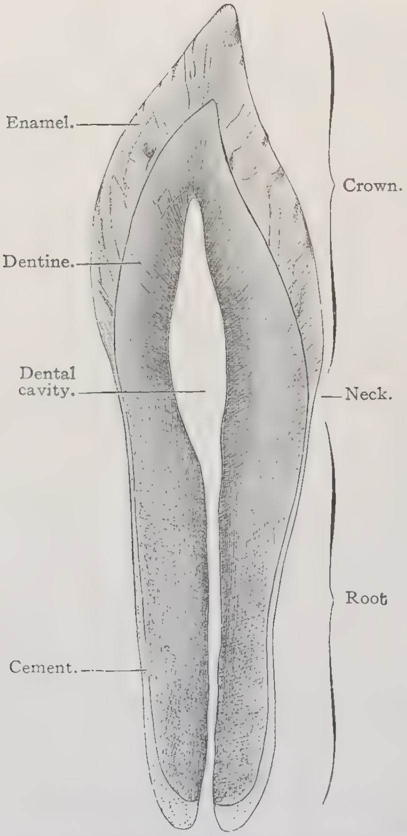


FIG. 419.—LONGITUDINAL GROUND SECTION OF A HUMAN INCISOR TOOTH. × 4.

The Development of the Teeth. The first indication of tooth development in human embryos is a thickening of the oral epithelium, which has been observed in specimens measuring 11–12 mm. At this stage the oral plate, which marks the boundary between ectoderm and entoderm, has wholly disappeared, but it is evident that the thickening takes place in ectodermal territory. The tongue is well developed, but the upper and lower lips are not as yet separated by depressions from the structures within the mouth. Soon after the thickening has appeared, it grows upward in the upper jaw, and downward in the lower jaw, into the adjacent mesenchyma, thus forming an epithelial plate which follows the circumference of either jaw. It undergoes the same sort of transformation in both the maxilla and mandible, and the following description of the conditions in the mandible is therefore applicable to both. As the plate descends into the mesenchyma, it divides into a *labial lamina* in front, which brings about the separation of the lip from the gum, and a *dental lamina* behind, which is concerned with the production of the teeth (Fig. 420). At first the dental lamina is inclined decidedly inward or toward the tongue, as seen in the figure, but later it descends from the oral epithelium almost vertically. Taken as a whole it is a crescentic plate of cells following the line of the gums, along which the teeth will later appear.

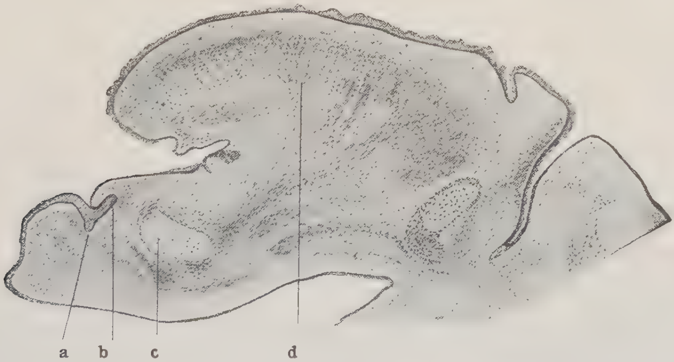


FIG. 420.—SAGITTAL SECTION THROUGH THE TONGUE AND LOWER JAW OF A HUMAN EMBRYO OF 22 MM. × 20.
a, Labial lamina; **b,** dental lamina; **c,** Meckel's cartilage; **d,** tongue.

The further development of the dental lamina is shown diagrammatically in Fig. 421, A–D, each drawing representing a part of the oral epithelium above and dental lamina below, freed from the surrounding mesenchyma. The labial side is toward the left and the lingual side toward the right. Almost as soon as the dental lamina has formed, it produces a series of inverted cup-shaped enlargements along its labial surface (Fig. 421, B) and these become the *enamel organs*. There is a separate enamel organ for each of the ten deciduous teeth in either jaw, and they are all persent in embryos of two and one-half months (40 mm.). They not only produce the enamel but extend over the roots, so that they are described as forming moulds for the teeth which develop within their concavities. The tissue enclosed by the enamel organ is a dense mesenchyma, constituting the *dental papilla.* It becomes the pulp of the tooth, and produces, at its periphery, the layer of dentine. As the tooth develops, the connection between its enamel organ and the dental lamina becomes reduced to a flattened strand or neck of epithelial tissue, which subsequently disintegrates.

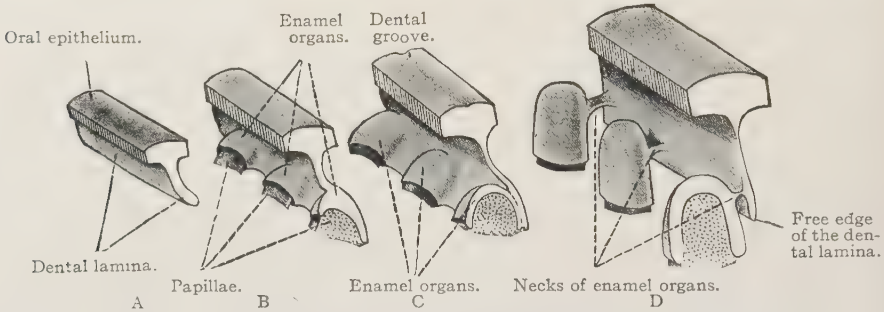


FIG. 421.—DIAGRAMS SHOWING THE EARLY DEVELOPMENT OF THREE TEETH. (One of the teeth is shown in verticle section.)

In order to produce enamel organs for the three permanent molars, which develop behind the temporary teeth on either side of the jaws, the dental lamina grows backward, free from the oral epithelium. This backward extension becomes thickened and then inpocketed by a papilla, thus forming the enamel organ for the first permanent molar in embryos of 17 weeks (180 mm.). It grows further back, and gives rise to the enamel organ for the second molar at about six months after birth, and for the third or *late molar* (wisdom tooth) at five years. In rare cases, several of which have been reported, there is a fourth molar behind the wisdom tooth, and it is assumed that in these cases the dental lamina continued its backward growth beyond the normal limits (Wilson, Journ. Anat. and Physiol., 1905, vol. 39, pp. 119–134).

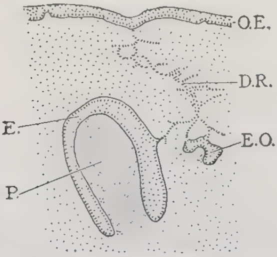


FIG. 422.—TEETH FROM A HUMAN EMBRYO OF 30 CM. (Modified From Röse.)

E. and **E. O.,** Enamel organs of a deciduous and of a permanent tooth respectively; **D. R.,** dental lamina; **O. E.,** oral epithelium; **P.,** papilla.

The permanent front teeth develop from enamel organs on the labial side of the deep portion of the dental lamina (Fig. 422). Owing to the obliquity of the lamina the permanent teeth are on the lingual side of the deciduous teeth. The enamel organs for the incisors develop slightly in advance of those for the canines, but all of these are indicated in an embryo of 24 weeks (30 cm.) described by Röse. He found the enamel organs for the first premolars in an embryo of 29 weeks (36 cm.) and for the second premolars at 33 weeks (40 cm.). Each front tooth develops in the alveolus occupied by the corresponding deciduous tooth, but later a bony septum forms between the two teeth and subdivides the alveolus. When the deciduous teeth are shed, the partitions are resorbed, together with the dentine and cement of the roots of the deciduous teeth. This resorption is accompanied, as in bone, by the production of osteoclasts.

The portion of the dental lamina which is not utilized in producing enamel organs becomes perforated and forms irregular outgrowths (Fig. 422). This disintegration begins in the front of the mouth and spreads laterally. Epithelial remnants from the lamina have been found in the gums at birth and have been mistaken for glands. Like other epithelial remains they occasionally develop abnormally, forming cysts and other tumors. The deepest part of the lamina, below the enamel organs of the permanent teeth, is considered by Röse to be a possible source of a third set, and he states that a case has been reported to him in which such a set, consisting of thirty-two teeth, developed on the lingual side of the permanent teeth. The models which Röse prepared, showing the enamel organs in various stages of development, form the basis of present accounts of tooth development. They are described and well illustrated in the Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1891, vol. 38, pp. 447–491.

ENAMEL ORGAN AND ENAMEL

The basal cells of the oral epithelium may be followed as a distinct layer over the dental lamina and enamel organ, as shown in Fig. 423. This suggests that the enamel organ should be regarded as an infolding of the oral epithelium, and the occurrence of a transient *dental groove* immediately above the lamina (Fig. 421, C) favors this interpretation. The basal surface of the epithelium of the enamel organ is therefore directed toward the surrounding mesenchyma, and the superficial cells are found in the interior of the organ. At first these internal cells are in close contact, like those of ordinary epithelium, but later, through an accumulation of gelatinous intercellular substance they constitute a protoplasmic reticulum which resembles mesenchyma, and is known as the *enamel pulp* (Fig. 424). No vessels or nerves penetrate this pulp. Jordan, however, finds vessels within the enamel organ in white rats, Anat. Record, 1923, vol. 25, pp. 291-300. On the side away from the dental papilla the enamel pulp is bounded by the *outer enamel cells.* At first these are typical cuboidal epithelial cells, but later they become flattened and transformed into a feltwork of pulp fibers. Toward the dental papilla the enamel pulp is bounded by *inner enamel cells*, which develop differently over the upper and lower parts of the tooth respectively. Over the lower portion of the dental papilla they remain as cuboidal or low columnar cells. Here, through a thinning of the pulp, they are brought into contact with the outer enamel cells, and the two layers together form the *epithelial sheath* of the root (Fig. 433). Over the upper part of the dental papilla, the inner enamel cells elongate and become enamel-producing cells or *ameloblasts* (Fig. 424).

The ameloblasts produce enamel along their basal surfaces, which are toward the dental papilla, but they become so transformed that their basal surfaces appear like free surfaces, and the entire cells seem inverted.

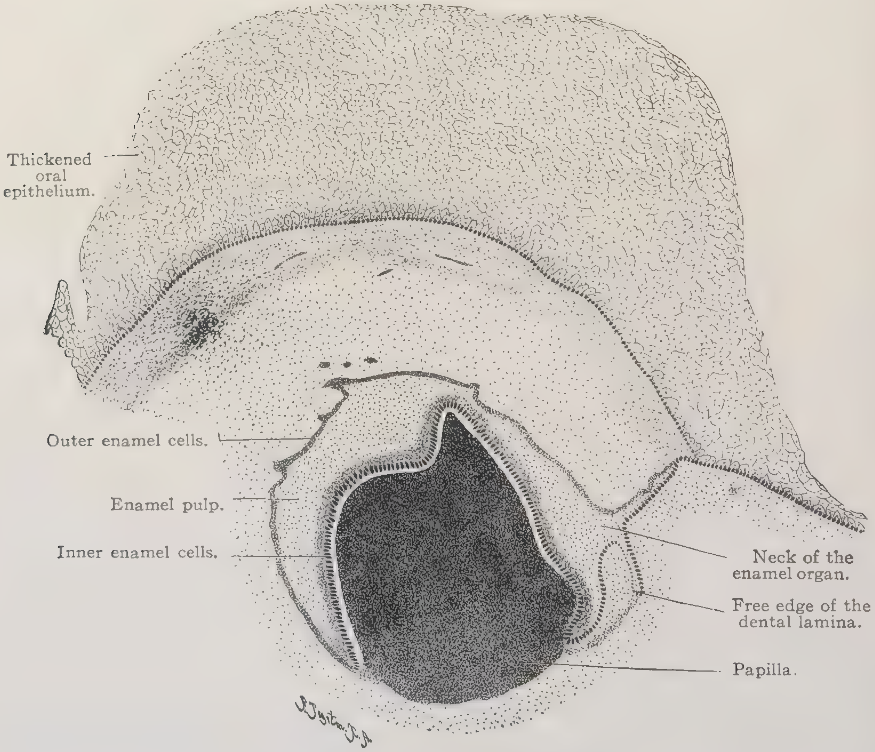

Thickened oral epithelium.
Outer enamel cells.
Enamel pulp.
Inner enamel cells.
Neck of the enamel organ.
Free edge of the dental lamina.
Papilla.

Fig. 423.—From a Cross Section of the Upper Jaw of a Human Embryo of Five Months. × 42.

In columnar epithelial cells the nuclei are generally basal, and the secretion gathers near the free surface, but in the ameloblasts these conditions are reversed. The nuclei are toward the enamel pulp, and the latter forms a dense layer over the ameloblasts, suggesting a basement membrane (Fig. 424). According to Cohn (Verh. phys.-med. Ges. Würzburg, 1897, vol. 31, No. 4) both ends of the ameloblasts are encircled by terminal bars. These bars may be regarded as modifications of the thin film of cement substance found between the ameloblasts. Near the center of each cell, and therefore on the basal side of the nucleus, Cohn has described typical centrosomes or diplosomes.

Toward the dental papilla the protoplasm of the ameloblasts contains granules or droplets which blacken with osmic acid and presumably indicate secretory activity. The basal surface of each ameloblast presents a cuticular border and gives rise to a tapering projection known as *Tomes's process.* Tomes's processes extend into the developing enamel, but they may readily be seen in specimens in which the layer of ameloblasts has shrunken away from the enamel, as in Fig. 424. Around these processes minute globules are deposited, which resemble the granules within the cells, since they blacken with osmic acid. They are described as composed of a horny substance similar to that found in the epidermis. This material may become fibrillar, and Tomes's processes also readily break up into fibrils. There is therefore an uncalcified fibrillar layer of enamel next to the ameloblasts. Further from the ameloblasts the enamel is calcified and consists of rods known as *enamel prisms* (sometimes called enamel fibers) which are bound together by calcified matrix or *enamel cement.* The way in which the prisms develop has not been fully determined. They have been regarded as the calcified ends of the ameloblasts and also as intercellular deposits.

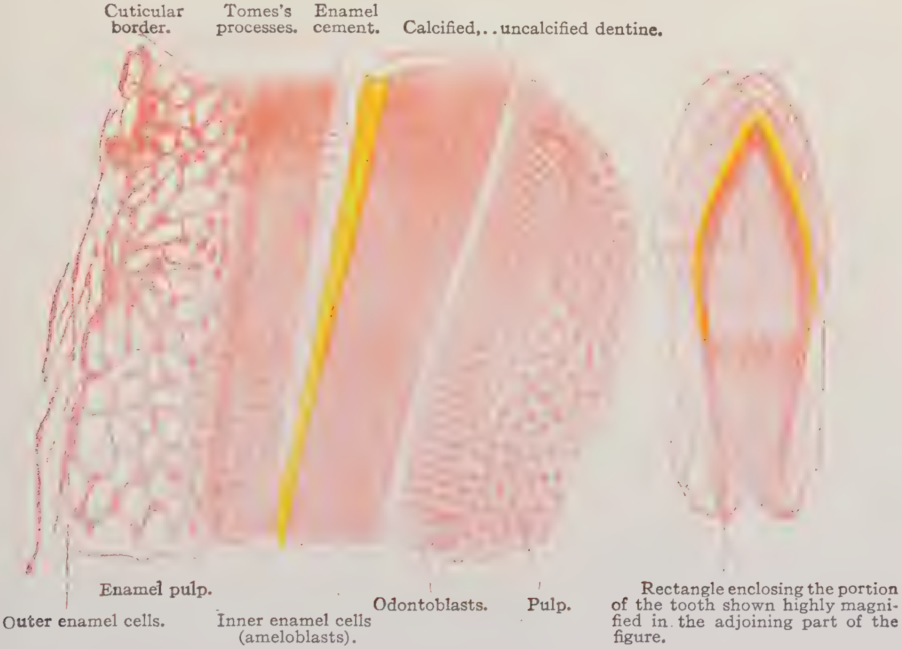

Cuticular border.
Tomes's processes.
Enamel cement.
Calcified, . . uncalcified dentine.
Enamel pulp.
Outer enamel cells.
Inner enamel cells (ameloblasts).
Odontoblasts.
Pulp.
Rectangle enclosing the portion of the tooth shown highly magnified in the adjoining part of the figure.

Fig. 424.—Portion of a Longitudinal Section of an Incisor Tooth from a Newborn Kitten. × 300. In this section the Tomes's processes have shrunken away from the enamel cement.

The formation of enamel begins at the top of the crown of each tooth and spreads downward over its sides. If the tooth has several cusps, a cap of enamel forms over each, and these caps later coalesce. The enamel increases in thickness by the elongation of the prisms, which extend across it from the inner to the outer surface.

When the tooth comes out through the gum, or *erupts*, the enamel is covered with a "persistent capsular investment" described by Nasmyth (1849) and called "Nasmyth's membrane" (*cuticula dentis*). Huxley studied this structure as it covers the teeth in an embryo of the seventh month (Trans. Micr. Soc. London, 1853, vol. 1, pp. 149–164). He found that the inner enamel cells could be easily removed, leaving the surface of the enamel covered with a finely wrinkled or reticulated structureless membrane. Upon adding strong acetic acid the membrane became voluminous and transparent, and was thrown into coarse folds. The ends of the enamel prisms could be seen through it. This dental cuticula is now generally considered to be composed of the last-formed uncalcified ends of the enamel prisms, which are composed of horny material. After the eruption of the tooth it is gradually worn away, remaining longest in the depressions of the enamel. It has recently been studied by Chase, (Anat. Record, 1926, vol. 33, pp. 357–376).

The fully developed enamel is the hardest substance in the body. Several analyses have shown that it contains less than 5% of organic matter. No cells or protoplasmic structures are found within it, but it exhibits various markings, shown in Fig. 425. The outer surface of the enamel of the permanent teeth, especially on the sides of the crown and on young teeth, presents a succession of circular ridges and depressions, which may be seen with a hand lens. These were discovered by Leeuwenhoek (1687), whose figure of them is reproduced in Fig. 425, A. He considered that they marked the intervals during the eruption of the tooth, and wrote, "For example, let us assume that the tooth has fifty circles or ridges; if this is so, the tooth has been pushed through the gum during fifty successive days or months." This explanation is not supported by any evidence.

The enamel, as seen in ground sections passing lengthwise through the tooth, shows numerous brownish bands which are broadest and most distinct toward the free surface (Fig. 425, B). These are the *contour lines* or *lines of Retzius*, first described in Müller's Archiv, 1827 (pp. 486–566). The coarsest of them may be seen with the naked eye, but upon magnification these are resolved into a number of finer lines, and many new lines appear. Their direction is shown in the figure; they arch over the apex of the crown, and on its sides tend to be parallel with the long axis of the tooth. Thus they cross the enamel prisms, and are not the lines along which the enamel most readily fractures. Apparently, they indicate the shape of the entire enamel at successive stages in its development, and for this reason they are called contour lines. When Leeuwenhoek's ridges are present, the lines of Retzius end in the furrows between them. It was once supposed that their brown color was due to pigment, and it is well known that the enamel of certain teeth in rodents is deeply pigmented and brown. But when the lines are highly magnified, no pigment granules are found. It then appears that the lines are due to imperfect calcification of the enamel cement, which is often vacuolated where a line crosses it.

Another set of lines crosses the enamel radially, taking the shortest course from the dentine to the free surface. These *radial lines* are due to the arrangement of the enamel prisms, and fractures of the enamel tend to follow them. As seen in reflected light, under low magnification, they appear as alternating light and dark bands, often called Schreger's lines. The prisms in crossing the enamel are bent in such a way that they are cut in alternating zones of cross and longitudinal sections, respectively (Fig. 425, C). These zones vary in shape and sometimes the prisms in cross section form an island surrounded by longitudinal sections. Since an entire prism cannot be isolated or included within the limits of a single section, the course which they take is difficult to determine. There is no evidence that they branch, and the greater surface which they cover at the periphery of the enamel, as compared with the dentinal surface, has been explained by an increase in the diameter of the prisms as they pass outward. Such an enlargement is not well marked, however, and is partly offset by an outward thinning of the interprismatic cement. Apparently there is an increase in the number of ameloblasts as the tooth becomes larger, and there may be some late-formed enamel prisms which do not reach the dentinal surface. The plan according to which the prisms bend is discussed in Koelliker's Gewebelehre (6th ed.) but it has never been fully explained.

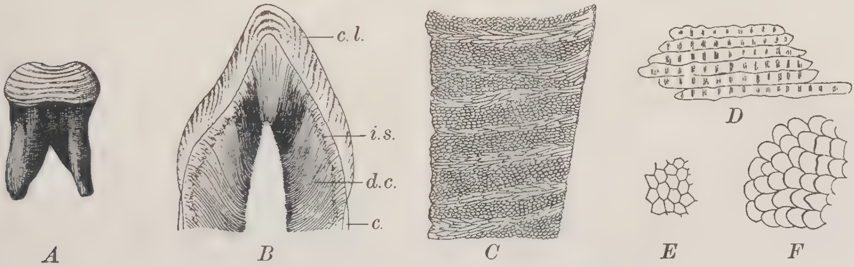


FIG. 425.—THE MARKINGS OF THE ENAMEL IN ADULT TEETH.

A, Leeuwenhoek's figure showing ridges encircling the enamel. **B,** Longitudinal ground section of a canine tooth; **c,** cement; **c. l.,** contour lines (lines of Retzius); **d. c.,** dentinal canals; **i. s.,** interglobular spaces. **C,** Longitudinal section of the enamel of an incisor tooth, the dentinal surface being toward the left. The enamel shows zones of transverse and longitudinal sections of enamel prisms. **D,** Fragment of enamel showing prisms in longitudinal view, slightly affected by hydrochloric acid. × 350 (Koelliker). **E,** Cross section of the decalcified enamel of a canine tooth from a child of three years. × 350 (Koelliker). **F,** Cross section of enamel prisms of a permanent molar from a child of about eight years. (Smreker.)

The individual enamel prisms, when seen lengthwise, exhibit transverse markings. These may be made out in ground sections, but they become more evident after the prisms have been treated with acid (Figs. 425, D and 430). They have been regarded as artificial products, but probably they indicate successive stages in the elongation of the prism. Frequently the prisms, when isolated, appear beaded, with transverse band at the places of constriction.

When seen in cross section the prisms have highly refractive outlines, from 3–6 μ in diameter. They were formerly described as polygonal and primarily hexagonal (Fig. 425, E) but Smreker finds that they are crescentic, as shown in Fig. 425, F (Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1905, vol. 66, pp. 312–331). The convex side of the crescent, along which the interprismatic cement is most abundant, is always toward the dentine. The hollow of the crescent receives an adjacent prism which appears to have been pressed into it. Isolated prisms of this sort are therefore hollowed out on one side, and it is possible that they connect with one another by flanges or bridges (von Ebner, Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1905, vol. 67, pp. 18–81).

DENTAL PAPILLA, DENTINE, AND PULP

The dental papilla has already been described as a mass of dense mesenchyma, enclosed and probably moulded by the enamel organ. At the end of the fourth month, shortly before the formation of enamel has begun, the outermost cells of the papilla become elongated and arranged in an epithelioid layer. Since they produce the dentine, which is the principal part of the tooth, these cells are known as *odontoblasts.* At first they rest against the inner enamel cells. Later a thin layer of *predentine* extends like a membrane between the ameloblasts and odontoblasts; it is seen as a white line in Fig. 423. As the layer of predentine widens and becomes calcified, the odontoblasts remain on its inner surface, which is toward the pulp. Five of them are shown in Fig. 426, together with their branching processes, one of which proceeds from the cuticular border of each cell and occupies a canal in the dentine. These dental or dentinal canals (*canaliculi dentales*) are readily observed in adult teeth. Their existence, and the fact that they open into the pulp cavity, were recorded by Leeuwenhoek in 1687. "The presence of fibrils of soft tissue within the dentinal tubes" was established by Tomes in 1856 (Phil, Trans., pp. 515–522). He found that if a section of a fresh tooth is placed in dilute hydrochloric acid and then torn across the tubules, fibrils will be seen projecting from

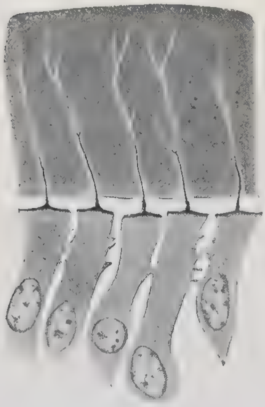


Fig. 426.—Five Odontoblasts, from which Tomes's Fibers Extend upward into the Dentine, from a Tooth of a Newborn Cat. (Prenant.)

the broken edges; and that if the pulp is pulled away from the dentine, fibrils can be drawn out from the tubes. By the latter method the cells shown in Fig. 427 were obtained. The fihers within the dentinal canaliculi are called *dentinal, dental* or *Tomes's fibers.*

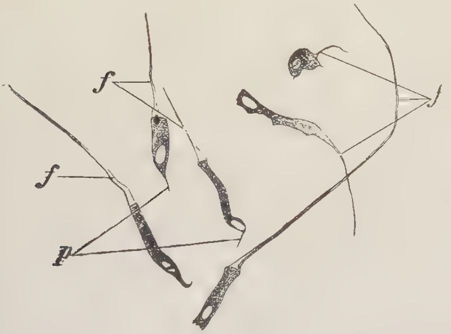


FIG. 427.
Six odontoblasts with dentinal (or Tomes's) fibers, f. p., pulp processes. From the pulp at birth. × 240.

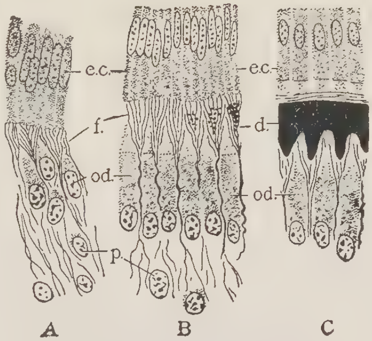


FIG. 428.—THE DEVELOPMENT OF DENTINE IN PIG EMBRYOS. (After v. Korff.)
d., Calcified dentine; **e. c.,** inner enamel cells; **f.,** fibrous ground substance of dentine; **od.,** odontoblasts; **p.,** mesenchymal cells.

Recently von Korff, with special methods, has demonstrated another sort of fibers which lie between the odontoblasts and pass from the pulp into the predentine (Fig. 428, A). The fibers are apparently collagenous and among them, immediately beneath the layer of enamel cells, calcareous granules begin to be deposited (Fig. 428, B). These granules become abundant, and fill the ground substance of the dentine. Von Korff concludes that it is not the odontoblasts but the fibrils of the pulp which give rise to the dentine, and similarly he finds that in bone the osteogenic fibers develop from the surrounding mesenchyma rather than from osteoblasts (Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1907, vol. 69, pp. 515–543). Studnička agrees with von Korff that "the odontoblasts are really gland cells, which are only secondarily concerned in the formation of dentine and do not produce ground substance; their processes (the Tomes's fibers) serve to convey certain nutrient material to the parts far removed from the inner surface, and thus nourish the dentine." (Anat. Anz., 1909, vol. 34, pp. 481–502.) Von Ebner, however, maintains that von Korff's fibers are produced by the odontoblasts as part of the process of dentine formation.

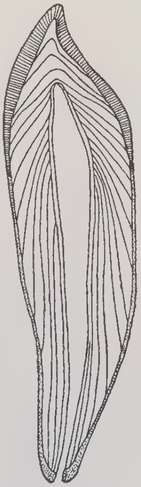


FIG. 429.—DIAGRAM OF THE ARRANGEMENT OF THE DENTINAL LAMELLÆ AND CONTOUR LINES IN AN INCISOR. (Koelliker.)

Other very fine collagenous fibrils in the dentinal matrix are arranged like the decussating fibers in the lamellæ of bone. They cross one another as they run longitudinally in the successively deposited layers of dentine.

These layers are sometimes marked out by distinct *contour lines*, the direction of which is shown in Fig. 429. They indicate the shape of the entire dentine at various stages in its development, and show that the root of the tooth forms after the crown is essentially complete. The innermost layers are formed last. In addition to the contour lines, dentine seen in reflected light shows the radial Schreger's lines, which follow the course of the dentinal canals but are said to be due to the fibrillar structure of the matrix between them.

Dentine when fully developed is not so hard as enamel and contains a much larger amount of organic matter (approximately 25%). When the inorganic substances are removed from enamel, the remaining tissue scarcely holds together, but dentine and bone, when so treated, leave a gelatinous matrix which preserves the form of the original object. The dentinal canaliculi pass radially through the dentine, often following a somewhat S-shaped course as shown in Fig. 425, B. In addition to these primary curves, they may show spiral twists and secondary curves. As they cross the dentine, they divide dichotomously a few times and give off many slender lateral branches, some of which anastomose with those from adjacent canaliculi (Fig. 430). They finally become very slender and generally end blindly, but some terminal loops have been described. Each canal is surrounded by a resistant uncalcified layer known as *Neumann's sheath*. This sheath may be isolated with acids, and thus it is comparable with the "corpuscles" of bone and the capsules of cartilage. It is difficult to determine whether the processes from the odontoblasts extend the whole length of the canaliculi, but they are believed to do so. Tomes observed that the peripheral portion of the dentine is more sensitive than the deeper part, and considered that the fine ramifications of

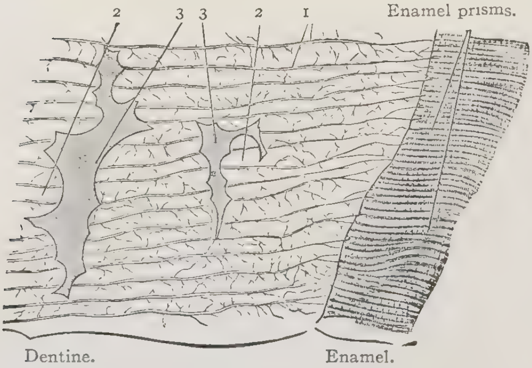


Fig. 430.—From a Longitudinal Section of the Lateral Part of the Crown of a Human Molar Tooth. × 240.

1, Dentinal canaliculi, some extending into the enamel; 2, globules of calcified dentine projecting into the interglobular spaces, 3.

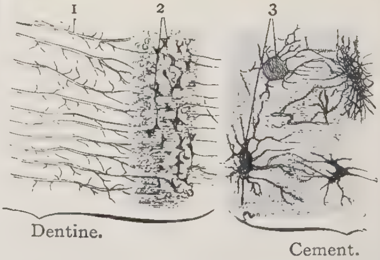


Fig. 431.—From a Longitudinal Section of the Root of a Human Molar Tooth. × 240.

1, Dentinal canaliculi interrupted by a stratum with many small interglobular spaces, 2. 3, bone lacunæ and canaliculi.

the odontoblasts respond like nerve fibers to stimulation. Nerves have been traced to the odontoblast layer at the base of the dentine, but it is doubtful whether they extend into the dentinal canals as some have reported.

The contact between the dentine and enamel is usually quite smooth. Each enamel prism rests in a shallow socket on the dentinal surface, and in places the dentinal canals extend into basal clefts in the enamel cement. A short distance beneath the enamel the dentine exhibits a layer of spaces, which in ground sections are filled with air and appear black (Fig. 425, B, i.s.). They occur along the contour lines, and are due to imperfect calcification of the cement in that region of the matrix which was first to form. Each space is bounded by spherules of calcified matrix which project into it from all sides, and the cavities are therefore known as *interglobular spaces* (Fig. 430). Toward the root of the tooth they are smaller and more numerous than in the crown. They are said to be particularly abundant in poorly developed teeth.

The *pulp* consists of a fine network of reticular tissue together with the peripheral layer of odontoblasts already described. The odontoblasts persist throughout life, and may continue to produce dentine so that the root canals may become nearly or quite obliterated. They are also active in repairing injuries. Some of the late-formed dentine contains blood vessels and resembles bone, so that it has been called osteo-dentine. The odontoblasts connect with one another and with the rest of the pulp by protoplasmic processes. The pulp tissue is free from elastic fibers and from bundles of white fibers. It is very vascular. The small arteries entering the apical foramina send capillaries close to the odontoblasts, but normally they do not enter the dentine. Lymphatic vessels, according to Schweitzer, are found by injection to begin as a tuft of branches in the pulp of the crown; they empty into one or a few very wide vessels passing through the root (Arch. f. mikr. Anat., 1907, vol. 69, pp. 807–908). The nerves of the pulp are the medullated dental branches of the alveolar nerves, which enter through the apical foramina, lose their sheaths and form a loose plexus beneath the odontoblasts, between which they terminate in free endings.

DENTAL SAC, CEMENT, AND PERIODONTAL TISSUE

Each embryonic tooth, consisting of its enamel organ and papilla, is completely surrounded by mesenchyma, which extends from the oral epithelium to the bony trabeculæ of the developing jaw (Fig. 432). This mesenchyma gives rise to the *dental sacs* enclosing the teeth; each sac consists of a dense outer layer and a loose inner layer of young connective tissue (Fig. 433). Toward the base of the dental papilla the tissue of the sac is separated from the dentine by the epithelial sheath, which is a part of the enamel organ. After the crown of the tooth is well developed, the epithelial sheath disintegrates or becomes penetrated by cells of the dental sac, which are then transformed into osteoblasts and deposit bone directly upon the outer surface of the dentine. This bone is a part of the tooth and is known as the *substantia ossea* or *cement.* It is thinnest at the neck of the tooth, and increases in thickness downward toward the apex of the root, over which it forms a considerable cap (Fig. 419). The deeper part of the root develops after the eruption of the crown.

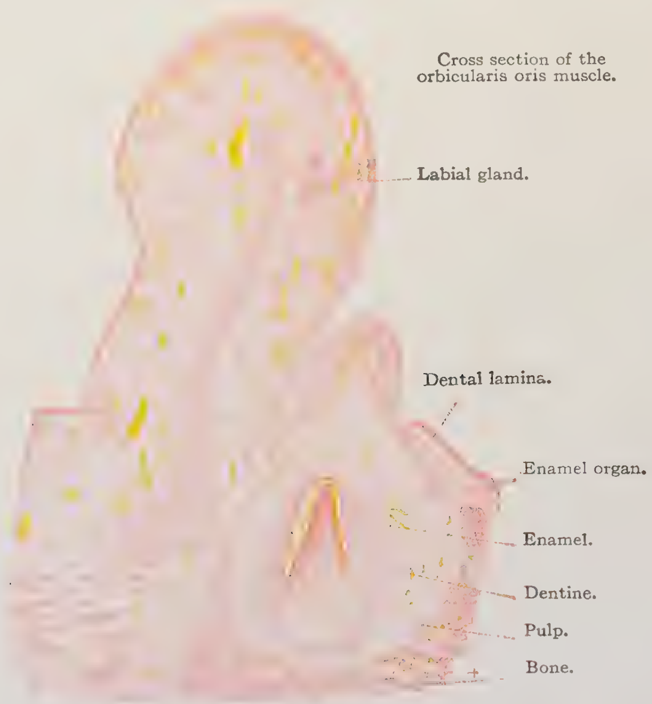


Fig. 432.—Vertical Section through the Lip and Jaw of a Human Embryo of Six and a Half Months. × 9.

The cement contains typical bone cells, enclosed in large lacunæ which connect with one another through canaliculi (Fig. 431). The dentinal surface sometimes appears resorbed and the dental canaliculi then end abruptly; occasionally they appear to anastomose with those of the cement. The lamellæ of the cement, which are seldom well marked, are concentrically placed around the root. In young teeth Haversian canals are absent, but in old teeth they occur in the outer layers near the apex of the root. Connective tissue fibers, comparable with Sharpey's fibers in bone, pass radially through the cement. They cross the dental sac and enter the bone of the alveolus, thus binding the tooth to its socket.

As the tooth enlarges and fills the socket, the dental sac becomes reduced to a thin layer consisting of the alveolar periosteum externally and the dental periosteum internally, with vascular connective tissue between. Frequently these are described as a single layer. It may contain fragments of the epithelial sheath. It has few elastic fibers, but is well supplied with vessels and nerves which are branches of those about to enter the apical foramen. Around the neck of the tooth, dense connective tissue forms the circular ligament (*Lig. circulare dentis*).

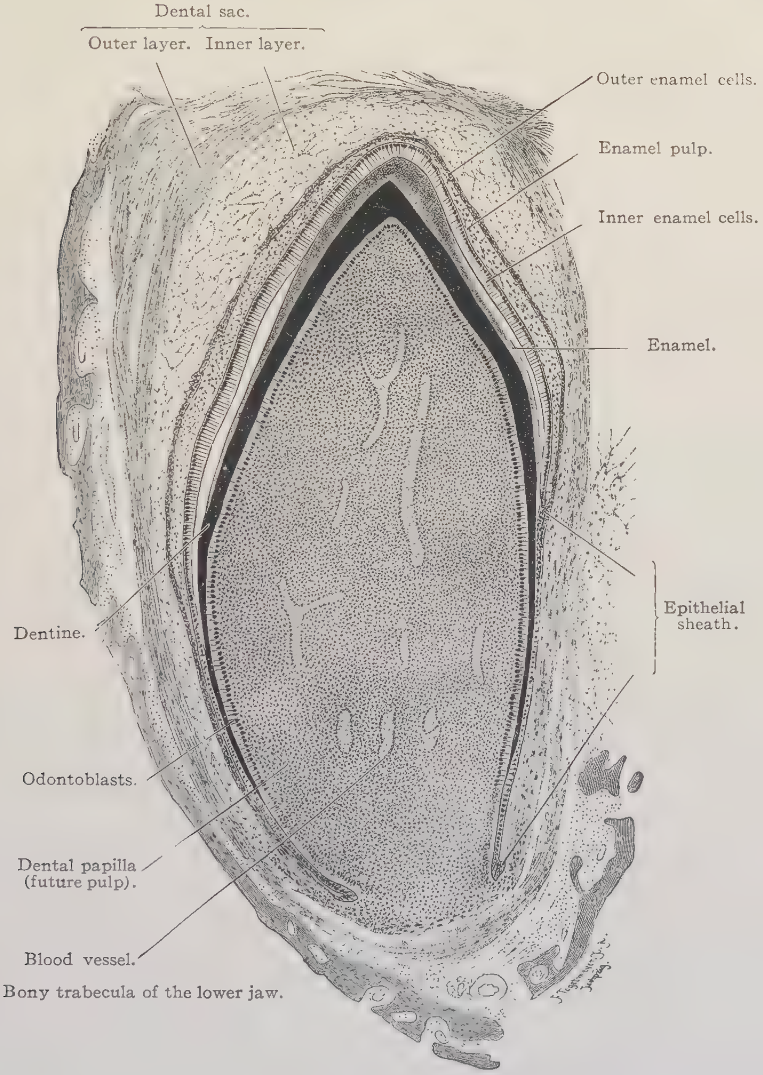


FIG. 433.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION OF A DECIDUOUS TOOTH OF A NEWBORN DOG. × 42. The white spaces between the inner enamel cells and the enamel are artificial, and due to shrinkage.

The gum (*gingiva*) is the part of the lining of the mouth which surrounds the tooth. It is covered by the stratified oral epithelium, in which intercellular bridges are well developed, and this epithelium rests on tall connective tissue elevations or papillæ. There are no glands in the gums. When the tooth erupts it makes a hole through the epithelium, but the margins of the aperture become inverted. Thus the epithelium extends close to the tooth and turns down as a sheath surrounding the neck. At the level of the upper part of the cement it ends abruptly. The connective tissue of the gums blends below with the circular ligaments. It contains few elastic fibers, but is very vascular and is often infiltrated with lymphocytes. Its lymphatic vessels drain outward, along the margin of the cheek and gums, and inward, over the floor or roof of the mouth, as shown by Schweitzer.

Meninges

The spinal cord and brain are surrounded by two membranes or *meninges*, of which the outer is dense and fibrous, and is known as the *dura mater;* and the inner is thin and vascular, forming the *pia mater.*

Curiously they are not called membranes, and the term *meninx* (in the singular) is not employed in anatomy. They retain the ancient Arabic designation of "mother of the brain," following, according to Hyrtl, a general Arabian tendency to name things "mothers," "fathers," etc. (The vena cava was the *mater venorum,* and the pupil, the *filia oculi.*) Carrying the figure further, the adjectives of double meaning, dura and pia, were substituted for dense and thin. In the fifteenth century it was said that these membranes were called *matres* because they produce the membranes surrounding the nerves, the coats of the eye, and the periosteum of the skull, with which they are continuous; but Hyrtl denies that the term has any such significance.

The *dura mater spinalis*, or dura mater of the cord, consists of compact fibrous connective tissue with many elastic fibers, flat connective tissue cells and plasma cells. Its inner surface is covered by a layer of flat cells forming a mesenchymal epithelium. It has few nerves and blood vessels. Anteriorly it is continuous with the dura mater of the brain at the foramen magnum. It does not fill the vertebral canal, and is not continuous with the vertebral periosteum. Around it externally there is a layer of vascular fatty connective tissue; and internal to it there is a capillary cleft containing a very small amount of fluid. This *subdural space* connects with tissue spaces in the dura and with those which extend out in the perineurium of the peripheral nerves. It communicates freely, but probably indirectly, with the lymphatic vessels.

The *dura mater cerebralis*, or dura mater of the brain, includes the periosteum of the inner surface of the cranium and consists, therefore, of two lamellæ. The inner is like the dura mater of the cord but contains more elastic fibers; the outer corresponds with the periosteum of the vertebral canal. It contains the same elements as the inner layer, but its fibers run in a different direction. In order that the dura of the brain and cord may be strictly comparable, some anatomists count the vertebral periosteum and the considerable layer of vascular fatty tissue beneath it, as a part of the dura of the cord. In relation with the brain, the dura forms reduplications extending between the cerebellum and the hemispheres, and between the right and left hemispheres. Its two layers separate to enclose large, thin-walled veins, the *sinuses* of the dura. These receive veins from the substance of the brain, but the arteries of the dura, or *meningeal arteries*, supply the cranial periosteum. The dura has many nerves, some with free endings, and others supplying the musculature of the vessels.

The *pia mater spinalis*, as described by Stöhr, is a two-layered sac. The outer layer is covered on its free outer surface with a simple layer of flat cells, which is lightly connected with the dura, and forms the inner wall of the subdural space. The inner layer, or pia proper, is a delicate and very vascular connective tissue, closely connected with the spinal cord, into which it sends prolongations accompanying the blood vessels. The arteries of the spinal cord are primarily two pairs, situated as shown in Fig. 110, *E* (p. 133). One pair is ventral to the dorsal roots, and the other is near the mid-ventral fissure; their branches supply both the white and gray substance, and the collecting veins branch freely in the pia mater. Between the two layers of the pia, as described by Stöhr, there is a wide space filled with *cerebro-spinal fluid* and traversed by many strands and membranes which pass from one layer of the pia to the other. These strands constitute the *arachnoid membrane*, so-called from its cobwebby texture. Often the name is restricted to the subdural membrane (following Henle), so that the spaces between the meshes of the arachnoid are described as subarachnoid. They are preferably termed *arachnoid spaces* and they are of great importance. The fluid which they contain has access to that within the central canal of the cord and the ventricles of the brain, through apertures in the thin roof of the medulla oblongata. Whether the arachnoid spaces open directly into lymphatic vessels may be questioned, but undoubtedly they are freely drained by the lymphatic system.

The *arachnoid membrane*, in the brain, is separated from the dura by a cleft-like sub-dural space. In certain places, especially along the sides of the superior sagittal sinus, there are found *arachnoid villi* (Pacchionian bodies or granulations), which project into the cavity of the venous sinus. They are elevations of the arachnoid covered with a thin portion of the dura and venous endothelium, and possibly facilitate the transfer of fluid between the arachnoid (or subarachnoid) spaces and the veins. These spaces contain the cerebro-spinal fluid, and are continuous with the corresponding spaces around the cord. The arrangement of the spaces and their relation to brain drainage have been carefully studied by Weed (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1923, vol. 31, pp. 191–221). Through apertures in the thin roof of the fourth ventricle, they communicate with the central cavity of the cord and brain.

The pia is a delicate and highly vascular layer, containing arteries which send branches into the cortex from all points on its surface. These cortical arteries arise from the anastomoses between the internal carotid and vertebral arteries at the base of the brain, which produce the arterial circle of Willis. Other branches from these vessels enter the substance of the base of the brain, supplying the basal nuclei, thalamus and internal capsule. Because of the effects of hæmorrhage in relation with the motor and sensory tracts in this region, these small arteries are of very great importance. The vascular membranes which cover the thin portions of the roof of the third and fourth ventricles are in places invaginated into the ventricles, forming the *chorioid plexuses.* These networks of small vessels, covered only by thin membranes, are found in the lateral ventricles as well as in the third and fourth; their position is described in text-books of gross anatomy. The simple layer of cuboidal epithelium, which covers the plexuses, contains pigment granules and fat droplets, and may perform secretory functions.

Cerebrum

The cerebrum, or hemispheres of the brain, consists of an inner or central portion composed of neuroglia and medullated nerve fibres, covered by a layer of "gray matter," the cerebral cortex, in which nerve cells are found. The latter is deeply folded in the sulci and gyri, which form the convolutions of the brain. The arrangement of the cells in the cortex differs slightly in different areas, and the following account is to be taken as somewhat of a generalization. For more detailed knowledge the student is referred to special books on the brain.

The cortex is divided into four ill-defined layers—an outer molecular or neuroglia layer; a layer of small pyramidal cells; a layer of large pyramidal cells; and next the white substance, a layer of polymorphous cells. From the pyramidal cells the fibers of the descending motor tract arise. The layers are shown in Figs. 434 and 435.

The *molecular layer*, which in ordinary sections appears finely punctate or reticular, contains besides many neuroglia cells, a network of medullated *tangential fibers*, which are parallel with the surface. Other fibers, as shown by the Golgi method, are partly neuroglia, and partly dendrites of pyramidal cells. The "cells of Retzius" found in this layer have bodies of irregular shape, which send out processes parallel with the surface, and these processes send short branches outward; other processes descend into the deeper layer (Fig. 436). They are probably neuroglia cells.

The *layer of small pyramidal cells* contains a special form of nerve cells, with pyramidal bodies measuring 10-12 μ. Since they taper into a den-

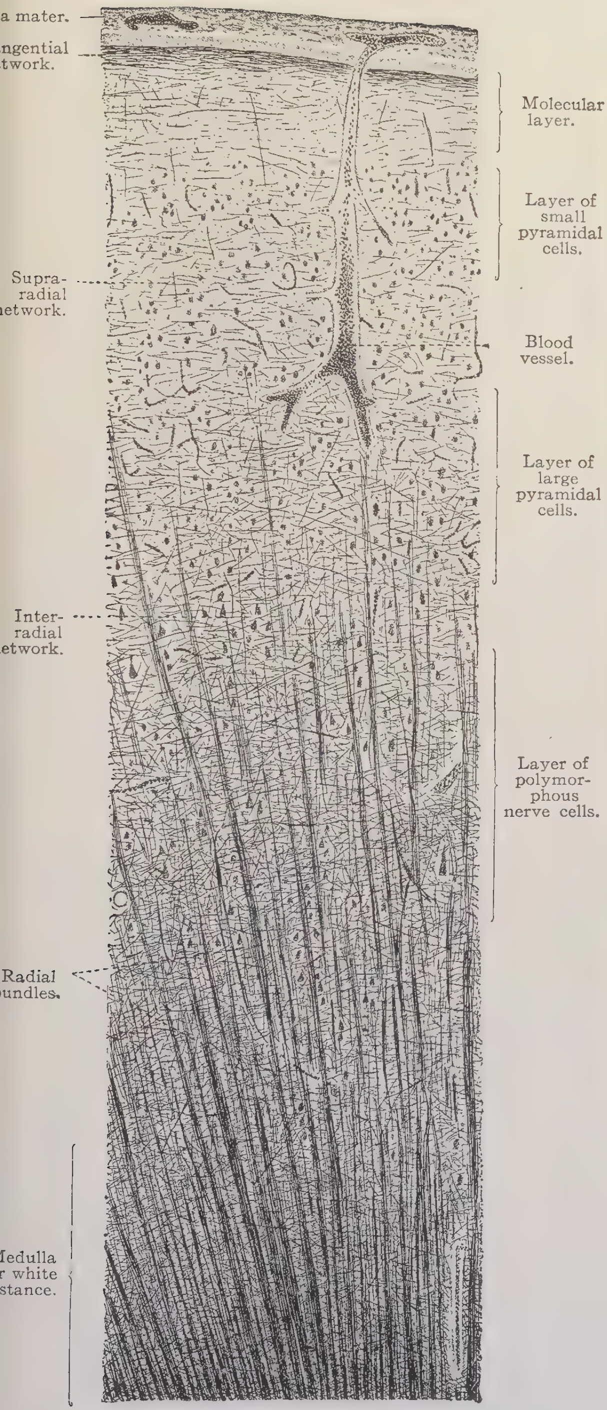


FIG. 434.

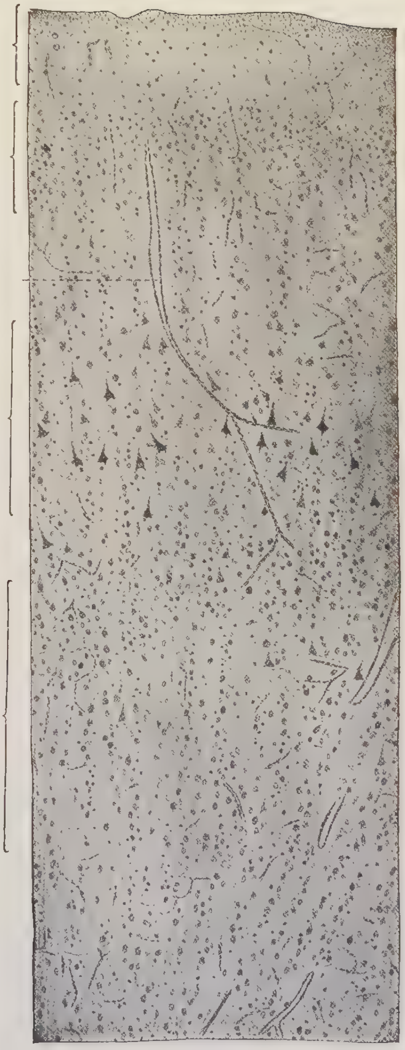


FIG. 435.

FIGS. 434 and 435 are from vertical sections of the cortex (central convolution) of an adult. Fig. 434 is a Weigert preparation; Fig. 435 is from a section stained with hæmatoxylin and Eosin. × 45.

dritic process, their length cannot be definitely determined. The chief dendrite, after producing small lateral branches, enters the molecular layer where it arborizes freely; its terminal branches often show small irregular

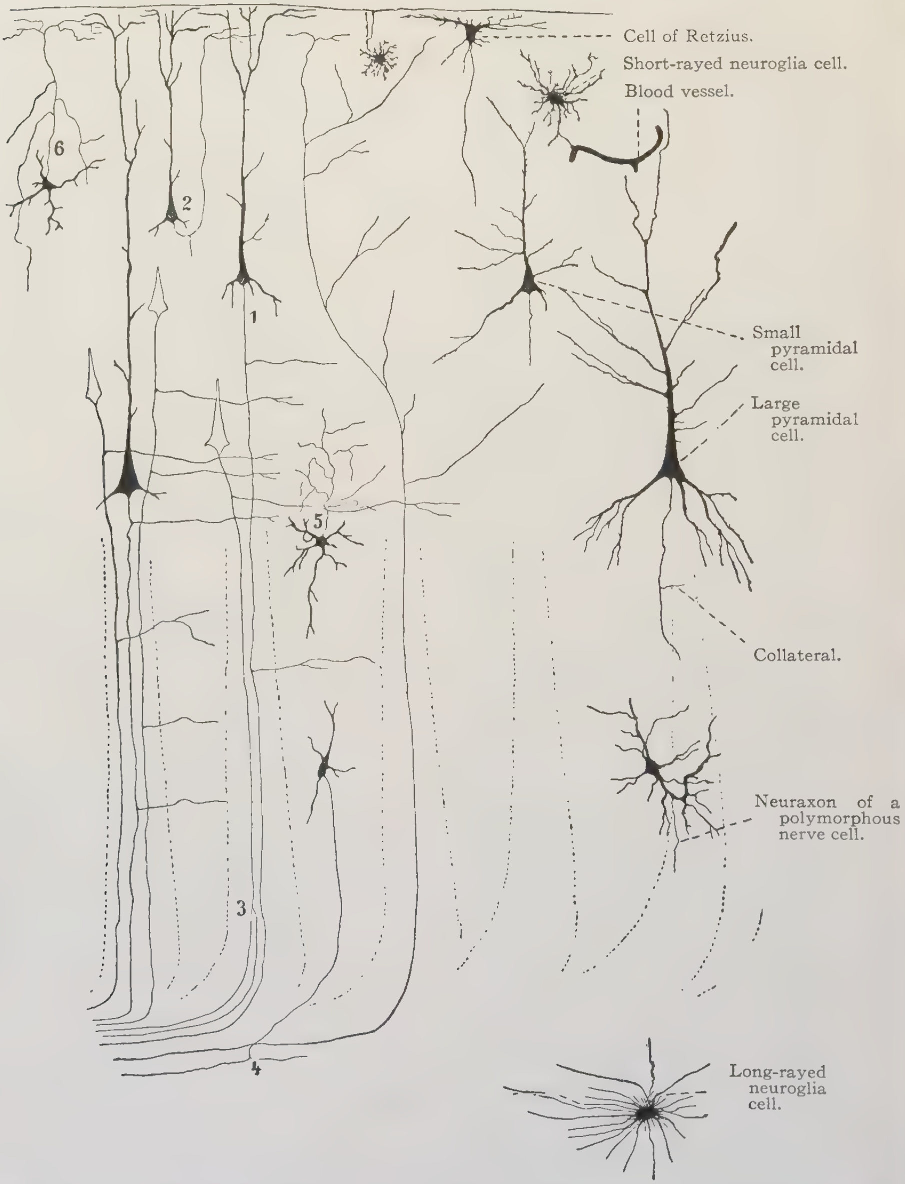

Cell of Retzius.
Short-rayed neuroglia cell.
Blood vessel.
6
2
1
Small pyramidal cell.
Large pyramidal cell.
5
Collateral.
Neuraxon of a polymorphous nerve cell.
3
4
Long-rayed neuroglia cell.

Fig. 436.—Diagram of the Cerebral Cortex. The cells on the Right Are Drawn from Golgi Preparations of an Adult Man. × 120. The Left Portion of the Diagram is × 60.

projections. Lesser dendrites proceed from the sides and basal surface of the pyramidal cell body. The neuraxon always arises from the basal surface, and after producing branched collaterals, it generally enters the white substance where it may divide in two (Fig. 436, 3). Sometimes the neuraxon turns toward the molecular layer, joining the tangential fibers; infrequently an inverted pyramidal cell is found. The neuraxons and collaterals are medullated.

The *layer of large pyramidal cells*, contains those with bodies 20–30 μ long (the "giant pyramidal cells" of Betz, of the anterior central convolution measure even 80 μ). The very large neuraxon always goes to the white substance, after sending out several collaterals in the gray.

The *layer of polymorphous cells* includes oval or polygonal cells which lack a chief dendrite directed toward the surface; their slender neuraxons produce collaterals, and enter the white substance where they may divide into two branches in T-form (Fig. 436, 4). Polymorphous cells with branched neuraxons limited to the vicinity of the cell body, are found in this layer and in the pyramidal layers also. The neuraxon may branch in the molecular layer (Fig. 436, 6).

Many medullated fibers are found in the deeper layers of pyramidal and polymorphous cells. They are grouped in tapering radial bundles which terminate toward the layer of small pyramidal cells, as seen in Fig. 434. The bundles include the descending medullated neuraxons of the pyramidal and polymorphous cells, and the ascending medullated sensory fibers from the white substance. The latter branch repeatedly, forming the supra-radial and tangential networks. The medullated collaterals of the pyramidal cells run at right angles with the radial bundles; they form an inter-radial network, the outer part of which is so thick in the region of the calcarine fissure that it can be seen without magnification, and is there known as the "stripe of Vicq d'Azyr." Similar bands may be detected elsewhere in thick sections (Baillarger's stripes).

The *neuroglia* of the hemispheres, like that of the cord, is at first a syncytium with strands extending from the ventricle to the periphery. Later, the syncytium is divisible into short-rayed neuroglia cells found chiefly in the gray substance, long-rayed cells found chiefly in the white, and ependymal cells lining the ventricles. The ependymal layer is continuous through the aqueduct with that of the fourth ventricles and central canal. In early stages its cells have cilia-like processes which are in part retained in the adult. The short-rayed cells, which are characterized by knotted branching processes, are often in close relation with the blood vessels; they may serve to transfer the nutritive and myelin-forming material from the vessels to the nerve fibers. The outer surface of the cerebral cortex is covered with a feltwork of neuroglia fibers.

CEREBELLUM

The cerebellar cortex also is deeply folded, and everywhere covers the "white matter." Unlike the cerebral cortex, the cortex of the cerebellum is throughout its extent of the same structure, and shows the same arrangement of cells. It consists of three strata—an inner *granular stratum*, which is rust-colored in the fresh condition; a middle *ganglionic stratum*, composed of a single row of large cell bodies; and an outer *gray stratum.*

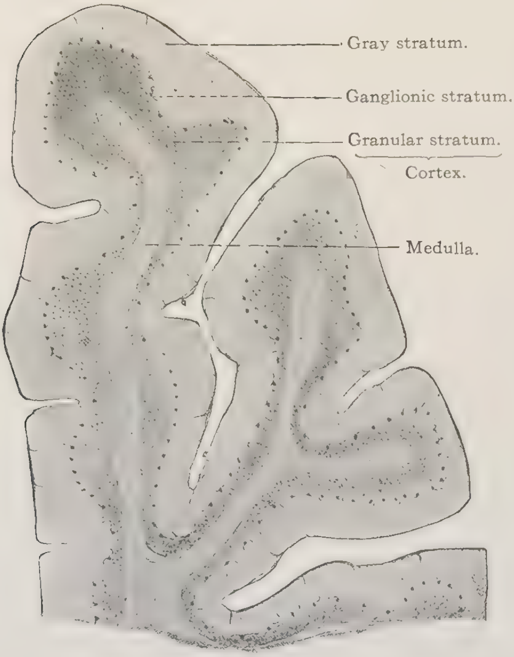


FIG. 437.—FROM A SAGITTAL SECTION OF THE CEREBELLUM OF AN ADULT MAN. × 12.

The inner granular stratum consists of many layers of small cells which by ordinary methods show relatively large nuclei and very little protoplasm. With the Golgi method it appears that besides neuroglia cells, two sorts of nerve cells are present, the *small* and *large granule cells;* the former (Fig. 438) are multipolar ganglion cells with short dendrites having claw-like terminations, and slender non-medullated neuraxons which ascend perpendicularly to the gray layer and there divide in T-form into two branches. The branches run lengthwise of the transverse folds or convolutions of the cerebellum and have free unbranched endings. In sagittal sections (Fig. 440) the terminal branches of the neuraxons are cut across. The small granule cells form the bulk of the granular stratum. The less frequent large granule cells (Fig. 440) are more than twice the size of the small ones; their branched dendrites penetrate the gray stratum and their neuraxons, going in the opposite direction, are soon resolved into very numerous branches which ramify throughout the granular stratum.

The granular layer contains also a thick network of medullated fibers which enter it chiefly from the white substance. A part of these fibers end in the "eosin bodies" of the granular stratum, which are heaps of stainable particles found between the small cells (Fig. 439). Some of the fibers form bundles parallel with the surface, running between the granular and ganglionic strata in the sagittal direction; they send branches into the gray layer. A small portion of the granular stratum is formed by the medullated neuraxons of the cells in the ganglion layer.

The middle ganglionic stratum consists entirely of a single layer of very large multipolar ganglion cells, called *Purkinje's cells.* Their oval or pear-shaped bodies send two large dendrites into the gray stratum, where they form an extraordinary arborization (Fig. 440). Their many branches do not extend in all directions but are confined to the sagittal plane, that is, to a plane at right angles with the long axes of the convolutions. When the convolutions are cut lengthwise, Purkinje's cells appear as in Fig. 438. The neuraxons arise from the deep surface of the cell bodies, and as medullated fibers they pass through the granular stratum to the white substance. Within the granular layer they produce collateral fibers which branch and in part run back into the ganglionic layer, ending near the bodies of other Purkinje's cells (Fig. 440).

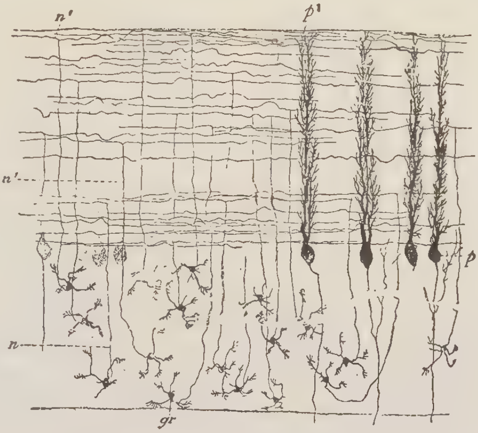


Fig. 438.—Diagram of a Section of the Cerebellum Lengthwise of the Transverse Convolutions. Golgi's Method. (Koelliker.)

gr., Cells of the granular stratum; **n.** their neuraxons in the granular layer and **n'**., in the gray stratum; **p. p'**., Purkinje's cells. (From Bailey's "Histology.")

The outer gray stratum, of gray color, contains two sorts of nerve cells, the *large* and the *small cortical cells.* The large cortical or *basket cells* are multipolar ganglion cells, the dendrites of which pass chiefly toward the surface. Their long neuraxons, thin at first but later becoming thicker, run parallel with the surface in the sagittal plane. They send occasional collaterals toward the surface, and at intervals produce fine branches which descend and terminate in baskets and around the bodies of Purkinje's cells (Fig. 440), often surrounding also the beginning of their neuraxons.

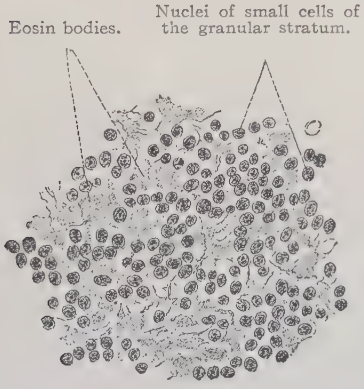


Fig. 439.—From a Thin Section of the Cerebellum of an Adult. × 400.

The small cortical cells, distinguishable from the basket cells since their neuraxons are not in relation with Purkinje's cells may be divided into two types, connected by intermediate forms. The cell bodies of the first type are nearly or quite as large as those of the basket cells. Their two to five dendrites lie in the sagittal plane like those of Purkinje's cells; the slender neuraxons, 1 mm. long or more, sometimes form loops and are characterized by abundant branches in their proximal parts. The terminal branches are few. Cells of the second type are in general somewhat smaller; their shorter neuraxons branch in the immediate vicinity of the cell bodies. The elements of the first type form the bulk of the relatively numerous small cortical cells, and are found throughout the gray stratum, though they are more abundant in its superficial part. The second type likewise appears throughout the gray stratum.

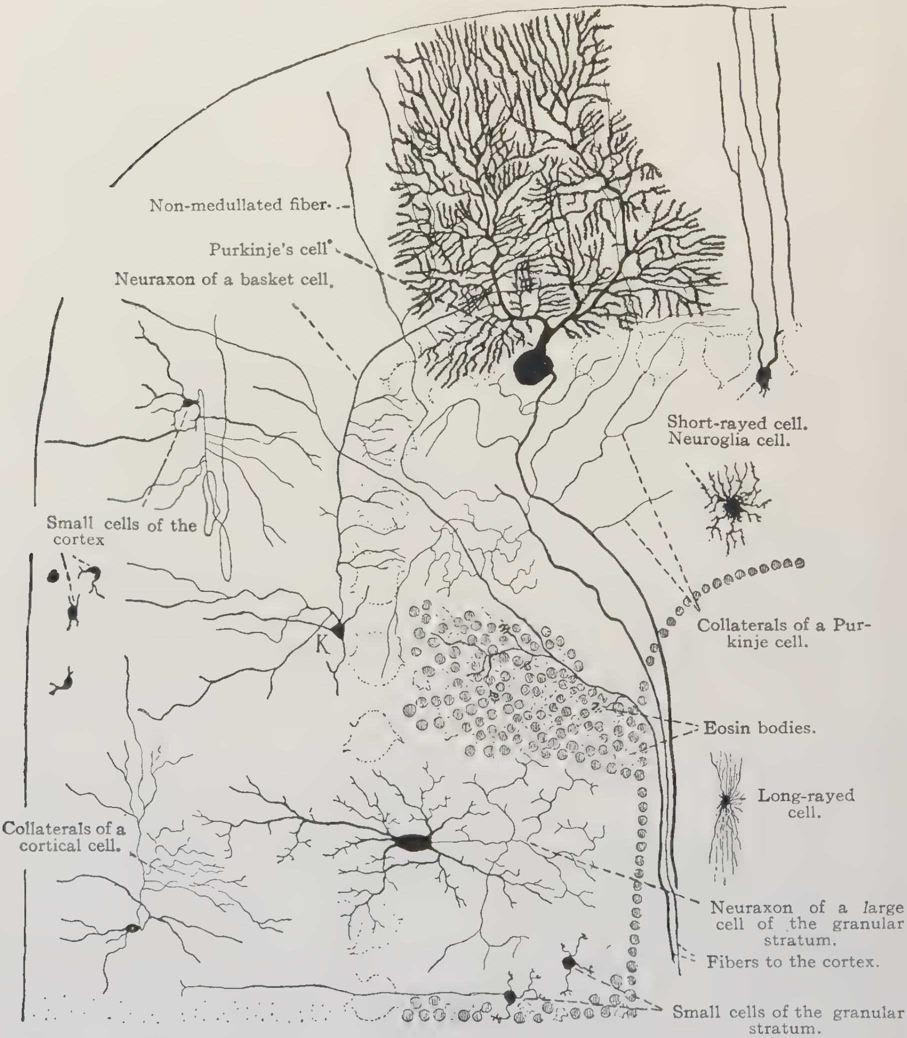

Non-medullated fiber
Purkinje's cell
Neuraxon of a basket cell
Small cells of the cortex
K
Collaterals of a cortical cell.
Short-rayed cell.
Neuroglia cell.
Collaterals of a Purkinje cell.
Eosin bodies.
Long-rayed cell.
Neuraxon of a large cell of the granular stratum.
Fibers to the cortex.
Small cells of the granular stratum.

FIG. 440.—DIAGRAM OF A SAGITTAL SECTION OF THE CEREBELLUM.
Except the large granule cell, which is from a kitten, the cells are drawn from Golgi preparations from an adult man. **K,** large cortical or basket cell.

The medullated nerve fibers found in the gray layer are prolongations of those in the granular stratum. In part they proceed toward the surface, where, after losing their myelin, they end in branches among the dendrites of Purkinje's cells; in part they run between the bodies of Purkinje's cells lengthwise of the convolutions.

The neuroglia of the cerebellum consists of short-rayed stellate cells found in all the layers; of long-rayed cells in the white substance; and of peculiar cells with small bodies at the outer boundary of the granular layer (Fig. 440). These send only a few short processes inward, but many long processes straight out to the free surface, where they end in triangular expansions. In this way a thick peripheral neuroglia layer is produced.

As long as the cerebellar cortex is not fully developed, it presents a series of peculiarities which are lacking in the adult. Thus in embryos and young animals the partly developed gray stratum is covered by a superficial granular layer, the cells of which later become more deeply placed.

Organs of Special Sense

These include the eye for sight, the ear for hearing and equilibration, a portion of the nose for smell and of the tongue and epiglottis for taste. In all cases only certain parts of the organ mediate the actual transfer of the sense to the nerves, the rest of the organ serving the purpose of conduction to these special regions, or even some quite unrelated purpose. The sense of touch, with its related feelings of pressure, pain, and temperature, so wide spread over the surfaces of the body, is apparently achieved by sensory nerves with special nerve endings, bearing no resemblance to the special sense organs mentioned.

The olfactory sense is perhaps the most primitive, as can be deduced from its nervous connection with the central and most primitive part of the brain, and from the arrangement of its receptive cells. These are neuro-epithelial in character, like those of an earthworm—Fig. 109—and while themselves situated in the epithelial layer, have long nerve processes reaching actually into the brain. Their peripheral ends are provided with special pointed processes reaching to the surface, apparently to receive the impulse which they transmit, and in this is seen the type of all the special sense receptors. In eye, ear, taste-bud, or semicircular canals the specialized epithelial cell with one or more processes projecting from its free surface is the typical receptor. In these other organs the epithelial cell no longer is provided with a central process running to the brain, but instead is in relation with a sensory nerve fiber coming from some ganglion cell, to which the impulse is transferred. In the same way that the olfactory neuro-epithelial cell is surrounded by other columnar cells of a simple epithelium, so the other sense organs are composed of two types of cell, the receptors and the supporting cells, whose duty is apparently to hold the specialized cells in position. In the taste-bud and the macula of the semicircular canals these supporting cells are very simple; in the eye, since the whole receptive organ is a portion of the brain, the supporting cells are neuroglial; in the ear they are very much altered in shape and structure, but still to be considered as supporting epithelial cells. From this point of view the organs of special sense all show a certain basic similarity, though varying greatly in complexity of detail.

EYE

Development and General Anatomy. The eyes first appear as a pair of *optic vesicles*, which are lateral out-pocketings of the fore-brain (Fig. 441, A). They enlarge rapidly, but their connections with the wall of the brain remain relatively slender, forming the *optic stalks*. The epidermal ectoderm immediately overlying the vesicles thickens and becomes invaginated (Fig. 441, B and C). The invaginated portion is then detached in the form of a vesicle, the inner wall of which is distinctly thicker than the outer; this "lentic vesicle" becomes the lens of the eye. Meanwhile, as seen in B and C, that layer of the optic vesicle which is toward the epidermis sinks in upon the deeper layer, transforming the

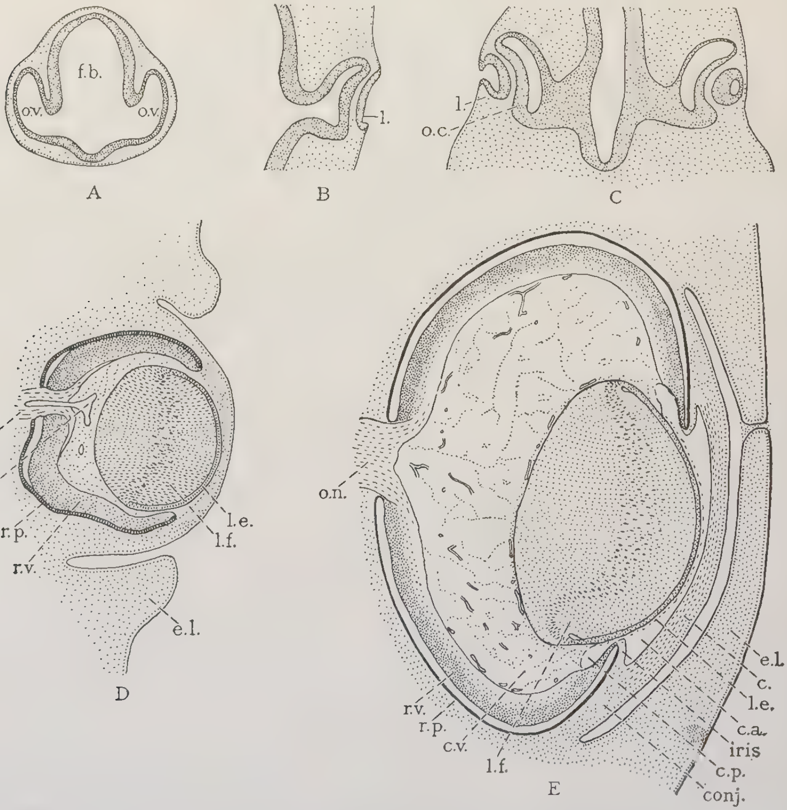


FIG. 441.—SECTIONS OF RABBIT EMBRYOS TO SHOW THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE EYE. **A**, 9½ days, 3.0 mm. **B**, 10½ days, 5.4 mm.; **C**, 11 days, 5.0 mm.; **D**, 14 days, 18 hours, 12.0 mm.; **E**, 20 days, 29 mm.
a. c. r., Arteria centralis retinæ; **c.**, cornea; **c. a.**, anterior chamber; **conj.**, conjunctiva; **c. p.**, posterior chamber; **c. v.**, corpus vitreum; **e. l.**, eyelid; **f. b.**, fore-brain; **l.**, lens; **l. e.**, lens epithelium; **l. f.**, lens fibers; **o. c.**, optic cup; **o. n.**, optic nerve; **o. v.**, optic vesicle; **r. p.**, pigmented layer of the retina; **r. v.**, visual layer of the retina.

vesicle into the *optic cup*. At first the cup is not complete, being deficient on its lower side (Fig. 442). The *arteria centralis retinæ* is seen passing through this indentation, which begins on the lower surface of the stalk and extends to the free margin of the cup; the cleft is sometimes called the "chorioid fissure." Distal to the point of entrance of the artery into the optic cup, the edges of the fissure fuse; the artery then appears to perforate the base of the cup, and it retains this relation in the adult. The artery is shown in section in Fig. 441, D.

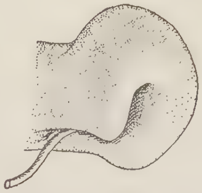


Fig. 442.—Optic Cup and Stalk of a Human Embryo of 6.9 mm. (After Kollmann.)

In a remarkable series of experiments upon tadpoles, Warren Lewis has shown that "the lens is dependent for its origin on the contact influence or stimulus of the optic vesicle." If the optic vesicle is removed, the epithelium in the region of the normal lens does not become thickened or invaginated; but if an optic vesicle is transplanted by detaching it from its stalk and pushing it caudally through the mesenchyma, it will cause the formation of a lens from any portion of the epidermal epithelium which happens to be above it. Moreover, if an area of skin from the abdomen of a frog of one species is grafted over the optic vesicle of another species, a lens may be produced from the grafted epithelium. Thus there is no predetermined area for lens formation, and its development depends upon the presence of the vesicle beneath (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1904, vol. 3, pp. 505–536, 1907, vol. 7, pp. 145–169).

The two layers of the optic cup, the inner of which is toward the lens, are normally in contact with one another, although in sections they have often become more or less separated. They constitute the *retina*, which includes a thin outer *pigmented layer*, and a thick inner *visual layer;* the latter is composed of several strata of nerve cells and fibers. The stimulus of light is received by tapering projections extending from the outer surface of the visual layer toward the pigmented layer; to reach them the rays of light must traverse the strata of the visual layer. In explanation of the fact that the sensory processes are turned away from the light, it may be said that the outer surface of the skin ordinarily receives stimuli, and that through the infolding which makes the medullary tube and the outpocketing which makes the optic vesicle, the sensory surface of the retina is continuous with the outer surface of the skin. Since in mammals the optic vesicles begin to form before the related portion of the medullary groove has closed, they first appear as depressions in a thickened epidermal ectoderm.

Nerve fibers grow from the inner surface of the visual layer toward the central artery and vein of the retina, around which they pass out of the optic cup (Fig. 441, D). They grow beneath and among the cells of the optic stalk to the brain, which they enter. These fibers, which constitute the *optic nerve*, cause the obliteration of the optic stalk. It is shown in the figure that the optic nerve at its origin interrupts the retinal layers, producing a "blind spot." The part of the nerve which forms the blind spot, with the vessels in its center, is called the *papilla of the optic nerve.*

The lens (Fig. 441, D) loses its central cavity by the elongation of the cells in its posterior layer. These become the *fibers of the lens.* The anterior layer remains throughout life as a simple epithelium, called the *epithelium of the lens.* The lens becomes covered by an elastic *capsula lentis,* and in embryonic life it possesses a *vascular capsule* (Fig. 441, E) containing branches of the central artery. The vascular layer covering the anterior surface of the lens is designated the *pupillary membrane,* and it disappears shortly before birth. Its occasional persistence interferes with vision.

Between the lens and the retina there is a peculiar tissue, mucoid in appearance and resembling mesenchyma in form. Since processes from the retina and from the lens have been found extending into it, it is considered to be essentially ectodermal. Its blood vessels become obliterated and it forms the *vitreous body* of the adult, consisting of a *stroma* and a *humor.* Extending through it, from the papilla of the optic nerve toward the lens, is the *hyaloid canal,* which in the embryo lodged the *hyaloid artery* (a prolongation of the central artery). Sometimes this artery is represented in the adult by a strand of tissue. The vitreous body is surrounded by a fibrous layer called the hyaloid membrane.

A cavity forms in the tissue in front of the lens and becomes filled with a watery tissue fluid (aqueous humor). It is bounded by a mesenchymal epithelium. The portion of the cavity which is anterior to the retinal cup and lens is called the *anterior chamber of the eye;* the smaller part within the retinal cup but in front of the lens and the fibrous covering of the vitreous body, is the *posterior chamber* (Fig. 441, E, *c.p.*).

The retinal cup is surrounded by two layers of mesenchymal origin. The inner *tunica vasculosa* corresponds with the pia mater and forms the *chorioid* coat of the eye; the outer *tunica fibrosa* corresponds with the dura mater and forms the *sclera,* into which the muscles of the eye are inserted. The portion of the retinal cup which forms a curtain, circular in front view, between the anterior and posterior chambers, is called the *iris.* It consists of tunica vasculosa with a thin pigmented prolongation of the retina over its posterior surface (Figs. 441, E, and 443). This *pars iridica retinæ* is rudimentary and without visual function. The iris is covered by the mesenchymal epithelium of the chambers. At the attached border of the iris the vascular coat contains important muscle fibers, and is there thickened to form the *ciliary body.* This is also covered by a rudimentary pigmented layer on its inner surface, the *pars ciliaris retinæ.* At the *ora serrata* (Fig. 458) an abrupt thickening of the visual layer of the retina marks the boundary between its cilliary and optic portions. The *pars optica retinæ* extends from the ora to the optic nerve, covered externally by the chorioid and sclera.

As a relatively frequent congenital anomaly, the chorioid fissure fails to close normally and the resulting defect is known as *coloboma*. If the closure has been nearly complete, so that there is merely a notch at the free margin of the optic cup, it appears in the adult as a median ventral cleft in the iris, so that the pupil is shaped like an inverted pear. If the deeper parts of the chorioid fissure fail to unite, there will be a median ventral gap in the optic portion of the retina, which may seriously interfere with vision.

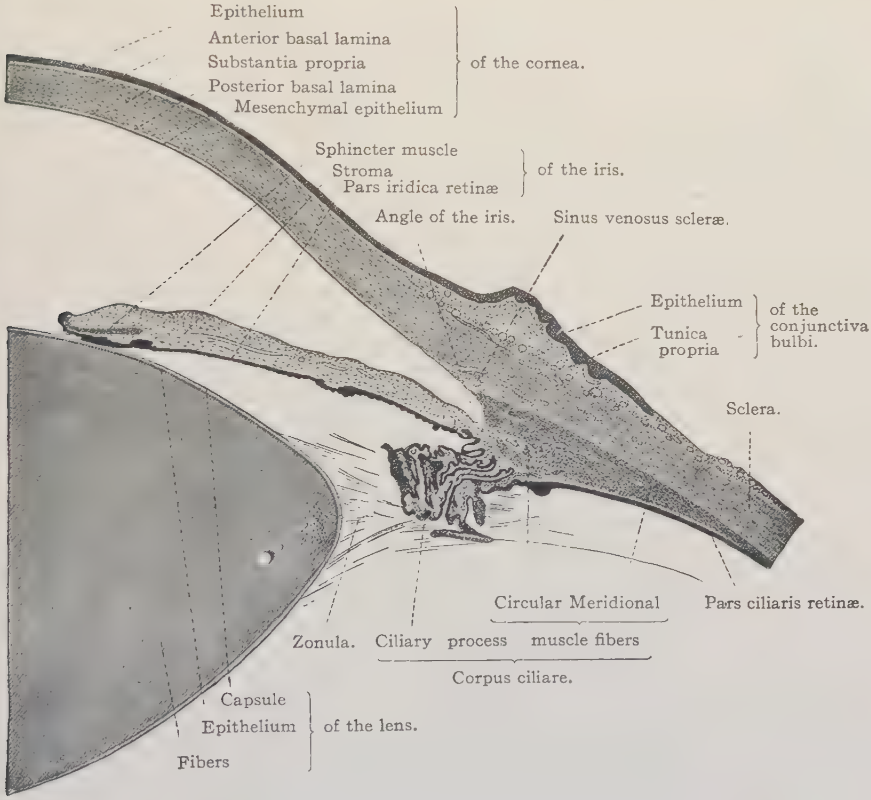


FIG. 443.—MERIDIONAL SECTION OF A PART OF THE EYE. × 15.
The radial fibers of the ciliary muscle cannot be distinguished with this magnification.

The *cornea* is the tissue in front of the anterior chamber, consisting of a non-vascular mesenchymal tissue, bounded posteriorly by mesenchymal epithelium and anteriorly by the epidermal ectoderm. It is extremely transparent. The epidermal ectoderm extends from the cornea and front of the eye over two folds which form the eyelids. They have met in Fig. 441, D, and fused temporarily. Externally the lids are covered by skin, and internally by the *conjunctiva palpebrarum*, or conjunctiva of the lids. The latter is continuous with the *conjunctiva bulbi* which forms the opaque vascular "white of the eye." It surrounds the cornea, the epithelium of the two structures being continuous.

The parts of the eye to be examined histologically are therefore the retina, optic nerve, lens, and vitreous body, all of which are ectodermal; then the tunica vasculosa, including the chorioid, the ciliary body, and iris; next the tunica fibrosa, including the sclera and cornea; and finally the accessory structures—the lids, conjunctivæ and glands.

RETINA

The retina extends from the papilla of the optic nerve to the pupillary border of the iris, and is divisible into three parts; the *pars optica retinæ* includes all which is actually connected with the optic nerve and which therefore is sensitive to light. It covers the deeper portion of the optic cup, ending near the ciliary body in a macroscopic, sharp, irregular line bounding the ora serrata. The *pars ciliaris* and the *pars iridica retinæ* are the rudimentary layers covering the ciliary body and iris respectively.

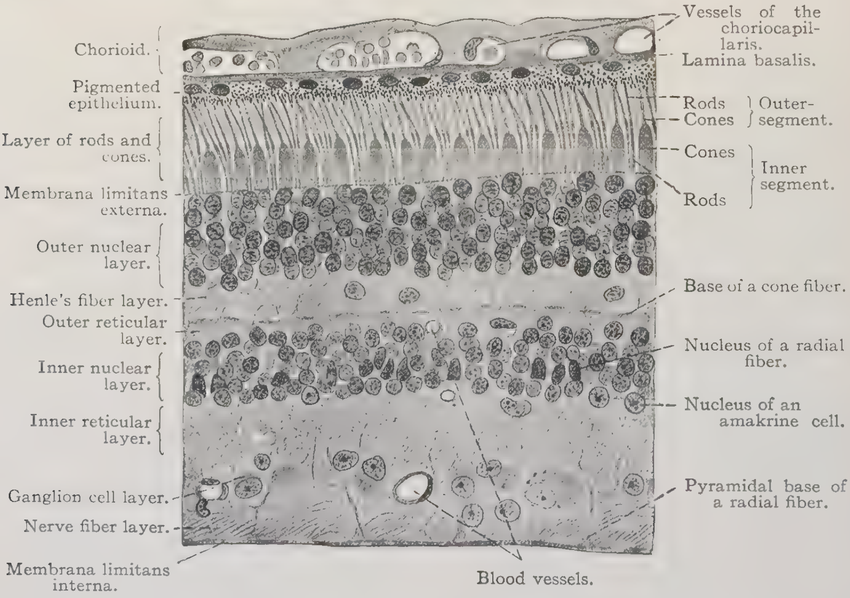


FIG. 444.—VERTICAL SECTION OF A HUMAN RETINA. × 36.

The pars optica retinæ in a fresh condition is a transparent layer colored reddish by the "visual purple." In sections it presents many layers arranged as seen in Fig. 444, the cells of which are related to one another as in the diagram, Fig. 445. The outer layer of the optic cup forms the *pigmented epithelium* of the retina, which consists of a simple layer of six-sided cells. Toward their outer surface (that next the chorioid, where the nucleus lies) they are poor in pigment, whereas in their inner portion they contain numerous rod-shaped (1–5 μ long) brown granules of the pigment "fuscin." In albinos the pigment is lacking. From the inner surface of the pigmented epithelium, numerous processes extend between the rods and cones.

The *visual cells*, which are found along the outer surface of the inner retinal layer, are of two sorts, *rod cells* and *cone cells*. In both, the nucleus is found in the basal half of the cell, and the outer non-nucleated half projects through a membrane, the *membrana limitans externa*. This causes the visual cells to appear divided into layers, their nucleated parts beneath the limiting membrane constituting the *outer nuclear layer* (or outer granular layer), and the non-nucleated parts outside of the membrane forming the *layer of rods and cones*.

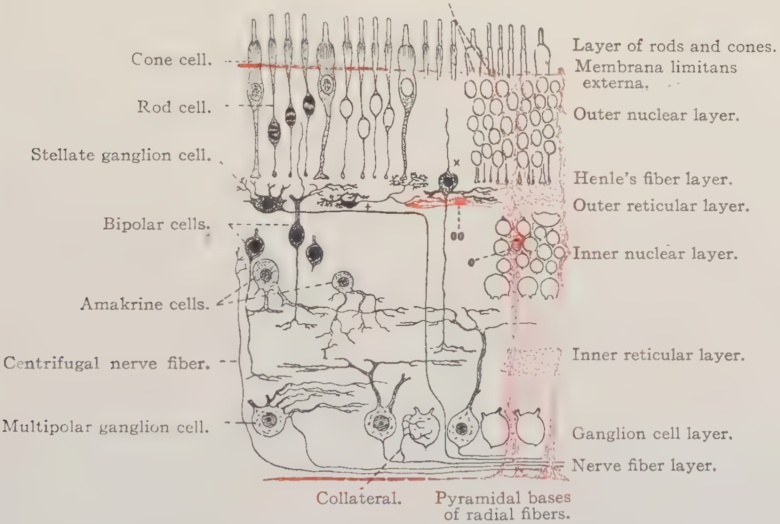


FIG. 445.—DIAGRAM OF HUMAN RETINA. SUPPORTING SUBSTANCE RED.

The rods are four times as numerous as the cones. They are regularly placed so that three or four rods are found between every two cones (Fig. 444). The rods are elongated cylinders (60 μ long and 2 μ thick) consisting of a homogeneous outer segment, in which the visual purple is found exclusively, and a finely granular inner segment. In the outer third of the inner segment there is said to be an ellipsoidal, vertically striated structure (which in some lower vertebrates is very distinct). The portion of the rod cells below the limiting membrane is a slender thread, expanding to surround the nucleus which is characterized by from one to three transverse bands. Beneath the nucleus the protoplasm again becomes thread-like, and this basal prolongation of the cell terminates in a small club-shaped enlargement, without processes (Fig. 445).

The cones likewise consist of an outer and an inner segment. The conical outer segments are shorter than those of the rods. The inner segments are thick and somewhat dilated so that the entire cone is flask-shaped. Moreover, the inner segment contains a vertically striated "fiber apparatus." The nuclei of the cone cells are situated just beneath the limiting membrane; below the nuclei the protoplasm forms a fiber, ending in an expanded pyramidal base.

The entire visual cells therefore form three layers of the retina, namely, (1) the *layer of rods and cones;* (2) the *outer nuclear layer*, containing the nuclei of the rod and cone cells; and (3) *Henle's fiber layer*, composed of the basal processes of these cells. The three layers next beneath are formed essentially of superposed parts of the radially arranged bipolar nerve cells, which constitute the *ganglion retinæ.* Immediately beneath Henle's fiber layer, dendritic processes of these cells form an *outer reticular layer*, whereas their nuclei are situated in an *inner nuclear layer*, and their centripetal processes, or neuraxons, enter an *inner reticular layer.* There they terminate in relation with dendrites and cell bodies of large ganglion cells which constitute the *ganglion of the optic nerve.* Cell bodies of this ganglion form the *ganglion cell layer*, and their neuraxons, traveling toward the papilla of the optic nerve, are the principal elements in the *nerve fiber layer.* The latter is separated from the vitreous body by an *internal limiting membrane.* Thus visual stimuli, received by the rods and cones, are transferred by means of the bipolar cells of the ganglion retinæ, to the ganglion cells of the optic nerve, through the neuraxons of which they proceed to the brain. These layers may be described in further detail as follows:

Henle's fiber layer contains not only the fiber-like basal ends of the rod and cone cells, but also the slender unbranched dendritic processes of the bipolar cells of the ganglion retinæ. Each bipolar cell sends one such process through Henle's layer to terminate in a little thickening near the membrana limitans externa. In the outer reticular layer, however, these dendrites of the bipolar cells send out branches which bifurcate repeatedly, becoming reduced to the finest fibrils; they form a close subepithelial felt-work (Fig. 445).

Occasionally nuclei are found in the outer reticular layer. Most of these belong with bipolar cells displaced outward (Fig. 445, x). Toward the inner nuclear layer, however, there are stellate ganglion cells with neuraxons which pursue a horizontal course and then turn inward to join the optic nerve fibers. The existence of such fibers has been denied by some writers. The neuraxons of other stellate ganglion cells in this region end in relation with the bases of the visual cells (Fig. 445, +).

Toward the inner reticular layer, the inner nuclear layer contains the bodies of ganglion cells, which appear to lack a chief or large process, and are therefore called "amakrine" cells. They send branching fibers into the inner reticular layer, where they interlace with the fine varicose branches of the bipolar cells, and with the ramifications of the dendrites from the *ganglion nervi optici*.

The ganglion cell layer consists of a single row of large multipolar cells containing Nissl's bodies. Certain of these cells because of exceptional size are known as "giant ganglion cells," and they occur at quite regular intervals. "Twin cells" have been found, consisting of two cell bodies united by a short bridge; only one of the pair has a neuraxon.

The nerve fiber layer consists chiefly of the non-medullated neuraxons of the ganglion cells, arranged in plexiform bundles. Occasionally the neuraxons send collaterals back to the ganglion cell layer, where they branch about the cell bodies. The fiber layer contains also neuraxons which have come out from the brain to terminate in free branches among the cells of the inner nuclear layer.

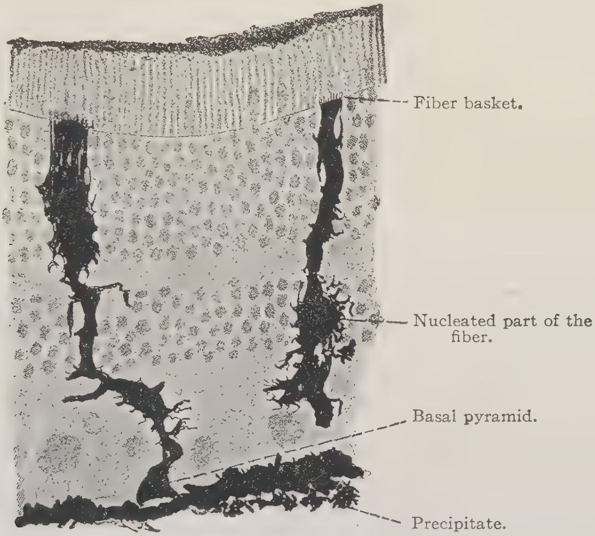


Fig. 446.—Golgi Preparation of Radial Fibers in a Thick Section of the Human Retina. The fine processes of the fibers in the outer nuclear layer appear as a compact mass. × 360.

In addition to the nervous elements, the retina contains blood vessels and a supporting framework of neuroglia cells. The largest vessels are toward the fiber layer (Fig. 444), in which they travel to and from the central vessels in the papilla. The neuroglia framework consists chiefly of *radial* (or Müller's) *fibers*, which are elongated cells extending from the internal to the external limiting membrane. Beyond this membrane they send short processes between the rods and cones, forming "fiber baskets" (Fig. 446). The radial fibers are not isolated cells but are parts of a general syncytium, being connected by a network of processes which penetrate all the layers of the retina (Fig. 445). The external limiting membrane, through which the rods and cones pass, is formed by the coalescence of these processes, and the internal limiting membrane is made up of the closely adjacent basal expansions of the radial fibers. The nuclei of the fibers are found in the inner nuclear layer. In addition to the radial fibers there are neuroglia cells with horizontal or tangential branches (Fig. 445, "oo"). As in the central nervous system, some of the stellate groups of fibers do not contain nuclei.

Two modifications of the retina require special description, namely, the *fovea centralis*, which is the region of most acute vision, and the *pars ciliaris*, which is the rudimentary peripheral portion.

Macula lutea and fovea centralis. When vision is centered upon a particular object, the eyes are so directed that the image of the object falls upon the *macula lutea*, or yellow spot of the retina, within which there is a depression, the *fovea centralis.* The macula sends straight slender fibers to the papilla of the optic nerve, which is close by on its median side; other coarser optic fibers diverge as they pass the macula, forming an ellipse around it. The retinal layers of the macula are arranged as shown in Fig. 447. At its border the number of rod cells diminishes, and within the macula they are entirely absent. The nuclei of the numerous cone cells, which are here somewhat smaller than elsewhere, form an outer nuclear layer of twice the usual thickness. The basal portions of the cone cells make a broad Henle's fiber layer, and slope away from the fovea. The bipolar cells of the ganglion retinæ are so numerous that their nuclei may form nine rows. The ganglion cells of the optic nerve are also abundant. All of these strata become thin toward the fovea, the deepest part of which contains scarcely more than the cone cells. In some individuals the slope of the sides of the fovea is less steep than in the figure; its depth is variable. The macula and fovea are saturated with a yellow pigment soluble in alcohol.

Pars ciliaris retinæ. The optic nerve fibers and their ganglion cells disappear before reaching the ora serrata. The cone cells extend further toward the ora than the rods, but the last of them appear to lack outer segments. By the thinning of the reticular layer, the nuclear layers become confluent (Fig. 448). Near the ora serrata large clear spaces normally occur in the outer nuclear layer, and they may extend into the deeper layers. The radial sustentacular cells form a simple columnar epithelium as the other layers disappear, and they constitute the visual layer of the pars ciliaris. The pigmented epithelium is apparently unmodified as it extends from the optic to the ciliary portion. Along the inner surface of the ciliary part of the retina, the cells of the visual layer produce closely packed horizontal fibers, which form a refractive hyaline membrane.

Zonula ciliaris. Some of the fine homogeneous fibers arising from the pars ciliaris immediately in front of the ora serrata enter the vitreous body,

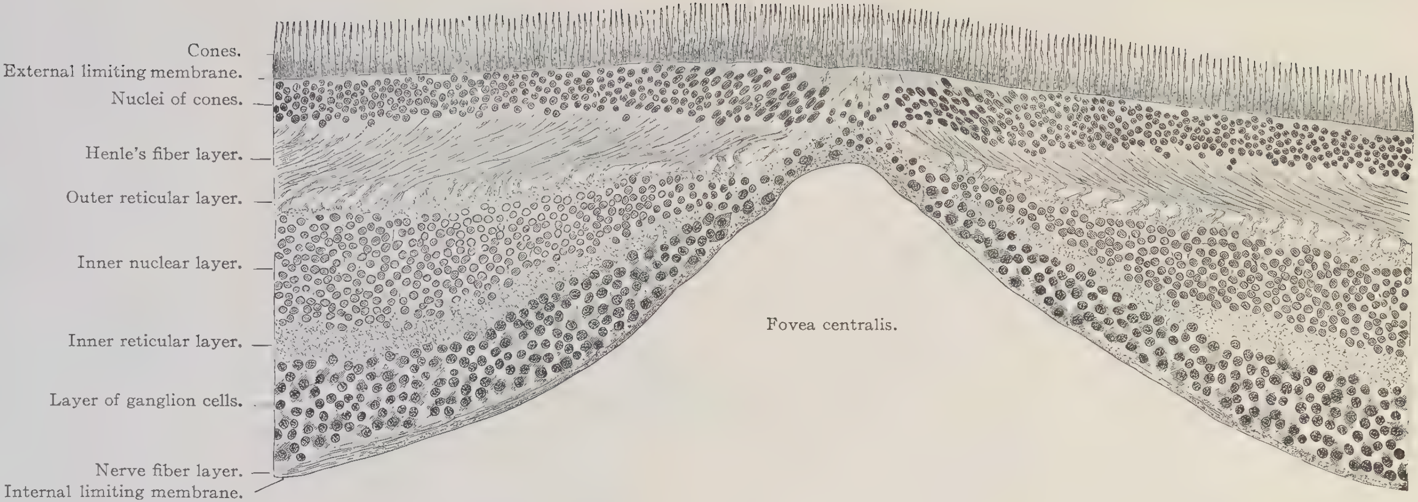


FIG. 447.—HORIZONTAL SECTION THROUGH THE MACULA AND THE FOVEA OF A MAN SIXTY YEARS OLD. × 135. (Schaper.) The nerve fiber layer, like all the layers, is thicker on the side toward the papilla of the optic nerve than on the opposite side; in the latter situation the nerve fibers are seen in transverse section as minute dots. The section is not through the exact center of the fovea, for there only cone cells are present; no remnants of the confluence of the inner granule and ganglion cell layers are found.

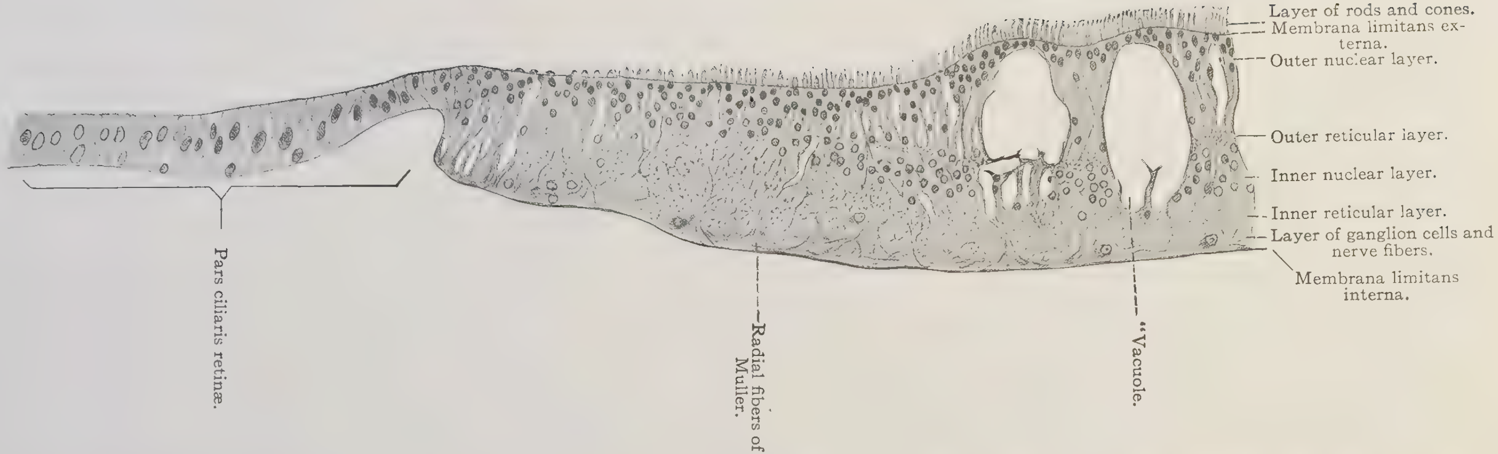


FIG. 448.—MERIDIONAL SECTION OF THE ORA SERRATA AND THE ADJACENT PORTION OF THE PARS CILIARIS RETINÆ OF A MAN THIRTY-SEVEN YEARS OF AGE. × 180. (Schaper.)

but a much larger number pass between the ciliary processes to the lens. They are attached to the borders of its capsule, overlapping slightly its anterior and posterior surfaces. Thus they form the zonula ciliaris (suspensory ligament) which holds the lens in place (Fig. 443). The zonula is not a continuous layer, nor does it consist of two laminæ, one to the anterior and the other to the posterior surface of the lens, with a space between them. It consists rather of numerous bundles, between which and the vitreous body, and among the bundles themselves, there are *zonular spaces* (canals of Petit) which communicate with the posterior chamber.

Optic Nerve

In its intraorbital portion the optic nerve is surrounded by prolongations of the meninges. On the outside is the dural sheath, consisting of dense connective tissue with many elastic fibers. The outer connective tissue bundles tend to be longitudinal and the inner circular. Internally the outer sheath is connected with the arachnoid layer by a few dense strands of tissue, and the arachnoid joins the pial sheath by many branched trabeculæ. The pia surrounds the entire nerve and sends anastomosing septa among the bundles of nerve fibers. The latter are slender and medullated, but without a neurolemma; they are supported by long-rayed *neuroglia cells*, which are found between the individual fibers, but are most numerous at the periphery of the bundles and around the entire nerve. Thus the optic nerve differs from the peripheral nerves, and resembles a cerebral commissure.

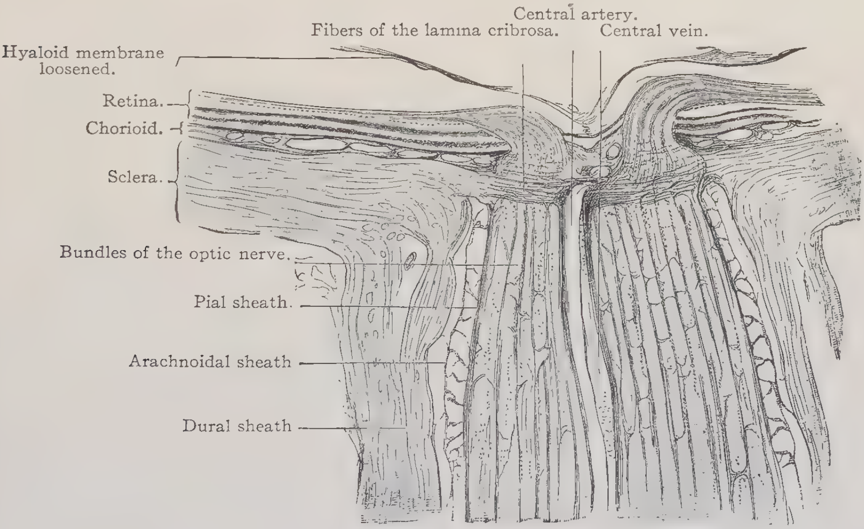


Fig. 449.—Longitudinal Section of the Optic Entrance of a Human Eye. × 15. Above the lamina cribrosa is seen the narrowing of the optic nerve, due to its loss of myelin. The central artery and vein have been for the most part cut longitudinally, but above at several points transversely.

At the posterior surface of the eye-ball (or *bulbus oculi*), the dura blends with the sclera. Continuous with both is the dense elastic *lamina cribrosa* which is perforated by the optic nerve fibers. The chorioid and the pia are also in relation with this lamina (Fig. 449). As the optic nerve penetrates the lamina, its fibers lose their myelin and radiate into the nerve fiber layer of the retina. The central artery and vein of the retina enter the optic nerve in its distal half, and appear at the fundus of the eye in the center of the optic papilla. Their branches spread in the inner layers of the retina, which are covered by the membrana limitans interna (Fig. 444).

Lens

The lens is a biconvex structure having an anterior and a posterior pole, and a vertical equatorial plane. It is enclosed in a thick transparent elastic *capsule*, 6.5-25 μ thick in front and 2 7 μ thick behind, which is apparently derived from the lens itself. Within the capsule the anterior surface of the lens is formed by the *lens epithelium*, a single layer of cells 2.5 μ thick at the pole, but becoming taller toward the equator. There they are continuous with the elongated *lens fibers* of the posterior layer, which collectively are called the *substantia lentis*.

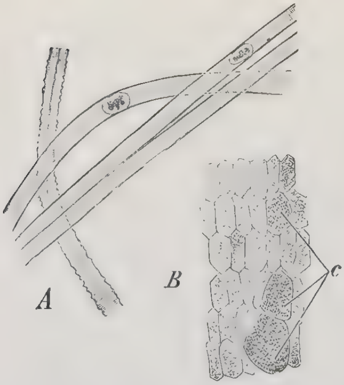


Fig. 450.—Lens Fibers of a New-born Infant. **A,** Isolated lens fibers; three with smooth and one with dentate borders × 240. **B,** Human lens fibers cut transversely; **c,** section through club-shaped ends. × 560.

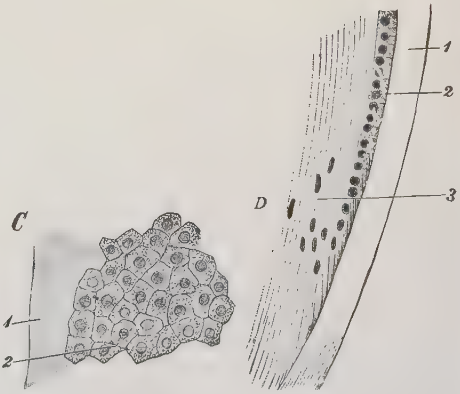


Fig. 451.—Capsule and Epithelium of a Lens of Adult Man. **C,** Tangential section. **D,** Meridional section across the equator of the lens; 1, capsule; 2, epithelium; 3, lens fibers. × 240.

Originally the fibers multiply throughout the lens, but in later stages the formation of new fibers, as indicated by the presence of mitotic figures, is limited to the region of transition between the lens epithelium and the mass of lens fibers (Figs. 441, E, and 451). When first formed the fibers are short, but they increase in length and become six-sided prisms, somewhat enlarged at one or both ends. The first fibers extend from one surface of the lens to the other. Later these become buried in by the new fibers formed at the periphery, and thus they constitute the *nucleus of the lens*. This is a dense mass of somewhat shrunken fibers, which have lost their nuclei and have acquired wavy or notched margins (Fig. 450). The outer fibers of the *cortical substance* are softer. They have smooth borders, and nuclei which are chiefly in the equatorial plane. Their protoplasm is transformed into a clear fluid substance, said to be chiefly a globulin. The fibers are united to one another by a small amount of cement substance, which is more abundant at the poles, at each of which it forms a "lens star," usually with nine rays.

When the fibers formed at the periphery of the original nucleus elongate so as to cover it in, they do not extend from one pole to the other. Those that reach the anterior pole fall short of the posterior pole, terminating along a *horizontal suture* of cement substance; and conversely those that reach the posterior pole terminate anteriorly along a linear *vertical suture*. As the lens becomes larger, the linear sutures at either pole are replaced by tri-radiate or Y-shaped stars, one of which is inverted. Lens fibers starting near the center of one star end near the tips of the rays of the other, and vice versa. When the stars become nine-rayed the arrangement of the fibers is very intricate. Without crossing one another, and without any of them being long enough to pass from pole to pole, they cover the lens with even layers. The development of the stars is described by Rabl (Ueber den Bau und Entwicklung der Linse, Leipzig, 1900). As a result of its structure the lens may be separated into concentric lamellæ, but Rabl considers that the meridional segments, or "radial lamellæ," of which the lens contains about two thousand, are its essential subdivisions.

Vitreous Body

The corpus vitreum consists of the fluid *vitreous humor*, together with looser or denser strands of fibrous *stroma* which stretch across it in all directions. Although it is difficult to recognize any definite arrangement in the stroma, certain pathological cases suggest that it is distributed like the septa of an orange. The cells of the vitreous body are round forms, probably leucocytes, and stellate or spindle-shaped connective tissue cells, sometimes degenerating and vacuolated, which invaded the vitreous body with the blood vessels. The latter have atrophied and been resorbed, except for occasional shreds and filaments. Such opacities, which occur normally, are observed when looking at a bright light, and are frequently troublesome to those beginning to use the microscope; because of their erratic motion they are known to physiologists as *muscæ volitantes*. In old age, in eyes otherwise normal, crystals may form in the vitreous humor and float about, "falling like a shower to the bottom of the eye when the eye is held still." Surrounding the vitreous body there is a very resistant thick fibrous layer, which is continuous anteriorly with the hyaloid membrane of the ciliary part of the retina.

TUNICA VASCULOSA

Chorioid. Between the sclera and the chorioid there is a loose tissue containing many elastic fibers and branched pigment cells, together with flat non-pigmented cells. In separating the sclera from the chorioid, this layer is divided into the *lamina fusca* of the sclera and the *lamina suprachorioidea.* Internal to the latter is the *lamina vasculosa*, which forms the greater part of the chorioid. It contains many large blood vessels imbedded in a loose elastic connective tissue, some of its cells being branched and pigmented; others without pigment are flat and arranged in layers surrounding the vessels. A thin inner layer of blood vessels, the *lamina choriocapillaris*, consists of a very close network of wide capillaries. The choriocapillaris is separated from the pigmented epithelium of the retina by a structureless elastic lamella which may be 2 μ thick. This *lamina basalis* shows the imprint of the polygonal retinal cells on its inner surface, and is associated with fine elastic networks toward the choriocapillaris.

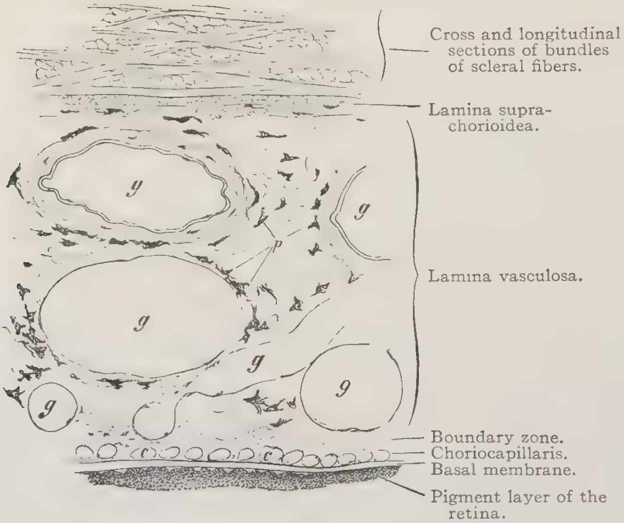


FIG. 452.—VERTICAL SECTION THROUGH A PART OF THE HUMAN SCLERA AND THE ENTIRE THICKNESS OF THE CHORIOID. × 100.
g, Large vessels; **p**, pigment cells; **c**, cross section of capillaries.

Between the vascular lamina and the choriocapillaris, there is a boundary layer consisting of a fine elastic network, generally without pigment. Here in ruminants and horses there are many wavy bundles of connective tissue, which give to the eyes of those animals a metallic luster. Such a layer is known as the *tapetum fibrosum.* The similarly iridescent *tapetum cellulosum* of the carnivora is formed of several layers of flat cells which contain numerous fine crystals.

The *ciliary body* encircles the eye as a muscular band, attached to the inner surface of which there are from 70 to 80 meridional folds, the *ciliary processes* (Fig. 443). The equator of the eye is vertical, like that of the lens, and the meridians are antero-posterior. The processes begin low at the ora serrata and rise gradually to a height of 1 mm., terminating abruptly near the border of the lens. Each process consists of fibrillar connective tissue containing numerous elastic fibers and blood vessels, and is bounded toward the pars ciliaris retinæ by a continuation of the lamina basalis, which is thrown into intersecting folds. The ciliary processes, which are compressible, may serve to prevent the increase of intra-ocular pressure during the contraction of the ciliary muscle; and the fluid within the eye is derived from the vessels which they contain. The *ciliary muscle* is a band of smooth muscle fibers about 3 mm. broad and 0.8 mm. thick anteriorly; it arises beneath the sinus venosus of the sclera and tapers toward the ora serrata (Fig. 443). It consists of three sets of fibers, the *meridional*, *radial*, and *circular*. The meridional fibers are next to the sclera, grouped in numerous bundles with elastic tissue intermingled. They extend to the smooth part of the chorioid, and constitute the *tensor choriodeæ*. The radial fibers are directed toward the center of the eye-ball. They form a middle layer of curving fibers which blend with the meridional fibers externally. The circular fibers, which vary in number in different individuals, form that part of the ciliary muscle which is nearest to the equator of the lens. The contraction of these muscles affects the shape of the lens, which is attached to the adjacent tissue by the zonula.

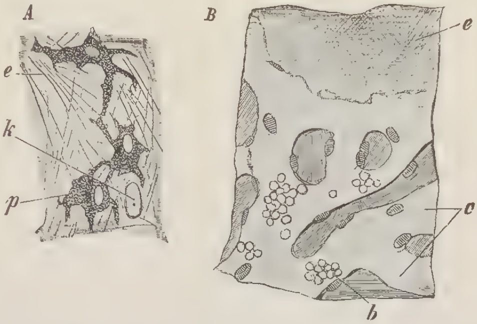


FIG. 453.—**A,** FROM A TEASED PREPARATION OF A HUMAN CHORIOID. × 240. **p,** Pigment cells; **e,** elastic fibers; **k,** nucleus of a flat non-pigmented cell; the cell body is invisible.

B, PORTION OF A HUMAN CHORIOCAPILLARIS AND THE ADHERENT LAMINA BASALIS. × 240. **c,** Wide capillaries some of which contain (**b**) blood-corpuscles; **e,** lamina basalis, showing a fine "lattice work."

The *iris* consists of its *stroma* anteriorly, and the *pars iridica retinæ* posteriorly, and is covered by the mesenchymal epithelium of the chambers of the eye. The anterior epithelium is a simple layer of flat polygonal cells (sometimes called "endothelium"). It rests upon a loose network of stellate cells, in part pigmented, resembling the reticulum of a lymph gland. This is followed by the loose connective tissue of the stroma, likewise containing networks of stellate cells, which in blue eyes are not pigmented. The very few elastic fibers are limited to the posterior layers, where they are radially arranged in relation to the pupil. The stroma contains numerous radial blood vessels with thick connective tissue coats, but (in man) without musculature or elastic fibers. In the vascular layer, toward the pupillary border of the iris, there is a band of circular smooth muscle fibers, 1 mm. deep; this is the *sphincter pupillæ*. It is invested with many prolongations of the stromatic network, the polygonal meshes of which are radially elongated. The *dilatator pupillæ* is a peculiar membrane of smooth muscle fibers on the posterior surface of the vascular layer, stretching from the connective tissue between the muscle bundles of the sphincter, to that between the ciliary muscles. Its fibers consist of an anterior contractile portion, and a posterior nucleated and pigmented portion. The anterior parts form a continuous layer, readily seen in radial sections as "Henle's spindle cell layer," which is a clear non-nucleated stripe, 2–5 μ wide (Fig. 454). The nucleated portions of the fibers appear to blend with the pigmented retinal layer of the iris, from which they are derived. These muscles are therefore ectodermal.

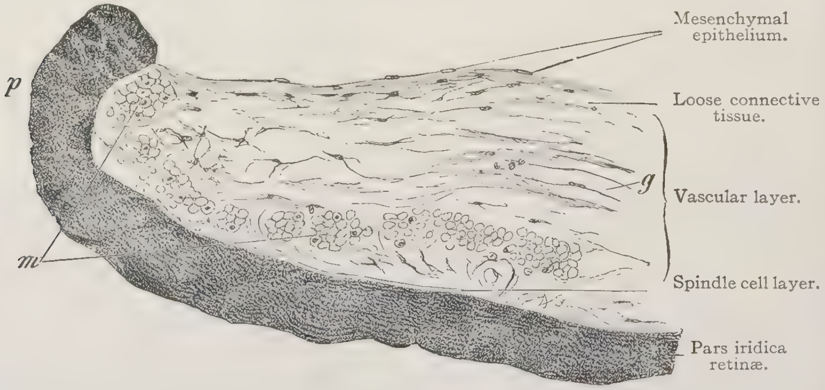


FIG. 454.—VERTICAL SECTION OF THE PUPILLARY PORTION OF A HUMAN IRIS. × 100. About one-fifth of the entire width of the iris is shown.
g, Blood vessel, with thick connective tissue sheath; **m**, sphincter pupillæ muscle cut transversely; pupillary border of the iris.

The two layers of the optic cup are intimately blended in the thin stratum which forms the posterior layer of the iris. Except in albinos, this pars iridica retinæ is deeply pigmented. Posteriorly it is covered by a continuation of the hyaline membrane of the pars ciliaris.

TUNICA FIBROSA

The sclera, toward the chorioid, is bounded by the pigmented *lamina fusca*. This is a loose tissue containing branched pigment cells and flattened connective tissue cells. Except for this boundary layer, the sclera consists of densely interwoven bundles of connective tissue, chiefly meridional and longitudinal. Elastic fibers accompany the bundles, and are especially abundant at the insertions of the ocular muscles. The flat irregular cells of the connective tissue are surrounded by tissue spaces as in the cornea, and anteriorly the cornea and sclera are continuous with one another. The transition, however, is quite abrupt and the boundary is oblique, so that the rim of the cornea is bevelled at the expense of its anterior surface.

The *cornea* (Fig. 455) consists of an outer epithelium, external basal membrane, substantia propria, internal basal membrane, and mesenchymal epithelium bounding the anterior chamber. The corneal epithelium, about 0.03 mm. thick, is stratified and consists of a basal layer of clearly outlined columnar cells followed by three or four rows of cuboidal cells and several layers of flattened superficial cells. The outer cells retain their nuclei. Peripherally the epithelium is continuous with that of the conjunctiva bulbi. The anterior basal membrane (Bowman's) is an almost homogeneous layer, sometimes as much as 0.01 mm. thick. Superficially it connects with the epithelial cells by spines and ridges. Beneath, it blends with the substantia propria, of which it is a modification. Since it is not formed of elastic substance the name "anterior elastic membrane" is not justified.

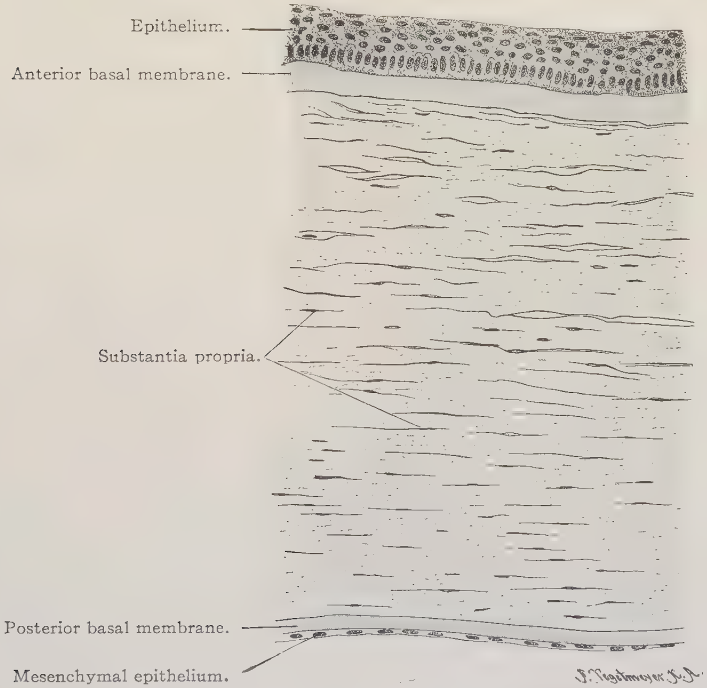


Fig. 455.—Vertical Section of a Human Cornea. × 100.

The substantia propria consists of fine straight fibrils of connective tissue, bound together in bundles of almost uniform thickness by an interfibrillar substance, perhaps fluid; these bundles are joined to one another by an interfascicular cement, so that they form a succession of superposed flat lamellæ, parallel with the corneal surface. Oblique bundles, the so-called arcuate fibers, are found especially in the anterior layers, where they pass from one lamella to that next above or below.

Numerous tense elastic fibers are found especially in the deeper layers, where they form a fine network over the posterior elastic membrane.

Within the cement substance, there is a system of branched canaliculi, dilated in places to form oval spaces. The latter are between the lamellæ, but the canaliculi extend also among the constituent fiber-bundles. Within the spaces, there are flat stellate anastomosing cells or "corneal corpuscles," the branches of which extend into the canals and tend to unite with those of neighboring cells, at right angles (Fig. 457). The cells and their processes are more or less surrounded by serous fluid. Leucocytes enter the canals, and are normally found in the cornea; if the cornea is inflamed they become abundant. Blood vessels and lymphatic vessels are absent.

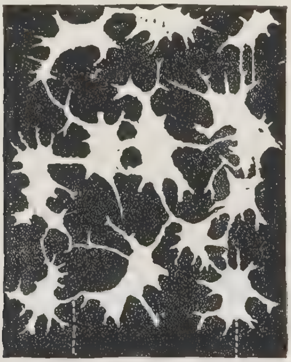


Fig. 456.—Corneal Spaces and Canaliculi (in White) from a Horizontal Section of the Cornea of an Ox. Silver preparation. × 240.

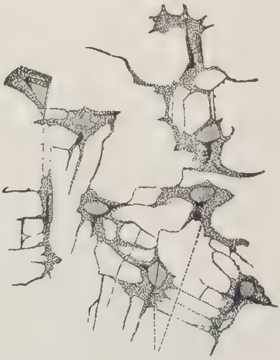


Fig. 457.—Corneal Cells from a Horizontal Section of the Cornea of a Rabbit. × 240.

The posterior basal or elastic membrane (Descemet's membrane) is a structure clear as glass, 6 μ thick. Its posterior surface is covered by a simple layer of flat polygonal cells, which form a part of the lining of the anterior chamber. Toward the periphery of the cornea in adults, the posterior surface of the elastic membrane presents rounded elevations, and the posterior epithelium becomes continuous with the anterior epithelium of the iris (Fig. 443). In this "angle," the cornea receives connective tissue prolongations from the iris, which form the *pectinate ligament of the iris*—a structure highly developed in the horse and cow, but rudimentary in man.

Blood Vessels

The *central vessels of the retina* supply a part of the optic nerve, and the retina; the *ciliary vessels* supply the rest of the eye. These two sets of vessels anastomose with one another only at the entrance of the optic nerve (Fig. 458).

The *ciliary arteries* include (1) the *short posterior ciliary arteries;* (2) the *long posterior ciliary arteries;* and (3) the *anterior ciliary arteries.* The three groups will be considered in turn.

1. After supplying the posterior half of the surface of the sclera, some twenty branches of the short posterior ciliary arteries penetrate the sclera around the optic nerve. They form the capillaries of the lamina choriocapillaris. At the entrance of the optic nerve they anastomose with branches of the central artery of the retina (*c*) and thus form the *circulus arteriosus nervi optici*. At the ora serrata they anastomose with recurrent branches of the long posterior ciliary and the anterior ciliary arteries.

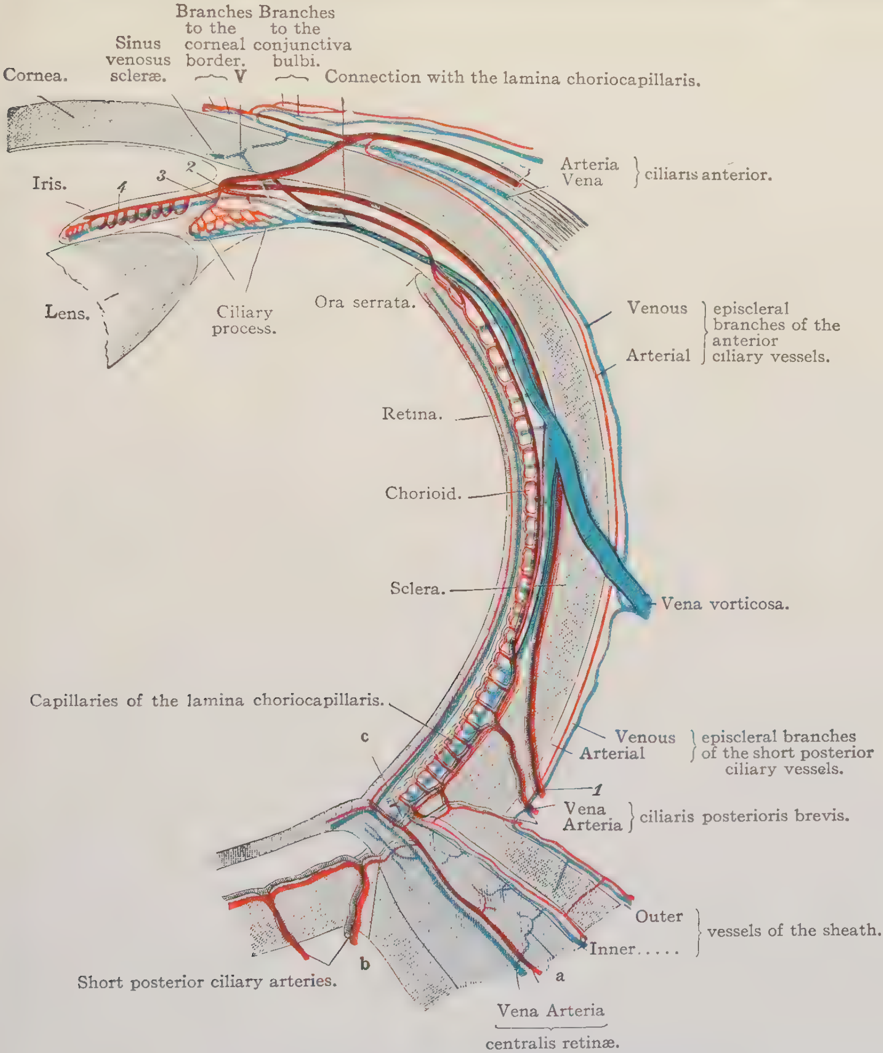

Branches to the corneal border.
Branches to the conjunctiva bulbi.
Sinus venosus scleræ.
Cornea.
V
Connection with the lamina choriocapillaris.
Iris.
4
3
2
Arteria
Vena
ciliaris anterior.
Lens.
Ciliary process.
Ora serrata.
Venous
Arterial
episcleral branches of the anterior ciliary vessels.
Retina.
Chorioid.
Sclera.
Vena vorticosa.
Capillaries of the lamina choriocapillaris.
c
Venous
Arterial
episcleral branches of the short posterior ciliary vessels.
1
Vena
Arteria
ciliaris posterioris brevis.
Outer
Inner
vessels of the sheath.
Short posterior ciliary arteries.
b
a
Vena Arteria
centralis retinæ.

FIG. 458.—BLOOD VESSELS OF THE EYE. (After Leber.)

The retina, optic nerve and tunica fibrosa are stippled; the tunica vasculosa is blank. **V,** Connection of the anterior ciliary artery with the circulus iridis major (2).

2. The two long posterior ciliary arteries also penetrate the sclera near the optic nerve (Fig. 458, 1). They pass, one on the nasal and the other on the temporal side

of the eye, between the chorioid and sclera to the ciliary body. There each artery divides into two branches which follow the ciliary border of the iris, and connect with the corresponding branches from the artery of the opposite side, thus encircling the iris with an arterial ring. This is the *circulus iridis major* (Fig. 458, 2), from which numerous branches extend to the ciliary processes (3) and to the iris (4). Near the pupillary border of the iris, the arteries form an incomplete ring, the *circulus iridis minor*.

3. The anterior ciliary arteries proceed from those supplying the recti muscles, penetrate the sclera near the cornea, and in part join the circulus iridis major, in part supply the ciliary muscle, and in part through recurrent branches, connect with the lamina choriocapillaris. Before penetrating the sclera, the anterior ciliary arteries give off posterior branches for the anterior half of the sclera, and anterior branches for the conjunctiva bulbi and the corneal border. The cornea itself is without vessels, but at its border, between the anterior lamellæ of the substantia propria, there are terminal loops.

The *veins* generally proceed toward the equator, uniting in four (less often in 5 or 6) *venæ vorticosæ*. These pass directly through the sclera and empty into one of the ophthalmic veins. Besides the venæ vorticosæ there are small veins accompanying the short posterior and the anterior ciliary arteries. The short ciliary veins receive branches from the ciliary muscle, the episcleral vessels, the conjunctiva bulbi and the periphery of the cornea. The episcleral veins also connect with the venæ vorticosæ. Within the sclera, near the cornea, there is a circular vein, receiving small branches from the capillaries of the ciliary muscle. This *sinus venosus scleræ* (canal of Schlemm) connects with the anterior ciliary veins..

Arteria centralis retinæ. The central artery of the retina enters the optic nerve 15–20 mm. from the eye-ball, passes to its center and proceeds to the optic papilla. There it divides into two branches directed upward and downward respectively, and these by further subdivision supply the entire pars optica retinæ. Within the optic nerve the artery sends out numerous little branches which anastomose with small vessels that have entered the sheaths from the surrounding fat; and also with branches of the short posterior ciliary arteries (Fig. 458, *b*).

The central vein of the retina receives two main branches at the optic papilla and follows the artery along the axis of the optic nerve.

CHAMBERS AND TISSUE SPACES OF THE EYE

The eye contains no lymphatic vessels, but is provided with communicating tissue spaces, bounded by loose cells or mesenchymal epithelia. They include the corneal and scleral canaliculi, and the *anterior* and *posterior chambers;* the latter connect with one another through the capillary interval between the lens and iris. The posterior chamber extends into the *zonular spaces;* and there are irregular extensions of the anterior chamber, associated with the pectinate ligament of the iris, called *spaces of the angle* *of the iris* (spaces of Fontana). The latter are but slightly developed in man. Posteriorly the tissue spaces include the *hyaloid canal* of the vitreous body; the very narrow *perichorioideal space* between the chorioid and sclera; the subdural and arachnoid spaces of the optic sheaths named the *intravaginal spaces;* and finally the *interfascial space* (of Tenon) which surrounds most of the sclera and is prolonged as a supradural space around the optic nerve. These spaces may be filled from the arachnoid space about the brain. They contain a "filtrate from the vessels." The interfascial and perichorioideal spaces hold but little fluid; acting as bursæ, they facilitate the movements of the eye.

Nerves

Apart from the optic nerve, the eye is supplied by the *short ciliary nerves* from the ciliary ganglion, and the *long ciliary nerves* from the nasociliary branch of the ophthalmic nerve. The ciliary nerves penetrate the sclera near the optic nerve and send branches containing ganglion cells to the vessels of the chorioid. The main stems pass forward between the chorioid and sclera to the ciliary body, where they form a circular ganglionated plexus, the *plexus gangliosus ciliaris.* Its branches extend to the ciliary body, the iris and the cornea, and are described as follows:

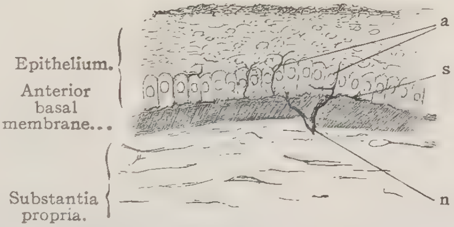


Fig. 459.—From a Section of the Human Cornea. × 240.

n, A branching nerve penetrating the anterior basal membrane; s, subepithelial plexus *beneath* the cylindrical cells; a, fibers of the intraepithelial plexus ascending *between* the epithelial cells.

The nerves of the ciliary body form a delicate network on its scleral surface; they supply its muscle fibers and those of the vessels with slender motor endings; and between the ciliary muscle bundles they have branched free endings, perhaps sensory.

The medullated nerves of the iris lose their myelin and form plexuses as they pass toward the pupillary margin. A sensory plexus is found just beneath the anterior surface, and motor fibers supply the sphincter, dilator and vascular muscles. The existence of ganglion cells in the human iris is denied.

The nerves of the cornea enter it from the *plexus annularis* in the sclera just outside. The annular plexus also sends fibers into the conjunctiva, where they end in networks, and in bulbous corpuscles (Fig. 141, p. 159) situated in the connective tissue close to the epithelium. Such corpuscles may be found 1 or 2 mm. within the corneal margin. The corneal nerves become non-medullated and form plexuses between the lamellæ throughout the stroma. They extend into the epithelium and there form a very delicate plexus with free intercellular endings.

EYELIDS

The eyelids or *palpebræ* (Fig. 460) are covered with thin skin provided with fine lanugo hairs; small sweat glands extend into the corium, which here contains pigmented connective tissue cells. The subcutaneous tissue is very loose, having many elastic fibers and few or no fat cells. Near the edge of the lid there are two or three rows of large hairs, the eyelashes or *cilia*, the oblique roots of which extend deep into the corium.

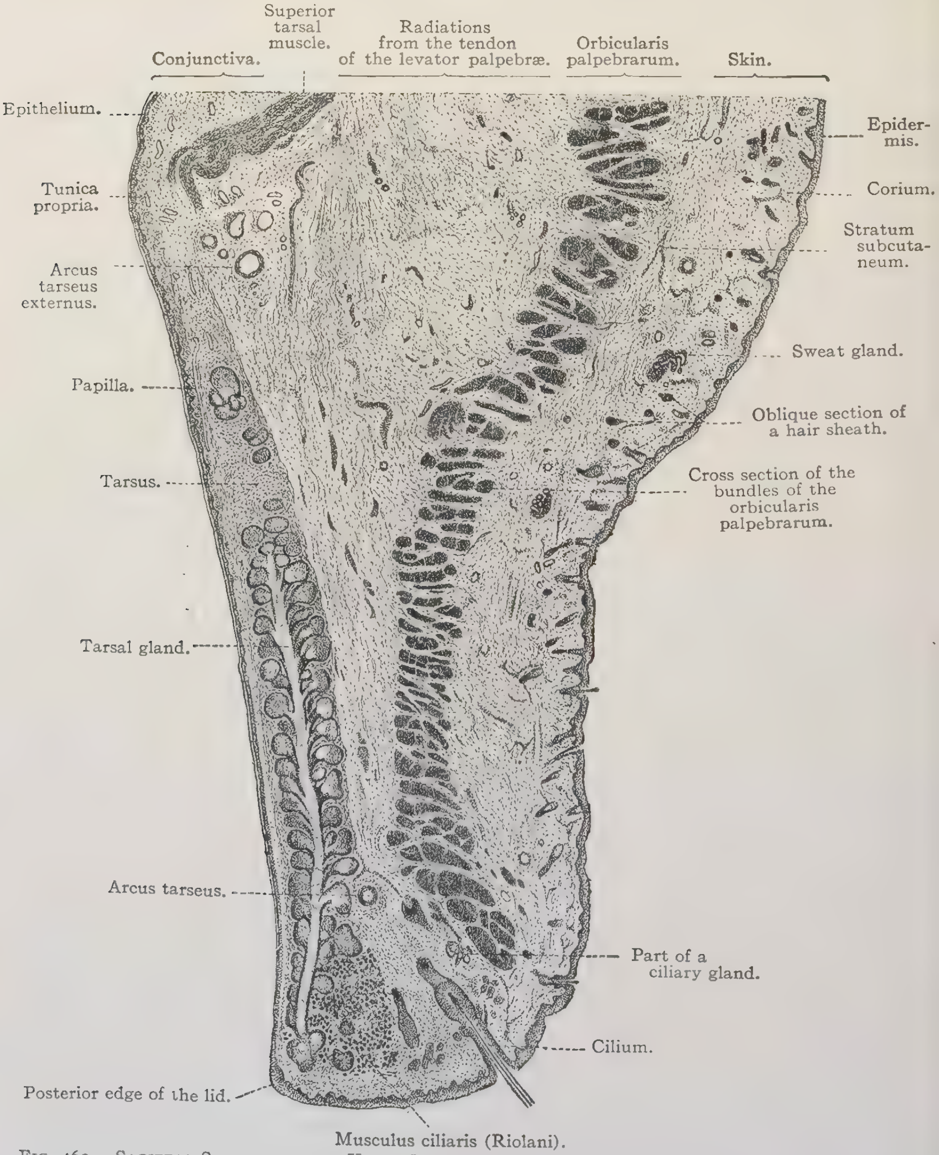


FIG. 460.—SAGITTAL SECTION OF THE UPPER LID OF A CHILD OF SIX MONTHS. The outlet of the tarsal gland was not in the plane of section. × 15.

Since they are shed in from 100 to 150 days they occur in various stages of development. They are provided with small sebaceous glands, and the *ciliary glands* (of Moll) open close beside or into their sheaths. The ciliary glands are modified sweat glands, with simpler coils, which may show successive constrictions; "a branching of the tubules has been observed."

The central portion of the eyelids is muscular. Beneath the subcutaneous tissue there are bundles of the striated *orbicularis palpebrarum* extending lengthwise of the lid. A subdivision of this muscle, found behind the roots of the cilia, is called the *musculus ciliaris Riolani.* Posterior to the obicularis muscle are found the terminal radiations of the tendon of the *levator palpebræ.* A part of these are lost in connective tissue; another part, associated with smooth muscle fibers, are inserted into the upper border of the *tarsus* and form the *superior tarsal muscle.* This occurs in the upper lid, but correspondingly in the lower lid the radiations from the *inferior rectus* muscle contain smooth muscle fibers, forming the *inferior tarsal muscle.*

The inner portion of the lids consists of the conjunctival epithelium and the underlying connective tissue, including the *tarsus.* This is a plate of dense connective tissue which gives firmness to the lid. It begins at the free edges and extends over the adjacent two-thirds of the lid, close to the conjunctiva. Imbedded in its substance in either lid, there are about 30 *tarsal* (or Meibomian) *glands*, which open along the palpebral border. Each of them consists of a wide excretory duct, surrounded on all sides by small acini, which empty into the duct through short stalks. In structure they resemble sebaceous glands. At the upper end of the tarsus and partly enclosed in its substance, there are branched tubular *accessory lachrymal glands.* They occur chiefly in the medial (nasal) half of the lid.

The tunica propria of the palpebral conjunctiva contains plasma and lymphoid cells; the latter invade the epithelium, beneath which in some animals they form nodules. The stratified epithelium of the skin gradually changes to that of the conjunctiva, which has several basal layers of cuboidal cells and a superficial layer of short columnar cells. The latter are covered by a thin cuticula, and goblet cells are found among them. The transition from the superficial squamous cells to the columnar form may occur at the posterior edge of the lid, or quite high on the conjunctival surface. Toward the arch where the palpebral conjunctiva becomes continuous with that of the bulb, the epithelium is so folded that in sections it may seem to form glands.

The conjunctiva bulbi is similar to that of the lid. Its outer epithelial cells, however, become squamous toward the cornea and over the exposed portion of the eye, and its basal cells contain pigment. The yellow appearance of the exposed portion, often most pronounced near the medial border of the cornea, and known as *pinguecula*, is said not to be due to fat or to an epithelial pigment; it accompanies a thickening of the connective tissue layer. The tunica propria forms well-marked papillæ near the cornea. Its lymphocytes may form nodules, as many as twenty having been found in the human conjunctiva bulbi. Occasional mucous glands occur. (It may be noted that the entire anterior covering of the bulb of the eye is named by some the *conjunctiva bulbi*, which accordingly is divided into the *conj. scleræ* and the *conj. corneæ*.)

At the medial angle of the lids there is a thin fold of connective tissue covered with stratified epithelium; this *plica semilunaris* is a rudimentary third lid. The nodular elevation of tissue at the medial angle, the *caruncula lacrimalis*, resembles skin except that a stratum corneum is lacking; it contains fine hairs, sebaceous and accessory lachrymal glands, and in its middle part, small sweat glands.

The blood vessels of the lids proceed from branches approaching the lateral and medial angles of the eye. They form an arch, the *arcus tarseus externus*, at the upper border of the tarsus, and a second *arcus tarseus* near the free margin of the lid (Fig. 460). They extend also into the conjunctiva bulbi, and near the margin of the cornea they pass inward to unite with the anterior ciliary vessels (Fig. 458). The lymphatic vessels form a close network beneath the palpebral conjunctiva, and a loose one in front of the tarsus. Whether the lymphatic vessels of the conjunctiva bulbi end blindly toward the cornea or connect with the canaliculi, has not been determined. The nerves form a very thick plexus in the tarsus and supply the tarsal glands. There are free endings in the conjunctival epithelium, and bulbous corpuscles in the connective tissue beneath.

Lachrymal Glands

The lachrymal glands are groups of compound tubular glands, and are therefore provided with several excretory ducts. These are lined with a double row of epithelial cells, the superficial layer being columnar. The excretory ducts pass gradually into long intercalated ducts with a low epithelium. These terminate in tubules, surrounded by a membrana propria, and containing two sorts of cells. Certain cells are tall when filled with secretion, which occupies the superficial half of the cell; when empty they are shorter. The cells of the other form are low when full of secretion, which gathers in a large round mass, leaving only a thin basal layer of protoplasm. Intercellular secretory capillaries and secretory granules have been demonstrated. Between the gland cells and the basement membrane there are occasional flat cells, which are a continuation of the deeper layer of the epithelium of the duct. The blood vessels and nerves are similar to those of the oral glands.

At the medial angle of either eye there are two *lachrymal ducts* which have no connection with the lachrymal glands, but serve to convey the secretions which pass across the front of the eye to the *lachrymal sacs*. From these sacs it passes through the *naso-lachrymal ducts* into the nasal cavity. The lachrymal ducts are lined with stratified squamous epithelium, resting upon a tunica propria containing an abundance of cells and elastic fibers. Externally these ducts are surrounded by striated muscle fibers, chiefly longitudinal. The lachrymal sac, which is provided with small branched tubular glands, and the naso-lachrymal duct are both lined with two-rowed columnar epithelium, surrounded by a lymphoid tunica propria. They are separated from the underlying periosteum by a thick plexus of veins.

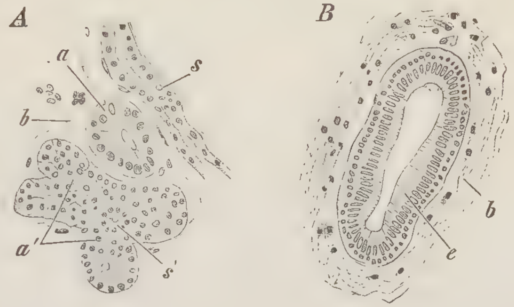


Fig. 461.—From a Section of a Human Lachrymal Gland. × 420.

A, Gland body; **a**, tubule cut across; **a′**, group of tubules cut obliquely; **s**, intercalated tubule; **s′**, intercalated tubule in cross section; **b**, connective tissue. **B**, cross section of an excretory duct; **e**, two-rowed cylindrical epithelium; **b**, connective tissue.

EAR

Development and General Anatomy. The ear is divided into three parts: (1) the *external ear*, which includes the *auricles* projecting from the surface of the body, and the *external acoustic meatus* leading from the surface to the *tympanic membrane;* (2) the *middle ear*, including the tympanic cavity or "drum" and the chain of three bones extending across it; and (3) the *internal ear*, which is a system of epithelial ducts and surrounding tissue spaces, imbedded in the temporal bone, and connected with terminal branches of the acoustic nerve.

On either side of the body, the internal ear first appears as a local thickening of the epidermal ectoderm near that portion of the medullary tube which later becomes the pons. The thickened areas are invaginated as shown in Fig. 462, A and B, and the pockets thus produced become separated from the epidermis in the form of *auditory vesicles* (otocysts). The place where they become detached from the epidermis is marked by a slight elevation on the medial surface of the vesicle, which soon elongates, producing the tubular *endolymphatic duct* (Fig. 462, C). The blind upper end of the duct becomes enlarged to form the *endolymphatic sac*, which, however, is only slightly developed in man; it appears in the models of the embryonic vesicle shown in side view in Fig. 463, A–C. In the adult the endolymphatic duct is a very slender tube, terminating blindly (or perhaps with secondary apertures) just beneath the dura.

In two places the medial and the lateral walls of the upper half of the vesicle approach one another, and after fusing, the epithelial plates thus produced become thin and rupture, so that two *semicircular ducts* are formed (Fig. 463, B and C). The space encircled by each duct may be regarded as a hole through the vesicle. The two ducts are the *superior* and *posterior semicircular ducts* respectively. The third or *lateral semicircular duct* forms soon afterward. In Figs. 462, D and 463, B it is a

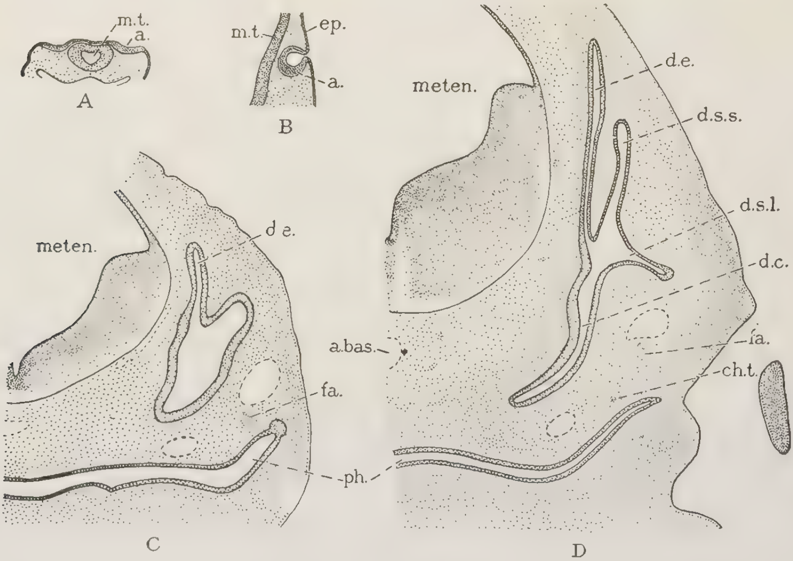


FIG. 462.—SECTIONS OF RABBIT EMBRYOS TO SHOW THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE EAR. × 9.

A, 9 days, 3.8 mm.; **B,** 10 days, 3.4 mm.; **C,** 12½ days, 7.5 mm.; **D,** 14 days, 10 mm. **a.**, Ectodermal epithelium which forms the membranous internal ear; **a. bas.**, basilar artery; **ch. t.**, chorda tympani; **d. c.**, cochlear duct; **d. e.**, endolymphatic duct; **d. s. l.**, lateral semicircular duct; **d. s. s.**, superior semicircular duct; **ep.**, epidermis, **fa.**, facial nerve; **meten.**, metencephalon; **m. t.**, medullary tube; **ph.**, pharynx.

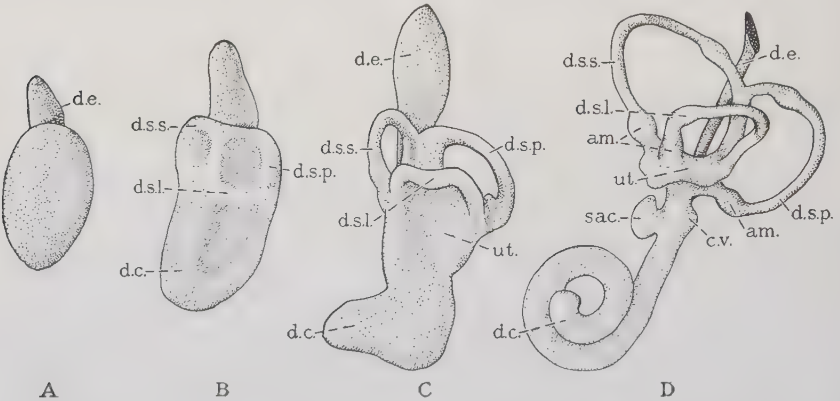


FIG. 463.—LATERAL OR EXTERNAL SURFACES OF MODELS OF THE MEMBRANOUS PORTION OF THE LEFT INTERNAL EAR FROM HUMAN EMBRYOS. DIFFERENT ENLARGEMENTS. (After His, Jr.)

A, from an embryo of 6.9 mm.; **B,** 10.2 mm.; **C,** 13.5 mm.; and **D,** 22 mm. **am.**, ampulla; **c. v.**, cæcum vestibulare of **d. c.**, cochlear duct; **d. e.**, endolymphatic duct; **d. s. l.**, **d. s. p.**, and **d. s. s.**, lateral, posterior, and superior semicircular ducts; **sac.**, sacculus; **ut.**, utriculus.

horizontal shelf-like projection of the vesicle, the center of which is to become perforated so that its rim will become the duct. The portion of the vesicle which receives the terminal openings of the three semicircular ducts is called the *utriculus*. Since at one of their ends the superior and posterior ducts unite in a single stalk before entering the utriculus, there are but five openings for the three ducts (Fig. 463, D). Near one end of each duct there is a dilatation or *ampulla*, where nerves terminate.

While the formation of the semicircular ducts is occurring in the upper part of the auditory vesicle, the lower portion elongates and its end becomes coiled, eventually making two and a half revolutions. The coiled tube is the *ductus cochlearis;* its distal end is the *cæcum cupulare*, and at its proximal end is the *cæcum vestibulare* (Fig. 463, D, *c. v.*). A dilated sac formed at its proximal or upper end, opposite the cæcum vestibulare, is known as the *sacculus;* in the adult the connection between the sacculus and ductus cochleæ is relatively narrow, and is called the *ductus reuniens* (Fig. 472). The portion of the original vesicle between the sacculus and utriculus, from which the endolymphatic duct arises, becomes a comparatively slender tube, the *ductus utriculo-saccularis* (Fig. 472).

The ectodermal vesicle thus produces a complex system of connected epithelial ducts, namely the superior, posterior, and lateral semicircular ducts; the utriculus, and utriculo-saccular duct with the endolymphatic duct connected with it; the sacculus, ductus reuniens and ductus cochleæ. They all contain a fluid called *endolymph*. The acoustic nerve sends branches between the epithelial cells in certain parts of the ducts. Round areas of neuro-epithelium, in which the nerves terminate, are called *maculæ acusticæ;* there is one in the sacculus and another in the utriculus. Elongated areas are *cristæ*, and there is one in each of the three ampullæ. The axis, or *modiolus*, about which the cochlear duct is wound, contains the nerves which send terminal fibers to the *spiral organ* of the adjoining epithelium. In this they form a line of terminations along the medial wall of the cochlear duct, following its windings from base to cupola.

The mesenchyma immediately surrounding the entire system of ducts becomes mucoid in appearance, and cavities lined with mesenchymal epithelium are formed within it. They contain a tissue fluid called *perilymph*. Around the semicircular ducts the perilymph spaces are so large that the tissue between them is reduced to strands as shown in Fig. 464; these are sometimes called ligaments. The perilymph spaces around the semicircular ducts are irregularly arranged and communicate with one another at various points; they connect also with the perilymph cavities of the *vestibule*, which is the central part of the internal ear, from which the semicircular, cochlear and endolymphatic ducts proceed outward. All of these structures are surrounded by spaces, connecting with those of the vestibule which enclose the sacculus and utriculus. At the distal end of the endolymphatic duct, the spaces communicate with those of the cerebral arachnoid, and the perilymph mingles with cerebro-spinal fluid.

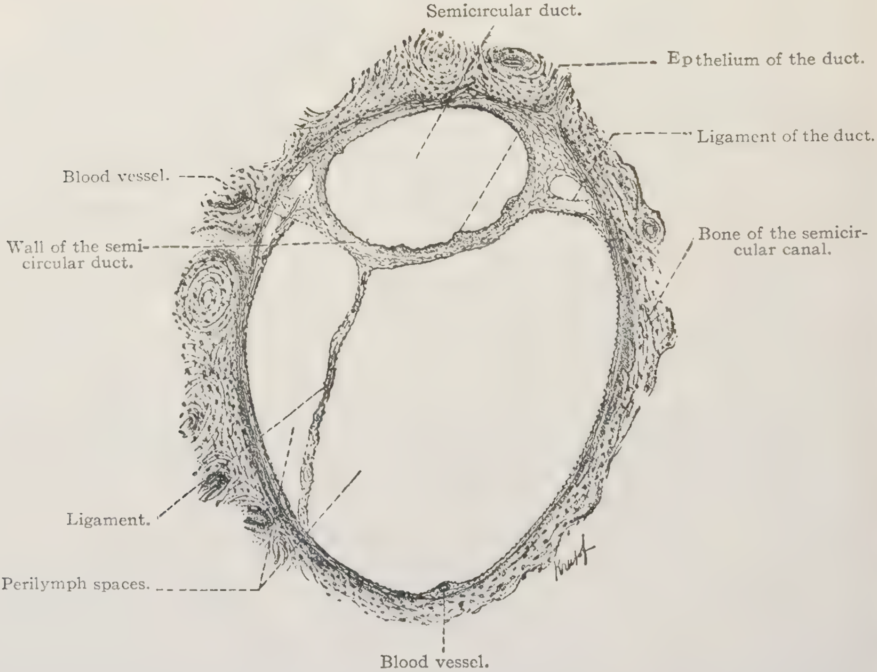


FIG. 464.—CROSS SECTION OF A SEMICIRCULAR DUCT AND THE ADJACENT PERILYMPH SPACES TOGETHER WITH THE SEMICIRCULAR CANAL OF BONE IN WHICH THEY ARE LODGED. FROM A HUMAN ADULT. × 50. (Bohm and Von Davidoff.)

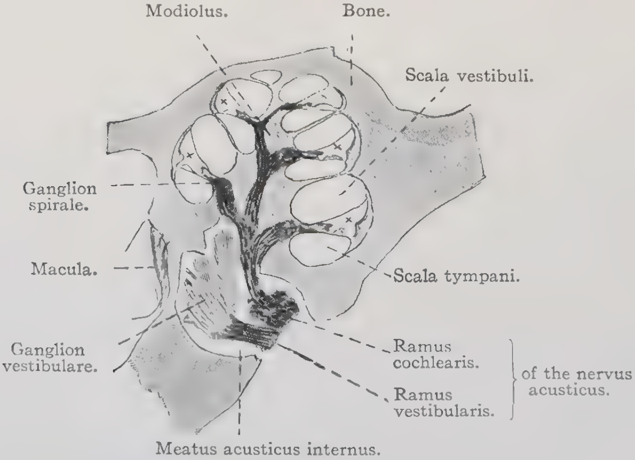


FIG. 465.—HORIZONTAL SECTION OF THE COCHLEA OF A KITTEN. × 8.
The winding ductus cochlearis, **x**, crossed the plane of section five times. Above it in every case is the *scala vestibuli*, and below it is the *scala tympani*.

Around the cochlear duct the perilymph spaces form a single tube. Starting from the vestibule, it ascends to the *cupola*, following the windings of the cochlear duct, to which it is closely applied. It is known as the *scala vestibuli* (*i.e.*, "staircase of the vestibule," from which it passes out). At the apex of the cochlea it turns and becomes the descending *scala tympani*, which ends blindly at the base of the cochlea, close against the wall of the tympanum. The two scalæ bear a constant relation to the coils of the cochlear duct. If the cochlea is so placed that its apex is upward, the scala vestibuli is always found on the upper side of the duct, and the scala tympani on the lower side, as shown in Fig. 465. In the body, the apex of the cochlea is directed forward and outward.

The temporal bone develops from the mesenchyma surrounding the ducts and their perilymph spaces, so that when the *membranous labyrinth* which they form, is removed by maceration, the bone still contains a corresponding arrangement of cavities and canals. These constitute the *bony labyrinth.* Casts of it, made in soft metal, may be seen in all anatomical museums. Instead of subdivisions to correspond with the utriculus, sacculus, and utriculo-saccular duct, the bony labyrinth has a single space, already referred to as the *vestibule.* Into it the semicircular and cochlear *canals* open, together with the *aquæductus vestibuli* which contains the endolymphatic duct.

The middle ear and external ear arise in connection with the first or spiracular gill cleft. In common with the other clefts, this includes an entodermal pharyngeal outpocketing (Fig. 195, p. 222) and an ectodermal depression (Fig. 193, *sp*). At an early stage these meet one another and fuse, but later, the primary epithelial connection breaks down, and mesenchyma intervenes. In the adult, however, the two parts are still close together, being separated by only the drum membrane, which is covered on one side with ectoderm and on the other with entoderm.

The ectodermal groove becomes surrounded by several nodular elevations of skin, which coalesce in a definite manner to make the projecting *auricle* (pinna). Its depression deepens, becoming the *external acoustic meatus*, which extends inward to the *tympanic membrane.* The entodermal portion of the spiracular cleft becomes in the adult an elongated outpocketing of the pharynx, known as the *auditory tube* (Eustachian tube). As seen in the section Fig. 466, the tube is separated from the bottom of the meatus by a very thin layer of mesenchyma, which is later included in the drum membrane.

In the mesenchyma behind the spiracular cleft, a chain of three small bones (the *malleus*, *incus*, and *stapes*) develops; it extends from the meatus to the vestibule. The bony wall of the vestibule is deficient at the small oval area where the stapes reaches it, so that the chain of bones comes directly in contact with the fibrous covering of the perilymph space. This area of contact is the *fenestra vestibuli* (*i.e.*, window of the vestibule). When the chain of bones vibrates back and forth, the motion of the stapes is transmitted through the fenestra vestibuli to the perilymph, and waves may pass up the scala vestibuli and down the scala tympani, stimulating the nerves of hearing in the cochlear duct. The blind termination of the scala tympani rests against the lateral wall of the vestibule, where also the bone fails to develop; the round *fenestra cochleæ* is thus produced. Its fibrous membrane may yield somewhat to the perilymph waves, thus relieving tension in the cochlea.

In Fig. 466 the fragments of the chain of bones together with neighboring nerves are imbedded in a mass of mesenchyma. In a later stage the outer end of the auditory tube expands, filling all the space between the vestibule and the bottom of the meatus. Thus it forms the *tympanic cavity*. It encounters the chain of bones and the chorda tympani, and wraps itself around them so that they lie in its folds or *plicæ*. Thus all structures which extend into the tympanic cavity, or appear to cross it, are covered with a layer of entodermal epithelium derived from the auditory tube. The original contact between the ectoderm and entoderm of the spiracular cleft forms only an insignificant part of the tympanic membrane. The latter becomes greatly enlarged, extending somewhat along the upper surface of the ectodermal auditory meatus. The portion of the malleus lying near it becomes imbedded in its mesenchymal layer, and its inner entodermal layer is made by the expansion of the tympanic cavity. The enlargement of the tympanic cavity continues after birth, when it invades the spaces formed within the mastoid part of the temporal bone.

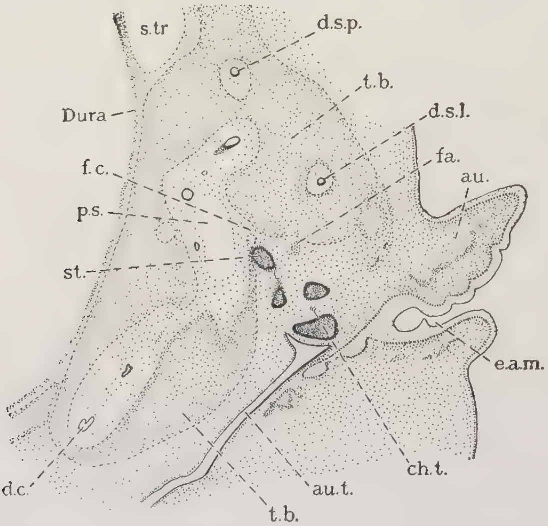


FIG. 466.—HORIZONTAL SECTION THROUGH THE EAR OF A HUMAN EMBRYO OF ABOUT 5 CMS. **au.,** Auricle; **au.t.,** auditory tube; **ch t.,** chorda tympani; **d.c.,** cochlear duct; **d.s.l.,** and **d.s.p.,** lateral and posterior semicircular ducts; **e.a.m.,** external acoustic meatus; **fa.,** facial nerve; **f.c.,** fenestra cochleæ; **p.s.,** perilymphatic space; **st.,** stapes; **s.tr.,** transverse sinus; **t.b.,** temporal bone.

In spite of these modifications the course of the spiracular cleft is retained in the adult. The ectodermal depression and its surrounding elevations constitute the external ear; the pharyngeal outpocketing persists as the auditory tube and the tympanic cavity of the middle ear. It opens freely into the pharynx and contains air.

SACCULUS, UTRICULUS, AND SEMICIRCULAR DUCTS

The walls of all these structures consist of three layers. On the outside there is *connective tissue* with many elastic fibers and occasional pigment cells. This is followed by a narrow *basement membrane* said to form small nodular elevations toward the third and innermost layer, the simple flat *epithelium*. Near the maculæ and cristæ the connective tissue and the basement membrane become thicker, and the epithelial cells are columnar with a cuticular border. In the neuro-epithelium of these areas there are two sorts of cells, sustentacular and hair cells. The *sustentacular* or *fiber cells* extend clear across the epithelium and are somewhat expanded at both ends; they contain oval nuclei. *Hair cells*, which receive the stimuli, are columnar cells limited to the superficial half of the epithelium; they have large spherical nuclei near their rounded basal ends, and a clump of fine agglutinated filaments projecting from their free surface. The nerves lose their myelin as they enter the epithelium and ascend to the bases of the hair cells. There they bend laterally, forming a dense network which appears as a granular layer in ordinary preparations; the granules are optical sections and varicosities. The horizontal fibers terminate like their occasional branches, by ascending between the hair cells, on the sides of which they form pointed free endings. They do not reach the free surface of the epithelium. This surface is covered by a continuation of the cuticula, a "membrana limitans," which is perforated by the hairs. Over the two maculæ there is a soft substance containing very many crystals of calcium carbonate, 1–15 μ long, which are named *otoconia*. (Large "ear stones" of fishes are called otoliths.) Over the cristæ of the semicircular ducts there is a gelatinous substance, transparent in fresh preparations, but coagulated and rendered visible by reagents.

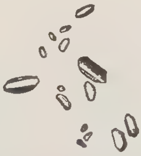


FIG. 467.—OTOCONIA FROM THE SACCULUS OF AN INFANT. × 560.

The "ligaments" of the ducts, the thin periosteum of the bony semicircular canals, and the perilymph spaces lined with mesenchymal epithelium are seen in Fig. 464.

COCHLEA

The relation between the ductus cochleæ and the scalæ tympani and vestibuli is shown in Fig. 468. The ductus is triangular in cross section, being bounded on its peripheral surface by the thick periosteum of the bony wall of the cochlea; on its apical surface (toward the cupola) by the *membrana vestibularis* (Reissner's membrane); and on its basal or medial surface by the *lamina spiralis*. These three walls may be described in turn.

The peripheral wall of the cochlear duct is formed by the dense fibrous periosteum attached to the bone, together with a large mass of looser tissue crescentic in cross section, the *ligamentum spirale* (Fig. 468). The spiral ligament is covered by a layer of cuboidal epithelial cells belonging to the cochlear duct. Close beneath the epithelium there are blood vessels which are said to give rise to the endolymph. The thick plexus which they form is described as a band, the *stria vascularis*, which terminates more or less distinctly with the *vas prominens*. The latter occupies a low elevation of tissue which has its maximum development in the basal coil of the cochlea.

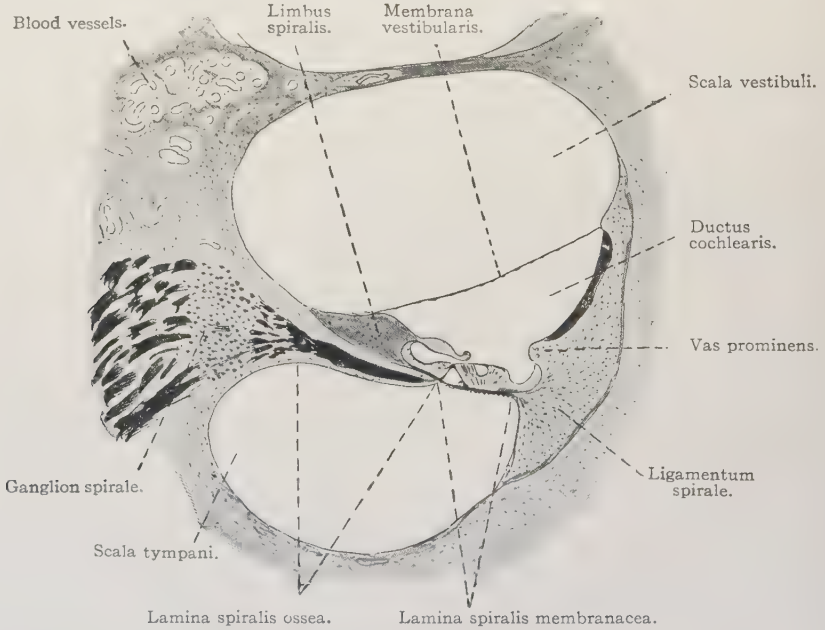


FIG. 468.—THE PORTION OF FIGURE 465 MARKED "SCALA VESTIBULI" AND "SCALA TYMPANI." × 50.

The apical wall, or *membrana vestibularis*, consists of a thin layer of connective tissue bounded on one side by the mesenchymal epithelium of the scala vestibuli, and on the other by the simple flattened ectodermal epithelium of the cochlear duct.

The basal wall or *lamina spiralis* extends outward from the modiolus to the bony wall of the cochlea. Near the modiolus it lies between the two scalæ, but peripherally it is between the cochlear duct and the scala tympani. Toward the modiolus it contains a plate of bone perforated for the passage of vessels and nerves; this part is the *lamina spiralis ossea.* The peripheral portion is the *lamina spiralis membranacea.* Both parts are covered below by the mesenchymal epithelium of the scala tympani, and above by the epithelium of the cochlear duct, including its complex neuro-epithelium known as the *spiral organ* (of Corti).

Where the membrana vestibularis meets the osseous spiral lamina, there is an elevation of tough connective tissue called the *limbus spiralis* (Fig. 468). It consists of abundant spindle-shaped cells, and blends below with the periosteum of the spiral lamina. Superficially it produces irregularly hemispherical papillæ covered with simple flat epithelium, found within the cochlear duct near the vestibular membrane. Further within the cochlear duct the papillæ give place to a single row of flat ridges or plates, directed peripherally. These are "Huschke's auditory teeth" (Fig. 471). Beneath them the limbus terminates abruptly in an overhanging *labium vestibulare*, which projects over an excavation—the *sulcus spiralis* (Fig. 469). The basal wall of the sulcus is the *labium tympanicum*, found at the peripheral edge of the osseous spiral lamina. As the epithelium of the limbus passes over the labium vestibulare into the sulcus, it becomes cuboidal. A remarkable non-nucleated structure projects from the labium vestibulare over the neuro-epithelium of the membranous spiral lamina. It is called the *membrana tectoria* and is composed of "multitudes of delicate fibers of unequal length, embedded in a transparent matrix of a soft, collagenous semi-solid character, with marked adhesiveness."

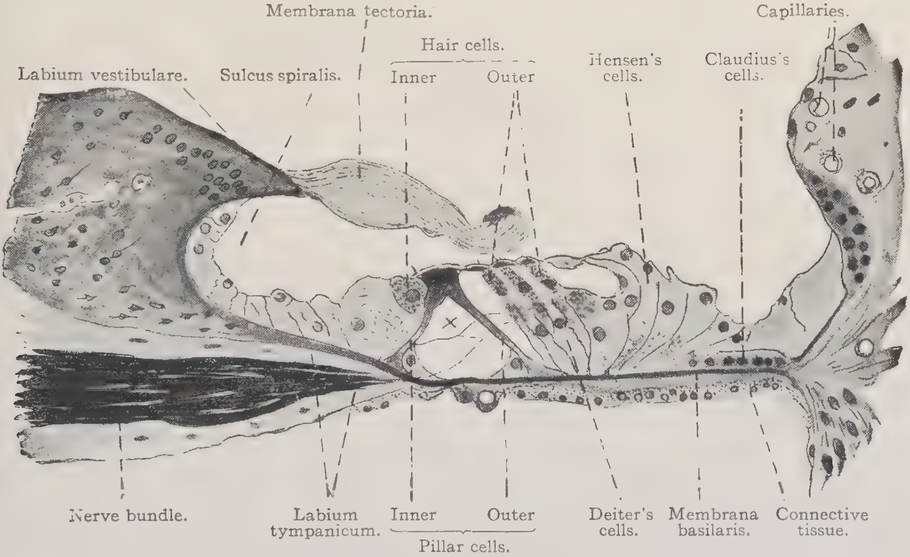


FIG. 469.—PORTION OF FIGURE 468. × 240.
x, Intercellular "tunnel" transversed by nerve fibers.

It is apparently produced as a cuticular formation from the tall cells which in the fetus fill the sulcus spiralis and extend beyond the hair cells, and acquires an attachment to the labium vestibulare. Later the tall cells become shorter, or are transformed into specialized pillar cells and hair cells, thus in either case losing attachment to the membrana, which thus floats free above them; it is of nearly the same specific gravity as the endolymph (Hardesty, Amer. Journ. Anat., 1915, vol. 18, pp. 1–73), and might transmit vibrations of the fluid to the hair cells, with which it is often found in contact. It should be noted, however, that the osmotic currents caused by fixing and decalcifying fluids in these closed canals are apt to cause distortions; some authors have described the membrana as attached to the hair cells, not to the limbus.

The lamina spiralis membranacea, or lamina basilaris, consists of four layers. The *mesenchymal epithelium* of the scala tympani is followed by a layer of delicate *connective tissue*, prolonged from the periosteum of the scala. Its spindle cells are at right angles with the fibers of the overlying *membrana basilaris.* This membrane, which is beneath the *epithelium* of the cochlear duct, consists of coarse straight fibers extending from the labium tympanicum to the ligamentum spirale. They cause it to appear finely striated (Fig. 470). Peripherally (beyond the bases of the outer pillar cells) the fibers are thicker, and are called "auditory strings;" they are shortest in the basal part of the cochlea and longest toward the apex, corresponding in length with the basal layer of the cochlear duct. These fibers have been thought to vibrate and assist in conveying sound waves to the nerves, but theories which assume that the basilar membrane is a "vibrating mechanism" are considered untenable by Hardesty; he finds it more probable that the membrana tectoria vibrates and transmits stimuli to the neuro-epithelium.

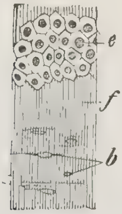


Fig. 470.—Surface View of the Lamina Spiralis Membranacea of a Cat. × 240. Drawn with change of focus.
e, Epithelium (cells of Claudius) of the ductus cochlearis in focus; **f,** fibers of the membrana basilaris in focus; **b,** nuclei of the underlying connective tissue.

The epithelial cells covering the basilar layer occur in rows of highly modified forms, which extend up and down the cochlear duct, constituting the *spiral organ* (organ of Corti). Next to the cuboidal epithelium of the sulcus spiralis there is a single row of *inner hair cells* (Fig. 471). These are short columnar cells which do not reach the bottom of the epithelium; each has about forty long stiff hairs on its free surface. The inner hair cells are followed peripherally by two rows of *pillar cells*, the *inner* and *outer*, which extend the whole length of the cochlear duct. As seen in cross section they are in contact above, but are separated below by a triangular intercellular space or "tunnel," which is filled with soft intercellular substance. Thus they rest upon the basilar membrane in ∧-form. Each pillar cell may be subdivided into a head, a slender body, and an expanded triangular base. The greater portion of each cell has been transformed into a resistant band, at the base of which, within the tunnel, there is a mass of protoplasm containing the nucleus. A protoplasmic sheath extends up from the base around the body of the cell. Dark round structures which may be found in the heads of the pillars, and at the foot of the outer ones, are not nuclei, but are "probably of horny nature." The heads of the pillars interlock. Both pillars produce "head-plates" directed outward, and so arranged that the plate from the inner pillar overlies that from the outer pillar (Fig. 471). Moreover, the round head of the outer pillar is fitted into a concavity in the head of the inner pillar, as shown in the figure.

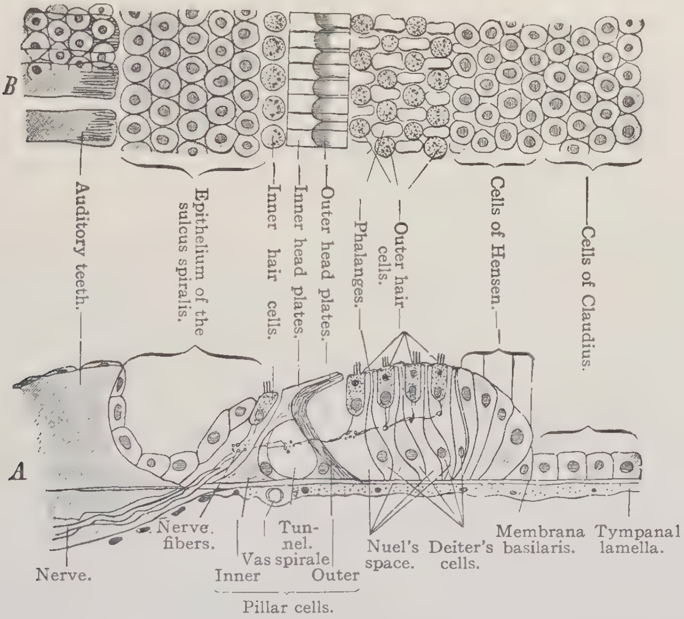


FIG. 471.—DIAGRAM OF THE STRUCTURE OF THE BASAL WALL OF THE DUCT OF THE COCHLEA. **A**, View from the side. **B**, View from the surface. In the latter the free surface is in focus. It is evident that the epithelium of the sulcus spiralis, lying in another plane, as well as the cells of Claudius, can be seen distinctly only by lowering the tube. The membrana tectoria is not drawn. The spiral nerves are indicated by dots.

On the peripheral side of the outer pillars there are several rows (usually four) of *outer hair cells* separated from one another by *sustentacular cells* (Deiter's cells). The outer hair cells have shorter hairs than the inner ones, and are characterized by the presence of "Hensen's spiral bodies," one of which occurs in the outer half of each cell. These bodies, shown as dark spots in Fig. 471, probably represent a trophospongium. The centrosomes of the hair cells are always in their upper ends. Like the inner hair cells, the outer ones do not extend to the basilar membrane, thus leaving unoccupied the communicating intercellular spaces between the deeper portions of the sustentacular cells. These *Nuel's spaces* connect with the tunnel.

Deiter's sustentacular cells are slender bodies, each containing a stiff filament, and having at its free end a cuticular formation referred to as a "phalanx." The phalanges come between the outer hair cells, separating them from one another, and the inner hair cells are similarly separated by short processes—the inner phalanges, derived from the inner pillars. (The inner phalanges are not shown in the figure.) The phalanges of Deiter's cells connect with one another, forming a trim reticular membrane. As a whole Deiter's cells resemble the pillar cells, but their transformation into stiff fibers has not proceeded so far; the cuticular border is comparable with the head plate.

The most peripheral of the sustentacular or Deiter's cells are followed by elongated columnar cells (cells of Hensen), which gradually shorten, and are succeeded by the low "cells of Claudius" which extend to the limit of the membrana basilaris. In both the columnar and the low forms there are single stiff filaments which are less developed than in the sustentacular cells. The centrosomes of all these cells lie near their free surfaces. Beyond the basilar membrane the epithelium is continued over the ligamentum spirale as a layer of cells with branching basal processes extending deep into the underlying tissue.

Nerves of the Labyrinth

The *acoustic nerve* is a purely sensory nerve passing between the pons and internal ear through a bony canal, the *internal acoustic meatus*. It is divided into vestibular and cochlear portions (Fig. 465). The *vestibular nerve* proceeds from the *vestibular ganglion* and has four branches—the *utricular nerve* and the *superior*, *lateral*, and *posterior ampullary nerves;* according to Streeter (Amer. Journ. Anat., 1906, vol. 6, pp. 139–165) it produces also the branch to the sacculus, usually regarded as derived from the cochlear nerve. If this is true, the cochlear nerve supplies only the spiral organ of Corti. The ganglion of the cochlear nerve is lodged within the modiolus at the root of the lamina spiralis, and is known as the *spiral ganglion* (Figs. 465 and 468). The ganglion cells remain bipolar, like those of embryonic spinal ganglia. They are surrounded by connective tissue capsules; and their neuraxons and single peripheral dendrites receive myelin sheaths not far from the cell bodies.

The peripheral fibers extend through the lamina spiralis ossea, within which they form a wide-meshed plexus, and after losing their myelin they emerge from its outer border in the labium tympanicum through the *foramina nervosa*. In continuing to the spiral organ they curve in the direction of the cochlear windings, thus producing spiral strands. Those nearest the modiolus are on the axial side of the pillar cells; the middle ones are between the pillars, in the tunnel; and the outer ones are beyond the pillar cells. From these bundles, delicate fibers pass to the hair cells, on the sides of which they terminate.

VESSELS OF THE LABYRINTH

The *internal auditory artery* is a branch of the basilar artery. It arises in connection with branches which are distributed to the under side of the cerebellum and the neighboring cerebral nerves, and passes through the internal acoustic meatus to the ear. It divides into vestibular and cochlear branches (Fig. 472). The *vestibular artery* supplies the vestibular nerve and the upper lateral portion of the sacculus, utriculus and semicircular ducts. The *cochlear artery* sends a vestibulo-cochlear branch to the lower and medial portion of the sacculus, utriculus, and ducts. This branch also supplies the first third of the first turn of the cochlea. The capillaries formed by the vestibular branches are generally wide

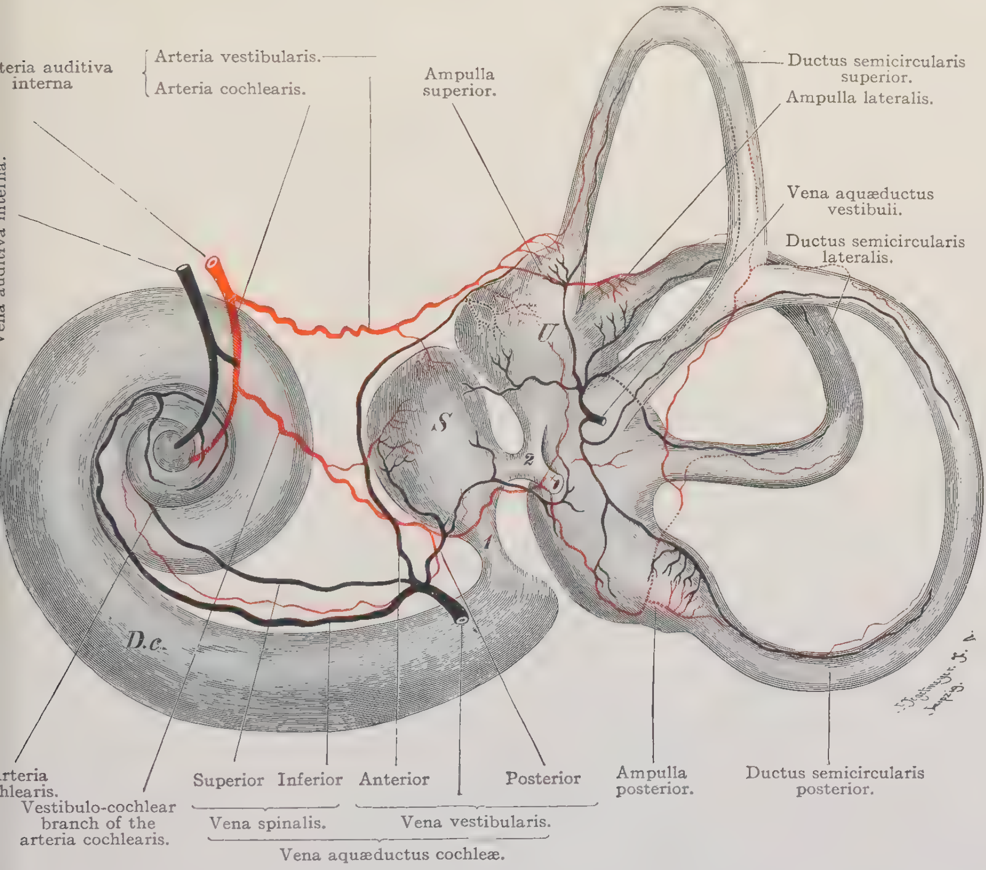


FIG. 472.—DIAGRAM OF THE BLOOD VESSELS OF THE RIGHT HUMAN LABYRINTH. MEDIAL AND POSTERIOR ASPECT.

D. c., ductus cochlearis; **S.**, sacculus; **U.**, utriculus; **1**, ductus reuniens; **2**, ductus urtriculo-saccularis. The saccus endolymphaticus is cut off.

meshed, but near the maculæ and cristæ the meshes are narrower. The terminal portion of the cochlear artery enters the modiolus and forms three or four spirally ascending branches. These give rise to about thirty radial branches distributed to three sets of capillaries (Fig. 473); 1, those to the spiral ganglion; 2, those to the lamina spiralis; and 3, those to the outer walls of the scalæ and the stria vascularis of the cochlear duct.

The *veins* of the labyrinth form three groups (Fig. 472). 1. The *vena aquæductus vestibuli* receives blood from the semicircular ducts and a part of the utriculus. It passes toward the brain in a bony canal along with the ductus endolymphaticus, and empties into the superior petrosal sinus. 2. The *vena aquæductus cochleæ* receives blood from parts of the utriculus, sacculus and cochlea; it passes through a bony canal to the internal jugular vein. Within the cochlea it arises, as shown in Fig. 473, from small vessels including the vas prominens (*a*) and the vas spirale (*b*). Branches derived from these veins pass toward the modiolus. (There are no vessels in the vestibular membrane of the adult, and the vessels in the wall of the scala tympani are so arranged that only veins occur in the part toward the membranous spiral lamina; thus the latter is not affected by arterial pulsation.) Within the modiolus the veins unite in an *inferior*

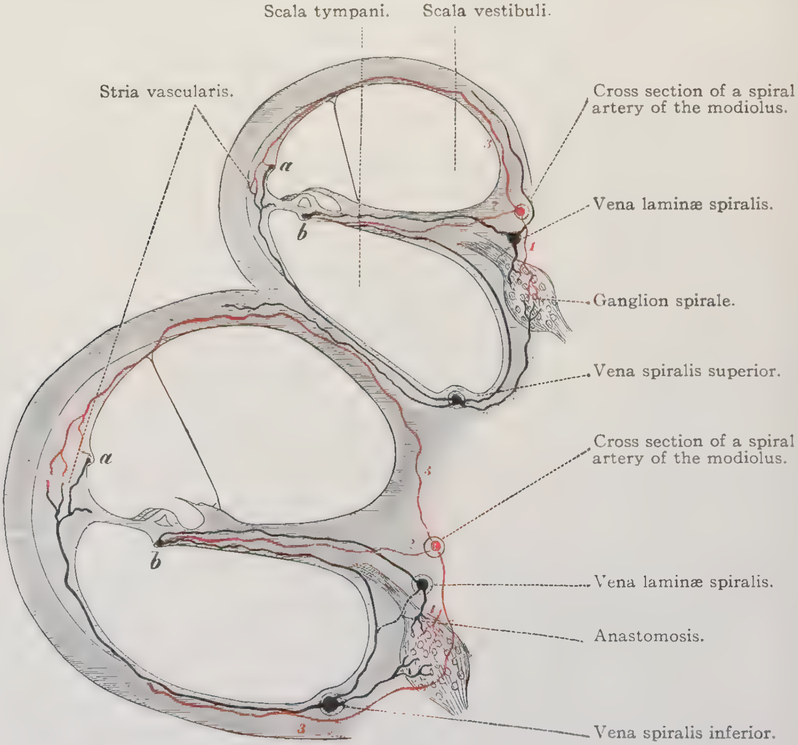


FIG. 473.—DIAGRAM OF A SECTION OF THE FIRST (BASAL) AND SECOND TURNS OF THE COCHLEA. **a,** Vas prominens; **b,** vas spirale.

spiral vein, which receives blood from the basal and a part of the second turns of the cochlea, and a *superior spiral vein* which proceeds from the apical portion. These two spiral veins unite with vestibular branches to form the vena aquæductus cochleæ (Fig. 472). 3. The *internal auditory vein* arises within the modiolus from the veins of the spiral lamina; these anastomose with the spiral veins (Fig. 473). It receives branches also from the acoustic nerve and from the bones, and empties "in all probability into the vena spinalis anterior."

Lymphatic spaces within the internal ear are represented by the perilymph spaces, which communicate through the aquæductus cochleæ with the arachnoid space; the connecting structure, or "ductus perilymphaticus," is described as a lymphatic vessel. The *saccus endolymphaticus*, which is the dilated distal end of the endolymphatic duct, is in contact with the dura, and there are said to be openings between it and the subdural space. In the internal ear perivascular and perineural spaces are found, and they probably connect with the arachnoid spaces.

MIDDLE EAR

The *tympanic cavity*, which contains air, is lined with a *mucous membrane* closely connected with the surrounding periosteum. It consists of a thin layer of connective tissue, covered generally with simple cuboidal epithelium. In places the epithelial cells may be flat, or tall with nuclei in two rows. Cilia are sometimes widely distributed and are usually to

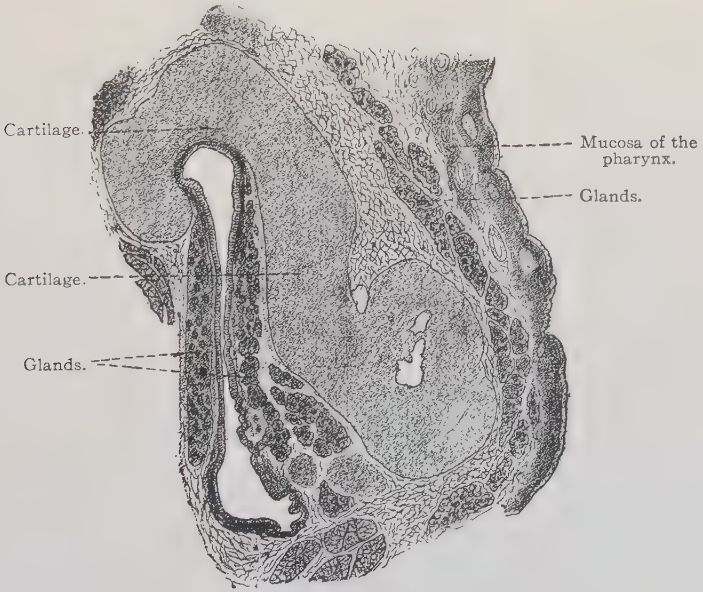


FIG. 474.—CROSS SECTION OF THE CARTILAGINOUS PART OF THE AUDITORY TUBE. × 12. (Böhm and von Davidoff.)

be found on the floor of the cavity. In its anterior part, small alveolar mucous glands occur very sparingly. Capillaries form wide-meshed net-works in the connective tissue, and lymphatic vessels are found in the periosteum.

The *auditory tube* includes an *osseous part* toward the tympanum, and a *cartilaginous part* toward the pharynx. Its mucosa consists of fibrillar connective tissue, together with a ciliated columnar epithelium which becomes stratified as it approaches the pharynx. The stroke of the cilia is toward the pharyngeal orifice. In the osseous portion, the mucosa is without glands and very thin; it adheres closely to the surrounding bone. Along its floor there are pockets containing air, the *cellulæ pneumaticæ.* In the cartilaginous part the mucosa is thicker; near the pharynx it contains many mucous glands (Fig. 474). Lymphocytes are abundant in the surrounding connective tissue, forming nodules near the end of the tube, which blend with the pharyngeal tonsil. The cartilage, which only partly surrounds the auditory tube, is hyaline near its junction with the bone of the osseous portion; it may contain here and there coarse fibers which are not elastic. Toward the pharynx the matrix contains thick nets of elastic tissue, and the cartilage is consequently elastic.

External Ear

Between the middle ear and the external ear is the *tympanic membrane,* which consists, from without inward, of the following *strata:* the *cutaneum, radiatum, circulare* and *mucosum* (Fig. 475). The stratum cutaneum is a thin skin without papillæ in its corium, except along the handle or *manubrium* of the malleus. There it is a thicker layer, containing the vessels and nerves which descend along the manubrium and spread from it radially. In addition to the venous plexus which accompanies the artery in that situation, there is a plexus of veins at the periphery of the membrane, receiving tributaries from both the stratum cutaneum and the less vascular stratum mucosum. The radiate and circular strata consist of compact bundles of fibrous and elastic tissue, arranged so as to suggest tendon. The fibers of the radial layer blend with the perichondrium of the hyaline cartilage covering the manubrium. Peripherally the fiber layers form a fibro-cartilaginous ring which connects with the surrounding bone. The stratum mucosum is a thin layer of connective tissue covered with a simple non-ciliated flat epithelium continuous with the lining of the tympanic cavity. Peripherally, in children, its cells may

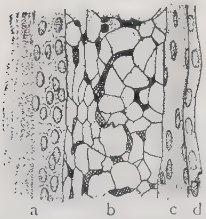


Fig. 475.—Cross Section of the Membrana Tympani below the Manubrium. × 450. (After Kölliker.) **a,** Stratum cutaneum (showing the corneum and germinativum); **b,** stratum radiatum; its fibers cut across; **c,** stratum circulare; **d,** stratum mucosum.

be taller and ciliated. As a whole the tympanic membrane is divided into *tense* and *flaccid* portions. The latter is a relatively small upper part in which the fibrous layers are deficient.

The *external acoustic meatus* is lined with skin continuous with the cutaneous layer of the tympanic membrane. In the deep or osseous portion the skin is very thin, without hair or glands except along its upper wall. There and in the outer or cartilaginous part, *ceruminous glands* are abundant. "They are branched tubulo-alveolar glands" (Huber) which in many respects resemble large sweat glands. Their ducts are lined with stratified epithelium. The coils consist of a single layer of secreting cells, general cuboidal, surrounded by smooth muscle fibers and a well-defined basement membrane. They differ from sweat glands in that their coils have a very large lumen, especially in the adult; and their gland cells, often with a distinct cuticular border, contain many pigment granules and fat droplets. Their narrow ducts in adults end on the surface of the skin close beside the hair sheaths; in children they empty into the sheaths (Fig. 476). It has not been shown that the ceruminous glands are more directly concerned in the production of cerumen than the sebaceous glands. The cerumen obviously is an oily rather than a watery secretion, and it contains fatty cells and pigment.

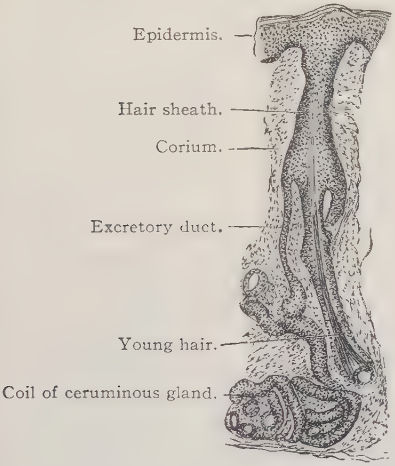


Fig. 476.—From a Vertical Section through the Skin of the External Auditory Meatus of an Infant. × 50. The excretory duct opens into the hair follicle.

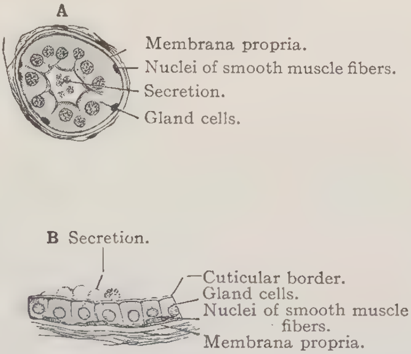


Fig. 477.—Tubules of the Ceruminous Glands. **A**, Cross section, from an infant; **B**, longitudinal section, from a boy 12 years old.

The cartilage of the external acoustic meatus and of the auricle is elastic.

NOSE

The nasal cavities are formed by the invagination of a pair of epidermal thickenings similar to those which give rise to the lens and auditory vesicle. The pockets thus produced in the embryo are called "nasal pits" (Fig. 194, *n*, p. 221). Their external openings remain as the *nares* of the adult, but temporarily, from the third to the fifth month of embryonic life, they are closed by an epithelial proliferation. Each nasal pit acquires an internal opening, the *choana*, in the roof of the pharynx. The choanæ are at first situated near the front of the mouth, separated from one another by a broad *nasal septum* (Fig. 478). As the latter extends posteriorly, it is joined by the *palate processes* which grow toward it from the sides of the maxillæ. Thus the choanæ recede toward the back of the mouth, while the embryonic condition of cleft palate is being removed (Fig. 479). The lateral walls of the nasal cavities produce three curved folds one above another; they are concave below, and in them the *conchæ* (turbinate bones) develop. The nasal mucosa covers these and extends into excavations in the adjacent bones, forming the sphenoid, maxillary, and frontal sinuses, and the ethmoidal cells. The boundary between the epithelium of the nasal pit and that of the pharynx early disappears, and the extent of each in the adult is uncertain. Presumably the olfactory neuro-epithelium is derived from the nasal pit. In man the olfactory region is limited to the

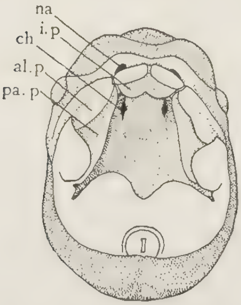


FIG. 478.—THE ROOF OF THE MOUTH OF A HUMAN EMBRYO OF 8 WEEKS. ×4. (After Kollmann.)

na, Naris; **ch.,** choana; **al. p., i. p.,** and **pa. p.,** alveolar, intermaxillary, and palate processes.

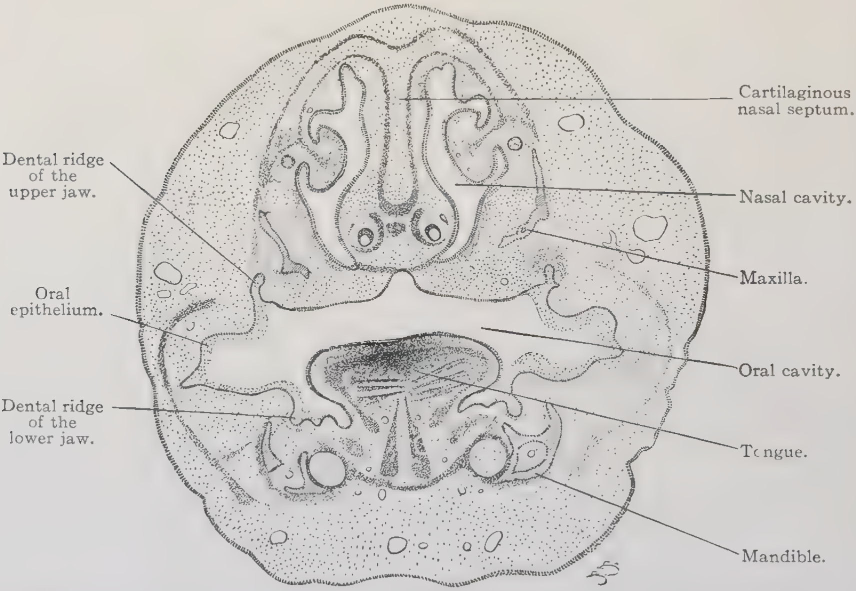

Cartilaginous nasal septum.
Dental ridge of the upper jaw.
Nasal cavity.
Maxilla.
Oral epithelium.
Oral cavity.
Dental ridge of the lower jaw.
Tongue.
Mandible.

FIG. 479.—FRONTAL SECTION OF THE HEAD OF A 40-MM. SHEEP EMBRYO. × 15.
The palate processes have united with the nasal septum. The conchæ are developing along the lateral walls of the nasal cavity. In the lower part of the nasal septum the *vomero-nasal organs* are seen as a pair of tubes, each of which is partly surrounded by a crescentic cartilage.

upper third of the nasal septum and nearly the whole of the superior concha (Read). This *regio olfactoria* is covered by a yellowish-brown membrane, which may be distinguished macroscopically from the reddish mucosa of the *regio respiratoria*. The latter includes the remainder of the nose. The two regions may be considered in turn.

The *vestibule*, or cavity of the projecting cartilaginous portion of the nose, is a part of the respiratory region which is lined with a continuation of the skin. Its stratified epithelium has squamous outer cells and rests upon a tunica propria with papillæ. It contains the sheaths of coarse hairs (*vibrissæ*) together with numerous sebaceous glands. The extent of the squamous epithelium is variable; frequently it is found on the middle concha, less often on the inferior concha.

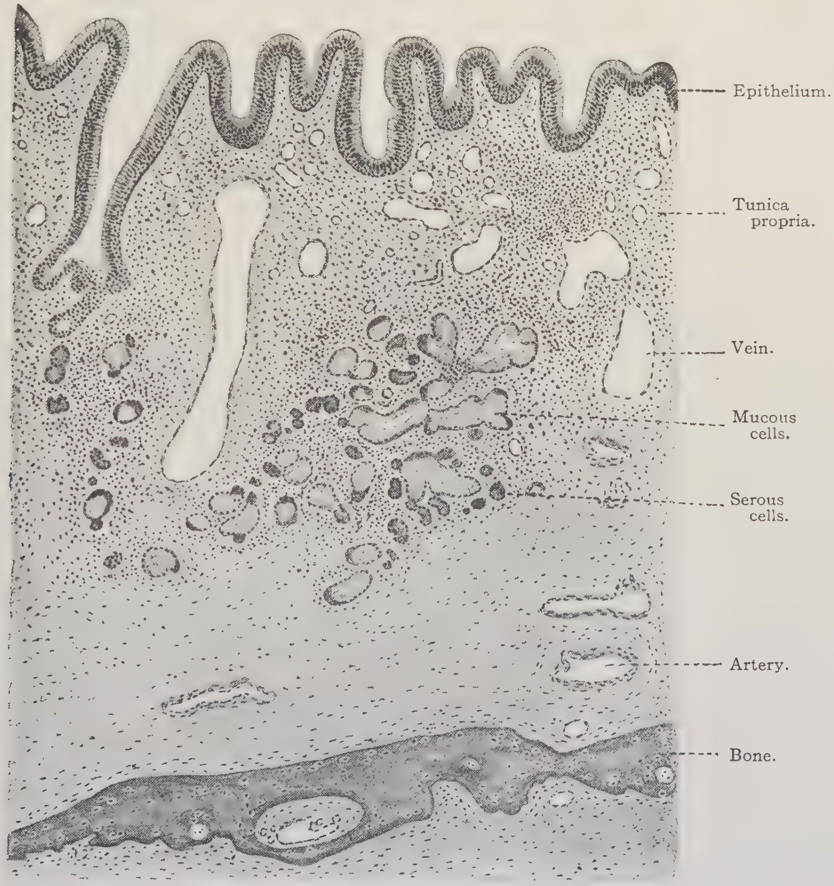


Fig. 480.—Vertical Section through the Mucosa of the Inferior Concha of Man. × 48. On the left is a funnel-shaped depression receiving an excretory duct; near-by on the right is the section of a large vein.

The remainder of the respiratory mucosa consists of a pseudo-stratified epithelium with several rows of nuclei. It may contain few or many goblet cells. The tunica propria is well developed, being even 4 mm. thick on the inferior concha (Fig. 480). It consists of fibrillar tissue with many elastic elements, especially abundant in its deeper layers. Beneath the epithelium, it is thickened to form a homogeneous membrana propria, perforated with small holes. Lymphocytes are present in variable quantity, sometimes forming solitary nodules and often entering the epithelium in great numbers. Branched alveolo-tubular mixed glands extend into the tunica propria. Their serous portions have intercellular secretory capillaries, and both mucous and serous cells contain a trophospongium. The glands often empty into funnel-shaped depressions, which are macroscopic on the inferior concha, and are lined with the superficial epithelium. The mucosa of the several paranasal sinuses is thin (0.02 mm.), with less elastic tissue and but few small glands. A pocket which extends into the lower part of the median septum has already been described as the *vomero-nasal organ* (Jacobson's organ). In man it is the rudimentary remnant of an important sense organ, supplied by special branches of the olfactory nerves and by the *nervus terminalis.* It is lined with a tall columnar epithelium, and contains, at least in the cat, "sensory cells apparently identical with those of the olfactory mucosa." In man sensory cells are said to be lacking in the adult and in embryos older than five months.

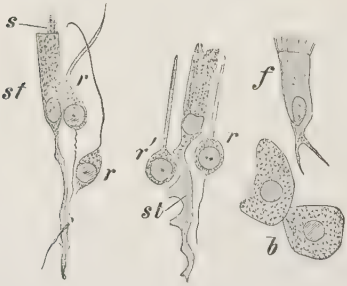


Fig. 481.—Isolated Cells of the Olfactory Mucosa of a Rabbit. × 560.
st, Supporting cells; **s,** extruded mucus resembling cilia; **r,** olfactory cells, from **r′** the lower process has been torn off; **f,** ciliated cell; **b,** cells of olfactory glands.

In the *regio olfactoria* the mucosa includes a tunica propria and an *olfactory epithelium.* The latter consists of *sustentacular cells* and *olfactory cells.* The superficial halves of the sustentacular cells are cylindrical, and contain yellowish pigment, together with small mucoid granules often arranged in vertical rows (Fig. 481). The more slender lower halves have dentate or notched borders, and branched basal ends which unite with those of neighboring cells, thus forming a protoplasmic network. Their nuclei, generally oval, are in one plane and in vertical sections they form a narrow "zone of oval nuclei" (Fig. 482). The olfactory cells generally have round nuclei containing nucleoli. They occur at different levels and so form a broad "zone of round nuclei." From the protoplasm which is gathered immediately about the nucleus, each olfactory cell sends a slender cylindrical process toward the surface, where it terminates in a variety of ways. It may end in a small knob-like swelling, or in a single slender spine; sometimes the terminal knobs sends out a small cluster of divergent olfactory hairs or spines. Basally the olfactory cells pass directly into the axis cylinders of the olfactory nerves (Fig. 483). Thus they are ganglion

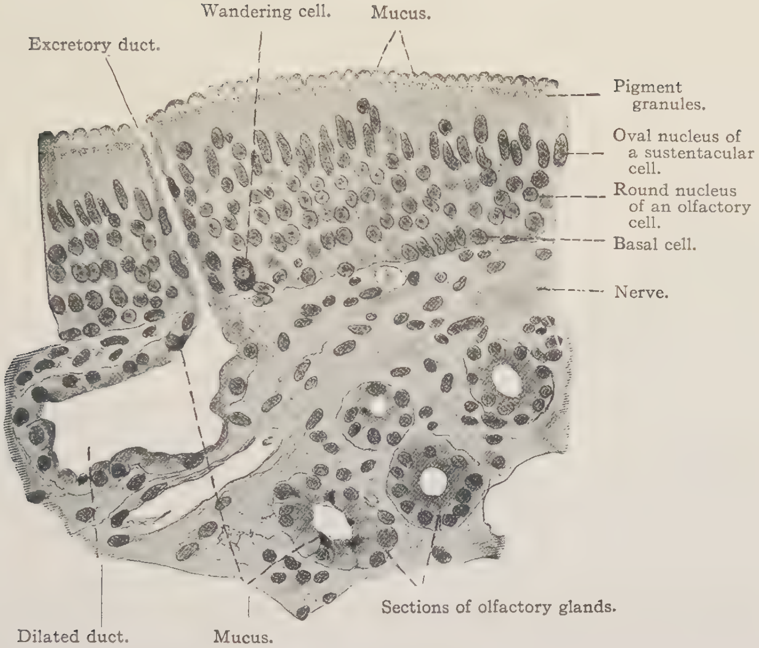

Wandering cell.
Mucus.
Excretory duct.
Pigment granules.
Oval nucleus of a sustentacular cell.
Round nucleus of an olfactory cell.
Basal cell.
Nerve.
Sections of olfactory glands.
Dilated duct.
Mucus.

FIG. 482.—VERTICAL SECTION THROUGH THE OLFACTORY REGION OF AN ADULT. × 400.

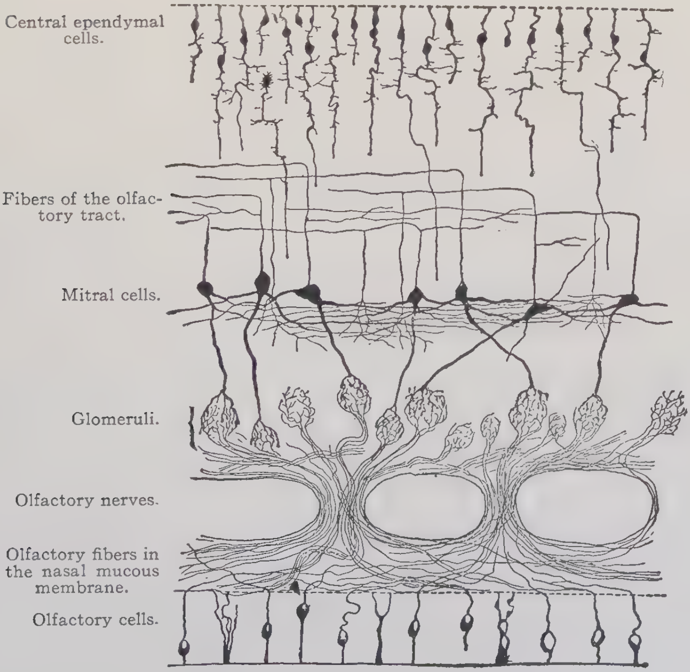


FIG. 483.—CHIEF ELEMENTS OF THE OLFACTORY BULB. (Gordinier, after Van Gehuchten.)

cells, their basal processes being neuraxons. Cells intermediate between the olfactory and sustentacular forms may be found, and these are doubtless imperfectly developed sensory cells. At the free surface of the olfactory epithelium there are terminal bars, and small projecting strands of mucus, sometimes suggesting cilia (Fig. 481, *s*). The mucus, which is the product of the sustentacular cells, may appear to form a continuous superficial membrane (Fig. 482). Near the tunica propria there is a network of so-called "basal cells."

The tunica propria is composed of fibrous tissue and fine elastic fibers, associated with many connective tissue cells. In some animals (for example, the cat) it forms a structureless membrane next to the epithelium. It surrounds the numerous *olfactory glands* (Bowman's glands). In man these consist of excretory ducts extending through the epithelium, and of branching gland bodies beneath. They have the appearance of serous glands, but sometimes contain mucus, generally in small quantities. They are found not only in the olfactory region, but also in the adjoining part of the respiratory region.

The deeper layers of the tunica propria contain the arteries of the mucous membrane, which send branches toward the epithelium, and form a thick sub-epithelial plexus of capillaries. The veins are very numerous, especially at the inner end of the inferior concha, where the tunica propria resembles cavernous tissue. Lymphatic vessels form a coarse meshed network in the deeper connective tissue. Injections of the arachnoid spaces around the olfactory bulbs follow the perineural sheaths of the olfactory nerves into the nasal mucosa, but these tissue spaces are not lymphatic vessels.

The olfactory nerves, as already stated, are formed of the basal processes of the olfactory epithelial cells, which become non-medullated nerve fibers. This is a primitive type of nervous apparatus (cf. p. 131), such as is not found elsewhere in the human body. After a tangential course beneath the epithelium, the fibers unite in bundles, and pass through the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone to the olfactory bulb just above it, which they enter. They spread tangentially and branch, finally terminating in the *glomeruli*. The glomeruli are round or oval groups of arborizing fibers, in which the processes of the olfactory cells end in relation with the dendrites of the *mitral cells*. The latter are nerve cells with triangular bodies, which form a characteristic layer of the olfactory bulb, and send their neuraxons through the olfactory tracts to make various connections within the hemispheres.

In addition to the olfactory nerves, the nasal mucous membrane contains medullated branches of the trigeminal nerve, distributed both to the olfactory and respiratory regions.

PART II

MICROSCOPICAL TECHNIQUE

I. THE PREPARATION OF MICROSCOPICAL SPECIMENS

Revised by Lawson G. Lowrey

The methods of fundamental importance, which are likely to be employed by students who are beginning their histological studies, are here given. Further information may be obtained from "The Microtomist's Vade Mecum" by A. B. Lee (Blakiston, Philadelphia) and from Mallory and Wright's "Pathological Technique" (Saunders, Philadelphia). The former deals with the subject from the point of view of general biology; the latter is particularly adapted to the needs of medical students.

FRESH TISSUES

Certain tissues may be studied advantageously in a fresh condition. They are simply spread on a clean glass slide, covered and examined. Desquamated epithelial cells, spermatozoa, blood, and other fluids containing cells, may be treated in this way. But structures such as muscles, tendons, nerves, connective tissue, etc., must first be "teased"—that is, torn into very small fragments or spread into a thin layer with a pair of fine needles.

The "parenchymatous" organs, or other structures which cannot be investigated satisfactorily by the above methods, must be sectioned or macerated. The old methods of making free-hand sections of the object held between pieces of pith, or of making sections with a double bladed knife, have been superseded in most laboratories by the freezing method. This method is often serviceable in histology, and is indispensable in the rapid diagnosis of pathological conditions.

Blocks of tissue not over 5 mm. thick are moistened with water, placed on the carrier of a special form of microtome and frozen by a jet of carbon dioxide proceeding from a tank of the compressed gas. Sections 10 to 15 μ thick may be chiselled from the block of tissue and unrolled by transferring to a dish of 0.6 per cent. sodium chloride solution. They are floated on a slide, covered and examined.

Sections or teased preparations must be kept moist during examination. In order to avoid distortion, they are not mounted in water, but in so-called indifferent fluids, such as the lymph, aqueous humor, serous fluids, amniotic fluid, etc. Of the artificial indifferent media, a 0.6 per cent. solution of sodium chloride in distilled water has been found to cause less distortion than the stronger fluids formerly recommended.

Ringer's Solution. An indifferent fluid which is perhaps more satisfactory than the 0.6 per cent. salt solution is a modification of Ringer's solution adapted to the tissues of warm-blooded animals. It is to be made in large quantities.

Sodium chloride	90.0
Potassium chloride	4.2
Calcium chloride (anhydrous)	2.4
Potassium bicarbonate	2.0
Distilled water	10,000.0

Examination of fresh tissues reveals but little of the fine details of structure. Since the indices of refraction of the different tissue elements have much the same value, outlines are usually dim and there is very little optical differentiation. The method of handling is prone to produce distortion and with many tissues and organs it is difficult to separate their constituent elements. It is generally necessary to employ more complex methods of treatment to gain an adequate idea of the histological details.

One of the simplest methods is to add one or two drops of 1 to 5 per cent. acetic acid solution to the fresh preparation. The nuclei then appear more distinctly. Albuminous granules are dissolved, but fat and myelin are not affected. The white fibers of connective tissue swell and disintegrate, leaving the elastic fibers unaffected.

Nuclei may be rendered distinct by allowing a few drops of stain to act upon the tissue for a few minutes. A 1 per cent. aqueous solution of methylene blue, or a 1 per cent. solution of methyl green in 20 per cent. alcohol, or the hæmatoxylin solutions, may be used.

ISOLATION

Some tissues cannot properly be separated into their elements in the fresh condition, but may be shaken or teased apart after preliminary treatment. The reagents employed in maceration have the property of softening or removing certain constituents of the tissues, at the same time fixing or hardening other elements. Usually the intercellular portions are softened or removed, while the cellular elements undergo fixation.

Ranvier's Alcohol. This is a mixture of one volume of 95 per cent. alcohol and 2 volumes of distilled water. The cells of small pieces of epithelium (5–10 mm. square) are separable in 24 to 48 hours. They are examined in the same fluid, or washed in water and examined in glycerin.

Nitric Acid and Potassium Chlorate. About 5 gm. of potassium chlorate are dissolved in 20 c.c. of the acid. Muscle cells are separable in one to six hours. Wash thoroughly in water and examine in water or glycerin.

Potassium Hydrate. Muscle cells may be teased apart after immersion for about an hour in a 35 per cent. aqueous solution. They may be examined in the same solution or transferred to a saturated aqueous solution of potassium acetate, which prevents further maceration. The solution of potassium hydrate may also be used for isolating epithelial cells.

Concentrated Sulphuric Acid. The elements of the epidermis, hair and nails may be separated after immersion in this fluid. They should be thoroughly washed in water.

PERMANENT PREPARATIONS

None of the methods described above yield much information respecting the finer structure of tissues and organs, nor do they yield permanent preparations. For ease of reference, the various steps in the production of a permanent preparation have been grouped under the following five headings.

1. *Fixation.* Under this heading are given formulæ for the best fixing fluids, with directions for their use and for the subsequent handling of the tissue until it is placed in 80 per cent. alcohol, in which tissues may be kept for a considerable time.

2. *Imbedding.* This includes the various steps for preparing the tissues to be sectioned in paraffin or celloidin, starting from 80 per cent. alcohol.

3. *Cutting and handling sections.* Brief directions are given for cutting sections and handling them, until they are ready for staining.

4. *Staining.* Formulæ and directions for the use of stains, and the after treatment until the preparation is in the appropriate clearing fluid.

5. *Clearing and mounting.* The choice of a clearing agent for paraffin and celloidin sections is discussed, together with the methods and media for mounting.

Since each of the fixing, imbedding and staining methods is considered as a unit, each starting where the previous step ends, the student can easily prepare specimens according to any desired possible combination by referring to the directions for the selected fixative, imbedding method, and stain.

1. Fixation

A good fixative should penetrate and kill tissues quickly; preserve the tissue elements, particularly the nuclei, in the condition in which they are found at the moment of its action; render structures insoluble, and harden them so that they will not be altered by the various after-steps; and give a certain degree of optical differentiation.

No single compound has yet been found which successfully fulfills all of these conditions, nor are any of the recommended fixatives adequate in all cases or for all special studies Only the fluids commonly employed, which have proven most useful, are here given.

Small pieces of tissue, preferably less than 1 cm. in thickness, should be dropped into a considerable amount of fluid. The tissue should be handled as little as possible, in order that delicate structures may not be destroyed. For example, contact between the fingers and the peritoneum is sufficient to destroy the thin epithelium.

In order to insure uniform action of the fixing fluid, it is often advisable to place a little absorbent cotton in the bottom of the vessel. Frequent gentle mechanical agitation will serve the same end. Tubular organs should be washed out, or cut open and their contents and adherent blood washed away, with salt solution. Membranes may be kept flat and smooth by tying them across the end of a short tube or detached bottle neck.

Alcohol. Small or thin pieces of tissue are supported on a little absorbent cotton in absolute alcohol, for 12 to 24 hours, changing after 3 or 4 hours. Large pieces are fixed by successive immersion in 70 per cent., 80 per cent., and 95 per cent. alcohol for 24 hours each.

Alcohol is a valuable dehydrating and hardening agent, but its fixing qualities are inferior, so that it is rarely used alone as a fixative. Small embryos or blocks of tissue obtained in an emergency should be preserved in 10 per cent. formalin, rather than in alcohol.

Bouin's Fluid.

Picric acid, saturated aqueous solution	75
Formalin	20
Glacial acetic acid	5

This fluid is particularly recommended for the fixation of embryos, for which it is unexcelled. Small embryos are fixed in 4 to 6 hours. Larger objects may be fixed 24 to 48 hours or longer. For washing out the fixing fluid, alcohol, first 70 per cent., then 80 per cent., should be employed. Renew the alcohol as often as discolored.

Carnoy's Mixtures.

No. 1—	Absolute alcohol	6
	Chloroform	3
	Glacial acetic acid	1

This is a very rapid fixative, even large pieces being fixed in ½ to 1 hour. Wash in absolute alcohol until the odor of acetic acid is lost, changing every 12 hours, and imbed; or grade through 95 per cent. to 80 per cent. alcohol.

No. 2. Saturate mixture No. 1 with mercuric bichloride (about 20 parts). This is the most rapid and penetrating fixative known, and it affords a very delicate cytological fixation. Immersion for 30 minutes to 1 hour is sufficient even for the larger pieces. Subsequent treatment as with No. 1, except that the crystals of sublimate must be removed from the tissue, either by placing the block in 80 per cent. alcohol and iodine (see Zenker's fluid); or after the block has been cut, by treating the sections with iodine.

Flemming's Fluid.

Osmic acid, 1 % aqueous solution	10
Chromic acid, 1 % aqueous solution	25
Glacial acetic acid, 1 % aq. solution	10
Distilled water	55

This solution should be mixed only at the time of using. Only very thin pieces (not over 2 mm. thick) should be used. Fix for 24 hours or longer (sometimes even for weeks). Wash in running water 24 hours. Pass through 50 per cent., 70 per cent. (12 hours in each), to 80 per cent. alcohol.

Formaldehyde. The gas is soluble in water to the extent of 40 per cent., and solutions of this strength are obtainable under the trade names of formalin, formol, and formalose.

For fixing tissues, 10 c.c. of the commercial product are added to 90 c.c. of water. It penetrates very quickly, but specimens may be left in it for a considerable time without apparent harm. Ordinary blocks are sufficiently fixed in from 12 to 24 hours. Transfer directly to 80 per cent. alcohol.

Histologically, its chief use is for the preservation of nervous tissue, the fixation of tissue to be cut with the freezing microtome, and the preservation of embryos. *Small human embryos obtained by practitioners should be put at once into 10 per cent. formalin and forwarded to an embryological laboratory.*

Marchi's Fluid.

Potassium bichromate	2.5
Sulphate of sodium	1.0
Water	100.0
Osmic acid, 1% aqueous solution	50.0

Small pieces are fixed for 5 to 8 days in the dark. Wash 24 hours in running water; 50 per cent. and 70 per cent. alcohol (24 hours each); 80 per cent. alcohol. Used for demonstrating degenerated nerve fibers and in making damar mounts of fat and myelin, since the osmium reduced by fat is insoluble in alcohol. Sections must not be treated with xylol, but chloroform should be used instead.

Orth's Fluid.

Potassium bichromate	25
Sodium sulphate	10
Water	1000

At the time of using mix 10 c.c. of formalin with 90 c.c. of the above solution (which is known as Müller's fluid). Small pieces are fixed in about 48 hours. Wash in running water for 12 to 24 hours. Then 50 per cent. alcohol and 70 per cent. alcohol, 12 to 24 hours each; 80 per cent. alcohol. This is useful as a fixative for the central nervous system, and as a general fixative.

Zenker's Fluid. This is kept in the form of the following stock solution, in preparing which the water is heated and the ingredients are stirred with a glass rod (metal instruments must not be put into this fluid).

Potassium bichromate	25
Sodium sulphate	10
Mercuric bichloride	50
Water	1000

At the time of using, add 5 c.c. of glacial acetic acid to 95 c.c. of the above solution. The tissues, which float for a short time, are fixed for 6 to 24 hours, after which they are washed in running water 12 to 24 hours. Then they are transferred to 50 per cent. alcohol for 12 to 24 hours; 70 per cent. alcohol, 12 to 24 hours; 80 per cent. alcohol.

Corrosive sublimate forms crystalline deposits in the tissues, and these must be removed before the preparation is stained. They may be removed by adding enough tincture of iodine to give a port-wine color to the 70 per cent. and 80 per cent. alcohols in which the block or tissue is immersed. More iodine is added as the solution becomes colorless (or nearly so) and the treatment must be continued until the color no longer changes. The tissues are then to be placed in fresh 80 per cent., renewed two or three times in order to remove completely the mercuric iodide. The crystals of sublimate may be removed after the tissue has been sectioned.

Zenker's fluid is an excellent fixative, which penetrates easily and does not decrease the staining qualities. It is probably the best "general fixative."

DECALCIFICATION

Specimens which contain bone or calcareous material cannot be sectioned until they have been decalcified. The tissues are fixed, according to the directions given above, in Zenker's fluid, Orth's fluid, or formaldehyde, and hardened. After several days in 80 per cent. alcohol, they are put into a considerable quantity of 3 to 5 per cent. aqueous solution of nitric acid. This should be renewed at intervals for 3 or 4 days, until the bone can be penetrated easily with a needle. Wash in running water for a day, and return to 80 per cent. alcohol. Imbed in celloidin.

Phloroglucin is sometimes added to the decalcifying fluid to protect the tissue. The following solution has been recommended. It is to be used in the same manner as the aqueous solution of nitric acid.

Phloroglucin	1
Nitric acid	5
Alcohol, 95%	70
Water	30

The addition of 1 or 2 per cent. of nitric acid to the 80 per cent. alcohol will decalcify small embryos. The specimen should then be thoroughly washed in fresh 80 per cent., in order to remove the acid.

2. Imbedding

Most of the fixatives employed are in aqueous solution. After fixation and the removal of the fixative by washing in water or alcohol, as directed, the specimen must not be left in water, but must be dehydrated. Dehydration has a double purpose: (1) to remove the water, which especially favors post-mortem decomposition, and (2) to prepare the tissue for infiltration with the imbedding substance or, in the case of objects to be mounted whole, for infiltration with the mounting medium.

All the fixation methods given above end with placing the block of tissue in 80 per cent. alcohol. Here they may be left until wanted, although immersion for a considerable time causes a gradual loss in staining qualities. Stronger alcohol causes an overhardening, while maceration may occur in weaker alcohols.

Dehydration is accomplished by immersing the specimen in gradually increasing strengths of alcohol. Those commonly employed are 50 per cent., 70 per cent., 80 per cent., 95 per cent. and absolute. The lower grades may be prepared from the ordinary barrel alcohol, of about 95 per cent. strength, as follows:

80 per cent.—425 c.c. 95 per cent. alcohol mixed with 75 c.c. distilled water
70 per cent.—370 c.c. 95 per cent. alcohol mixed with 130 c.c. distilled water
50 per cent.—265 c.c. 95 per cent. alcohol mixed with 235 c.c. distilled water

The specimen is left in each grade long enough to be saturated. The time required varies from 3 to 24 hours. Objects of average size require about 6 to 12 hours. Prolonged immersion in 95 per cent. or absolute is very injurious to the tissues.

In imbedding, the tissue is surrounded and infiltrated with a firm substance which can be cut into thin sections, supporting and holding firm the fragile tissue. Celloidin, which is solid upon the evaporation of its solvent, and paraffin, which is solid at ordinary temperatures, are the substances used, each having its particular advantages.

Paraffin Imbedding. Specimens cannot be passed directly from alcohol to paraffin, since alcohol dissolves only a very little paraffin and the specimen would not be thoroughly infiltrated. So the specimen must first be passed through some fluid which mixes with absolute alcohol and will dissolve paraffin. Of a host of reagents possessing this property, chloroform is recommended for general use.

After thorough dehydration (12–24 hours in absolute alcohol), the specimen is passed from absolute to a mixture of equal parts of absolute and chloroform for 2 to 6 hours, and then to pure chloroform for an equal length of time. It is then transferred to a saturated solution of paraffin in chloroform, kept warm by placing on top of the paraffin bath, for 2 to 4 hours, and is then put into melted filtered paraffin.

The melting point of the paraffin used varies with the temperature in which it is to be cut. During the winter, paraffin melting at 50°–52° C. should be used, while during the summer paraffin with a melting point of 56°–58° is best. Harder paraffin is required for thin than for thick sections. The melted paraffin should be kept in a paraffin bath or thermostat maintained at a temperature but slightly higher than the melting point of the paraffin.

The specimen should be left in the melted paraffin for the shortest time which will allow thorough infiltration,as heat is very injurious to the tissue. For average specimens, 3 hours is sufficient. Transfer to fresh paraffin at the end of 1½ or 2 hours. At the end of the full time, the specimen is to be imbedded.

The imbedding frame consists of a glass plate and two L-shaped pieces of metal. By sliding the latter back and forth on one another, the size of the enclosed space or box may be varied. Before using the frame, the inner surfaces of the metal pieces and that part of the glass plate on which they rest are rubbed with glycerin. It should form a thin film over the surfaces, but not accumulate in drops. Melted paraffin is poured into the box and the specimen is transferred to it with a spatula. The specimen sinks to the bottom, and may be arranged in any desired position by means of needles warm enough to prevent the paraffin solidifying over their surfaces. The paraffin must be *quickly* cooled by lowering the frame into a basin of cold water so that the water comes up on the sides of the metal pieces. As soon as a resistant film has formed over the surface of the paraffin, the entire frame may be submerged, and in a few minutes the glass plate and metal pieces may be detached from the solid paraffin. The block may be sectioned as soon as it is thoroughly cooled.

When a number of specimens are to be imbedded, a flat dish of suitable size may be used. After a thin layer of glycerin has been coated over the interior, the dish is filled with a sufficient quantity of melted paraffin and the blocks are put into position. The mass is cooled and removed as before, and the large mass is cut into smaller parts, each containing a specimen.

One or several specimens may be imbedded in paper boxes of suitable size. The tabs at the ends may be labelled and the specimens kept in the boxes until wanted; otherwise labels may be scratched in the paraffin with needles.

Paraffin imbedding is to be chosen when very thin sections or serial sections are desired. Material imbedded in paraffin may be kept for years without any apparent deterioration.

Celloidin Imbedding. Thick celloidin is prepared by dissolving 30 gm. of Schering's granular celloidin in 300 c.c. of a mixture of equal parts of ether and absolute alcohol. It has a thick syrupy consistency, and becomes constantly denser by evaporation of the solvent. It should be kept in a tightly closed preserve jar. Thin celloidin is prepared by mixing equal volumes of the thick celloidin and the absolute and ether mixture.

The hardened and dehydrated block of tissue, trimmed to the size and shape desired, is transferred from absolute alcohol to a mixture of equal parts of ether and absolute for 24 hours. From this it is transferred to thin celloidin, in which it remains from 24 hours to a week or longer, and then to thick celloidin for the same length of time. The success of the process depends largely upon the thorough infiltration of the tissue with the celloidin. The time required in the celloidin varies with the penetrability of the tissue and the size of the piece.

After remaining for a sufficient length of time in the thick celloidin, the tissue is taken out with a mass of adherent celloidin and is pressed gently against the roughened surface of a block of vulcanized fiber. As soon as a film has formed upon the surface, the block and attached specimen are dropped into 80 per cent. alcohol, in which the mass becomes firm. It is ready for sectioning in about 6 hours.

In case it is desired to secure sections through the entire thickness of the specimen, the following method is recommended. A sufficient quantity of thick celloidin is poured into a flat dish (or paper box) and the specimen is put into it. The entire mass is hardened as before and then a block of celloidin containing the specimen is cut out. This is trimmed to leave only a thin rim around the specimen. The block is placed for a few moments in the ether-absolute mixture, and then dipped in thick celloidin and pressed against the surface of a fiber block, which has also been dipped in the ether-absolute mixture and in thick celloidin. The mass is allowed to harden somewhat, and then is placed in 80 per cent. alcohol.

The imbedded specimen is kept in 80 per cent. alcohol until wanted for sectioning. Celloidin imbedding is recommended for large objects, or for those from which very thin sections are unnecessary.

RÉSUMÉ OF IMBEDDING METHODS

Assuming that the tissues have been fixed and carried into 80 per cent. alcohol, the steps in imbedding are as follows:

Paraffin		Celloidin	
95 per cent. alcohol	12–24 hr.	95 per cent. alcohol	12–24 hr.
Absolute	12–24 hr.	Absolute	12–24 hr.
Absolute and chloroform, equal parts	2– 6 hr.	Absolute and ether, equal parts	12–24 hr.
Chloroform	2– 6 hr.	Thin celloidin	24 hr. to a week
Chloroform saturated with paraffin	2– 4 hr.	Thick celloidin	24 hr. to a week
Melted paraffin	2– 4 hr.	Mount on fiber block; harden and preserve in 80 per cent. alcohol.	
Imbed in fresh melted paraffin and *cool quickly*.			

3. Cutting and Handling Sections

Paraffin Sections. Two kinds of microtomes are in general use for sectioning objects imbedded in paraffin. In one form, the "precision microtome," the knife is horizontally placed and the object is moved backward and forward on a carrier. In the rotary microtome, the knife is vertically placed and the object is moved up and down, being cut on the down stroke. In both forms, the knife edge is at right angles to the carrier and the object.

For sectioning with the precision microtome, the object is mounted on a fiber block which is then clamped in the microtome; with the rotary form, it is mounted on a special metal disc. Before attaching the imbedded object, superfluous paraffin is cut away, leaving the tissue rising from a broad base and completely surrounded by a thin layer of parraffin. The block should be trimmed so as to give a rectangular or square surface to be cut, and there should be a considerable layer of paraffin between the object and the block or disc to which it is to be attached. The base is placed upon a heated spatula which rests upon the fiber block. When the paraffin is somewhat melted, the spatula is withdrawn and the base is pressed down upon the block, to which it adheres when the paraffin solidifies. In mounting upon the metal disc, the disc is heated, the block pressed upon it and the whole quickly cooled by immersing in water.

If the paraffin on each side of the object is trimmed parallel with the knife edge, the successive sections adhere to one another, forming *ribbons*. As they are taken from the knife, the ribbons are laid in a shallow box. By placing them in order, they may later be attached to the slide in perfect series, one after the other. The first one cut is attached to the upper left hand corner, and the others follow like lines on a printed page. Sections mounted in this way are called *serial sections*. The sections should be from 5 to 10 μ in thickness, but under favorable conditions thinner sections may be secured.

Before they can be stained, paraffin sections must be attached to the slide and the paraffin must be removed. To attach them to a slide, a mixture of equal parts of white of egg and glycerin is used. The white of egg is thoroughly stirred and filtered. An equal volume of glycerin is added, the two thoroughly mixed and a small lump of camphor added as a preservative. The mixture is kept in a glass-capped bottle, with a glass rod for a dropper.

A drop is placed upon a thoroughly clean slide and rubbed evenly with the finger (freed from oil) over all the area upon which sections may be placed. It should be free from bubbles and should make a very thin layer, just thick enough to allow the finger to glide easily over the surface of the slide. A few drops of water are placed upon it, forming a layer over the albumen deep enough to float the paraffin sections, strips of which are placed upon the water. The shiny side of the ribbon should rest upon the water. The slide is then held for a moment over the flame of an alcohol lamp so that the water is heated. Repeat until the sections become perfectly smooth and flat, but the paraffin must not be melted. The water should not come in contact with the fingers holding the slide. If the albumen layer ends abruptly before reaching the border of the slide, the water will not so readily spread beyond it. After the flattening process, the water is cautiously drained off by a moist sponge held at the corner of the slide. The sections settle down upon the albumen and may be arranged in straight lines with needles applied to the paraffin, but not to the tissues of the sections. The slide is then held vertically in contact with filter paper to drain off any water which may remain, and the portions of the slide which are free from sections are wiped off with a cloth free from lint. The slide is next placed in a drying oven which is not warm enough to melt the paraffin. It is well to let the slides remain over night, but a few hours may be sufficient to dry them thoroughly.

In preparing large numbers of slides, each bearing only one or two sections, fragments of the ribbon containing the desired number of sections are floated in a basin of water warm enough to flatten but not to melt them. Slides rubbed with albumen are dipped into the water beneath the sections, which are held in place with a needle. The slides are drained and dried in the usual way, care being taken to have the sections in the center of the slide. Or the ribbons may be floated on warm water and cut into fragments with a heated knife, proceeding then as before.

To remove the paraffin, the slides are immersed in xylol for about 5 minutes. The slide is then transferred in turn to a mixture of equal parts of xylol and absolute alcohol, then through absolute, 95 per cent., 80 per cent., 70 per cent. and 50 per cent. alcohols, remaining about 1 minute in each, to water. In case the stain is in alcoholic solution, the transfers may be stopped at that grade of alcohol which corresponds to the solvent of the stain.

In case the sectioned tissue was fixed in a fluid containing corrosive sublimate and has not previously been treated with iodine for the removal of mercurial deposits, enough tincture of iodine to give a port-wine color may be added to the 80 per cent. alcohol. The slide is immersed in this for about a minute and then washed in fresh 80 per cent. to remove the iodine.

All of the reagents and stains to be used for paraffin sections may be kept in a series of tube-like vials, in which the slides may be placed in pairs back to back, being transferred from one vial to another. The vials are kept tightly corked, and the reagents can be used for some time before they must be renewed.

In handling a large number of slides, grooved rectangular boxes are useful. Each reagent is allowed to act, poured out and another substituted.

Celloidin Sections. Objects imbedded in celloidin are cut with either a sliding or a precision microtome, the knife edge meeting the block obliquely. The block and knife are kept wet with 80 per cent. alcohol. Sections are cut 10 to 15 μ in thickness, and are transferred, by means of a camel's-hair brush wet with alcohol, to a dish of 80 per cent. alcohol, in which they remain until wanted for staining.

Celloidin sections are stained in a series of small, shallow staining dishes. The sections are taken from 80 per cent. alcohol and transferred through graded alcohols to water or the solvent of the stain. If deposits of corrosive sublimate are present and were not removed before imbedding, the sections should be treated as directed for paraffin sections. The sections are transferred from dish to dish with bent metal or glass needles. Celloidin sections are not treated with absolute alcohol, since the celloidin would be softened.

The handling of large numbers of celloidin sections is facilitated if they are placed in a perforated cup which fits into another ordinary cup. The ordinary cups contain the various reagents and the sections are transferred from one to another in the perforated cups. The latter may be obtained as "Hobb's Tea Infusers," and lemonade cups are of proper size to receive them.

Wright's Method for Frozen Sections. This method gives permanent preparations which are adequate for most routine purposes in histological examination, and saves much time, labor, skill and expense. The success of the method depends to a considerable extent upon the frozen sections being as thin as good celloidin sections. Special automatic microtomes may now be purchased, or the older form in which the sections are "chiselled" from the block will give good results if properly used.

The tissues are fixed in 10 per cent. formalin for 12 to 24 hours or longer. The piece is then trimmed so that it will present a thickness to be frozen of not over 5 mm. The other dimensions of the block may be as large as the freezing box of the microtome will permit. The block is rinsed in water, placed on the freezing box with a few drops of water beneath it; frozen and cut into sections, which should not be over 10 or 15 μ in thickness.

The sections are floated into water, in which they unroll. Select a good section and spread it smoothly on a slide which has been coated with a thin, even layer of albumen-glycerin. Superfluous water is drained off and the section pressed upon the slide with a piece of smooth blotting paper, by exerting an even but not great pressure with the ball of the thumb. The section will adhere to the slide.

Now quickly cover the section with a small quantity of 95 per cent. alcohol, followed in a few seconds by absolute. Pour from a drop bottle quickly and evenly over the section and adjacent surface of the slide a very thin solution of celloidin dissolved in equal parts of ether and absolute alcohol. Drain off immediately, blow the breath once or twice on the surface of the section and immerse the slide at once in water for a few seconds. The thin film of celloidin thus formed fastens the section to the slide. The solution of celloidin should be almost watery in consistence, and so thin that it will form drops readily without stringing. If it is too thin, it will not hold the section on the slide, while if it is too thick, the layer on the slide will become white when it is immersed in water. The film of celloidin should be so thin as to be almost invisible.

The section may now be stained by any of the usual methods applied to sections affixed to the slide. The thin layer of celloidin offers no obstruction to the staining. After staining, the section is dehydrated by covering with 95 per cent. alcohol for a few seconds. Absolute is now poured on and allowed to remain for a few seconds. This removes most of the celloidin, but, unless the action is unduly prolonged, the section will not be loosened. Clear in xylol.

The microtomes and knives mentioned in this section are described and directions for their use are given in Mallory and Wright's "Pathological Technique." Their use, however, is seldom learned except by personal demonstration in the laboratory.

4. Staining

The purpose of staining is to differentiate the tissue elements. The staining of tissues is in a measure a micro-chemical color reaction, the differential staining being due to the fact that certain elements take up more of the stain than others.

Stains used in microscopic work may be divided into two general classes according to their chemical properties—(1) *basic* stains, which show especial affinity for the nuclei of cells and are called *nuclear* stains, and (2) *acid* stains, which affect the cytoplasm more readily and are called *cytoplasmic* stains. Certain so-called selective stains (either acid or basic) affect one tissue element especially, or even exclusively. Preparations may therefore be stained with several dyes, each affecting certain tissue elements only. Certain stains may be applied to the tissue before it is imbedded and sectioned. They are seldom used except in the preparation of embryos.

General Stains

THE STAINING OF SECTIONS

Hæmatoxylin and Eosin. Hæmatoxylin is a basic dye obtained from logwood, which stains nuclear structures blue. Eosin is an acid anilin dye which stains cytoplasm red. (It is recommended that all anilin dyes used in histological work be those prepared by Grübler in Germany).

There are many formulæ for the preparation of hæmatoxylin solutions, of which the two following are especially useful.

Alum hæmatoxylin.

Hæmatoxylin crystals	1 gm.
Saturated aqueous solution of ammonia alum	100 c.c.
Water	300 c.c.

Dissolve the hæmatoxylin in a little water with the aid of heat, and add to the remainder of the solution. Put the mixture in a bottle and add a small lump of camphor or thymol to prevent the growth of mould. Stopper the bottle with a loose plug of cotton and set in the light for about 10 days to *ripen.* It changes to a deep blue color during this process of oxidation, after which it is ready for use and is kept tightly stoppered. It deteriorates and must be renewed after a few months. The solution may be ripened immediately by the addition of 2 c.c. of hydrogen peroxide solution, neutralized by a crystal of sodium chloride.

For use after Zenker fixation, the water in the above formula may be omitted.

Delafield's Hæmatoxylin.

Hæmatoxylin crystals	4 gm.
Alcohol, 95 per cent	25 c.c.
Sat. aq. sol. of ammonia alum	400 c.c.

The hæmatoxylin is dissolved in the alcohol and added to the alum solution. This is exposed to the light in an open vessel to ripen for about 4 days and then is filtered. To the filtrate is added:

Methyl alcohol (or 95%)	100 c.c.
Glycerin	100 c.c.

This mixture is exposed to the light in a cotton-plugged bottle for about a week, after which it is again filtered and tightly stoppered. The solution keeps for a considerable time. It may be used in this strength, but preferably it is diluted with one or two volumes of water.

Eosin is sold in two forms, one soluble in water, the other in alcohol. In connection with hæmatoxylin, a $\frac{1}{10}$ to 1 per cent. aqueous solution may be used, but it is preferable to use a solution made by adding to 95 per cent. alcohol enough of a stock solution, consisting of 5 gm. of eosin dissolved in 300 c.c. of 50 per cent. alcohol, to give a deep yellowish-red color to the alcohol.

Sections are transferred from water to the hæmatoxylin solution for about 5 minutes. They are then washed in several changes of tap water until the sections are deep blue in color. If this change does not occur rapidly, a few drops of ammonium hydrate may be added to the water. They are then examined with the microscope. If the sections are overstained (a condition recognizable in the staining of the cytoplasm as well as the nuclei) the sections are washed in a 0.25 per cent. solution of hydrochloric acid in 70 per cent. alcohol until the section is reddish-brown, usually about 1 minute. Wash in water made alkaline with a few drops of ammonia and re-examine. If the nuclei are not well stained, the sections are returned to the hæmotoxlyin solution for 5 to 10 minutes longer, after which they are examined as before. If celloidin is stained, wash in a saturated solution of ammonia alum for 15 minutes, then thoroughly in water.

When the stain is sharply limited to the nuclei and is of satisfactory depth, the sections are washed for 15 to 30 minutes in tap water and then are passed through 50 per cent., 70 per cent., 80 per cent. and 95 per cent. alcohol, remaining about 1 minute in each. Stain in the alcoholic solution of eosin for 1 to 5 minutes. Wash in 95 per cent. until red clouds no longer leave the section.

Paraffin sections are then passed through absolute; absolute and xylol (equal parts); and xylol, in which they remain for about 5 minutes, and are then ready for mounting. Celloidin sections are transferred from 95 per cent. to oil of origanum for about 5 minutes, before mounting.

Eosin and Methylene Blue. This method is highly recommended, especially for tissues fixed in Zenker's fluid and sectioned in paraffin.

Stain the sections for 20 minutes or longer in a 5 or 10 per cent. aqueous solution of eosin. The tissue must be overstained, as the eosin is partially extracted in the subsequent treatment. Wash out the excess of the stain in water

Stain for 10 to 15 minutes in Unna's alkaline methylene blue (1 gm. of methylene blue and 1 gm. of potassium carbonate dissolved in 100 c.c. of water) diluted 1:3 or 1:5 with water. Wash in water. Differentiate and dehydrate in 95 per cent. alcohol, keeping the section in constant motion so that the decolorization is uniform. When the pink color returns to the section and when, as seen under the microscope, the blue is limited to the nuclei, the section is quickly washed in absolute, passed through absolute and xylol, and put in xylol for about 5 minutes.

Heidenhain's Iron Hæmatoxylin. The best results are obtained with very thin paraffin sections. From water the section are transferred to a 2–2.5 per cent. aqueous solution of ferric ammonium sulphate for 4 to 8 hours. Wash quickly in water. Stain for 12 to 18 hours in a well-ripened solution consisting of 1 gm. hæmatoxylin dissolved in 10 c.c. of absolute alcohol and added to 90 c.c. of water. Wash in water. Differentiate in the iron alum solution, controlling the result under the microscope. The section should be washed in water before each examination. When the stain is limited to the nuclei, and these are sharp, wash in running water for 15 to 30 minutes; 50 per cent.; 70 per cent.; 80 per cent. 95 per cent.; absolute alcohol; absolute and xylol; xylol.

If a counterstain is desired, add to 95 per cent. alcohol enough of a 1 per cent. solution of Orange G in 50 per cent. alcohol to give a deep orange color. Transfer the section from 95 per cent. to the stain for a few minutes. Wash well in 95 per cent., and pass through absolute, absolute and xylol, to xylol.

Weigert's Iron Hæmatoxylin.

A. Hæmatoxylin crystals	1 gm.
Alcohol, 95 per cent	100 c.c.
B. Liquor ferri sesquichlorati	4 c.c.
Water	95 c.c.
Hydrochloric acid	1 c.c.

At the time of using, mix equal parts of A and B. Transfer the sections from water to the stain for 2 to 5 minutes. Wash in water. If the section is overstained, add a few drops of hydrochloric acid to the water. To stop the decolorization, dip in water made alkaline with a little ammonia. This is an excellent stain and gives brilliant results. If a counterstain is desired, place sections for about 1 minute in Van Gieson's mixture:

Picric acid, sat. aq. sol	100
Acid fuchsin, 1 per cent. aq. sol	10

Wash in water; 95 per cent.; absolute; absolute and xylol; xylol. For celloidin sections, 95 per cent.; oil of origanum.

Safranin.

Safranin	1 gm.
Absolute alcohol	10 c.c.
Anilin water	90 c.c.

Anilin water is prepared by shaking up 5 c.c. of anilin oil in 95 c.c. of distilled water and filtering through a wet filter. Dissolve the safranin in the alcohol and add to the anilin water.

Safranin is to be used after fixation in Flemming's fluid. Stain thin paraffin sections for 24 hours; wash in water; decolorize in absolute alcohol, to which has been added hydrochloric acid in the proportion 1:1000, until only the nucleus retains the stain; fresh absolute; absolute and xylol; xylol.

STAINING IN BULK

Embryos which are to be mounted whole or cut into serial sections are commonly stained before they are imbedded. The time given for the action of the following stains is that required in the preparation of 12-mm. pigs. Larger or smaller objects should, of course, receive a longer or shorter treatment.

Alum cochineal.

Cochineal	60 gm.
Potassium alum	60 gm.
Water	800 c.c.

Boil vigorously for 20 minutes. Cool and filter. Boil the filter paper and contents with more water for the same length of time. Cool and filter. Repeat the boiling and filtering until the powder disappears from the residue. Then put all of the filtrate together, boil for about 20 minutes and make the volume up to 800 c.c.

Stain 12-mm. pigs for about 36 hours. Wash in water for 10 to 15 minutes; 50 per cent. alcohol, 20 to 30 minutes; 70 per cent., 1 hour; 80 per cent. Imbed in paraffin and cut in serial sections.

Counterstaining the sections in the solution of Orange G described with Heidenhain's iron hæmatoxylin will bring out the nerves beautifully. The paraffin is removed in xylol, the sections passed through absolute and xylol, absolute, and 95 per cent. to the stain. Wash in several changes of 95 per cent.; and pass back through absolute, and absolute and xylol, to xylol.

Borax carmine.

Borax	20 gm.
Carmine	30 gm.
Water	500 c.c.

Boil until everything is dissolved. Cool and add 500 c.c. of 70 per cent. alcohol. Let stand 24 hours and filter.

Stain a 12-mm. pig about 36 hours; water 10 to 15 minutes; 0.5 per cent. hydrochloric acid in 70 per cent., 30 minutes to 1 hour; 70 per cent. changed several times, 1 hour; 80 per cent. changed twice. Imbed in paraffin and cut in serial sections. The sections may be counterstained as directed under alum cochineal.

SELECTIVE STAINS

Mallory's Phosphotungstic Acid Hæmatoxylin.

Hæmatoxylin	0.1 gm.
Water	80.0 c.c.
10 per cent. aq. sol. of phosphotungstic acid (Merck)	20.0 c.c.

Dissolve the hæmatoxylin in a little water with the aid of heat; cool, and add to the rest of the solution. If the solution does not stain, it may be ripened by the addition of 10 c.c. of $\frac{1}{4}$ per cent. aq. sol. of potassium permanganate.

Tissues must be fixed in Zenker's fluid. Sections are transferred from water to $\frac{1}{4}$ per cent. aqueous solution of potassium permanganate for 3 to 5 minutes, washed in water, and put for 5 to 10 minutes in 5 per cent. aqueous solution of oxalic acid. Wash thoroughly in several changes of water, and stain in the hæmatoxylin solution for 12 to 24 hours. Transfer directly to 95 per cent. alcohol for not more than 1 or 2 minutes, followed by absolute for paraffin sections. Clear in xylol, using the filterpaper blotting method for celloidin sections (see p. 526).

Neuroglia, myoglia, and fibroglia fibrils and fibrin are stained blue; collagen fibrils reddish-brown; mitotic figures well shown.

Mallory's Connective Tissue Stain.

Anilin blue soluble in water (Grübler)	0.5 gm.
Orange G (Grübler)	2.0 gm.
Phosphomolybdic acid, 1 per cent. aq. solution	100.0 c.c.

Paraffin or celloidin sections of material fixed in Zenker's fluid are transferred from water to a 0.2 per cent. aqueous solution of acid fuchsin for 5 to 20 minutes. Transfer directly to the anilin blue solution and stain for 20 minutes or longer. Wash in several changes of 95 per cent. alcohol. Clear celloidin sections in oil of origanum. Paraffin sections are passed through absolute, absolute and xylol, to xylol.

Fibrils of connective and reticular tissue, amyloid, and mucus stain blue; nuclei, cytoplasm, muscle, axis cylinders, and neuroglia fibers stain red; red corpuscles and myelin, yellow.

Weigert's Resorcin-fuchsin. Boil, in an evaporating dish, 2 gm. of fuchsin and 4 gm. of resorcin in 200 c.c. of water. When it is boiling briskly, add 25 c.c. of liquor ferri sesquichlorati. Stir and boil for 5 minutes. Cool and filter. Allow the precipitate to dry; return the filter paper with precipitate to the dry dish; add 200 c.c. of 95 per cent. alcohol and boil, stirring constantly. Fish out the paper. Cool and filter; add alcohol until the volume of 200 c.c. is reached and add 4 c.c. of hydrochloric acid.

From 95 per cent. alcohol the sections, preferably fixed in alcohol or formaldehyde, are transferred to the stain for 20 minutes to an hour. Wash in 95 per cent. Clear in xylol by the blotting method (p. 526).

The elastic fibers are stained a deep purple. The remainder of the tissue should be nearly or quite colorless. If other parts are affected, the sections should be washed in alcohol containing 0.5 per cent. of hydrochloric acid. A light nuclear stain with alum hæmatoxylin after the elastic tissue has been stained will increase the value of the specimen.

Regaud's Method for Mitochondria, IV. Fix small pieces of fresh tissue (5 cu. mm.) in a mixture of potassium bichromate, chemically pure, 4 parts and neutral formol, 1 part. The tissue must be kept in the dark, and the fluid changed every day for four days. Then mordant in 3% potassium bichromate for eight days, changing fluid on the second, fourth, and sixth day. Wash in running water; dehydrate, imbed, and section. Sections are mordanted in a 4% solution of alum iron for 12 to 24 hours, then washed quickly in distilled water, and placed in Regaud's Hæmatoxylin (hæmatoxylin crystals, 1 gm.; absolute alcohol, 10 c.c. Add 10 c.c. of glycerine and 80 c.c. of distilled water) for 12–24 hours. The sections become black. Differentiate in 4% solution of iron alum, changing to a $\frac{1}{2}$% solution for the final steps, which should be watched under the microscope. Wash thoroughly in running water.

Red blood corpuscles, nuclei, and mitochondria are black; other portions unstained.

Scharlach R. Frozen sections of fresh or formalin fixed material are stained from 15 minutes to over night in a saturated solution of the dye in 70 per cent. alcohol. The sections are transferred from water to the stain, which has been freshly filtered into a tightly closing vessel. Evaporation of the alcohol causes a precipitation of the staining material. Wash in water, stain the nuclei lightly with alum hæmatoxylin, and mount in glycerin. Fat and lipoids stain red.

Nile Blue. Frozen sections of fresh material or material fixed in formalin for not more than 12 hours are stained for 15 minutes to 2 hours in a saturated aqueous solution of nile blue (Grübler). Wash in distilled water for 5 minutes or more, and transfer to tap water. If after 5 minutes in the tap water the section does not assume a reddish hue, add a small amount of alkali to the tap water. When the section is reddish, transfer to distilled water. Mount in glycerin or glycerin jelly and examine at once. Neutral fat red; lipoids blue.

Osmic Acid. Fat and myelin in fresh tissues may be blackened in a 1 per cent. aqueous solution of osmic acid. The myelin sheaths of teased nerve fibers may be so treated, the fragments dehydrated, cleared in chloroform, and mounted in chloroform damar. Sections may be prepared from tissues fixed in Marchi's fluid (p. 509), showing the fat blackened by the osmium. Use chloroform to remove paraffin from the sections, and mount in chloroform damar.

Wright's Blood Stain. After 0.5 gm. of sodium bicarbonate has been completely dissolved in 100 c.c. of distilled water, add 1 gm. of Grübler's methylene blue (either the form called BX, Koch's, or Ehrlich's rectified). "The mixture is next to be steamed in an ordinary steam sterilizer at 100° C. for 1 hour, counting the time after steam is up. The heating should not be done in a pressure sterilizer, or in a water bath, or in any other way than as stated." The mixture is then removed from the sterilizer and allowed to cool, the flask being placed in cold water if desired. When cold, it is poured into a large dish or flask. Add to each 100 c.c. of the methylene blue solution, stirring or shaking meanwhile, about 500 c.c. of a 0.1 per cent. solution of Grübler's yellowish eosin soluble in water. The eosin solution should be added until the mixture, losing its blue color, becomes purple, and a scum with yellowish metallic luster forms on the surface, "while on close inspection a finely granular black precipitate appears in suspension." The solution is then filtered and the precipitate allowed to become perfectly dry on the filter paper. The stain is made by dissolving 0.3 gm. of the precipitate in 100 c.c. of *pure* methyl alcohol. The stain need not be filtered, and like the precipitate, it keeps indefinitely. If by evaporation of the alcohol it becomes too concentrated, as shown by the formation of a precipitate when it is used, it should be filtered and a small quantity of methyl alcohol added.

Blood is obtained usually from a needle puncture in the lobule of the ear. A drop of blood is caught in the center of a perfectly clean dry cover, and another clean dry cover is immediately dropped upon it. The blood should spread between the two cover glasses, forming a film which cannot be too thin. The covers are then drawn rapidly apart (they should slide along one another and not be lifted apart). The blood film dries from exposure to the air, and remains stainable for weeks.

To stain the blood film, the cover glass is to be held in cover-glass forceps with the film side uppermost. The stain is applied as follows:

1. Cover the preparation with a noted quantity of the stain by means of a drop-bottle or medicine dropper.

2. After 1 minute add to the staining fluid on the preparation the same quantity of distilled water, by means of the dropper, and allow the mixture to remain $2\frac{1}{2}$ minutes, not longer. Longer staining may produce a precipitate. The total quantity of diluted fluid on the preparation should not be so much that some runs off. A metallic scum forms when the stain is properly diluted, but the stain should not become transparent.

3. Wash the preparation in tap water for 30 seconds, or until the thinner portions of the film become yellow or pink. Disregard the thick parts, which are blue. The process of decolorizing may be watched through the microscope by placing the cover glass with film side uppermost on a slide.

4. Dry and mount directly in damar.

Silver Nitrate. Intercellular cement spaces and the boundaries of endothelial cells may be blackened by a $\frac{1}{5}$ to 1 per cent. aqueous solution of silver nitrate, which acts chiefly upon free surfaces. The fresh tissue should be kept flat, the mesentery, for example, being tied over a detached bottle neck, while it is immersed in the solution for 1 to 10 minutes. Transfer to distilled water, and expose to direct sunlight. As soon as it becomes brown, usually in 5 to 10 minutes, it is washed in 0.6 per cent. salt solution. If desired, the nuclei may be lightly stained in alum hæmatoxylin. Examine in glycerin, or dehydrate, clear in xylol and mount in damar.

Blood vessels may be injected through glass tubes with the silver solution. Sections are made and exposed to the light, and the outlines of the endothelial cells become dark.

5. Clearing and Mounting

Clearing

Before satisfactory permanent preparations can be obtained, the sections or objects must be *cleared*. This is accomplished by infiltrating the tissues with substances which, by reason of their high index of refraction, render the tissues more or less transparent. Structures to be studied are previously stained and thus easily rendered prominent.

A variety of reagents with widely different chemical properties are used. Glycerin and acetate of potash are commonly used for frozen sections or teased preparations which, for any reason, cannot be mounted in damar.

The choice of a clearing agent for damar mounts depends chiefly on two factors, the kind of stain employed and the imbedding medium.

Xylol. This is the best clearing agent for use after aniline dyes. It clears only from absolute alcohol, through which celloidin sections cannot be passed, since it dissolves celloidin. However, it can be used for celloidin or other sections dehydrated in 95 per cent. alcohol by the following method. Blot the section on the slide with smooth, soft filter paper and pour on a few drops of xylol. Repeat the blotting, followed by xylol two or three times and the section will be perfectly clear. Paraffin sections attached to the slides are cleared by immersion in a vial of xylol; this has already been mentioned as the last step in the staining processes.

Oleum Origani Cretici. This clears readily from 95 per cent. alcohol without dissolving celloidin and affects aniline colors slowly. Although particularly recommended for clearing after celloidin imbedding, it is useful for all kinds of sections.

Carbol-xylol.

Carbolic acid crystals	1
Xylol	3

Used for clearing thick sections of the central nervous system after carmine and hæmatoxylin stains. Clears from 95 per cent. alcohol without affecting celloidin, but extracts the basic aniline dyes.

Chloroform. Since osmic acid reduced by fat is soluble in xylol, chloroform is used in cases where permanent mounts of such preparations are desired (as after fixation in Marchi's fluid).

MOUNTING

Frozen sections which cannot be mounted in damar are mounted in glycerin, potassium acetate or glycerin jelly.

Glycerin Jelly. Soak 7 gm. of gelatin for about 2 hours in 42 c.c. of distilled water. Add 50 gm. of glycerin. Warm, stirring constantly for 10–15 minutes. Filter hot through moistened cotton.

Bring sections on a slide and blot off excess water. Put on a small piece of glycerin jelly and warm gently until it melts. Cover and cool.

Preparations mounted in any of these three substances may be rendered more or less permanent by coating the edges of the cover and adjacent surfaces of the slide with paraffin or wax.

Gum Damar. Of the two substances most commonly employed for permanent mounts, namely, Canada balsam and damar, the latter is preferable, since balsam turns yellow with age.

Colorless pieces of damar are dissolved in xylol and filtered. If the solution is too thin, evaporate to the proper consistence; if too thick, add more xylol. The proper consistence is that of a thin syrup.

A solution in chloroform should be prepared in similar manner for use with osmium preparations.

After paraffin sections have been cleared (3 to 5 minutes), the excess of clearing agent is drained away and the surface of the slide outside the sections is wiped off. The section must not be allowed to become dry. A drop of damar solution is placed at once upon the section and a cover glass is carefully lowered over it. With all preparations, whatever the mounting medium may be, the cover glass should be lowered in the following manner. It is held over the specimen and its left edge is first brought into contact with the slide; a needle held in the left hand holds this edge in postion. Another needle held in the right hand with its point beneath the right edge of the cover enables one to have perfect control of the cover glass while it is being lowered. The contact between the cover glass and the mounting medium spreads gradually from left to right as the cover is lowered, expelling the air as it advances. If air bubbles are caught in the medium, the cover may be alternately raised and lowered a little until they escape, but once the cover is flat upon the specimen it should not be lifted. The cover glass should be somewhat larger than the specimen so as to extend beyond it on all sides.

Celloidin sections which have been cleared in oil are floated over the blade of a spatula placed in the oil, and are spread out flat upon it with the aid of a needle. They are then transferred to a clean glass slide, being pulled from the spatula with the needle. They should be moved to the exact center of the slide, if the preparations are to look well, and then the oil is removed by placing two thicknesses of filter paper over the section and pressing upon it quite firmly; at the same time the section is made smooth. A drop of damar is then placed upon the section before it dries, and the cover glass is applied as described in the preceding paragraph.

Damar mounts are then labelled and may be placed in a drying oven with a temperature of 35–40° C. They may be used after a few days, but the damar is not thoroughly hardened for a considerable time.

SLIDES AND COVER GLASSES

Slides should be of colorless glass with ground edges. For ordinary use, slides measuring 1 × 3 inches (26 × 76 mm.) are preferable. Occasionally, as in mounting serial sections, or large sections of the central nervous system, wider slides are needed. Thick slides are preferable to thin ones.

For ordinary use, cover glasses 18–22 mm. square are sufficient. Occasionally, as in mounting serial sections or large specimens, oblong covers may be needed. If possible, no covers ranging outside of 0.15–0.18 mm. in thickness (No. 1 grade) should be used, since thicker covers (No. 2 grade) often prevent the oil immersion lens from being brought into focus. Many valuable sections have been destroyed in attempting to focus through thick cover glasses.

Clean the slides and covers by dipping in alcohol and drying with a soft crash towel or old linen handkerchief. Sometimes it may be necessary to wash them in 10 per cent. nitric acid, followed by a thorough washing in water and then in alcohol. Slides which remain hazy after thorough washing must be discarded.

INJECTIONS

The courses of blood and lymphatic vessels and of ducts are studied by means of injections. Transparent, deeply colored fluid mixtures, which will harden in the vessels, are used. So-called "warm" injection masses, which contain gelatin, give more perfect results but are more difficult to use than "cold" injection masses.

A tapering glass or metal *cannula* is inserted into the vessel or duct, which is then tied securely around it. From a syringe connected with the cannula by a short rubber tube, the mass is then forced into the vessel. Pressure may also be obtained by having the injection mass in a receptacle which is connected with the cannula by a long flexible tube. The pressure is varied to suit the needs of the moment by raising and lowering the receptacle.

When a warm injection mass is being used, the bottle containing the mass must be placed in a water-bath and kept at a temperature of about 45° C. The organ or animal to be injected must also be placed in a water-bath of the same temperature.

Organs to be injected must be perfectly fresh; they may be left within the body or removed and injected separately. It is advisable to wash out blood vessels with warm salt solution or Ringer's solution before the injection.

It is important that in connecting the end of the tube carrying the injection mass with the cannula inserted into the vessel, no air bubbles be allowed to enter.

Cold Injection Masses

1. Blue Injection Mass.

Soluble Berlin blue	1
Distilled water	20

2. **Carmine Injection Mass.** Dissolve 1 gm. of carmine in 1 c.c. of strong ammonia plus a little water; dilute with 20 c.c. of glycerin. Add 1 gm. of common salt dissolved in 30 c.c. of glyerin. To the whole solution add an equal quantity of water.

Warm Injection Masses

1. **Berlin Blue.** Allow clear sheets of best French gelatin to swell up for 1 or 2 hours in double the quantity of water. Dissolve by warming gently over a water-bath and add, stirring constantly, an equal volume of a warm solution of Berlin blue prepared as directed above. Filter through flannel wrung out in hot water.

2. **Carmine.** This is the best injection mass to use, but it is very difficult to prepare. Dissolve 2 to 4 gm. of the best carmine in the required amount of ammonia. Filter and stir into 10 to 50 gm. of a filtered warm solution of gelatin, prepared over the water-bath as described above. Then add 25 per cent. acetic acid, drop by drop, stirring constantly, until the mass becomes bright red and loses its ammoniacal odor. If too much acetic acid is added a precipitate forms and the mass is spoiled. Filter through warm flannel.

Organs injected with a cold mass are put into 80% alcohol. After a few hours they may be cut into pieces. After injection with a warm mass, the specimen is put into cold water to hasten the soldification of the gelatin, and then transferred to 80 per cent. alcohol. Imbed in celloidin. Thick sections are necessary in order to follow the course of the vessels.

Prepared injection masses for use, cold or warm, are sold by dealers in microscopical supplies.

Many ingenious injection methods have been devised, such as the injection of small living embryos by allowing ink to enter the veins and be distributed through the body by the action of the heart; and vessels have been injected with milk, after which frozen sections were stained with Scharlach R.

SPECIAL METHODS

The following special methods are included because of their fundamental importance. For the many other special methods which are occasionally of service, reference should be made to the works on technique mentioned at the beginning of this section.

Weigert's Method for Staining Myelin Sheaths. This is a method for the differential staining of the myelin sheath of nerve fibers and is much used in the study of the normal and pathological histology of the central nervous system. As a result of some chemical reaction between myelin and a chrome salt, the myelin is fixed so that it does not dissolve in alcohol and ether, and at the same time is mordanted so that it stains deeply with hæmatoxylin.

1. Fix in a 10 per cent. aqueous solution of formalin for several days to several weeks, or indefinitely. Use a large quantity of fluid; change at the end of 24 hours and thereafter whenever it becomes cloudy.

2. Cut the tissue into pieces not over 1 cm. thick, and place in a 2.5 per cent. aqueous solution of potassium bichromate renewed each day for 3 or 4 days; then in a 5 per cent. solution renewed each day for 3 to 4 days.

3. Wash in running water for 24 hours (large pieces several days).

4. Transfer the tissues to the following solution (Weigert's second mordant) for 24 to 48 hours.

Acetate of copper	5.0 gm.
Acetic acid, 36 per cent. solution	5.0 c.c.
Fluorchrom	2.5 gm.
Water	100.0 c.c.

Boil the fluorchrom and water in a covered dish; turn off the gas and add the acetic acid and then the acetate of copper. Stir until the latter dissolves, and cool.

5. Wash in running water 24 hours or longer.

6. Dehydrate in graded alcohols and imbed in celloidin. Cut sections 20–25 μ thick.

7. Stain sections for 12 to 24 hours in:

Ripened 10 per cent. solution of hæmatoxylin in absolute alcohol	10
Saturated aqueous solution of lithium carbonate	1
Water	90

The hæmatoxylin is kept as a stock solution and combined with the carbonate of lithium and water at the time of using. Beautiful results may also be obtained by staining over-night or longer in Weigert's iron-hæmatoxylin (p. 520).

8. Wash in water.

9. Differentiate in the following solution:

Borax	2.0
Potassium ferricyanide	2.5
Water	100.0

It is advisable to dilute this solution with 1 or 2 volumes of water. After the first staining method, the gray substance of the sections appears yellow; after the iron-hæmatoxylin it is colorless.

10. Wash in running water 4 hours to over-night.

11. 95 per cent. alcohol, 3–5 hours (may be left over-night)

12. Fresh 95 per cent., 5 minutes.

13. Clear in carbol-xylol.

14. Mount in xylol damar.

Pal's Modification of Weigert's Stain. The tissue is fixed, mordanted and imbedded as directed in 1, 2, 3 and 6 above. Sections may be very much thicker.

7. Sections are placed for several hours in a ½ per cent. aqueous solution of chromic acid, or for a longer time in a 2.5 per cent. solution of potassium bichromate. (May be omitted.)

8. Stain for 24 to 48 hours in:

Ripened 10 per cent. solution of hæmatoxylin in absolute alcohol	10
Water	90

9. Wash in water plus 1 to 3 per cent. of a saturated aqueous solution of lithium carbonate until the sections appear of a uniform deep blue color.

10. Differentiate for 20 seconds to 1 minute in a ¼ per cent. aqueous solution of potassium permanganate.

11. Place for a few seconds in the following solution, until the gray substance is colorless or nearly so:

Oxalic acid	1
Potassium sulphite	1
Water	200

12. Wash in water.

Repeat steps 10, 11 and 12 until the differentiation is complete. Then wash 4 hours or longer in running water.

13. 95 per cent. alcohol, 3 to 5 hours.

14. Fresh 95 per cent., 5 minutes.

15. Carbol-xylol. Mount in xylol damar.

Golgi's Method for the Impregnation of Nerve Cells. This method depends on the formation of a fine precipitate in certain tissue elements or in pre-existing spaces when the tissues are treated with a solution of potassium bichromate and then with a solution of silver nitrate or mercuric bichloride. The value of the method lies in the fact that it picks out here and there a cell and stains it with its processes more or less completely. This same fact renders the method very uncertain. Of the several modifications of this stain, only one—the so-called rapid method—is here given.

1. Pieces of fresh tissue about 5 mm. thick are placed for 3 to 8 days in the following solution:

Osmic acid, 1 per cent. solution	1 part
Bichromate of potassium, 3.5 per cent. solution	4 parts

2. Transfer to a large quantity of 0.75 per cent. solution of silver nitrate for 2 or 3 days.

Keep the tissues in the dark during treatment with both fluids.

The length of time the tissues should remain in the first solution depends on the elements it is desired to impregnate.

For the human cord, the time is approximately as follows: for neuroglia, 2–3 days, nerve cells, 3–5 days; for nerve fibers and collaterals, 5–7 days.

3. Cut sections 50 to 100 μ thick. They may be made free-hand or with a microtome. Blocks may be quickly imbedded by dehydrating for

a few minutes in absolute alcohol, and placing in a thick solution of celloidin for about 5 minutes. Harden in 80 per cent.

4. Sections are dehydrated quickly in alcohol.

5. Clear in oil of cloves or bergamot.

6. Mount without a cover glass in xylol damar and dry quickly at 40° C. Protect the sections from the light and dust as much as possible.

If the method is unsuccessful, the specimens may be transferred back to an osmic acid and bichromate mixture containing less osmic acid, and after several days again placed in the silver nitrate solution for 24 to 48 hours.

Reconstructions

There is an important arrangement of mirrors (Abbé's camera lucida) for drawing the outlines of sections. It is attached to the microscope above the eye-piece, and on looking into it one can see the image of the section beneath the objective apparently spread upon the drawing paper beside the microscope. Thus the pencil point can be seen as it is made to trace the outline on the paper. With a little practice the same result may be obtained more or less perfectly without the camera, by looking into the microscope with one eye and at the same time upon the paper with the other. This possibility was noted by the early microscopists, and it is a useful accomplishment. More satisfactory than the camera lucida is the projection apparatus of Edinger, arranged with an arc light, whereby the image of the section is projected through an inverted microscope upon the drawing paper beneath. With the camera, or projection apparatus, a succession of serial sections may be drawn with the uniform magnification essential for reconstructions. The magnification is determined by substituting a stage micrometer for the slide of sections. The micrometer is a slide upon which 1 mm., with subdivisions into twentieths or hundredths, has been marked off by scratches in the glass; the subdivisions may be drawn with the camera, under the same conditions as the sections, and the enlargement of the subdivisions may then be measured.

From the camera-drawings of serial sections, *wax reconstructions* of various embryonic organs or small structures in the adult can be built up. If the sections are 10 μ thick and alternate sections have been drawn, magnified 50 diameters, then, on the scale of the drawings, these alternate sections are 1 mm. apart. Wax plates 1 mm. thick are therefore to be made, either by rolling beeswax, or by spreading a weighed amount of melted wax in a pan of hot water. It floats and spreads in an even layer, solidifying as the water cools. The outlines of the drawings are then indented upon the wax plates, and the desired portions are cut out and piled up to make the model. In this way reconstructions like those of the ear may be made. This method was first employed by Born. Further details of the process should be learned from demonstrations in the laboratory.

Graphic reconstructions (first used by His) are generally side views of structures, made from measurements of their transverse sections. Fig. 167, p. 186, is from such a reconstruction. A camera drawing of the side of an embryo (or other structure) is made before it is sectioned. The outline of this drawing is enlarged, and parallel lines, equally spaced, are ruled across it, corresponding in number and direction with the sections into which it was cut. Often only every other section, or every fourth section, is used for the reconstruction, and the number of lines to be ruled across the drawing is correspondingly reduced. Camera drawings of a lateral half of every section to be used in the reconstruction are then made, and across each drawing two lines are ruled. The first follows the median plane of the body; and the second is at right angles with it, being drawn so as to touch the dorsal or ventral surface of some structure to be included in the reconstruction. Provided that the camera drawings and side view have been enlarged to the same extent, the perpendicular distance from the middle of the back to the junction of the two lines is marked off in the side view, on the line corresponding with the section in question. The perpendicular distances from the second line to the dorsal and to the ventral surfaces of all structures to be reconstructed, are also marked off upon the line on the side view. The same is done in the following section, and the points belonging with a given structure are connected from section to section. Thus the outlines of the organs are projected upon the median plane; two dimensions are accurately shown but the third is lost.

Often it is undesirable to attempt to make the magnification of the sections and of the side view identical; the measurements may be enlarged or reduced as they are transferred for plotting, by means of the draughtsman's *proportional dividers*, an indispensable instrument for this method of reconstruction. The corrections for unequal shrinkage of the sections in paraffin, and other details, can best be explained in the laboratory with the drawings at hand.

In addition to making side views, this method may be used in reconstructing ventral or dorsal views, by plotting outward from the median line.

DRAWINGS

Since anatomy, both gross and microscopic, is a study of forms and relations, that is of things seen, it finds natural expression in drawing; and the volume of wood-cuts, copper-plates, and lithographs, together with the cheaper process-drawings and half-tones of the present day, form almost as important a part of anatomical literature as the accompanying text. Often there may be shown in a figure at a glance what pages of writing fail to make clear; and it is significant that the great books of Vesalius, which marked a new era in anatomy, were illustrated by Jean de Calcar, a pupil of Titian. Burggraeve believes that Vesalius doubtless supplied preliminary sketches and adds—"Almost all the great anatomists were no less excellent draughtsmen—Scarpa and Cuvier furnish us remarkable examples—and one can hardly imagine an anatomist who is not deeply sensitive to the beauty and harmony of contours and forms." Selenka (1842–1902) drew the ape embryos, which he collected and described, with consummate skill, and "always impressed upon his students the great value of a ready pencil." Robert Hooke (1635–1703) was far less successful with his drawings. In the preface to his fully illustrated microscopical observations, he makes the following explanation of the defects of his plates, and in conclusion sets an example which all students should follow. He says—

"What each of the delineated Subjects are, the descriptions annext to each will inform, of which I shall here, only once for all, add, that in divers of them the Gravers have pretty well followed my directions and draughts: and that in making of them, I indeavoured (as far as I was able) first to discover the true appearance, and next to make a plain representation of it."

To discover the true appearance of each section and to make a plain representation of it, is by far the best method for beginning the study of histology, and conscientious attempts to represent what is seen invariably lead to deeper and more valuable observations. Thus drawings are unhesitatingly required of all students, and every effort should be made to acquire some skill in this direction. The problem of the microscopist, who has but little to do with the third dimension, is relatively simple. A few suggestions may be given.

Generally sections are stained in different colors, and the question at once arises how to represent these with the pencil. The accompanying figures indicate the way in which this is done, the primary colors being shown in the inner ring, and their combinations in the outer rings. Red being a brighter color than blue is to be made lighter. Orange, a combination of the two brightest of the primary colors, should be lighter than purple—a combination of the darkest—and lighter than pure red since it has the brighter yellow mixed with it. Thus the various colors may be suggested in black and white, and the contrast between blue nuclei and red protoplasm can be carefully preserved in the drawing. This is facilitated by the use of pencils of varying degrees of hardness—"H" and "3 H" for dark structures, and "6 H" for pale areas. Soft pencils, which rub, should not be used.

Before beginning a drawing, the specimen should be carefully looked over, to find the place most worthy of such attention. The time which the drawing is to take must be considered, and a small area may be found which combines features elsewhere scattered about the specimen.

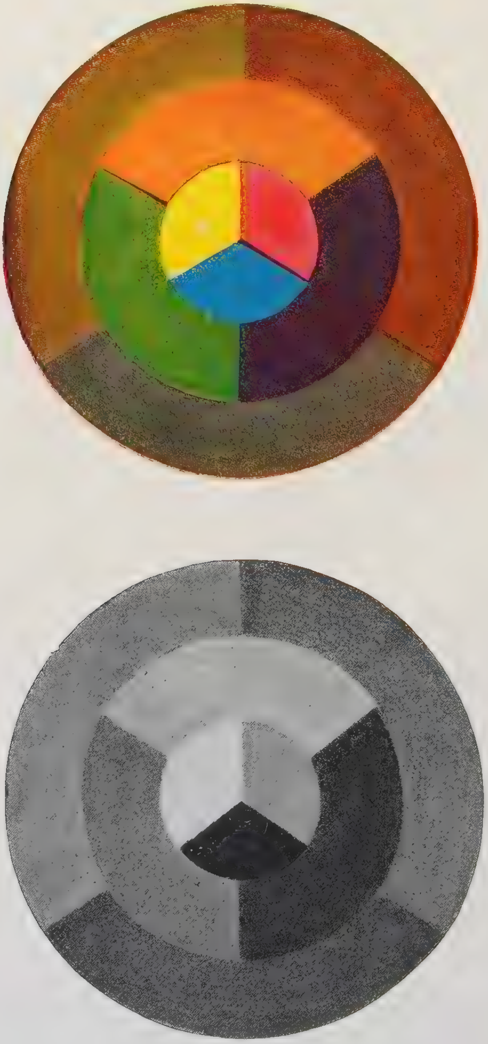


Fig. 484.—Diagrams Showing the Way in Which the Shade Values of the Primary Secondary and Tertiary Colors may be Represented in Terms of Black and White. (Lee, in Hardesty's "Laboratory Guide;" Blakiston, 1908.)

The entire field is rarely, if ever, to be drawn; and the figures should not be encumbered with surrounding circles.

The magnification of the drawing is next to be decided upon. The form of a gastric gland and the structure of its cells, for example, cannot profitably be included in a single drawing. General features, such as the forms of glands, should be represented in "low power" sketches. "Low power" as here used does not necessarily refer to the lenses employed, but means that the drawing is on such a scale that the nuclei appear merely as spots, round or elongated as the case may be. Often, however, such a drawing shows features which can be clearly observed only with high power lenses. "High-power drawings" are those which present details of nuclear and protoplasmic structure.

Usually in studying an organ, it is desirable to make a general low-power sketch showing the arrangement of its lobules or layers, and to supplement this by high-power drawings of the most significant cells or tissues. In these, which are the final test of the student's keenness of observation, no details of cellular structure are too minute for careful representation, and "the difficulty of observing them proves not the merit of overlooking them."

Having selected a field and decided upon the magnification, the outlines of the parts should be sketched lightly, with a soft pencil, and corrected until accurate. As finally made, they should be definite clean lines, not pieced out, representing the boundaries of layers, nuclear membranes, cell walls when present, cuticular surfaces, and the like. Having completed the outline, shading should be undertaken, to differentiate substance from empty space, and to indicate the nature of the substance. In high-power drawings protoplasmic texture must be faithfully reproduced—homogeneous, finely granular or coarsely granular; if the granules are not distinct enough to be counted, they should not be readily countable in the drawing. If definite walls are absent from the specimen, they should not be drawn, but the shaded areas of the finished drawing should end abruptly without a bounding line.

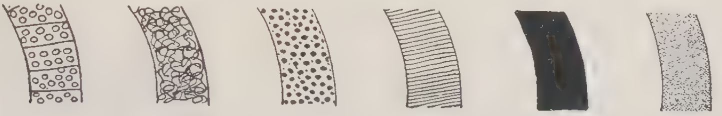


FIG. 485.—THE WALL OF THE MEDULLARY TUBE, AS DRAWN BY SIX STUDENTS.

Drawings consist, therefore, of two parts—outline, and shaded texture or finish. Ruskin observes that the real refinement of the outline depends on its truly following the contours, and in regard to finish he offers suggestions which may be applied to the drawings of the wall of the medullary tube here reproduced. He states that if we are to "finish" farther, we must *know* more or *see* more about the object. These sketches are not finished in any sense but this, that the paper has been covered with lines. A piece of work is more finished than others, not because it is more delicate or more skillful, but simply because it tells more truth. "That which conveys most information, with least inaccuracy, is always the highest finish."

INDEX

A

Absorption, intestinal, 262
Accessory chromosome, 25
  duct of pancreas, 291
Acervulus cerebri, 412
Acidophiles, 198
Acinus, 62
Acoustic meatus, external, 499; internal, 494
Adenoid tissue, 210
Adipose tissue, 83
Adrenalin, 405
Aggregate nodules, 212, 266
Ahlfeld, on the allantois, 390
Akutsu, on sexual stimulation, 349
Albumen, for attaching sections to slides, 514
Alcohol, for fixation, 508
Allantois, 242, 390
Allen, on tubules of the testis, 333
  ovary, 365
Alum cochineal, 520
  hæmatoxylin, 518
Alveolar ducts, 303
  sacs, 303
Alveolus, 62
  of the lungs, 303
  of the pancreas, 292
  of the teeth, 434
Amakrine cells, 464
Ameloblasts, 438
Amianthoid fibers, 90
Amitosis, 18
Amnion, 374
Amniotic cavity, 375
  fluid, 378
  villi, 392
Amœboid motion, 17
Amphiaster, 22
Ampulla, of the ductus deferens, 347
  of the semicircular ducts, 485
  of the uterine tubes, 365
Anal canal, 271
  membrane, 243
Anaphase, 19, 22
Angioblast (*angioderm*), 46
Anisotropic substance in muscle, 121
Annuli fibrosi, 177
Anus, 243
Aorta, 172
  in young embryos, 47
Aortic arches, 166
Apáthy, on myofibrils, 120
Aponeuroses, 81
Appendices epiploicæ, 271
Appendix epididymidis, 335
  fibrosa hepatis, 278
  testis, 332
  vermiformis (*processus vermiformis*), 268
  vesiculosa, 357
Aqueous humor, 460
Arachnoid granulations, 449
  membrane, 449
Archoplasm, 12
Areola, 422
Areolar glands, 423
  tissue, 71
Arey, on blood corpuscles, 193
  on osteoclasts, 97
Aristotle, on blood vessels, 164
  generation, 372
Arrector pili, 415, 426
Arteria centralis retinæ, 459, 478
Arteriæ helicinæ, 355
Arteries, 169
Arterioles, 170
Articular cartilage, 108
  discs, 109
Aschoff, on the atrio-ventricular bundle, 182
Aselli, on lymphatics, 183
Association fibers, 131
Aster, 21
Atretic follicles, 365
Atria, of the heart, 177
  of the lungs, 303
Atrio-ventricular bundle and node, 181
Attraction sphere, 12
Atwell, on the hypophysis, 408
Auditory nerve (*acoustic nerve*), 494
  teeth, 491
  tube, 222, 487
  vesicle, 483
Auerbach's plexus, 267
Auricle, 487
  of the heart, 176
Automatic system, 137
Autonomic system, 137
Axial filament, 341
Axis cylinder, 142
Axolemma, 153
Axon, 134, 141
Azygos veins, 313

B

Badertscher, on eosinophiles, 199
v. Baer, on ova, 373
Bailey, on neuroglia, 163
  on the hypophysis, 411
Baldwin, on muscle cells, 120
  tendon, 125
Balsam, 526
Bardeen, on the development of muscle, 116
  myelin, 153
  sheath cells of non-medullated nerves, 151
Bartholin, on the ovary, 372
  suprarenal glands, 402
  vestibular glands of Bartholin, 392
Basal body, 12
Basement membrane, 60

- Basophile cells, 77, 198
- Baumgartner, on the uterine glands, 368
- Begg, on the vitelline veins, 277
- Bell, on the nerves, 136
- Bensley, on the pancreas, 291
- Berlin blue, for injections, 528
- Berry, on intestinal villi, 259
- Bertin, columns of (*renal columns*), 319
- Betz, cells of, 453
- Bichat, on the nervous system, 140
- Bicuspid valve, 177
- Bidder, on bone, 103
- Bile capillaries, 284
  - ducts, 288
- Bipolar nerve cells, 135
- Bladder, 329
  - development, 243
- Blast, 74
- Blood, 189
  - crystals, 196
  - destroying organs, 205
  - forming organs, 205
  - islands, 46, 165
  - pigments, 195
  - plasma, 189, 203
  - plates (or platelets), 202
  - red corpuscles, 190
  - stains for, 523
  - vessels, 164
  - white corpuscles, 196
- Blue injection masses, 527
- Body cavity, 40
  - stalk, 375
- Bone, 93
  - blood vessels, 107
  - cartilage replaced by bone, 98
  - cells, 95
  - compact, 97
  - corpuscles, 96
  - decalcification, 510
  - development, 94
  - endochondrial, 101
  - growth, 102
  - lacunæ, 95
  - lamellæ, 103
  - marrow, 205
  - membrane bones, 93
  - nerves, 107
  - perichondrial, 101
  - spongy, 97
- Borax carmine, 521
- Border fibrils, 71, 111
- Born's method of reconstruction, 531
- Bouin's fluid, 508
- Bowen, on mitochondria, 7
  - on muscle, 120
  - on the nails, 423
  - on the reticular apparatus, 9
- Bowman, on the sarcolemma, 119
- Bowman's capsule (of the renal glomeruli), 321
  - glands (*olfactory glands*), 504
  - membrane (of the cornea), 475
- Boyden, on the anomalies of pancreas, 290
  - on the gall bladder, 290
- Branchial arches, 227
  - clefts, 221
- Bremer, on development of blood vessels, 167
  - on the placenta, 386
  - pulmonary arteries, 298
- Bremer, tubules of the testis, 334
  - on the Wolfian bodies, 312
- Bridges, intercellular, 59
- Bronchi, 296, 300
- Bronchial arteries, 298
  - glands, 301
  - veins, 298
- Bronchioles, 302
  - respiratory, 302
- Brown, on pulmonary veins, 298
- Brownian movement, 17
- Brunner's glands (*duodenal glands*), 256
- Brush border, 56, 323
- Bryce and Teacher's embryo, 375
- Bulbo-urethral glands, 353
- Bulbous corpuscles, 159
- Bulbus analis, 243
  - coli, 243
  - urethræ, 354
  - vestibuli, 392
- Bullard, on granules in muscle, 122
- Bundle of His, 181
- Bursæ, 80

C

- Cæcum, 243, 270
  - cupulare, 485
  - vestibulare, 485
- Call-Exner bodies, 362
- Calvert, on lymph glands, 213
- Calyx, renal, 314
- Camera lucida, 531
- Canada balsam, 526
- Canal of Gärtner, 358
  - of Schlemm, 478
- Canaliculi, of bone, 95
  - of the cornea, 476
- Canalized fibrin, 381
- Capillaries, 165, 168
  - bile, 284
  - secretory, 61
- Capsula fibrosa hepatis, 276
- Capsule, Bowman's, 321
  - of cartilage cells, 89
  - Glisson's, 276
  - of joints, 108
  - of the kidney, 319
  - of the lens, 470
  - of the liver, 276
  - of the spleen, 219
  - Tenon's (*interfascial space*), 479
- Carbol-xylol, 525
- Cardia, 248
- Cardiac ganglion, 139
  - glands, of the œsophagus, 247
    - of the stomach, 250
  - muscle, 126
  - plexus, 139
- Cardinal veins, 312
- Carmine, for injections, 528
- Carnoy's mixtures, 508
- Cartilage, 86
  - articular, 103, 108
  - elastic, 91
  - epiphyseal, 102
  - fibro-cartilage, 91
  - growth, 88
  - hyaline, 90
- Caruncula lacrimalis, 482

- Celloidin sections, 516
  - imbedding in, 512
- Cells, 5
  - amakrine, 464
  - amœboid motion, 17
  - basket, 292, 455
  - basophile, 77
  - Betz, 453
  - centro-alveolar (or centro-acinal), 292
  - chief (of gastric glands), 252
  - chromaffin, 403, 407
  - Claudius's, 494
  - decidual, 381
  - Deiter's (of the cochlea), 493
  - differentiation, 14
  - division, direct, 18; indirect, 18
  - eosinophilic, 77
  - ependymal, 132
  - epithelial, 52
  - fat, 83
  - form, 13
  - formation, 17
  - germ, 25, 338
  - giant, of the bone marrow, 202
  - glia (neuroglia), 71
  - goblet, 65
  - Hensen's (in the cochlea), 494
  - Interstitial, 344
  - Kupffer's (in the liver), 287
  - lutein, 364
  - mast, 77
  - mucous, 65
  - neuroglia, 71
  - olfactory, 502
  - Paneth's, 260
  - parietal, 252
  - pigment, 78
  - pillar (of the cochlea), 492
  - plasma, 75
  - polymorphonuclear, 197
  - Purkinje's, 454
  - pyramidal, 450
  - "resting wandering," 76
  - Retzius's, 450
  - serous, 66
  - Sertoli's, 340
  - sexual, 25
  - size, 13
  - squamous, 53
  - tactile, 156
  - taste, 233
  - visual, 463
  - vital phenomena, 16
  - wall or membrane, 12
- Cellulæ pneumaticæ, 498
- Cement (*substantia ossea dentis*), 434, 445
  - intercellular, 15
- Central nervous system, 129
- Centro-alveolar cells, 292
- Centrosome, 12, 22
- Cerebellum, 453
- Cerebral hemispheres, 450
- Cerebro-spinal fluid, 204
- Ceruminous glands, 499
- Cervical glands (of the uterus), 369
  - sinus, 221
- Chambers of the eye, 478
- Chambers, on the cytoplasm, 6
  - on intercellular bridges, 59
  - on mitotic spindle, 22
- Chambers, on muscle, 114
- Chase, on cuticula dentis, 440
- Chief cells (of the stomach), 252
- Chloroform, 525
- Choana, 500
- Chondrioconta, 70
- Chondromucoid, 89
- Chordæ tendineæ, 178
- Chordoid tissue, 92
- Choriocapillaris, 472
- Chorioid (coat of the eye), 472
  - plexuses, 450
- Chorion, 374
  - frondosum, 378
  - læve, 378
- Chromaffin cells, 403, 407
  - organs, 407
- Chromatin, 10
- Chromatocytes, 78
- Chromatolysis, 16
- Chromatophores, 78
- Chromosomes, 21, 24
  - accessory, 25, 30
- Chylomicra, 203, 262
- Chyme, 262
- Cilia, 12, 58
- Ciliary arteries, 476
  - body, 472
  - glands, 481
  - muscle, 473; (of Riolanus), 481
  - nerves, 479
  - processes, 472
- Circumanal glands, 273
- Circumvallate papillæ (or vallate), 229
- Cisternachyli, 184
- Clark, E. R., on capillaries, 169
  - on lymphatics, 185
  - on Rouget cells, 168
  - J. G., on ovarian vessels, 360
- Clasmatocytes, 76
- Claudius's cells, 494
- Clearing sections, 524
- Clitoris, 359, 392
- Cloaca, 242
- Cochlea, 489
- Cochlear artery, 495
  - duct, 485
  - nerve, 494
- Cœlom, 40
  - extraembryonic, 376
- Cohn, an ameloblasts, 438
- Cohnheim's areas, 121
- Collagen, 70
- Collateral nerve fibres, 130, 135
- Collecting tubules, of the kidney, 315, 324
- Colloid, 399
- Colon, 243, 270
- Colostrum, 420
- Column, of Bertin, 319
  - of Glisson, 271
  - of Morgagni, 271
  - rectal, 271
  - renal, 319
- Commissural fibers, 131
- Common bile duct, 275, 289
- Conchæ, 500
- Concretions, prostatic, 352
- Cone cells, 463
- Conical papillæ, 228

Conjunctiva bulbi, 461
  palpebrarum, 461
Conklin, on amitosis, 18
Connective tissue, 46, 68, 71
  cells, 74
  fibers, 72
  stains, 522
Contour lines, in dentine, 444
  in enamel, 440
Convoluted tubules, of the kidney, 316
  of the testis, 337
Corium, 414
Cornea, 461, 475
Corona radiata, 363
Coronary ligament, 276
  sinus, 178
  sulcus, 177
Corpora cavernosa clitoridis, 392
  cavernosa penis, 355
Corpus albicans, 364
  cavernosum urethræ, 353
  hæmorrhagicum, 364
  luteum, 363
  spongiosum, 331
Corpuscles,
  blood, red, 190; white, 196
  bone, 96
  bulbous (of Krause), 159
  colostrum, 421
  corneal, 476
  cylindrical, 159
  genital, 159
  Golgi-Mazzoni, 309
  Hassall's, 397
  lamellar, 159
  Malpighian (renal) 319; (splenic), 215
  nerve, 158
  Pacinian, 159
  renal, 319
  salivary, 225
  splenic, 215
  tactile (of Meissner), 158
  thymic, 397
Corpuscula amylacea, 413
Cortex, 209
  cerebral, 450
Corti, organ of, 492
Cotyledons of the placenta, 387
Cover glasses, 526
Cowdry, on reticular apparatus, 9
  on secretion, 64
  on thyroid cells, 400
Cowper, glands of, 353
Crenated red corpuscles, 194
Crescents of serous cells, 66
Cristæ ampullares, 485
Crypts of Lieberkühn, 258
Cumulus oöphorus, 362
Curran, on the atrio-ventricular bundle, 181
Curtis, on tubules of testis, 337, 340
Cushney, on urinary secretion, 325
Cuticula, 13, 56, 429
  dentis, 440
Cutis, 413
Cuvier, duct of, 312
Cylindrical corpuscles, 159
Cystic duct, 275, 289
Cytoblastema, 18
Cytogenetic glands, 63
Cytomorphosis, 14
Cytoplasm, 5

D

Dalenpatius, on spermatozoa, 343
Damar, 526
Dart, on muscular innervation, 126
Davis, on spermatogenesis, 26
Dawson, on gastric cells, 254
Decalcification, 510
Decidua, 378
Decidual cells, 381
  membranes, 374
Deiters, cells of cochlea, 493
  on nerve cells, 142
Dekhuyzen, on red corpuscles, 193
Delafield's hæmatoxylin, 518
Demilunes, 66
Dendrite, 134, 141
Dental canaliculi, 442
  cavity, 434
  fibers, 442
  groove, 437
  lamina, 435
  papilla, 436, 442
  pulp, 434, 442
  sac, 445
Dentine, 434
  contour lines, 444
Dermomyotome, 44, 115
Descartes, on epigenesis, 344
  pineal body, 412
Descemet's membrane (of the cornea), 476
Deuteroplasm, 34
DeWitt, on the atrio-ventricular bundle, 181
Diaphysis, 102
Diarthrosis, 107
Diaster, 22
Diemerbrœck, on the suprarenal gland, 402
Digestive tube, 241
  layers, 244
Dilatator muscle of the pupil, 474
Diplosome, 12
Discus proligerus, 362
Dispireme, 23
Diverticulum ilei, 244
Downey, on the spleen, 214
  on white corpuscles, 201
Drawing of specimens, 532
Drinker, on bone marrow, 207
Ductless glands, 393
Ducts, 61
  aberrant, of epididymis, 335
  alveolar, 303
  Bartholin's (*sublingual*), 238
  cochlear, 485
  common bile, 275, 289
  cystic, 275, 289
  efferent, 335
  ejaculatory, 335, 349
  endolymphatic, 483
  Gärtner's, 358
  hepatic, 275, 289
  intercalated, 62, 235, 293
  Müllerian, 332, 356
  Santorini's (*accessory pancreatic*), 291
  semicircular, 484
  Stenson's (*parotid*), 235
  thoracic, 184

Ducts, utriculo-saccular, 485
  Wharton's (*submaxillary*), 240
  Wirsung's (*pancreatic*), 291
  Wolffian, 309
Ductuli efferentes, 335
Ductus arteriosus, 297
  deferens, 335, 347
  epididymidis, 335, 345
  reuniens, 485
  venosus, 277
Dujardin, on red corpuscles, 193
Duodenum, 243, 256
Dura mater, 448
Dyads, 30

E

Ear, 483
  external, 498
  internal, 489
  middle, 497
  nerves, 494
  stones, 489
  vessels, 495
v. Ebner, on enamel prisms, 442
  red corpuscles, 193
v. Ebner's glands (tongue), 235
Ectoderm, 40
  derivatives, 49
Efferent ducts (of the testis), 335
Ehrlich, on mast cells, 77
Ejaculatory ducts, 335, 349
Elastic cartilage, 91
  fibers, 72
  membrane, 171
  stain for elastic tissue, 522
Elastin, 72
Eleidin, 417
Embryos, human, earliest stages, 374
  preservation of, 508; see also *Bouin's fluid*, 509
Emmel, on blood corpuscles, 192
  on the mammary gland, 422
  on serous fluids, 204
Enamel, 434, 437
  organs, 435, 437
  prisms, 439
  pulp, 437
End bulbs (Krause's), 159
  discs, 155
  organs (of Ruffini), 157
Endocardium, 179
Endochondrial bone, 101
Endolymph, 485
Endolymphatic duct, 483
  sac, 483
Endometrium, 369
Endoneurium, 151
Endoplasm, 8
Endosteum, 102
Endothelium, 50, 165
Engle, on the prostate, 352
Entoderm, 40
  derivatives of, 49
Entodermal tract, 220
Eosin, 518
  bodies, 454
Eosinophiles, 77, 198
Ependyma, 132
Epicardium, 182
Epidermis, 40, 415
Epididymis, 335, 345
Epigenesis, 343
Epiglottis, 228
Epineurium, 151
Epiphysis, of bone, 102
Epithelioid glands, 63
Epithelium, 45, 50
  basement membrane, 60
  bridges, 59
  cilia, 56
  columnar, 52
  cuboidal, 52
  cuticular border, 56
  differentiation of cells, 53
  false, 51
  glands, 60
  membrana propria, 60
  mesenchymal, 51, 108
  neuro-epithelium, 129
  pseudo-stratified, 56
  secretion, 60
  simple, 52
  stratified, 53
  terminal bars, 59
  transitional, 329
Epitrichium, 413
Eponychium, 423
Epoöphoron, 357
Equational division, 28
Equatorial plate, 21
Erectile tissue, 354
Erythroblast, 190
Erythrocyte, 189
Eustachian tube, 222, 487
Eustachius, on lymphatics, 184
  suprarenal gland, 402
Evans, on development of blood vessels, 167
  perilymphatic blood vessels, 189
Evans and Scott, on clasmatocytes, 77
Exoplasm, 8
External acoustic meatus, 487
Eye, 458
  blood vessels, 476
  chambers, 478
  cornea, 475
  iris, 473
  lachrymal glands, 482
  lens, 470
  lids, 480
  nerves, 479
  optic nerve, 469
  retina, 462
  tunica fibrosa, 474
  tunica vasculosa, 472
  vitreous body, 471

F

Fabricius, allantois, 381
  on valves of the veins, 164
  stomach, 248
Falciform ligament, 276
Fallopian tube, 332, 365
Fallopius, on ovarian follicles, 373
Farmer and Shove, on cell division, 19
Fascia, 81
  linguæ, 230
  pharyngo-basilaris, 234

Fat cells, 83
  stains, 523
Felix, genital glands, 333
  on the pronephros, 309
  paradidymis, 335
  Wolffian tubules, 312
Female genital organs, 355
Fenestra cochleæ, 488
  vestibuli, 487
Fenestrated cells, 147
  membrane, 73, 171
Ferrein, pyramids of, (in the kidney), 319
Fertilization, 36
Fiber cells (in the internal ear), 489
  layer of Henle, 464
Fibers, elastic, 72
  Müller's (in the retina), 465
  muscle, 110
  nerve, 131, 149
  osteogenic, 94
  Sharpey's (in bone), 104
  white, 70
Fibrils, in connective tissue fibers, 72
  in muscle fibers, 110
  in nerve fibers, 141
  in smooth muscle, 111
  in striated muscle, 117
Fibrin, 192
  canalized, 381
Fibroblasts, 74
Fibro-cartilage, 91
Fibroglia, 71
Filiform papillæ, 228
Fimbria ovarica, 359
Fixation of tissues, 507
Flack, on the sino-atrial node, 182
Flagella, 58
Flemming, on the origin of white fibers, 70
Flemming's fluid, 509
Flint, on the bronchi, 297
Foliate papillæ, 228
Follicles, 62
  atretic, 365
  Graafian (vesicular ovarian), 363
  primary ovarian, 358, 362
  thyroid, 399
Fontana, spaces of (in the iris), 479
Foramen apicis dentis, 434
  epiploicum (of Winslow), 278
  interventriculare, of the heart, 178
  ovale, 177
Fore-gut, 43, 241
Formaldehyde, 509
Formalin, 509
Fossa of Rosenmüller, 222
Fovea centralis, 466
Fresh tissues, examination of, 505
Frozen sections, 516
Fungiform papillæ, 228

G

Gage, on chylomicra, 203
  on glycogen, 89
Galea capitis, 341
Galen, on the intestine, 244
  stomach, 248
Gall bladder, 275, 289
Ganglia, 130, 135
  cardiac, 139
Ganglia, cervical, 139
  retinal, 464
  spinal, 135
  spiral, 494
  sympathetic, 138
  of the sympathetic nerves in the head, 137
Gärtner's duct, 358
Gastric canal, 249
  glands, 250
Gelatin, 70
Genital corpuscles, 159
  organs (female), 355
  organs (male), 332
  papilla, 336
  ridge, 332
Germ cells, 25, 338
  layers, 39; origin of tissues from, 49
Giant cells, of the bone marrow, 202
Gill clefts, 221
Giraldès, organ of, 335
Glands, 60
  anterior lingual, 230
  areolar, 423
  Bartholin's (*major vestibular*), 392
  Bowman's (*olfactory*), 504
  bronchial, 301
  Brunner's (*duodenal*), 256
  buccal, 238
  bulbo-urethral, 353
  cardiac, 247, 250
  ceruminous, 499
  cervical, of the uterus, 369
  ciliary, 481
  circumanal, 273
  classification, 60, 63
  compound, 61
  Cowper's (*bulbo-urethral*), 353
  cytogenic, 63
  ductless, 393
  ducts, 61
  duodenal, 256
  v. Ebner's (*serous lingual*), 235
  end-pieces, 61
  epithelioid, 63
  fundus (*gastric*), 250
  gastric, 250
  intestinal, 257
  labial, 234
  lachrymal, 482
  Lieberkühn's (*intestinal*), 257
  lingual, 238
  Littré's (*urethral*), 353
  lumen, 61
  lymph, 207
  mammary, 420
  Meibomian (*tarsal*), 481
  mixed, 66
  Moll's (*ciliary*), 481
  Montgomery's (*areolar*), 423
  mucous, 65, 238
  œsophageal, 245
  olfactory, 504
  oral, 235
  palatine, 238
  peptic (*gastric*), 250
  perotid, 235
  præputial, 419
  pyloric, 254
  sebaceous, 419

Glands, serous, 66
  simple, 61
  sublingual, 238
  submaxillary, 240
  sudoriparous, 418
  suprarenal, 401
  sweat, 418
  tarsal, 481
  tracheal, 300
  Tyson's, 420
  unicellular, 60
  urethral, 331, 353
  vestibular, 392
Glans penis, 336
Glia cells (*neuroglia*), 161
Glisson's capsule, 276
  columns, 271
Glomerulus, 310
  of the kidney, 321
  of olfactory nerves, 504
  of Wolffian body, 311
Glomus caroticum, 407
Glycerin jelly, 525
Glycogen, 88
Goblet cells, 65
Golgi apparatus, 9
  method, 530
  preparations, 142
Golgi-Mazzoni corpuscles, 309
Graafian follicles, 363, 373
Granules, metachromatic, 77
  in protoplasm, 6, 8, 65
Grasshopper, sex determination, 32
  spermatogenesis, 26
Gray matter (*substance*), 132
  nerves, 150
  rami, 138
Gregor, on muscle spindles, 126
Grosser, on pharyngeal pouches, 224
  yolk-sac, 375
Grynfeltt, on the uterine tube, 367
Gubernaculum testis, 337
Gum damar, 526
Gums (*gingivæ*), 447
Gustatory organ (taste-buds), 232

H

Hæmatoidin, 195
Hæmatoxylin, 517
Hæmin, 196
Hæmoglobin, 195
Hæmolymph glands, 213
Hæmolysis, 196
Hæmosiderin, 195
Hair, 424
  bulb, 424
  lanugo, 426
  papilla, 424
  root, 426
  shaft, 424, 429
  shedding, 431
Hair-cells, of the cochlea, 492
Halban, on muscle fibers, 124
Haller, on epithelium, 50
Hammer, on pharyngeal pouches, 222
  thymus, 396
Hardesty, membrana tectoria, 492
  on nervous tissue, 153, 162
Harrison, on the growth of nerves, 136, 153
Harvey, on circulation, 164
Harvey, R. W., on epithelium of the bladder, 330
Hassall's corpuscles (*thymic*), 397
Haustra, 271
Haversian systems, 105
Heart, 175
  nerves, 182
  valves, 178
Heidenhain, intercalated discs, 129
  on muscle contraction, 123
Heidenhain's iron hæmatoxylin, 519
Hemiazygos veins, 313
Hemispheres, cerebral, 450
Henle, on collagenous fibers, 70
  transitional epithelium, 329
Henle's fiber layer of the retina, 464
  layer of the hair sheath, 429
  loops in the kidney, 315
  sheath, of nerves, 151
  spindle cell layer in the iris, 474
Hensen, on the number of ova, 32
  ovulation, 363
Hensen's cells of the cochlea, 494
  membrane in striated muscle, 122
Hepatic arteries, 278
  cells, 283
  diverticulum, 274
  duct, 275, 289
  lobules, 281
  trabeculæ, 274
  veins, 282
Hertwig, origin of nerves, 131
Hertzog's embryo, 375
Hilus, 208
Hind-gut, 43, 241
Hippocrates, on the intestine, 244
His, allantois, 381
  development of nerves, 137
  on endothelia, 50
Hochstetter, on the cardinal veins, 313
Holmgren's canals, 9
Hooke, on cells, 13
  drawing, 533
Houston's valves, 271
Howell, on red corpuscles, 193
  white corpuscles, 201
Howship's lacunæ, 97
Huber, end-discs, 147
  on the notochord, 48
  tubules of the kidney, 317
Hunter, on ovarian pregnancy, 367
Huntington, bronchi, 297
  on lymphatics, 185
  supracardinal vein, 313
Huschke's auditory teeth, 491
Huxley, on cuticula dentis, 440
Huxley's layer of the hair sheath, 429
Hyaline cartilage, 90
Hyaloid artery, 460
  canal, 472
Hyaloplasm, 6
Hydatid of Morgagni, 350
  sessile, 350
  stalked, 350
Hymen, 356
Hypophysis, 408
Hypospadias, 336
Hyrtl, on the intestine, 244

I

Idiozome, 341
Ileum, 243, 257
Imbedding, 511
Implantation of the ovum, 381
Incisures of Lantermann (in myelin sheaths), 153
Inclusions, 9
Incus, 478
Infundibulum of the lungs, 303
    of the uterine tubes, 365
Injections, 527
Inner cell mass, 40
Intercalated discs, 128
    ducts, 62, 235, 293
Intercellular bridges, 59
    secretory capillaries, 61
    substance, 15
Interfascial space, 479
Interglobular spaces in dentine, 445
Internal acoustic meatus, 494
    secretions, 63
Interstitial cells of the ovary, 365
    cells of the testis, 344
    granules in sarcoplasm, 122
    lamellæ of bone, 105
Interventricular foramen, of the heart, 178
Intestinal absorption, 262
    glands, 257
    villi, 257
Intestine, large, 270
    small, 257
Intracellular secretory canals, 62
Involuntary muscle, 110
Iris, 473
Iron hæmatoxylin, 519
Isaacs, on white fibers, 70
Islands of Langerhans, 292
Isolation of tissues, 506
Isotropic substance in muscle, 121

J

Jacobson's organ (*vomero-nasal organ*), 502
Jejunum, 243, 257
Johnson, distention of the small intestine, 260
    intestinal villi, 259
    on liver lobules, 286
    on urethral glands, 353
Johnstone and Wakefield, on the atrio-ventricular bundle, 182
Joints, 107
Jordan, on blood corpuscles, 202
    on the epididymis, 346
    on the intercallated discs, 128
    on sex, 25

K

Karyokinesis, 18
Karyolysis, 16
Karyoplasm, 5, 10
Karyorrhexis, 16
Keith and Flack, on the sino-atrial node, 182
Kennedy, on polyovular follicles, 363
Keratohyalin, 417
Kerkring's vulvulæ conniventes, 259
Kidney, 314
    calyces, 314
Kidney, capsule, 319
    columns, 319
    corpuscles, 319
    cortex, 319
    lobes, 326
    medulla, 324
    pelvis, 328
    pyramids, 318
    vessels and nerves, 326
    zones of the medulla, 319
Kiebel, on the development of the urogenital tract, 356
Kiernan, on the portal canals, 282
Kingsbury, on interstitial cells, 365
    on the ovary, 358
Kingsley, on red corpuscles, 195
    on tissue cells, 77
Kling, on lymph glands, 208
v. Korff, on dentinal fibers, 443
Kraus, on nerve cells, 144
Krause's corpuscles, bulbous and cylindrical, 159
    membrane in striated muscle, 121
Krogh, on capillaries, 169
Kuntz, on sympathetic nerves, 137
Kupffer's stellate endothelial cells, 287

L

Labia majora, 359, 393
    minora, 359, 392
Labium tympanicum, 491
    vestibulare, 491
Labra glenoidalia, 109
Labyrinth, of the ear, 487
Lachrymal glands, 482
    sac, 483
Lacteals, 184, 264
Lactiferous sinus, 422
Lacunæ, of bone, 95
    of cartilage, 87
    Howship's, 97
    urethral, 353
Lamellæ of bone, 103
Lamellar corpuscles, 159
Lamina choriocapillaris, 472
    cribrosa, 470
    fusca, 472
    spiralis, 490
    suprachorioidea, 472
Langerhans, cells of in epidermis, 156
    islands of, 292
Lantermann's incisures, 153
Lanugo, 426
Large intestine, 270
Larynx, 299
Latta, on germinal centers, 211
Leeuwenhoek, on the teeth, 440
    red corpuscles, 193
    spermatozoa, 342
    on striated muscle, 120
Lens, 470
Lentic vesicle, 458
Lesser omentum, 276
Leucocytes, 196
Lewis, F. T., on anomalous vessels, 167
    amniotic velli, 392
    on lymphatics, 185, 187
    on lymphocytes, 201
    on the shape of cells, 54

Lewis, F.T., on spiral muscle, 263
  stomach, 249
  on the umbilical cord, 392
  vena cava, 278
  on the Wolfian tubule, 312
Lewis, W. H., development of the lens, 459
  on "death granules," 16
  on mesenchyma, 68
  on mitochondria, 6
  on muscle, 114, 116, 128
L'hermitte and Kraus, on nerve cells, 144
Lieberkühn, crypts of, 258
Ligaments, 81, 108
  hepatic, 275
  ovarian, 359
  pectinate, 476
  suspensory, of lens, 469
Ligamentum spirale, 490
Limbus spiralis, 491
Lingual glands, 238
  tonsil, 227
Linin, 10
Lips, 233
Lipschutz, on interstitial cells, 344
Liquor amnii, 378
  folliculi, 362
Littré, glands of (urethral glands), 353
Liver, 274
  capsule, 276
  ducts, 275
  hepatic cells, 283
  ligaments, 275
  lobes, 278
  lobules, 281
  perivascular tissue, 287
  portal canals, 282
  structural units, 279
  veins, 276
Lode, on the number of spermatozoa, 33
Loeb, on fertilization, 38
  on mitosis from inanition, 89
Long, on maturation, 35
Lowsley, on the prostate, 351
Ludford, on keratinization, 417
Lumen of glands, 61
Lungs, 302
  alveoli, 304
  atria, 303
  development, 296
  lobules, 304
  pigment, 308
  pleura, 296, 304
  vessels and nerves, 306
Lunula, 424
Lutein cells, 364
Lymph, 203
  follicles (*nodules*), 209
  glands, 207
  nodes (*lymph glands*), 207
  nodules, solitary, 211; aggregate, 212
  sacs, 186
  sinuses, 208, 212
Lymphatic vessels, 183
  development, 186
  valves 189
Lymphocytes, 76, 197
Lymphoid tissue, 210

M

McClung, on chromatin, 11
  on chromosomes, 25
McClure, on origin of vessels, 186
  supracardinal vein, 313
McGill, on smooth muscle, 111, 115
Macklin, on absorption spherules, 263
Macula acustica, 485
  lutea, 466
Magma reticulare, 376
Mall, cartilage, 86
  on reticular tissue, 82
  on the heart, 179, 180
  spleen, 218
Malleus, 478
Mallory, on fibroglia, 71
Mallory's connective tissue stain, 522
  phospho-tungstic acid hæmatoxylin, 521
Malpighi, on capillaries, 164
Malpighian corpuscles (renal), 319; (splenic), 215
  pyramids, 318
Mammary glands, 420
Marchi's fluid, 509
Mark, on maturation, 35
Marrow, 205
Mast cells, 77, 198
Maturation, 26
Maximow, on origin of blood, 202
Meckel's diverticulum, 244
Meconium, 270
Mediastinum, of the testis, 334
  of the thorax, 296
Medulla, 209
Medullary groove, 41
  tube, 41
Medullated nerve fibers, 142, 151
Megakaryocytes, 207
Megaloblasts, 190
Meibomian glands (*tarsal glands*), 481
Meigs, on the contraction of muscle, 115, 123
Meissner's corpuscles, tactile, 158
  plexus, 267
Melanin, 78
Membrana basilaris (of the cochlea), 492
  limitans externa (of the retina), 463
  limitans interna, 464
  propria, 60
  vestibularis (of the cochlea), 490
Membrane, Bowman's (of the cornea), 475
  Descemet's (of the cornea), 476
  hyaloid, 471
  Nasmyth's (cuticula dentis), 440
  pupillary, 460
  Reissner's (*membrana vestibularis*), 490
  tympanic, 488, 498
Meninges, 448
Menstruation, 370
Merkel, on the origin of white fibers, 70
Mesenchyma, 45
Mesenchymal epithelium, 51, 108
  tissues, 67
Mesentery, 267
Mesoderm, 40
  derivatives, 49
Mesodermic somites, 43, 115
Mesonephros (*Wolffian body*), 309
Mesothelium, 50
Mesovarium, 360

Metachromatic granules, 77
Metaphase, 19, 21
Methylene blue, 519
Meves, on the origin of white fibers, 70
    spermatozoa, 342
Meyer, on hæmolymph glands, 214
Microglia, 163
Micron, 13
Microtome, 514
Miller, on perivascular lymphatics, 189
    pulmonary arteries, 298
    lungs, 303
Minot, blood corpuscles, 190
    on cytomorphosis, 14
    mesothelium, 50
    sinusoids, 167
Miram, on Paneth's cells, 261
Mitochondria, 6
Mitosis, 18
Mitral cells, 504
    valve, 177
Mixed glands, 238
Modiolus, 485
Moenkhaus, on fertilization, 38
Moll, glands of (*ciliary glands*), 481
Mononuclear leucocytes, 197
Monophyletic theory of blood formation, 201
Montgomery's glands (*areolar glands*), 423
Morgagni, hydatid of (*appendix testis*), 350
    sinus of (*ventricles of the larynx*), 299
Morpurgo, on muscle fibers, 124
Morula, 40
Motor cells, 143
    endings, 160
    plate, 161
Mounting sections, 525
Mouth, 233
Mucins, 69
Mucous bursæ, 80
    glands, 65, 238
    tissue, 69
Mucus, 65, 69
Müller, on the Wolffian bodies, 332
Müllerian duct, 332, 355
Müller's fibers, of the retina, 465
Multipolar cells, 141
Muscle, 110
    cardiac, 126
    columns, 121
    contraction, 115, 122
    fibrils, 111, 119
    involuntary, 110
    skeletal, 115
    smooth, 110
    spindles, 126, 156
    striated, 115
    voluntary, 115
Myelin, 153
Myelocytes, 205
Myenteric plexus, 139, 245, 267
Myoblasts, 111, 117
Myocardium, 180
Myofibrils, 110, 121
Myoglia, 71, 111
Myometrium, 367
Myotome, 115

N

Naboth, ovules of, 369
Nagel on oögenesis, 34
Nails, 423
Nares, 500
Nasal pits, 500
    septum, 500
Nasmyth's membrane (*cuticula dentis*), 440
Nasolachrymal ducts, 483
Nephrotome, 44
Nerve cells, 129, 143
    bipolar, 135
    dendrites, 134, 144
    multipolar, 141
    neuraxon, 134, 144
    in spinal ganglia, 144
    in sympathetic ganglia, 148
    unipolar, 135
Nerve corpuscles, 158
Nerve endings, free, 155
    motor, 160
    sensory, 155
    tactile menisci, 155
Nerve fibers, 130
    afferent, 135
    association, 131
    axis cylinders, 142
    axolemma, 153
    collateral, 130
    commissural, 131
    efferent, 131
    growth, 136
    incisures, 153
    motor, 135
    neuraxon, 134, 142
    neurofibrils, 144
    neurolemma, 153
    nodes of Ranvier, 142, 154
    reflex path, 130
    Remak's fibers, 142
    sensory, 135
    sheath of Schwann, 142
    in the spinal cord, 151
Nerves, 150
    gray, 150
    medullated, 151
    non-medullated, 150
    spinal, 132
    sympathetic, 137
    visceral, 137
    white, 150
Nervous system, 129
    central, 129
    peripheral, 130
    sympathetic, 137
Nesbitt, on bone development, 93
Neumann's sheath, 444
Neural crest, 135
    tube (*medullary tube*), 41
Neuraxon, 134, 141
Neuroblasts, 134
Neuro-epithelial cells, 129
Neurofibrils, 144
Neuroglia, 71, 161
Neurokeratin, 153
Neurolemma, 153
Neuron, 143
Neuropores, 41
Neutrophiles, 199
Nile blue, 523
Nissl's bodies, 144
Nitric acid, 510
Nodes of Ranvier, 142, 154

Nodules, aggregate, 212, 266
    solitary, 211
Nodulus thymicus, 223
Non-medullated nerves, 150
Normoblasts, 190
Norris, on the thyroid gland, 398
Nose, 499
Notochord, 47, 92
Notochordal tissue, 92
Nuclear membrane, 10
    sap, 10
Nucleolus, 10
Nucleus, of cells, 10
    pulposus, 48
    pycnotic, 64, 190
Nuel's spaces, 493
Nussbaum, on sexual cells, 338
Nutrient artery, 107

O

Odontoblasts, 442
Œsophagus, 245
Ogawa, on the avian lung, 306
Oil of origanum, 425
Oken, on the Wolffian bodies, 332
Olfactory bulb, 142
    cells, 502
    epithelium, 502
    glands, 504
    nerves, 504
Oligodendria, 163
Oöcytes, 32, 361
Oögenesis, 26, 32
Oögonia, 32
Opie, on the islands of the pancreas, 295
Optic cup, 459
    nerve, 469
    stalk, 458
    vesicle, 458
Ora serrata, 460
Oral plate, 220
Organ of Corti (*spiral organ*), 491
    of Rosenmüller (*epoöphoron*), 357
Organs, 49
Orth's fluid, 509
Osmic acid, 523
Ossification, 94
Osteoblast, 94
Osteoclast, 96
Osteo-dentine, 445
Osteogenic fibers, 94
Otoconia, 489
Otocyst, 483
Otoliths, 489
Ova, discovery of, 372
    maturation, 35
    mature, 32
    number in human female, 33
Ovary, 359
Oviduct, 365
Ovulation, 35, 363
Ovules of Naboth, 369
Oxyhæmoglobin, 195
Oxyphiles, 198

P

Pacchionian bodies (*arachnoid granulations*), 449
Pacinian corpuscles (*lamellar corpuscles*), 159
Painter, on chromosomes, 24
Palate processes, 500
Palatine glands, 238
    tonsils, 224
Palpebræ, 480
Pal's modification of Weigert's stain, 529
Pancreas, 290
    centro-alveolar cells, 292
    dorsal, 290
    islands, 292
    ventral, 290
Paneth, cells of, 260
Panniculus adiposus, 415
Papilla, dental, 436
    duodenal, 257, 275
    genital, 336
    of hair, 424
    of the optic nerve, 460
    renal, 318
Papillæ, of the corium, 414
    of the tongue, 228
Paradidymis, 335, 350
Paraffin, imbedding in, 511
    sections, 514
Paraganglia, 407
Parametrium, 370
Paranucleus, 32
Parathyroid glands, 223, 400
Parenchyma, 49
    of the liver, 283
Parietal cells, 252
Parker, on cilia, 58
    on the nervous system, 131
Paroöphoron, 357
Parotid gland, 235
Parovarium (epoöphoron), 357
Pavement epithelium, 52
Pecquet, on lymphatics, 184
Pectinate ligament, 476
Pelvis of the kidney, 314, 328
Penicilli, 216
Penis, 353
Peptic glands (*gastric glands*), 250
Perforating fibers, of Sharpey, 104
Perforatorium, 341
Pericardial cavity, 176
Pericardium, 179
Perichondrial bone, 101
Perichondrium, 87
Perilymph, 485
Perilymphatic duct, 497
Perimetrium, 367
Perimysium, 124
Perineum, 243
Perineurium, 151
Periosteal lamellæ, 104
Periosteum, 102
Peripheral nervous system, 130
Peritoneum, 267
Peter, on the zones of the renal medulla, 320
Peters's embryo, 375
Petit, canal of (zonular spaces), 469
Peyer's patches (*aggregate nodules*), 212, 266
Pflüger's egg tubes, 358
Phagocytes, 17, 197
Pharyngeal pouches, 221
    recess, 222
    tonsil, 227
Pharynx, 220
Phospho-tungstic acid hæmatoxylin, 521

Pia mater, 449
Pigment cells, 78
Pillar cells of spiral organ, 492
Pineal body, 411
Pinguecula, 482
Pinkus, on the skin, 417
Pinna, 487
Pituitary gland (*hypophysis*), 408
Placenta, 382
    succenturiate, 379
Plasma, 203
Plasma cells, 75
Plates, blood, 202
Pleura, 296, 308
Pleural villi, 309
Plexus annularis, 479
    Auerbach's, 267
    cardiac, 139
    chorioid, 450
    cœliac, 139
    gangliosus ciliaris, 479
    hypogastric, 140
    Meissner's, 267
    myenteric, 139, 245, 267
    pulmonary, 308
    solar, 140
    submucous, 139, 245
Plicæ adiposæ, of the pleura, 309
    circulares, of the small intestine, 259
    palmatæ, of the uterus, 367
    semilunares, of the large intestine, 271
    transversales, of the rectum, 271
    villosæ, of the stomach, 250
Polar bodies, 34
    radiations, 22
Polykaryocyte, 207
Polymorphonuclear leucocytes, 197
Polyphyletic theory of blood formation, 201
Porta hepatis, 277
Portal canals, 282, 287
    lobules, 281
    vein, 276
Potassium chlorate, 506
    hydrate, 507
Præputial glands, 419
Præspermatid, 27
Præspermid, 27
Precartilage, 86
Predentine, 442
Preformation theory, 343
Premyelocytes, 205
Prepuce, 336
Primitive knot, 40
    streak, 40
Prisms, enamel, 439
Processus vaginalis, 337
    vermiformis, 243
Pronephros, 309
Pronucleus, 37
Prophase, 19
Prostate, 351
Prostatic utricle, 332
Protoplasm, 5
Protovertebræ (*mesodermic somites*), 43, 117
Prowazek, on cilia, 57
Pseudopodia, 12
Pseudostratified epithelium, 56
Pulmonary arches, 297
    arteries, 297
    plexus, 308
Pulmonary veins, 298
Pulp of teeth, 434
Pupil, dilatator muscle of, 474
    sphincter muscle of, 473
Pupillary membrane, 460
Purkinje's cells, 454
    fibers, 182
Pycnotic nuclei, 16
Pyloric glands, 254
Pylorus, 248
Pyramidal cells, 450
Pyramids of Ferrein (in the kidney), 319
    of Malpighi (in the kidney), 318

R

Rabl, on the development of the lens, 471
Radial fibers of the retina, 465
Rami of spinal nerves, 137
Ranson, on ganglion cells, 147
    on non-medullated fibers, 155
Ranvier, on lymphatics, 185
    nodes of, 142, 154
Ranvier's alcohol, 506
Raphe of the penis, 336
Rathke, on gill clefts, 223
Rathke's pouch, 408
Reconstructions, 531
Rectal columns, 271
Rectum, 243, 271
Red corpuscles, 190
    color, 190
    dimensions, 194
    number, 195
    shape, 192
Reductional division, 28
Reflex path of spinal cord, 130
Reflexa (*decidua capsularis*), 378
Reissner's membrane, 490
Remak on nerves, 142
Remak's fibers, 142
Renal columns, 319
    corpuscles, 318
    lobules, 326
    papilla, 318
    pelvis, 314, 328
    portal system, 168, 312
    pyramids, 318
Resorcin-fuchsin, 522
Respiratory apparatus, 296
    bronchioles, 302
Resting wandering cells, 76
Rete Malpighii (*stratum germinativum*), 415
    ovarii, 358
    testis, 334, 344
Reticular apparatus, 9
Reticular tissue, 81
Reticulin, 82
Retina, 462
    cones, 463
    development, 458
    fovea centralis, 466
    macula lutea, 466
    pars ciliaris, 466
    pars iridica, 473
    pars optica, 462
    pigment layer, 462
    rods, 463
Retzius, cells of, 450
    lines of, 440

Rhomboidal sinus, 41
Riddle, on sex-reversal, 25
Rindfleisch, on red corpuscles, 193
Ringer's solution, 506
Ringoen, on myelocytes, 206
Riolanus, ciliary muscles of, 481
Rod cells, 463
Röse, on tooth-development, 437
Rosenmüller, fossa of, 222
  organ of (*epoöphoron*), 357
Rouget cells, 168
Rouleaux, 192
Round ligament, of the liver, 277
  of the uterus, 359
Ruffini's terminal cylinders, 157
Russel's bodies, in plasma cells, 76
Ruysch, on epithelia, 50

S

Sabin,on lymph sacs, 187
  on lymphatics, 187
  on origin of blood, 202
Sacculus, 485
Saccus endolymphaticus, 483, 497
Safranin, 520
Saguchi, on pancreatic cells, 295
Salivary corpuscles, 225
Sarcolemma, 118
Sarcomeres, 122
Sarcoplasm, 122
Sarcostyles, 121
Scala media (*cochlear duct*), 489
  tympani, 487
  vestibuli, 487
Schäfer, on striated muscle, 121, 122, 123
  non-medullated nerve fibers, 150
Scharlach R., 523
Schlagenhaufen, on the tactile toruli, 414
Schlemm, canal of (*sinus venosus scleræ*), 478
Schreger's lines, 441, 444
Schultze, M., on nerve cells, 129
  white corpuscles, 198
Schultze, O., on muscle and tendon, 125
Schulz, on bone, 104
v. Schumacher, on lamellar corpuscles, 160
  hæmolymph glands, 214
Schwann, sheath of, 142, 153
Schweitzer, on the lymphatics of the teeth, 445
Sclera, 474
Sclerotome, 115
Scrotum, 336
Sebaceous glands, 419
Secretion, 64
  internal, 63
Secretory capillaries, 61
Sections (cutting and handling), 514
Segmentation of the ovum, 39
Semicircular canals (*ducts*), 484, 489
Seminal vesicles, 335, 349
Sensory, endings, 155
  nerve cells, 131, 144
Septa, in glands, 61
Septula testis, 337
Septum membranaceum, 178
  transversum, 274
Serotina (*decidua basalis*), 378
Serous glands, 66
Sertoli's cells, of the testis, 340
Serum, 203
Sexual cells, 26, 338
Sharpey's fibers, 104
Sigmoid colon, 244
Silver nitrate, 524
Sino-atrial (or sino-auricular) node, 182
Sinus, coronary, 178
  lactiferous, 422
  rectalis, 271
  tonsillaris, 222
  transversus pericardii, 176
  urogenital, 336, 359
  venosus, 178
   scleræ, 478
Sinuses of the dura mater, 449
  in hæmolymph glands, 214
  in lymph glands, 208, 212
Sinusoids, 167
Skin, 413
  corium, 414
  epidermis, 415
  hair, 424
  nails, 423
  sebaceous glands, 419
  sweat glands, 418
  vessels and nerves, 432
Slides and cover glasses, 526
Small intestine, 257
  blood vessels, 263
  distention of, 260
  duodenum, 256
  glands, 260
  ileum, 257
  jejunum, 257
  lymphatics, 264
  nerves, 266
  villi, 260
Smith, on the carotid body, 407
Smreker, on enamel prisms, 442
Sobotta, on fertilization, 35, 36
Solar plexus, 140
Solitary nodules, 211
Somatopleure, 40
Somites, 43, 115
Spaulding, on genital papilla, 356
Spermatic cord, 348
Spermatid, 31, 340
Spermatocytes, 30, 340
Spermatogenesis, 26
Spermatogonia, 26, 338
Spermatozoa, 27, 31, 341
  discovery of, 342
  number in man, 33
Spermid, 27
Spermium, 27
Sphincter pylori, 255
Spinal cord, 130, 132
  central canal, 132
  columns, 131
  commissures, 131
  ependyma, 132
  gray substance, 132
  horns, 131
  membranes, 448
  white substance, 134
Spinal ganglia, 135
Spindle, 21
  muscle-spindle, 126, 156
Spiracle, 221
Spiral ganglion, 494
  organ, 491

Spireme, 20
Splanchnic nerves, 139
Splanchnopleure, 40
Spleen, 214
    capsule, 219
    cells, 216
    lobules, 220
    nodules, 215
    pulp, 218
Spongioplasm, 8
Squamous cells, 53
Staining methods, 517
Stains, general, 517
    selective, 521
Stapes, 478
Steele, on intercalated discs, 128
Stenson's duct (*parotid duct*), 235
Stewart, on respiratory epithelium, 304
Stockard, on the oestrous cycle, 372
Stöhr, glands of the vermiform process, 269
    thymus, 395
    on the tonsils, 225
Stomach, 242, 248
    glands, 250
    musculature, 255
    subdivisions, 249
Stratified epithelium, 53
Striated muscle, 115
Stroma, 49
Studnička, on dentinal fibers, 443
Subarachnoid space, 449
Subcardinal veins, 312
Subcutaneous tissue, 414
Subdural space, 448
Sublingual glands, 238
Submaxillary glands, 240
Substantia adamantina, 434
    eburnea, 434
    lentis, 470
Sulphuric acid, 507
Supracardinal vein, 313
Suprarenal gland, 401
Supratonsillar fossa, 222
Sustentacular cells, of the inner ear, 489, 494
    of the olfactory epithelium, 502
    of the taste buds, 233
    of the testis, 340
Sutton, on muscle spindles, 126
Sweat glands, 418
Sympathetic ganglia, 137, 149
    ganglionated trunk, 138
    nervous system, 137
Synapsis, 27
Synarthrosis, 107
Synchondrosis, 107
Syncytium, 13, 51
Synizesis, 27
Synovia, 110
Synovial membrane, 109

T

Tactile cells, 155
    menisci, 155
Tæniæ coli, 270
Tapetum cellulosum, 472
    fibrosum, 472
Tarsal glands, 481
Taste buds, 232
    cells, 233
Technique, microscopical, 505
Teeth, 434
    cement, 445
    dentine, 442
    enamel, 437
    pulp, 442
Tela submucosa, 224, 245
Telophase, 19, 23
Tendon, 78
    spindles, 157
Tenon's capsule, 479
Terminal bars, 59
Testis, 337
    convoluted tubules, 337
    descent of, 337
    development, 332
    interstitial cells, 344
    muliebris, 372
    rete, 332, 344
    vessels and nerves, 345
Tetrads, 28
Thebesius, veins of, 181
Theca folliculi, 362
Thiel and Downey, on the spleen, 214
Thoma, on the development of blood vessels, 167
Thomson, on ovolution, 363
Thoracic duct, 184
Thrombocytes, 202
Thymic corpuscles, 397
Thymus, 394
Thyro-glossal duct, 222
Thyroid gland, 222, 389
Tilney, on the hypophysis, 411
Tissues, 39
Toldt, on gastric glands, 251
    paradidymis, 335, 350
Tomes's fibers, 443
    processes, 439
Tongue, 227
Tonsils, lingual, 227
    palatine, 224
    pharyngeal, 227
Top-plate, 56
Toruli tactiles, 413
Trabeculæ, 209
Trachea, 300
Tradescantia, cell division in, 19
Transitional epithelium, 329
    leucocytes, 197
Triangular ligaments of the liver, 276
Tricuspid valve, 178
Trophoblast, 374
Trophoderm, 374
Trophospongium, 9
Tuberculum impar, 227
Tunica abuginea, 337, 360
    propria, 244
Tympanic cavity, 488
    membrane, 487
Tyson's glands, 420

U

Umbilical arteries, 390
    cord, 389
    veins, 277, 390
Unipolar cells, 141, 146
Units, structural, of kidney, 326
    of the liver, 279

Units, of the spleen, 220
Urachus, 390
Ureter, 328
Urethra, female, 331
  male, 353
Urinary organs, 309
Urogenital sinus, 336, 359
Uterine tubes, 332, 365
Uterus, 332, 367
  masculinus, 352
  menstruating, 370
  pregnant, 378
Utriculus, 485, 489
  prostaticus, 352

V

Vacuoles, 6, 8
Vagina, 332, 392
  masculina, 352
Vagus nerve, 137
Vallate papillæ, 229
Valves, of the colon, 271
  of the heart, 177
  of Houston, 271
  of lymphatic vessels, 189
  of the veins, 164, 175
Valvulæ conniventes (*circular folds*), 259
Vas deferens (*ductus deferens*), 335, 347
Vasa aberrantia of the liver, 278
Vasa vasorum, 172
Vascular tissue, 46, 164
Veins, 164
  cardinal, 312
  portal, 276
  pulmonary, 298
  umbilical, 277, 390
  vitelline, 47, 274
Vena cava inferior, 178, 277
Venæ minimæ, 181
Ventral aorta, 166
Ventricles, of the heart, 177
Vermiform process, 243, 268
Vesalius, on blood vessels, 164
  pituitary gland, 409
Vesica fellea, 275
Vesicular follicles of the ovary, 362
  supporting tissue, 92
Vestibule, of the labyrinth, 485
  of the nose, 501
  of the vagina, 359
Vibrissæ, 501
Villi, amniotic, 392
  chorionic, 383
  intestinal, 260
  pleural, 309
  synovial, 109
Visual cells, 463
  purple, 462
Vitelline duct, 242
  veins, 47, 274
Vitreous body, 460, 471
  humor, 460
Volkmann's canals, 104
Vomero-nasal organ, 502

W

Waldeyer, on spermatozoa, 33
Watson, on the seminal vesicles, 348
Wax reconstructions, 531
Weatherford, on the mammary gland, 422
Weed, on the arachnoid, 449
Weidenreich, on pigment cells, 78
  eosinophiles, 199
  shape of red corpuscles, 193
  the spleen, 218
Weigert's iron hæmatoxylin, 520
  method for myelin sheaths, 528
  resorcin-fuchsin, 522
Wharton's duct (*submaxillary duct*), 240
  jelly, 69
Whipple, on the tactile toruli, 414
White corpuscles, 196
  fibers, 69
  nerves, 150
  rami, 138
  substance of the spinal cord, 134
Whitehead, on interstitial cells, 344
Wiesel, on the suprarenal gland, 403
Wilkerson, on the rete ovarii, 358
Williams, L. W., on the notochord, 48, 92
  somites of the chick, 115
Williamson, on the thyroid gland, 400
Willis, on the intercostal nerve, 140
Wilson, on fourth molars, 436
Winniwarter, on the thymus, 395
Winslow, foramen of, 278
Wolff, on the kidney (Wolffian body), 309
Wolffian body, 309
  duct, 44, 309
  tubules, 310
Wright, on blood plates, 202
Wright's blood stain, 523
  method for frozen sections, 516

X

Xylol, 525

Y

Yolk nucleus, 34
  sac, 42, 391
  stalk, 391

Z

Zenker's fluid, 510
Zimmermann, on blood platelets, 202
Zona columnaris, 243
  pellucida, 33
  radiata, 33
Zonula ciliaris, 466
Zuckerkandl, suprarenal glands, 403
Zymogen granules, 252, 292

YO-AVZ-647